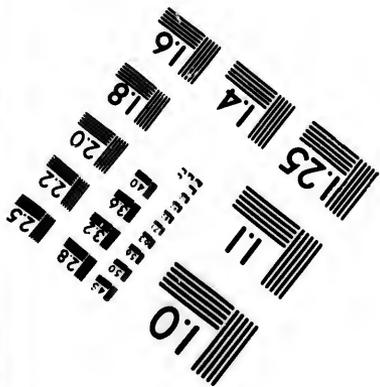
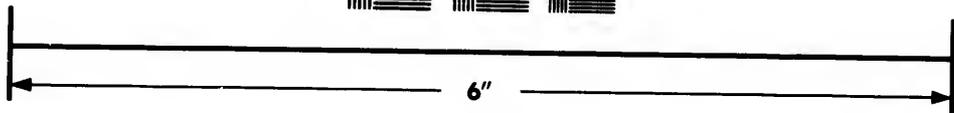
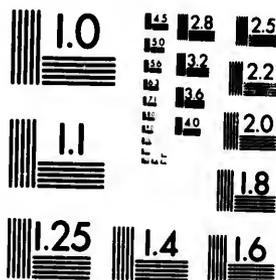


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN SYREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

LE 128
E 132
E 120
E 118

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

10
51

© 1983

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmer sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion
along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la
distortion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may
appear within the text. Whenever possible, these
have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées
lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte,
mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont
pas été filmées.
- Additional comments:/
Commentaires supplémentaires:

- Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata
slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to
ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement
obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure,
etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à
obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	12X	14X	16X	18X	20X	22X	24X	26X	28X	30X	32X
				✓							

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

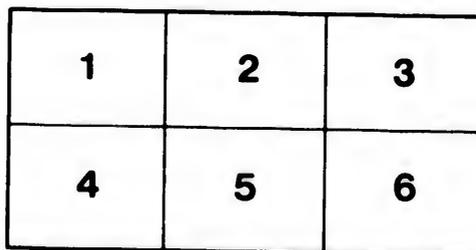
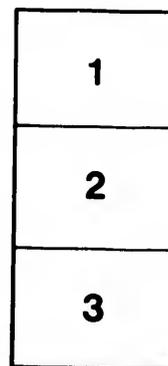
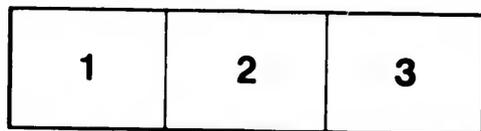
Library Division
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol → (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Library Division
Provincial Archives of British Columbia

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole → signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

errata
to

pelure,
on à



CAPTAIN COOK.

THE
THREE VOYAGES
OF
CAPTAIN COOK
ROUND THE WORLD.

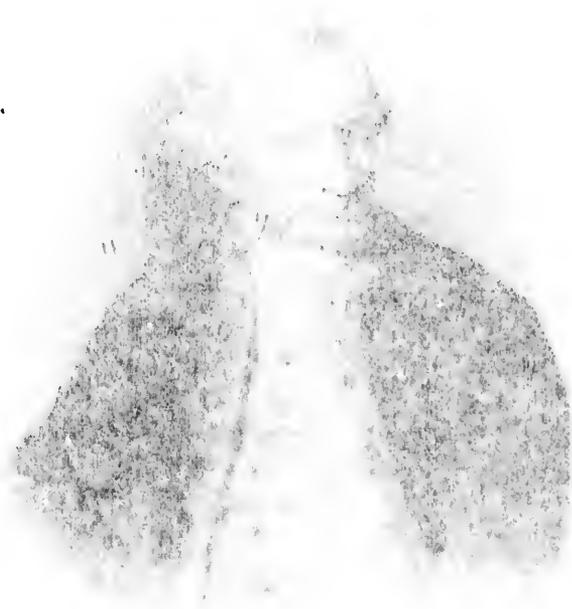
WITH
A MAP OF THE WORLD,
A PORTRAIT, AND A MEMOIR OF HIS LIFE.

EMBELLISHED WITH TWENTY-EIGHT ENGRAVINGS.

A NEW EDITION

LONDON:
PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY J. LIMBIRD, 143, STRAND,
(Near Somerset House.);

1833.



CAPTAIN COOK.

THE
THREE VOYAGES
OF
CAPTAIN COOK
ROUND THE WORLD.

WITH
A MAP OF THE WORLD,
A PORTRAIT, AND A MEMOIR OF HIS LIFE.

EMBELLISHED WITH TWENTY-EIGHT ENGRAVINGS.

A NEW EDITION.

LONDON:
PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY J. LIMBIRD, 143, STRAND,
(Near Somerset House.)

1833.

hw

970P

C771

1st-3d

Lond.

1833

C. 2

IF
Ven
their
case
oper
the
dista
O
Cool
the
long
have
a tex
libra
Ne
so lar
graph
South
insula
the tv
surve
New
or up
colon
Van I
In l
southe
the lat
leave
of the
New C
New 2
which
misphe
the siti
The
nately
above

PREFACE.

IF in former times the Spaniards, the Portuguese, and the Venetians, surpassed us in the extent and importance of their geographical discoveries, this has long ceased to be the case; and to the English the world is indebted, not merely for opening to it new countries, but for a more correct knowledge of the globe itself, and the consequent best means of navigating the distant oceans.

Of all the navigators that the world has produced, Captain Cook was one of the most enterprising and skilful, and by far the most successful; and the narrative of his three voyages have long taken the precedence of works of this description. They have been published in all sizes, and may be said to have become a text-book for schools, and an essential part of a seaman's library.

Never, perhaps in the history of the world did science receive so large an accession from the labours of a single man as geography has done from Captain Cook. In his first voyage to the South seas, he discovered the Society Islands, determined the insularity of New Zealand; discovered the straits which separate the two islands now called after his name, and made a complete survey of both. He afterwards explored the Eastern coast of New Holland, hitherto unknown, an extent of 27 deg. of latitude, or upwards of two thousand miles, and gave to his country a colony large enough for an empire, in New South Wales and Van Dieman's Land.

In his second expedition, he resolved the great problem of a southern continent, having traversed that hemisphere, between the latitudes of 40 deg. and 70 deg., in such a manner as not to leave a possibility of its existence, unless near the pole, and out of the reach of navigation. During this voyage, he discovered New Caledonia, the largest island in the Southern Pacific, except New Zealand; the island of Georgia, and an unknown coast, which he named Sandwich Land, the *thule* of the southern hemisphere; and having twice visited the tropical seas, he settled the situations of the old, and made several new, discoveries.

The third voyage of Captain Cook, and in which he unfortunately lost his life, was still more important, and is distinguished above all the rest, by the extent and value of its discoveries.

108520

PROVINCIAL LIBRARY

VICTORIA B.C.

Besides several smaller islands in the Southern Pacific, Captain Cook discovered, to the north of the equinoctial line, the group called the Sandwich Islands; which, from their situation and productions, bid fairer for becoming an object of consequence, in the system of European navigation, than any other discovery in the South Sea. He afterward explored what had hitherto remained unknown of the western coast of America, from the latitude of 43 deg. to 70 deg. north, containing an extent of 3,500 miles; ascertained the proximity of the two great continents of Asia and America; passed the straits between them, and surveyed the coast on each side, to such a height of northern latitude, as to demonstrate the impracticability of a passage in that hemisphere, from the Atlantic into the Pacific Ocean, either by an eastern or a western course. In short, if we except the sea of Amur, and the Japanese Archipelago, which still remain imperfectly known to Europeans, he has completed the hydrography of the habitable globe.

In the narratives of these important voyages in the following pages, they have been stripped of much of their technicality, and abridged by the omission of such details as were the least interesting; no important fact or incident has, however, been left out and the third voyage is given very amply.

It is hoped that the present edition of these popular voyages will not only recommend itself to the public on account of its cheap and portable form, but by the numerous and spirited engravings, and excellent map, all of which have been expressly designed for the work; and that nothing should be wanting to make the volume complete, a fine portrait of Captain Cook and a memoir of his life are prefixed.

J
ha
fr
fa
bu
wa
an
of
ho

in
ag
sch
kee
W
oft
the
son
a p
inc
cou
W
shi
Ne
bur
of C
to l
I
Ma
of C
Ear
one
this
A
serv
and
intr

BIOGRAPHICAL MEMOIR

OF

CAPTAIN JAMES COOK.

JAMES COOK, one of the most enterprising and skilful navigators the world has produced, was born at Marton in Cleveland, a village about four miles from Great Ayton, in the county of York, on the 27th October, 1728. His father, whose name was likewise James, was a day-labourer to Mr. Mewburn, a very respectable farmer. In the year 1730, when our navigator was about two years old, his father removed with his family to Great Ayton, and was employed as a hind by Thomas Scottowe, Esq., having the charge of a considerable farm in that neighbourhood, known by the name of Airyholm.

As the father continued long in that trust, Captain Cook was employed in assisting him in various kinds of husbandry suited to his years, until the age of thirteen. At that period he was put under the care of Mr. Pullen, a schoolmaster who taught at Ayton, where he learned arithmetic, book-keeping, &c., and is said to have shewn a very early genius for figures. While a boy he displayed an extraordinary spirit of inquiry which was often not a little perplexing to his school-master. About January, 1745, at the age of seventeen, his father bound him apprentice to William Saunderson for four years, to learn the grocery and haberdashery business, at Snaith, a populous fishing town about ten miles from Whitby; but his natural inclination not having been consulted on this occasion, he soon quitted the counter in disgust, and in July, 1746, he bound himself apprentice to Mr. J. Walker, of Whitby, for the term of three years. He first sailed on board the ship *Freelove*, burthen about 450 tons, chiefly employed in the coal trade from Newcastle to London, and afterwards in the *Three Brothers*, about 600 tons burthen. After two coal voyages the latter ship was taken into the service of Government, and sent as a transport to Middleburgh, to carry some troops to Dublin.

In the spring of 1750, Mr. Cook shipped himself as a seaman on board the *Maria*, belonging to Mr. John Wilkinson, of Whitby, under the command of Captain Gaskin. In her he continued all the year in the Baltic trade. Early in February, 1752, Mr. Walker sent for him and made him mate of one of his vessels, called the *Friendship*, of about 400 tons burthen. In this station he continued till May or June, 1753, in the coal trade.

At the breaking out of the war, in 1755, he entered into the king's service, on board the *Eagle*, at that time commanded by Captain Hamer, and afterwards by Sir Hugh Palliser, who soon discovered his merit, and introduced him on the quarter-deck.

In the year 1753, he was appointed master of the Northumberland, the flag-ship of Lord Colville, who had taken the command of the squadron stationed on the coast of America. It was here, as he was often heard to say, that, during a hard winter, he first read Euclid, and applied himself to the study of mathematics and astronomy, without any other assistance than what a few books, and his own industry afforded him. At the same time, that he thus round means to cultivate and improve his mind, and to supply the deficiencies of an early education, he was engaged in most of the busy and active scenes of war in America. At the siege of Quebec, Sir Charles Saunders committed to his charge the execution of services of the first importance in the naval department. He piloted the boats to the attack of Montmorency; conducted the embarkation to the Heights of Abraham, examined the passage, and laid buoys for the security of the large ships in proceeding up the river. The courage and address with which he acquitted himself in these services, gained him the warm friendship of Sir Charles Saunders and Lord Colville, who continued to patronize him during the rest of their lives, with the greatest zeal and affection.

He received a commission as lieutenant, on the first day of April, 1760; and at the conclusion of the war, he was appointed, through the recommendation of Lord Colville and Sir Hugh Palliser, to survey the Gulf of St. Lawrence and the coast of Newfoundland.

In the year 1765, he was with Sir William Burnaby on the Jamaica station; and that officer having occasion to send dispatches to the Governor of Jucatan, relative to the logwood-cutters in the Bay of Honduras, Lieutenant Cook was selected for that employment; and he performed it in a manner which entitled him to the approbation of the Admiral. A relation of this voyage and journey was published in the year 1769, under the title of "Remarks on a passage from the river Belise in the Bay of Honduras to Merid, the capital of the province of Jucatan in the Spanish West Indies, by Lieutenant Cook," in an octavo pamphlet.

To a perfect knowledge of all the duties belonging to a sea-life, Mr. Cook added a great skill in astronomy. In the year 1767, the Royal Society resolved, that it would be proper to send persons into some part of the South Sea, to observe the transit of the planet Venus over the sun's disk; and our navigator was appointed by that learned body, with Mr. Charles Green, to observe the transit at Otaheite.

On this occasion Lieutenant Cook was promoted to be Captain, and his commission bore date the 25th of May, 1768.—He immediately hoisted the pendant, and took command of the ship, in which he sailed down the river on the 30th of July. Of this voyage a connected account will be found in the following pages.

Captain Cook came to anchor in the Downs on the 12th of June, after having been absent almost three years, and in that time had experienced every danger to which a voyage of such a length is incident, and in which he made discoveries equal to those of all the navigators of this country, from the time of Columbus to the present day. The narration of this expedition was written by Dr. Hawkesworth.

Soon after Captain Cook returned to England, it was resolved to equip two ships to complete the discovery of the southern hemisphere. It had long been a prevailing idea, that the unexplored part contained another continent, and Alexander Dalrymple, a gentleman of enterprising spirit, was fully persuaded of its existence. To ascertain the fact was the principal object of this expedition; and that nothing might be omitted that could tend to facilitate the enterprise, two ships were provided, fur-

nished with every necessary which could promote the success of the undertaking. The first of these ships was called the Resolution, under the command of Captain Cook; the other, the Adventure, commanded by Captain Furneaux. Both of them sailed from Deptford on the 9th of April, 1772, and returned to England, on the 14th of July, 1774; having, during three years and eighteen days (in which time the voyage was performed), lost but one man, by sickness, in Captain Cook's ships, although he had navigated throughout all the climates from 52 deg. north, to 71 deg. south, with a company of a hundred and eighteen men.

The relation of this voyage was given to the public by Captain Cook himself, and by Mr. George Forster, son of Dr. Forster, who had been appointed by Government to accompany him, for the purpose of making observations on such natural productions as might be found in the course of the navigation.

The want of success which attended Captain Cook's attempt to discover a southern continent, did not discourage another plan being resolved on, which had been recommended some time before. This was no other than finding out a north-west passage, which the fancy of some chimerical projectors had conceived to be a practicable scheme. The dangers which our navigator had twice braved and escaped, would have exempted him from being solicited a third time to venture his person in unknown countries, amongst desert islands, inhospitable climates, and in the midst of savages; but, on his opinion being asked concerning the person who would be the most proper to execute this design, he once more relinquished the quiet and comforts of domestic life, to engage in scenes of turbulence and confusion, of difficulty and danger. His intrepid spirit and inquisitive mind induced him again to offer his services; and they were accepted without hesitation. The manner in which he had departed himself on former occasions left no room to suppose a fitter man could be selected. He prepared for his departure with the utmost alacrity, and actually sailed on the month of July, 1776.

A few months after his departure from England, notwithstanding he was then absent, the Royal Society voted him Sir Godfrey Copley's gold medal, as a reward for the account which he transmitted to that body, of the method taken to preserve the health of the crew of his ship; and Sir John Pringle, in an oration pronounced on the 30th of November, observed "how meritorious that person must appear, who had not only made the most extensive, but the most instructive voyages; who had not only discovered, but surveyed vast tracts of new coasts; who had dispelled the illusion of a *terra australis incognita*, and fixed the bounds of the habitable earth, as well as those of the navigable ocean, in the southern hemisphere: but that, however ample a field for praise these circumstances would afford, it was a nobler motive that had prompted the Society to notice Captain Cook in the honourable manner which had occasioned his then address." After descanting on the means used on the voyage to preserve the lives of the sailors, he concluded his discourse in these terms: "Allow me then, Gentlemen, to deliver this medal, with his unperishing name engraven upon it, into the hands of one who will be happy to receive that trust, and to hear that this respectable body never more cordially, nor more meritoriously, bestowed that faithful symbol of their esteem and affection. For if Rome decreed the *Civic Crown* to him who saved the life of a single citizen, what wreaths are due to that man, who having himself saved many, perpetuates in your Transactions the means by which Britain may now, on the most distant voyages, save numbers of her intrepid sons, her Mariners; who, braving

every danger, have so liberally contributed to the fame, to the opulence, and to the maritime empire of their country ?”

It will give pain to every sensible mind to reflect, that this honourable testimony to the merit of our gallant commander never came to his knowledge. While his friends were waiting with the most earnest solicitude for tidings concerning him, and the whole nation expressed an anxious impatience to be informed of his success, advice was received from Captain Clerke, in a letter dated at Kamtschatka, the 8th day of June, 1779; stating that Captain Cook was killed on the 14th of February, 1779.

Captain Cook was a married man, and left several children behind him. On each of these his majesty settled a pension of £25 per annum, and £200 per annum on his widow. It is a circumstance remarkable, that Captain Cook was godfather to his wife; and at the very time she was christened, had determined, if she grew up, on the union which afterwards took place between them.

The constitution of his body was robust, inured to labour, and capable of undergoing the severest hardships. His stomach bore, without difficulty, the coarsest and most ungrateful food. Indeed, temperance in him was scarcely a virtue; so great was the indifference with which he submitted to every kind of self-denial. The qualities of his mind were of the same hardy, vigorous kind with those of his body. His understanding was strong and perspicuous. His judgment, in whatever related to the services he was engaged in, quick and sure. His designs were bold and manly; and both in the conception, and in the mode of execution, bore evident marks of a great original genius. His courage was cool and determined, and accompanied with an admirable presence of mind in the moment of danger. His manners were plain and unaffected; but the most distinguishing feature of his character was that unremitting perseverance in the pursuit of his object, which was not only superior to the opposition of dangers and the pressure of hardships, but even exempt from the want of ordinary relaxation.

As a navigator, his services were of the most splendid description, and even the method which he discovered and so successfully pursued for preserving the lives of seamen, forms a new era in navigation, and will transmit his name to the latest posterity as the friend and benefactor of mankind.

lence, and

honourable
his know-
icitude for
ous impa-
m Captain
ne, 1779 ;
779.

ehind him.
, and £200
at Captain
christened,
took place

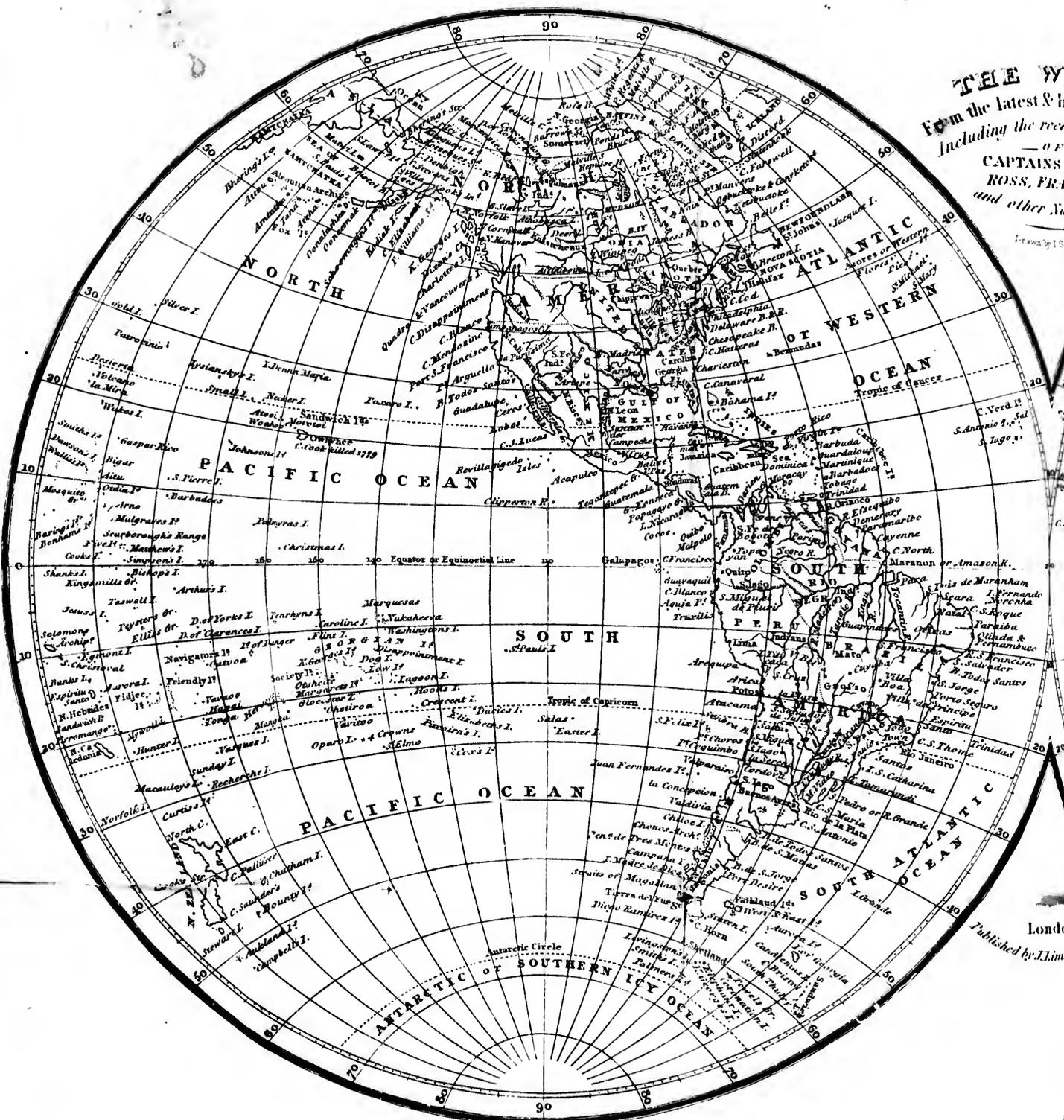
and capable
t difficulty,
n him was
submitted to
f the same
; was strong
vices he was
; and both
marks of a
and accom-
anger. His
ng feature of
of his object,
the pressure
ation.

ription, and
ued for pre-
d will trans-
of mankind.



THE WORLD
 From the latest & best
 Including the recent
 — OF —
 CAPTAINS
 ROSS, FRANKLIN
 and other Navigators

London: Published by J. Limb...

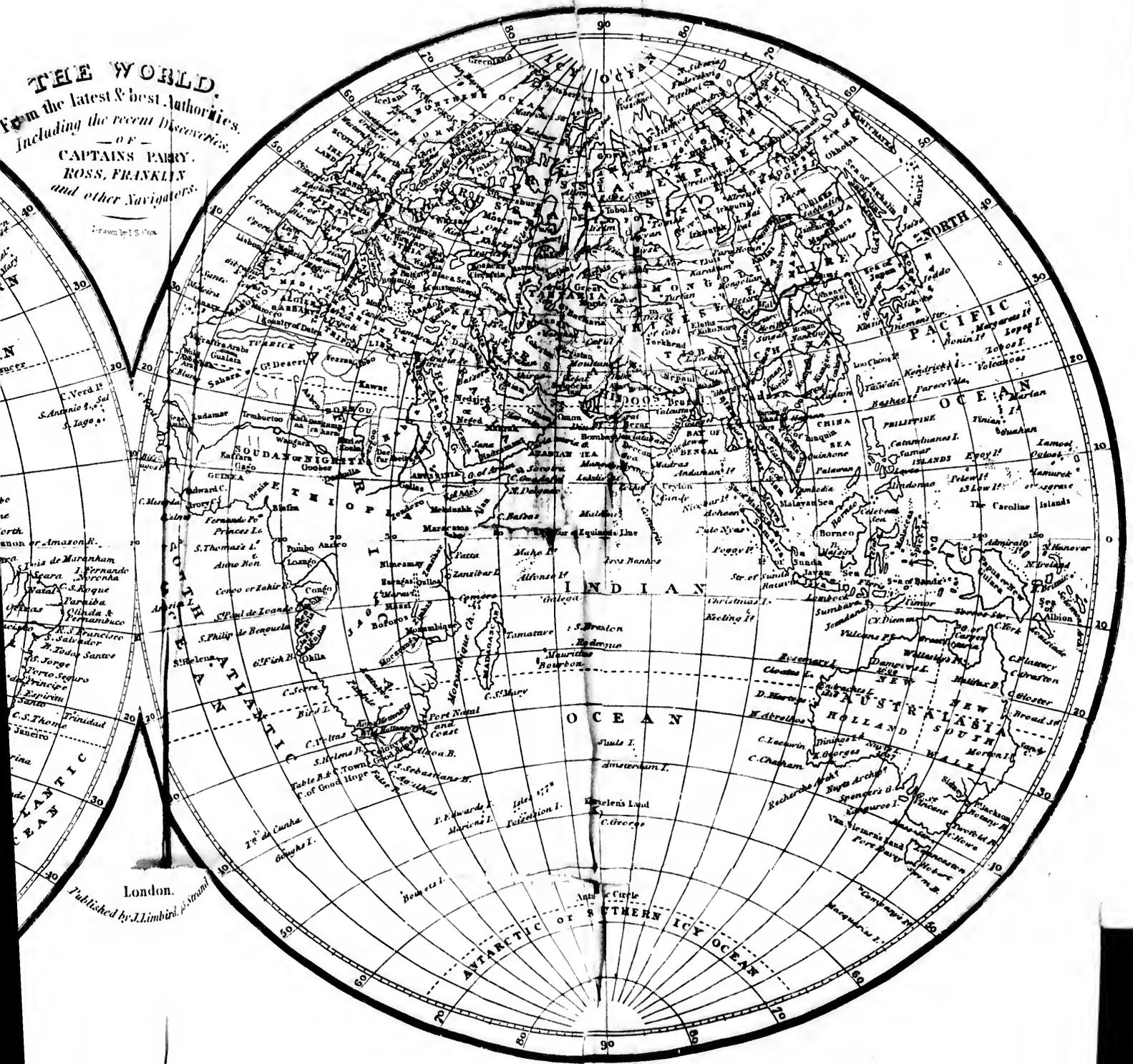


London.

Published by J. Limb...

THE WORLD.
 From the latest & best Authorities.
 Including the recent Discoveries.
 — OF —
CAPTAINS PARRY,
ROSS, FRANKLIN
 and other Navigators.

Drawn by T.S. Cox



London.

Published by J. L. Imbrié, 25 Strand

CAPTAIN COOK'S VOYAGES.

Wise Nature from this face of ground,
Into the deep taught man to find the way;
That in the floods her treasure might be found,
To make him search for what she there did lay;
And that her secrets he might throughly sound,
She gave him courage as her only key;
That of all creatures as the worthiest he,
Her glory there and wond'rous works should see.

DRAYTON.

COOK'S FIRST VOYAGE, 1768—1771.

THE naval superiority of Great Britain has long enabled her to take the lead in geographical discovery, which is happily prosecuted with unremitting zeal, and we may add with extraordinary success. If there are no new worlds to discover, there are many parts of the globe with which our acquaintance is very imperfect, many coasts yet incorrectly surveyed, many seas, the navigation of which is by no means certain. This we know; how much more still remains to be known—time the only true unraveller of events can alone determine, but when we look to the discoveries of a Drake, a Cavendish, a Dampier, a Anson, a Byron, a Wallis, a Carteret, and a Cook, we feel the utmost confidence that Britain will never be wanting in navigators ready to traverse every sea, and to explore every creek, in order to aid the great cause of scientific discovery.

Of British navigators, no one stands so high as Cook. His discoveries, since Columbus found a new world, in the Atlantic, have not only been the most important, but his zeal and talents were of that commanding order, which seemed to ensure success to every enterprise in which he engaged.

Never, perhaps, was the spirit of naval discovery so eminently encouraged as during the reigns of George III. and George IV. The expedition of Commodore Anson, in 1740, though failing in its more immediate object—the ruin of the Spanish Settlements on the coasts of South America, and the spoils of their trade,

was productive of more important results, since it first opened the Pacific Ocean to our view as a field for political aggrandisement and scientific discovery.

The war for some time prevented our engaging in the mighty projects which were in embryo, but in 1764, Commodore Byron was sent out, and in the course of his voyage round the globe he advanced to a comparatively high southern latitude, and opened an interesting path for future discovery. The account of his voyage seemed but to kindle new curiosity, and to encourage new hopes; and within little more than a month after his return, Captain Wallis was sent out in the *Dolphin* to prosecute the discoveries which Byron had begun. Wallis, after greatly extending the tract of discovery in the South Seas, returned safe to England in 1768. Captain Carteret, who had been sent out in the *Swallow* sloop to accompany Wallis, was separated from him in the course of the voyage; he encountered many hardships, but made new discoveries in higher latitudes, and arrived not in England until the month of March, 1764.

Wallis, however, had scarcely returned when it was resolved to send out Lieutenant Cook, not only to prosecute still farther the discoveries already made in the South Seas, but for the benefit of astronomy and the arts dependent upon it, to observe in the latitude of Otaheite an expected transit of the planet Venus over the sun. The *Endeavour* was fitted up for the expedition, and Mr. (afterwards Sir Joseph) Banks, and Dr. Solander, a Swedish naturalist, at the request of the former, were allowed to accompany Lieutenant James Cook, who was appointed commander.

On the 26th of August, 1768, the *Endeavour* sailed from Plymouth; on the 12th of September the Islands of Puerto Santa and Madeira were seen, and the next day the vessel was in Funchal Road, whence she sailed on the 19th. On the 22nd they saw the Islands of Salvages, northward of the Canaries; on the 23rd the Peak of Teneriffe, 15,400 feet high, was in sight, and on the 29th they perceived Bona Vista, one of the Cape de Verd Islands lying in latitude, 16 deg. north, and longitude, 21 deg. 48 min. west. On the 13th of November, they made sail for the harbour of Rio de Janeiro. Mr. Hicks, the first lieutenant, was sent before, in the pinnace, to the city, to inform the governor that they put in there for refreshments and water, and to obtain a pilot. Captain Cook went on shore on the 14th, and obtained leave to purchase provisions; he also requested that the gentlemen on-board might remain on-shore whilst they sojourned, and that Mr. Banks might go up the country to collect plants, but these requests were peremptorily refused.

Having procured all necessary supplies, they left Rio de Janeiro, on the 8th of December, 1768. On the 14th of January they entered the Strait of Le Maire; but the tide being

against them, they were driven out with great violence, and the waves ran so high, that the ship's bowsprit was frequently under water; at length, however, they got anchorage at the entrance of a little cove, which Captain Cook called St. Vincent's Bay.

Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander set out from the ship on the 16th, with the design of going into the country, and returning in the evening. Having entered a wood, they ascended the hill through a pathless wilderness till the afternoon. The morning had been very fine, but the weather now became cold and disagreeable; the blasts of wind were very piercing, a shower of snow fell, and Mr. Buchan, one of the draughtsmen, fell into a fit. It was absolutely necessary to stop and kindle a fire, and such as were most fatigued remained to assist him; but Messrs. Banks, Solander, Green and Monkhouse, proceeded and attained the spot they had in view. The whole party met again at eight in the evening. Dr. Solander having often passed mountains in cold countries, was sensible that extreme cold, when joined with fatigue, occasions a drowsiness, that is not easily resisted; he accordingly entreated his friends to keep in motion, however disagreeable it might be to them; his words were, "Whoever sits down, will sleep; and whoever sleeps, will wake no more." Every one seemed accordingly armed with resolution; but on a sudden the cold became so very intense, as to threaten the most direful effects. It was very remarkable, that Dr. Solander himself, who had so forcibly admonished his party, should be the first who insisted upon being suffered to repose. In spite of the most earnest entreaties, he lay down amidst the snow, and it was with great difficulty they kept him awake. When a black servant was informed, that if he remained there he would soon be frozen to death; he replied, that he was so exhausted with fatigue, that death would be a relief to him. Dr. Solander said he was not unwilling to go, but that he must first take some sleep, notwithstanding what he had before declared to the company. Thus resolved, they both sat down, supported by bushes, and in a short time fell fast asleep. An advanced party, having kindled a fire about a quarter of a mile farther on the way, Mr. Banks woke the doctor, who had almost lost the use of his limbs, although he had sat down but a few minutes. Every measure taken to relieve the black proved ineffectual; he remained motionless, and they were obliged to leave him to the care of the other black servant and a sailor, who appeared to have been the least hurt by cold. Mr. Banks and four others went forth at twelve o'clock and met the sailor, with just strength enough to walk; he was immediately sent to the fire, and they proceeded to seek for the two others. They found Richmond, a black servant, upon his legs, but incapable of moving them, the other black was lying senseless upon the ground. All endeavours to bring them to the fire were fruitless, nor was it possible to

kindle one upon the spot, on account of the snow that had fallen, and was still falling, so that there was no alternative, but to leave the two unfortunate negroes to their fate, making them a bed of boughs and trees, and covering them very thick with the same. On the 17th in the morning, at day-break, nothing presented itself around but snow, the trees being equally covered with it as the ground. However, about six in the morning they were flattered with a dawn of hope of being delivered, by discovering the sun through the clouds, which gradually diminished. Previous to setting out, messengers, who were dispatched to the unhappy negroes, returned with the melancholy news of their death. In about three hours, to their great satisfaction, they found themselves on the shore, much nearer the ship than their most sanguine expectations could have flattered them. When they took a retrospect of their former route from the sea, they found, that instead of ascending the hill in a direct line, they had made a circle almost round the country.

Captain Cook sailed from Cape Horn, January the 26th. The farthest southern latitude he made was 60 deg. 10 min., by 74 deg. 30 min. west. March the 1st they were in latitude 38 deg. 44 min. south, and longitude 110 deg. 33 min. west, as well by observation as by the log; which concurrence, after a course of 660 leagues, was judged very singular.

On the 4th of April, a servant to Mr. Banks discovered land, three or four leagues distant. It was found to be an island of an oval form, with a lake or lagoon in the centre; the border of land was in many places low and narrow, especially towards the south, where the beach consisted of a reef of rocks. Captain Cook came within a mile on the north-side, but found no bottom nor anchorage. There appeared along the beach some of the inhabitants, with pikes or poles in their hands, twice the height of themselves. This island was in latitude 18 deg. south; longitude 139 deg. 28 min. west, and was named Lagoon Island. They saw land again in the afternoon to the north-west, when it appeared a low island covered with wood, in form circular, about a mile in circumference. No inhabitants were visible, though the Endeavour had reached the shore within half a mile. This island, which is distant from that of Lagoon about seven leagues, was named Thrumb Cap. The 5th, continued their course, and about three o'clock discovered land to the west. This was a low island, between ten and twelve leagues in circumference, it resembled in form a bow. This island, from the smoke discovered, appeared to be inhabited, and was named Bow Island.

About noon, on the 6th, they saw land again to the west: this seemed divided into two islands, or rather collections of islands, their extent being nearly nine leagues. Some of these were ten miles or more in length, and produced trees of different kinds, among which was the cocoa-nut. Several of the inhabitants

fallen,
leave
bed of
same.
sented
h it as
e flat-
ng the
vious
nappy
i. In
them-
guine
ook a
, that
ade a

The
y 74
deg.
ll by
rse of

land,
nd of
ler of
s the
ptain
ottom
f the
eight
lon-
land.
when
ular,
ible,
mile.
even
their
west.
a cir-
n the
med

this
nds,
e ten
nds,
tants

came out in canoes, and two appeared to have a design of coming on board, but stopped at the reef. Next day they discovered another island, which they judged to be in compass about five miles. It was very low, with a piece of water in the centre, and appeared to abound in wood and verdure, but no inhabitants were visible. It was called Bird Island, from the number of them flying about. The 8th, saw land to the north. This seemed to be a chain of low islands, of an oval figure, and consisted of coral and sand, with a few clumps of small trees, and in the middle of it a lagoon. It was, from its appearance, called Chain Island. On the 10th, after a tempestuous night, saw Osnaburgh Island, called by the natives Maite. This island is high and circular, about four miles in circumference, partly naked and rocky, and partly covered with trees.

The same day, on looking out for the island to which they were destined, saw land a-head. Next morning it appeared very high and mountainous, and was known to be King George the Third's Island, so named by Captain Wallis, but by the natives called Otaheite. They lay off and on till the 13th, and then entered Port Royal Harbour, anchoring within half a mile of the shore. A great number of natives immediately came off in canoes, bringing with them bananas, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, apples, and some hogs, which they bartered with the ship's crew for beads and other trinkets. When the ship was properly secured, the captain went on-shore with Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, a party under arms, and an old Indian. They were received by some hundreds of the natives, who were struck with such awe, that the first who approached crept almost upon his hands and knees. He presented them branches of trees, the usual symbol of peace. This was received, on the part of the English, with demonstrations of satisfaction and friendship; and they gathered some, and followed the example of the natives. They were conducted toward the place where the Dolphin had watered. The whole circuit was near four miles, through groves of trees, of cocoa-nuts, and bread-fruit. Beneath were the habitations of the natives, consisting of only a roof, destitute of walls. In this peregrination the gentlemen were not a little disappointed at finding very few fowls or hogs.

Several of the chiefs, one of whom was very corpulent, came on board from the other point, on the morning of the 15th, bringing with them hogs, bread-fruit, and other refreshments. This day the captain, attended by Mr. Banks and others, went on-shore to fix on a proper spot to erect a small fort for their defence. The latter having suspected, from seeing few hogs or poultry in their walks, that they had been driven up the country, it was resolved to penetrate into the woods, some marines and a petty officer being appointed to guard the tent in the interim; several of the natives accompanied the gentlemen in this excursion. Upon crossing a little river, Mr. Banks perceiving

some ducks, fired, and killed three. The Indians were struck with the utmost terror at this event, which occasioned them to fall suddenly to the ground, as if they had been shot at the same time. Before this party had gone much farther, they were alarmed by the discharge of two pieces, fired by the tent-guard. Upon their return, it appeared that an Indian had taken an opportunity to snatch away one of the sentinel's muskets; whereupon a young midshipman, very imprudently, ordered the marines to fire, which they did, when several Indians were wounded, but as the criminal did not fall, they pursued and shot him dead.

The fort began to be erected on the 18th; some of the company were employed in throwing up entrenchments, whilst others were employed in cutting fascines and pickets, which the Indians of their own accord cheerfully assisted in bringing from the woods. This day the natives brought down such quantities of bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, that it was necessary to reject them, and to intimate that the company would not want any for two days. Mr. Banks's tent being got up, he, for the first time, slept on-shore: and on the 19th, Tubora Tumaida visited Mr. Banks at his tent, and brought with him, besides his wife and family, the materials for erecting a house, in the neighbourhood of the fort, where he designed to reside. Without the lines a sort of market was established, which was tolerably well supplied. Tubora Tumaida became Mr. Banks's and the other gentlemen's frequent guest; he adopted their manners, and was the only one of his countrymen who had attempted to use a knife and fork.

On the 24th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander made an excursion into the country, which they found to be level and fertile for about two miles along the shore to the eastward, after which, the hills reached quite to the water's edge, and farther on they ran out into the sea.

On the 25th, several of their knives were missing; upon which Mr. Banks, who had lost his among the rest, accused Tubora Tumaida with having stolen it, which caused him to be very unhappy, as he happened to be innocent. Mr. Molineux, master of the Endeavour, seeing a woman, whose name was Oberea, he declared she was the person he judged to be the queen of the island, when he came there in the Dolphin: the eyes of all were now fixed on her who had made so distinguished a figure in the accounts given by the first discoverers of this island. The person of the queen was of a large make and tall; she was about forty years of age, her skin white; her eyes had great expression, and she had been handsome, but her beauty was now upon the decline. She was soon conducted to the ship, and went on-board, accompanied by some of her family. Many presents were made her, particularly a child's doll, which seemed the most to engross her attention. Captain Cook

accompanied her on-shore, when she presented him with a hog and some plantains, which were carried to the fort in procession, Oherea and the captain bringing up the rear. They met Tootahah, who, though not king, seemed to be at this time invested with a sovereign authority. He immediately became jealous of the queen's having the doll, which made it necessary to compliment him with one also.

On the 5th, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, with the captain, set out in the pinnace, with one of Tootahah's people: they soon reached Eparre, the place where he dwelt, which was but a few miles to the west of the tents. Upon their arrival, they found great numbers of people upon the shore waiting for them. They were immediately conducted to the chief, whilst the people shouted round them, *Tai-o Tootahah*, "Tootahah is your friend;" they found him sitting under a tree, and some old men standing round him. As soon as he had made signs for them to sit down, he asked for his axe, which Captain Cook presented with a shirt and a broad-cloth garment, with which he seemed greatly pleased. After eating, an entertainment was provided for them, consisting of wrestling. The chief sat at the upper end of the area, with several of his principal men on each side, by way of judges, from whom the conquerors received applause. Ten or twelve combatants entered the area, and after many simple ceremonies of challenging each other, they engaged, endeavouring to throw one another by dint of strength; then seizing hold of each other by the thigh, the hand, the hair, or the clothes, they grappled without the least art, till one was thrown on his back; this conquest was applauded by some words from the old men, and three huzzas. After one engagement succeeded another, but if they could not throw each other during the space of a minute, they parted, either by consent, or the intervention of their friends.

On the 15th, Mr. Banks discovered that Tubora Tamaida, had stolen some nails. Entertaining a good opinion of this chief, and willing to put his fidelity to the test, several temptations were thrown in his way, among the rest a basket of nails, which proved irresistible. He confessed the fact, and upon Mr. Banks's insisting upon restitution, he declared the nails were at Eparre; this occasioned high words, and at length the Indian produced one of them. He was promised forgiveness on restoring the rest, but not having resolution to fulfil his engagement, he fled with his furniture and family before night. Tootahah sent many messages to request a visit from the captain, declaring he would acknowledge the compliment by a present of some hogs. But, Mr. Hicks, the first lieutenant, was sent, in hopes of getting the hogs without the visit. He was received in a very friendly manner, at a place called Tettehah, five miles farther to the westward, where Tootahah had taken up his residence. He brought away one hog only, which had been

produced immediately upon his arrival, with a promise of receiving more the next morning; but, when morning came, he was obliged to depart without them.

On the 27th, Tootahah being removed to a place called Atahourou, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Captain Cook, and some others, set out in the pinnace to pay him a visit; after making presents of a few trifling articles, they were invited to stay the night. Mr. Banks having accepted of a place in Oberea's canoe left his companions in order to retire to rest. Notwithstanding the care Oberea took of his clothes, by having them in her own custody, they were stolen, with his pistols, powder-horn, and many other things in his pockets. The alarm was given to Tootahah, who slept in the next canoe, and who went with Oberea in search of the thief, leaving Mr. Banks nearly naked, and his musket uncharged. They soon returned, but without success; Mr. Banks thought proper to put up with the loss for the present, and a second time endeavour to sleep. But he had scarcely composed himself, before he heard some music, and perceived lights at a small distance from shore; this proved to be a concert, which they call Heiva. As soon as he approached the lights, he found the hut, where Mr. Cook, and three of his associates lay, and began to relate his melancholy tale; but, instead of receiving much comfort from them, he was told that they had shared the same fate, having lost their stockings and jackets. However, this did not prevent their hearing out the concert, which consisted of drums, flutes, and several voices, after which they retired to rest.

Some Indians from a neighbouring island, to which Captain Wallis had given the name of Duke of York's Island, informed them of more than twenty islands in the neighbourhood of Otaheite. They now began to make the necessary preparations for the transit of Venus, and Mr. Cook sent out two parties to make observations from different spots, that in case they failed at Otaheite, they might succeed elsewhere. On the 1st of June, the next Saturday, being the day of the transit, they sent the long-boat to Eimayo, having on-board Mr. Gore, Mr. Monkhouse, and Mr. Sporing, a friend of Mr. Banks; each furnished with necessary instruments by Mr. Green.

In a morning's excursion, Mr. Banks met several of the natives, who were itinerant musicians, and the place of the evening's rendezvous being known, all the English gentlemen went thither to partake of the diversion. Their instruments were flutes and drums, and a great number of the Indians were got together upon the occasion. The drummers sung to the music, and to the astonishment of Mr. Banks and the rest of his companions, they found that they were the chief subject of the minstrels' lays. These songs must, therefore, have been extemporaneous, the rewards whereof were such necessaries as they required. An iron coal-rake for the oven being stolen, in the night of the 14th,

with many other things, the captain judged it of consequence to put an end to these practices, by making it their common interest to prevent it. He had already given strict orders, that the sentinels should not fire upon them, even if detected in the fact. About twenty-seven of their double canoes were just come in with cargoes of fish, which the captain seized, and then gave notice, that unless the rake, and all the other things which had at different times been stolen, were returned, the vessels should be burnt. He had, indeed, no such design, as will appear by the event. The menace produced no other effect than the restitution of the rake, all the other things remaining in their possession; at length, the captain thought proper to give up the cargoes, as the innocent natives were in great distress for want of them; and at last, to prevent confusion, from the difficulty of ascertaining to whom the different lots belonged, he promised also to release the canoes.

On the 19th, while the canoes were detained by the captain, Oberea paid the gentlemen a visit; she came from Tootahah's palace, in a double canoe, and brought with her a hog, bread-fruit, and other presents, among which was a dog; but none of the things that had been stolen: these she pleaded had been taken away by her gallant Obadee, for which she had beaten him. She did not, however, seem to think her story deserved credit, but appeared at first much terrified, though she bore her fears with much fortitude, and was desirous of sleeping with her attendants in Mr. Banks's tent; but this being refused, she was obliged to pass the night in her canoe. The captain declined accepting of her presents, at which she seemed very sorrowful. The next morning she returned to the fort, and Captain Cook having altered his mind, accepted them. Two of her attendants were very earnest in getting themselves husbands, in which they succeeded by means of the surgeon and one of the lieutenants. Dogs are esteemed here more delicate than pork, as those bred to be eaten taste no animal food, but live entirely upon vegetables which they are taught to eat. Tupia undertook to kill and dress one, which he did, by making a hole in the ground and baking him. It was agreed by every one to be a very good dish.

They were visited on the 21st at the fort by many of the natives, and among the rest Oamo, a chief of several districts on the island, whom they had never before seen, who brought with him a hog. This chief was treated with great respect by the natives, and was accompanied by a boy and a young woman. The boy was carried upon a man's back, though very able to walk. Oberea and some other of the Indians went out of the fort to meet them, their heads and bodies being first uncovered as low as the waist. This was considered as a mark of respect not noticed before, but judged it was usually shewn to persons of distinguished rank among them. Oamo entered the tent;

but the young woman, who was about sixteen, could not be prevailed upon to accompany him, though she seemed to combat with her curiosity and inclination. Dr. Solander took the youth by the hand, and conducted him in; but the natives without, who had prevented the girl's entrance, soon found means to get him out again. The curiosity of the gentlemen being excited from these circumstances, they made inquiry who these strangers were; and were informed, that Oamo was Oberea's husband, but that by mutual consent they had been for a considerable time separated; and that the youth and girl were their offspring. The boy was named Terridiri, and was heir-apparent to the sovereignty of the island; and he was to espouse his sister as soon as he had attained a proper age. The present sovereign being a minor, called Outou, and son of Whappai; Whappai, Oamo, and Tootahah, were all brothers; Whappai was the senior, and Oamo the next; wherefore, Whappai having no child but Outou, Terridiri, son of Oamo, was heir to the sovereignty. To us it will appear singular, that a boy should reign during the life of his father; but in the island of Otaheite, a boy succeeds to his father's authority and title as soon as he is born; when a regent is elected, which office usually falls upon the father, till the boy becomes of age: at this time, however, the election had fallen upon his uncle Tootahah, on account of his warlike exploits. Oamo was very inquisitive with respect to the English, and by his questions he appeared a man of understanding and penetration.

On the 26th of June, the captain set out in the pinnace, accompanied by Mr. Banks, to circumnavigate the island. They sailed to the eastward, and in the forenoon went on shore, in a part of the island under the government of Ahio, a young chief, who had often visited them at the tents. They landed in a district which was governed by a chief, named Maraitata, the burying-place of men, and his father was called Pahairede, the stealer of boats. Notwithstanding their names were so ominous, they gave the party a very civil reception, furnished them with provisions, and sold them a large hog for a hatchet. Towards the southernmost part of the island they found a good harbour, formed by a reef; and the circumjacent country is remarkably fruitful. They landed again a little further to the east. Mathiabo, the chief, with whom they had no acquaintance, nor had ever seen before, soon came to them, and supplied them with cocoa-nuts and bread-fruit. They were now near the district named Papparra, governed by Oamo and Oberea, where they intended to spend the night. Mr. Banks and his company landed about an hour before it was dark, and found they were both set out to pay a visit at the fort. They, nevertheless, slept at the house of Oberea, which, though not large, was very neat; no inhabitant but her father was now in possession of it, who shewed them much civility. The way from her house to the

Morai was by the sea-side, and they observed, in all places as they passed along, a great number of human bones. Inquiry being made into the cause of this, they were informed, that, about four or five months before Captain Cook's arrival, the inhabitants of Tiarrabou, the peninsula to the south-east, made a descent here, and slew many of the people, whose bones were those that were seen upon the coast; that hereupon Oberea and Oamo, who then held the government for his son, had fled and taken refuge in the mountains; and that the victors destroyed all the houses and pillaged the country. Mr. Banks was also informed, that the turkey and goose which he had seen in the district of Mathiabo were among the booty; this afforded a reason for their being found where the Dolphin had little or no correspondence; and the jaw-bones being mentioned, which had been seen hanging in a house, he was informed that they had likewise been carried off as trophies; the jaw-bones of their enemies being considered by the natives of this island as great a mark of triumph as scalps are by the Indians of North America.

On the 1st of July they returned to the fort at Port Royal Harbour; having discovered the island, both peninsulas included, to be about 100 miles in circumference.

They now began to make preparations for their departure; but, before they set sail, they had another visit from Oamo, Oberea, and their son and daughter. The 10th, two marines being missing, an inquiry was made after them, when the Indians declared they did not propose returning, having each taken a wife. In consequence of which it was intimated to several of the chiefs who were in the fort with their women, among whom were Tubora Tumaida, Tomio, and Oberea, that they would not be suffered to quit it till the deserters were produced. Mr. Hicks was immediately dispatched in the long-boat, with several men, for them; at the same time Captain Cook told Tootahah, that it was incumbent on him to assist them with some of his people, and to give orders, in his name, that the men should be set at liberty, for that he should expect him to answer for the event. Tootahah immediately complied, and this party recovered the men without any opposition.

Tupia, a very friendly native, had been prime-minister of Oberea, when she was at the pinnacle of her authority; he was also the principal priest of the island, and likewise versed in navigation, and was thoroughly acquainted with the number, situation, inhabitants, and produce of the adjacent islands. He had often testified a desire to go with them; and on the 12th, in the morning, came on-board with a boy about twelve years of age, his servant, named Tayota.

The ship now was surrounded by numberless canoes, which contained the inferior natives. They weighed anchor about twelve. Tupia supported himself in this scene with a becoming

fortitude; tears flowed from his eyes, but the effort that he made to conceal them did him additional honour. He went with Mr. Banks to the mast-head, where he continued waving his hand to the canoes as long as they remained visible.

After leaving the island of Otaheite, on the 13th of July, they sailed with a gentle breeze, and were informed by Tupia, that four islands, which he called Huaheine, Ulietea, Otaha, and Bolabola, were at the distance of about one or two days' sail; and that hogs, fowls, and other refreshments, which had lately been scarce, were to be got there in abundance. They accordingly steered in search of these islands, and, on the 15th, discovered Huaheine. Several canoes immediately put off, and the King of Huaheine and his queen went on-board. Astonishment was testified by their majesties at every thing shewn them. The former, whose name was Oree, made a proposal to exchange names with Captain Cook, which was readily assented to. The custom of exchanging names is very prevalent in this island, and is considered as a mark of friendship.* They found the people here nearly similar to those of Otaheite in almost every circumstance, except, if Tupia might be credited, they were not addicted to thieving. The 19th, they carried some hatchets with them, with which they procured three very large hogs. As they proposed to sail in the afternoon, the king, accompanied by some others of the natives, came on-board to take his leave, when his majesty received from Captain Cook a small pewter plate, with an inscription. This Island is situated in the latitude of 16 deg. 43 min. south, longitude 150 deg. 52 min. west, distant from Otaheite about thirty leagues, and is about twenty miles in circumference.

From Huaheine they sailed to Ulietea. Next morning, by the direction of Tupia, they anchored in a bay formed by a reef, on the north side of the island. The captain, Mr. Banks, and some other gentlemen, now went on-shore, accompanied by Tupia; after which Captain Cook took possession of this and the adjacent islands in the name of the king of Great Britain.

On the 25th they were within a league or two of Otaha. This island appeared to be more barren than Ulietea, but the produce was much the same. The natives paid them the compliment they used towards their own kings, by uncovering their shoulders, and wrapping their clothes round their bodies, taking care no one should omit doing the same.

In the afternoon of the 31st, finding themselves to windward

* This custom is not peculiar to this island; it is equally common to the inhabitants of St. Johanna, who beg English names of the sailors who touch at the island, and of course, names of the greatest eminence are freely given by our tars. Thus when they come to visit the ships which remain off the island, it has happened that Charles James Fox has humbly solicited the washing of linen, and the Prince of Wales appeared as a green grocer, requesting a preference for his vegetables. Mr. Pitt has been detected stealing a blanket, while the Duke of Bedford had been known to beg for an old nail.

of some harbours on the west side of the Ulietea, they intended to put into one, in order to stop a leak which they had sprung in the powder-room, and to take in some additional ballast. On the 5th of August, some hogs and fowls, several pieces of cloth, many of them fifty or sixty yards in length, together with a quantity of plantains and cocoa-nuts, were sent to Captain Cook as presents, from the Earee rahie of the island of Bolabola, accompanied with a message, that he was then on the island, and intended waiting on the captain the next day. Next day he did not visit them agreeable to promise. After dinner, they set out to pay the king a visit on-shore, as he did not think proper to come on board. As this man was the Earee rahie of the Bolabola men, who had conquered this, and were the dread of all the neighbouring islands, they were disappointed instead of finding a vigorous, enterprising young chief, to see a poor, decrepid old man, half-blind, and sinking under the weight of age and infirmities. He received them without either that state or ceremony which they had hitherto met with among the other chiefs. They did not go on-shore at Bolabola; but, after giving the general name of the Society Islands to the island of Huaheine, Ulietea, Bolabola, Otaha, and Maurua, which lie between the latitude of 16 deg. 10 min. and 16 deg. 55 min. south, they pursued their course, standing southwardly for an island, to which they were directed by Tupia, at above a 100 leagues distance, which they discovered on Sunday the 13th, and were informed by him that it was called Ohitezoa.

On the 17th of October, Captain Cook gave the name of Cape Turn-Again to a head-land, in latitude 40 deg. 34 min. south, longitude 182 deg. 55 min. west. Before the Endeavour touched at New Zealand, which this was, it was not certainly known whether it was an island or part of the continent. On the 20th, anchored in a bay, about two leagues north of Gable End Foreland. Two chiefs, who came on-board, received presents of linen, which gave much satisfaction; but they did not hold spike-nails in such estimation as the inhabitants of some of the islands. Sailing to the northward, they fell in with a small island named East Island. When the Endeavour had doubled the Cape many villages appeared in view, and the adjacent land appeared cultivated. In the evening of the 30th, Lieutenant Hicks discovered a bay, to which his name was given. Next morning, about nine, several canoes came off from shore, with a number of armed men, who appeared to have hostile intentions. Before these had reached the ship, another canoe, larger than any that had yet been seen, full of armed Indians, came off, and made towards the Endeavour with great expedition. The captain now judging it expedient to prevent, if possible, their attacking him, ordered a gun to be fired over their heads. In searching for a convenient anchoring-place, the captain saw a village upon a high point, near the head of the bay, fortified

like some others already seen before. Having met with a convenient place near where the Endeavour lay, he returned to the ship, and sailed to that spot, where he cast anchor. Two fortified villages being descried, the captain, with Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, went to examine them: the smallest was romantically situated upon a rock, which was arched; this village did not consist of above five or six houses, fenced round. There was but one path, very narrow, that conducted to it. The gentlemen were invited by the inhabitants to pay them a visit, but not having time to spare, took another route, after making presents to the females. A body of men, women, and children, now approached the gentlemen, who proved to be the inhabitants of another town, which they proposed visiting. They gave many testimonials of their friendly dispositions, among others they uttered the word *Heromai*, which, according to Tupia's interpretation, implied peace, and appeared much satisfied, when informed the gentlemen intended visiting their habitations. Their town was named Wharretouwa; it is seated on a point of land over the sea, on the north-side of the bay; it was pale round, and defended by a double ditch. Within the ditch a stage is erected, for the purpose of defending the place in case of an attack: near this stage, which they called Porava, quantities of darts, and stones are deposited, to be in readiness to repel the assailants. There is another stage to command the path that leads to the town, and there are also some outworks. Upon the whole, the place seemed calculated to hold out a considerable time against an enemy armed with no other weapons than those of the inhabitants. It appeared, however deficient in water for a siege. They eat, instead of bread, fern-root, which was here in great plenty, with dried fish. Very little land is here cultivated, sweet potatoes and yams being the only vegetables they found. There are two rocks near the foot of this fortification, both separated from the main-land; they are very small, nevertheless they are not without dwelling-houses and little fortifications. They threw stones in their engagements with their hands, being destitute of a sling; and those and lances are their only missile weapons; they have besides the pattoo-pattoo, a club about five feet in length, and another shorter. They sailed from this bay, after taking possession of it in the name of the king of Great Britain, on the 15th of November.

On the the 26th, Captain Cook continued his course along-shore to the north. Two canoes came up, and some of the Indians came on-board, when they trafficked very fairly. Two larger canoes soon after followed, and, coming up, the people in them hailed the others, when they conferred together, and afterwards came alongside of the ship. The last two canoes were finely ornamented with carving, and the people, who appeared to be of higher rank, were armed with various weapons; they held in high estimation their pattoo-pattoos, made of stone and whale-

bone, and they had ribs of whale, with ornaments of dog's hair, which were very curious. These people were of a darker complexion than those to the southward, and their faces were stained blacker with what they call Amoco; and their thighs were striped with it, very small interstices of the flesh being left visible. Though they all used the black Amoco, they applied it to different parts, and in various forms. Most of them had the figure of volutes on their lips, and one woman in particular was curiously marked upon various parts of her body. These Indians seemed the superiors of the others, they were nevertheless not free from the vice of pilfering; for one having agreed to barter a weapon for a piece of cloth, he was no sooner in possession of the cloth than he paddled away without paying the price of it; but a musket being fired, he came back and returned the cloth. All the canoes then returned ashore.

For several days the vessel lost ground. On the 29th, having weathered Cape Bret, they bore away to leeward, and got into a large bay, where they anchored on the south-west side of several islands; after which the ship was surrounded by thirty-three large canoes, containing near three hundred Indians, all armed. Some were admitted on-board, and Captain Cook gave a piece of broad-cloth to one of the chiefs, and some small presents to the others. They traded peaceably for some time, being terrified at the fire-arms, the effect of which they were not unacquainted with; but, whilst the captain was at dinner, on a signal given by one of the chiefs, all the Indians quitted the ship, and attempted to tow away the buoy; a musket was now fired over them, but it produced no effect; a small shot was then fired, but did not reach them. A musket, loaded with ball, was, therefore, ordered to be fired, and Otegoowgoow (son of one of the chiefs) was wounded in the thigh, which induced them immediately to throw the buoy overboard. To complete their confusion, a round shot was fired, which reached the shore, and as soon as they landed they ran in search of it.

On the 5th they weighed anchor. The bay which they had left was called the Bay of Islands, on account of the number it contains. The captain named another large inlet Queen Charlotte's Sound, and took possession of it in the name and for the use of his majesty, when a bottle of wine was drank to the queen's health. On the 13th of March discovered a bay, which Captain Cook called Dusky-Bay; and it is remarkable for having five, high peaked rocks, lying off it, which look like the thumb and four fingers of a man's hand; whence it was denominated Point Five Fingers. It was now resolved to return by the East Indies, and with that view to steer for the east coast of New Holland, and then follow the direction of that coast to the northward. They sailed March 31, and taking their departure from an eastern point, called it Cape Farewell. The bay from which

they sailed was named Admiralty Bay, and the two capes thereof Cape Stephens and Cape Jackson, the names of the secretaries to the Admiralty at that time.

The men of this country are as large as the largest Europeans. Their complexion is brown, but little more so than that of the Spaniard. They are full of flesh, but not lazy and luxurious: and are stout and well shaped. The women's voices are singularly soft, which, as the dress of both sexes is similar, chiefly distinguishes them from the men. The latter are active in a high degree, their hair black, their teeth white and even. The features of both sexes are regular; they enjoy perfect health, and live to a very advanced age. They are of the gentlest dispositions, and treat each other with the utmost kindness: but they are perpetually at war, every little district being at enmity with all the rest. This is owing, most probably, to the want of food in sufficient quantities, at certain times. They have neither black cattle, sheep, hogs, nor goats; so that their chief food being fish, and that not at all times to be obtained, they are in danger of dying through hunger. They have a few, and but a very few, dogs; and when no fish is to be got, they have only vegetables, such as yams and potatoes, to feed on; and if, by any accident, these fail them, their situation must be deplorable. This will account for their shocking custom of eating the bodies which are slain in battle.

The canoes of this country are long and narrow. The large sort seem built for war, and will hold from thirty to 100 men. One of these, at Tolaga, measured nearly seventy feet in length, six in width, four in depth, sharp at the bottom, and consisted of three lengths, about two or three inches thick, and tied firmly together with strong plaiting: each side was formed of one entire plank, about twelve inches broad, and about an inch and a half thick, which were fitted to the bottom part with equal strength and ingenuity. Some few, at Mercury Bay and Opoorage, are made of one trunk of wood, hollowed by fire; but by far the greater part are built after the plan above described. The smaller boats, used in fishing, are adorned at head and stern with the figure of a man, the eyes of which are composed of the white shells of sea-ears, a tongue of enormous size is thrust out of the mouth, and the whole face is a picture of the most absolute deformity. The grander canoes, which are intended for war, are ornamented with open-work, and covered with fringes of black feathers, which give the whole an air of perfect elegance: the side-boards, which are carved in a rude manner, are embellished with tufts of white feathers. They are rowed with a kind of paddle, between five and six feet in length, the blade of which is a long oval, gradually decreasing till it reaches the handle; and the velocity with which they row with these paddles is surprising. Their sails are composed of a kind of mat or netting, extended between two upright poles, one of

which is fixed on each side. Two ropes, fastened to the top of of each pole, serve instead of sheets. The vessels are steered by two men, having each a paddle, and sitting in the stern; but they can only sail before the wind, in which direction they move with considerable swiftness.

Their tillage of the ground is excellent, owing to the necessity of cultivating or running the risk of starving. At Tegadoo their crops were just put into the ground and the surface of the field was as smooth as a garden, the roots were ranged in regular lines, and to every root there remained a hillock. A long, narrow stake, sharpened to an edge at the bottom, with a piece fixed across a little above it, for the convenience of driving it into the ground with the foot, supplies the place both of plough and spade. The soil being light, their work is not very laborious, and with this instrument alone they will turn up ground of six or seven acres in extent.

Their warlike weapons are spears, darts, battle-axes, and the *pattoo-pattoo*. The spear, which is pointed at each end, is about sixteen feet in length, and held in the middle. Whether they fight in boats or on-shore the battle is hand to hand; they trust chiefly in the *pattoo-pattoo*, which is fastened to the wrist, by means of a strong strap, that it may not be wrenched out of the hand. These are worn in the girdles of people of a superior rank, as a military ornament. They have a kind of staff of distinction, which is carried by the principal warriors: it is formed of a whale's rib, is quite white, and adorned with carvings, feathers, and the hair of their dogs; and they sometimes carried a stick six feet long, inlaid with shells, and otherwise adorned like the military staff. This honourable mark of distinction was commonly borne by the old men. When they came to attack the English, there was usually one or more thus distinguished in each canoe. It was their custom to stop at about fifty or sixty yards distance from the ship, when the chief, arising from his seat, and putting on a garment of dog's skin, used to direct them how to proceed. When they were too far from the ship to reach it either with stone or lance, they cried out, *Haromai, haromai, harre uta a patoo-pattoo oge*.—"Come to us, come on-shore, and we will kill you all with our *pattoo-pattoos*." During these menaces they approached the ship, till they came alongside, talking peaceably at intervals, and answering whatever questions were asked. Then again their threats were renewed, till, imagining the sailors were afraid of them, they began the war-song and dance—an engagement always followed, and sometimes continued till the firing of small shot repulsed them; at others, only till they had satiated their vengeance by throwing a few stones on-board the ship.

In the war-dance their motions are numerous, their limbs are distorted, and their faces are agitated. They accompany this dance with a song, which is sung in concert; every strain ending

with a loud and deep sigh. There is an activity and vigour in their dancing which is truly admirable; and their idea of keeping time in music is such, that sixty or eighty paddles will strike at once against the sides of their boats, and make only one report.

They fortify all their hippahs, or towns, of which there are several between the Bay of Plenty and Queen Charlotte's Sound. In these the inhabitants of those parts constantly reside; but near Tolaga, Tegadoo, Hawk's Bay, and Poverty Bay, there are no towns, only single houses at a considerable distance apart. On the sides of the hills were erected long stages, supplied with darts and stones, which were thought to be retreats in time of battle, and on which, from their elevated situation, they can combat the enemy with these weapons to great advantage. In these repositories they store their dried fish and fern-roots.

They sailed from Cape Farewell on the 31st of March, 1770. On the 19th, they discovered land four or five leagues distant; the southernmost part of which was called Point Hicks, in compliment to Mr. Hicks, the first lieutenant, who made the discovery. Intending to land, they took Tupia with them; and had no sooner come near the shore, than two men advanced as if to dispute their setting foot on-shore. They were each armed with different weapons. They called aloud, in a harsh tone, *warra warra wai*, the meaning of which Tupia did not understand. The captain threw them beads, nails, and other trifles, which they took up, and seemed to be delighted with. He then made signs that he wanted water, and used every possible means to convince them that no injury was intended. They made signs to the boat's crew to land, on which they put the boat in; but had no sooner done so, than the two Indians came again to oppose them. One of them then threw a stone at the boat, on which the captain ordered a musket loaded with small shot to be fired, which, wounding the eldest on the legs, he retired hastily to one of their houses which stood at some little distance. The people in the boats landed, imagining that the wound which this man had received would put an end to the contest; in this, however, they were mistaken, for he immediately returned, with a kind of shield, of an oval figure, painted white in the middle, with two holes in it to see through. They advanced with great intrepidity, and both discharged their lances at the boat's crew, but did not wound any one. Another musket was now fired, on which they threw another lance, and then took to their heels. The crew now went up to the huts, in one of which they found children, who had secreted themselves behind some bark. They looked at them, but without their knowing they had been seen; and, having thrown some pieces of cloth, ribands, beads, and other things into the hut, took several of their lances, and re-embarked in the boat. The name of Botany Bay was given to this place, from the large number of plants collected by Messrs. Banks and Solander.*

* On the discovery of Botany Bay, it suggested itself as a good place for founding a

They sailed hence the 6th of May, 1770; at noon were off a harbour which was called Port Jackson, and in the evening near a bay, to which they gave the name of Broken Bay. On the 10th passed a low rocky point, which was named Point Stephens, near which was an inlet, denominated Port Stephens.

Coasting this shore till the 10th of June, an accident had nearly terminated their voyage fatally. The ship struck on a rock in the night, at some distance from the land, and made so much water as to threaten to sink every moment, which was only prevented by great exertions and the favour of providence, for nothing else could have saved them. After some little examination, they found a small harbour to look at the ship's bottom, and there found, that the only thing which prevented her from sinking, was a large piece of a rock, broken off and sticking in the largest hole, which impeded the entrance of the water. Here they procured some refreshments, landed the sick and stores, made a variety of excursions by land and water to the neighbouring places, and, for the first time, saw the animal now known as the kangaroo.

Three Indians visited Tupia's tent on the 12th of July, and after remaining some time, one of them went for two others whom he introduced by name. Some fish was offered, but they seemed not much to regard it, and, after eating a little, gave the remainder to Mr. Banks's dog. Some ribands given them, to which medals were suspended round their necks, were so changed by smoke that it was difficult to judge what colour they had been; and the smoke had made their skins look darker than their natural colour; from whence it was thought that they slept close to their fires, as a preventive against the sting of the musquitoes. Both the strangers had bones through their noses, and a piece of bark tied over the forehead; and one had an ornament of strings round his arm, and an elegant necklace made of shells. Their canoe was about ten feet long, and calculated to hold four persons, and when in shallow water they moved it by means of poles. Their lances had only a single point, and some of them were barbed with fish-bones. On the 14th, Mr. Gore shot one of the mouse-coloured animals above-mentioned. It chanced to be a young one, weighing not more than thirty-eight pounds; but when full grown, they are as large as a sheep. The skin of this beast is covered with short fur, and is of a dark mouse-colour: the head and ears are somewhat like those of a hare: this animal was dressed for dinner, and proved fine eating. The ship's crew fed on turtle almost every day, which were finer than those eaten in England, owing to their being killed before their natural fat was wasted, and their juices changed.

They sailed hence on the 13th of August, 1770, and got through

colony with convicts, and it was determined to send some out. The first convicts that sailed, arrived on the 20th of January, 1788, with Governor Phillip, who laid the foundation of a settlement, which, now including Van Dieman's Land, contains an European population of 42,000 persons.---EDITOR.

vigour in
of keep-
will strike
ne report.
there are
e's Sound.
; but near
ere are no
part. On
plied with
in time of
they can
ntage. In
ots.
arch, 1770.
es distant ;
ks, in com-
discovery.
d no sooner
ispute their
fferent wea-
rra wai, the
ptain threw
and seemed
anted water,
o injury was
d, on which
han the two
hen threw a
asket loaded
on the legs,
t some little
ng that the
end to the
he immedi-
are, painted
ugh. They
their lances
ther musket
d then took
e, in one of
ves behind
ir knowing
es of cloth,
several of
e of Botany
r of plants

for founding a

one of the channels in the reef; happy to be once more in an open sea, after having been surrounded by dreadful shoals and rocks for nearly three months, during all which run they had been obliged to keep sounding without the intermission of a single minute; a circumstance which, it is supposed, never happened to any ship but the Endeavour. On the 14th, steered a westerly course to get sight of the land, that a passage between that land and New Guinea might not be missed, if there was any such passage. This day the boats went out to fish, and met with great success, particularly in catching cockles, some of which were of such an amazing size, as to require the strength of two men to move them.

Previous to their leaving, Captain Cook displayed the English colours, and took possession of all the eastern coast of the country, from the 38th degree of south latitude to the present spot, by the name of New South Wales, for his sovereign the king of Great Britain; upon which three volleys of small arms were fired, and answered by an equal number from the Endeavour. They were now at the northern extremity of New Holland, and had the satisfaction of viewing the open sea to the westward. The north-east entrance of the passage is formed by the main land of New Holland, and by a number of islands, which took the name of the Prince of Wales's Islands, and which Captain Cook imagines may reach to New Guinea. To the passage sailed through Captain Cook gave the name of Endeavour Straits.

New South Wales is a much larger country than any hitherto known, not deemed a continent, being larger than all Europe; which was proved by the Endeavour having coasted more than two thousand miles, even if her tract was reduced to a straight line. It did not appear much inhabited: not above thirty persons being ever seen together but once, when those of both sexes and all ages got together on a rock off Botany Bay to view the ship. The men are well made, of the middle size, and active in a high degree; but their voices are soft even to effeminacy. Their colour is chocolate, but so covered with dirt, as to look almost as black as negroes. The women were seen only at a distance, as the men constantly left them behind. The chief ornament of these people is the bone thrust through the nose, which the sailors whimsically termed their sprit-sail-yard: but, besides this, they wore necklaces formed of shells, a small cord tied twice or thrice round the arm, between the elbow and the shoulder, and a string of plaited human hair round the waist. Their huts are built with small rods, the two ends of which were fixed into the ground, so as to form the figure of an oven, and covered with pieces of bark and palm-leaves. The door, which is only high enough to sit upright in, is opposite to the fire-place; they sleep with their heels turned up towards their heads, and even in this posture the hut will not hold more than four people. They feed on the kangaroo, on several kinds of birds, on yams, and various kinds

of fruit; but the principal article of subsistence is fish. Their method of producing fire is singular; having wrought one end of a stick into an obtuse point, they place this point upon a piece of dry wood, and turning the upright stick very fast backward and forward between their hands, the fire is soon produced.

They make use of spears or lances; but these are very differently constructed: those seen in the southern parts of the country had four prongs, pointed with bone, and barbed; those in the northern parts have only one point: the shafts of different lengths, from eight to fourteen feet, are made of the stalk of a plant not unlike a bulrush, and consists of several joints let into each other, and tied together. The shields they use are made of the bark of trees, of about eighteen inches broad and three feet long. Many trees were seen from whence the bark had been taken, and others on which the shields were cut out, but not taken away. The canoes are formed by hollowing out the trunk of a tree; and it was conjectured, that this operation must have been performed by fire, as they did not appear to have any instrument proper for the purpose. The canoes are in length about fourteen feet, and so narrow that they would be frequently overset, but are provided with outriggers. The natives row them with paddles, using both hands in that employment.

The ships now held a northward course, within sight of land, till the 3d of September. On the 6th, passed two small islands; on the 9th, they saw what had the appearance of land, and the next morning were convinced it was Timor Laoet. On the 16th, they had sight of the little island called Rotte; and the same day saw the island of Savu, at a distance to the southward of Timor, where, having obtained necessary refreshments, Captain Cook prepared again for sailing.

Savu is situated in 10 deg. 35 min. south latitude, and 237 deg. 30 min. west longitude, and has hitherto been very little known, or very imperfectly described. Its length is between twenty and thirty miles. The harbour in which the ship lay was called Seba, from a district of the country so denominated; and there are two other bays on different parts of the island.

The natives are rather below the middle stature, their hair black and straight, and persons of all ranks, as well those that are exposed to the weather as those that are not, having one general complexion, which is dark brown. The men are well-formed and sprightly, and their features differ much from each other: the women, on the contrary, have all one set of features, and are very short and broad built. The dress of the former consists of two pieces of cotton cloth, one of which is bound round the middle, and the lower edge being drawn pretty tight between the legs, the upper edge is left loose, so as to form a kind of pocket, in which they carry knives and other things: the other piece being passed under the former, on the back of the wearer, the ends of it are carried over the shoulders, and tucked into the pocket before.

The women draw the upper edge of the piece round the waist tight, while the lower, dropping to the knees, makes a kind of petticoat: the other piece of cloth is fastened across the breast, and under the arms. This cloth, which is manufactured by the natives, is dyed blue while in the yarn.

The island consists of five divisions, each of which has a raja, or chief governor, of its own. These are called Timo, Massara, Regeeva, Laai, and Seba. It was on this last division that our English adventurers went on-shore, the raja of which was between thirty and forty years of age, and remarkable for his corpulency. He governs his people with the most absolute authority, but takes on him very little of the parade or pomp of royalty. The inhabitants are divided into five ranks; the rajas, the land-owners, manufacturers, labourers, and slaves; the land-owners are respected in proportion to the extent of their lands, and the number of their slaves, which last are bought and sold with the estates to which they belong; but when a slave is bought separately, a fat hog is the price of the purchase. Though a man may sell his slave in this manner, or convey him with his lands, yet his power over him extends no farther, for he must not even strike him without the raja's permission. A few years ago the Dutch East-India Company made an agreement with the several rajas of the island, by which it was covenanted, that a quantity of rice, maize, and calevances should be annually furnished to the Dutch, who, in return, supply the rajas with arrack, cutlery-wares, linen, silk, and some other things. Small vessels, each of which is manned by ten Indians, are sent from Timor, to bring away the maize and calevances, and a ship, which brings the articles which are furnished by the Dutch, receives the rice on-board once a-year; and there being three bays on the coast, this vessel anchors in each of them in its turn.

The Endeavour sailed the 21st of September, 1770, and bent her course westward. In the afternoon of this day a little flat island was discovered in 10 deg. 47 min. south latitude, and 238 deg. 28 min. west longitude, which has not been laid down in any of the charts hitherto published. They made considerable way, till at length, by the assistance of the sea-breezes, they came to an anchor in the road of Batavia. At this place they found a number of large Dutch vessels, the Harcourt East-Indiaman from England, which had lost her passage to China, and two ships belonging to the private trade of our India Company.

Tupia had been till this time very dangerously ill; Mr. Banks now sent for him to his house, in the hope that he might recover his health. While in the ship, and even after he was put into the boat, he was indisposed and low-spirited in the utmost degree; but the moment he came into the town, his whole frame appeared re-animated. The houses, the carriages, the people, and many other objects, were totally new to him; and astonishment took possession of his feature: at sights so wonderful: but if Tupia was

astonished at the scene, his boy, Tayota, was perfectly enraptured, dancing along the street in an ecstasy of joy, and examining the several objects as they presented themselves with the most earnest inquisitiveness and curiosity. Nothing struck Tupia so much as the variety of dresses worn by the inhabitants of Batavia: he inquired the reason, and being informed that the people were of a variety of nations, and that all were dressed according to the mode of their own country, he requested permission to follow the fashion; this request being readily complied with, a person was dispatched to the ship for some South Sea cloth, with which he soon clothed himself in the dress of the inhabitants of Otaheite.

After little more than a week, the ill effects of the climate began to be severely felt. Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks were indisposed with fevers; Mr. Banks's two servants were exceedingly ill; the Indian boy, Tayota, had an inflammation on his lungs; and Tupia was so bad, that his life was despaired of. Tayota paid the debt of nature on the 9th of this month: and poor Tupia fell a victim to the ravages of his disorder, and to his grief for the deceased Tayota. When the latter was first seized with the fatal disorder, he seemed sensible of his approaching end, and frequently said to those about him, *Tyau mate*, "My friends, I am dying:" he was very tractable, and took any medicines that were offered to him; they were both buried in the island of Edam. Since the arrival of the ship, every person belonging to her had been ill, except the sail-maker, who was more than seventy years old; yet this man got drunk every day while they remained there. The Endeavour buried seven of her people—Tupia and his boy, three of the sailors, the servant of Mr. Green, the astronomer, and the surgeon; and, at the time of the vessel's sailing, forty of the crew were sick, and the rest so enfeebled by their late illness as to be scarcely able to do their duty.

The town of Batavia is situated in 6 deg. 10 min. south latitude, and 106 deg. 50 min. east longitude. It is built on the bank of a large bay, something more than twenty miles from the Strait of Sunda, on the north side of the island of Java, in low, boggy ground. Several small rivers, which rise forty miles up the country, in the mountains of B'aeuen Berg, discharge themselves into the sea at this place, having first intersected the town in different directions. There are wide canals of nearly stagnated water in almost every street, and as the banks of these canals are planted with rows of trees, the effect is very agreeable; but they combine to render the air pestilential.

The method of building their houses seems to have been taught them by the climate. On the ground-floor there is no room but a large hall, a corner of which is parted off for the transaction of business; the hall has two doors, which are commonly left open, and are opposite each other, so that the air passes freely through the room, in the middle of which there is a court, which at once

increases the draft of air and affords light to the hall; the stairs, which are at one corner, lead to large and lofty apartments above. The female slaves are not permitted to sit in any place, but in the alcove formed by the court; and this is the usual dining-place of the family.

The environs of the town have a very pleasing appearance, and would, in almost any other country, be an enviable situation. Gardens and houses occupy the country for several miles. For the space of more than thirty miles around the land is totally flat, except in two places, on one of which the governor's country-seat is built, and on the other they hold a large market; but neither of these places are higher than ten yards from the level of the plain. At forty miles from the town, the land rises into hills, and the air is purified in a great degree; to this distance invalids are sent by their physicians, when every other prospect of recovery has failed, and the experiment succeeds in almost every instance; but they no sooner return to town, than their former disorders recur.

The fruits of this country are near forty in number, and of each of these there are several species. Pine apples grow in such abundance that they may be purchased, at the first hand, for the value of an English farthing. The Batavians strew an immense number of flowers about their houses, and are almost always burning some aromatic woods and gums. The sweet-scented flowers of this country are very numerous, many of which are totally unknown in England.

The Island of Java produces goats, sheep, hogs, buffaloes, and horses. The quantity of fish taken is astonishingly great, and all the kinds are fine food, except a few which are very scarce; yet such is the pride of the inhabitants, that the rarer sorts are sold at high rates, while those that are plentiful are sold for a mere trifle, nor are they eaten but by the slaves. There is abundance of poultry, as excellent of their kinds as those of England: turkies are immoderately dear, and pigeons not much less so; but geese, ducks, and fine large fowls are altogether as cheap.

On the 27th of December, 1770, the Endeavour left the coast of Batavia, and, as many of the ship's crew, who had been very ill while at Batavia, had now become much worse, the vessel was brought to an anchor in the afternoon of the 5th near Prince's Island. A stay of ten days occurred here, during which they purchased vegetables of various kinds, fowls, deer, turtle; the anchor was weighed and the vessel once more put to sea.

After a passage in which they lost twenty-three more officers and men, the ship was brought to an anchor off the Cape of Good Hope, on the 15th of March, 1771. The captain repaired instantly to the governor, who said, that such refreshments as the country supplied should be cheerfully granted him; on which a house was hired for the sick, who were to have board and lodging for two shillings a-day each person.

all; the stairs,
 rtments above.
 lace, but in the
 dining-place of

appearance, and
 able situation.
 al miles. For
 land is totally
 vernor's coun-
 market; but
 ards from the
 the land rises
 o this distance
 her prospect of
 almost every
 n their former

r, and of each
 grow in such
 and, for the
 y an immense
 almost always
 sweet-scented
 of which are

buffaloes, and
 gely great, and
 very scarce;
 r other sorts are
 re sold for a
 s. There is
 as those of
 ns not much
 ther as a heap.
 left the road
 had been very
 e vessel was
 ear Prince's
 which they
 , turtle; the
 sea.

more officers
 the Cape of
 ain repaired
 nents as the
 on which a
 board and

Cape Town consists of nearly a thousand brick-houses, the
 outsides of which being generally plastered they have a very
 pleasing appearance. There is a canal in the main street, with
 two rows of oak-trees on its borders, which are in a more flourish-
 ing state than the other trees of this country, and the streets, which
 cross each other at right angles, are very spacious and handsome.
 The inhabitants are chiefly Dutch, or of Dutch extraction: and
 the women are pleasing in a high degree. The air is so pure and
 salubrious, that a sick person, who goes thither from Europe,
 often recovers his health in a little time; but those who bring
 diseases from the East Indies have not an equal chance of
 recovery. Although the country is naturally so barren as scarcely
 to produce any thing, yet the industry of its inhabitants has so
 effectually combated the hand of nature, that there are few places
 where the necessaries of life are more plentiful; and even what
 are generally deemed luxuries are by no means scarce. The
 Constantia wine is known to be excellent, but the genuine sort is
 made only at one particular vineyard, a few miles from the town.
 The gardens produce many sorts of European and Indian fruits,
 and almost all the common kind of vegetables. The cultivated
 fields yield wheat and barley of equal quality with that of England.
 The sheep have tails of a very extraordinary size, many of which
 weigh upwards of a dozen pounds; the meat of this animal, as
 well as of the ox, is very fine food: the wool of the sheep is
 rather of the hairy kind, and the horns of the black cattle spread
 much wider than those of England, while the beast himself is
 handsomer and lighter made. The cheese has a very indifferent
 flavour, but the butter is extremely good. The pork is nearly the
 same as that of Europe, and there are abundance of goats, but
 the inhabitants do not eat their flesh. The country abounds in
 hares, altogether like those of England; there are several species
 of the antelope, plenty of bustards, and two kinds of quails.
 The Dutch company have a garden at the extremity of the high
 street, which is more than half-a-mile in length, in the centre walk
 of which are a number of fine oak trees. A small part of this
 garden is covered with botanical plants, but all the rest is allotted
 to the production of the common vegetables for the kitchen: the
 whole is divided into squares by the form of its walks, and each
 square is fenced in by oaks cut into small hedges. There is a
 menagerie of beasts and birds, many of them known in Europe,
 at the upper end of this garden; and among the rest is the kadou,
 a beast not less than a horse, which has those curious spiral horns
 that have frequently found a place in the cabinets of the curious.
 The native inhabitants of the country are usually dressed in a
 sheep-skin thrown across the shoulders, and a little pouch before,
 to which is fixed a kind of belt, ornamented with bits of copper
 and beads: round the waists of the women is a broad piece of
 leather, and rings of the same round their ancles; a few wear a
 kind of shoe, made of the bark of a tree, but the major part go

barefooted: both sexes adorn themselves with bracelets and necklaces made of beads. None of these people reside at a less distance than four days' journey from Cape Town, except a number of the poorer sort, who look after the cattle belonging to the Dutch farmers, and are employed in various other menial offices. Most of the Hottentots speak the Dutch language, without any thing remarkable in their manner; yet, when they converse in their native language, they frequently stop, and make a clucking with their tongues, which has a most singular and ridiculous effect to the ears of a stranger; and, exclusive of this clucking, their language itself is scarcely sounded articulately. They are modest to the utmost degree, and though fond of singing and dancing, can hardly be prevailed on to divert themselves with their favourite amusements before strangers: both their singing and dancing are alternately quick and slow in the utmost extreme. Some understand the art of smelting and preparing copper, with which they make plates, and wear them on their foreheads as an article of finery. They are also capable of making knives, superior to those they can purchase of the Dutch, from whom they procure the iron.

They are so dexterous in throwing stones, that they will hit a mark not larger than a crown-piece, at the distance of a hundred yards. They are likewise expert in the use of arrows, and of a lance called an assagay, the points of which they poison, sometimes with the venom of a serpent, and sometimes with the juice of particular herbs, so that a wound received from either is almost always mortal.

Quitting the Cape they came to an anchor off the Island of St. Helena, May 1st, and on the 4th, the Endeavour sailed from the road of St. Helena, together with the Portland man of war and several sail of Indiamen.

On the 23rd, lost sight of all the ships in company, and in the afternoon of the same day, Mr. Hicks, the first lieutenant, died of a consumption, with which he had been afflicted during the whole voyage. No occurrence worth recording happened from this time till the ship came to anchor in the Downs, on the 12th of June following, when Captain Cook and his companions landed.

COOK'S SECOND VOYAGE,

1772—1775.

THE talents of Captain Cook, and the great skill and perseverance displayed in his first voyage, pointed him out as the fittest person to prosecute maritime discovery, and he was soon called upon to conduct a new expedition, to explore the Southern Hemisphere, which had hitherto been considered by the ablest geographers as containing another continent. In order to determine this matter, it was resolved again to send Captain Cook out; but the object of his voyage was not limited to settling this question, but to extend the geography of the globe as much as possible.

Two ships were fitted out; and, that nothing might be omitted which could facilitate the enterprise, they were furnished with every requisite which a liberal attention to the health and comfort of the crews could devise. These vessels were built on a particular construction, and were purchased of Captain Hammond, of Hull. The largest was named the *Resolution*, of four hundred and sixty-two tons burthen, Captain James Cook, commander; the other was named the *Adventure*, of three hundred and sixty-six tons, commanded by Captain Tobias Furneaux, who had sailed with Captain Wallis, and had been promoted from the rank of lieutenant.

The *Resolution* had one hundred and twelve persons on board, officers included, and the *Adventure* eighty-one. Mr. Forster and his son, both eminent naturalists, and Mr. Wales, afterwards Mathematical Master of Christ's Hospital, and Mr. Hodges, an excellent landscape painter, accompanied them.

On the 13th of July, 1772, both the ships sailed from Plymouth Sound; and, on the evening of the 29th, anchored in Funchal Road, in the Island of Madeira. At the Captain's and Mr. Forster's landing, they were received by a gentleman from the Vice-Consul, who conducted them to the house of Mr. Loughnans, a very considerable English merchant in the place. This gentleman not only obtained leave for Mr. Forster to search the island for plants, but procured them every thing they wanted, and insisted on their accommodating themselves at his house during their stay.

Having got on board a supply of water, wine, and other necessaries, they left Madeira on the first of August, and steered southward. Captain Cook now made three punchcons of beer, of the inspissated juice of malt. The proportion was about ten of water to one of juice. They stopped at St. Jago for a supply of water on the 10th, and having completed this business, and got on-board a supply of refreshments, such as hogs, goats, fowls, and fruit, they put to sea, and proceeded on their voyage.

On the 9th, one of the carpenter's mates fell overboard, and was drowned. He was over the side, setting on one of the scuttles; whence, it was supposed, he had fallen; for he was not seen till the very instant he sunk under the ship's stern, when all endeavours to save him were too late. This loss was sensibly felt during the voyage, as he was both a sober man and a good workman.

At two in the afternoon, on the 29th of October, they made the land of the Cape of Good Hope, without a single man being sick. They had no sooner anchored in Table Bay, than they were visited by the captain of the port and Mr. Brandt. This last gentleman brought off such things as could not fail of being acceptable to persons coming from sea. The master attendant also visited them, according to custom, to take an account of the ships, to inquire into the health of the crews; and, in particular, if the small-pox was on board, a thing they dread above all others at the Cape.

It was the 18th of November before they had got ready to put to sea. During this stay the crews of both ships were served every day with fresh beef or mutton, new-baked bread, and as much greens as they could eat. The ships were caulked and painted, and in every respect put in as good a condition as when they left England.

Mr. Forster, whose whole time was taken up in the pursuit of natural history and botany, met with a Swedish gentleman, one Mr. Sparrman, who had studied under Dr. Linnæus. He, by Captain Cook's consent, embarked as an assistant to Mr. Forster, who bore his expenses on board, and allowed him a yearly stipend besides.

In the afternoon of the 22nd they weighed, and on the 25th had abundance of albatross about them; several of which were caught with hook and line, and were very well relished by many of the people, notwithstanding they were at that time served with fresh mutton. Judging that they should soon come into cold weather, the Captain ordered the men to be supplied with the dresses which had been furnished by the Admiralty.

On the 10th of December, the weather being hazy, they did not see an island for which they were steering directly, till they were less than a mile from it. It appeared to be about fifty feet high, and half a mile in circuit. It was flat at the top, and

its sides rose in a perpendicular direction, against which the sea broke exceedingly high. They were then in the latitude of 50 deg. 40 min. south, and long. 2 deg. east of the Cape of Good Hope.

On the 17th, they saw many whales, one seal, penguins, and some white birds. They found the skirts of the loose ice to be more broken than usual; and it extended some distance beyond the main field, insomuch that they sailed amongst it the most part of the day; and the high ice islands without were innumerable. The weather was sensibly colder than the thermometer seemed to point out, insomuch that the whole crew complained. In order to enable them to support this the better, the sleeves of their jackets were lengthened with baize, and a cap was made for each man of the same stuff, together with canvass, which proved of great service to them.

After proceeding some days through fields and islands of ice, on the 29th they came to a resolution, to run as far west as the meridian of Cape Circumcision, provided they met with no impediment, as the distance was not more than eighty leagues, the wind favourable, and the sea seemed to be pretty clear. At one o'clock they steered for an island of ice, thinking, if there were any loose ice round it, to take some on board, and convert it into fresh water. At four they brought to close under the lee of the island, where they did not find what they wanted, but saw upon it eighty-six penguins. This piece of ice was about half a mile in circuit, and one hundred feet high and upwards; for they lay for some minutes, with every sail becalmed under it.

On the 2nd of January, 1773, the weather was so clear that they might have seen land at fourteen or fifteen leagues distance.— On the 5th, however, they had much snow and sleet, which, as usual, froze on the rigging as it fell; so that every rope was covered with the finest transparent ice. On the 9th they brought to, and took up as much ice as yielded fifteen tons of good fresh water. The pieces taken up were hard, and solid as a rock; some of them so large, that they were obliged to break them with pickaxes before they could be taken into the boats.

On the 8th, of February, having lost sight of the Adventure, they suspected a separation had taken place, though they were at a loss to tell how it happened. Captain Furneaux had been ordered by Captain Cook, in case he was separated, to cruize three days in the place where he last saw him; he, therefore, continued making short boards, and firing half-hour guns, till the 9th in the afternoon, when the weather having cleared up, they could see several leagues round them, and found that the Adventure was not within the limits of their horizon. At this time they were about two or three leagues to the eastward of the situation they were in when they last saw her. Next day they saw nothing of her, notwithstanding the weather was pretty clear, and Captain Cook had kept firing guns, and burning false

fires, all night. He, therefore, gave over looking for her, made sail, and steered S. E. with a fresh gale, accompanied with a high sea.

On the 17th, at nine in the morning, they bore down to an island of ice, which they reached by noon. It was full half a mile in circuit, and two hundred feet high at least, though very little loose ice about it. But while they were considering whether or no they should hoist out boats to take some up, a great quantity broke from the island. Of this detached part they made a shift to get on-board about nine or ten tons before eight o'clock, when they hoisted in the boats, and made sail to the east, inclining to the south.

On the 23rd they tacked, and spent the night, which was exceedingly stormy, thick, and hazy, with sleet and snow, in making short boards. Surrounded on every side with danger, they wished for day-light. This, when it came, served only to increase their apprehensions, by exhibiting to view those huge mountains of ice which, in the night, they had passed without seeing.

On the 7th of March the weather became fair, the sky cleared up, and the night was remarkably pleasant, as well as the morning of the next day, which, for the brightness of the sky, the serenity and mildness of the weather, gave place to none they had seen since they had left the Cape of Good Hope. It was such as is little known in this sea; and, to make it still more agreeable, they had not one island of ice in sight. On the 17th Captain Cook came to a resolution to quit the high southern latitudes, and to proceed to New Zealand, to look for the Adventure, and to refresh his people. At ten o'clock of the 25th, the land of New Zealand was seen from the mast-head, and at noon from the deck, extending from north-east by east to east, distant ten leagues. On the 26th they steered to, and entered, Dusky Bay, about noon. In this bay they were all strangers; in Captain Cook's former voyage he only discovered and named it. After running about two leagues up the bay, and passing several of the isles which lay in it, they brought to, and hoisted out two boats, one of which was sent away, with an officer, round a point on the larboard hand, to look for anchorage. This he found, and signified the same by signal. They then followed with the ship, and anchored in fifty fathoms' water, so near the shore as to reach it with a hawser. They had now been one hundred and seventeen days at sea; in which time they sailed three thousand six hundred and sixty leagues, without having once sight of land.

On the 27th, at nine o'clock in the morning, got under sail with a light breeze at south-west, and working over to Pickersgill Harbour, entered in by a channel scarcely twice the width of the ship; and in a small creek moored head and stern, so near the shore as to reach it with a brow or stage, which nature had in a manner prepared in a large tree, whose end or top reached

r her, made
ied with a

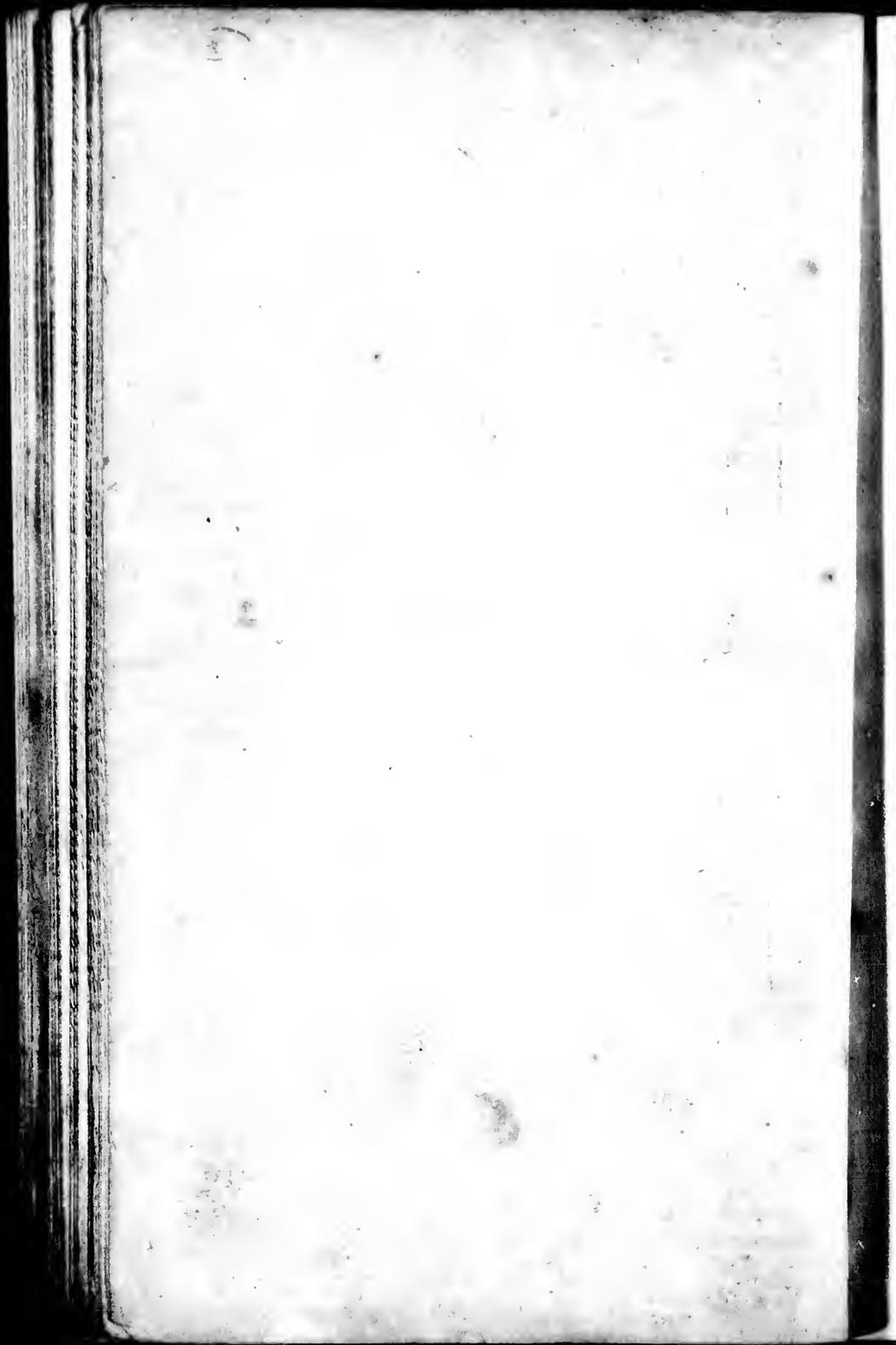
down to an
half a mile
n very little
whether or
eat quantity
made a shift
clock, when
inclining to

ich was ex-
y, in making
anger, they
ed only to
those huge
sed without

sky cleared
s the morn-
he sky, the
o none they
oe. It was
it still more
On the 17th
gh southern
the Adver-
ne 25th, the
and at noon
east, distant
Dusky Bay,
in Captain
d it. After
g several of
ed out two
and a point
s he found,
ed with the
e shore as
undred and
e thousand
ght of land.
under sail
o Pickers-
e width of
n, so near
ature had
p reached



page 30.



a
v
i
g
a
c
t
n
i
s
t
l
a
a
l
s
T
t
t
f
v
h
A

the gunwale. In the evening they had a short interview with three of the natives, one man and two women. They were the first that discovered themselves on the north-east point of Indian Island, named so on this occasion; the man hallooed to them.— He stood, with his club in his hand, upon the point of a rock, and behind, at the skirts of the wood, stood the two women, with each a spear. The man could not help discovering great signs of fear when they approached the rock with the boat. He, however, stood firm; nor did he move to take up some things they threw him ashore. At length Captain Cook landed, went up and embraced him, and presented him with such articles as at once dissipated his fears. Presently after they were joined by the two women, the other gentlemen, and some of the seamen. After this they spent about half-an-hour in chit-chat, little understood on either side, in which the youngest of the two women bore by far the greatest share. This occasioned one of the seamen to say, that women did not want tongue in any part of the world. Having some geese left out of those brought from the Cape of Good Hope, they went with them next morning to Goose Cove (named so on this account.) They chose this place, for here are no inhabitants to disturb them; and, secondly, here being the most food, they will breed, and may in time spread over the whole country, and fully answer the intention in leaving them.

Their first care after the ship was moored, was to send a boat and people fishing, in which they were very successful, returning with fish sufficient for all hands for supper; and in a few hours in the morning caught as many as served for dinner. This gave them certain hopes of being plentifully supplied with this article. Nor did the shores and woods appear less destitute of wild fowl; so that they hoped to enjoy, with ease, what, in their situation, might be called the luxuries of life. This determined them to stay some time in this bay, in order to examine it thoroughly; as no one had even landed before on any of the southern parts of this country. About one hundred yards from the stern was a fine stream of fresh water. Thus situated, they began to clear places in the woods, in order to set up the astronomers' observatory, the forge, and tents for the different artificers. They also began to brew beer, from the branches or leaves of a tree, which much resembles the American black spruce.

On the 28th a canoe appeared, and in it seven or eight people. They remained looking at the ship for some time, and then returned; though signs of friendship were made. After dinner the captain took two boats, and went in search of them. They found a canoe hauled upon the shore, near to two small huts, where were several fire-places, some fishing-nets, a few fish lying on the shore, and some in the canoe, but saw no people. After a short stay, and leaving in the canoe some medals,

looking-glasses, beads, &c. they embarked, and rowed to the head of the cove, where they found nothing remarkable.

The country is exceedingly mountainous, not only about Dusky Bay, but through all the southern part of this western coast of Tavai Poenamoo. But the land bordering on the sea-coast, and all the islands, are thickly clothed with wood, almost down to the water's edge. The trees are of various kinds, such as are common to other parts of this country, and are fit for the ship-wright, house-carpenter, cabinet-maker, and many other uses. Except in the River Thames, there is not finer timber in all New Zealand. What Dusky Bay most abounds with is fish; a boat with six or eight men, with hooks and lines, caught daily sufficient to serve the whole ship's company. Of this article the variety is almost equal to the plenty.

The shell-fish are muscles, cockles, scallops, cray-fish, and many other sorts. The only amphibious animals are seals: these are to be found in great numbers about this bay, on the small rocks and isles near the sea-coast.

Next morning they made the natives another visit, accompanied by Mr. Forster and Mr. Hodges, carrying with them various articles, which were received with a great deal of indifference, except hatchets and spike nails. The interview was at the same place as last night; and now they saw the whole family. It consisted of the man, his two wives (as was supposed), the young woman before mentioned, only about fourteen years old, and three small children, the youngest of which was at the breast. They conducted them to their habitation, which was but a little way within the skirts of the wood, and consisted of two mean huts made of the bark of trees. Their canoe, which was a small, double one, just large enough to transport the whole family from place to place, lay in a small creek near the huts. When they took leave, the chief presented Captain Cook with a piece of cloth or garment of their own manufacturing, and some other trifles.

On the 11th of April several of the natives came and sat down on the shore, abreast of the ship. The captain now caused the bagpipes and fife to play, and the drum to beat. The two first they did not regard, but the latter excited some little attention; nothing, however, could induce them to come on board; although they entered with great familiarity into conversation (little understood) with such of the officers and seamen as went to them, paying much greater regard to some than to others.

On the 17th, two of the natives, the chief and his daughter, ventured on-board: the captain took them both down into the cabin, where they were to breakfast; but they would not taste any of the victuals. The chief pried into every corner of the cabin, all parts of which he viewed with some surprise; but it was not possible to fix his attention to any one thing a single moment. The works of art appeared to him in the same light

as those of nature, and were as far removed beyond his comprehension.

The chief, before he came on-board, presented the captain with a piece of cloth, and a green talc hatchet; to Mr. Forster he also gave a piece of cloth; and the girl gave another to Mr. Hodges. This custom of making presents before they receive any, is common with the natives of the South Sea Islands: but they never saw it practised in New Zealand before. Of all the various articles which were given to the chief, hatchets and spike-nails were the most valuable in his eyes.

In the afternoon of the 21st, they went a seal hunting. The surf ran so high that they could only land in one place, where they killed ten. These animals served three purposes; the skins were made use of for the rigging, the fat gave oil for their lamps, and the flesh they eat. In the morning of the 23rd, Mr. Pickersgill, Mr. Gilbert, and two others, ascended one of the mountains. In the evening they returned on board, and reported that, inland, nothing was to be seen but barren mountains, with huge, craggy precipices, disjoined by valleys, or rather chasms, frightful to behold.

Having still a few geese left, Captain Cook ordered some of them to be turned out where there was the greatest appearance of food and security. There is no doubt but that they will breed, and may, in time, spread over the whole country, and thus be of service to the natives. On the 27th, they had hazy weather. In the morning Captain Cook set out, accompanied by Mr. Pickersgill and the two Mr. Forsters, to explore an inlet seen the day before. After rowing about two leagues up it, it was found to communicate with the sea, and to afford a better outlet for ships bound to the north than the one they came in by. After making this discovery, and refreshing themselves on broiled fish and wild fowl, they set out for the ship, and got on-board at eleven o'clock at night. In this expedition they shot a number of birds of different kinds.

Having got the tents, and every other article, on-board, on the 28th they weighed with a light breeze and stood up the bay for the new passage. In the morning of the 11th of May, they weighed and stood out to sea; and by noon they got clear of the land.

After leaving Dusky Bay, they steered for Queen Charlotte's Sound, where they expected to find the Adventure. In this passage they met with nothing remarkable, or worthy of notice, till the afternoon of the 17th, when the sky became suddenly obscured by dark, dense clouds, and seemed to forebode much wind. Presently after six water spouts were seen. Four rose and spent themselves between them and the land: the fifth was without them: the sixth first appeared at the distance of two or three miles from them: its progressive motion was not in a straight, but in a crooked line, and passed within fifty yards of

the stern, without their feeling any of its effects. The diameter of the base of this spout was judged to be about fifty or sixty feet. From this a tube or round body was formed, by which the water, or air, or both, was carried in a spiral stream up to the clouds.

At day light on the 18th of May, they arrived off Queen Charlotte's sound, where they discovered the *Adventure*, by the signals she made; an event which every one felt with agreeable satisfaction. At noon, Lieutenant Kemp, of the *Adventure*, came on board; from whom they learnt, that their ship had been there about six weeks. In the evening they came to an anchor in Snip Cove, near the *Adventure*; when Captain Furneaux came on-board, and gave Captain Cook the following account of his proceedings during their separation.

“ On the 7th of February, 1773, in the morning, the *Resolution* being about two miles a-head, the wind shifting, brought on a very thick fog, so that the *Adventure* lost sight of her. They soon after heard a gun; and steering in the supposed direction they kept firing a four-pounder every half-hour; but had no answer. In the evening it began to blow hard, and was, at intervals, more clear, but could see nothing of the *Resolution*, which gave them much uneasiness.

“ They then tacked, and stood to cruise in the place where they last saw her, according to the agreement in case of separation; but next day came on a very heavy gale of wind and thick weather, that obliged them to bring to, and thereby prevented their reaching the intended spot. They cruised as near the place as they could get for three days; when giving over all hopes of joining company again, they bore away for winter quarters, distant fourteen hundred leagues, through a sea entirely unknown, and reduced the allowance of water to one quart per day. They were daily attended by great numbers of sea birds, and frequently saw porpoises.

“ On the 1st of March they directed their course for the land laid down in their charts by the name of Van Diemen's Land, supposed to join to New Holland. On the 9th of March they saw the land bearing N. N. E. about eight or nine leagues distant. It appeared moderately high, and uneven near the sea. Here the country is hilly, and well clothed with trees: they saw no inhabitants.

“ The morning of the 10th of March being calm, the ship, then about four miles from land, sent the great cutter on-shore, with the second lieutenant, to find if there was any harbour or good bay. Soon after, it began to blow very hard, they made the signal for the boat to return several times, but they did not see or hear any thing of it, which gave them much uneasiness, as there was a very great sea. To their great satisfaction, in the afternoon, the boat returned safe. They landed, but with much difficulty: and saw several places where the Indians had been,

and one they lately had left, where they had a fire. The weather obliged them to return without investigating the place properly, or finding any anchorage.

“ On the 16th they passed Maria's Islands, so named by Tasman; they appear to be the same as the main land. The land hereabouts is much pleasanter, low, and even; but no signs of a harbour or bay, where a ship might anchor in safety. They stood in the eastward for Charlotte's Sound, with a light breeze at N. W. in the morning of the 5th of April, and on the 6th they had the Sound open. As they sailed up it they saw the tops of high mountains covered with snow, which remains all the year. On the 7th they anchored in Ship Cove, in ten fathoms' water. The two following days were employed in clearing a place on Motuara Island, for erecting tents for the sick, the sail-makers, and coopers. On the 9th they were visited by three canoes with about sixteen of the natives; and to induce them to bring fish, and other provisions, they gave them several things, with which they seemed highly pleased. One of the crew seeing something carefully wrapt up, had the curiosity to examine what it was; and, to his great surprise, found it to be the head of a man lately killed. The natives were very apprehensive of its being forced from them; and, as if sensible of their unnatural cannibalism, tried to conceal it, and to exculpate themselves from the charge. They frequently mentioned Tupia; and when told that he was dead, some of them seemed to be very much concerned, and, as well as they could understand them, wanted to know whether he was killed, or if he died a natural death. By these questions, they are the same tribe Captain Cook saw. In the afternoon they returned again with fish and fern roots, which they sold for nails and other trifles. On the 11th of May they felt two severe shocks of an earthquake, but received no kind of damage. On the 17th they had the pleasure of seeing the Resolution off the mouth of the Sound.”

Such is the detail of Captain Furneaux's transactions during an absence of fourteen weeks. Captain Cook being aware that scurvy grass, celery, and other vegetables, were to be found in Queen Charlotte's Sound, he gave orders that they should be boiled with wheat and portable broth, every morning for breakfast; and with pease and broth for dinner; knowing from experience, that these vegetables, thus dressed, are extremely beneficial in removing all manner of scorbutic complaints.

In the morning of the 20th of May, he sent on-shore the only ewe and ram remaining of those which he had brought from the Cape of Good Hope, with an intent to leave in this country. Soon after he visited the several gardens Captain Furneaux had caused to be made and planted with various articles; all of which were in a flourishing state, and, if attended to by the natives, may prove of great utility to them. On the 22nd, in the morning, the ewe and ram he had with so much care and trouble

brought to this place, were both found dead; occasioned, as was supposed, by eating some poisonous plant. Thus his hopes of stocking the country with a breed of sheep were blasted in a moment. About noon they were visited, for the first time since they arrived, by some of the natives, who dined with them; and it was not a little they devoured.

In the morning of the 24th, they met a large canoe in which were fourteen or fifteen people. One of the first questions they asked, was for Tupia, the person brought from Otaheite on the former voyage: and they seemed to express some concern when they told them he was dead. One of these people Captain Cook took, and shewed him some potatoes, planted there by Mr. Fannen, master of the Endeavour. There seemed to be no doubt of their succeeding; and the man was so well pleased with them, that he, of his own accord, began to hoe the earth up about the plants. They next took him to the other gardens, and shewed him the turnips, carrots, and parsnips; roots which, together with the potatoes, will be of more real use to them than any other articles they had planted. It was easy to give them an idea of these roots, by comparing them with such as they knew.

On the 2nd of June, the ships being nearly ready to put to sea, Captain Cook sent on-shore two goats, male and female. Captain Furneaux also put on-shore, in Cannibal Cove, a boar and two breeding sows; so that there is reason to hope this country will, in time, be stocked with these animals, if they are not destroyed by the natives before they become wild; for afterwards they will be in no danger.

Early the next morning some of the natives brought a large supply of fish. One of them desired Captain Cook to give his son a white shirt, which he accordingly did. The boy was so fond of his new dress, that he went all over the ship, presenting himself before every one that came in his way. The freedom, used by him, offended Old Will, the ram goat, who gave him a butt with his horns, and knocked him backwards on the deck. Will would have repeated the blow, had not some of the people come to the boy's assistance. The misfortune, however, seemed to him irreparable. The shirt was dirtied, and he was afraid to appear in the cabin before his father, until brought in by Mr. Forster; when he told a very lamentable story against Goury, the great dog, (for so they called all the quadrupeds that were on board;) nor could he be reconciled, till the shirt was washed, and dried.

About nine o'clock, a large double canoe, in which were twenty or thirty people, appeared in sight. The natives on board seemed much alarmed, saying that these were their enemies. Two of them, the one with a spear, and the other with a stone hatchet in his hand, mounted the arm chests on the poop, and there, in a kind of bravado, bid those enemies

defiance; while the others, who were on board, took to their canoe, and went a-shore, probably to secure the women and children. However, they came on-board, and were very peaceable. A trade soon commenced between the sailors and them; and it was not possible to hinder the sailors from selling the clothes from off their backs for the merest trifles. This caused Captain Cook to dismiss the strangers sooner than he would have done.

The birth day of his majesty, the 4th of June, they spent in festivity, having the company of Captain Furneaux, and all his officers. Double allowance enabled the seamen to share in the general joy. On the 7th of June, at four in the morning, the wind being favourable they unmoored, and at seven weighed, and put to sea, with the Adventure in company.

Nothing material occurred till the 29th, when Captain Cook, was informed that the crew of the Adventure was sickly, and this he found was but too true. Her cook was dead, and about twenty of her best men were down in the scurvy and flux. At this time his ship had only three men on the sick list, and only one of them attacked with the scurvy. Several more, however, began to shew symptoms of it, and were put upon the wort, marmalade of carrots, rob of lemons and oranges.

The sickly state of the Adventure's crew made it necessary to make their best way to Otaheite, where they were sure of finding refreshments: consequently they continued their course to the west: and at six o'clock in the evening, land was seen from the mast-head, bearing west by south. Captain Cook called it Doubtful Island; the getting to a place where they could procure refreshments was more an object at this time than discovery.

At day-break, on the 12th of July, they discovered land right a-head, distant about two miles; so that day-light advised them of their danger but just in time. This proved another of those low or half-drowned islands, or rather a large coral shore, of about twenty leagues in circuit. The next morning, at four, they made sail, and at day-break saw another of these low islands, situated in the latitude of 17 deg. 4 min., longitude 144 deg. 30. min. west, which obtained the name of Adventure Island. M. de Bougainville very properly calls this cluster of low, overflowed isles, the Dangerous Archipelago. The smoothness of the sea sufficiently convinced them that they were surrounded by them, and how necessary it was to proceed with the utmost caution, especially in the night.

On the 5th of August, at five o'clock in the morning, they saw Osnaburg Island, or Maitea, discovered by Captain Wallis. Soon after they brought to, and waited for the Adventure to come up with them, to acquaint Captain Furneaux, that it was his intention to put into Oaita-piha Bay, in Otaheite, in order to get what refreshments they could from that part of the Island, before they went down to Matavia. This done, they made sail, and at six in the evening saw the island bearing west. As they

approached the coast, a number of the inhabitants came off in canoes from different parts, bringing with them a little fish, a few cocoa-nuts, and other fruits, which they exchanged for nails and beads. Most of them knew Captain Cook again; and many inquired for Mr. Banks, and others who were with him before; but not one asked for Tupia; as little inquiry was made after Autourou, the man, who went away with M. de Bougainville. But they were continually asking for M. Banks, and several others who were in the former voyage. These people said, that Toutaha, the regent of the greater Peninsula of Otaheite, had been killed in a battle, which was fought between the two kingdoms about five months before; and that Otoo was the reigning prince. Tubourai Tamaide, and several more friends about Matavai, fell in this battle, as also a great number of common people; but, at present, a peace subsisted between the two kingdoms.

Next morning, being the 17th, they anchored in Oaita-piha Bay, in twelve fathoms' water, about two cable-lengths from the shore, both ships being by this time crowded with a great number of the natives, who brought with them cocoa-nuts, plaintains, bananas, apples, yams, and other roots, which they exchanged for nails and beads. To several, who called themselves chiefs, Captain Cook made presents of shirts, axes, and various other articles; and in return, they promised to bring hogs and fowls; a promise they never did, nor ever intended, to perform.

Many, who called themselves earees, or chiefs, came on-board, partly with a view of getting presents, and partly to pilfer whatever came in their way. One of this sort of earees the captain had most of the day in the cabin, and made presents to him and all his friends, which were not a few. At length he was caught taking things which did not belong to him, and handing them out at the quarter gallery. Many complaints of the like nature were made to him against those on deck, which occasioned his turning them all out of the ship. The cabin guest made good haste to be gone. The captain was so much exasperated at his behaviour, that, after he had got some distance from the ship, he fired two muskets over his head, which made him quit the canoe, and take to the water. He then sent a boat to take up the canoe; and ordered a great gun, loaded with ball, to be fired along the coast, which made all the natives retire from the shore. A few hours after they were all good friends again. It was not till the evening of this day, that any one inquired after Tupia, and then but two or three. As soon as they learned the cause of his death, they were quite satisfied; indeed it did not appear to them that it would have caused a moment's uneasiness in the breast of any one, had his death been occasioned by any other means than by sickness.

On the 20th, in the dusk of the evening, one of the natives made off with a musket belonging to the guard on-shore. Captain Cook

was present when this happened, and sent some of his people after him, which would have been to little purpose, had not some of the natives, of their own accord, pursued the thief. They knocked him down, and took from him the musket, and brought it back. Fear, on this occasion, certainly operated more with them than principle. They, however, deserve to be applauded for this act of justice.

In the evening, Captain Cook was informed that Waheatoua was come into the neighbourhood, and wanted to see him. In consequence of this information, he determined to wait one day longer, in order to have an interview with this prince. Accordingly, early the next morning, he set out in company with Captain Furneaux, Mr. Forster, and several of the natives. They found him seated on a stool, with a circle of people round him. They knew each other at first sight, though they had not met since 1769. At that time he was but a boy, and went by the name of Tearee; but, upon the death of his father, Waheatoua, he took upon him that name.

After the first salutation was over, having seated the captain on the same stool with himself, and the other gentlemen on the ground by them, he began to inquire after several by name, who were engaged in the former voyage. He next inquired how long he would stay; and when he told him no longer than next day, he seemed sorry; asked the captain to stay some months, and at last came down to five days; promising in that time he should have hogs in plenty. But as he had been here already a week, without so much as getting one, he could not put any faith in this promise. In return for the present he received, he ordered a pretty good hog to be carried to their boat.

Before they got to an anchor, their decks were crowded with the natives; many of whom Captain Cook knew, and almost all of them knew him. A great crowd was assembled together upon the shore, amongst whom was Otoo, their king. The captain was just going to pay him a visit, when he was told he was mataow'd, and gone to Oparee.

He set out on the 26th for Oparee, accompanied by Captain Furneaux, Mr. Forster, and others. As soon as they landed, they were conducted to Otoo, whom they found seated on the ground, under the shade of a tree, with an immense crowd round him. After the first compliments were over, the captain presented him with such articles as were supposed to be most valuable in his eyes, well knowing that it was his interest to gain the friendship of this man. He also made presents to several of his attendants; and in return, they offered him cloth, which he refused to accept; telling them that what he had given was for tioy, (friendship.) The king inquired for Tupia, and all the gentlemen that were with the captain in his former voyage, by name. He promised that they should have some hogs the next day; but he had much ado to obtain a promise from him to visit

him on-board. He said he was, Mataou no te paùpoue; that is, afraid of the guns. He was about thirty years of age, six feet high, and a fine, personable, well made man. All his subjects appeared uncovered before him, his father not excepted. What is meant by uncovering, is the making bare the head and shoulders, or wearing no sort of clothing above the breast.

On the 27th, Otoo, attended by a numerous train, paid them a visit. He first sent into the ship a large quantity of cloth, fruits, a hog, and two large fish; and, after some persuasion, came on-board himself, with his sister, a younger brother, and several more attendants. To all of them were made presents: and, after breakfast the captain took the king, his sister, and as many more as he had room for, into his boat, and carried them home to Oparee. He had no sooner landed than he was met by a venerable old lady, the mother of the late Toutaha. She seized both his hands, and burst into a flood of tears, saying, *Toutaha Tiyo no Toutee matty Toutaha*—(Toutaha, your friend, or the friend of Cook is dead.) Captain Furneaux, presented the king with two fine goats, male and female, which if taken care of, will no doubt multiply. Soon after they were conducted to the theatre; and entertained with a dramatic heava, or play, in which were both dancing and comedy. The performers were five men, and one woman, who was no less a person than the king's sister. The music consisted of three drums only; it lasted about an hour and a half, or two hours: and, upon the whole, was well conducted. It was not possible to find out the meaning of the play. It apparently differed in nothing, that is, in the manner of acting it, from those at Ulietea in the former voyage. The dancing-dress of the lady was more elegant than any seen there, by being decorated with long tassels, made of feathers, hanging from the waist downward.

Early in the morning of the 28th, they had another visit from Otoo, who brought more cloth, a pig, and some fruit. His sister, who was with him, and some of his attendants, came on-board: but he and others went to the Adventure, with the like presents to Captain Furneaux. It was not long before he returned with Captain Furneaux on-board the Resolution, when Captain Cook made him a handsome return for the presents he had brought him, and dressed his sister out in the best manner he could. When Otoo came into the cabin, Ereti, and some of his friends, were sitting there. The moment they saw the king enter, they stripped themselves in great haste, being covered before. This was all the respect they paid him; for they never rose from their seats, nor made any other obeisance. When the king thought proper to depart, he was carried to Oparee in a boat; when Captain Cook entertained him, and his people, with the bagpipes, (of which music they were very fond,) and dancing by the seamen. He, in return, ordered some of his people to dance also, which consisted chiefly of contortions.

At ten o'clock the following evening, they were alarmed with the cry of murder, and a great noise on-shore, near the bottom of the bay, at some distance from the encampment. Captain Cook suspected that it was occasioned by some of his own people; and immediately armed a boat, and sent it a-shore, which soon returned with three marines, and a seaman. Some others belonging to the Adventure were also taken, and being all put under confinement, the next morning the captain ordered them to be punished according to their deserts. He did not find that any mischief was done, and the people would confess nothing. The natives, however, were so much alarmed, that they fled from their habitations in the dead of the night, and the alarm spread many miles along the coast: for when Captain Cook went to visit Otoo, in the morning, by appointment, he found him removed, or rather fled, many miles from the place of his abode. Even there he was obliged to wait some hours, before he could see him at all; and when he did, he complained of the last night's riot. As this was intended to be the last visit, Captain Cook had taken with him a present suitable to the occasion. Among other things were three Cape sheep, which he had seen before, and asked for. He was much pleased with them; though he could be but little benefited, as they were all wethers. The presents he got at this interview entirely removed his fears, and opened his heart so much, that he sent for three hogs, which he presented to them. They now took leave, and informed him they should quit the island the next day; at which he seemed much affected, and embraced the captain several times.

On the 1st of September the ships unmoored. Some hours before they got under sail, a young man, whose name was Poreo, came, and desired the captain would take him with him, to which he consented. Many more offered themselves, but he refused to take them. This youth asked for an axe and a spike-nail for his father, who was then on-board. He had them accordingly; and they parted just as they were getting under sail, more like two strangers than father and son. This raised a doubt whether it was so; which was farther confirmed by a canoe, coming along side, as they were standing out of the bay, and demanding the young man in the name of Otoo. The artifice was now seen through; it was merely to extort something from the captain that Poreo had volunteered it. However, he was given to understand, that unless he returned the axe and nails, he could not be dismissed. As these were on-shore, he was carried away, pretty well satisfied; though a few tears fell when he viewed the land astern.

As soon as they were clear of the bay, they directed their course for the Island of Huaheine, where they intended to touch; on the morning of the 3rd, they anchored in the harbour of Owharre. As soon as the ships were in safety, Captain Cook

landed with Captain Furneaux, and was received by the natives with the utmost cordiality. Some presents were distributed among them; and presently after, they brought down hogs, fowls, dogs, and fruits, which they willingly exchanged for hatchets, nails, and beads. The like trade was soon opened on-board the ship; so that they had a fair prospect of being plentifully supplied with fresh pork and fowls; and, to people in their situation, this was no unwelcome thing.

Early the next morning, Lieutenant Pickersgill sailed with a cutter, on a trading party, toward the south end of the isle. This gentleman had seen Oberea while they lay at Otaheite, who was now decrepit and poor. Captain Cook also sent another trading party on-shore near the ships, with which he went himself, to see that it was properly conducted at the first setting out, a very necessary point to be attended to.

On the 4th, Captain Cook wanted to go to Oree, the king, but was told he would come to him; which he accordingly did, fell upon his neck, and embraced him. This was by no means ceremonious; the tears which trickled plentifully down his venerable old cheeks, sufficiently spoke the language of his heart. His friends were also introduced to them, to whom they made presents. In return he gave them a hog, and a quantity of cloth, promising that all their wants should be supplied.

On the 7th early in the morning, while the ships were unmooring, Captain Cook went to pay his farewell visit to Oree, accompanied by Captain Furneaux and Mr. Forster. They took with them, for a present, such things as were not only valuable, but useful. He also left with him the inscription plate he had before in keeping, and another small copper-plate, on which were engraved these words, "Anchored here, his Britannic Majesty's ships Resolution and Adventure, September, 1773!" together with some medals, all put up in a bag; of which the chief promised to take care, and to produce to the first ship or ships that should arrive at the island. He then gave a hog; and after loading the boat with fruit, they took leave; when the good old chief embraced the captain with tears in his eyes.

Before they quitted this island, Captain Furneaux agreed to receive on board his ship a young man named Omai, a native of Ulieeta, where he had some property, of which he had been dispossessed by the people of Bolabola. Captain Cook wondered that Captain Furneaux would encumber himself with this man, who, in his opinion, was not a proper sample of the inhabitants of these happy islands, nor having any advantage of birth or acquired rank, nor being eminent in shape, figure, or complexion. The captain, however, after his arrival in England, was convinced of his error; and doubted whether any other of the natives would

have given more general satisfaction by his behaviour among them.*

On the 8th of September they anchored at Ulietea, and a trade soon commenced with the natives. Next morning they paid a formal visit to Oree, the chief of this part of the isle, carrying with them the necessary presents. He was seated in his own house, which stood near the waterside, where he and his friends received them with great cordiality. He expressed much satisfaction at seeing Captain Cook again, and desired that they might exchange names, which he accordingly agreed to. This is the strongest mark of friendship they can shew to a stranger. After they had made the chief and his friends the necessary presents, they went on-board with a hog, and some fruit, received from him in return. On the 16th, Captain Cook was told that his Otaheitean young man, Poreo, had taken a resolution to leave him, and was actually gone; having met with a young woman, for whom he had contracted a friendship, he went away with her, and he saw him no more. However, the Otaheitean youth's leaving Captain Cook proved of no consequence, as many young men of this island voluntarily offered to come away with them; he thought proper to take on board one, who was about seventeen or eighteen years of age, named Obedidee, a native of Bolabola, and a near relation of Opoony, chief of that island.

After leaving Ulietea on the 17th of September, they steered to the west, and on the 1st of October they saw the islands of Amsterdam and Middleburg. As they approached the shore, two canoes came boldly alongside, and some of the natives

* "Omai, (observed Captain Cook,) has certainly a very good understanding, quick parts, and honest principles; he is of good natural behaviour, which rendered him acceptable to the best of company; and a proper degree of pride, which taught him to avoid the society of persons of inferior rank. He has passions of the same kind as other young men, but has judgment enough not to indulge them in any improper degree. I do not imagine that he has any dislike to liquor; and if he had fallen into company where the person who drank the most, met with the most approbation, I have no doubt but that he would have endeavoured to gain the applause of those with whom he associated; but, fortunately for him, he perceived that drinking was very little in use but among inferior people; and as he was very watchful into the manners and conduct of the persons of rank who honoured him with their protection, he was sober and modest; and I never heard that, during the whole time of his stay in England, which was two years, he ever once disguised himself with wine, or ever shewed an inclination to go beyond the strictest rules of moderation.

"Soon after his arrival in London, the Earl of Sandwich, the first Lord of the Admiralty, introduced him to his majesty at Kew, when he met with a most gracious reception, and imbibed the strongest impression of duty and gratitude to that great and amiable Prince, which I am persuaded he will preserve to the latest moment of his life. During his stay among us, he was caressed by many of the principal nobility, and did nothing to forfeit the esteem of any one of them; but his principal patrons were the Earl of Sandwich, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander; the former probably thought it a duty of his office to protect and countenance an inhabitant of that hospitable country, where the wants and distresses of those in his department had been alleviated and supplied in the most ample manner; the others, as a testimony of their gratitude for the generous reception they had met with during their residence in his country. It is to be observed, that though Omai lived in the midst of amusements during his residence in England, his return to his native country was always in his thoughts; and though he was not impatient to go, he expressed a satisfaction as the time of his return approached. He embarked with me in the Resolution, when she was fitted out for another voyage, loaded with presents from his several friends, and full of gratitude for the kind reception and treatment he had experienced among us."

entered the ship without hesitation. As soon as all were on board, they made sail down to Amsterdam. The people of this isle were so little afraid, that some met them in three canoes about mid-way between the two isles. Mr. Foster and his party spent the day in the country botanizing; and several of the officers went out shooting. All of them were very civilly treated by the natives. They had also a brisk trade for bananas, cocoa-nuts, yams, pigs, and fowls; all of which were procured for nails, and pieces of cloth. A boat from each ship was employed in trading a-shore, and bringing off their cargoes as soon as they were laden, which was generally in a short time. By this method they got cheaper, and with less trouble, a good quantity of fruit, as well as other refreshments, from people who had no canoes to carry them off to the ships.

These islands were first discovered by Captain Tasman, in January, 1642-3, and by him called Amsterdam and Middleburg. But the former is called by the natives Ton-ga-ta-bu, and the latter Ea-woo-wee. Middleburg, or Eawoowee, which is the southernmost, is about ten leagues in circuit, and of a height sufficient to be seen twelve leagues. The skirts of this isle are mostly taken up in the plantations; the south-west and north-west sides especially. The interior parts are but little cultivated, though very fit for cultivation. The anchorage, named English Road, being the first who anchored there, is on the north-west side, in latitude 21 deg. 20 min. 30 sec. south. The island is shaped something like an isosceles triangle, the longest sides whereof are seven leagues each, and the shortest four. It lies nearly in the direction of east-south-east, and west-north-west; is nearly all of an equal height, rather low, not exceeding sixty or eighty feet above the level of the sea.

Amsterdam, or Tongatabu, is wholly laid out in plantations, in which are planted some of the richest productions of nature, such as bread-fruit, cocoa-nut-trees, plaintains, bananas, shad-docks, yams, and some other roots, sugar-cane, and a fruit like a nectarine, called by them *fighegea*, and at Otaheite *aheeya*; in short, here are most of the articles which the Society Islands produce, besides some which they have not.

The lanes or roads necessary for travelling are laid out in so judicious a manner, as to open a free and easy communication from one part of the island to the other. Here are no towns or villages; most of the houses are built in the plantations, with no other order than what convenience requires; they are neatly constructed, but do not exceed those in the other isles. The materials of which they are built are the same; and some little variation in the disposition of the framing, is all the difference in their construction. They saw no domestic animals but hogs and fowls. The former are of the same sort as at the other isles in this sea; but the latter are far superior, being as large as any in Europe, and their flesh equally good, if not better.

all were on
pple of this
ree canoes
er and his
several of
very civilly
e for bana-
which were
n each ship
eir cargoes
short time.
ble, a good
people who

Tasman, in
nd Middle-
n-ga-ta-bu,
wee, which
t, and of a
irts of this
h-west and
e but little
anchorage,
here, is on
sec. south.
iangle, the
he shortest
, and west-
r low, not
sea.
lantations,
of nature,
nas, shad-
a fruit like
te *aheeya*;
ety Islands

d out in so
munication
o towns or
tions, with
are neatly
sles. The
some little
difference
s but hogs
the other
g as large
not better.



page 43.

T
ex
w
Z
is
th

ab
m
ve
se
to
wh
no
th
th
pl
un
th
bu
wi
do
ter
wo
isla
sufi
som
hat
este
axe

I
and
so

C
goo
had
gre
Am
mac
with

S
with
roch
easy
imm
accl
othe
inter
and

They saw no dogs, and believe they have none, as they were exceedingly desirous of those on-board. Cook's friend Attago was complimented with a dog and a bitch, the one from New Zealand, the other from Ulietea. The name of a dog with them is *kooree* or *gooree*, the same as at New Zealand, which shews that they are not wholly strangers to them.

The two vessels which compose the double canoe are each about sixty or seventy feet long, and four or five broad in the middle, and each end terminates nearly in a point. Two such vessels are fastened to, and parallel to each other, about six or seven feet asunder, by strong cross-beams, secured by bandages to the upper part of the risings. Over these beams, and others which are supported by stanchions fixed on the bodies of the canoes, is laid a boarded platform. All the parts which compose the double canoe, are made as strong and light as the nature of the work will admit, and may be immersed in water to the very platform, without being in danger of filling. Nor is it possible, under any circumstances whatever, for them to sink, so long as they hold together. Thus they are not only vessels of burden, but fit for distant navigation. They are rigged with one mast, with steps upon the platform, and can easily be raised or taken down; and are sailed with a latteen-sail, or triangular one, extended by a long yard, which is a little bent or crooked. Their working tools are made of stone, bone, shells, &c. as at the other islands. Their knowledge of the utility of iron was no more than sufficient to teach them to prefer nails to beads, and such trifles; some, but very few, would exchange a pig for a large nail, or a hatchet. Old jackets, shirts, cloth, and even rags, were in more esteem than the best edge-tool; consequently they got but few axes but what were given as presents.

Both men and women are of a common size with Europeans, and their colour is that of a lightish copper, and more uniformly so than amongst the inhabitants of Otaheite and the Society Isles.

Captain Cook determined to visit them if possible. They found good anchorage, and came to in twenty-five fathoms' water. They had scarcely got to an anchor, before they were surrounded by a great number of canoes full of people, who began to traffic. Among them was a chief, named *Tioony*, to whom the captain made a present of a hatchet, spike-nail, and several other articles, with which he was highly pleased.

Soon after, a party of them embarked in two boats in company with *Tioony*, who conducted them to a little creek formed by the rocks, right abreast of the ships, where landing was extremely easy, and the boats secure against the surf. Here they found an immense crowd of people, who welcomed them on shore with loud acclamations. Not one of them had so much as a stick, or any other weapon in his hand; an indubitable sign of their pacific intentions. They thronged so thick round the boats with cloth and matting, to exchange for nails, that it was some time before

they could get room to land. Many who could not get near the boats, threw into them, over the others' heads, whole bales of cloth, and then retired, without either asking or waiting to get any thing in return. The chief conducted them to his house, about three hundred yards from the sea, at the head of a fine lawn, and under the shade of some shaddock trees. The situation was most delightful. In front was the sea, and the ships at anchor; behind, and on each side, were plantations, in which were some of the richest productions of nature. The floor was laid with mats, on which they were placed, and the people seated themselves in a circle round them on the outside. Having the bagpipes with them, Captain Cook ordered them to be played; and in return, the chief directed three young women to sing a song, which they did with a very good grace; and having made each of them a present, it immediately set all the women in the circle a singing. Their songs were musical and harmonious. Bananas and cocoa-nuts were set before them to eat; and a bowl of liquor prepared in their presence, of the juice of Eava, for them to drink. But Captain Cook was the only one who tasted it; the manner of brewing it having quenched the thirst of every one else. The bowl was, however, soon emptied of its contents by the natives.

They returned on board to dinner, with the chief in their company. He sat at table, but eat nothing; which, as they had fresh pork roasted, was a little extraordinary. Near some of the houses, and in the lanes that divided the plantations, were running about some hogs and very large fowls, which were the only domestic animals they saw; and these they did not seem willing to part with, which determined them to leave this place. As soon as the captain was on-board, they made sail down to Amsterdam. On the west side of the isle, they were met by several canoes, each conducted by three or four men. They came boldly alongside, presented them with some Eava root, and then came on-board, without farther ceremony, inviting them by all the friendly signs they could make to go to their island, and pointing to the place where they should anchor.

Having secured the ships, Captain Cook landed, accompanied by Captain Furneaux, Mr. Forster, and several of the officers; having along with them a chief, or person of some note, whose name was Attago, who had attached himself to the captain from the first moment of his coming on-board, which was before they anchored. After walking a little way into the country, they returned to the landing-place, and there found Mr. Wales in a laughable, though distressed situation. The boats which had brought them on-shore not being able to get near the landing-place, for want of a sufficient depth of water, he pulled off his shoes and stockings to walk through, and as soon as he got on dry land, he put them down betwixt his legs to put on again, but they were instantly snatched away by a person behind him, who immediately mixed with the crowd. It was impossible for him

to follow the man bare-footed over the sharp coral rocks, which compose the shore, without having his feet cut to pieces. The boat was put back to the ship, his companions had each made his way through the crowd, and he left in this condition alone. The chief soon found out the thief, and recovered his shoes and stockings, and of his own accord conducted them to a plantation hard by, and shewed them a pool of fresh water, though they had not made the least inquiry after any.

One of the natives having got into the master's cabin, took out some books and other things. He was discovered just as he was getting out into his canoe, and pursued by one of their boats, which obliged him to quit the canoe, and take to the water. The people in the boat made several attempts to lay hold of him; but he, as often, dived under the boat, and at last unshipping the rudder, he got clear off. Some other very daring thefts were committed at the landing-place. One fellow took a seaman's jacket out of the boat, and carried it off in spite of all the people in her. The rest of the natives, who were very numerous, took very little notice of the whole transaction; nor were they the least alarmed when the man was fired at.

Attago visited Captain Cook again the next morning, and brought with him a hog, and assisted him in purchasing several more. This day the captain was told by the officers who were on-shore, that a far greater man than any they had yet seen was come to pay them a visit. Mr. Pickersgill informed them that he had seen him in the country, and found that he was a man of some consequence, by the extraordinary respect paid to him by the people. Some, when they approached him, fell on their faces, and put their head between their feet; and no one durst pass him without permission. The captain found him seated near the landing-place with so much sullen and stupid gravity, that, notwithstanding what had been told him, he really took him for an idiot, whom the people, from some superstitious notions, were ready to worship. He saluted and spoke to him; but he neither answered, nor did he alter a single feature in his countenance. This confirmed him in his opinion; and he was just going to leave him, when one of the natives undertook to undeceive him; which he did in such a manner, as left no room to doubt that he was the king, or principal man on the island. Accordingly he made him a present, which consisted of a shirt, an axe, a piece of red cloth, a looking glass, some nails, medals, and beads. He received these things, or rather suffered them to be put upon him, and laid by him, without losing a bit of his gravity, speaking one word, or turning his head either to the right or left; sitting the whole time like a statue; in which situation he left him to return on-board, and he soon after retired. The captain had not been long on-board, before word was brought that a quantity of provision had come from this chief. A boat was sent to bring it from the

shore; and it consisted of about twenty baskets of roasted bananas, sour bread and yams, and a roasted pig of about twenty pounds weight. The bearers said it was a present from the areeke, that is the king of the island, to the areeke of the ship. After this they were no longer to doubt the dignity of this sullen chief, whose name was Kohaghee-too-Fallangou.

The captain again went on-shore, and made this great man a suitable return, and immediately prepared for quitting the place. At ten o'clock they got under sail. The supplies they got at this isle were about one hundred and fifty pigs, twice that number of fowls, as many bananas and cocoa-nuts as they could find room for, with a few yams; and had their stay been longer, they, no doubt, might have got a great deal more.

On leaving these islands, they made sail to the southward; it being Captain Cook's intention to proceed directly to Queen Charlotte's Sound in New Zealand, there to take in wood and water, and then to go on farther discoveries to the south and east. He was very desirous of having some intercourse with the natives of this country, about Poverty or Telago Bays, where he apprehended they were more civilized than at Queen Charlotte's Sound, in order to give them some hogs, fowls, seeds, and roots, which he had provided for the purpose. They arrived on the 21st; and passing Cape Kidnappers, they saw some canoes put off from the shore. Upon this they brought to, in order to give them time to come on-board.

Those in the first canoe, which came along-side, were fishers, and exchanged some fish for pieces of cloth and nails. In the next were two men, who, by their dress and behaviour, seemed to be chiefs. These two were easily prevailed on to come on-board, when they were presented with nails, and other articles. They were so fond of nails, as to seize on all they could find, and with such eagerness, as plainly shewed they were the most valuable things they could give them. To the principal of these two men Captain Cook gave the pigs, fowls, seeds, and roots. At first, he did not think it was meant to give them to him; for he took but little notice of them, till he was satisfied they were for himself; nor was he then in such rapture as when he gave him a spike-nail half the length of his arm. However, at his going away, the captain took notice that he took care to have them all collected together, and kept a watchful eye over them, lest any should be taken away. He made a promise not to kill any; and if he keeps his word, and proper care is taken of them, there were enough to stock the island in due time.

They now stretched to the southward; when shortly after violent weather came on, and for two days they were beating up against a hard gale. When they arrived just in sight of port, they had the mortification to be driven off from the land by a furious storm. They continued to combat tempestuous weather till the 30th, when they lost sight of the Adventure. In the afternoon the

gale abated. Captain Cook now regretted the loss of her, for had she been with him, he should have given up all thoughts of going to Queen Charlotte's Sound for wood and water, and have sought for a place to get these articles farther south, as the wind was now favourable for ranging along the coast, but their separation made it necessary for them to repair to the Sound, that being the place of rendezvous. As they approached the land, they saw smoke in several places along the shore; a sure sign that the coast was inhabited. They continued to stand to the eastward all night, in hopes of meeting with the Adventure in the morning; but in this they were disappointed, and soon encountered another storm. After a succession of calms and brisk gales, in tracing the coast, they discovered on the east-side of Cape Teerawhitte, a new inlet they had never observed before, into which they entered and cast anchor.

Immediately on their anchoring, several of the natives came off in their canoes; two from one shore and one from the other. It required but little address to get three or four of them on-board. These people were extravagantly fond of nails, above every other thing. To one man the captain gave two cocks and two hens, which he received with so much indifference, as gave little hopes he would take proper care of them. They had not been at anchor here above two hours, before the wind veered to N. E. with which they weighed, and steered for the Sound, where they arrived just at dark, with most of their sails split.

The next morning, the 3rd of November, the gale abated, and was succeeded by a few hours' calm; after that a breeze sprung up at N. W. with which they weighed, and ran up into Ship Cove, where they did not find the Adventure, as was expected. The first thing they did, after mooring the ship, was to unbend the sails, there not being one but what wanted repair. In the afternoon, they gave orders for all the empty water casks to be landed, and tents to be set up for the sail-makers, coopers, and others, whose business made it necessary for them to be on-shore. The next day they began to caulk the ship's sides and decks, to overhaul her rigging, repair the sails, cut wood for fuel, and set up the smith's forge to repair the iron work; all of which were absolutely necessary.

Here they saw the youngest of the two sows Captain Furneaux had put on shore in Cannibal Cove, when they were last here; it was lame of one of its hind legs, otherwise in good condition, and very tame. If they understood these people right, the boar and other sow were also taken away, and separated, but not killed. They were likewise told, that the two goats they had put on-shore up the Sound had been killed. Thus, all their endeavours to stock this country with useful animals were likely to be frustrated by the very people they meant to serve. The gardens had fared somewhat better. Every thing in them, except the potatoes, they had left entirely to nature, who had acted her

part so well, that they found most articles in a flourishing state; a proof that the winter must have been mild. The potatoes had most of them been dug up; some, however, still remained, and were growing; and, it is probable, they will never be out of the ground.

The next morning, the captain sent over to the cove, where the natives resided, to haul the seine; and took with him a boar and a young sow, two cocks and two hens, they had brought from the isles. These he gave to the natives, being persuaded they would take proper care of them, by their keeping Captain Furneaux's sow near five months. When they were purchasing fish of these people, they showed a great inclination to pick pockets, and to take away the fish with one hand, which they had just sold or bartered with the other. This evil one of the chiefs undertook to remove, and with fury in his eyes, made a shew of keeping the people at a proper distance. The captain says, "I applauded his conduct, but at the same time kept so good a look out, as to detect him in picking my pocket of a handkerchief, which I suffered him to put in his bosom before I seemed to know any thing of the matter, and then told him what I had lost. He seemed quite ignorant and innocent, till I took it from him; and then he put it off with a laugh, acting his part with so much address, that it was hardly possible for me to be angry with him; so that we remained good friends, and he accompanied me on-board to dinner." About that time they were visited by several strangers in four or five canoes.

In unpacking the bread, four thousand two hundred and ninety-two pounds they found totally unfit to eat, and about three thousand pounds more could only be eaten by people in their situation. The 15th, being a pleasant morning, a party went over to East Bay, and climbed one of the hills, which overlooked the eastern part of the strait, in order to look for the Adventure. They had a fatiguing walk to little purpose; for when they came to the summit, they found the eastern horizon so foggy, that they could not see above two miles. Mr. Forster, who was one of the party, profited by this excursion, in collecting some new plants. They now began to despair of seeing the Adventure any more, and were totally at a loss to conceive what had befallen her.

At an early hour in the morning of the 22nd, they were visited by a number of the natives, in four or five canoes, very few of whom they had seen before. They brought with them various articles, which they bartered. At first, the exchanges were very much in the sailors' favour, till an old man, who was no stranger, came and assisted his countrymen with his advice; which, in a moment, turned the trade above a thousand per cent. against them.

Having now put the ship in a condition for sea, and fit to encounter the southern latitudes, the tents were struck, and

every thing got on-board; but calm, light airs from the north, all day, on the 23rd, hindered them from putting to sea, as intended. In the afternoon, some of the officers went on-shore, to amuse themselves among the natives, where they saw the head and bowels of a youth, who had lately been killed, lying on the beach; and the heart stuck on a forked stick, which was fixed to the head of one of the largest canoes. One of the gentlemen bought the head, and brought it on-board, where a piece of the flesh was broiled, and eaten by one of the natives, before all the officers, and most of the men. Captain Cook was on-shore at this time; but, soon after returning on-board, was informed of the above circumstances; and found the quarter-deck crowded with the natives, and the mangled head, or rather part of it, lying on the tafferaill. The skull had been broken on the left side, just above the temples; and the remains of the face had all the appearance of a youth under twenty. The sight of the head, and the relation of the above circumstances, struck him with horror, and filled his mind with indignation against these cannibals. Curiosity, however, got the better of his indignation, especially when he considered that it would avail but little; and being desirous of becoming an eye-witness of a fact which many doubted, he ordered a piece of the flesh to be broiled, and brought to the quarter-deck, where one of these cannibals eat it with surprising avidity. This had such an effect upon some of the sailors as to make them sick. This youth was killed in a skirmish between two parties.

On the 25th, they weighed with a small breeze. The morning before they sailed, Captain Cook wrote a memorandum, setting forth the time he arrived, the day he sailed, the route he intended to take, and such other information as he thought necessary for Captain Furneaux, in case he should put into the Sound; and buried it in a bottle under the root of a tree in the garden, in such a manner as must have been found by him, or any European who might put into the cove. Every one being unanimously of opinion that the Adventure could neither be stranded on the coast, nor be in any of the harbours thereof, they gave up looking for her, and all thoughts of seeing her any more during the voyage, as no rendezvous was absolutely fixed upon after leaving New Zealand.

On the 14th of December, they fell in with several large islands of ice, and, about noon, with a quantity of loose ice, through which they sailed. Gray albatrosses, blue peterels, pintadces, and fulmers, were seen. As they advanced with a fresh gale at west, they found the number of ice islands, increase fast, also a considerable quantity of loose ice. They tacked, stretched to the north, and soon got clear of it, but not before they had received several hard knocks from the larger pieces, which, with all their care they could not avoid. After clearing one danger, they still had another to encounter; the

weather remained foggy, and many large islands lay in their way. One they were very near falling a-board of; and if it had happened, this circumstance would never have been related. These difficulties determined them to get more to the north.

On the 21st, they were very suddenly got in amongst a cluster of very large ice islands, and a vast quantity of loose pieces; and as the fog was exceedingly thick, it was with the utmost difficulty they wore clear of them. On the 23rd, the wind being pretty moderate, and the sea smooth, they brought to at the outer edge of the ice, hoisted out two boats, and sent to take some up. The snow froze on the rigging as it fell, making the ropes like wires, and the sails like boards or plates of metal.

On the 30th of January, 1774, very early in the morning, they perceived the clouds, over the horizon to the south, to be of an unusual snow-white brightness, which they knew denoted their approach to a field of ice. Soon after they were close to its edge. It extended east and west, far beyond the reach of their sight. In the situation they were in, just the southern half of the horizon was illuminated by the rays of light reflected from the ice, to a considerable height. Ninety-seven ice hills were distinctly seen within the field, besides those on the outside; many of them very large, and looking like a ridge of mountains, rising one above another, till they were lost in the clouds. The outer or northern edge of this immense field was composed of loose or broken ice close packed together; so that it was not possible for any thing to enter it. This was about a mile broad: within which was solid ice in one continued compact body. It was rather low and flat, except the hills, but seemed to increase in height to the south; in which direction it extended beyond their sight.

It being found impossible to proceed farther in this direction, the captain came to a resolution to proceed to the north, and to spend the ensuing winter within the tropic, if he met with no employment before he came there, as he was now well satisfied no continent was to be found in this ocean, but what must lie so far to the south, as to be totally inaccessible on account of ice; and that, if one should be found in the Southern Atlantic Ocean, it would be necessary to have the whole summer before them to explore it. They now steered north, inclining to the east, and in the evening they were overtaken by a furious storm, attended by snow and sleet. It came so suddenly upon them, that before they could take in their sails, two of them were blown to pieces, and the others much damaged.

On the 25th of February, Captain Cook was taken ill of the bilious cholic, which was so violent as to confine him to his bed; so that the management of the ship was left to Mr. Cooper, the first officer, who conducted her much to his satisfaction. It was several days before the most dangerous symptoms of his disorder were removed; during which time, Mr. Patten, the

surgeon, was to him not only a skilful physician, but an affectionate nurse. When he began to recover, a favourite dog, belonging to Mr. Forster, fell a sacrifice to his tender stomach. They had no other fresh meat whatever on-board; and the captain could eat of this flesh, as well as broth made of it, when he could taste nothing else. Thus he received nourishment and strength from food, which would have made most people in Europe sick; so true it is, that necessity is governed by no law.

At eight o'clock in the morning, on the 11th of March, land was seen from the mast-head; bearing west, about twelve leagues distant. They now tacked, and endeavoured to get into what appeared to be a bay, on the west side of the point; but, before this could be accomplished, night came upon them, and they stood on and off, under the land, till the next morning. This is called Easter Island, or Davis's Land.

Here a canoe, conducted by two men, came off. They brought with them a bunch of plantains, which they sent into the ship by a rope, and then they returned on-shore. This gave the captain a good opinion of the islanders, and inspired them with hopes of getting some refreshments, of which they were in great want. They continued to range along the coast, till they opened the northern point of the isle. While the ship was plying in, a native came on-board. The first thing he did was to measure the length of the ship, by fathoming her from the tafferal to the stem; and, as he counted the fathoms, they observed that he called the numbers by the same names that they do at Otaheite; nevertheless, his language was nearly unintelligible to all of them.

The next morning the captain went on-shore, accompanied by some of the gentlemen, to see what the island was likely to afford. They landed at a sandy beach, where some hundreds of the natives were assembled, and who were so impatient to see them, that many of them swam off to meet the boats. Not one of them had so much as a stick or weapon of any sort in his hand. After distributing a few trinkets amongst them, they made signs for something to eat; on which they brought down a few potatoes, plantains, and sugar-canes, and exchanged them for nails, looking-glasses, and pieces of cloth. They presently discovered that they were as expert thieves, and as tricking in their exchanges, as any people they had yet met with. It was with some difficulty they could keep their hats on their heads; but hardly possible to keep any thing in their pockets, not even what themselves had sold; for they would watch every opportunity to snatch it from them, so that they sometimes bought the same thing two or three times over, and after all did not get it.

On the 16th of March, they again stood out to sea, and having now a steady, settled trade-wind, and pleasant weather, the forge was ordered to be set up, to repair and make various necessary

articles in the iron way. On the 6th of April: they saw an isle, which, as it was a new discovery, they named Hood's Island, after the young gentleman who first saw it; the second was that of St. Pedro; the third, La Dominica; and the fourth, St. Christina. They ranged the S. E. coast of La Dominica, without seeing the least signs of anchorage. Some canoes put off from these places, and followed them down the coast.

At length, having come before the port they were in search of, they cast anchor. This was no sooner done, than about thirty or forty of the natives came off in ten or twelve canoes; but it required some address to get them along-side. At last a hatchet and some spike-nails induced the people of one canoe to come under the quarter-gallery; after which all the others put along-side, and having exchanged some bread-fruit, and fish, for small nails, retired on-shore.

On the 10th, early in the morning, some people from more distant parts came in canoes along-side, and sold them some pigs; so that they had now sufficient to give the crew a fresh meal. After dinner the captain went on-shore, and collected eighteen pigs. Next morning he went down to the same place where he had been the preceding evening; but, instead of getting pigs, as he expected, found the scene quite changed. The nails, and other things, they were mad after but the evening before, they now despised. The reason was, several of the young gentlemen having landed the preceding day, had given away in exchange, various articles which the people had not seen before, and which took with them more than nails, or more useful iron tools. Trade being thus stopped, the captain prepared to leave this place, and go where their wants might be effectually relieved; for, after having been nineteen weeks at sea, and living all the time on salt diet, they could not but want some refreshments: yet they had not one sick man on-board, owing to the many antiscorbutic articles they had, and to the great attention of the surgeon. April the 11th, at three o'clock in the afternoon, they weighed. They had now but little wind, and that very variable, with showers of rain.

With a fine easterly wind they steered till the 17th, when land was seen bearing W. half N. which upon a nearer approach, they found to be a string of low islets, connected together by a reef of coral rocks. As they steered along the coast, the natives appeared in several places, armed with long spears and clubs, and some were got together on one side of the creek. The captain sent two boats, well armed, on-shore, under the command of Lieutenant Cooper, with a view of having some intercourse with them. They saw them land without the least opposition. Some little time after, however, observing forty or fifty natives, all armed, coming towards the boats, they stood close on-shore in order to be ready to support their people in case of an attack. But nothing of this kind happened,

saw an isle,
od's Island,
nd was that
h, St. Chris-
ica, without
put off from

e in search
than about
lve canoes;
. At last a
one canoe
e others put
and fish, for

e from more
them some
rew a fresh
d collected
same place
stead of get-
ged. The
evening be-
f the young
ven away in
een before,
e useful iron
ed to leave
effectually
t sea, and
want some
on-board,
and to the
e o'clock in
little wind,

7th, when
a nearer
connected
along the
with long
ne side of
on-shore,
of having
ithout the
observing
oats, they
port their
appened,

and soon after the boats returned on-board, when Mr. Cooper informed the captain, that, on his landing, only a few of the natives met him on the beach, but there were many in the skirts of the woods, with spears in their hands. The presents he made them were received with great coolness, which plainly shewed they were unwelcome visitors. They brought on board five dogs, which seemed to be in plenty there. They saw no fruit, but cocoa-nuts, of which they got by exchanges, two dozen.

On the 18th, at day-break, they wore down to another isle, which they had in sight to the westward, which they reached by eight o'clock, and ranged the S.E. side at one mile from the shore. These must be the same islands to which Commodore Byron gave the name of George's Islands. They made the high land of Otaheite on the 21st of April, and at eight o'clock the next morning anchored in Matavia Bay. This was no sooner known to the natives, than many of them paid them a visit, and expressed not a little joy at seeing them again.

On the 24th, Otoo, the king, and several other chiefs, with a train of attendants, paid them a visit, and brought them, as presents, ten or a dozen large hogs, besides fruit. The captain, knowing how much it was his interest to make this man his friend, met him at the tents, and conducted him and his friend on-board, where they staid dinner, after which they were dismissed with suitable presents, and highly pleased with the reception they had met with. On the morning of the 26th, the captain went down to Oparee, accompanied by some of the officers and gentlemen, to pay Otoo a visit. As they drew near, they observed a number of large canoes in motion: but, where surprised, when they arrived, to see upwards of three hundred ranged in order, for some distance, along the shore, all completely equipped and manned, besides a vast number of armed men upon the shore. So unexpected an armament collected together in their neighbourhood, in the space of one night, gave rise to various conjectures.

They had not been long gone from Oparee, where at that time they missed Otoo, before the whole fleet was in motion, to the westward, whence it came. When they got to Matavia, they were told that the fleet was part of the armament intended to go against Eimea, whose chief had thrown off the yoke of Otaheite, and assumed an independency. On the morning of the 27th of April, the captain received a present from a chief named Towha, consisting of two large hogs and some fruit, sent by two of his servants, who had orders not to receive any thing in return; nor would they, when offered them. Soon after, he went down to Oparee in his boat, where having found both this chief and the king, after a short stay, he brought them both on-board to dinner, together with Tarevato, the king's younger brother, and Tee. As soon as they drew near the ship, the admiral, who had never seen one before, began to express

much surprise at so new a sight. He was conducted all over the ship, every part of which he viewed with great attention. On this occasion, Otoo was the principal show-man; for, by this time, he was well acquainted with the different parts of the ship. Soon after, the king and his attendants went away also. Captain Cook had been urged to assist them against Tiarabou, but to their solicitations he gave no encouragement.

On going on-shore in the morning of the 7th, they found Otoo at the tents, and took the opportunity to ask his leave to cut down some trees for fuel, which he readily granted. The captain told him, he should cut down no trees that bore any fruit. He was pleased with this declaration, and told it aloud several times to the people about them.

The following night all their friendly connections received an interruption, through the negligence of one of the sentinels on-shore. He having either slept or quitted his post, gave one of the natives an opportunity to carry off his musket. The first news the captain heard of it was from Tee, whom Otoo had sent on board for that purpose. They were not well enough acquainted with their language to understand all Tee's story; but they understood enough to know that something had happened which had alarmed the king. In order, therefore, to be fully informed, the captain went on-shore with Tee. As soon as they landed, he was informed of the whole by the sergeant who commanded the party. The natives were all alarmed, and the most of them fled. Tee and the captain went to look for Otoo; and as they advanced, he endeavoured to allay the fears of the people, but at the same time insisted on the musket being restored. After travelling some distance into the country, Tee stopped all at once, and advised the captain to return, saying, that Otoo was gone to the mountains, and that he would proceed, and tell him, that he (the captain) was still his friend. Tee also promised that he would use his endeavours to recover the musket.

On this the captain returned to the ship, and soon after he observed six large canoes coming round Point Venus. There being room for suspecting that some person belonging to these canoes had committed the theft, he came to a resolution to intercept them; and having put off in a boat for that purpose, gave orders for another to follow. One of the canoes, which was some distance a-head of the rest, came directly for the ship. He went along-side this, and was told that Otoo was then at the tents. Pleased with this news, he contradicted the orders he had given for intercepting the other canoes, thinking they might be coming on-board also. But when he landed, he was told that Otoo had not been there, nor knew they any thing of him. On looking behind him, he saw all the canoes making off in the greatest haste; even the one he had left along-side the ship had evaded going on-board and was making her escape. Vexed

at being thus outwitted, he resolved to pursue them; and as he passed the ship, gave orders to send another boat for the same purpose. Five out of six they took, and brought along-side; but the first, which acted the finesse so well, got clear off.

In one of the canoes they had taken, was a chief, a friend of Mr. Forster's, who had hitherto called himself an Earee, and would have been much offended if any one had called his title in question; also, three women, his wife and daughter, and the mother of the late Toutaha. These, together with the canoes, the captain resolved to detain, and to send the chief to Otoo; thinking he would have weight enough with him to obtain the return of the musket, as his own property was at stake. In the dusk of the evening it was brought to the tents, together with some other things they had lost, which they knew nothing of, by three men who had pursued the thief, and taken them from him. The captain knew not if they took this trouble of their own accord, or by order of Otoo. He rewarded them, and made no farther inquiry about it. When the musket and other things were brought, every one then present, or who came after, pretended to have some hand in recovering them, and claimed a reward accordingly. But there was no one acted this farce so well as Nuno, a man of some note, and well known to the captain when he was here in 1769. This man came, with all the savage fury imaginable in his countenance, and a large club in his hand, with which he beat about him, in order to shew how he alone had killed the thief; when, at the same time, they all knew he had not been out of his house the whole time.

As the most essential repairs of the ship were nearly finished, it was resolved to leave Otaheite in a few days; and the captain accordingly ordered every thing to be got off from the shore, that the natives might see they were about to depart. On the 12th, Oberea, who had grown old and decrepit, paid them a visit, and brought them a present of hogs and fruit. Soon after came Otoo, with a great retinue, and a large quantity of provisions. The captain was pretty liberal in his returns, thinking it might be the last time he should see these good people, who had so liberally relieved their wants, and in the evening entertained them with fire-works.

In the afternoon, on the 15th of May, they anchored in O'Wharre Harbour, in the Island of Huahein, when Oree, the chief, brought a hog, and other articles, to the captain, who, in return, invited him and his friends to dinner. Early in the morning of the 23rd, they unmoored, and put to sea. Oree, the chief, was the last man who went out of the ship. At parting, the captain told him they should see each other no more, at which he wept, and said, "Let your sons come, we will treat them well." Oree was a good man in the utmost sense of the word; but many of the people were far from being of that disposition, and seemed to take advantage of his old age. During their stay

here, they got bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts in abundance, but not hogs enough; and yet it did not appear that they were scarce in the isle. It must, however, be allowed, that the number they took away, when last here, must have thinned them greatly, and at the same time stocked the isle with our articles.

As soon as they were clear of the harbour, they made sail, and stood over for the south-end of Ulietea, where they dropt anchor the next day. On the 26th, a party went on-shore to pay the chief a visit, and make the customary present. At their first entering his house, they were met by four or five old women, weeping and lamenting, as it were, most bitterly, and at the same time cutting their heads with instruments made of shark's teeth, till the blood ran plentifully down their faces, and on their shoulders. What was still worse, they were obliged to submit to the embraces of these old hags, and by that means were all besmeared with blood. This ceremony being over, they went out, and immediately after appeared as cheerful as any of the company. The captain made his presents, and after some little stay, returned on-board.

The captain having fixed on the 4th of June, his Majesty's birth-day, for sailing, Oreo, the chief, and his whole family, came on-board, to take their last farewell, accompanied by Oo-oo-rou, the Earee de hi, and Boha, the Earee of Otaha, and several of their friends. None came empty; but Oo-oo-rou brought a pretty large present, this being his first and only visit. The captain distributed amongst them almost every thing he had left. The very hospitable manner in which he had ever been received by these people, had endeared them to him, and given them a just title to every thing in his power to grant. Oreo pressed him to return. When the captain declined making any promises on that head, he asked the name of his Morai, (burying-place). As strange a question as this was, he hesitated not a moment to tell him Stepney; the parish in which he lived when in London. He was requested to repeat it several times over till they could pronounce it; then, Stepney Morai no Tooté was echoed through a hundred mouths at once. What greater proof could they have of these people esteeming them as friends, than their wishing to remember them even beyond the grave? They had been repeatedly told that they should see them no more; they then wanted to know where they were to mingle with their parent dust.

As they could not promise, or even suppose, that more English ships would be sent to those isles, their faithful companion, Oedidee, chose to remain in his native country. But he left the ship with a regret fully demonstrative of the esteem he had for them. Just as Oedidee was going out of the ship, he asked the captain to Tatou some Parou for him, in order to shew the commanders of other ships which might stop here. He complied with his request, gave him a certificate of the time

he had been with them, and recommended him to the notice of those who might touch at the island after them.

On the 16th, just after sun-rise, land was seen from the top-mast head. They immediately steered for it, and found it to be an island, composed of five or six woody islets, connected together by sand banks and breakers inclosing a lake, into which they could see no entrance. The captain looked upon this as a new discovery, and named it Palmerston Island, in honour of Lord Palmerston, one of the Lords of the Admiralty.

On the 20th, they again saw land; and as they drew nearer, found it to be an island of considerable extent. Perceiving some people on the shore, and landing seeming to be easy, they hoisted out two boats, with which they put off, accompanied by some of the officers and gentlemen. Friendly signs were made to the natives, which were answered by menaces. All endeavours to bring them to a parley were to no purpose, for they advanced with the ferocity of wild boars, and threw their darts. Two or three muskets, discharged in the air, did not hinder one of them from advancing still farther, and throwing another dart, which passed close over the captain's shoulder. His temerity would have cost him his life, had not the captain's musket missed fire. The conduct and aspect of these islanders occasioned the captain's naming it Savages' Island. They seemed to be stout, well-made men, were naked, except round the waists; and some of them had their faces, breasts, and thighs, painted black.

On the 26th of June, they arrived off the coast of Rotterdam. Before they had well got to an anchor, the natives came off from all parts in canoes, bringing with them yams and shaddock, which they exchanged for small nails and old rags. Early in the morning of the 28th, Lieutenant Clerke, with the master and fourteen or fifteen men, went on-shore in the launch for water. She was no sooner landed, than the natives gathered about her, behaving in so rude a manner, that the officers were in some doubt if they should land the casks; however, they ventured, and, with difficulty, got them filled, and into the boat again. While thus employed, Mr. Clerke's gun was snatched from him, and carried off; as were also some of the cooper's tools, and other articles. All this was done, as it were, by stealth; for they laid hold of nothing by main force. The captain landed just as the launch was ready to put off; and the natives, who were pretty numerous on the beach, as soon as they saw him, fled; so that he suspected something had happened. However, he prevailed on many to stay. Being informed of all the preceding circumstances, he quickly came to a resolution to oblige them to make restitution; and for this purpose, ordered all the marines to be armed and sent on-shore. He then sent all the boats off but one, with which he staid, having a good many of the natives about him, who behaved with their usual courtesy;

but he made them so sensible of his intention, that, long before the marines came, Mr. Clerke's musket was brought.

Captain Cook quitted Rotterdam, or Anamooka, immediately after this, and on the 30th, they saw the summit of Amattafoa, but not clear enough to determine, with certainty, whether there was a volcano or no: but every thing they could see concurred to make them believe there was. As the captain intended to get to the south, in order to explore the land which might lie there, they continued to ply between the Isles of Lepers and Aurora; and on the 19th of July, the last-mentioned isle bore south, distant twenty miles.

At day-break, on the 21st, they found themselves before the channel that divides Whitsuntide Island from the South Land, which is above two leagues over. Having sent two armed boats to sound, and look for anchorage, they soon followed. Next morning early, a good many of the natives came round them, some in canoes, and others swimming. The captain soon prevailed on one to come on-board; which he no sooner did, than he was followed by more than he desired; so that not only the deck, but rigging, was presently filled with them. He took four into the cabin, and gave them various articles, which they shewed to those in the canoes, and seemed much pleased with their reception.

Unwilling to lose the benefit of the moon-light nights, which now happened, they weighed on the 23rd, and proceeded out of the harbour. Soon after they got to sea, they stood over for Ambryum. On the 24th, they reached an island near Apee, about four leagues in circuit; it is remarkable by having three high peaked hills upon it, by which it has obtained that name. They now steered to the east; and having weathered Three-hills, stood for a group of small isles which lie off the S. E. point of Apee. These were called Shepherd's Isles, in honour of Dr. Shepherd, Plumian Professor of Astronomy, at Cambridge.

Continuing their course to the south, they drew near the southern lands, which they found to consist of one large island, whose southern and western extremities extended beyond their sight, and three or four smaller ones, lying off its north-side. The two northernmost are much the largest, have a good height, and lie in the direction of E. by S. and W. by N. from each other, distant two leagues. They named the one Montagu, and the other Hinchinbrook; and the large island, Sandwich, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich.

In the night of the 5th of August, they saw a volcano, which they observed to throw up vast quantities of fire and smoke, with a rumbling noise heard at a great distance. They now made sail for the island whence it appeared, and presently after discovered a small inlet, which had the appearance of being a good harbour. The wind left them as soon as they were within the entrance, and obliged them to drop an anchor in four fathoms' water. After this the boats were sent to sound.

Towards the evening, the captain landed at the head of the harbour, with a strong party of men, without any opposition being made by a great number of the natives, who were assembled in two parties, the one on the right, the other on the left, all armed. After distributing to the old people, (for they could distinguish no chief,) and some others, presents of cloth, medals, &c. he ordered two casks to be filled with water out of a pond, about twenty paces behind the landing-place, giving the natives to understand, that this was one of the articles they wanted. Besides water, they got from them a few cocoa-nuts, which seemed to be in plenty on the trees; but they could not be prevailed upon to part with any of their weapons. These they held in constant readiness, and in the proper attitudes of offence and defence, so that little was wanting to make them attack them. Their early re-embarking probably disconcerted their scheme, and after that they all retired.

While they were bringing the ship nearer the shore, to wood and water, they observed the natives assembling from all parts, and forming themselves into two parties, as they did the preceding evening, one on each side of the landing-place, to the amount of some thousands, armed as before. A canoe, now and then, came off, bringing a few cocoa-nuts or plantains. The captain made an old man, who seemed well disposed, understand, by signs, that they were to lay aside their weapons, and throwing those that were in the canoe overboard, made him a present of a large piece of cloth. There was no doubt that he understood him, and made this request known to his countrymen; for as soon as he landed, they observed him go first to one party, and then to the other; nor was he ever after seen with any thing like a weapon in his hand. After this, three fellows came in a canoe under the stern, one of them brandishing a club, with which he struck the ship's side, and committed other acts of defiance; but at the last offered to exchange it for a string of beads, and some other trifles. These were sent down to him by a line; but the moment they were in his possession, he and his companions paddled off in all haste, without giving the club in return. This was what the captain expected, and, indeed, what he was not sorry for, as he wanted an opportunity to shew the multitude on-shore, the effect of their fire-arms, without materially hurting any of them. Having a fowling-piece loaded with small shot, he gave the fellow the contents; and when they were above musket shot off, he ordered some of the musketoons to be fired which alarmed them much. This transaction, however, seemed to make little or no impression on the people there: on the contrary, they began to halloo, and to make sport of it.

On the 9th, Mr. Forster learnt from the people the proper name of the island, which they call Tanna. They gave them to understand, in a manner which they thought admitted of no doubt, that they eat human flesh, and that circumcision was

practised among them. They began the subject of eating human flesh of their own accord, by asking them if they did. One of the men employed in taking in ballast, scalded his fingers in removing a stone out of some water. This circumstance produced the discovery of several hot springs at the foot of the cliff, and rather below high water mark.

On the 17th, the captain went on-shore, to pay a visit to an old chief, who was said to be king of the island. His name was Geogy, and they gave him the title of Areeke. He was very old, but had a merry, open countenance. He wore round his waist, a broad, red and white chequered belt; but this was hardly a mark of distinction. The next day, the captain again went a-shore, and found in the crowd old Geogy, and a son of his, who soon made him understand, that they wanted to dine with him; and accordingly he brought them, and two more on-board. When he got them on-board, he went with them all over the ship, which they viewed with uncommon surprise and attention. They happened to have for their entertainment, a kind of pie, or pudding, made of plantains, and some sort of greens which they had got from one of the natives. On this, and on yams, they made a hearty dinner. In the afternoon, having made each of them a present of a hatchet, a spike-nail, and some medals, they were conducted on-shore.

On the 20th of August, as soon as the boats were hoisted in, they made sail, and stretched to the eastward. Nothing material occurred till September 4th, when looking S. E. the coast seemed to terminate in a high promontory, which the captain named Cape Colnet, after one of his midshipmen, who first discovered this land. Some gaps, or openings were seen on the 5th to lie all along the coast, whither they plied up. After running two leagues down the outside of the reef, (for such it proved) they came before an opening that had the appearance of a good channel. They wanted to get on-shore, to have an opportunity to observe an eclipse of the sun, which was soon to happen. With this view they hoisted out two armed boats, and sent them to sound the channel; ten or twelve large sailing canoes being then near them. They had observed them coming off from the shore all the morning, from different parts. The boats having made a signal for a channel, they stood in. They had hardly got to an anchor, before they were surrounded by a great number of the natives, in sixteen or eighteen canoes, the most of whom were without any sort of weapons. At first they were shy of coming near the ship; but in a short time they prevailed on the people in one canoe to come close enough to receive some presents. These they lowered down to them by a rope, to which, in return, they tied two fish, that stunk intolerably. These mutual exchanges bringing on a kind of confidence, two ventured on-board the ship; and presently after, she was filled

with them, and they had the company of several at dinner in the cabin.

After dinner, the captain went on-shore with two armed boats, having with them one of the natives who had attached himself to him. They landed on a sandy beach before a vast number of people, who had got together with no other intent than to see them; for many of them had not a stick in their hands; consequently they were received with great courtesy, and with the surprise natural for people to express, at seeing men and things so new to them as they must be. The captain made presents to all those his new friend had pointed out, who were either old men, or such as seemed to be of some note; but he took not the least notice of a few women who stood behind the crowd, keeping back the captain's hand when he was going to give them some beads and medals. Here they found a chief, whose name was Teabooma; and they had not been on-shore above ten minutes, before he called for silence. Being instantly obeyed by every individual present, he made a short speech; and soon after another chief having called for silence, made a speech also. It was pleasing to see with what attention they were heard. Their speeches were composed of short sentences; to each of which two or three old men answered, by nodding their heads, and giving a kind of grunt, significant of approbation. It was impossible for them to know the purport of these speeches; but they had reason to think they were favourable to them, on whose account they doubtless were made.

The next morning they were visited by some hundreds of the natives; so that before ten o'clock, their decks, and all other parts of the ship, were quite full. The captain's friend, who was of the number, brought him a few roots; but all the others came empty in respect to eatables. Some few had with them their arms, such as clubs and darts, which they exchanged for nails, pieces of cloth, &c. On the following day, Mr. Wales, accompanied by Lieutenant Clerke, went to make preparations for observing the eclipse of the sun, which was to happen in the afternoon.

Every thing being in readiness to put to sea, at sun-rise, on the 13th of September, they weighed, and stood out for sea. Nothing remarkable occurred till the 28th in the evening, when two low islets were seen bearing W. by S. and as they were connected by breakers, which seemed to join those on their starboard, it became necessary to haul off, in order to get clear of them. Soon after more breakers appeared, extending from the low isles to a great distance. They spent the night in making short boards, under the terrible apprehension, every moment, of falling on some of the many dangers which surrounded them. Day-light shewed that their fears were not ill-founded, and that they had been in the most imminent danger, having had breakers continually under their lee, and at a very

little distance from them. They owed their safety to the interposition of providence, a good look out, and the very brisk manner in which the ship was managed.

They were now almost tired of a coast which they could no longer explore, but at the risk of losing the ship, and ruining the whole voyage. The ship was at this time conducted by an officer, placed at the mast-head: soon after with great difficulty, they arrived within a mile of land, and were obliged to anchor in thirty-nine fathoms' water; they then hoisted out a boat, in which the captain went on shore, accompanied by the botanists. Here they found several tall trees, which had been observed before at a considerable distance: they appeared to be a kind of spruce pine, very proper for spars, of which they were in want; after making this discovery, they hastened on-board, in order to have more time after dinner, when they landed again with two boats, to cut down such trees as were wanting. Having got ten or twelve small spars to make studding-sail booms, boats' masts, &c. and night approaching, they returned with them on-board.

The purpose for which they anchored under this isle being answered, it was necessary to consider what was next to be done. They had, from the top-mast head, taken a view of the sea around, and observed the whole, to the west, to be strewed with small islets, sand-banks, and breakers, to the utmost extent of their horizon. This induced the captain to try to get without the shoals.

Next morning, at day-break, the 30th of September, they got under sail, and met with no occurrences worthy of remark for some days. In the evening of the 8th of October, Mr. Cooper having struck a porpoise with a harpoon, it was necessary to bring to, and have two boats out, before they could kill it, and get it on-board. It was six feet long; a female of that kind, which naturalists call dolphins of the ancients, and which differs from the other kind of porpoise in the head and jaw, having them long and pointed. This had eighty-eight teeth in each jaw. The haslet, and lean flesh, were to them a feast. It was eaten roasted, broiled, and fried, first soaking it in warm water. Indeed, little art was wanting to make any thing fresh, palatable to those who had been living so long on salt meat.

On the 10th, at day-break, they discovered land, bearing S. W. which, on nearer approach, they found to be an island of good height, and five leagues in circuit. It was named Norfolk Isle, in honour of the noble family of Howard. After dinner, a party embarked in two boats, and landed, without any difficulty, behind some large rocks, which lined part of the coast. They found it uninhabited, and were undoubtedly the first that ever set foot on it. They observed many trees and plants common at New Zealand; and, in particular, the flax plant, which is rather more luxuriant here than in any part

of that country: but the chief produce is a sort of spruce pine, which grows in abundance, and to a large size, many of the trees being as thick, breast high, as two men could fathom, and exceeding straight and tall. It resembles the Quebec pine. For about two hundred yards from the shore, the ground is covered so thick with shrubs and plants, as hardly to be penetrated farther inland. The woods were perfectly clear, and free from underwood, and the soil seemed rich and deep.

After leaving Norfolk Isle, they steered for New Zealand, intending to touch at Queen Charlotte's Sound, to refresh the crew, and put the ship in a condition to encounter the southern latitudes. On the 17th, at day-break, they saw Mount Egmont, which was covered with everlasting snow. Their distance from the shore was about eight leagues. On the 18th, they anchored before Ship Cove; and in the afternoon the captain went into the cove, with the seine, to try to catch some fish. The first thing he did after landing, was to look for the bottle he left when last here, in which was the memorandum. It was taken away, but by whom it did not appear. Two hauls with the seine produced only four small fish; they in some measure made up for this deficiency by shooting several birds.

Being little wind next morning, they weighed, and warped the ship into the cove, and there moored. Here the forge was erected, and the ship and rigging repaired. The captain gave orders that vegetables should be boiled every morning, with oatmeal and portable broth, for breakfast, and with peas and broth every day for dinner, for the whole crew, over and above their usual allowance of salt meat. In the afternoon, as Mr. Wales was setting up his observatory he discovered that several trees which were standing when they last sailed from this place, had been cut down with saws and axes. It was, therefore, now no longer to be doubted that the *Adventure* had been in this cove after they had left it.

On the 6th of November, their old friends having taken up their abode near them, one, whose name was Pedro (a man of some note) made the captain a present of a staff of honour, such as the chiefs generally carry. In return, he dressed him in a suit of clothes, of which he was not a little proud. Having got this person, and another, into a communicative mood, he began to inquire of them if the *Adventure* had been there during his absence; and they gave him to understand, in a manner which admitted of no doubt, that, soon after they were gone, she arrived; that she staid between ten and twenty days, and had been gone ten months.

On the 10th of November, they took their farewell of New Zealand, and steered for Cape Campbell. The captain's intention now was to cross this vast ocean, so as to pass over those parts which were left unexplored the preceding summer. On Saturday, the 17th December, they made land, about six leagues

distant. On this discovery, they wore, and brought to, with the ship's head to the south; and having sounded, found seventy-five fathoms' water, the bottom stone and shells. The land now before them could be no other than the west coast of Terra del Fuego, and near the west entrance of the Straits of Magalhaens.

On the 18th of December, as they continued to range the coast, about two leagues distant, they passed a projecting point, which was called Cape Gloucester. It shews a round surface of considerable height, and has much the appearance of being an island, distant seventeen leagues from the Isle of Landfall. On the 20th, at noon, they observed York Minster, then distant five leagues. At ten o'clock, a breeze springing up, E. by S. they took this opportunity to stand in for the land, to recruit their stock of wood and water, and take a view of the country. Here was found plenty, and they set about doing what was necessary to the ship, the outside of which was become very foul. The captain was now told of a melancholy accident which had befallen one of the mariners. He had not been seen since eleven or twelve o'clock the preceding night. It was supposed that he had fallen overboard, out of the head, where he had been last seen, and was drowned.

On the 23rd, Mr. Pickersgill was sent in the cutter to explore the east-side of the sound, with an intent to survey the island under which they were at anchor, and which the captain called Shag Island. About seven in the evening he returned, and reported that the land opposite to their station was an island, and had been round; that between it and the east head lay a cove, in which were many geese. This information induced them to make up two shooting parties next day; Mr. Pickersgill and his associates going in the cutter, and the captain and the botanists in the pinnace. Mr. Pickersgill went in one direction, and the captain in another, and they had sport enough among the geese, whence this was denominated Goose Island. There being a high surf, they found great difficulty in landing, and very bad climbing over the rocks when they were landed; so that hundreds of the geese escaped, some into the sea, and others up into the land. They, however, by some means or other, got sixty-two, with which they returned on board all heartily tired; but the acquisition they had made overbalanced every other consideration, and they sat down with a good appetite to supper, on part of what the preceding day had produced. Mr. Pickersgill and his associates had got on-board sometime before with fourteen geese, so that they were able to make a distribution to the whole crew, which was the more acceptable on account of the approaching festival; for had not providence thus singularly provided for them, their Christmas cheer must have been salt beef and pork.

The next morning, the 25th, some of the natives paid them a visit. They were a little, ugly, half-starved, beardless race; not

a tall person appeared amongst them. They were almost naked ; their only clothing was a seal-skin. The women cover their middle with the flap of a seal-skin, but in other respects are clothed like the men. Two young children were seen at the breast entirely naked ; thus they are inured from their infancy to cold and hardships. They had with them bows and arrows ; and darts, or rather harpoons, made of bone, and fitted to a staff. They, and every thing they had, smelt most intolerably of train oil.

Roast and boiled geese and goose-pye, were a treat little known to the seamen ; and they had yet some Madeira wine left, which was the only article of provision that was mending by keeping ; so that their friends in England did not, perhaps, celebrate Christmas more cheerfully than they did. This was named Christmas Sound.

On the 28th, they weighed, and stood out to sea, resuming their coast to the east ; and the next day they passed Cape Horn, and entered the Southern Atlantic Ocean. It is the most southern extremity on a groupe of islands of unequal extent, lying before Nassau Bay, known by the name of Hermit Islands. From Cape Horn, they stood over for Success Bay, assisted by the currents, which set to the north. Before this they had hoisted their colours, and fired two guns ; and soon after they saw a smoke rise out of the woods, about the south point of the bay, which was supposed to be made by the natives. As soon as they got off the bay, Lieutenant Pickersgill went to see if any traces remained of the Adventure ; but he saw not the least signs of any ship having been there lately. The captain had inscribed his ship's name on a card, which he nailed to a tree, at the place where the Endeavour watered. In the morning, at three o'clock, they bore up for the east end of Staten Land, where they arrived next day in the afternoon. After dinner they hoisted out three boats, and landed with a large party of men ; some to kill seals ; others to catch or kill birds, fish, or what came in their way. To find the former, it mattered not where they landed, for the whole shore was covered with them ; and by the noise they made, one would have thought the island was stocked with cows and calves. On landing, they found they were a different animal from seals, but in shape and motion exactly resembling them. The sailors called them lions, on account of the great resemblance the male has to that beast. Here were also the same kind of seals which they found in New Zealand, generally known by the name of sea-bears ; at least they gave them that name.—They were in general so tame, or rather stupid, as to suffer them to come near enough to knock them down with sticks ; but the large ones were shot, not thinking it safe to approach them. They also found on the island abundance of penguins and shags. Here were geese and ducks, but not many ; birds of prey, and a few small birds. In the evening they returned on-board with plenty of spoil.

Next day, being January the first, 1775, finding that nothing was wanting but a good harbour to make this a tolerable place for ships to refresh at, which chance or design might bring hither, Mr. Gilbert went over to Staten Land in the cutter, to look for one. The captain also sent two other boats, which returned laden with sea-lions, sea-bears, &c. The old lions and bears were killed chiefly for the sake of their blubber, or fat, to make oil of; for, except their haslets, which were tolerable, the flesh was too rank to be eaten with any degree of relish. But the young cubs were very palatable; and even the flesh of some of the old lionesses was not much amiss. About ten o'clock, Mr. Gilbert returned from Staten Land, where he had found a good port, situated three leagues to the westward of Cape St. John. It is almost two miles in length; in some places near a mile broad. On the island were sea-lions and seals, and such an innumerable quantity of gulls, as to darken the air when disturbed, and almost to suffocate the people with their dung. This they seemed to void in a way of defence, and it stunk worse than asafœdita. The day on which this port was discovered occasioned the captain's calling it New-year's Harbour.

Having left the land in the evening of the 3rd, they saw it again next morning, bearing west. On the 14th, at nine o'clock in the morning, they descried an island of ice, as they then thought; but at noon were doubtful whether it was ice or land; and was in a manner wholly covered with snow. On the 16th, they began to explore the northern coast, and next morning they made sail in for the land. As soon as they drew near the shore, having hoisted out a boat, the captain embarked in it, accompanied by Mr. Forster and his party, with a view of reconnoitring before they ventured in with the ship, which they afterwards declined, as the inner parts of the country were savage and horrible. The wild rocks raised their lofty summits, till they were lost in the clouds, and the valleys lay covered with everlasting snow.—Not a tree was to be seen, or a shrub even big enough to make a tooth-pick. They found here nearly the same animals as in the New-year's Harbour,

Since their arrival on this coast, the Captain ordered, in addition to the common allowance, wheat to be boiled every morning for breakfast; but any kind of fresh meat was preferred by most on-board to salt: for his part, he says, he was heartily tired of salt meat of every kind; and though the flesh of the penguins could scarcely vie with bullock's liver, its being fresh, was sufficient to make it go down. They called the bay they had been in Possession Bay. As soon as the boat was hoisted in, they made sail along the coast to the east, for the space of eleven or twelve leagues, to a projecting point, which obtained the name of Cape Saunders. Beyond this cape is a pretty large bay, which is named Cumberland Bay.

On the 20th, they fell in with an island, which they named the

Isle of Georgia, in honour of his Majesty. It extends thirty-one leagues in length; and its greatest breadth is about ten leagues. It seems to abound with bays and harbours, the N. E. coast especially; but the vast quantity of ice coast renders them inaccessible the greatest part of the year.

From the 20th to the 27th they had a continuation of foggy weather. They now growing almost tired of high southern latitudes, where nothing was to be found but ice and thick fogs, stood to the east, when they soon fell in, all at once, with a vast number of large ice-lands, and a sea strewed with loose ice. For this reason they tacked, and stood to the west, with the wind at north. The ice-lands, which at this time surrounded them, were nearly all of equal height, and shewed a flat even surface.

On the 1st of February, they got sight of a new coast. It proved a high promontory, which was named Cape Montagu; but prudence would not permit them to venture near shore, where there was no anchorage, and where every port was blocked or filled up with ice; and the whole country, from the summits of the mountains down to the very brink of the cliffs, which terminate the coast, covered, many fathoms thick, with everlasting snow.

It was now necessary to take a view of the land to the north, before they proceeded any farther to the east. On the 3rd they saw two isles. The day in which they were discovered, was the occasion of calling them Candlemas Isles. They were of no great extent, but of considerable height, and were covered with snow. On the 4th, they resumed their course to the east. About noon they met with several ice-islands, and some loose ice, the weather continuing hazy, with snow and rain.

On the 22nd of February, as they were within two degrees of longitude from their route to the south, when they left the Cape of Good Hope, it was to no purpose to proceed any farther to the east under this parallel, knowing that no land could be there. They had now made the circuit of the Southern Ocean in a high latitude, and traversed it in such a manner as to leave not the least room for the possibility of there being a continent, unless near the pole, and out of the reach of navigation. By twice visiting the tropical sea, they had not only settled the situation of some old discoveries, but made there many new ones, and left very little more to be done in that part. Thus the intention of the voyage had, in every respect, been fully answered; the southern hemisphere sufficiently explored; and a final end put to the searching of a southern continent.

Their sails and rigging were so much worn, that something was giving way every hour; and they had nothing left either to repair or replace them. Their provisions were in a state of decay, and yielded little nourishment, and they had been a long time without refreshments. The sailors, indeed, were yet healthy, and would have cheerfully gone wherever they were led; but they

dreaded the scurvy laying hold of them, at a time when they had nothing left to remove it. It would, however, have been cruel to have continued the fatigues and hardships they were continually exposed to, longer than was absolutely necessary. Their behaviour, throughout the whole voyage, merited every indulgence which it was possible to give them. Animated by the conduct of the officers, they shewed themselves capable of surmounting every difficulty and danger which came in their way, and never once looked either upon one or the other, as being at all heightened, by their separation from their consort, the Adventure.

On the 12th, they put a boat into the water, and shot some albatrosses and peterels, which, at this time, were highly acceptable. every one was now become impatient to get into port; this induced the captain to yield to the general wish, and to steer for the Cape of Good Hope. The captain now demanded of the officers and petty officers, the log-books and journals they had kept; which were delivered accordingly, and sealed up for the inspection of the Admiralty. He also enjoined them, and the whole crew, not to divulge where they had been, till they had their lordship's permission so to do.

In the evening of the 17th, they saw land about six leagues distant. Next day, having little or no wind, they hoisted out a boat and sent on-board a ship which was about two leagues from them: but they were too impatient after news to regard the distance.—Soon after three sail more appeared in sight to windward, one of which shewed English colours.

The boat returning, reported that they had visited a Dutch East Indiaman, whose captain very obligingly offered them sugar, arrack, and whatever he had to spare. They were told by some English seamen on-board, that the Adventure had arrived at the Cape of Good Hope twelve months ago, and that the crew of one of her boats had been murdered and eaten by the people of New Zealand.

On the 19th the True Briton, Captain Broadly, from China, bore down to them. As this ship did not intend to touch at the Cape, the captain put a letter on board for the secretary of the Admiralty. The melancholy account which they had heard of the Adventure was now confirmed. From this ship they procured a parcel of old newspapers, which were new to them, and gave them some amusement; but these were the least favours they received from Captain Broadly. With a generosity peculiar to the commanders of the India Company's ships, he sent them fresh provisions, tea, and other articles, which were very acceptable. In the afternoon they parted company. The True Briton stood out to sea, and they in for the land.

The next morning, being with them Wednesday the 22nd, but with the people here Tuesday the 21st, they anchored in Table Bay, where they found several Dutch ships; some French; and

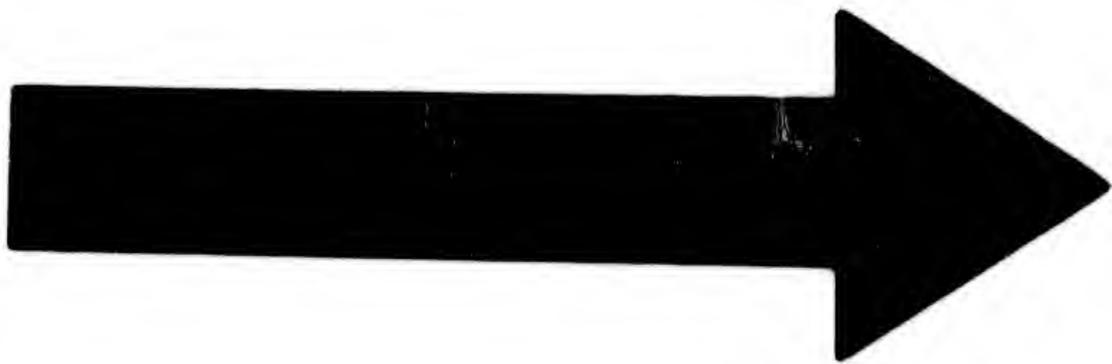
the Ceres, Captain Newte, an English East India Company's ship, from China, bound directly to England, by whom they sent a copy of the preceding part of this journal, some charts, and other drawings, to the Admiralty. Before they had well got to an anchor, the captain dispatched an officer to acquaint the governor with their arrival, and to request the necessary stores and refreshments, which were readily granted.

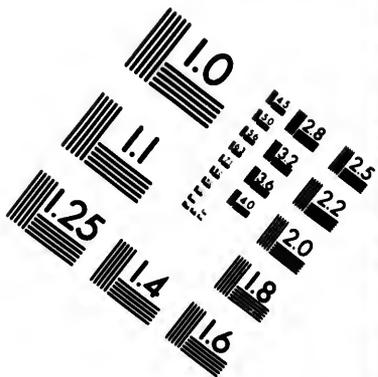
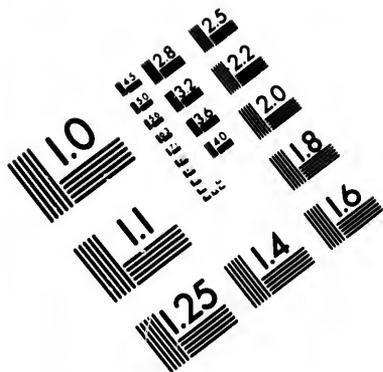
The captain now learned that the Adventure had called here on her return; and he found a letter from Captain Furneaux, acquainting him with the loss of his boat, and with ten of his best men, in Queen Charlotte's Sound. The following particulars Captain Cook learnt after his arrival in England, concerning the progress of the Adventure after separation.

"In October, 1773, they were blown off the coast of New Zealand; when they parted company with the Resolution, and never saw her afterwards. They combated violent storms till the 6th of November; when, being to the north of Cape Palliser, they bore away for some bay to complete their water and wood, being in great want of both; having been at the allowance of one quart of water for some days past; and even that pittance could not be come at above six or seven days longer. They anchored at Tolaga Bay. Wood and water are easily to be had. Having got about ten tons, and some wood, they sailed for Charlotte Sound on the 12th; but violent weather prevented them from reaching it till the 30th. They saw nothing of the Resolution, and began to doubt her safety: but, on going on-shore, they discerned the place where she had erected her tents; and, on an old stump of a tree in the garden, observed these words cut out, 'Look underneath.' There they dug, and soon found a bottle, corked and waxed down, with a letter in it from Captain Cook, signifying their arrival on the 3rd instant, and departure on the 24th, and that they intended spending a few days in the entrance of the straits to look for them.

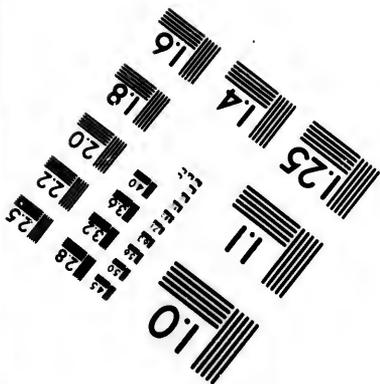
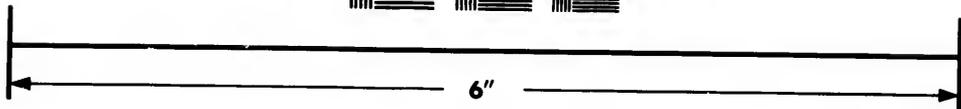
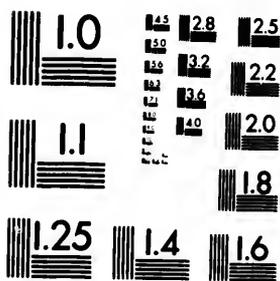
"They immediately set about the necessary repairs of the ship, which employed them till the 16th of December. Next day they sent their large cutter, with Mr. Rowe, a midshipman, and the boats crew, to gather wild greens for the ship's company; with orders to return that evening, as they intended to sail the next morning. But, on the boat's not returning the same evening, nor the next morning, the second lieutenant, Mr. Burney, in the launch, manned with the boat's crew, and ten marines, went in search of her. Mr. Burney returned about eleven o'clock the same night, and informed them of a horrible scene indeed, which cannot be better described than in his own words:—

"On the 18th, we left the ship; and having a light breeze in our favour, we soon got round Long-Island. I examined every cove, on the larboard hand, as we went along, looking well all around with a telescope. At half-past one, we stopped at a beach on the left-hand side going up East Bay, to boil some





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25

10
11

victuals. Whilst we were cooking, I saw an Indian on the opposite shore, running along a beach to the head of the bay. Our meat being drest, we got into the boat, and put off; and, in a short time, arrived at the head of the reach, where we saw an Indian settlement.

“As we drew near, some of the Indians came down to the rocks, and waved for us to be gone; but seeing we disregarded them, they altered their notes. Here we found six large canoes hauled up on the beach, most of them double ones, and a great many people. Leaving the boat's crew to guard the boat, I stepped on shore with the marines, (the corporal and five men,) and searched a good many of their houses; but found nothing to give me any suspicion. Coming down to the beach, one of the Indians had brought a bundle of hepatoos, (long spears,) but seeing I looked very earnestly at him, he put them on the ground, and walked about with seeming unconcern. Some of the people appearing to be frightened, I gave a looking-glass to one, and a large nail to another. From this place the bay ran, as nearly as I could guess, a good mile. I looked all round with the glass, but saw no boat, canoe, or any sign of inhabitant. I therefore contented myself by firing some guns, which I had done in every cove as I went along.

“I now kept close to the east-shore, and came to another settlement, where the Indians invited us on-shore. I inquired of them about the boat, but they pretended ignorance. They appeared very friendly here, and sold us some fish. Within an hour after we had left this place, in a small beach adjoining to Grass Cove, we saw a very large double canoe just hauled up, with two men and a dog. The men, on seeing us, left their canoe, and ran up into the woods. This gave me reason to suspect I should here get tidings of the cutter. We went on-shore, and searched the canoe, where we found one of the rull-lock-ports of the cutter, and some shoes, one of which was known to belong to Mr. Woodhouse, one of our midshipmen. One of the people, at the same time, brought me a piece of meat, which he took to be some of the salt meat belonging to the cutter's crew. On examining this, and smelling to it, I found it was fresh. Mr. Fannin (the master) who was with me, supposed it was dog's flesh, and I was of the same opinion; for I still doubted their being cannibals. But we were soon convinced by the most horrid and undeniable proof.

“A great many baskets (about twenty) lying on the beach, tied up, we cut them open. Some were full of roasted flesh, and some of fern-root, which serves them for bread. On farther search, we found more shoes, and a hand, which we immediately knew to have belonged to Thomas Hill, one of our fore-castle-men, it being marked T. H. with an Otaheite taww-instrument. I went with some of the people a little way up the woods, but saw nothing else. Coming down again, there was a

lian on the
of the bay.
ut off; and,
ere we saw

down to the
disregarded
arge canoes
and a great
the boat, I
d five men,)
und nothing
each, one of
ong spears.)
them on the
n. Some of
king-glass to
the bay ran,
ed all round
f inhabitant.
which I had

e to another
I inquired
ance. They
sh. Within
ch adjoining
just hauled
us, left their
e reason to
e went on-
e of the rul-
f which was
midshipmen.
ce of meat,
ging to the
it, I found it
e, supposed
; for I still
onvinced by

the beach,
ed flesh, and
On farther
h we imme-
one of our
eite tallow-
e way up the
there was a

round spot, covered with fresh earth, about four feet diameter, where something had been buried. Having no spade, we began to dig with a cutlass; and in the mean time I launched the canoe with intent to destroy her; but, seeing a great smoke ascending over the nearest hill, I got all the people into the boat, and made what haste I could to be with them before sun-set.

“On opening the next bay, which was Grass Cove, we saw four canoes, and a great many people on the beach, who, on our approach, retreated to a small hill, within a ship's length of the water side, where they stood talking to us. A large fire was on the top of the high land, beyond the woods, whence, all the way down the hill, the place was thronged like a fair. The savages on the little hill still kept hallooing, and making signs for us to land; however, as soon as we got close in, we all fired. The first volley did not seem to affect them much; but, on the second, they began to scramble away as fast as they could, some of them howling. We continued firing as long as we could see the glimpse of any of them through the bushes. Among the Indians were two very stout men, who never offered to move till they found themselves forsaken by their companions: and then they marched away with great composure and deliberation, their pride not suffering them to run. One of them, however, got a fall, and either lay there, or crawled off on all-fours. The other got clear, without any apparent hurt. I then landed with the marines, and Mr. Fannin staid to guard the boat.

“On the beach were two bundles of celery, which had been gathered for loading the cutter. A broken oar was stuck upright in the ground, to which the natives had tied their canoes; a proof that the attack had been made here. I then searched all along at the back of the beach, to see if the cutter was there. We found no boat, but instead of her, such a shocking scene of carnage and barbarity, as can never be mentioned or thought of but with horror; for the heads, hearts, and lungs of several of our people were seen lying on the beach; and at a little distance the dogs gnawing their entrails.

“Whilst we remained almost stupified on the spot, Mr. Fannin called to us that he heard the savages gathering together in the woods; on which I returned to the boat, and hauling along-side the canoes, we demolished three of them. Whilst this was transacting, the fire on the top of the hill disappeared, and we could hear the Indians in the woods at high words; I suppose quarrelling whether they should attack us, and try to save their canoes. It now grew dark; I, therefore, just stepped out, and looked once more behind the beach, to see if the cutter had been hauled up in the bushes, but, seeing nothing of her, returned, and put off. Our whole force would have been barely sufficient to have gone up the hill; and to have ventured with half, (for half must have been left to guard the boat) would have been fool-hardiness.

“As we opened the upper part of the Sound, we saw a very large fire about three or four miles higher up, which formed a complete oval, reaching from the top of a hill down almost to the water side, the middle space being enclosed all round by the fire, like a hedge. I consulted with Mr. Fannin, and we were both of opinion, that we could expect to reap no other advantage than the poor satisfaction of killing some more of the savages.

“Coming between two round islands, situated to the southward of East Bay, we imagined we heard somebody calling; we lay on our oars, and listened, but heard no more of it; we hallooed several times, but to little purpose; the poor souls were far enough out of hearing: and, indeed, I think it some comfort to reflect, that, in all probability, every man of them must have been killed on the spot.”

They were detained in the Sound, by contrary winds, four days after this melancholy affair happened, during which time they saw none of the inhabitants. On the 23rd, they weighed, and made sail out of the Sound, and stood to the eastward, but were baffled for two or three days with light winds, before they could clear the coast. January the 10th, 1774, they arrived abreast of Cape Horn. They were very little more than a month sailing from Cape Palliser, in New Zealand, to Cape Horn, which is 121 deg. of longitude.

On opening some casks of peas and flour that had been stowed on the coals, they found them very much damaged, and not eatable, so thought it most prudent to make for the Cape of Good Hope. On the 17th of February, they made the land of the Cape of Good Hope, and on the 19th anchored in Table Bay, where they found Commodore Sir Edward Hughes, with his Majesty's ships, Salisbury and Seahorse. On the 16th of April, Captain Furneaux sailed for England, and on the 14th of July anchored at Spithead.

We now return to Captain Cook. The day after his arrival at the Cape of Good Hope, he waited on the governor, Baron Plettenberg, and other principal officers, who received and treated him with the greatest politeness.

They had only three men on-board, whom it was thought necessary to send on-shore for the recovery of their health; and for these the captain procured quarters, at the rate of thirty stivers, or half a-crown per day, for which they were provided with victuals, drink, and lodging,

On examining the rudder, it was found necessary to unhang it, and take it on-shore to repair. They were also delayed for want of caulkers. At length they obtained two workmen from one of the Dutch ships; and the Dutton, English East Indiaman, coming in from Bengal, Captain Rice obliged Captain Cook with two more, so that by the 26th of April this work was finished; and having got on-board all necessary stores, and a fresh supply of provisions and water, they took leave of the governor,

and other principal officers, and the next morning repaired on-board.

At day-break in the morning of the 15th of May, they saw the island of St. Helena, at the distance of fourteen leagues; and at midnight anchored in the road before the town. During their stay here, they finished some necessary repairs of the ship, which they had not time to do at the Cape. They also filled all their empty water-casks; and the crew were served with fresh beef, purchased at five pence per pound. Their beef is exceedingly good, and is the only refreshment they had worth mentioning.

On the 21st of May, the captain took leave of the governor, and repaired on-board. Upon leaving the shore, he was saluted with thirteen guns, which he returned. In the morning of the 28th, they made the Island of Ascension; and the same evening anchored in Cross Bay. They remained here till the evening of the 31st; and, notwithstanding they had several parties out every night, they got but twenty-four turtles, it being rather too late in the season; however, as they weighed between four and five hundred pounds each, they were pretty well off.

The island is about ten miles in length, and about five or six in breadth. It shews a surface composed of barren hills and vallies, on the most of which not a shrub or plant is to be seen for several miles, and where they found nothing but stones and sand, or rather flags and ashes; an indubitable sign that the isle, at some remote time, had been destroyed by a volcano, which has thrown up vast heaps of stones, and even hills. Between these heaps of stones they found a smooth, even surface, composed of ashes and sand, and very good travelling upon it; but one may as easily walk over broken glass-bottles as over the stones.

Turtles are to be found at this isle from January to June. The method of catching them is to have people upon the several sandy bays, to watch their coming on-shore to lay their eggs, which is always in the night, and then to turn them on their backs, till there be an opportunity to take them off the next day. It is recommended to send a good many men to each beach, where they were to lie quiet till the turtles were a-shore, and then rise, and turn them up at once. This method may be the best when the turtles are numerous; but, when there are but few, three or four men are sufficient for the largest beach; and if they keep patrolling it, close to the wash of the surf, during the night, by this method they will see all that come a-shore, and cause less noise than if there were more of them. It was by this method they caught the most; and this is the method by which the Americans take them. Nothing is more certain, than that all the turtles which are found about this island, come here for the sole purpose of laying their eggs, for they met with none but females; and of all those which were caught, not one had any food worth mentioning in its

stomach; a sure sign that they must have been a long time without any; and this may be the reason why the flesh of them is not so good as some they eat on the coast of New South Wales, which were caught on the spot where they fed.

On the 9th of June, at noon, made the island of Fernando de Noronha, bearing south-west-by-west half-west, distant six or seven leagues, as they afterwards found by the log. It appeared in detached and peaked hills, the largest of which looked like a church-tower, or steeple.

After standing very near rocks, they hoisted their colours, and then bore up round the north-end of the isle, or rather round a group of little islets; for they could see that the land was divided by narrow channels. There is a strong fort on the one next the main island, where there are several others, all of which seemed to have every advantage that nature can give them, and they are so disposed, as wholly to command all the anchoring and landing-places about the island.

This road seems to be well sheltered from the south and east winds. One of the seamen had been on-board a Dutch India ship, who put in at that isle on her way out in 1770. They were very sickly, and in want of refreshments and water. The Portuguese supplied them with some buffaloes and fowls, and they watered behind one of the beaches in a little pool. By reducing the observed latitude, at noon, to the peaked hill, its latitude will be 3 deg. 53 min. south, and its longitude, by the watch carried on from St. Helena, is 32 deg. 34 min. west.

On the 11th, at three o'clock in the afternoon, they crossed the equator in the longitude of 32 deg. 14 min. west. At five o'clock in the evening of the 13th July, made the island of Fayal, one of the Azores, and soon after that of Pico. Fresh provisions for present use may be got, such as beef, vegetables, and fruit; and hogs, sheep, and poultry for sea-stock, all at a pretty reasonable price. The bullocks and hogs are very good, but the sheep are small and wretchedly poor. The principal produce of Fayal is wheat and Indian corn, with which they supply Pico and some of the other isles. The chief town is called Villa De Horta. It is situated in the bottom of the bay, close to the edge of the sea, and is defended by two castles, one at each end of the town, and a wall of stone-work, extending along the sea-shore from the one to the other. Fayal, although the most noted for wines, does not raise sufficient for its own consumption. This article is raised at Pico, where there is no road for shipping; but being brought to De Horta, and from thence shipped abroad, chiefly to America, it has acquired the name of Fayal wine.

On the 29th, they made the land near Plymouth. The next morning anchored at Spithead: and the same day Captain Cook landed at Portsmouth, and set out for London, in company with Messrs. Wales, Forsters, and Hodges.

COOK'S THIRD VOYAGE,

1776—1780.

THE discoveries of Captain Cook were too valuable, and his skill as a navigator too evident, not to render it desirable that he should be actively employed; and as his Majesty's government had determined on a new attempt to decide the long agitated question, of a northern passage to the Pacific Ocean, he was selected to command the expedition, having previously been appointed a post-captain.

On the 10th of February, 1776, Captain Cook went on-board his Majesty's sloop, the *Resolution*, and hoisted the pendant, having received a commission to command her the preceding day. The *Discovery*, of three hundred tons, was at the same time, prepared for the service, and Captain Clerke, his second lieutenant in the preceding voyage, was appointed to the command of her.

These two ships were equipped in the Dock at Deptford, under the direction of Captain Cook. The *Resolution* was hauled into the river on the 9th of March, to complete her rigging, and take in stores and provisions for the voyage. Both ships, indeed, were abundantly supplied with every thing requisite for a long voyage. They sailed on the 29th of May, and arrived the next day at Long Reach, where the powder and shot, and other ordnance stores, were received.

On the 8th of June, while they lay in Long Reach, they had the satisfaction of a visit from the Earl of Sandwich, Sir Hugh Palliser, and others of the Board of Admiralty, to examine whether every thing had been completed pursuant to their orders, and the convenience of those who were to embark. They honoured Captain Cook with their company to dinner on that day; and were saluted on their coming on-board, and on their going a-shore, with seventeen guns and three cheers.

To convey some permanent benefit to the inhabitants of Otaheite, and of the other islands which they might happen to visit, his Majesty commanded some useful animals to be taken out; and on the 10th, they took on-board a bull, two cows with their calves, and some sheep, with hay and corn for their support. They were also furnished with a sufficient quantity of

valuable European garden seeds, which might add fresh supplies of food to the vegetable productions of the newly-discovered islands.

Both the ships, by order of the Board of Admiralty, were amply supplied with an extensive assortment of iron tools and trinkets, to facilitate a friendly commerce and intercourse with the inhabitants of such new countries as they might discover. With respect to their own wants, nothing was refused them that might be conducive to health, comfort, or convenience.

Those at the head of the naval department were equally solicitous to render the voyage of public utility; accordingly, they received on-board, the next day, several astronomical and nautical instruments, which the Board of Longitude entrusted to Captain Cook, and Mr. King, his second lieutenant; they having engaged to supply the place of a professed observator. The Board likewise put into their possession the time-keeper which Captain Cook had carried out in his last voyage, and which had performed so well. It was constructed by Mr. Kendall, and was a copy of Mr. Harrison's. Another time-keeper, and the same assortment of astronomical and other instruments, were put on-board the *Discovery*, for the use of Mr. William Bayly, a diligent and skilful observator, who was engaged to embark with Captain Clerke.

Mr. Anderson, surgeon to Captain Cook, added to his professional abilities a great knowledge of natural history. He had already visited the South Sea Islands in the same ship, and enabled the captain to enrich his relation of the preceding voyage with remarks of use and value.

Though several young men, among the sea-officers, were capable of being employed in constructing charts, drawing plans, and taking views of the coast and head-lands, Mr. Webber was engaged to embark with Captain Cook, for the purpose of supplying the defects of written accounts, by taking accurate and masterly drawings of the most memorable scenes of their transactions.

The necessary preparations being completed, Captain Cook received orders to proceed to Plymouth, and to take the *Discovery* under his command. In consequence of which, he ordered Captain Clerke to carry his ship also round to Plymouth.

The *Resolution*, with the *Discovery* in company, sailed from Long Reach on the 15th of June, and anchored at the Nore the same evening. The *Discovery* proceeded the next day, in obedience to Captain Cook's order, and the *Resolution* remained at the Nore till Captain Cook, who was then in London, should join her.

It being their intention to touch at Otaheite and the Society Islands, it had been determined to carry Omai back to his native country: accordingly, Captain Cook and he set out from London early on the 24th, and reached Chatham between ten and eleven

o'clock, where they dined with Commissioner Proby, who afterwards ordered his yacht to convey them to Sheerness, where the captain's boat was waiting to take them on-board the Resolution.

Though Omai left London with some degree of regret, when he reflected upon the favours and indulgencies he had received, yet when mention was made of his own islands, his eyes sparkled with joy. He entertained the highest ideas of this country and its inhabitants, but the pleasing prospect of returning home, loaded with what would be deemed invaluable treasures there, and of obtaining a distinguished superiority among his countrymen, operated so far as to suppress every uneasy sensation; and when he got on-board the ship, he appeared to be quite happy.

Omai was furnished by his Majesty, with quantities of every article that were supposed to be in estimation at Otaheite. He also received several presents from Lord Sandwich, Mr. Barks, and many others. Every method had, indeed, been employed during his abode in England, and at his departure, to make him the instrument of conveying to his countrymen an exalted opinion of British greatness and generosity.

About noon, on the 25th, they weighed anchor, and made sail for the Downs, with a gentle breeze at north-west by west. At nine, the same day, they anchored with the North Foreland bearing south by east, and Margate Point south-west by south.

On the 26th, at two o'clock, they weighed, and stood round the Foreland; and at eight o'clock the same morning anchored in the Downs. Here Captain Cook received two boats on-board, which had been built for him at Deal, and the next day at two o'clock in the afternoon, they got under sail, but the breeze soon died away, and they anchored again. At ten o'clock, the same night, they weighed again, and proceeded down the Channel. They anchored in Plymouth Sound on the 30th, at three o'clock in the afternoon, the Discovery having arrived three days before. On the 8th of July, Captain Cook received his instructions for the voyage, and an order to proceed to the Cape of Good Hope with the Resolution; with directions also to leave an order for Captain Clerke to follow him, as soon as he should join his ship, he being at that time in London.

The officers and men on-board the Resolution (including marines) were one hundred and twelve, and those on-board the Discovery were eighty. On the 10th of July, the proper persons came on-board, and paid the officers and crew up to the 30th of June. The petty officers and seamen received also two months wages in advance.

On the morning of the 11th, Captain Cook delivered into the hands of Mr. Burney, first lieutenant of the Discovery, Captain Clerke's sailing orders; a copy of which he also left with the commanding officer of his Majesty's ships at Plymouth, to be delivered to the captain on his arrival. In the afternoon they

weighed with the ebb, and got out beyond all the shipping in the Sound, where they were detained most of the following day. At eight o'clock in the evening, they weighed again and stood out of the Sound, with a gentle breeze at north-west by west.

On the 16th, at noon, the light-house of St. Agnes, on the isles of Sicily, bore north-west by west, distant about seven or eight miles; and on the 17th and 18th, they were off Ushant. On the 19th, they stood westward till eight o'clock in the morning, when the wind shifted, and they tacked and stretched to the southward: they beheld nine sail of large ships, which were supposed to be French men of war. On the 22nd, at ten in the morning, they saw Cape Ortegal about four leagues distant, on the afternoon of the 24th, they passed Cape Finisterre, with a fine gale at north north-east. Capt. Cook determined to touch at Teneriffe, to get a supply of hay and corn for the subsistence of the animals on board, as well as the usual refreshments for themselves. They saw Teneriffe on the 31st of July, at four in the afternoon; and at day-light on the 1st of August, they sailed round the east point of that island, and anchored on the south-side, in the road of Santa Cruz, about eight o'clock, in twenty-three fathoms' water.

Immediately after anchoring, they received a visit from the master of the port, who asked the ship's name. Upon his retiring, Captain Cook sent an officer a-shore, to present his respects to the governor, and ask his permission to take in water, and to purchase such articles as were necessary. The governor very politely complied with Captain Cook's request, and sent an officer on-board to compliment him on his arrival. In the afternoon Captain Cook waited upon him, accompanied by some of the officers; and before he returned to his ship bespoke some corn and straw, ordering a quantity of wine, and made an agreement for a supply of water.

The road of Santa Cruz is situated on the south-east side of the island, before the town of the same name. It is said to be the principal road of Teneriffe for shelter, capacity, and the goodness of its bottom. The water to supply the shipping, and for the use of the inhabitants of Santa Cruz, is derived from a rivulet that runs from the hills, which is conveyed into the town in wooden troughs. As these troughs were at this time repairing, fresh water was extremely scarce.

From the appearance of the country about Santa Cruz, it might naturally be concluded that Teneriffe is a barren spot; they were convinced, however, from the ample supplies they received, that it not only produced sufficient to supply its own inhabitants, but also enough to spare for visitors. Though wine is the chief produce of this island, beef may be had at about three pence sterling a pound; the oxen, however, are small, lean, and bony. Sheep, goats, hogs, and poultry, may be had on terms equally reasonable. A great variety of fruits are to be

had in plenty, as pears, figs, grapes, mulberries, musk mellons, &c. besides others that were not then in season. The pumpkins, potatoes, and onions which grow here, are excellent.

Indian corn is produced on this island, and is sold at about three shillings and sixpence per bushel: the fruits and vegetables are, in general, very cheap. Though the inhabitants are but indifferently supplied with fish from the adjoining seas, they are engaged in a considerable fishery on the coast of Barbary, and the produce of it sells at a very moderate price.

Teneriffe is certainly a more eligible place than Madeira, for ships to touch at which are bound on long voyages; but the wine of the latter is infinitely superior to that of the former: the difference of their prices is almost as considerable as their qualities, for the best Teneriffe wine was sold for twelve pounds a pipe, whereas a pipe of the best Madeira was worth considerably more than double that sum.

Behind the town of Santa Cruz, the country rises gradually to a moderate height; afterwards it continues to rise south-westward towards the celebrated peak of Teneriffe. But they were much disappointed in their expectations with respect to its appearance.*

The island, eastward of Santa Cruz, appears perfectly barren. Ridges of the high hills run towards the sea, between are deep vallies, terminating at mountains that run across and are higher than the former.

On the 1st of August, in the afternoon, Mr. Anderson, (Capt. Cook's surgeon) went on-shore to one of these vallies, intending to reach the top of the remoter hills, but time would not permit him to get farther than their foot. The lower hills produce great quantities of the *euphorbia Canariensis*. The people on the spot imagine its juice to be so caustic as to erode the skin; but Mr. Anderson convinced them to the contrary, by thrusting his finger into a plant full of it. The inhabitants dry the bushes of the *euphorbia*, and carry them home for fuel. Santa Cruz, though not large, is a well-built city. Their churches have not a magnificent appearance without, but they are decent, and tolerably handsome within. Almost facing the stone pier, which runs into the sea from the town, is a marble column, lately erected, enriched with human figures, which reflect honour on the statuary.

On the 2nd of August, in the afternoon, Mr. Anderson and three others hired mules to ride to the city of Laguna, about the distance of four miles from Santa Cruz. They arrived there between five and six in the evening, but the sight of it did not reward them for their trouble, as the roads were very bad, and the cattle but indifferent. Though the place is extensive, it

* In Sparto's History of the Royal Society, page 200, &c. is an account of a journey to the top of the peak of Teneriffe. A modern traveller, viz. the Chevalier de Borda, who measured the height of this mountain in August 1776, makes it 12,340 English feet. Humboldt who carefully examined the peak makes its height 12,072 feet.—Editor.

hardly deserves to be dignified with the name of a city. There are some good houses, but the disposition of the streets is very irregular. Laguna is larger than Santa Cruz, but much inferior to it in appearance.

The road from Santa Cruz to Laguna, runs up a deep, barren hill; but, lower down, we saw some fig-trees and corn-fields. The corn, however, is not produced here without great labour, the ground being greatly encumbered with stones. Nothing else presented itself, deserving notice, except a few aloe plants in flower on the side of the road.

The laborious work in this island is chiefly performed by mules, horses being scarce, and reserved for the use of the officers. Oxen are also much employed here. Some hawks and parrots were seen, which are natives of the island; as also the sea-swallow, sea-gulls, partridges, swallows, canary birds, and black-birds. There are also lizards, locusts, and three or four sorts of dragon-flies.

Mr. Anderson was informed, by a gentleman of acknowledged veracity, that a shrub is common here, agreeing exactly with the description given by Linnæus of the tea-shrub, as growing in China and Japan. It is considered as a weed, and large quantities are rooted out of the vineyards every year. The Spaniards, however, who inhabit the island, sometimes make use of it, and ascribe to it all the qualities of the tea imported from China.

The same gentleman mentioned to Mr. Anderson another botanical curiosity, which is called the *impregnated lemon*. It is a distinct and perfect lemon inclosed within another.

A certain sort of grape growing here, is deemed an excellent remedy in phtisical complaints. The air and climate are remarkably healthful, and particularly adapted to afford relief in such complaints. By residing at different heights in the island, it is in the power of any one to procure such a temperature of air as may be best suited to his constitution. He may continue where it is mild and salubrious, or he may ascend till the cold becomes intolerable. No person, it is said, can live comfortably within a mile of the perpendicular height of the peak, after the month of August. Smoke continually issues from near the top of the peak, but they have had no earthquake or eruption since 1704, when the port of Carachia was destroyed, being filled up by the rivers of burning lava that flowed into it; and houses are now built where ships formerly lay at anchor.

The trade of Teneriffe is very extensive, forty thousand pipes of wine being annually made there; which is consumed in the island or made into brandy, and sent to the Spanish West Indies. Indeed the wine is the only considerable article of the foreign commerce of Teneriffe, unless we reckon the large quantities of filtering stones brought from Grand Canary.

The race of inhabitants found here when the Spaniards dis-

covered the Canaries, are no longer a distinct people, having internarried with the Spanish settlers; their descendants, however, may be known, from their being remarkably tall, strong, and large-boned. The men are tawny, and the women are pale. The inhabitants of Teneriffe, in general, are decent, grave, and civil; retaining that solemn cast which distinguishes those of their country from others. Though we are not of opinion that our manners are similar to those of the Spaniards, yet Omai declared, he did not think there was much difference. He said, indeed, that they did not appear to be so friendly as the English: and that their persons nearly resembled those of his countrymen.

Having got their water and other articles on-board, they weighed anchor on the 4th of August, quitted Teneriffe, and proceeded on their voyage.

On the 10th, at nine o'clock in the evening, they saw the island of Bonavista bearing south, distant about a league; though they then thought themselves much further off, but it soon appeared they were mistaken; for, after hauling to the eastward, to clear the sunken rocks that lie near the south-east point of the island, they found themselves close upon them and barely weathered the breakers. Their situation was for some minutes, so very alarming, that Captain Cook, did not chose to sound, as that might have increased the danger without any possibility of lessening it.

Having cleared the rocks, they steered between Bonavista and the island of Mayo, intending to look into Port Praya for the Discovery, as Captain Cook had told Captain Clerke that he should touch there. At one o'clock they saw the rocks south-west of Bonavista, bearing south-east, distant three or four leagues.

On Monday the 12th, at six o'clock in the morning, the island of Mayo bore south south-east, distant four or five leagues. They sounded, and found ground at sixty fathoms. At the distance of three or four miles from this island, they saw not the least appearance of vegetation on it; nothing presented itself to their view, but that lifeless brown, so common in unwooded countries under the torrid zone.

During their continuance among these islands, they had gentle breezes of wind, varying from the south-east to east, and some calms. On the 13th, at nine o'clock in the morning, they arrived before Port Praya, in the island of St. Jago, where two Dutch East India ships, and a small brigantine were at anchor.

They lost the north-east trade-wind the day after they left the Cape de Verde islands; and, on the 30th, got that which blows from the south-east. The wind, during this interval, was principally in the south-west quarter. It generally blew a gentle breeze, but sometimes fresh, and in squalls. Between the latitude of 12 deg. and of 7 deg. north, the weather was very

gloomy and frequently rainy; insomuch, that they were enabled to save as much water as filled the greatest part of their empty casks.

Every bad consequence is to be apprehended from these rains, and the close sultry weather accompanying them. Commanders of ships ought carefully to purify the air between decks with fire and smoke, and to oblige the people to change their clothes at every opportunity. These necessary precautions were strictly observed on-board the *Resolution* and *Discovery*, and they enjoyed the advantage of it, having fewer sick than on either of Captain Cook's former voyages. The ship, however, was very leaky in all her upper works. The sultry weather had opened her seams so wide that the rain-water passed through as it fell. The officers in the gun-room were driven from their cabins, by the water that came through the sides, and hardly a man could lie dry in his bed. The caulkers were employed to repair these defects, as soon as they got into fair, settled weather; but Captain Cook would not trust them over the sides while they were at sea.

On the 1st of September, they crossed the equator, in the longitude of 27 deg. 38 min. west, and passed the afternoon in performing the old ceremony of ducking those who had not crossed the equator before. On the 8th, they were a little to the southward of Cape St. Augustine, and proceeded on their voyage without any remarkable occurrence till the 6th of October. Being then in the latitude of 35 deg. 15 min. south, longitude 7 deg. 45 min. west, they alternately met with light airs and calms for three successive days. For some days before they had seen albatrosses and pintadoes, and they then saw three penguins. In consequence of this they sounded, but found no ground with a line of one hundred and fifty fathoms. They shot a few birds, one of which was a black petrel, about the size of a crow.

In the evening of the 8th, a bird, which the sailors called a noddy, settled on the rigging, and was taken. It was larger than a common English black-bird, and nearly of the same colour, except the upper part of the head, which was white. It was web-footed, had black legs, and a long black bill. A fresh gale from the north-west succeeded this calm weather, which continued two days. Afterwards they had variable light airs for about four hours, when the north-west wind returned, and blew fresh. On the 17th, they saw the Cape of Good Hope, and, on the 18th, anchored in Table Bay, in four fathoms' water.

After receiving the usual visit from the master-attendant and the surgeon, Captain Cook sent an officer to Baron Plettenberg, the governor, and saluted the garrison with thirteen guns, and was complimented in return with the same number. Two French East-India ships were in the bay, the one outward, and the other homeward bound.

After having saluted, Captain Cook went on-shore, accompanied by some of his officers, and waited on the governor, the lieutenant-governor, the fiscal, and the commander of the troops. These gentlemen received Captain Cook with the greatest civility; and the governor, in particular, voluntarily promised him every assistance that the place afforded. Before Captain Cook returned on-board, he ordered fresh meat, greens, &c., to be provided every day for the ship's company.

On the 22nd, they fixed their tents and observatory, and the next day they began to observe equal altitudes of the sun, in order to discover whether the watch had altered its rate. The caulkers were set to work to caulk the ship; and Captain Cook had concerted measures for supplying both ships with such provisions as were wanted; and, as the several articles for the Resolution were got ready, they were immediately conveyed on-board.

The homeward-bound French ship sailed for Europe on the 29th, and by her they sent letters to England. The next day the Hampshire, East-India ship, from Bencoolen, anchored in the bay.

On the 31st of October it blew excessively hard at south-east, and continued for three days. The Resolution was the only ship in the bay that rode out the gale without dragging her anchors.

The storm ceased on the 3rd of November, and on the 6th, the Hampshire sailed for England, in which Captain Cook sent home an invalid. On the 10th, in the morning, the Discovery arrived in the bay. She sailed from Plymouth on the 1st of August, and would have been with them a week sooner, had not the late gale of wind blown her off the coast. Captain Clerke, on his passage from England, lost one of his marines, by falling over-board. No other accident happened among his people, and they arrived in perfect health. The next day, the Discovery wanted caulking; Captain Cook sent all his workmen on-board her, and lent every other assistance to the captain to expedite his supply of provisions and water.

Having, by the governor's permission, taken their cattle on-shore, on the night preceding the 14th, some dogs got in amongst the sheep, forced them out of the pen, killed four, and dispersed the rest. They recovered six of them the next day; but, among those which were missing were two rams, and two of the finest ewes in the whole flock. Though the Dutch frequently boast of the police at the Cape, yet the captain's sheep evaded all the vigilance of the fiscal's officers and people. At length, after much trouble and expense, by employing some of the lowest fellows of the place, they recovered all but the two ewes. One of the rams, however, was so miserably torn by the dogs, that it was thought he would never recover.

Mr. Hemmy, the lieutenant-governor, very obligingly offered

to make up this loss, by giving Captain Cook a Spanish ram, out of some he had sent for from Lisbon; but the captain declined the offer, thinking it would equally answer his purpose to take with him some of the Cape rams: in this, however, the captain was mistaken. Mr. Hemmy had endeavoured to introduce European sheep at the Cape; but all his attempts were frustrated by the obstinacy of the country people, who highly esteem their own breed, on account of their large tails; the fat of which sometimes produces more money than the whole carcase besides. Indeed, the most remarkable thing in the Cape sheep is the length and thickness of their tails, which weigh from ten to fifteen pounds.

While the ships were repairing for the prosecution of the voyage, Mr. Anderson, and some of the officers, made an excursion, to take a survey of the neighbouring country.

In the forenoon of Saturday, the 16th of November, he, and five others set out in a waggon, to take a view of the country. They crossed the large plain to the eastward of the town, which is entirely a white sand, resembling that which is commonly found on beaches. At five in the afternoon they passed a large farm-house, some corn-fields and vineyards, situated beyond the plain, where the soil appeared worth cultivating. At seven they arrived at Stellenbosh, a colony, in point of importance, next to that of Cape Town.

The village stands at the foot of the range of lofty mountains, about twenty miles to the eastward of Cape Town, and consists of about thirty houses, which are neat and clean; a rivulet, and the shelter of some large oaks, planted at its first settling, form a rural prospect in this desert country. There are some thriving vineyards and orchards about the place, which seem to indicate an excellent soil, though perhaps much may be owing to the uncommon serenity of the air.

At this season of the year, Mr. Anderson could find but few plants in flower, and insects were very scarce. He and his companions left Stellenbosh the next morning, and soon arrived at the house they had passed on Saturday; Mr. Cloeder, the owner of which, having sent them an invitation to visit him, they were entertained by this gentleman with great politeness and hospitality. They were received by a band of music, which, continued playing while at dinner; which, in that situation, might be reckoned elegant. In the afternoon they crossed the country, and passed some large plantations. In the evening they arrived at a farm-house, which is said to be the first in the cultivated tract called the Pearl. Here they had a view of Drakenstein, the third colony of this country, which contains several little farms or plantations.

Plants and insects were as scarce here as at Stellenbosh, but there was a greater plenty of shrubs, or small trees, naturally produced, than they had before seen in the country.

On Tuesday, the 19th, in the afternoon, they went to see a remarkably large stone, called by the inhabitants the Tower of Babylon, or the Pearl Diamond. It stands upon the top of some low hills, and is of an oblong shape, rounded at the top, and lying nearly south and north. The east and west sides are nearly perpendicular. The south end is not equally steep, but its greatest height is there; whence it declines gently to the north part, which they ascended, and had a very extensive prospect of the whole country.

The circumference of this stone is about half a mile, as they were half an hour walking round it, including allowances for stopping, and a bad road. Its height seems to equal the dome of St. Paul's Church. Except some few fissures, it is one uninterrupted mass of stone. The stone is of that sort which mineralogists call *Saxum conglutinatum*.

On the 20th, in the morning, they set out from the Pearl, and going a different road, passed through an uncultivated country to the Tyger Hills, where they beheld some tolerable corn-fields. About noon they stopped in a valley for refreshments, where they were plagued with a vast number of musquitoes; and, in the evening arrived at the Cape Town.

On Saturday, the 23rd, they got the observatory, clock, &c. on-board. From the result of several calculations and observations, they had reason to conclude, that the watch, or time-piece, had performed well all the way from England.

Captain Cook fearing a second disaster, got his sheep and other cattle on-board as soon as possible. He also increased his stock by purchasing two bulls, two heifers, two stallions, two mares, two rams, some ewes and goats, some poultry, and some rabbits.

Both ships being supplied with provisions and water sufficient for two years and upwards, and every other necessary article, and Captain Cook having given Captain Clerke a copy of his instructions, they repaired on-board on the morning of the 30th. A breeze sprung up at south-east, at five in the afternoon, with which they weighed and stood out of the bay; at nine it fell calm, and they anchored. At three o'clock next morning they weighed and put to sea, with a light breeze at south, but did not get clear of the land till the 3rd of December in the morning.

They continued to the south-east, followed by a mountainous sea, which occasioned the ship to roll exceedingly, and rendered the cattle troublesome. Several goats, especially the males, died, and some sheep. They now began to feel the cold in a very sensible degree.

On Thursday, the 5th, a squall of wind carried away the mizen top-mast of the Resolution, but they had another to replace it. On the evening of the 6th, being then in the latitude of 39 deg. 14 min. south, and in the 23 deg. 56 min. east, they observed several spots of water of a reddish hue. Upon

examining some of this water, that was taken up, they perceived a number of small animals, which the microscope discovered to resemble cray-fish.

On Thursday, the 12th, at noon, they discovered land extending from south-east by south, to south-east by east, which, on a nearer approach, they found to be two islands. That which lies most to the south, appeared to be about fifteen leagues in circuit; and the most northerly about nine leagues in circuit.

They passed at an equal distance from both islands, and could not discover either tree or shrub on either of them. They seemed to have a rocky shore, and excepting the south-east parts, a ridge of barren mountains, whose sides and summits were covered with snow.

These two islands, and four others more to the east, were discovered by Captains Marion du Fresne and Crozet, French navigators, in January, 1772, on their passage from the Cape of Good Hope to the Philippine Islands. As they have no names in the French chart of the Southern Hemisphere, Captain Cook named the two they now saw, Prince Edward's Islands, and the others by the name of Marion's and Crozet's Islands. They had now, in general, strong gales, and very indifferent weather. After leaving Prince Edward's Islands, they shaped their course to pass to the southward of the four others, to get into the latitude of the land discovered by Monsieur de Kerguelen.

Captain Cook had received instructions to examine this island, and endeavoured to discover a good harbour. On the 16th, they saw numbers of penguins and divers, and rock-weed floating in the sea; and on the 21st, they saw a very large seal. The weather was now very foggy, and as they hourly expected to fall in with the land, their navigation was both dangerous and tedious.

On the 24th, at six in the morning, the fog clearing away a little, they saw land, bearing south south-east, which they afterwards found to be an island of considerable height, and about three leagues in circuit. They soon after discovered another of equal magnitude, about one league to the eastward; and, between these two, some smaller ones. In the direction of south by east, another high island was seen. They did but just weather the island last mentioned: it was a high, round rock, named Bligh's Cap; Captain Cook supposed this to be the same that Monsieur de Kerguelen called the Isle of Rendezvous; but he knew nothing that could rendezvous at it but the fowls of the air, for it was certainly inaccessible to every animal.

The weather beginning to clear up about eleven, they tacked, and steered in for the land. At noon they were enabled to determine the latitude of Bligh's Cap to be 48 deg. 29 min. south, and its longitude 63 deg. 40 min. east. They passed it at three o'clock.

Presently after they clearly saw the land, and at four o'clock

it extended from south-east to south-west by scuth, distant about four miles. The left extreme, which Captain Cook judged to be the northern point of this land, called in the French chart of the Southern Hemisphere Cape François, terminated in a high perpendicular rock; and the right one in a high indented point.

Towards the middle of the land there appeared to be an inlet; but, on their approaching it, they saw it was only a bending in the coast: they therefore bore up to go round Cape François. Having got off the Cape, they observed the coast to the southward much indented by points and bays, and therefore, fully expected to find a good harbour. They soon discovered one, into which they began to ply; but it presently fell calm, and they anchored in forty-five fathoms' water; the *Discovery* also anchored there soon after. Mr. Bligh, the master, was ordered to sound the harbour; who reported it to be safe and commodious.

Early in the morning of the 25th, they weighed, and having worked into the harbour, they anchored in eight fathoms' water. The *Discovery* got in at two o'clock in the afternoon; when Captain Clerke stated then that he had with difficulty escaped being driven on the south point of the harbour, his anchor having started before he could shorten in the cable. They were, therefore, obliged to set sail, and drag the anchor after them, till they had room to heave it up, when they perceived that one of its palms was broken off.

Immediately after they had anchored, Captain Cook ordered all the boats to be hoisted out, and the empty water casks to be got ready. In the mean time he landed, to search for a convenient spot where they might be filled, and to observe what the place afforded.

He found vast quantities of penguins, and other birds, and seals on the shore. The latter were not numerous, but so insensible of fear, that they killed as many as they chose, and made use of their fat and blubber as oil for their lamps, and other purposes. Fresh water was exceedingly plentiful; but not a single tree or shrub were to be discovered, and but little herbage of any kind; though they had flattered themselves with the hope of meeting with something considerable growing here, having observed the sides of some of the hills to be of a lively green. Before Captain Cook returned to his ship, he ascended a ridge of rocks, rising one above another, expecting, by that means to obtain a view of the country: but, before he had reached the top, so thick a fog came on that it was with difficulty he could find his way down again. Towards the evening they hauled the seine at the head of the harbour, but caught no more than half a dozen small fish; nor had they any better success the next day, when they tried with hook and line. Their only resource, therefore, for fresh provisions, was birds, which were innumerable.

Though it was both foggy and rainy, on Thursday, the 26th, they began to fill water, and to cut grass for the cattle, near the

head of the harbour. The rivulets were swelled to such a degree, by the rain that fell, that the sides of the hills bounding the harbour appeared to be covered with a sheet of water.

The people having laboured hard for two successive days, and nearly completed their water, Captain Cook allowed them the 27th of December as a day of rest, to celebrate Christmas. In consequence of which, many of them went on-shore, and made excursions into the country, which they found desolate and barren in the extreme. In the evening one of them presented a quart bottle to Captain Cook, which he found on the north-side of the harbour, fastened with some wire to a projecting rock. This bottle contained a piece of parchment, with the following inscription:—

Ludovico XV. Galliarum
rege, et d.* Boynes
regi a Secretis ad res
maritimas annis 1772 et
1773.

It is evident from this inscription, that the voyagers were not the first Europeans who had visited this harbour. †

Captain Cook as a memorial of having been in this harbour, wrote on the other side of the parchment as follows:

Naves Resolution
et Discovery
de Rege Magnæ Britanniæ,
Decembris 1776.

He then put it again into the bottle, accompanied with a silver two-penny piece of 1772, covered the mouth of the bottle with a leaden cap, and placed it next morning in a pile of stones, erected for that purpose on an eminence, near the place where it was found. Here Captain Cook displayed the British flag, and named the place Christmas Harbour, it being on that festival they arrived in it.

It is the first inlet that they met with on the south-east side of Cape François, which forms the north-side of the harbour, and is the northern point of this land. The situation sufficiently distinguishes it from any of the other inlets; and to make it still more remarkable, its south point terminates in a high rock, perforated quite through, forming an appearance like the arch of a bridge. The head of the harbour lies open to only two points of the compass, and these are covered by islands in the offing, so that a sea cannot fall in to hurt a ship. It is high water here about ten o'clock at the full and change days, and the tide rises about four feet.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King,

* The *d* is probably a contraction of the word *domino*.

† Captain Cook supposes it to have been left by Monsieur de Boisguchenneu, who went on-shore the 13th of February 1772, the day that Monsieur de Kerguelen discovered the land; but, the captain appears to be for once mistaken; for, how could Monsieur de Boisguchenneu, in the beginning of 1772, leave an inscription which commemorates a transaction of the following year?

d to such a
hills bounding
water.
cessive days,
allowed them
te Christmas.
n-shore, and
desolate and
n presented a
he north-side
jecting rock.
the following

gers were not
this harbour,
s:

l with a silver
bottle with a
le of stones,
place where
British flag,
n that festival

n-east side of
harbour, and
efficiently dis-
make it still
h rock, per-
he arch of a
y two points
the offing,
water here
he tide rises



Mr. King,

ehenneu, who
len discovered
d Monsieur de
mmemorates a

his second lieutenant, went upon Cape François, expecting from this elevation to have had a view of the sea coast, and the islands lying off it. But they found every distant object below them hid in a thick fog. The land on a level with them, or of a greater height, was visible enough, and appeared exceedingly naked and desolate: except some hills to the south-ward, which were covered with snow. When they returned to the ship, they found her unmoored, and ready to put to sea: but they did not weigh anchor till five o'clock the next morning.

As soon as the ships cleared Christmas Harbour, which was on Sunday, the 29th, they steered along the coast in a south-east direction; and notwithstanding for some time past fogs had prevailed more or less every day, they had a fine breeze at north-west, and clear weather. Though they kept the lead constantly going, they seldom struck the ground with a sixty fathoms' line.

About eight o'clock, they were off a promontory which Captain Cook named Cape Cumberland. It is situated about a league and a half from the southernmost point of Christmas Harbour; and between them is a bay with two arms. Off Cape Cumberland is a small, but high island, on the top of which is a rock somewhat like a sentry-box, which occasioned their giving it that name. Two miles farther to the eastward lies a group of other small islands, between which and Sentry-box Island they sailed, the channel being a full mile broad, and more than forty fathoms deep, having found no bottom with a line of that length.

Having passed through this channel, they discovered a bay running in three leagues to the westward, which is formed by Cape Cumberland to the north, and a promontory to the south. This the captain named point Pringle, in compliment to Sir John Pringle, President of the Royal Society. The bottom of the bay was named Cumberland Bay.

To the southward of this a fifth bay is formed, which was named White Bay, on account of some white sands or rocks at the bottom. There are also several lesser bays or coves, which appeared to be sheltered from all winds. Off the south point, several rocks raise their heads above the water, and probably there are many others that do not.

Thus far they had steered in a direction parallel to the coast, and at no time more than two miles from it. They observed the beach to be sandy, and in many places swarming with birds, but all along retaining the same barren and naked appearance.

Having kept on the larboard bow, the land which they first discovered off Cape François, in the direction of south, 53 deg. east, they took for an island, and expected to find a passage between it and the main; but found it to be a peninsula, joined to the rest of the coast by a low isthmus. The bay formed by the peninsula, Captain Cook named Repulse Bay. The northern point of the peninsula was named Howe's Foreland, in honour of Lord Howe.

On approaching it, they discovered a number of rocks and breakers, and two islands to the eastward of it, which at first seemed but one. About noon, they were in the middle of the channel, having steered betwixt this island and the foreland, when their latitude they found to be 48 deg. 51 min. south. The coast is but low, and crowded with sea-birds. The land is pretty high and of a rocky substance. Some seals were observed upon the beach.

Having cleared the rocks and islands before mentioned, they found the sea chequered with sea-weeds, which they were sensible were fast to the bottom. A great depth of water is sometimes found on such shoals notwithstanding which, the tops of some rocks nearly touched the surface of the water. This makes it dangerous to sail over them without examining them. They endeavoured to avoid them, by sailing through the channels whereby they were separated. The sea was as smooth as a mill-pond, and they kept the lead continually going, yet never struck the ground, even with a line of sixty fathoms. Having run in this manner for an hour, they discovered a large rock even with the water, amidst a bed of weeds: this was sufficiently alarming to make them take every precaution to avoid danger.

They were now about eight miles to the southward of Howe's Foreland, across the mouth of a large bay. In this bay are several rocks, low islands, and beds of sea-weed, but there appeared to be winding channels between them. They were so much embarrassed with these shoals, that they hauled off to the eastward, in hopes of extricating themselves from their difficulties; but this plunged them into greater, and they found it absolutely necessary to secure the ships, if possible, before night, especially as the weather was lazy, and a fog was apprehended.

Observing some inlets to the south-west of this, Captain Clerke was ordered to lead in for the shore, as his vessel drew less water than the Resolution; this he attempted, by running over the edges of some of the shoals, having from ten to twenty fathoms' water; which so soon as he passed, he had no ground at the depth of fifty fathoms. About five o'clock in the evening, Captain Clerke made the signal for discovering a harbour, in which they got to a safe anchor in a little time there-after, at about half a mile distant from the shore.

They were scarce settled when the wind blew very strong; it, however, continued fair, and the fogs being dispersed, they got a good view of the country round: Mr. Bligh, the master of Captain Cook's vessel, was ordered a-shore with two boats, to survey the upper part of the harbour, and look out for wood.

He also desired Captain Clerke to send his master to sound the channel south of the small isles, and went himself in his other boat, accompanied by Mr. Gore and Mr. Bayly, and

of rocks and
which at first
middle of the
the foreland,
south. The
The land is
were observed

mentioned, they
th they were
th of water is
which, the tops
water. This
mining them.
ugh the chan-
s smooth as a
ing, yet never
oms. Having
a large rock
his was suffi-
tation to avoid

ard of Howe's
a this bay are
ed, but there
They were so
led off to the
m their diffi-
they found it
sible, before
a fog was

this, Captain
vessel drew
by running
en to twenty
no ground at
the evening,
harbour, in
ere-after, at

ery strong;
ed, they got
e master of
o boats, to
r wood.
r to sound
hself in his
Bayly, and

landed on the north point, to see what discovery could be made from thence.

From the highest hill over the point, they had a pretty good view of the sea-coast, as far as Howe's Foreland. It is much indented, and several rocky points seemed to shoot out from it, with coves and inlets of unequal extent. One of the latter, the end of which they could not see, was disjoined from that in which the ships were at anchor, by the point they then stood upon. A great many small islands, rocks, and breakers appeared scattered along the coast, as well to the southward as to the northward; and they saw no better channel to get out of the harbour, than by the one through which they had entered it.

While Captain Cook and Mr. Bayly were making these observations, Mr. Gore encompassed a hill, and joined them at the place where the boat was attending for them. There was nothing to obstruct their walk, except some craggy precipices; the country being, if possible, more barren and desolate than that about Christmas Harbour. With regret he observed, that there was neither food nor covering for cattle of any sort, and if he had left any they must have perished. In the little cove where their boat was waiting for them, (which Captain Cook called Penguin Cove, from the immense number of those birds appearing there) is a fine river of fresh water, which we could approach without difficulty. Some large seals, shags, and a few ducks were seen here; and Mr. Bayly had a glance of a very small land-bird, but it flew away among the rocks and they lost it.

They got on-board at nine, and Mr. Bligh returned soon after: he reported that he had been four miles up the harbour, probably near the top of it; he found its direction to the south-west; its breadth near the ships about a mile, but narrower farther up. He found the country very rocky, and very little verdure of any kind. Penguins and other birds were seen in great numbers.

Next morning they put to sea, Captain Cook having named the harbour Port Palliser. It is situated 49 deg. 3 min. south latitude, and 69 deg. 37 min. east longitude, and lies about five leagues south-east from Howe's Foreland.

At four leagues distance, they perceived a round hill like a sugar loaf, which was named Mount Campbell; a low point, beyond which no land was to be seen, bore south-east at about twenty miles distance; they were then two leagues from shore. The land is low and level. The mountains end about five leagues from the low point, leaving a great extent of low land, on which Mount Campbell is situated. These mountains seemed to be composed of naked rocks, whose summits were covered with snow; and nothing but sterility was to be seen in the vallies.

At noon they perceived low land, opening off the low point just mentioned, in the direction of south south-east. It proved

to be the eastern extremity of this land, and was named Cape Digby. The shore forms one great bay from Cape Digby to Howe's Foreland; which produces a vast quantity of sea-weed, of that sort which Mr. Banks distinguishes by the name of *fucus giganteus*. Though the stem of this weed is not much thicker than a man's thumb, some of it grows to the amazing length of sixty fathoms.

They observed a small bending in the coast, about one o'clock, on the north-side of Cape Digby, for which they steered, intending to anchor, which finding impossible, they stretched forward, to make what farther observations they could that night. The coast, from Cape Digby, trends nearly south-west by south to a low point, to which Captain Cook, in honour of her Majesty, gave the name of Point Charlotte.

Six leagues from Cape Digby, in the direction of south-west half west, is a pretty high projecting point, which was called Prince of Wales's Foreland; six leagues beyond that, in the same direction, and in the latitude of 49 deg. 54 min. south, and the longitude of 70 deg. 13 min. east, is the most southerly point of the whole coast, which he distinguished by the name of Cape George, in honour of his Majesty.

Between Point Charlotte and the Prince of Wales's Foreland, they discovered a deep inlet, which was called Royal Sound; and advancing to the south, they saw another inlet into the Royal Sound, on the south-west side of the Prince of Wales's Foreland. On the south-west side of the Royal Sound, all the land to Cape George consists of elevated hills, gradually rising from the sea, to a considerable height; they were naked and barren, and their summits cap't with snow. Not a vestige of a tree or shrub, was to be seen. Some of the low land about Cape Digby, seemed to be covered with a green turf, but a considerable part of it appeared quite naked. Penguins and other oceanic birds were numerous on the beaches, and shags innumerable kept flying about their ships.

Anxious to get the length of Cape George, in order to be certain whether it was the most southerly point or not, they stretched to the south, with all the sail they could carry; but the wind shifting, they found it impossible to proceed in that direction, and stood away from the coast.

At this time Cape George bore south 53 deg. west, distant about seven leagues: they observed no land to the south of it, except a small island that lies off the pitch of the Cape; and a south-west swell which they met when they brought the Cape to bear in this direction, almost convinced them that there was no more in that quarter.

The French discoverers imagined Cape François to be the projecting point of a southern continent. The English have discovered that no such continent exists, and that the land in question is an island of small extent; which, from its sterility

might properly be called the Island of Desolation. But Captain Cook was unwilling to rob Monsieur de Kerguelen of the honour of its bearing his name.

Mr. Anderson, who, during the short time they lay in Christmas Harbour, lost no opportunity of searching the country in every direction, relates the following particulars :—

“No place (says he) hitherto discovered in either hemisphere, affords so scanty a field for the naturalist as this sterile spot. Some verdure, indeed, appeared, when at a small distance from the shore, which might raise the expectation of meeting with a little herbage; but all this lively appearance was occasioned by one small plant, resembling saxifrage, which grew up the hills in large spreading tufts, on a kind of rotten turf, which, if dried, might serve for fuel, and the only thing seen here that could possibly be applied to that purpose.

“Another plant, which grew to near the height of two feet, was pretty plentifully scattered about the boggy declivities; it had the appearance of a small cabbage when it has shot into seeds. It had the watery, acrid taste of the antiscorbutic plants, though it materially differed from the whole tribe. When eaten raw, it was not unlike the New Zealand scurvy grass; but when boiled, it acquired a rank flavour. At this time, none of its seeds were ripe enough to be brought home, and introduced into our English kitchen-gardens.

“Near the brooks and boggy places were found two other small plants, which were eaten as salad; the one like garden cresses, and very hot, and the other very mild; the latter is a curiosity, having not only male and female, but also androgynous plants. Some coarse grass grew pretty plentifully in a few small spots near the harbour, which was cut down for our cattle. In short, the whole catalogue of plants did not exceed eighteen, including a beautiful species of lichen, and several sorts of moss. Nor was there the appearance of a tree or shrub in the whole country.

“Among the animals, the most considerable were seals, which were distinguished by the name of sea bears, being the sort that are called the ursine seal. They come on-shore to repose and breed. At that time they were shedding their hair, and so remarkably tame, that there was no difficulty in killing them.

“No other quadruped was seen; but a great number of oceanic birds, as ducks, shags, petrels, &c. The ducks were somewhat like a widgeon, both in size and figure; a considerable number of them were killed and eaten: they were excellent food, and had not the least fishy taste.

“The Cape petrel, the small blue one, and the small one, or Mother Carey's chicken, were not plentiful here; but another sort, which is the largest of the petrels, and called by the seamen Mother Carey's goose, is found in abundance. This petrel is as

large as an albatross, and is carnivorous, feeding on the dead carcasses of seals, birds, &c.

“The greatest number of birds here were penguins, which consist of three sorts. The head of the largest is black, the upper part of the body of a leaden grey, the under part white, and the feet black; two broad stripes of fine yellow descend from the head to the breast; the bill is of a reddish colour, and longer than in the other sorts. The second sort is about half the size of the former. It is of a blackish grey on the upper part of the body, and has a white spot on the upper part of the head. The bill and feet are yellowish. In the third sort, the upper part of the body and throat are black, the rest white, except the top of the head, which is ornamented with a fine, yellow arch, which it can erect as two crests.

“The shags here were of two sorts, viz. the lesser cormorant, or water-crow, and another with a blackish back and white belly. The sea-swallow, the tern, the common sea-gull, and the Port Egmont hen, were also found here.

“Large flocks of a singular kind of white bird flew about here, having the base of the bill covered with a horny crust. It had a black bill and white feet, was somewhat larger than a pigeon, and the flesh tasted like that of a duck.

“The seine was once hauled, when we found a few fish about the size of a small haddock. The only shell-fish we saw here were a few limpets and muscles.

“Many of the hills, notwithstanding they were of a moderate height, were at that time covered with snow, though answering to our June. It is reasonable to imagine that rain must be very frequent here, as well from the marks of large torrents having rushed down, as from the appearance of the country, which, even on the hills, was a continued bog or swamp.

“The rocks consist principally of a dark blue, and very hard stone, intermixed with particles of glimmer, or quartz. Some considerable rocks were also formed here from a brownish, brittle stone.”

Having left Kerguelen's land, Captain Cook steered east by north, in order to proceed to New Zealand, according to his instructions, for the purpose of taking in wood and water, and hay for the cattle; of which last article their stock was now considerably reduced. The 31st of December, their longitude by observation of the sun and moon, was 72 deg. 38 min. and 36 sec. east; and on the first day of the year 1777, they were in the latitude of 48 deg. 41 min. south, longitude 76 deg. 50 min. east. Till the 3rd of January the weather was tolerably clear, with fresh gales from the west and south-west; but now the wind veered to the north, and continued in that quarter eight days, during which, though there was at the same time a thick fog, they ran upwards of three hundred leagues, chiefly in the dark; the sun indeed sometimes made his appearance, but very rarely. On the 7th,

Captain Cook dispatched a boat, with orders to Captain Clerke, fixing their rendezvous at Adventure Bay, in Van Dieman's Land, if the ships should happen to separate before they arrived there; however, they had the good fortune not to lose company with each other. On Sunday, the 12th, the northerly winds were succeeded by a calm, which was soon followed by a southerly wind. Their latitude was now 48 deg. 40 min. south, longitude 110 deg. 26 min. east. The wind blew from the south a whole day, and then, veering to the west and north-west, brought on some fair weather.

They continued their course to the eastward without interruption, till the 19th, when the fore-top-mast of the Resolution went by the board, and carried the main-top-gallant-mast with it; this occasioned some delay in refitting. The wind continued westerly, and though it blew very fresh, the weather was notwithstanding clear. In the morning of the 24th, they discovered Van Dieman's Land, bearing towards the north-west: the latitude being at noon 43 deg. 47 min. south, longitude 137 deg. east. Captain Cook gave the name of the Eddystone to a rock that lies about a league to the eastward of Swilly Isle, or Rock, on account of its striking resemblance to Eddystone light-house. These two rocks may, even in the night, be seen at a considerable distance, and are the summits of a ledge of rocks under water. On the north-east side of Storm Bay are some creeks that seem tolerably sheltered; and if this coast were carefully examined, several good harbours would most probably be found.

About noon, on the 26th a breeze sprung up, which determined them to anchor in Adventure Bay, for the purpose of watering, &c. which was found could not be wanted till their arrival at New Zealand. The ships, therefore, stood in for the bay, and anchored in a sandy bottom, in twelve fathoms' water, at the distance from shore of about three quarters of a mile.

After anchoring, Captains Cook and Clerke went a-shore in the boats to look out for the most commodious place for procuring the necessary supplies. Wood and water they found could be procured easily, but the grass, which was principally needed, was coarse and bad. The next morning Captain Cook detached two parties under the conduct of Lieutenant King to the east-side of the bay to cut wood and grass, some marines attending them as a guard, though none of the natives had yet appeared. He also sent the launch to provide water for the ships, and afterwards paid a visit to the parties thus employed.

The seine was drawn in the evening, and at one haul a great quantity of fish was taken: after which, all hands returned on-board, to be ready for sailing, when the wind should permit.

As this, however, did not happen, the next day was employed for cutting down spars for the ships. They were surprised in the afternoon with a visit from some of the natives: eight men and a boy approached them from the woods, with the greatest confi-

dence, none of them having weapons, but one, who held in his hand a stick about two feet long, pointed at one end. They were quite naked, and wore no ornaments, unless we consider as such, some large punctures or ridges on different parts of their bodies, some in straight, and others in curved lines. They were of the common stature, but slender. Their skin was black, and also their hair, which was as woolly as that of any native of Guinea; but they had not remarkably thick lips, nor flat noses; on the contrary, their features were far from being disagreeable. They had pretty good eyes, and their teeth were tolerably even, but very dirty. Most of them had their hair and beards smeared with a red ointment; with which some also had their faces painted.

Every present made to them they received without any appearance of satisfaction. When some bread was given, as soon as they understood it was to be eaten, they either returned it, or threw it away, without even tasting it. They also refused some fish, both raw and dressed; but, on giving some birds to them, their behaviour indicated a fondness for such food. Captain Cook had brought two pigs a-shore, with a view to leave them in the woods; but, the instant these came within reach of the savages, they seized them, as a dog would have done, by the ears, and were for carrying them off immediately, with no other intention, as could be perceived, but to kill them. Being desirous of knowing the use of the stick before mentioned, Captain Cook, by signs prevailed upon one of them to show him. This savage set up a piece of wood as a mark, and threw it at, at a distance of about 20 yards. On repeated trials, however, he was always wide from his object. Omai, to shew them the superiority of our weapons, then fired his musket at it, which alarmed them so much, that they fled into the woods with great precipitation.

Immediately after they had retired, Captain Cook ordered the two pigs, one a male and the other a female, to be carried about a mile within the woods, and he himself saw them left there, taking care that none of the natives should observe what was passing. He also intended to have left a young bull and a cow, besides some goats and sheep; but he soon relinquished that design, being of opinion, that the natives would destroy them; which he supposed would be the fate of the pigs, if they should chance to find them out. But, as swine soon become wild, and are fond of being in the woods, it is probable that they were preserved. The other cattle could not have remained long concealed from the savages, as they must have been put into an open place.

They were prevented from sailing on the 29th by a dead calm, which continued the whole day. Captain Cook, therefore, sent parties on-shore to cut wood and grass, as usual; and he accompanied the wooding party himself. Soon after landing, about twenty of the natives joined them, one of whom was distinguished

e, who held in his
t one end. They
nless we consider
rent parts of their
ines. They were
in was black, and
of any native of
s, nor flat noses;
ing disagreeable.
e tolerably even,
l beards smeared
had their faces

without any ap-
as given, as soon
er returned it, or
also refused some
e birds to them,
food. Captain
to leave them in
n reach of the
we done, by the
, with no other
em. Being de-
tioned, Captain
now him. This
threw at it, at a
owever, he was
the superiority
a alarmed them
precipitation.
ok ordered the
e carried about
em left there,
erve what was
ull and a cow,
inquished that
destroy them;
if they should
ome wild, and
they were pre-
ed long con-
n put into an

a dead calm,
herefore, sent
nd he accom-
nding, about
distinguished



not only by his deformity, but by the drollery of his gesticulations, and the seeming humour of his speeches, which, however, they could not understand. Those whom they now saw differed in some respects, particularly in the texture of the hair, from the natives of the more northerly parts of this country, whom Captain Cook met with in his first voyage. Some of the present company had a slip of the kangaroo skin round their ankles; and others wore round their necks some small cord made of fur. They seemed not to value iron, but were apparently pleased with the medals and beads that were given them. They did not even appear to know the use of fish-hooks, though it is more than probable that they were acquainted with some method of catching fish.

Their habitations were little sheds or hovels built of sticks, and covered with bark. Evident signs appeared of their sometimes taking up their abode in the trunks of large trees, which had been hollowed out by fire; and the marks of fire near their habitations, and near every heap of shells, were indubitable proofs that they did not eat their food raw.

Captain Cook on leaving the wooding party, went to the grass-cutters, and having seen the boats loaded with hay, returned on-board. He had just quitted the shore, when several women and children appeared, and were introduced to Lieutenant King, by the men who accompanied them. These females wore a kangaroo skin (in the shape as it came from the animal) tied over the shoulders, and round the waist. Its only use seemed to be, to support their children when carried on their backs; for it did not cover those parts which modesty directs us to conceal; their bodies were black, and marked like those of the men with scars. Some of them had their head completely shaved; others on the one side only; while the rest of them had all the upper part of the head shorn close, having a circle of hair all round, something like the tonsure of the Romish ecclesiastics. Many of the children had fine features, and were thought pretty, but the women in general were far from being handsome. Some of the gentlemen paid their addresses to them, accompanied with large presents, which were rejected with great disdain; whether from a sense of virtue, or fear of displeasing their men, is not certain. That the husbands did not relish this gallantry, was clear, from their behaviour on the occasion. Captain Cook's reflections on this circumstance we shall give in his own words: "This conduct of Europeans amongst savages, to their women, is highly blameable, as it creates a jealousy in their men, that may be attended with consequences fatal to the success of the common enterprize, and to the whole body of the adventurers, without advancing the private purpose of the individual, or enabling him to gain the object of his wishes. I believe it has been generally found, among uncivilized people, that where the women are easy of access, the men are the first to offer them to strangers; and

that, where this is not the case, neither the allurements of presents, nor the opportunity of privacy, will be likely to have the desired effect. This observation, I am sure will hold good, throughout all the parts of the South Sea where I have been."

During their continuance in Van Dieman's Land they had either light airs from the east, or calms: they therefore lost little or no time by touching on this coast. This land was discovered in November, 1642, by Tasman, who gave it the name of Van Dieman's Land. Captain Furneaux touched at it in March, 1773. It is the southern point of New Holland, which is by far the largest island in the known world, and almost deserves the name of a continent. The land is diversified with hills and vallies, and well wooded. The only wind to which Adventure Bay is exposed, is the north-east; and, upon the whole, this may be considered as a very safe road. Its latitude is 43 deg. 21 min. 20 sec. south, and its longitude 147 deg. 29 min. east.

Mr. Anderson, surgeon of the Resolution, employed himself in examining the country during their continuance in Adventure Bay. His remarks on the inhabitants and their language, and his account of the country, are as follows:

"There is a beautiful, sandy beach, about two miles long, at the bottom of Adventure Bay, formed, to all appearance, by the particles which the sea washes from a fine, white sand-stone. This beach is very well adapted for hauling a seine. Behind it is a plain, with a brackish lake, out of which we caught by angling some bream and trout. The parts adjoining the bay are mostly hilly, and are an entire forest of tall trees, rendered almost impassable by brakes of fern, shrubs, &c. The soil on the flat land, and on the lower part of the hills, is sandy, or consists of a yellowish earth, and in some parts of a reddish clay; but farther up the hills it is of a grey, tough cast. This country, upon the whole, bears many marks of being very dry, and the heat appears to be great. No mineral bodies, nor stones of any other kind than the white sand-stone, were observed by us, nor could we find any vegetables that afforded subsistence for man. The forest trees are all of one kind, and generally quit straight; they bear clusters of small, white flowers. The principal plants they observed were wood-sorrel, milk-wort, cud-weed, bell-flower, gladiolus, samphire, and several kinds of fern. The only quadruped we saw distinctly, was a species of opossum, about twice the size of a large rat. The kangaroo, found farther northward in New Holland, may also be supposed to inhabit here, as some of the inhabitants had pieces of the skin of that animal.

"The principal sorts of birds in the woods are brown hawks or eagles, crows, large pigeons, yellowish paroquets, and a species which we called *motacilla cyanea*, from the beautiful azure colour of its head and neck. On the shore were several

gulls, black oyster-catchers, or sea-pies, and plovers of a stone colour.

“ We observed in the woods some blackish snakes that were pretty large, and we killed a lizard which was about fifteen inches long and six round, very beautifully clouded with yellow and black.

“ Among a variety of fish we caught some large rays, nurses, leather-jackets, bream, soles, flounders, gurnards, and elephant-fish; besides a sort which we did not recollect to have seen before, and which partakes of the nature both of a round and a flat fish. Upon the rocks are muscles and other shell fish; and upon the beach we found some pretty Medusa's heads. The most troublesome insects we met with, were the musquitoes, and a large black ant, whose bite inflicts extreme pain.

“ The inhabitants seemed mild and cheerful, with little of that wild appearance that savages in general have. They are almost devoid of personal activity or genius, and are nearly upon a par with the wretched natives of Terra del Fuego. They display, however, some contrivance in their method of cutting their arms and bodies in lines of different directions, raised above the surface of the skin. Their indifference for our presents, their general inattention, and want of curiosity, were very remarkable, and testified no acuteness of understanding. Their complexion is a dull black, which they sometimes heighten by smutting their bodies, as we supposed, from their leaving a mark behind on any clean substance. Their hair is perfectly woolly, and is clotted with grease and red ochre, like that of the Hottentots. Their noses are broad and full, and the lower part of the face projects considerably. Their eyes are of a moderate size, and though they are not very quick or piercing, they give the countenance a frank, cheerful, and pleasing cast. Their teeth are not very white, nor well set, and their mouths are too wide; they wear their beards long, and clotted with paint. They are upon the whole well proportioned, though their belly is rather protuberant. Their favourite attitude is to stand with one side forward, and one hand grasping, across the back, the opposite arm, which, on this occasion, hangs down by the side that projects.

“ Near the shore in the bay, we observed some wretched constructions of sticks covered with bark; but these seemed to have been only temporary; and they had converted many of their largest trees into more comfortable and commodious habitations. The trunks of these were hollowed out, to the height of six or seven feet, by means of fire. That they sometimes dwelt in them, was manifest from their hearths in the middle made of clay, round which four or five persons might sit. These places of shelter are rendered durable, by their leaving one side of the tree sound, so that it continues growing with great luxuriance.

“ That the natives of Van Dieman's Land originate from the

same stock with those who inhabit the northern parts of New Holland, seems evident. Though they differ in many respects, their dissimilarity may be reasonably accounted for, from the united considerations of distance of place, length of time, total separation, and diversity of climate.

“As the inhabitants of New Holland seem all to have sprung from one common source, there is nothing very peculiar in them; for they greatly resemble the savages of the island of Tanna and Mallicolla. There is even some reason for supposing that they may originally have come from the same place with all the natives of the Pacific Ocean; for, of about ten words which we found means to get from them, that which is used to express *cold*, is very similar to that of New Zealand and Otaheite; the first being *mallareede*, the second *makkareede*, and the third *marceede*. The remainder of our scanty vocabulary of Van Dieman's Land is as follows, viz.—

Quadne,	<i>a woman.</i>
Everai,	<i>the eye.</i>
Muidje,	<i>the nose.</i>
Kamy,	<i>the teeth, month, or tongue.</i>
Laereune,	<i>a small bird, a native of the woods here.</i>
Koygee,	<i>the ear.</i>
Teegera,	<i>to eat.</i>
Noonga,	<i>elevated scars on the body.</i>
Togarago,	<i>I will go, or I must be gone.</i>

“It will probably be found upon a diligent inquiry, and an accurate comparison, drawn from the affinity of languages, that all the people from New Holland, eastward to Easter Island, are of the same extraction.”

On the 30th of January, in the morning, the voyagers weighed anchor with a light westerly breeze, from Adventure Bay. Soon after they had put to sea, the wind became southerly, and produced a perfect storm; but, veering in the evening to the east and north-east, its fury began to abate. This wind was attended with an almost intolerable heat, which, however, was of so short a continuance that some of the company did not perceive it.

In the night, between the 6th and 7th of February, one of the Discovery's marines fell overboard and was drowned. On the 10th, in the afternoon, they descried the coast of New Zealand, at the distance of about eight or nine leagues. They then steered for Cape Farewell, and afterwards for Stephen's Island; and in the morning of the 12th, anchored in Ship Cove, Queen Charlotte's Sound. They soon after landed many empty water casks, and cleared a place for two observatories. In the mean time several canoes came alongside the ships; but very few of those who were in them would venture on-board. Their shyness appeared the more extraordinary, as Captain Cook was well known to all of them; and as one man in particular, among the present group, had been treated by him with distinguished kindness during a former voyage. This man, however, could not

by any means be prevailed on to come on-board. They could only account for this reserve by supposing, that they were apprehensive of our men revenging the death of Captain Furneaux's people who had been killed here. But upon Captain Cook's assuring them of the continuance of his friendship, and that he should not molest them on that account, they soon laid aside all appearance of suspicion or distrust. The next day they pitched two tents, and erected the observatories, in which Messrs. King and Bayly immediately commenced their astronomical operations. Two of the men were employed in brewing spruce beer; while others filled the water casks, collected grass for the cattle, and cut wood. Those who remained on-board were occupied in repairing the rigging, and performing the necessary duties of the ships. A guard of marines was appointed for the protection of the different parties on-shore, and arms were given to all the workmen, to repel all attacks from the natives if they had been inclined to molest them; but this did not appear to be the case.

During the course of this day, many families came from various parts of the coast, and erected their huts close to the encampment. The facility with which they build these temporary habitations is remarkable. They have been seen to erect above twenty of them on a spot of ground, which was covered with plants and shrubs not an hour before. Captain Cook was present when a number of savages landed, and built a village of this kind. They had no sooner leaped from the canoes, than they tore up the shrubs and plants from the ground they had fixed upon, or put up some part of the framing of the hut. While the men were thus employed, the women took care of the canoes, secured the provisions and utensils, and gathered dry sticks, to serve as materials for fire. These huts are sufficiently calculated for affording shelter from the rain and wind. The same tribe or family however large, generally associate and live together; so that their towns and villages are usually divided by palisades into separate districts.

Considerable advantage was derived from the natives coming to live with the crew; for, every day, some of them were occupied in catching fish, a good share of which was generally procured by exchanges. Besides fish, they gave other refreshments in abundance. Scurvy-grass, celery, and portable soup were boiled every day with wheat and pease; and they had spruce beer for their drink. Such a regimen soon removed all seeds of the scurvy from the people, if any of them had contracted it; but, indeed, on their arrival they had only two invalids in both ships.

They were occasionally visited by other natives, besides those who lived close to them. Their articles of traffic were fish, curiosities, and women; the two first of which were speedily disposed of, but the latter did not come to a good market, as the crew had conceived a dislike to them. Captain Cook observes

upon this occasion, that he connived at a connexion with women, because he could not prevent it; but that he never encouraged it, because he dreaded the consequences. Among the occasional visitors was a chief called Kahoorā, who headed the party that cut off Captain Furneaux's people. He was far from being beloved by his countrymen, some of whom even importuned Captain Cook to kill him, at the same time expressing their disapprobation of him in the severest terms. A striking proof of the divisions that prevail among these people occurred; for the inhabitants of each village, by turns, solicited the commodore to destroy the other.

Captain Cook, on the 15th, went in a boat to search for grass, and visited the hippah, or fortified village, at the south-west point of the island of Moutuara. He observed no inhabitants at this village, though there were evident marks of its having been lately occupied, the houses and palisades being in a state of good repair.—Not the smallest vestige remained of the English garden-seeds which had been planted at this hippah in 1773, during Captain Cook's second voyage. They had probably been all rooted out to make room for buildings; for, at the other gardens then planted, were found radishes, onions, leeks, cabbages, purslain, potatoes, &c. Though the natives of New Zealand are fond of the last mentioned root, they had not planted a single one, much less any of the other articles they had introduced among them.

Early in the morning of the 16th, the Captains Cook and Clerke, and several of the officers and sailors, accompanied by Omai and two New Zealanders, set out, in five boats, to collect fodder for the cattle. Having proceeded about three leagues up the Sound, they landed on the east-side, where they cut a sufficient quantity of grass to load the two launches. On their return down the Sound, they paid a visit to Grass Cove, the place where Captain Furneaux's people had been massacred. They here met with Captain Cook's old friend Pedro, who is mentioned by him in the history of his second voyage. He, and another New Zealander, received them on the beach, armed with the spear and patoo, though not without manifest signs of fear. Their apprehensions, however, were quickly dissipated by a few presents, which brought down to the shore two or three others of the family.

During the continuance of the party at this place, the commodore being desirous of inquiring into the particular circumstances relative to the massacre of our countrymen, fixed upon Omai as an interpreter for that purpose, as his language was a dialect of that of New Zealand. Pedro, and the other natives who were present, none of whom had been concerned in that unfortuuate transaction, answered every question without reserve. Their information imported, that while our people were at dinner, some of the natives stole, or snatched from them,

some fish and bread, for which offence they received some blows; a quarrel immediately ensued, and two of the savages were shot dead, by the only two muskets that were fired; for, before a third was discharged, the natives rushed furiously upon our people, and being superior in number, destroyed them all.— Pedro and his companions also pointed out the very spot where the fracas happened, and the place where the boat lay, in which a black servant of Captain Furneaux had been left to take care of it.

According to another account, this negro was the occasion of the quarrel; for one of the natives stealing something out of the boat, the black gave him a violent blow with a stick. His countrymen hearing his cries, at some distance, imagined he was being killed, and immediately attacked our people, who, before they could reach the boat, or prepare themselves against the unexpected assault, fell a sacrifice to the fury of the exasperated savages.

It is probable, both these accounts were true; as it is natural to suppose, that while some of the natives were stealing from the man who had been left in the boat, others of them might be taking the same liberty with the property of the people who were on-shore.—But all agree that there was no premeditated plan of blood-shed; and that if the thefts had not been too hastily resented, no mischief would have happened.

With regard to the boat, some said, that it had been pulled to pieces and burnt; while others asserted, that it had been carried off by a party of strangers.

The party continued at Grass Cove till the evening, and then embarked to return to the ships. They had scarcely left the shore, when the wind began to blow violently at north-west, so that it was not without great difficulty that they could reach the ships, where some of the boats did not arrive till the next morning; and it was very fortunate that they got on-board then, for soon afterwards a perfect storm arose. Towards the evening, however, the wind veering to the east, brought on fair weather. On Tuesday, the 18th, Pedro and his whole family came to reside near them. The proper name of this chief was Matahouah; but some of Captain Cook's people had given him the appellation of Pedro in a former voyage. On the 20th, they had another storm, of less duration than the former, but more violent; in consequence of which, both their ships struck their yards and top-masts. These tempests are frequent here; and the nearer the shore, the more sensible are their effects.

On Friday, the 21st, a tribe, or family of about thirty persons came from the upper part of the Sound to visit the ships. Their chief was named Tomatongeauoranuc: he was about the age of forty-five, and had a frank, cheerful countenance; and, indeed, the rest of his tribe were, upon the whole, the handsomest of all the New Zealanders that Captain Cook had ever seen. By this time upwards of two-thirds of the natives of Queen Charlotte's

Sound had settled near the ships, numbers of whom daily resorted to the ships, and the encampment on shore; but the latter was most frequented, during the time when our people were melting seal-blubber there; for the savages were so fond of train-oil, that they relished the very dregs of the casks, and skimmings of the kettle; and considered the stinking oil as a most delicious feast.

When the crews had procured a competent supply of hay, wood, and water, they struck their tents, and the next morning, which was the 24th, weighed out of the cove. But the wind not being so fair as could have been wished, they were obliged to cast anchor again near the Isle of Motuara. While getting under sail, Tomatongeauoranuc, Matahouah, and many of the natives came to take leave of them. These two chiefs having requested Captain Cook to present them with some hogs and goats, he gave to Tomatongeauoranuc two pigs, a boar, and a sow; and to Matahouah two goats, a male and female, after they had promised not to destroy them. As for the animals, which Captain Furneaux had left here, Captain Cook was now told that they were all dead; but he was afterwards informed by the two New Zealand youths who went away with them, that Tiratou, a popular chief, had in his possession many cocks and hens, besides a sow.

Before they had been long at anchor near Motuara, several canoes, filled with natives, came towards them, and they carried on a brisk trade with them for the curiosities of this place. In one of these canoes was Kahoorā, whom Omai immediately pointed out to Captain Cook, and solicited him to shoot that chief; he also threatened to be himself his executioner, if he should ever presume to pay them another visit. These menaces of Omai had so little influence upon Kahoorā, that he returned to the ship the next morning, accompanied with his whole family. Omai, having obtained Captain Cook's permission to ask him to come on-board, introduced him into the cabin, saying, "There is Kahoorā, dispatch him." But, fearing perhaps that he should be called upon to put his former threats in execution, he instantly retired. He soon, however, returned; and perceiving that the chief was unhurt, he earnestly remonstrated with Captain Cook on the subject, saying, that if a man killed another in England, he was hanged for it; but that Kahoorā had killed ten, and therefore justly deserved death. These arguments, however plausible, had no weight with the commodore, who desired Omai to ask the New Zealand chief, why he had destroyed Captain Furneaux's people? Kahoorā, confounded at this question, hung down his head, and folded his arms, and seemed in expectation of immediate death; but as soon as he was assured of safety he became cheerful. He appeared, however, unwilling to answer the question that had been put to him, till after repeated promises that no violence should be offered him. He then ventured to inform them, that one of the natives

having brought a stone hatchet for the purpose of traffic, the person to whom it was offered took it, and refused either to return it, or give any thing in exchange; upon which the owner of it seized some bread by way of an equivalent; and this gave rise to the quarrel that ensued. He also mentioned, that he himself, during the disturbance, had a narrow escape; for a musket was levelled at him, which he found means to avoid by skulking behind the boat; and another man who happened to stand close to him, was shot dead: upon which Kahoorā attacked Mr. Rowe, the officer who commanded the party, who defended himself with his hanger, with which he gave the chief a wound in the arm, till he was overpowered by superiority of numbers. Mr. Burney, whom Captain Furneaux dispatched next day with an armed party in search of his people who were missing, had, upon discovering the melancholy proofs of this catastrophe, fired several volleys among the natives who were still on the spot, and were probably partaking of the horrid banquet of human flesh.—It was reasonable to suppose that this firing was not ineffectual; but upon inquiry it appeared that not a single person had been killed, or even hurt by the shot which Mr. Burney's people had discharged.

Most of the natives they met with, expected that Captain Cook would take vengeance on Kahoorā for his concern in the massacre; and many of them not only wished it, but testified their surprise at the captain's forbearance and moderation. As the chief must have known this, it was a matter of astonishment that he so often put himself in the power of the commodore.—His two last visits in particular, were under such circumstances, that he could not have flattered himself with a prospect of escaping, had the captain been inclined to detain him: and yet, when his first fears, on being questioned, had subsided, so far was he from entertaining uneasy sensations, that, on seeing in the cabin a portrait of a New Zealander, he desired that his own likeness might be taken, and sat till Mr. Webber had finished his portrait, without the smallest token of impatience. Captain Cook admired his courage, and was pleased with the confidence which he reposed in him; for he placed his whole safety in the uniform declarations of the captain, that he had always been a friend to the natives, and would continue in the same sentiments till they gave him reason to behave otherwise: that he should think no more of their barbarous treatment of his countrymen, as that transaction had happened long ago; but that if they should ever venture to make a second attempt of that kind, they might rest assured of meeting with an adequate punishment.

Before their arrival in New Zealand, Omai had expressed a desire of taking one of the natives with him to his own country. He soon had an opportunity of gratifying his inclination, for a youth named Taweiharōō, the only son of a deceased chief,

offered to accompany him, and took up his residence on-board. Captain Cook caused it to be made known to him and all his friends, that if the youth departed with them he would never return. This declaration, however, had no effect. The day before quitting the Cove, Tiratoutou, his mother, came to receive her last present from Omai; and the same evening she and her son parted, with all the marks of the tenderest affection. But she said she would weep no more, and faithfully kept her word; for the next morning, when she returned to take her last farewell of Taweiharooa, she was quite cheerful all the time she remained on-board, and departed with great unconcern. A boy of about ten years of age accompanied Taweiharooa as a servant; his name was Kokoa. He was presented to Captain Cook by his own father, who parted with him with such indifference, as to strip him, and leave him entirely naked. The captain having in vain endeavoured to convince these people of the great improbability of these youths ever returning home, at length consented to their going.

The inhabitants of New Zealand seem to live under continual apprehensions of being destroyed by each other; most of their tribes having, as they think, sustained injuries from some other tribe, which they are ever eager to revenge: and it is not improbable, that the desire of a good meal is frequently a great incitement. They generally steal upon the adverse party in the night, and if they chance to find them unguarded, which is seldom the case, they kill every one without distinction, without sparing even the women and children; when they have completed the inhuman massacre, they either gorge themselves on the spot, or carry off as many dead bodies as they can, and feast on them at home, with the most horrid acts of brutality. If they are discovered before they have time to execute their sanguinary purpose, they usually steal off again, and sometimes they are pursued and attacked by the adverse party, in their turn. They never give quarter, or take prisoners, so that the vanquished must trust to flight alone for safety. From this state of perpetual hostility, and this destructive mode of carrying it on, a New Zealander derives such habitual vigilance and circumspection, that he is scarcely ever off his guard: and, indeed, these people have the most powerful motives to be vigilant, as the preservation of both soul and body depends on it; for it is a part of their creed, that the soul of the man whose flesh is devoured by his enemies, is condemned to an incessant fire; while the soul of him whose body has been rescued from those that slew him, as well as the souls of those who die a natural death, ascend to the mansions of the gods. Captain Cook having asked them, whether they eat the flesh of such friends as had lost their lives in war, but whose bodies had been prevented from falling into the enemy's hands? they answered in the negative, and expressed their abhorrence of the idea.

Their ordinary method of disposing of their dead is to commit their bodies to the earth; but when they have more of their slain enemies than they can conveniently eat, they throw them into the sea. There are no *morais*, or other places of public worship among them; but they have priests, who pray to the gods for the success of their temporal affairs. The principles of their religion, of which we know but little, are strongly instilled into them from their infancy. Captain Cook observed a remarkable instance of this in a youth, who abstained from eating during the greatest part of the day, merely on account of his hair being cut, though every method was practised that could induce him to change his resolution. He said that the *eatooa*, or deity, would kill him if he ate any thing on that day. Towards the evening, however, his religious scruples gave way to the importunate cravings of appetite, and he ate, though sparingly.

Notwithstanding the divided state in which these people live, travelling strangers whose designs are honourable, are well received and entertained; but it is expected that they will remain no longer than their business requires. It is thus that a trade for green talc, which they called *poenamoo*, is carried on. They informed Captain Cook, that none of this stone is to be found, except at a place which bears its name, near the head of Queen Charlotte's Sound. They also related many fabulous and improbable stories concerning this stone, one of which is, that it is originally a fish, which they strike with a gig in the water, and having tied a rope to it, drag it to the shore, to which they fasten it, and it afterwards hardens into a stone. As it is fished out of a large lake, it is probable that it may be brought from the mountains, and deposited in the water, by means of the torrents. This lake is called by the inhabitants *Tavai Poenamoo*, or the water of green talc.

The New Zealanders have adopted polygamy among them; and it is common for one man to have two or three wives. The women are marriageable at an early age; and those who are unmarried, find difficulty in procuring subsistence.

These people seem perfectly contented with the small degree of knowledge they possess, for they make no attempts to improve it. They are not remarkably curious, nor do new objects strike them with much surprise, for they scarcely fix their attention for a moment. Omai, indeed, being a great favourite with them, would sometimes attract a circle about him; but they listened to his speeches with very little eagerness. On their inquiring of Taweharooa, how many ships resembling theirs had ever arrived in Queen Charlotte's Sound, or its neighbourhood, he gave them an account of one entirely unknown to them. This vessel had put into a harbour on the north-west coast of Teerawitte, a few years before Captain Cook arrived in the Sound in the Endeavour. He further informed them that the captain of

her, during his continuance there, had cohabited with a female of the country, who had born him a son who was still living. He also mentioned, that this ship first introduced an odious disease among the natives of New Zealand. This dreadful disorder is now but too common among them. The only method they put in practice as a remedy, is to give the patient the use of a kind of hot-bath, produced by the stems of certain green plants placed over hot stones.

Taweiharooa's intelligence induced them to believe, that a ship had really been at Teerawitte previous to Captain Cook's arrival in the Endeavour, as it corresponded with what the captain had formerly heard; for, towards the latter end of 1773, some of the natives informed him of a ship having put into a port on the coast of Teerawitte.

They had another piece of information from Taweiharooa, importing that there are here snakes and lizards of an enormous size. The latter were described by him as being eight feet long, and equal to a man's body in circumference. He said that they burrow in the ground; that they sometimes seize and devour men; and are killed by making fires at the mouths of their holes. They could not misunderstand him with respect to the animal, for, in order to shew them what he meant, he drew with his own hand very good representations of a lizard and snake on a piece of paper.

The longitude of Ship Cove, by lunar observations, is 174 deg. 25 min. 15 sec. east; its latitude 41 deg. 6 min. south.

The following additional particulars of the country and its inhabitants are by Mr. Anderson:—

“About Queen Charlotte's Sound, the land is uncommonly mountainous, rising immediately from the sea into large hills. At remote distances are vallies, terminating each towards the sea in a small cove, with a pebbly or sandy beach, behind which are flat places, where the natives usually build their huts. This situation is the more convenient, as a brook of fine water runs through every cove, and empties itself into the sea.

“The bases of these mountains, towards the shore, are constituted of a brittle, yellowish, sandy stone, which acquires a bluish cast where it is laved by the sea. At some places it runs in horizontal, and, at others, in oblique strata. The mould or soil by which it is covered resembles marl, and is in general a foot or two in thickness. The luxuriant growth of the productions here, sufficiently indicates the quality of the soil. The hills, except a few towards the sea, are one continued forest of lofty trees, flourishing with such uncommon vigour, as to afford an august prospect to the admirers of the sublime and beautiful works of nature. This extraordinary strength in vegetation is, doubtless, greatly assisted by the agreeable temperature of the climate; for at this time, though answering to our month of August, the weather was not so warm as to be disagreeable;

nor did it raise the thermometer higher than 66 deg. The winter also seems equally mild with respect to cold: for, in the month which corresponds to our December, the mercury was never lower than 48 deg., the trees at the same time retaining their verdure, as if in the height of summer. It is supposed their foliage remains till pushed off in spring by the succeeding leaves.

“ Though the weather is generally good, it is sometimes windy, with heavy rain; which, however, is never excessive, and does not last above a day. In short, this would be one of the finest countries on earth, were it not so extremely hilly; which, supposing the woods to be cleared away, would leave it less proper for pasturage than flat land; and infinitely less so for cultivation, which could never be effected here by the plough. The large trees on the hills are principally of two sorts. One of them, of the size of our largest firs, grows nearly after their manner. This supplied the place of spruce in making beer; which we did with a decoction of its leaves fermented with sugar or treacle; and this liquor was acknowledged to be little inferior to the American spruce-beer. The other sort of tree is like a maple, and often grows very large, but is fit only for fuel; the wood of that, and the preceding, being too heavy for masts or yards, &c. A great variety of trees grow on the flats behind the beaches: two of these bear a kind of plum, of the size of prunes; the one, which is yellow, is called *karraca*, and the other, which is black, is called *maitao*; but neither of them had a pleasant taste, though eaten both by our people and the natives.

“ On the eminences which jut out into the sea, grow a species of philadelphus, and a tree bearing flowers almost like myrtle. We used the leaves of the philadelphus as tea, and found them an excellent substitute for the oriental sort.

“ A kind of wild celery, which grows plentifully in almost every cove, may be reckoned among the plants that were useful to us; and another that we used to call scurvy-grass. Both sorts were boiled daily with wheat ground in a mill, for the people's breakfast, and with their pease-soup for dinner. Sometimes also they were used as salad, or dressed as greens. In all which ways they are excellent; and together with the fish with which we were amply supplied, they formed a most desirable refreshment.

“ The known kind of plants to be found here are bind-weed, night-shade, nettles, a shrubby speed-well, sow-thistles, virgin's bower, vanelloe, French willow, euphorbia, crane's-bill, cud-weed, rushes, bulrushes, flax, all-heal, American night-shade, knot-grass, brambles, eye-bright, and groundsel; but the species of each are different from any we have in Europe. There are a great number of other plants, but one in particular deserves to be noticed here, as the garments of the natives are made of it. A fine silky flax is produced from it, superior in appearance to any thing we have in this country, and perhaps

as strong. It grows in all places near the sea, and sometimes a considerable way up the hills in bunches or tufts, bearing yellowish flowers on a long stalk."

It is remarkable that the greatest part of the trees and plants were of the berry-bearing kind; of which, and other seeds, Mr. Anderson brought away about thirty different sorts.

"The birds, of which there is a tolerable good stock, are almost entirely peculiar to the place. It would be difficult and fatiguing to follow them, on account of the quantity of underwood, and the climbing plants; yet any person, by continuing in one place, may shoot as many in a day as would serve seven or eight persons. The principal kinds are large brown parrots, with grey heads, green paroquets, large wood-pigeons, and two sorts of cuckoos. A gross-beak, about the size of a thrush is frequent; as is also a small green bird, which is almost the only musical one to be found here; but his melody is so sweet, and his notes so varied, that one would imagine himself surrounded by a hundred different sorts of birds, when the little warbler is exerting himself. From this circumstance it was named the mocking-bird. There are also three or four sorts of smaller birds; and, among the rocks, are found black sea-pies with red bills, and crested shags of a leaden colour. About the shore there are a few sea-gulls, some blue herons, wild ducks, plovers, and some sand-larks. A snipe was shot here, which differs but little from that of Europe.

"Most of the fish we caught by the seine were elephant-fish, mullets, soles, and flounders; but the natives supplied us with a sort of sea-bream, large conger-eels, and a fish of five or six pounds weight, called a mogge by the natives. With a hook and line we caught a blackish fish, called cole-fish by the seamen, but differing greatly from that of the same name in Europe. We also got a sort of small salmon, skate, gurnards, and nurses. The natives sometimes furnished us with hake, paracutas, parrot-fish, a sort of mackarel, and leather-jackets; beside another, which is extremely scarce, of the figure of a dolphin, of a black colour, and strong, bony jaws. These, in general, are excellent to eat; but the small salmon, cole-fish, and mogge, are superior to the others. Great quantities of excellent muscles inhabit among the rocks; one sort of which exceeds a foot in length. Many cockles are found buried in the sand of the small beaches; and, in some places, oysters, which, though very small, have an excellent flavour. There are also periwinkles, limpets, wilks, sea-eggs, star-fish, and some beautiful sea-ears, many of which are peculiar to the place. The natives also furnished us with some excellent cray-fish.

"Insects here are not very numerous: we saw some butterflies, two sorts of dragon-flies, some small grass-hoppers, several sorts of spiders, some black ants, and scorpion-flies innumerable, with whose chirping the woods resounded. The sand-fly, which

is the only noxious one, is very numerous here, and is almost as disagreeable as the mosquito. The only reptiles we saw here, were two or three sorts of inoffensive lizards.

“In this extensive land it is remarkable, that there should not even be the traces of any quadruped, except a few rats, and a kind of fox-dog, which is kept by the natives as a domestic animal. They have not any mineral deserving notice, but a green jasper or serpent-stone, of which the tools and ornaments of the inhabitants are made. This is held in high estimation among them; and they entertain some superstitious notions about the mode of its generation, which we could not comprehend: they say, it is taken from a large river far to the southward; it is disposed in the earth in detached pieces like flints, and, like them, the edges are covered with a whitish crust.

“The natives, in general, are not so well formed, especially about the limbs, as the Europeans, nor do they exceed them in stature. Their sitting so much on their hams, and being deprived, by the mountainous disposition of the country, of using that kind of exercise which would render the body straight and well-proportioned, is probably the occasion of the want of due proportion. Many of them, indeed, are perfectly formed, and some are very large-boned and muscular; but very few among them were corpulent. Their features are various, some resembling Europeans, and their colour is of different casts, from a deep black to an olive or yellowish tinge. In general, however, their faces are round, their lips rather full, and their noses (though not flat) large towards the point. An aquiline nose was not to be seen among them; their eyes are large, and their teeth are commonly broad, white, and regular. Their hair, in general, is black, strong, and straight; it is commonly cut short on the hinder part, and the rest tied on the crown of the head. Some, indeed, have brown hair, and others a sort that is naturally disposed to curl. The countenance of the young is generally free and open; but in many of the men, it has a serious or sullen cast. The men are larger than the women; and the latter are not distinguished by peculiar graces either of form or features.

“Both sexes are clothed alike; they have a garment made of the silky flax already mentioned, about five feet in length, and four in breadth. This appears to be their principal manufacture, which is performed by knotting. The corners of this garment pass over the shoulders, and they fasten it on the breast with that which covers the body; it is again fastened about the belly with a girdle made of mat. Sometimes they cover it with dog-skin or large feathers. Many of them wear coats over this garment, extending from their shoulders to the heels. The most common covering, however, is a quantity of the sedgy plant abovementioned, badly manufactured, fastened to a string, and thrown over the shoulders, whence it falls down on all sides

to the middle of the thighs. When they sat down in this habit, they could hardly be distinguished from large grey stones, if their black heads did not project beyond their coverings.

“They adorn their heads with feathers, combs of bone or wood, with pearl shell, and the inner skin of leaves. Both men and women have their ears slit, in which are hung beads, pieces of jasper, or bits of cloth. Some have the septum of the nose bored in its lower part; but we never saw any ornament wore in that part, though a twig was passed through it by one of them to shew that it was occasionally used for that purpose.

“Many are stained in the face with curious figures of a black or dark blue colour; but it is not certain whether this is intended to be ornamental, or as a mark of particular distinction: the women are marked only on their lips and chins; and both sexes besmear their heads and faces with a greasy, reddish paint. The women also wear necklaces of shark's teeth, or bunches of long beads; and a few of them have small triangular aprons, adorned with feathers, or pieces of pearl shells, fastened about the waist with a double or treble set of cords. They live in the small coves already mentioned, sometimes in single families, and sometimes in companies of perhaps forty or fifty. Their huts, which are in general most miserable lodging places, are built contiguous to each other. The best we saw was built in the manner of one of our country barns, and was about six feet in height, fifteen in breadth, and thirty-three in length. The inside was strong and regular, well fastened by means of withes, &c. and painted red and black. At one end it had a hole serving as a door to creep out at, and another considerably smaller, seemingly for the purpose of letting out the smoke. This, however, ought to be considered as one of their palaces, for many of their huts are not of half the size, and seldom are more than four feet in height.

“They have no other furniture than a few small bags or baskets, in which they deposit their fishing hooks and other trifles. They sit down in the middle round a small fire, and probably sleep in the same situation, without any other covering than what they have worn in the day.

“Fishing is their principal support, in which they use different kinds of nets, or wooden fish-hooks pointed with bone; but made in so extraordinary a manner, that it appears astonishing how they can answer such a purpose.

“Their boats consist of planks raised upon each other, and fastened with strong withes. Many of them are fifty feet long. Sometimes they fasten two together with rafters, which we call a double canoe; they frequently carry upwards of thirty men, and have a large head, ingeniously carved and painted, which seems intended to represent a man enraged. Their paddles are narrow, pointed, and about five feet long. Their sail, which is very little used is a mat formed into a triangular shape.

"They dress their fish by roasting, or rather baking them, being entirely ignorant of the art of boiling. It is thus they also dress the root of the large fern-tree, in a hole prepared for that purpose; when dressed, they split it, and find a gelatinous substance within, somewhat like sago powder. The smaller fern-root seems to be their substitute for bread, being dried and carried about with them, together with great quantities of dried fish, when they go far from their habitations.

"When the weather will not suffer them to go to sea, muscles and sea-ears supply the place of other fish. Sometimes, but not often, they kill a few penguins, rails, and shags, which enable them to vary their diet. Considerable numbers of their dogs are also bred for food; but they depend principally on the sea for their subsistence, by which they are most bountifully supplied.

"They are as filthy in their feeding as in their persons, which often emit a very offensive effluvia, from the quantity of grease about them, and from their never washing their clothes: their heads are plentifully stocked with vermin, which they sometimes eat. Large quantities of stinking train oil and blubber of seals they would eagerly devour. When on-board the ships, they not only emptied the lamps, but actually swallowed the cotton with equal voracity. Though the inhabitants of Van Dieman's Land would not even taste our bread, these people devoured it with the greatest eagerness, even when it was rotten and mouldy.

"In point of ingenuity they are not behind any uncivilized nations under similar circumstances: for, without the assistance of metal tools, they make every thing by which they procure their subsistence, clothing, and warlike weapons, with neatness, strength, and convenience. Their principal mechanical tool is formed in the manner of an adze, and is made of the serpent-stone or jasper; their chisel and gouge are furnished from the same material, though they are sometimes composed of black, solid stone. Carving, however, is their masterpiece, which appears upon the most trifling things: the ornaments on the heads of their canoes, not only display much design, but execution. Their cordage for fishing-lines is not inferior to that of this country, and their nets are equally good. A shell, a bit of flint, or jasper, is their substitute for a knife, and a shark's tooth, fixed in the end of a piece of wood, is their auger. They have a saw made of some jagged fishes' teeth, fixed on a piece of wood nicely carved; but this is used for no other purpose than to cut up the bodies of those whom they kill in battle.

"Though no people are more ready to resent an injury, yet they take every opportunity of being insolent, when they apprehend there is no danger of punishment; whence it may be concluded, that their eagerness to resent injuries is rather an effect of a furious disposition than genuine bravery. They are naturally mistrustful and suspicious, for such as were strangers never ven-

tured immediately to visit our ships, but kept at a small distance in their boats, observing our motions, and hesitating whether they should risk their safety with us. They are to the last degree dishonest, and steal every thing within their reach, if they suppose they can escape detection; and, in trading, they seem inclined to take every possible advantage; for they never trust an article out of their hands for examination, and seem highly pleased if they have over-reached you in a bargain.

“Such conduct, indeed, is not surprising, when it is considered that there appears to be but little subordination, and few, if any, laws for the punishment of transgressors. No man's authority extends beyond his own family; and when they join, at any time, for mutual defence or safety, those among them who are most eminent for valour and prudent conduct are directors.

“Their public contentions are almost perpetual, for war is their principal profession, as appears from their number of weapons, and their dexterity in using them. Their arms are spears, patoos, and halberts, and sometimes stones. The first are from five to thirty feet long, made of hard wood and pointed. The patoo is about eighteen inches long, of an elliptical shape, with a handle made of wood, stone, &c. and appears to be their principal dependence in battle. The halbert is about five or six feet in length, tapering at one end with a carved head, and broad or flat, with sharp edges at the other.

“Before the onset, they join in a war song, keeping the exactest time; and by degrees, work themselves into a kind of frantic fury, accompanied with the most horrid distortions of their tongues, eyes, and mouths, in order to deter their enemies. To this succeeds a circumstance that is most horrid, cruel, and disgraceful to human nature, which is mangling and cutting to pieces (even when not perfectly dead) the bodies of their enemies; and, after roasting them, devouring their flesh with peculiar pleasure and satisfaction.

“It might naturally be supposed, that those who could be capable of such excess of cruelty, must be totally destitute of every humane feeling; and yet they lament the loss of their friends in a manner the most tender and affectionate. Both men and women, upon the death of their relations and friends, bewail them with the most miserable cries; at the same time cutting large gashes in their cheeks and foreheads, with shells, or pieces of flint, till the blood flows copiously and mixes with their tears. They also carve a resemblance of a human figure, and hang it about their necks, as a memorial of those who were dear to them. They also perform the ceremony of lamenting and cutting for joy, at the return of a friend who has been some time absent.

“In the practices of their fathers, whether good or bad, their children are, at an early age, instructed; so that you find a child of either sex, of the age of nine or ten years, able to imitate

the frightful motions and gestures of the men. They also sing, and with some degree of melody, the traditions and actions of their forefathers, with which they are immoderately delighted, and pass much of their time in these amusements, accompanied sometimes with a kind of flute.

“ Their language is neither harsh nor disagreeable. Whatever qualities are requisite to make a language musical, obtain to a considerable degree in this, if we may judge from the melody of their songs. It is not, indeed, so comprehensive as our European languages, which owe their perfection to long and gradual improvement.”

On the morning of the 25th of February, our navigators left the Sound, and made sail through Cook's Straits. On the 27th, saw Cape Palliser, bearing west about seven leagues distant, had a fine gale, and steered towards the north-east. As soon as they lost sight of land, the two young New Zealanders heartily repented of the adventurous step they had taken; and though they endeavoured as far as lay in their power to soothe them, they wept both in public and private; and gave vent to their sorrows in a kind of song, which seemed to express their praises of their country and people, from which they were now, in all probability, to be for ever separated. They continued in this state for several days, till, at length, the agitation of their minds began to subside, and their sea-sickness, which had aggravated their grief, wore off. Their lamentations then became less frequent; their native country, their kindred, and friends, were gradually forgotten, and they appeared to be firmly attached to our sailors.

On the 28th, at noon, being in the latitude of 41 deg. 17 min. south, and in the longitude of 177 deg. 17 min. east, they tacked about, and stood to the south-east, with a gentle breeze at east north-east, which afterwards veered to north-east, in which point the wind remained two days, sometimes blowing a fresh gale with squalls and rain. On the 2nd of March it shifted to north-west, and afterwards to south-west, between which point and the north it continued to blow, sometimes very moderately, and at others a strong gale. With this wind they steered north-east by east and east, with all the sail they could carry, till Tuesday the 11th, when they veered to north-east and south-east; they then stood to the north, and the south-east, as the wind would permit, till the 16th, when, having a gale from the north, they stood to the east. The next day they proceeded to the north-east; but, as the wind frequently veered to east and east north-east, they often made no better than a northerly course. The hopes, however, of the wind coming more southerly, or from the westward, a little without the tropic of Capricorn, encouraged the commodore to keep this course. It was, indeed, necessary that they should run all hazards, as their proceeding to the north this summer, in prosecution of the principal object of the expe-

dition, entirely depended on their having a quick passage to Otaheite, or the Society Isles.

They crossed the Tropic on the 27th, the wind, for a considerable time before, having remained almost invariably fixed at east south-east. In all this run they observed nothing that could induce them to suppose they had sailed near any land, except occasionally a tropic bird. In the latitude of 34 deg. 20 min. longitude 190 deg. they passed the trunk of a tree, which appeared much weather-beaten, and was covered with barnacles. On the 29th, as they were standing to the north-east, the Discovery made the signal of seeing land. They soon found it to be a small island, and stood for it till the evening; when it was at the distance of two or three leagues. The next morning, at day-break, they bore up for the west-side of the island, and saw several people wading to the reef, where, as they observed the ship leaving them quickly, they remained. But others, who soon appeared, followed her course; and some of them assembled in small bodies, making great shouts.

Upon a nearer approach to the shore, they saw many of the natives running along the beach, and by the assistance of their glasses, could perceive that they were armed with long spears and clubs, which they brandished in the air with signs of threatening, or, as some of them supposed, with invitations to land. Most of them were naked, except having a kind of girdle, which was brought up between their thighs; but some of them wore about their shoulders pieces of cloth of various colours, white, striped, or chequered; and almost all of them had about their heads a white wrapper, in some degree resembling a turban. They were of a tawny complexion, robust, and about the middle size.

At the same time a small canoe was launched from the farther end of the beach; and, a man getting into it, put off as with a view to reach the ship. On this the captain brought too, that he might receive the visit; but the man's resolution failing, he soon returned towards the beach, where, after some time, another man joined him in the canoe; and they both paddled towards the ship. They stopt short, however, as if afraid to approach, until Omai, who addressed them in the Otaheite language, in some measure quieted their apprehensions. They then came near enough to take some beads and nails, which were tied to a piece of wood, and thrown into the canoe. They seemed afraid to touch these things, and put the piece of wood aside, without untying them. This, however, might arise from superstition; for Omai said, that when they saw our men offering them presents, they asked something for their *Eatooa*, or god. He also, perhaps improperly, put the question to them, whether they ever ate any human flesh? which they answered in the negative, with a mixture of indignation and abhorrence. One of them, whose name was Mourroa, being asked how he came by a scar on his fore-

head, answered that it was in consequence of a wound he had got in fighting with the people of an island which lies towards the north-east, who sometimes came to invade them. They afterwards took hold of a rope. Still, however, they would not venture on-board; but told Omai, that their countrymen had given them this caution, at the same time, directing them to inquire whence the ship came, and the name of the captain. Their chief, they said, was called Orooaeeeka. Upon our inquiring the name of the island, they told us it was *Mangya*, or *Mangeea*, to which they sometimes added *nooe, nai, naiwa*.

Mourooa was lusty, but not very tall; his features were agreeable, and his disposition seemingly no less so; for he made several droll gesticulations, which indicated both good-nature, and a share of humour. He also made others which seemed of a serious kind, and repeated some words with a devout air, before he ventured to lay hold of the rope; which was probably to recommend himself to the protection of some divinity. His colour was nearly of the same cast with that common to the more southern Europeans. The other man was not so handsome. Both of them had strong, straight hair, of a jet colour, tied together on the crown of the head with a bit of cloth. They wore girdles which were a substance made from the *morus papyrifera* in the same manner as at the other islands in this ocean. It was glazed like the sort used by the natives at the Friendly Islands; but the cloth on their heads was white, like that which was found at Otaheite. They had on a kind of white sandals, made of a grassy substance interwoven, and probably intended to defend their feet against the rough, coral rock. Their beards were long; and the inside of their arms, from the shoulder to the elbow, and some other parts, were punctured or *tatoed*, after the manner of the natives of almost all the other islands in the South Sea. The lobe of the ears was pierced, or rather slit, and to such a length, that one of them stuck there a knife and some beads, which had been given to him; and the same person had two polished pearl shells, and a bunch of human hair, loosely twisted, hanging about his neck. The canoe they came in was not above ten feet long, and very narrow, but both strong and neatly made. The fore part had a flat board fastened over it, and projecting out to prevent the sea getting in or plunging. The lower part was of white wood; but the upper part was black, and their paddles were made of wood of the same colour; these were broad at one end, and blunted, about three feet long. It had an upright stern, five feet high, which terminated at the top in a kind of fork. They paddled, in differently, either end of the canoe forward.

As soon as the ships were in a proper station, Captain Cook sent out two boats to endeavour to find a convenient place for landing. In one of them he went himself, and had no sooner put off from the ship, than the two men in the canoe paddled

towards his boat; and when they were come along-side, Mourroa, without hesitation stept into her. Omai, who was with the captain, was desired to inquire of the islander where they could land; upon which he directed them to two places. But they soon observed, with regret, that the attempt at either place was impracticable, on account of the surf, unless at the risk of having the boats destroyed. Nor were they more successful in their search for anchorage, as they could find no bottom within a cable's length of the breakers, where they met with from forty to twenty fathoms' depth, over sharp rocks of coral.

While they thus reconnoitred the shore of Mangeea, the natives thronged down upon the reef, all armed. Mourroa, who still remained in the boat with Captain Cook, thinking, perhaps, that this warlike appearance deterred them from landing, commanded them to retire. As many of them complied, it was imagined that he was a person of some consequence: indeed, if they did not misunderstand him, he was brother to the king of the island. Several of them instigated by curiosity, swam from the shore to the boats, and came on-board them without reserve. They even found some difficulty in keeping them out, and could scarce prevent their pilfering whatever they could lay their hands upon. At length, when they observed them returning to their ships, they all left our navigators except Mourroa, who, though not without manifest indications of fear, accompanied the commodore on-board the Resolution. The cattle and other new objects that he saw there did not strike him with much surprise; his mind, perhaps, being too much occupied about his own safety, to allow him to attend to other things. He seemed very uneasy, and gave them but little new intelligence; and, therefore, after he had continued a short time on-board, Captain Cook ordered a boat to carry him towards the land. In his way out of the cabin, happening to stumble over one of the goats, he stopped, looked at the animal, and asked Omai what bird it was: but not receiving an immediate answer from him, he put the same question to some of the people who were upon deck. The boat having conveyed him near the surf, he leaped into the water, and swam a-shore. His countrymen, eager to learn from him what he had seen, flocked round him as soon as he had landed; in which situation they remained when the ship lost sight of them. They hoisted in the boat as soon as she returned, and made sail to the northward. Thus they were obliged to leave this fine island unvisited, which seemed capable of supplying all their necessities. It is situated in the longitude of 201 deg. 53 min. east, and in the latitude of 21 deg. 57 min. south.

Those parts of the coast of Mangeea, which fell under observation, are guarded by a reef of coral rock, against which a heavy surf is continually breaking. The island is about five leagues in circumference, and though of a moderate and pretty

equal height, may be seen in clear weather at the distance of ten leagues. In the interior parts it rises into small hills, whence there is an easy descent to the shore, which, in the south-west part is steep, though not very high, and has several excavations made by the dashing of the waves against a brownish, sandy stone, of which it consists. The descent here abounds with trees of a deep green, which seem to be all of one sort except nearest the shore, where we observed numbers of that species of *dracæna* found in the woods of New Zealand. The shore, on the north-west part, terminates in a sandy beach, beyond which the land is broken into small chasms, and has a broad border of trees which resemble tall willows. Farther up, on the ascent, the trees were of the deep green above-mentioned, which some of us imagined to be the rima, intermixed with cocoa-palms, and a few other sorts. Some trees of a taller sort were thinly scattered on the hills, the other parts of which were either covered with something like fern, or were bare, and of a reddish colour. The island upon the whole, has a pleasing appearance, and might, by proper cultivation, be made a very beautiful spot.

The natives appearing to be both numerous and well fed, it is highly probable, that such articles of provision as the island produces, are found in great abundance. Mouroua informed them, that they had no hogs or dogs, though they had heard of both those animals; but that they had plantains, taro, and bread-fruit. The only birds they observed, were some terns, noddies, white egg-birds, and one white heron.

The language of the Mangeeans is a dialect of that of Otaheite, but their pronunciation is more guttural. They resemble the inhabitants of Otaheite and the Marquesas in the beauty of their persons; and their general disposition also seems to correspond with that of the first-mentioned people; for they are not only lively and cheerful, but are acquainted with all the lascivious gesticulations practised by the Otaheiteans in their dances. They had likewise reason to suppose that they have similar methods of living: for, though they had not an opportunity of seeing many of their habitations, they observed one house near the beach, which, in its mode of construction, differed little from those of Otaheite. It appeared to be about seven or eight feet high, and about thirty in length, with an open end, which represented an ellipse, or oval, transversely divided. It was pleasantly situated in a grove. These people salute strangers by joining noses, and taking the hand of the person whom they accost, which they rub with some force upon their mouth and nose. It is worthy of remark, that the inhabitants of the Palaos, New Philippine, or rather Caroline Islands, though at the distance of near 1,500 leagues from Mangea, have a similar method of salutation.

They quitted Mangea in the afternoon of the 30th of March,

and proceeding on a northerly course, again discovered land, on the 31st, at the distance of nine or ten leagues. The next morning they were a-breast of its north-end, within four leagues of it. It now appeared to be an island nearly of the same extent with that which they had just left. Another island, much smaller, was also descried right a-head. Though they could soon have reached this, they preferred the larger one, as being the most likely to furnish food for the caule. They therefore made sail to it; but there being little wind, and that unfavourable, they were still about two leagues to leeward at eight o'clock the succeeding morning. The commodore, soon after, dispatched three armed boats under the command of Mr. Gore, his first lieutenant, in search of a landing-place and anchoring-ground. Meanwhile they plied up under the island with the ships. As the boats were putting off, they saw several canoes coming from the shore, which repaired first to the *Discovery*, as that ship was the nearest. Not long after, three of these canoes, each conducted by one man, came along-side of the *Resolution*. They are long and narrow, and are supported by out-riggers: the head is flat above, but prow-like below; and the stern is about four feet high. They bestowed on the visitors some knives, beads, and other trifles; and they gave in return some cocoa-nuts, in consequence of their having asked for them; but they did not part with them by way of exchange, as they seemed to have no idea of barter or traffic. One of them, after a little persuasion, came on-board; and the other two soon followed his example. They appeared to be perfectly at ease, and free from all apprehension. After their departure; a man arrived in another canoe, bringing a bunch of plantains as a present to Captain Cook, who gave him in return, a piece of red cloth and an axe. They were afterwards informed by *Omai*, that this present had been sent from the king of the island. Soon after a double canoe, containing twelve of the islanders, came towards them. On approaching the ship, they recited some words in concert, by way of chorus, one of them first giving the word before each repetition. Having finished this solemn chant, they came along-side and asked for the chief. As soon as Captain Cook had made his appearance, a pig and some cocoa-nuts were conveyed into the ship; and the captain was also presented with a piece of matting, by the principal person in the canoe, when he and his companions had got on-board.

These new visitors were introduced into the cabin, and conducted to other parts of the ship. Though some objects seemed to surprise them, nothing could fix their attention. They were afraid to venture near the cows and horses, of whose nature they could form no conception. As for the sheep and goats, they gave them to understand that they knew them to be birds. It is a matter of astonishment that human ignorance could ever make so ridiculous a mistake,

as there is not the smallest resemblance between any winged creature and a sheep or goat. But these people seemed unacquainted with the existence of any other land animals, than hogs, dogs, and birds; and as they saw that the goats and sheep were very different from the two former, they absurdly inferred that they must belong to the latter class, in which they knew there was a great variety of species. Though the commodore bestowed on his new friend what he supposed would be the most acceptable present, yet he seemed somewhat disappointed. The captain was afterwards informed that he eagerly wished to procure a dog, of which kind of animals this island was destitute, though the natives knew that the race existed in other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke had received a similar present, with the same view, from another man, who was equally disappointed in his expectations.

The islanders whom they had seen in those canoes were generally of the middle stature, and not unlike the Mangeeans. Their hair either flowed loosely over their shoulders, or was tied on the crown of the head; and though in some it was frizzled, yet that, as well as the straight sort, was long. Some of the young men were handsome. Like the inhabitants of Mangeea, they wore girdles of glazed cloth, or fine matting, the ends of which were brought between their thighs. Their ears were bored, and they wore about their necks, by way of ornament, a sort of broad grass, stained with red, and strung with berries of the nightshade. Many of them were curiously marked or *tattooed* from the middle downwards, particularly upon their legs, which made them appear as if they wore boots. Their beards were long, and they had a kind of sandals on their feet. They were frank and cheerful in their deportment, and very friendly and good-natured.

Lieutenant Gore returned from his excursion in the afternoon, and informed Captain Cook that he had examined the west-side of the island, without being able to find a place where the ships could ride in safety, or a boat could land, the shore being bounded by a steep, coral rock, against which a continual surf broke with extraordinary violence. But as the inhabitants seemed extremely friendly, and as desirous of their landing as they themselves were, Mr. Gore was of opinion that they might be prevailed upon to bring off to the boats, beyond the surf, such articles as they were most in need of. As they had little or no wind, the delay of a day or two was of small consideration; and therefore the commodore resolved to try the experiment the next morning. They observed soon after day-break, some canoes coming towards the ships; one of which directed its course towards the *Resolution*. There were in it some coconuts and plantains, and a hog, for which the natives demanded a dog, refusing every other thing they offered by way of exchange. Though one of the gentlemen on-board had a dog and a bitch,

which were great nuisances in the ship, and which might have served to propagate a race of so useful an animal in this island, yet he could not be prevailed upon to part with them. However, to gratify these people, Omai gave them a favourite dog he had brought from Great Britain; with which acquisition they seemed highly pleased.

The same morning, which was the 3rd of April, Captain Cook detached Mr. Gore with three boats, to make trial of the experiment which that officer had proposed. Two of the natives, who had been on-board, accompanied him; and Omai served as an interpreter. The ships being a full league from the island when the boat put off, and the wind being inconsiderable, it was twelve o'clock before they could work up to it. They then perceived the three boats just without the surf, and an amazing number of the islanders on the shore abreast of them. Concluding from this that Lieutenant Gore, and others of our people, had landed, Captain Cook was impatient to know the event. With a view of observing their motions, and being ready to afford them such assistance as they might occasionally require, the commodore kept as near the shore as was consistent with prudence. He was convinced, however, that the reef was a very effectual barrier between them and their friends who had landed, and put them completely out of the reach of their protection. But the natives, in all probability, were not so sensible of this circumstance as they were. Some of them, now and then, brought a few cocoa-nuts to the ships, and exchanged them for whatever was offered them. These occasional visits diminished the captain's solicitude about our people who had landed; for, though they could procure no intelligence from their visitors, yet their venturing on-board seemed to imply, that their countrymen on-shore had made no improper use of the confidence reposed in them. At length, towards the evening, they had the satisfaction of seeing the boats return. When their people got on board, they found that Mr. Gore, Mr. Anderson, Mr. Burney, and Omai were the only persons who had landed. The occurrences of the day were now fully reported to the commodore by Mr. Gore. Mr. Anderson's account of their transactions, which was very circumstantial, and included some observations on the island and its inhabitants, was to the following purport:—

“ They rowed towards a sandy beach, where a great number of the natives had assembled, and came to an anchor at the distance of a hundred yards from the reef. Several of the islanders swam off, bringing cocoa-nuts with them; and Omai gave them to understand that their people were landing. Soon after two canoes came off; and to inspire the natives with a great confidence, Mr. Gore and his companions resolved to go unarmed, and to run the hazard of being treated well or ill.

“ Our conductors,” says Mr. Anderson, “ watching attentively

h might have
in this island,
m. However,
e dog he had
n they seemed

Captain Cook
al of the ex-
f the natives,
Omai served
om the island
erable, it was

They then
an amazing
them. Con-
hers of our
to know the
, and being
occasionally
as was con-
er, that the
their friends
each of their
were not so
f them, now
l exchanged
sional visits
le who had
gence from
l to imply,
oper use of
ls the even-
rn. When
Mr. Ander-
s who had
reported to
unt of their
aded some
as to the

number of
e distance
islanders
gave them
after two
reat confi-
unarmed,

ttentively



the motions of the surf, landed Mr. Burney and myself, who were in the first canoe, safely upon the reef. An islander took hold of each of us, obviously with an intention to support us in walking over the rugged rock, to the beach, where several of the others met us, holding the green boughs of a species of *mimosa* in their hands, and saluted us by joining their noses to ours. Mr. Gore and Omai were landed from the second canoe.

"A great crowd flocked with eager curiosity to look at us, and would have prevented our proceeding, had not some, who seemed to have authority, dealt blows, with little distinction, amongst them to keep them off. We were then led up an avenue of cocoa-palms; and soon come to a number of men, arranged in two rows, and armed with clubs, which they hold on their shoulders much in the same manner as we rest a musket. After walking a little way amongst these, we found a person who seemed a chief, sitting on the ground cross-legged, cooling himself with a sort of triangular fan, made from a leaf of the cocoa-palm, with a polished handle of black wood, fixed to one corner. In his ears were large branches of beautiful, red feathers, which pointed forward. But he had no other mark or ornament, to distinguish him from the rest of his people; though they all obeyed him with the greatest alacrity. He either naturally had, or at this time put on, a serious, but not severe countenance; and we were desired to salute him as he sat, by some people, who seemed of consequence.

"We proceeded still amongst the men armed with clubs, and came to a second chief, who sat fanning himself, and ornamented as the first. He was remarkable for his size, and uncommon corpulence, though to appearance not above thirty. In the same manner we were conducted to a third chief, who seemed older than the two former, and though not so fat as the second, was of a large size. He also was sitting, and adorned with red feathers; and after saluting him as we had done the others, he desired us both to sit down, which we were very willing to do, being pretty well fatigued with walking up, and with the excessive heat we felt, amongst the vast crowd that surrounded us.

"In a few minutes the people were ordered to separate; and we saw at the distance of thirty yards, about twenty young women, ornamented as the chiefs, with red feathers, engaged in a dance, which they performed to a slow and serious air, sung by them all. We got up and went forward to see them; they continued their dance, without paying the least attention to us. They seemed to be directed by a man who served as a prompter, and mentioned each motion they were to make. But they never changed the spot, as we do in dancing, and though their feet were not at rest, this exercise consisted more in moving their fingers very nimbly, at the same time holding their hands in a prone position near their face, and now and then also clapping

them together. Their motions and song were performed in such exact concert, that it should seem they had been taught with great care; and probably they were selected for this ceremony, as few of those whom we saw in the crowd equalled them in beauty. In general they were rather stout than slender, with black hair flowing in ringlets down the neck, and of an olive complexion. Their features were rather fuller than what we allow to perfect beauties, and much alike; but their eyes were of a deep black, and each countenance expressed a degree of complacency and modesty, peculiar to the sex in every part of the world; but, perhaps, more conspicuous here, where nature presented us with her productions in the fullest perfection, unbiassed in sentiment by custom, or unrestrained in manner by art. Their shape and limbs were elegantly formed. For, as their dress consisted only of a piece of glazed cloth, fastened about the waist, and scarcely reaching so low as the knees, in many we had an opportunity of observing every part. This dance was not finished, when we heard a noise, as if some horses had been galloping towards us; and, on looking aside, we saw the people armed with clubs, who had been desired, as we suppose, to entertain us with the sight of their manner of fighting. This they now did, one party pursuing another who fled.

“As we supposed the ceremony of being introduced to the chiefs was now at an end, we began to look about for Mr. Gore and Omai; and, though the crowd would hardly suffer us to move, we at length found them coming up, as much incommoded by the people as we had been, and introduced in the same manner to the three chiefs. Each of these expected a present; and Mr. Gore gave them such things as he had brought with him from the ship, for that purpose. After this, making use of Omai as his interpreter, he informed the chiefs with what intention we had come on-shore; but was given to understand that he must wait till next day, and then he should have what was wanted.

“They now seemed to take some pains to separate us from each other; and every one of us had his respective circle to surround and gaze at him. For my part I was, at one time, about an hour apart from my friends; and when I told the chief, with whom I sat, that I wanted to speak with Omai, he peremptorily refused my request. At the same time, I found the people began to steal several trifling things which I had in my pocket; and when I complained to the chief of this treatment, he justified it. From these circumstances, I now entertained apprehensions that they had a design to detain us amongst them. They did not, indeed, seem to be of a disposition so savage as to make us anxious for the safety of our persons; but it was, nevertheless, vexing to think, we had hazarded being detained by their curiosity. In this situation I asked for something to

eat; and they readily brought me some cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and a sort of sour pudding, which was presented by a woman. And on my complaining much of the heat occasioned by the crowd, the chief himself condescended to fan me, and gave me a small piece of cloth, which he had round his waist.

“ Mr. Burney happening to come to the place where I was, I mentioned my suspicions to him; and, to put it to the test, whether they were well founded, we attempted to get to the beach. But we were stopt, when about half way, by some men, who told us, that we must go back to the place we had left. On coming up we found Omai entertaining the same apprehensions. But he had, as he fancied, an additional reason for being afraid; for he had observed, that they had dug a hole in the ground for an oven, which they were now heating; and he could assign no other reason for this, than that they meant to roast and eat us, as is practised by the natives of New Zealand. Nay, he went so far as to ask them the question; at which they were greatly surprised, asking, in return, whether that was a custom with us? Mr. Burney and I were rather angry that they should be thus suspected by him; there having as yet been no appearances, in their conduct towards us, of their being capable of such brutality.

“ In this manner we were detained the greatest part of the day, being sometimes together, and sometimes separated, but always in a crowd; who, not satisfied with gazing at us, frequently desired us to uncover parts of our skin—the sight of which commonly produced a general murmur of admiration. At the same time they did not omit these opportunities of rifling our pockets; and at last one of them snatched a small bayonet from Mr. Gore, which hung in its sheath by his side. This was represented to the chief, who pretended to send some person in search of it. But, in all probability, he countenanced the theft; for, soon after Omai had a dagger stolen from his side in the same manner, though he did not miss it immediately.

“ Whether they observed any signs of uneasiness in us, or that they voluntarily repeated their emblems of friendship when we expressed a desire to go, I cannot tell; but, at this time, they brought some green boughs, and, sticking their ends in the ground, desired we should hold them as we sat. Upon my urging our business again, they gave us to understand, that we must stay and eat with them; and a pig that we saw soon after lying near the oven, which they had prepared and heated, removed Omai's apprehensions of being put into it himself, and made us think it might be intended for our repast. The chief also promised to send some people to procure food for the cattle; but it was not till late in the afternoon that we saw them return with a few plantain-trees, which they carried to our boats.

“ In the meantime, Mr. Burney and I attempted again to go to the beach; but, when we arrived, found ourselves watched by

people, who seemed to have been planted there for that purpose : for, when I tried to wade in upon the reef, one of them took hold of my clothes, and dragged me back. I picked up some small pieces of coral, which they required me to throw down again; and, on my refusal, they made no scruple to take them forcibly from me. I had gathered some small plants; but these also I could not be permitted to retain; and they took a fan from Mr. Burney, which he had received as a present on coming a-shore. Omai said, we had done wrong in taking up any thing; for it was not the custom here to permit freedoms of that kind to strangers, till they had, in some measure, naturalized them to the country, by entertaining them with festivity for two or three days.

“ Finding that the only method of procuring better treatment was to yield implicit obedience to their will, we went up again to the place we had left; and they now promised that we should have a canoe to carry us off to our boats, after we had eaten of a repast which had been prepared for us.

“ Accordingly, the second chief before-mentioned, having seated himself upon a low, broad stool of blackish, hard wood, tolerably polished, and directing the multitude to make a pretty large ring, made us sit down by him. A considerable number of cocoa-nuts were now brought, and shortly after, a long, green basket, with a sufficient quantity of baked plantains to have served a dozen persons. A piece of the young hog that had been dressed, was then set before each of us, of which we were desired to eat. Our appetites, however, had failed from the fatigue of the day; and though we did eat a little to please them, it was without satisfaction to ourse^r es.

“ It being now near sun-set, we told them it was time to go on-board. This they allowed; and sent down to the beach the remainder of the victuals that had been dressed, to be carried with us to the ship. We found a canoe ready to put us off to our boats, which the natives did with the same caution as when we landed. They put us on-board the boats, with the cocoa-nuts, plantains, and other provisions, which they had brought; and we rowed to the ships, very well pleased that we had at last got out of the hands of our troublesome masters.”

The restrained situation of these gentlemen gave them very little opportunity of observing the country; for they were seldom a hundred yards from the place where they had been introduced to the chiefs, and consequently were confined to the surrounding objects. The first thing that attracted their notice was the number of people, which must have been at least two thousand. Except a few, those who had come on-board the ships were all of an inferior class; for a great number of those that the officers met with on the shore, had a superior dignity of demeanour, and their complexion was much whiter. In general, they had their hair, which was long and black, tied on the crown

of the head. Many of the young men were perfect models in shape, and of a delicate complexion. The old men were, many of them, corpulent; and they, as well as the young, had a remarkable smoothness of skin. Their general dress consisted of a piece of cloth wrapped round the waist, but some had pieces of mats, most curiously variegated with black and white, formed into a kind of jacket without sleeves; while others wore conical caps, made of the core of a cocoa-nut, interwoven with beads. In their ears, which were pierced, they hung pieces of the membranous part of some plant, or stuck some odoriferous flower. The chiefs, and other persons of rank, had two little balls, with a common base, made of bone, which they hung round their necks with a small cord. Red feathers are here considered as a particular mark of distinction: for none but the chiefs, and the young women who danced assumed them. Some of the men were punctured all over the sides and back, and some of the women had the same ornament (if it deserves that name), on their legs. The elderly women had their hair cropped short, and many of them were cut all over the fore part of the body in oblique lines. The wife of a chief appeared with her child laid in a piece of red cloth, which had been presented to her husband; she suckled the infant much after the same manner of our women. Another chief introduced his daughter, who was young, beautiful, and modest. No personal deformities were observed in either sex, except a few individuals who had scars of broad ulcers remaining on the face and other parts.

Many of the natives were armed with spears and clubs, the latter of which were generally about six feet long, made of hard, black wood, and neatly polished. The spears were formed of the same wood, simply pointed, and were in general twelve feet long; but some were so short as to seem intended for darts.

They preserved their canoes from the sun, under the shade of various trees. Our officers saw eight or ten of them, all double ones, that is, two single ones fastened together by rafters lashed across. They were about four feet deep, and in length about twenty feet, and the sides were rounded with a plank raised upon them. Two of these canoes were curiously stained all over with black, in innumerable small figures, as triangles, squares, &c. and were far superior to any thing of the kind Mr. Anderson had ever seen at any other island in the South Sea. The paddles were almost elliptical, and about four feet long.

Most of the trees observed by Mr. Anderson were cocoa-palms, some sorts of *hibiscus*, a species of *euphorbia*, and many of the same kind he had seen at Mangeea. The latter are tall and slender, resembling a cypress, and are called by the natives *etoa*. He also saw a species of *convolvulus*, and some treacle-mustard; besides which, there are doubtless other plants and fruit trees which he had not an opportunity of seeing. The soil, towards the sea, is nothing more than a bank of coral, generally

deep and rugged, which, though it has probably been for many centuries exposed to the weather, has suffered no farther change than becoming black on its surface. The reef, or rock, with which the shore is lined, runs to different breadths into the sea, where it resembles a high steep wall. It is of a brownish colour, and nearly even with the surface of the water; and though its texture is rather porous, it is capable of withstanding the washing of the surf, which constantly breaks upon it.

Though the landing of the officers was the means of enriching the narrative of the voyage with the preceding particulars, yet the principal object in view was partly unattained; for they scarcely procured any thing worth mentioning from the island.

It has already been mentioned, that Omai was sent upon this expedition, and, perhaps, his being Mr. Gore's interpreter, was not the only service he performed this day. He was asked by the natives a great many questions concerning our people, our ships, our country, and the sort of arms we used; and, according to the account he gave to Captain Cook, his answers were not a little upon the marvellous. Our country, he told them, had ships as large as their island; on-board which were instruments of war (describing the guns) of such dimensions, that several people might sit within them; and that one of them was sufficient to crush the whole island at one shot. This led them to ask what sort of guns were on-board Captain Cook's ships? He said, that though they were but small in comparison with those he had described, yet, with such as they were, they could, with the greatest ease, and at the distance the ships were from the shore, destroy the island, and kill every soul in it. They then inquired by what means this could be done? and Omai explained it as well as he could. He happened luckily to have a few cartridges in his pocket. These he produced; the balls, and the gunpowder that was to set them in motion, were submitted to inspection: and to supply the defects of his description, an appeal was made to the senses of the spectators. The multitude had been formed, as before-mentioned, into a circle. This furnished Omai with a convenient stage for his exhibition. In the centre of this, the small quantity of gunpowder collected from his cartridges was properly disposed upon the ground, and set on fire by a piece of burning wood from the oven. The sudden blast, and loud report, the mingled flame and smoke that instantly succeeded, filled the whole assembly with astonishment. They no longer doubted the tremendous power of our weapons, and gave full credit to all that Omai had said.

If it had not been for the terrible idea they conceived of the ship's guns, from the specimen of their mode of operation, it was thought they would have detained the officers all night. For Omai assured them, that if he and his companions did not return on-board the same day, they might expect that the captain would fire upon the island. And as the ships stood in nearer the land

in the evening than they had done any time before, of which they were observed to take great notice, they probably thought that this formidable attack was meditating; and, therefore, they suffered their guests to depart; in the expectation, however, of seeing them again on-shore next morning. But, Captain Cook was too sensible of the risk they had already run, to think of repeating the experiment.

This island, though never before visited by Europeans, had actually other strangers residing in it. Omai, when he landed with Mr. Gore, found amongst the crowd, three of his own countrymen, natives of the Society Islands. At the distance of about 200 leagues from those islands, an immense, unknown ocean intervening, with such wretched sea-boats as their inhabitants are known to make use of, and fit only for a passage where sight of land is scarcely ever lost, such a meeting, at such a place, so accidentally visited by Captain Cook's people, may well be looked upon as one of those unexpected situations with which the writers of feigned adventures love to surprise their readers, and which, when they really happen in common life, deserve to be recorded for their singularity.

It may be imagined with what surprise and satisfaction Omai and his countrymen engaged in conversation; and their story is very affecting. Twenty persons, of both sexes, had embarked on-board a canoe at Otaheite, to cross over to the neighbouring island Ulietea. A violent contrary wind arising, they could neither reach the latter, nor get back to the former. Their intended passage being a very short one, their stock of provisions was scanty, and soon exhausted. The hardships they suffered, while driven by the storm, they knew not whither, are not to be conceived. They passed many days without any thing to eat or drink. Worn out by famine and fatigue, their numbers gradually diminished. Four men only survived when the canoe upset; and then the perdition of these seemed inevitable. However, they kept hanging by its side, during some of the last days, till providence brought them in sight of the people of this island, who immediately sent out canoes and brought them a-shore. Of the four, thus saved, one was since dead. The other three who lived to give this account of their almost miraculous transplantation, spoke highly of the kind treatment they here met with; and they were so well satisfied with their present situation, that they refused the offer made to them, at Omai's request, of giving them a passage to their native islands. The similarity of manners and language had more than naturalized them to this spot; and the fresh connexions they had here formed, and which it would have been painful to have broken off after such a length of time, sufficiently account for this refusal. They had arrived upon the island at least twelve years before.

"The landing," says Captain Cook, "of our gentlemen on this island, cannot but be considered as a very fortunate circum-

stance. It has proved the means of thus bringing to our knowledge a fact, not only very curious, but very instructive. The application of the above narrative is obvious. It will serve to explain, better than a thousand conjectures of speculative reasoners, how the detached parts of the earth, and, in particular, how the islands of the South Sea, may have been first peopled; especially those that lie remote from any inhabited continent, or from each other."

According to Omai's account of what he learned in conversation with his three countrymen, the manners of those islanders, their method of treating strangers, and their general habits of life, are much like those that prevail at Otaheite, and its neighbouring isles. Their religious ceremonies and opinions are also nearly the same. From every circumstance, indeed, it is indubitable, that the natives of Wateoo sprang originally from the same stock which has spread itself so wonderfully all over the immense extent of the South Sea. One would suppose, however, that they put in their claim to a more illustrious extraction, for Omai said, that they dignified their island with the appellation of *Wenooa no te Eatooa*, that is, a land of gods; esteeming themselves a sort of divinities, and possessed with the spirit of *Eatooa*. This wild, enthusiastic notion Omai seemed much to approve of; observing, that there were instances of its being entertained at Otaheite, but that it was universally prevalent among the inhabitants of Mataia, or Osnaburg island. Omai, and the two New Zealanders perfectly understood their language, which was pretty much the same as at the other islands.

Having failed in procuring any supplies of consequence in Wateoo, and the easterly swell having carried the ships to some distance from the island on the night of the 3rd of April, early next morning, Captain Cook steered for the island which he had discovered three days before.

About ten o'clock next morning they got up to it, and Mr. Gore was immediately dispatched with two boats to look out a landing-place, and procure provender for the cattle. Though a reef surrounded the land here as at Wateoo, and a considerable surf broke against the rocks, the boats no sooner reached the west-side of the island, but they ventured in, and Mr. Gore and his attendants arrived safe on-shore. Captain Cook seeing they had so far succeeded, sent a small boat to know if further assistance was required. She waited to take in a lading of the produce of the island, and did not return till three in the afternoon. Being cleared, she was sent again for another cargo; the jolly-boat was also dispatched upon the same business, with orders for Mr. Gore to return with the boats before night, which orders were punctually observed.

The supply obtained here was about two hundred cocoa-nuts for the crew, and for the cattle some grass, and a quantity of the leaves and branches of young cocoa-trees, and the *pandanus*.

This island lies about three or four leagues from Wateooq, the inhabitants of which call it Otakootaia. It is in the latitude of 19 deg. 51 min. south, and the longitude of 201 deg. 37 min. east, and is supposed not to exceed three miles in circuit. This island is entirely destitute of water. Cocoa-palms were the only common trees found there, of which there were several clusters, and great quantities of the *wharra* or *pandanus*. There were also the *callophyllum*, *suriana*, with a few other shrubs; also a sort of *bind-weed*, *treacle-mustard*, a species of *spurge*, and the *morinda citrifolia*, the fruit of which is sometimes eaten by the natives of Otaheite. Omai, who landed with the party, dressed some of it for their dinner, but they thought it very indifferent. A beautiful cuckoo, of a chesnut brown, variegated with black, was the only bird seen amongst the trees; but, upon the shore, were a small sort of curlew, blue and white herons, some egg-birds, and great numbers of noddies. One of the company caught a lizard running up a tree; though small, it had a most forbidding aspect. Many of another sort were also seen. Infinite numbers of a kind of moth, elegantly specked with black, white, and red, frequented the bushes towards the sea. Some other sorts of moths and pretty butterflies were seen. At this time there were no fixed inhabitants upon the island, but they discovered a few empty huts, which convinced them of its being, at least occasionally, visited. Monuments, consisting of several large stones, were also erected under the shade of some trees: there were also some smaller ones, with which several places were enclosed, where they supposed their dead had been buried. They found in one place a great many cockle-shells, of a particular sort, finely grooved, and larger than the first; from which it was conjectured, that the island had been visited by persons who sometimes fed on shell-fish. Mr. Gore left some *maille* and a hatchet in one of the huts, for the use of those who might visit the island in future.

The boats being hoisted in, they made sail again to the northward, resolving to try their fortune at Tiervey's Island, which was discovered by Captain Cook in 1775, during his last voyage. They got sight of it about day-break in the morning of the 6th, at the distance of about three leagues; and approaching it about eight o'clock, observed several canoes coming from the shore towards the ships. They were rather surprised at this circumstance, as no traces or signs of inhabitants were seen when the island was first discovered: this, indeed, might be owing to a brisk wind that then blew, and prevented their canoes venturing out.

Advancing still towards the island, six or seven double canoes immediately came near the ship, with from three to six men in each of them. At the distance of about a stone's throw from the ship they stopped, and it was with difficulty that Omai prevailed on them to come along-side; but they could not be induced to

trust themselves on-board. Indeed, their disorderly behaviour did not indicate a disposition to trust, or to treat them well. They attempted to steal some oars out of the Discovery's boat, and struck a man for endeavouring to prevent them. They also cut away a net containing meat, which hung over the stern of that ship, and at first would not restore it, though they afterwards permitted us to purchase it from them. Those who were about the Resolution behaved equally disorderly and daring; for, with a sort of hooks made of a long stick, they openly endeavoured to rob them of several things, and actually got a frock belonging to one of the people. It appeared that they had a knowledge of bartering, for they exchanged some fish for some small nails, of which they were extravagantly fond, and called them *goore*. Pieces of paper, or any other trifling article that was thrown to them, they caught with the greatest avidity; and if what was thrown fell into the sea, they immediately plunged in to swim after it.

Though the distance between Hervey's Island and Wateoo is not very great, the inhabitants differ greatly from each other, both in person and disposition. The colour of the natives of Hervey's Island is of a deeper cast, and several of them had a fierce, savage aspect, like the natives of New Zealand, though some were fairer. Their hair was long and black, either hanging loose about their shoulders, or tied in a bunch on the top of the head. Some few, indeed, had it cropped short, and, in two or three of them, it was of a red or brownish colour. Their clothing was a narrow piece of mat, bound several times round the lower part of the body, and passing between the thighs. We saw a fine cap of red feathers lying in one of their canoes, and some amongst them were ornamented with the shell of a pearl-oyster, polished, and hung about the neck.

The mode of ornament, so prevalent among the natives of this ocean, of puncturing or tatooing their bodies, not one of them had adopted; but, though they were singular in this respect, their being of the same common race is not to be doubted. Their language more resembled the dialect of Otaheite, than that of Manglea or Wateoo. Like the natives of those islands, they inquired from whence our sailors came, whither bound, the ship's name, the name of the chief, and the number of men on-board? Such questions as were proposed to them, they very readily answered. They stated, among other things, that they had before seen two large ships, like ours, but had not spoken to them as they passed. These were doubtless the Resolution and Adventure. They said, that the name of their island was Terougge-mou Atooa; and likewise, that they were subject to Teerevatoeah, king of Wateoo.

Their food, they said, consisted of cocoa-nuts, fish, and turtle; being destitute of dogs and hogs, and the island not producing bread-fruit or plantains. Their canoes (nearly thirty of which

appeared at one time in sight), were tolerably large, and well-built, and bear some resemblance to those of Wateoo.

The ships drew near to the north-west part of the island about one o'clock. This seemed to be the only part where they could expect to find anchorage or a landing-place for their boats. Captain Cook immediately dispatched Lieutenant King, with two armed boats, to sound and reconnoitre the coast. The boats were no sooner hoisted out, than the new visitors suspended their traffic, pushing for shore as fast as possible, and came no more near the ships.

The boats returned at three o'clock, and Mr. King informed Captain Cook, that he could find no anchorage for the ships; and that the boats could advance no farther than the outer edge of the reef, which was almost a quarter of a mile from the dry land. That a number of the natives came upon the reef, armed with clubs and long pikes, meaning, as he supposed, to oppose his landing; though, at the same time, they threw cocoa-nuts to our people, and requested them to come on-shore; and, notwithstanding this seemingly friendly treatment, the women were very active in bringing down a fresh supply of darts and spears.

Captain Cook considered, that as he could not bring the ships to an anchor, the attempt to procure grass here, would be attended with delay and danger. Being thus disappointed in all the islands after leaving New Zealand, and having, from a variety of circumstances, being unavoidably retarded in his progress, it was in vain to think of doing any thing this year in the high latitudes of the northern hemisphere, from which they were then so far distant, though it was then the season for operations there. Thus situated, it was necessary to pursue such measures as appeared best calculated to preserve their cattle, and save the stores and provisions of the ships; the better to enable them to prosecute their northern discoveries, which could not now commence till a year later than was intended.

If they could fortunately have procured a supply of water and grass, at any of the islands they had lately visited, Captain Cook intended to have stood back to the south, till he had got a westerly wind. But, without such a supply, the certain consequence of doing this would have been the loss of the cattle before it was possible to reach Otaheite, without gaining a single point of advantage respecting the grand object of the voyage. The captain, therefore, determined to bear away for the Friendly Islands, where he knew he could be well supplied with every thing he wanted; and, it being necessary to run night and day, he ordered Captain Clerke to keep a league a-head of the Resolution; because, his ship could best claw off the land, which they might possibly fall in with in their passage.

The ships steered west by south, with a fine breeze. Captain Cook proposed to proceed first to Middleburgh, or Eooa, thinking they might, perhaps, have provision enough for their cattle,

to last till they should arrive at that island. But, the next day, about noon those faint breezes, that had so long retarded them, again returned; and they found it necessary to get into the latitude of Palmerston's and Savage Islands, which Captain Cook discovered in 1774; that, in case of necessity, recourse might be had to them. In order to save the water, Captain Cook ordered the still to be kept at work a whole day; during which time they procured about fifteen gallons of fresh water.

These light breezes continued till Thursday the 10th, when the wind blew some hours fresh from the north, and north north-west. In the afternoon there was some heavy rain, attended with thunder squalls. They collected as much rain-water as filled five puncheons. When these squalls had blown over, the wind was very unsettled, both in strength, and in position, till the next day at noon, when it fixed at north-west, and north north-west, and blew a fresh breeze.

Thus persecuted with a wind in their teeth, they had the additional mortification to find those very winds here, which they had reason to expect farther south. At day-break, however, on the 13th, they perceived Palmerston's Island, bearing west by south, at the distance of about five leagues; but did not get up with it till the next morning at eight. Captain Cook then dispatched three boats from the Resolution, and one from the Discovery, with a proper officer in each, to search for a convenient landing-place: they being now under an absolute necessity of procuring here some provender for their cattle, or they must certainly have lost them.

What is called Palmerston's Island, consists of a group of small islets, about nine or ten in number, connected together by a reef of coral rocks, and lying in a circular direction. The boats first examined the most south-easterly islet; and, not succeeding there, ran down to the second, where they immediately landed. Captain Cook then bore down with his ship, till a-breast of the place, where they kept standing off and on, there being no bottom to be found to anchor upon. This, however, was of no material consequence, as there were no human beings upon the islands, except the party who had landed from the boats.

At one o'clock one of the boats returned laden with scurvy-grass and young cocoa-trees, which was, at this time, a most excellent repast for the animals on-board. A message was also brought from Mr. Gore, who commanded the party upon this expedition, acquainting us that the island abounded with such produce, and also with the wharra-tree and cocoa-nuts. In consequence of this information, Captain Cook resolved to get a sufficient supply of these articles before he quitted this station, and accordingly went on-shore in a small boat, accompanied by the captain of the Discovery. The island does not exceed a mile in circumference, and is not elevated above three feet beyond the level of

the sea. It is composed almost entirely of a coral sand, with a small mixture of blackish mould, which appeared to be produced from rotten vegetables.

This poor soil, is however, covered with the same kinds of shrubs and bushes, as had been seen at Otakoo-taia or Wenoa-ette, though not in so great a variety. They perceived a great number of man-of-war birds, tropic-birds, and two sorts of boobies, which were then laying their eggs, and so exceedingly tame as to permit them to take them off their nests, which consist only of a few sticks loosely put together. These tropic birds differ essentially from the common sort, being of a beautiful white, slightly tinged with red, and having two long tail feathers of a deepish crimson. Their people killed a considerable number of each sort; which, though not the most delicate kind of food, were highly acceptable to them, who had been a long time confined to a salt diet. They saw plenty of red crabs creeping about among the trees, and caught several fish, which, when the sea retreated, had been left in holes upon the reef.

At one part of the reef, which bounds the lake within, almost even with the surface, there was a large bed of coral, which afforded a most enchanting prospect. Its base, which was fixed to the shore, extended so far that it could not be seen, so that it appeared to be suspended in the water. The sea was then unruffled, and the refulgence of the sun exposed the various sorts of coral in the most beautiful order; some parts luxuriantly branching in the water, others appearing in a vast variety of figures, and the whole greatly heightened by spangles of the richest colours, glowing from a number of large clams, interspersed in every part. Even this delightful scene was greatly improved by the multitude of fishes that gently glided along, seemingly with the most perfect security. Their colours were the most beautiful that could be imagined; blue, yellow, black, red, &c. far exceeding any thing that could be produced by art. The richness of this sub-marine grotto was greatly increased by their various forms; and the whole could not possibly be surveyed without a pleasing transport, accompanied at the same time with regret, that a work so astonishingly elegant should be concealed in a place so seldom explored by the human eye.

Except a piece of a canoe that was found upon the beach, no traces were discoverable of inhabitants, having ever been there; and, probably, that may have been drifted from some other island. The sailors were surprised, however, at perceiving some small brown rats on this little island; a circumstance, perhaps, not easily accounted for, unless we admit the possibility of their being imported in the canoe of which they had seen the remains.

The boats being laden, Captain Cook returned on-board, leaving Mr. Gore and his party to pass the night on-shore, to be ready for business early the next morning.

The 15th, like the preceding day, was spent in collecting subsistence for the cattle, consisting principally of tender branches of the wharra-tree, palm-cabbage, and young cocoa-nut trees. A sufficient supply of these having been procured by sun-set, Captain Cook ordered all the people on-board; but, having very little wind he determined to employ the next day, by endeavouring to get some cocoa-nuts for his people, from the next island to the leeward: for this purpose they kept standing off and on all night; and about nine o'clock in the morning, went to the west-side of the islands, and landed from the boats with little difficulty. The people immediately employed themselves in gathering cocoa-nuts, which were found in the greatest plenty; but, it was a tedious operation to convey them to the boats, being obliged to carry them half a mile over the reef, up to the middle in water. Omai, who accompanied them, presently caught, with a scoop-net, as many fish as supplied the party on-shore for dinner, besides sending a quantity to each ship. Man-of-war, and tropic-birds, were found here in abundance, so that the crew fared most sumptuously. In these excursions to the uninhabited islands, Omai was of the greatest service; he caught the fish, and dressed them, as well as the birds they killed, after the fashion of his country, with a dexterity and cheerfulness that did him honour. Before night the boats made two trips, and were each time heavily laden; with the last Captain Cook returned on-board, leaving his third lieutenant Mr. Williamson, with a party, to prepare another lading for the boats against the next morning. Accordingly Captain Cook dispatched them about seven o'clock, and by noon they returned laden. No delay was made in sending them back for another cargo, with orders for all to be on-board by sun-set. These orders being punctually obeyed, they hoisted in their boats, and sailed to the westward with a light air from the north.

The islet the ships last came from is somewhat larger than the other, and almost covered with cocoa-palms. The other productions were the same as at the first islet. On the beach were found two pieces of board, one of which was rudely carved, and an elliptical paddle. These were, perhaps, a part of the same canoe, the remains of which had been seen on the other beach, the two islets being within half a mile of each other. There were not so many crabs here as at the last place, but they found some scorpions and other insects, and a much greater number of fish upon the reefs. Among the rest were some beautiful, large, spotted eels, which would raise themselves out of the water, and endeavour to bite their pursuers. There were also snappers, parrot-fish, and a brown, spotted rock-fish, not larger than a haddock, so tame that it would remain fixed and gaze at them. If they had been really in want, a sufficient supply might easily have been had, for thousands of the clams

stuck upon the reef, many of which weighed two or three pounds. There were also some other sorts of shell-fish; and when the tide flowed, several sharks came with it; some of which were killed by the people; but, their presence rendered it, at that time, unsafe to walk in the water.

Mr. Williamson and his party who were left on-shore, were much pestered in the night with mosquitoes. Some of them shot two curlews, and saw some plovers upon the shore; one or two cuckoos, like those at Wenoa-ette, were also seen.

The islets comprehended under the name of Palmerston's Island, may be said to be the summits of a reef of coral rock; covered only with a thin coat of sand; though clothed with trees and plants, like the low grounds of that ocean.

Having left Palmerston's Island, they steered west in order to proceed to Annamooka. They had variable winds, with squalls, some thunder, and much rain. The showers being very copious, they saved a considerable quantity of water; and, as they could procure a greater supply in one hour by the rain than by distillation in a month, they laid the still aside, as being attended with more trouble than advantage.

The heat, which had continued in the extreme for about a month, became much more disagreeable in this close, rainy weather, and it was apprehended it would soon be noxious. It is, however, remarkable, that there was not then a single person sick on board either of the ships.

They passed Savage Island, which Captain Cook discovered in 1774, in the night between the 24th and 25th; and on the 28th, about ten o'clock in the morning, saw the islands to the eastward of Annamooka, bearing north by west about five leagues distant. They steered to the south, and then hauled up for Annamooka. At the approach of night, the weather being squally, with rain, they anchored in fifteen fathoms' water.

They had scarcely anchored, when two canoes paddled towards them, and without hesitation came along-side. They bartered with them for nails, some cocoa-nuts, sugar-cane, bread-fruit, and plantains, which they had brought with them. Towards evening they had a short visit from another canoe; so eager were they to get possession of a few of the most trifling articles, that they considered the trouble and danger of paddling from Komango, at that time five miles distant, as a matter of no moment.

Next morning, at four o'clock, Lieutenant King was dispatched by Captain Cook with two boats, in order to procure refreshments, and made the signal to weigh at five to proceed to Annamooka.

At day-break they had a visit from six or seven canoes, which brought with them some fowls, two pigs, several large wood-pigeons, small rails, some violet-coloured coots, besides fruits and roots of various kinds, for which they gave them in exchange beads, hatchets, nails, &c. They had various other

articles of commerce, but Captain Cook had given particular orders, that they should purchase no curiosities till the ships were supplied with provisions, except by his permission.

Mr. King's party returned about noon, having been treated with great civility at Komango. The chief of the island, Tooboulangee, and another Taipa, came on-board with Mr. King. They presented a hog to the captain, and promised him more next day. Mr. King procured seven hogs, some fowls, and a quantity of fruits and roots, with some grass for the animals. They reported, that, from the observations they could make, the inhabitants were not numerous; their huts were very indifferent, and almost joined to one another.

The boats being a-board, they stood for Annamooka; and, having little wind, they intended to go between Annamooka-ette, (Little Annamooka), and the breakers at the south-east; but, on drawing near, met with very irregular soundings, which obliged them to relinquish the design, and go to the southward. This carried them to leeward, and they found it necessary to spend the night under sail. It was dark and rainy, and they had the wind from every direction. The next morning at day-light, they were farther off than they had been the preceding evening, and the wind was now right in their teeth. They continued to ply to very little purpose the whole day, and in the evening anchored in thirty-nine fathoms' water; the west point of Annamooka bearing east-north-east four miles distant. Tooboulangee and Taipa, agreeable to their promise, brought off some hogs for Captain Cook: and they obtained others, by bartering from the different canoes that followed them, and a large quantity of fruit. It is remarkable, that those who visited them from the islands on that day, would hardly part with any of their commodities to any one but Captain Cook.

At four the next morning, Captain Cook ordered a boat to be hoisted out, and the master to sound the south-west side of Annamooka. When he returned, he reported that he had sounded between Great and Little Annamooka, where he found ten or twelve fathoms' depth of water; that the place was very well sheltered from winds; but, that no fresh water was to be had but at a considerable distance inland, and that even there it was neither plentiful nor good. For this very sufficient reason, Captain Cook resolved to anchor on the north side of the island, where, in his last voyage, he had found a convenient place for watering and landing.

Though not above a league distant, they did not reach it till about five o'clock in the afternoon, being retarded by the quantity of canoes that crowded round the ships, laden with abundant supplies of the produce of their island. Several of these canoes, which were double, had a large sail, and carried between forty and fifty men each. Several women too appeared in the canoes, excited perhaps, by curiosity to visit them; though, they were

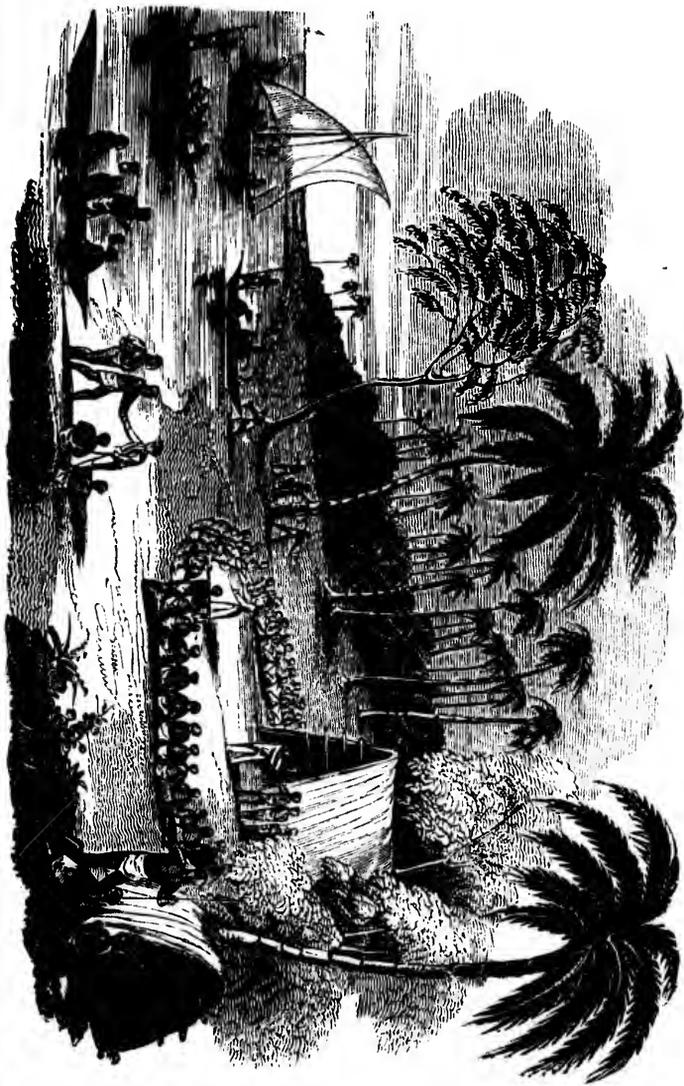
ven particular
till the ships
mission.

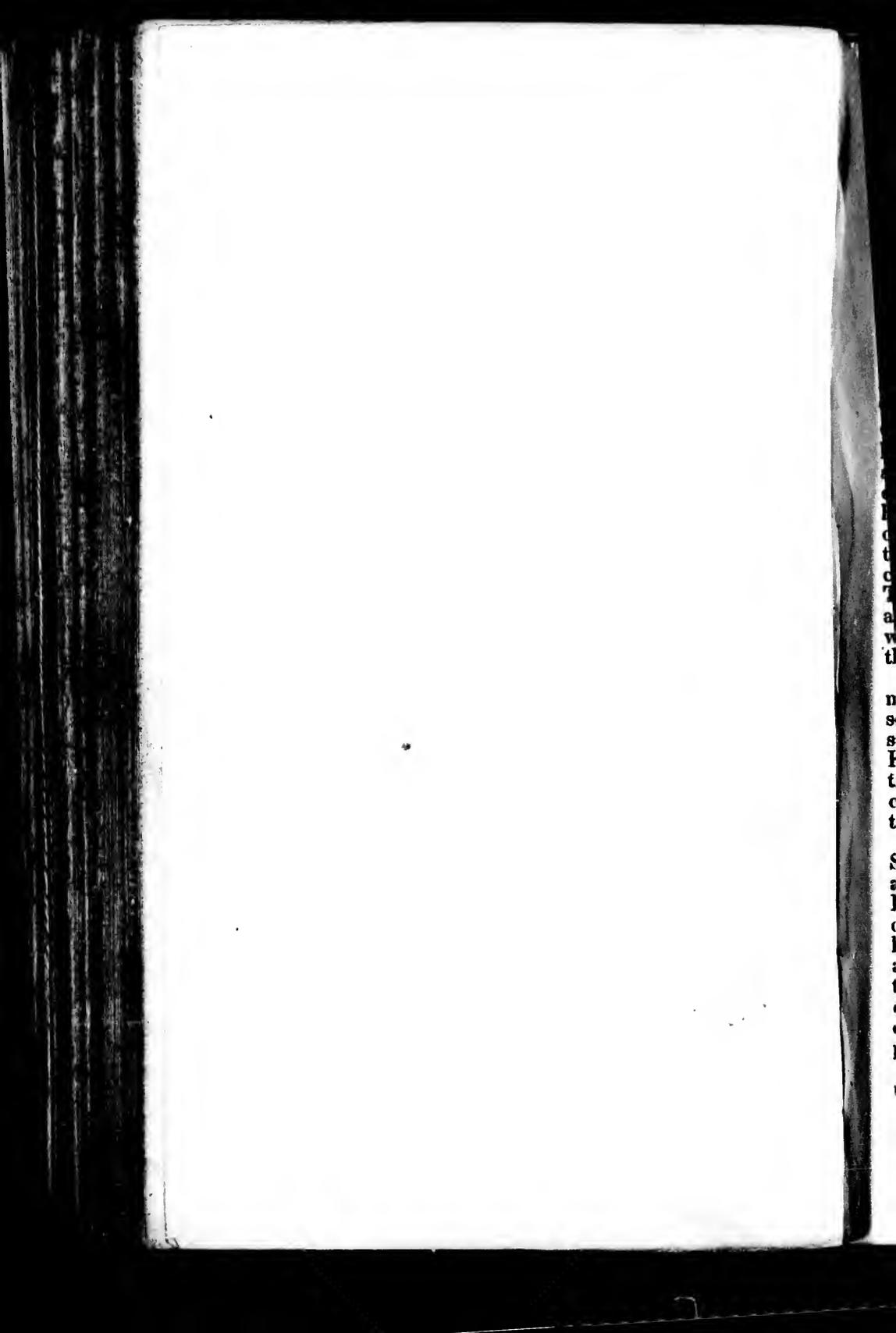
been treated
the island, Too-
with Mr. King,
sed him more
e fowls, and a
r the animals,
y could make,
ere very indif-

amooka; and,
n Annamooka-
he south-east;
ndings, which
to the south-
ound it neces-
and rainy, and
ext morning at
been the pre-
in their teeth.
whole day, and
water; the west
miles distant.
mise, brought
ed others, by
d them, and a
se who visited
part with any

d a boat to be
-west side of
that he had
ere he found
ace was very
er was to be
even there it
cient reason,
of the island,
ent place for

reach it till
the quantity
h abundant
ese canoes,
etween forty
the canoes,
they were





as earnest in bartering as the men, and used the paddle with equal skill and dexterity. They came to an anchor in eighteen fathoms' water, the island extending from east to south-west, about three quarters of a mile distant. Thus Captain Cook resumed the station which he had occupied when he visited Annamooka three years before; and, probably where Tasman, who first discovered the island, anchored in 1643.

The next day, during the preparations for watering, Captain Cook went a-shore in the forenoon, accompanied by Captain Clerke, and others, to fix on a place for setting up the observatories; the natives having readily granted permission. They shewed every mark of civility, and accommodated them with a boat-house, which answered the purpose of a tent. Toobou, the chief of the island, conducted Captain Cook and Omai to his house, situated on a pleasant spot, in the centre of his plantation. It was surrounded with a grass-plot, which he said, was for the purpose of cleaning their feet, before they entered his habitation. Such an attention to cleanliness, they had never observed before wherever they had visited in this ocean, though they afterwards found it to be very common at the Friendly Islands. No carpet in an English drawing-room, could be kept neater, than the mats which covered the floor of Toobou's house. While on-shore, they bartered for some hogs and fruits; and, when arrived on-board, the ships were crowded with the natives. As very few of them came empty-handed, they were speedily supplied with every refreshment.

In the afternoon, Captain Cook landed again, with a party of marines; and such of the cattle as were in a weakly state, were sent on-shore with him. Having settled every thing to his satisfaction, he returned to the ship in the evening, leaving Mr. King in command upon the island. Taipa was now become a trusty friend; and, in order to be near their party, had a house carried a quarter of a mile, on men's shoulders, and placed by the side of the shed, which our party occupied.

The various operations on the shore began the next day. Some were busied in making hay, others filling the water-casks, and a third party in cutting wood. On the same day, Messrs. King and Bayly began to observe equal altitudes of the sun, in order to get the rate of the time-keepers. In the evening Taipa harangued the natives for some time; but they could only guess at the subject, and supposed he was instructing them how to treat our people, and advising them to bring the produce of the island to market. His eloquence had the desired effect, and occasioned them to receive a plentiful supply of provisions the next day.

On the 4th of May the Discovery lost her small bower anchor, the cable being cut in two by the rocks. On the 6th, a chief, whose name was Feenou, visited the ships, from Tongataboo; Taipa introduced him as king of all the Friendly Isles. They were

now informed, that a canoe had been immediately dispatched to Tongataboo with the news so soon as they arrived; and this occasioned his coming to Annamooka. The officer on-shore also informed them that all the natives were ordered out to meet him immediately upon his arrival, who saluted him bowing their heads as low as his feet, the soles of which they touched with the palm of each hand, and afterwards with the back part. He had also seven or eight fine, handsome women with him, which were said to be his wives. They could not suppose him to be any thing less than a king, since he was received with such extraordinary marks of respect.—Captain Cook received a present from him of two fish, which he sent on-board by one of his attendants; and, in the afternoon, the captain went to pay a visit to this great man. So soon as he landed, Feenou came up to him. He appeared to be about thirty years of age, and was remarkably tall and thin; his features were more of the European cast than any they had seen in the Friendly Isles. As Captain Cook perceived he was not the man whom he remembered to have seen in the character of the king, after the first salutation he questioned him on that point; when Taipa, with great eagerness replied that he was the sovereign of no less than one hundred and fifty-three islands. In a short time, the grand visitor accompanied them on-board, attended by five or six servants. Captain Cook made them a few acceptable presents, and he entertained them in such a manner as he thought would be most agreeable. The captain accompanied them a-shore in his own boat towards evening, when Feenou ordered three hogs to be conveyed into the boat as a return for the presents he had received. At this time they were told of an accident, which may tend to convey some idea of the unbounded authority which the chiefs exercise over the inferior rank of people. While Feenou was on-board the *Resolution*, all the natives were ordered by an inferior chief, to retire from the post our sailors occupied. Some of them, however, having ventured to return, he beat them most unmercifully with a large stick. One of them, in particular, received so violent a blow on one side of the face, that the blood gushed from his mouth and nostrils, and, after lying motionless for some time, he was removed from the place in convulsions. The person who gave the blow, on being told that he certainly had killed the man, only laughed at the circumstance; and, indeed, it was very evident that he did not grieve for what had happened. They had afterwards the satisfaction of hearing, that the poor sufferer was out of danger.

The bottom where the *Discovery* lay being very rocky and uneven, Captain Clerke determined to shift her farther to the westward. The next day (May the 7th) he gave orders to weigh the stream anchor, and heave short upon the best bower; but the united force of the whole ship's company was not able

to purchase it, the cable having got foul of a rock; they waited till slack water, when the ships would tend to the ebb tide and probably clear it, but at eleven the cable parted. The recovery of this cable caused an infinite deal of trouble, as it had got into a hole between the rocks, and could only be seen when the water was perfectly smooth; but, at last, after a number of unsuccessful trials, they were lucky enough to weigh it. This day and the next also, Feenou dined with Captain Cook, attended by Taipa, Toobou, and some other chiefs.—None but Taipa, however, was permitted to sit at table, or even to eat in his presence. This etiquette greatly pleased Captain Cook, for before Feenou arrived he had commonly more visitors than he desired; as his table was frequently overflowed with people of both sexes. For the women of the Friendly Isles have the privilege of eating with the men, which is not the case at Otaheite.

Our voyagers had frequent occasions to observe the dexterity which these people possess at pilfering; the very chiefs at times practised a little. Having, before the arrival of Feenou, had a large junk axe stolen out of the ship, which they could impute to none but the natives, the captain complained to him, and required he would use his authority to get it restored: he immediately gave orders for that purpose, and before dinner was finished it was brought on-board: such was the explicit obedience paid to his commands. On the 9th of May, one of them was detected carrying out of the ship the bolt belonging to the spurn-yarn-winch, which he had carefully concealed under his clothes. For this offence Captain Cook sentenced him to receive a dozen lashes, and to be confined till he paid a hog for his liberty.—Though, after this circumstance, they were troubled with no more thieves of rank, their servants, or slaves, were constantly employed in this dirty business; and they received a flogging with as much seeming indifference as if it had been upon the main-mast. When any of them were caught in the act of thieving, instead of interceding in their behalf, their masters would often advise our men to kill them. This being a punishment our men were not fond of inflicting, they usually escaped without any kind of punishment; they were alike insensible of the shame and torture of corporal chastisement. At length, however, Captain Clerke contrived a mode of treatment which he supposed had some effect. Immediately upon detection he ordered their heads to be completely shaved; and thus pointed them out as objects of ridicule to their countrymen, and put our people upon their guard to deprive them of future opportunities for a repetition of their thefts.

Feenou was so fond of the company of our men, that he dined on-board every day, though he did not always partake of their fare. On the 10th, his servants brought him a mess, which had been dressed on-shore, consisting of fish, soup, and yams; cocoa-nut liquor had been used instead of water, in which the fish had

been boiled or stewed, (perhaps in a wooden vessel with hot stone) and it was carried on-board on a plaintain leaf. Captain Cook tasted of the mess, and was so well pleased with it that he afterwards ordered some fish to be dressed in the same way; but, though his cook succeeded tolerably well, it was much inferior to the dish he attempted to imitate.

Having, in a great measure, exhausted the island of almost every article of food, on Sunday the 11th of May, the men removed from the shore the observatories, horses, and other things that they had landed, intending to sail as soon as the Discovery should have found her anchor. Feenou hearing that the captain meant to proceed to Tongataboo, earnestly entreated him to alter his plan; expressing as much aversion to it, as if, by diverting him from it, he wished to promote some particular interest of his own. He warmly recommended a group of islands called Hapae, lying to the north-east; where he assured them they could be easily and plentifully supplied with every refreshment; and even offering to accompany them thither in person. In consequence of this advice Hapae was made choice of: and as it had not been visited by any European ships, the surveying it became an object to Captain Cook.

On Tuesday, the 18th, Captain Clerke's anchor was happily recovered; and on the morning of the 14th they got under sail and left Annamooka.

Though this island is somewhat higher than the other small islets that surround it, yet it is lower than Mangeea and Wateoo, and even those are but of a moderate height. The shore, where our ships lay, consists of a steep, rugged, coral rock, about nine or ten feet high, except two sandy beaches, which are defended from the sea by a reef of the same sort of rock. In the centre of the island there is a salt water lake about a mile and a half in breadth, round which the ground rises with a gradual ascent, and they could not trace its having any communication with the sea. On the rising part of the island, and especially towards the sea, the soil is either of a blackish, loose mould, or a reddish clay; but there is not a stream of fresh water to be found in any part of the island.

The land is here well cultivated, except in a few places; and though some parts appear to lie waste, they are only left to recover the strength exhausted by constant culture; for they often saw the natives at work upon these spots, in order to plant them again. Yams and plantains form their principal plantations; many of which are very extensive, and enclosed with fences of reed about six feet high. Fences of less compass were often seen within these, surrounding the houses of the principal people. The bread-fruit and coccoa-nut trees are interspersed without any regular order, but principally near the habitations of the natives. The other parts of the island, especially towards the sea, and round the lake, are covered with

en vessel with hot
ain leaf. Captain
sed with it that he
in the same way;
ell, it was much

island of almost
f May, the men
orses, and other
l as soon as the
nou hearing that
rnestly entreated
sion to it, as if,
some particular
led a group of
here he assured
lied with every
y them thither
ae was made
European ships,
k.

r was happily
got under sail

he other small
and Wateoo,
e shore, where
l rock, about
es, which are
t of rock. In
about a mile
rises with a
ing any com-
e island, and
ackish, loose
eam of fresh

places; and
only left to
re; for they
rder to plant
ncipal plan-
closed with
ss compass
uses of the
trees are
ly near the
land, espe-
vered with

luxuriant trees and bushes; among which there are a great many mangroves and faitanoo-trees. All the rocks and stones about the island are of coral, except in one place, to the right of the sandy beach, where there is a rock of about twenty feet in height, of a calcareous stone, and of a yellowish colour; but, even here, some large pieces are to be seen of the same coral rock as that which composes the shore.

Our men, sometimes amused themselves in walking up the country, and shooting wild ducks, resembling our widgeon, which are very numerous on the salt lake, as well as on the pool, where they procured the water. They found, in these excursions, that the inhabitants frequently deserted their houses, to repair to the trading-place, without entertaining the least suspicion, that strangers would take away, or destroy any property that belonged to them. From this circumstance it might be supposed, that most of the natives were sometimes collected on the beach, and that there would be no great difficulty, in forming an accurate computation of their number; but, the continual resort of visitors from other islands, rendered it impossible. However, as they never saw more than a thousand persons collected at one time, it may be reasonably supposed, that there are about twice that number upon the island.

In the direct trade to Hapae, whither they were now bound, to the north and north-east of Annamooka, a great number of small isles are seen. Amidst the rocks and shoals adjoining to this group, they were doubtful, whether there was a free passage for ships of such magnitude as ours; though the natives sailed through the intervals in their canoes; therefore, when the ships weighed anchor from Annamooka, they steered to go to the westward of the above islands, and north north-west toward Kao, and Toofoa, two islands remarkable for their great height, and the most westerly of those in sight. Feenou, with his attendants, remained in the Resolution till about noon, and then entered the large sailing canoe, which had brought him from Tongataboo, and stood in amongst the cluster of islands of which they were now a-breast. They are scattered at unequal distances, and most of them are as high as Annamooka. Some of them are two or three miles in length, and others only half a mile. Many of them have steep, rocky shores, like Annamooka: some, have reddish cliffs, and others, have sandy beaches, extending almost their whole length. In general, they are entirely clothed with trees, among which, are many cocopalms, each having the appearance of a beautiful garden placed in the sea. The serene weather they now had, contributed greatly to heighten the scene; and the whole, might convey an idea, of the realization of some fairy land. It appears that some of these islands have been formed as Palmerston's Island was supposed to have been; for, one of them is now entirely sand, and another has but a single bush or tree upon it.

In the afternoon, about four o'clock, they steered to the north, leaving Toofoa and Kao on their larboard. They intended to have anchored for the night, but it came upon them before they could find a place in less than fifty fathoms' water; and, they rather chose to spend the night under sail, than to come to in such a depth.

In the afternoon, the ships had been within two leagues of Toofoa, and the smoke of it was observed several times in the day. There is a volcano upon it, of which the Friendly Islanders entertain superstitious notions, and call it *Kollofeea*, saying, it is an Otooa, or divinity. Our men were informed that it sometimes throws up very large stones, and the crater is compared to the size of a small islet, which has not ceased smoking in the memory of the inhabitants; nor have they any tradition that it ever did. They sometimes saw the smoke from the centre of the island, even at Annamooka, the distance of at least ten leagues, and were told that Toofoa was but thinly inhabited, but that the water upon it was excellent.

At day-break, on the 15th, the ships were not far from Kao, which is a large rock of a conic figure; and steered to the passage between Footooha and Hafaiva, with a gentle breeze at south-east. About ten o'clock, Feenou came on-board, and continued all day. He brought with him a quantity of fruit and two hogs; and, in the course of the day, several canoes came to barter quantities of the former article, which was very acceptable, as the stock began to be low. At noon, the latitude was 19 deg. 49 min. 45 sec. south, and they had made seven miles of longitude from Annamooka. After having passed Footooha, they met with a reef of rocks, and there being but little wind, it was attended with some difficulty to keep clear of them. Having passed this reef, they hauled up for Neeneva, a small low isle in the direction of east north-east from Footooha, in hopes of finding an anchorage, but were again disappointed: for, notwithstanding they had land in every direction, the sea was unfathomable. In the course of this night flames, issuing from the volcano upon Toofoa, were distinctly seen.

At day-break, on the 16th, Captain Cook steered with a gentle breeze at south-east, for Hapae, which was now in sight: and perceived it to be low land, from the trees only appearing above the water. At nine o'clock, saw it plainly, forming three islands; nearly equal in size; and, soon after, a fourth appeared to the southward of these, as large as any of the others. Each of the islands appeared to be of a similar height and appearance, and about six or seven miles in length. The most northern of them is called Haanno, the next Foa, the third Lefooga, and the fourth Hoolaiwa; but they are all four included under the general name of Hapae.

By sunset, they got up with the northernmost of these isles, where they experienced the same distress for want of anchorage.

as they did the two preceding evenings; having another night to spend under sail, with land and breakers in every direction. Feenou, who had been on-board all day, went forward to Hapae in the evening, and took Omai with him in the canoe. He was not unmindful of this disagreeable situation, and kept up a good fire the whole of the night, by way of a land-mark.

At the return of day-light, on the 17th, being then close in with Foa, perceived it was joined to Haanno, by a reef running from one island to the other, even with the surface of the sea. Captain Cook dispatched a boat to look for anchorage; and a proper place was found abreast of a reef which joins Lefooga to Foa, having twenty-four fathoms' depth of water. In this station, the northern point of Hapae bore north 16 deg. east. They were not above three quarters of a mile from the shore; and, as they lay before a creek in the reef, it was convenient landing at all times. As soon as they had anchored, they were surrounded by a multitude of canoes, and the ships were presently filled with the natives. They brought with them hogs, fowls, fruit, and roots, which they exchanged for cloth, knives, beads, nails, and hatchets. Feenou and Omai having come on-board, early in the morning, in order to introduce Captain Cook to the people of the island, he soon accompanied them on-shore for that purpose.

The chief conducted the captain to a hut, situated close to the sea-beach, which was brought thither but a few minutes before for his reception. In this, Feenou, Omai, and Captain Cook, were seated. The other chiefs, and the multitude, appeared fronting them on the outside; and they also seated themselves. Captain Cook being asked how long he intended to stay, answered five days. Taipa was, therefore, ordered to sit by him, and declare this to the people. He then harangued them in words nearly to the following purport, as they afterwards were informed by Omai. He exhorted both old and young to look upon Captain Cook as a friend, who meant to continue with them a few days; and that, during his stay among them, they would not steal any thing from him, or offend him in any other manner. He informed them, that it was expected they should bring hogs, fowls, fruit, &c. to the ships; for which they would receive in exchange such articles as he enumerated.

Soon after Taipa had delivered his address to the assembly, Feenou left them; on which, Captain Cook was informed by Taipa, that it was necessary he should make a present to Earoupa, the chief of the island; the captain, not being unprepared for this, gave him such articles as far exceeded his expectation. This liberality, created similar demands from two chiefs of other isles who were present, and even from Taipa himself. Soon after he had made the last of these presents, Feenou returned, and expressed his displeasure with Taipa, for suffering the captain to be so lavish in his favours. But this

was, doubtless; a finesse, as he certainly acted in concert with the others.

Feenou now resumed his seat, ordering Earoupa to sit by him, and harangue the people as Taipa had done, which he did nearly to the same purpose. These ceremonies being over, the chief, at the captain's request, conducted him to three stagnant pools of what he called fresh water; in one of which, the water was indeed tolerable, and the situation convenient for filling the casks. On his return to his former station, he found a baked hog and some yams, smoking hot, ready to be conveyed on-board for his dinner. He invited Feenou, and his friends, to partake of the repast, and they embarked for the ship, though none but himself sat down at table. Dinner being over, the captain conducted them on-shore; and, before he returned, received as a present from the chief, a fine large turtle, and a quantity of yams. They had a plentiful supply of provisions, for, in the course of the day, they got, by bartering with the natives, about twenty small hogs, together with a large quantity of fruit and roots.

On Sunday, the 18th, early in the morning, Feenou and Omai, who now slept on-shore with the chief, came on-board, to request Captain Cook's presence upon the island. He accompanied them, and upon landing, was conducted to the place where he had been seated the preceding day, and where he beheld a large concourse of people already assembled. Though he imagined, that something extraordinary was in agitation, yet he could not conjecture what, nor could Omai give him any information.

Soon after he was seated, about a hundred of the natives appeared, and advanced, laden with yams, plantains, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and sugar-canes: their burdens were deposited on the left: a number of others arrived soon after, bearing the same kind of articles, which were collected into two piles on the right side. To these were fastened two pigs, and half a dozen fowls; and to those upon the left, six pigs and two turtles. Earoupa seated himself before the articles on the left side, and another chief before those on the right; they being, it was supposed, the two chiefs who had procured them by order of Feenou, who was as implicitly obeyed here, as he had been at Annamooka, and who had probably laid this tax upon the chiefs of Hapae for the present occasion.

When this munificent collection of provisions was placed in order, and advantageously disposed, the bearers of it joined the multitude, who formed a circle round the whole; immediately after, a number of men, armed with clubs, entered this circle, or area, where, they paraded about for a few minutes, and then one half of them retired to one side, and the other half to the other side, seating themselves before the spectators. Presently after, they successively entertained them with single combats;

concert with

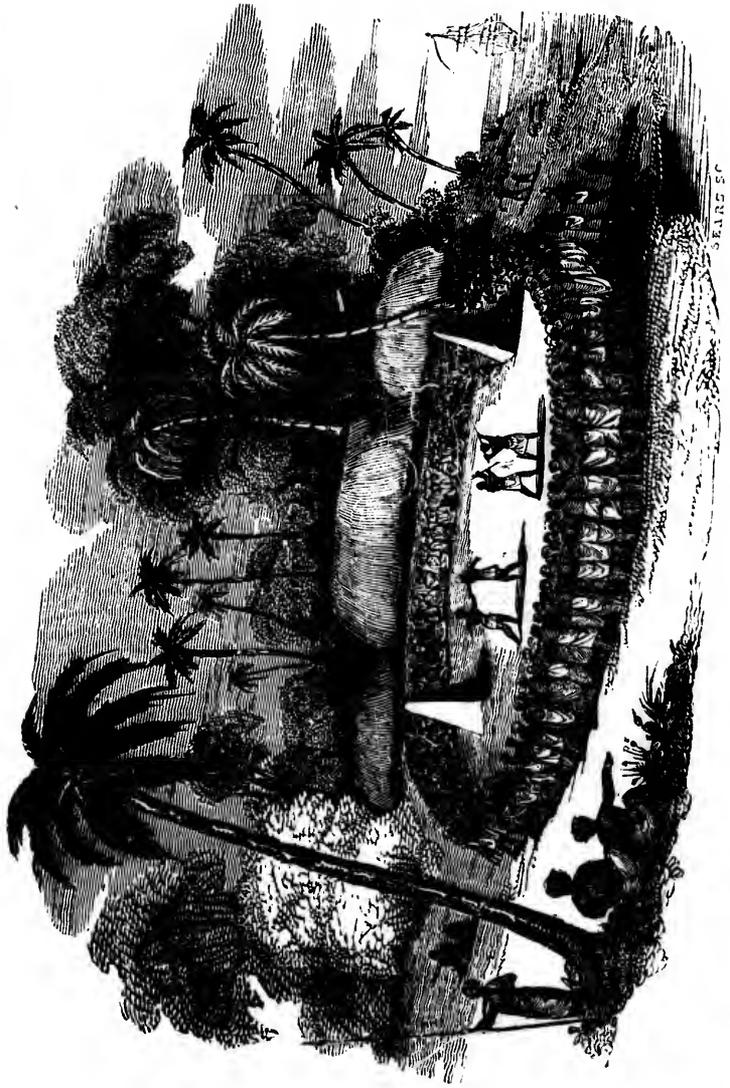
pa to sit by
which he did
ing over, the
ree stagnant
ch, the water
for filling the
und a baked
conveyed on-
is friends, to
ship, though
ng over, the
he returned,
turtle, and a
f provisions,
ing with the
arge quantity

Feenou and
on-board, to

He accom-
to the place
nd where he
ed. Though
gitation, yet
ive him any

the natives
ains, bread-
were depo-
ter, bearing
to two piles
rs, and half
gs and two
on the left
ey being, it
m by order
had been at
n the chiefs

placed in
joined the
mediately
s circle, or
and then
alf to the
Presently
combats ;



J. H. R. S. P.

wh
ev
he
the
ins
mo
Fee
him
him
clot
F

one champion from one side challenging those of the other side, partly by words, but more by expressive gestures, to send one of their party to oppose him. The challenge was, in general, accepted; the two combatants, placed themselves in proper attitudes, and the engagement began, which continued till one of them yielded, or till their weapons were broken; at the conclusion of each combat, the victor squatted himself down before the chief, then immediately rose up and retired. Some old men, who seemed to preside as judges, gave their plaudits in a very few words; and the multitude, especially those on the side of the conqueror, celebrated the glory he had acquired, in two or three loud huzzas.

This entertainment, was sometimes suspended for a short space, and the intervals of time were filled up with wrestling, and boxing matches. The first were performed in the manner practised at Otaheite, and the second differed very little from the English method. A couple of stout wenches next stepped forth, and, without ceremony, began boxing with as much dexterity as the men. This contest, however, was but of short duration, for, in the space of half a minute, one of them gave it up, and the victorious heroine, was applauded by the spectators, in the same manner as the successful combatants of the other sex. Though our men expressed some disapprobation at this part of the entertainment, it did not hinder two other females from entering the lists; who seemed to be spirited girls, and, if two old women had not interposed to part them, would probably have given each other a good drubbing. At least three thousand spectators were present, when these combats were exhibited, and every thing was conducted with the most perfect good humour on all sides; though some of the champions, of both sexes, received blows which they must have felt the effect of for some time after. The diversions being finished, the chief informed Captain Cook, that the provisions on their right hand, were a present to Omai, and that those on the left, (making about two-thirds of the whole quantity), were intended for him, and that he might suit his own convenience in taking them on-board.

Four boats were loaded with the munificence of Feenou, whose favours had far exceeded those that Captain Cook had ever received from the sovereigns of any of the islands, which he had visited in the Pacific Ocean, he, therefore, embraced the first opportunity of convincing Feenou, that he was not insensible of his liberality, by bestowing upon him such commodities, as he supposed, were most valuable in his estimation. Feenou was so highly pleased with the return that was made him, that he left the captain still indebted to him, by sending him two large hogs, some yams, and a considerable quantity of cloth.

Feenou having expressed a desire to see the marines perform

their exercise, Captain Cook ordered them all ashore on the morning of the 20th of May. After they had gone through various evolutions, and fired several vollies, which seemed to give pleasure to the numerous spectators, the chief in his turn, entertained them with an exhibition, which was performed with an exactness and dexterity, far surpassing what they had seen of our military manœuvres. It was a kind of dance, performed by men, in which one hundred and five persons were engaged; each having an instrument in his hands resembling a paddle, two feet and a half long, with a thin blade, and a small handle. With these instruments various flourishes were made, each of which was accompanied with a different movement, or a different attitude of the body. At first, the dancers ranged themselves in three lines, and so changed their stations by different evolutions, that those who had been in the rear came into the front. At one part of the performance, they extended themselves in one line; afterwards they formed themselves into a semi-circle; and then into two square columns; during the last movement, one of them came forward, and performed an antic dance before Captain Cook, with which the entertainment ended.

The music that accompanied the dances was produced by two drums, or rather hollow logs of wood, from which they forced some varied notes, by beating on them with two sticks. The dancers, however, did not appear to be much assisted or directed by these sounds; but, by a chorus of vocal music, in which all the performers joined; their song was rather melodious; and their corresponding motions were so skilfully executed, that the whole body of dancers appeared as one regular machine. Such a performance would have been applauded even on an European theatre; and it far exceeded any attempt that our men had made to entertain them; insomuch, that they seemed to plume themselves upon their superiority over them; they esteemed none of our musical instruments, except the drum, and they even thought that inferior to their own. They held the French horns in the highest contempt, and would not pay the smallest attention to them, either here or at any other of the islands.

To give them a more favourable opinion of the amusements, and superior attainments of the English, Captain Cook ordered some fire-works to be prepared; and, after it was dark, exhibited them in the presence of Feenou, and a vast number of people; they were highly entertained with the performance in general; but the water and sky-rockets in particular, astonished them beyond all conception, and they now admitted that the scale was turned in our favour.

This, however, served only as an additional stimulus to urge them to proceed to fresh exertions of their singular dexterity. As soon as the fire-works were ended, a succession of dances, which Feenou had prepared for the entertainment of our men began. A band of music, or chorus consisting of eighteen men,

seated themselves before them in the centre of a circle, formed by the numerous spectators. About four or five of the performers, had each a piece of large bamboo, from three to six feet in length, each played on by one man, who held it almost vertically; the upper end of which was open, but the other closed by some of the joints. They kept constantly striking the ground, though slowly, with the close end, and thus produced a variety of notes, according to the different lengths of the instruments, but all were of the bass or hollow kind; which was counteracted by a person who struck nimbly a piece of the same substance, split, and lying upon the ground; furnishing a tone as acute, as the others were grave and solemn. The whole of the band (including those who performed upon the bamboos), sung a slow, soft air, which so finely tempered the harsher notes of the instruments, that the most perfect judge of the modulation of sweet sounds, could not avoid confessing the vast power, and pleasing effect, of this simple harmony.

The concert having continued about a quarter of an hour, twenty women entered the circle; most of whom had upon their heads garlands of the crimson flowers of the China rose, or others; and many of them had ornamented their persons with leaves of trees, cut with a great deal of nicety about the edges. They made a circle round the chorus, turning their faces towards it, and began by singing a soft air, to which responses were made by the chorus in the same tone; and these were repeated alternately; all this time, the women accompanied their song, with several very graceful motions of their hands towards their faces, and in other directions at the same time, making constantly a step forward, and then back again, with one foot, while the other was fixed. They then turned their faces to the assembly, sung some time, and retreated slowly, in a body, to that part of the circle which was opposite the hut, where the principal spectators sat. After this, one of them advanced from each side, meeting and passing each other in the front, and continuing their progress round, till they came to the rest; then two advanced from each side, two of whom also passed each other, and returned as the former; but, the other two remained, and to these came one, from each side, by intervals, till the whole number had again formed a circle about the chorus.

Their manner of dancing was now changed to a quicker measure, in which they made a kind of half turn by leaping, and clapped their hands, and snapped their fingers, repeating some words in conjunction with the chorus. Toward the end, as the quickness of the music increased, their gestures and attitudes were varied with wonderful vigour and dexterity; and some of their motions, perhaps, would, with us, be reckoned rather indecent; though, this part of the performance, most probably, was not meant to convey any wanton ideas, but merely to display the astonishing variety of their movements.

To this grand female ballet succeeded a variety of other dances, in which the men bore a principal part; in some of these, the dancers increased their motions to a prodigious quickness, shaking their heads from shoulder to shoulder, with such force that a spectator, unacquainted with the sight, would suppose they ran the risk of dislocating their necks. Their discipline was admirable; and, in no instance was more remarkable, than in the sudden transitions they so dexterously made, from the ruder exertions and harsh sounds, to the softest airs, and most gentle movements.* The place where these dances were performed, was an open space among the trees, just by the sea, with lights, at small intervals, placed round the inside of the circle.

This dance being ended, after a considerable interval, twelve other men advanced, placing themselves in double rows, fronting each other; on one side was stationed a kind of prompter, who repeated several sentences, to which responses were made by the performers and the chorus; they sung and danced slowly; and gradually grew quicker, like those whom they had succeeded.

The next who exhibited themselves were nine women, who sat down opposite the hut where the chief had placed himself. A man immediately rose and gave the first of these women a blow on the back with both his fists joined; he treated the second and third in the same manner; but when he came to the fourth, he struck her upon the breast. On seeing this, a person instantly rising up from among the crowd, knocked him down with a blow on the head, and he was quietly carried away. But this did not excuse the other five women from so extraordinary a discipline; for they were treated in the same manner by a person who succeeded him; when these nine women danced, their performance was twice disapproved of, and they were obliged to repeat it again. There was no great difference between this dance and that of the first women, except that these sometimes raised the body upon one leg, and then upon the other, alternately, by a sort of double motion.

Soon after, a person unexpectedly entered, making some ludicrous remarks on the fire-works that had been exhibited, which extorted a burst of laughter from the crowd. There was next a dance by the attendants of Feenou; they formed a double circle of twenty-four each round the chorus, and joined in a gentle, soothing song, accompanied with the motions of the head and hands. They also began with slow movements which gradually became more and more rapid, and finally closed with several very ingenious transpositions of the two circles.

The two last dances were universally approved by all the

* There is a near resemblance between the songs and dances of the Caroline Islanders, at an immense distance in the North Pacific Ocean, and those of the Friendly Islanders, and other inhabitants of the Southern Pacific; whence is deduced the idea of their being all derived from one common stock.

spectators. They were perfectly in time, and some of their gestures were so expressive that it might justly be said, they spoke the language that accompanied them. Though the concourse of people was pretty large, their number was much inferior to that assembled in the forenoon, when the marines performed their exercise; at that time many of our gentlemen supposed there might be present five thousand persons, or upwards: but Captain Cook supposes that to be rather an exaggerated account.

The next day, which was the 21st of May, Captain Cook made an excursion into the island of Lefooga, on foot, which he found to be, in some respects, superior to Annamooka, the plantations being not only more numerous, but also more extensive. Many parts of the country near the sea, are still waste; owing, perhaps, to the sandiness of the soil, but in the internal parts of the island the soil is better; and the marks of considerable population, and of an improved state of cultivation, are very conspicuous. Many of the plantations are enclosed in such a manner, that the fences running parallel to each other, form spacious public roads, and large spots, covered with the paper-mulberry tree, were observed; and the plantations, in general, were abundantly stocked with such plants and fruit-trees as the island produces. To these the commodore made some addition, by sowing the seeds of melons, pumpkins, Indian corn, &c. At one place was a house, about four times as large as the ordinary ones, with an extensive area of grass before it, to which the people probably resort on certain public occasions. Near the landing-place, they observed a mount two or three feet high, on which stood four or five little huts, wherein the bodies of some persons of distinction had been interred. The island is but seven miles in length; and its breadth, in some places, is not above three miles. The east-side has a reef projecting considerably, against which the sea breaks with great violence; it is a continuation of this reef that joins Lefooga to Foa, which is but half a mile distant; and at low water, the natives can walk upon this reef from one island to the other; the shore is either a sandy beach, or a coral rock.

When the captain returned from his excursion and went on-board, he found a large sailing canoe fastened to the stern of the *Resolution*; in this canoe was *Latooliboula*, or, *Kohageetoo Fallangou*, whom the commodore had seen, during his last voyage, at *Tongataboo*, and who was then supposed by him to be the king of that island. He could not be prevailed upon to come on-board, but continued sitting in his canoe with an air of uncommon gravity; the islanders called him *Areekee*, which signifies king; a title which our men had not heard any of them give to *Feenou*, however extensive his authority over them had appeared to be. *Latooliboula* remained under the stern till the evening, and then departed; *Feenou* was on-board the *Resolu-*

tion at that time ; but neither of these chiefs took the least notice of the other.

The next day, some of the natives stealing a tar-paulin and other things, Captain Cook applied to Feenou, desiring him to exert his authority, for the purpose of getting them restored; but this application was of no effect. On the 23rd, as they were preparing to leave the island, Feenou and his prime minister Taipa came along-side in a canoe, and informed them that they were going to Vavaoo, an island situated, as they said, about two days' sailing to the northward of Hapaae. They assured us, that the object of their voyage was to procure for us an additional supply of hogs, besides some red-feathered caps for Omai to carry with him to Otaheite, and desired them not to sail till their return, which would be in four or five days; after which Feenou would accompany them to Tongataboo. Captain Cook consented to wait the return of this chief, who immediately set out for Vavaoo; on the 24th, a report was industriously spread about by some of the islanders, that a ship resembling ours had arrived at Annamooka since they left it, and was now at anchor there. It was also reported, that Toobou, the chief of that island, was hastening thither to receive these new visitors. After inquiry, however, it appeared, this report was totally void of foundation. It is difficult to conjecture what purpose the invention of this tale could answer; unless we suppose it was contrived with a view of getting our men removed from one island to the other.

On Sunday, the 25th, Captain Cook went into a house where a woman was dressing the eyes of a child who seemed blind. The instruments used by this female oculist were two slender, wooden probes, with which she brushed the eyes so as to make them bleed. In the same house he found another woman shaving a child's head with a shark's tooth, stuck into the end of a stick; she first wetted the hair with a rag dipped in water, and then making use of her instrument, took off the hair as close as if a razor had been employed. Captain Cook soon after tried upon himself one of these remarkable instruments, which he found to be an excellent substitute; the natives of these islands, however, have a different method of shaving their beards, which operation they perform with two shells; one of which they place under a part of the beard, and with the other applied above, they scrape off that part; in this manner they can shave very close, though the process is rather tedious. There are among them some men who seem to profess this trade, for it was as common for the sailors to go ashore to have their beards scraped off after the mode of Hapaae, as it was for their chiefs to come on-board to be shaved by our barbers.

Captain Cook finding little or nothing of what the island produced was now brought to the ships, determined to change his station, and to wait Feenou's return in some other anchoring

the least notice
 a tar-paulin
 nou, desiring
 getting them
 on the 23rd, as
 and his prime
 informed them
 , as they said,
 apae. They
 o procure for
 feathered caps
 d them not to
 e days; after
 ooo. Captain
 who immedi-
 industriously
 p resembling
 and was now
 1, the chief of
 new visitors.
 s totally void
 purpose the
 suppose it was
 ed from one

house where
 emed blind.
 two slender,
 es so as to
 nd another
 stuck into
 g dipped in
 ok off the
 ptain Cook
 ble instru-
 the natives
 of shaving
 hells; one
 n the other
 nner they
 us. There
 ade, for it
 eir beards
 r chiefs to

land pro-
 ange his
 anchoring

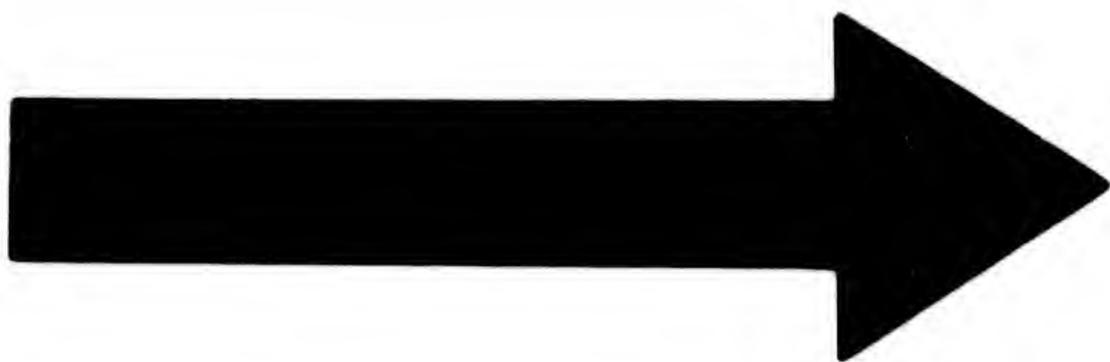
place, where he might still meet with refreshments. He accordingly, on the 26th, made sail to the southward along the reef of the island, and having passed several shoals, hauled into a bay that lies between the north-end of Hoolaiva and the south of Lefooga, and there anchored. He had no sooner cast anchor than Mr. Bligh, master of the Resolution, was sent to sound the bay where they were now stationed; and Captain Cook, accompanied by Lieutenant Gore, landed on the southern part of Lefooga, to look for fresh water, and examine the country. On the west-side of the island, they observed an artificial mount of considerable antiquity, about forty feet high, and measuring about fifty feet in the diameter of its summit. At the bottom of this mount was a stone fourteen feet high, two and a half-thick, and four broad, hewn out of coral rock; and they were informed by the islanders, that not more than half its length was seen above ground. They called it *Tangata Areekee*;^{*} and said it had been set up, and the mount raised, in memory of one of their kings. On the approach of night, the captain and Mr. Gore returned on-board, and Mr. Bligh came back from sounding the bay, in which he found from fourteen to twenty fathoms' water, with a bottom principally of sand.

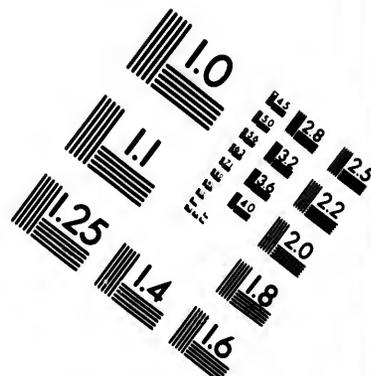
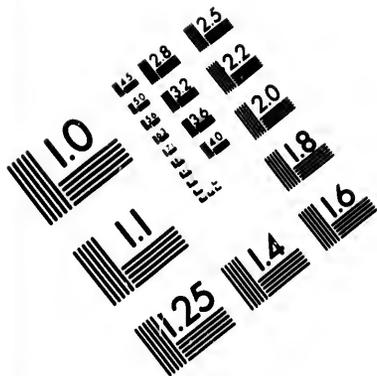
Lefooga and Hoolaiva are separated from each other by a reef of coral rocks, dry at low water; some of our gentlemen, who landed in the last mentioned island, found not the smallest mark of cultivation, or habitation, upon it, except a single hut, in which a man, employed to catch fish and turtle, resided. It is remarkable that it should remain in this desolate condition, since it communicates so immediately with Lefooga, which is so well cultivated; the west-side of it has a bending, where there seems to be good anchorage; and the east-side has a reef, as well as Lefooga. Uninhabited as Hoolaiva is, an artificial mount has been raised upon it, equal in height to some of the surrounding trees.

On Tuesday, the 27th, at break of day, the commodore made the signal to weigh; and as he intended to attempt, in his way to Tongataboo, a passage to Annamooka, by the south-west, among the intermediate isles. He sent Mr. Bligh in a boat to sound before the ships. But before they got under sail, the wind became so variable and unsettled as to render it unsafe to attempt a passage with which they were so little acquainted: they therefore lay fast, and made signal for the master to return.

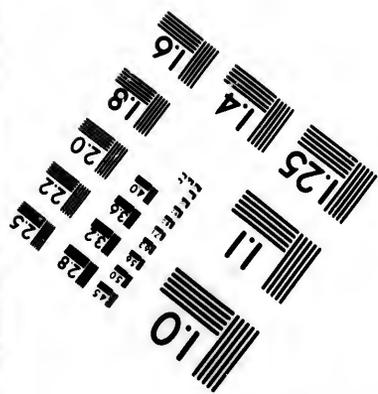
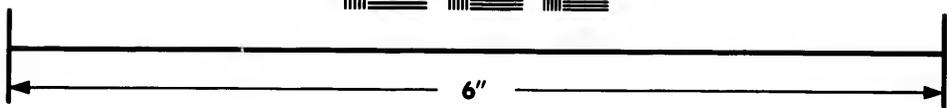
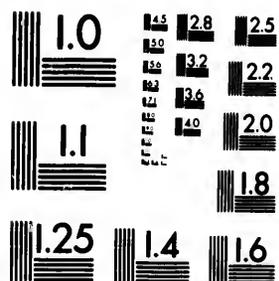
Captain Cook had now an opportunity of discovering that Feenou was not the king of the Friendly Islands, but only a subordinate chief; for that title, it appeared belonged to Futtafaihe, or Poulaho, whose residence was at Tongataboo, and who came now under the stern of the Resolution, in a large sailing canoe. "It being my interest," says the captain, "as well as my inclination, to pay court to all the great men, without

^{*} *Tangata*, in the language of these people, is man; *Areeke*, king.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25
28
32
36
40

10
5

inquiring into the validity of their assumed titles, I invited Poulaho on-board, as I understood he was very desirous to come; he could not be an unwelcome guest; for he brought with him as a present to me, two good fat hogs; though not so fat as himself. If weight of body could give weight in rank or power, he was certainly the most eminent man in that respect we had seen; for, though not very tall, he was very unwieldy, and almost shapeless with corpulence; he seemed to be about forty years of age, had straight hair, and his features differed a good deal from those of the bulk of the people."

"By a prudent regulation in their government," he adds, "the natives have an officer over the police, or something like it. This department, when we were amongst them, was administered by Feenou; whose business, we were told, was to punish all offenders, whether against the state, or against individuals. He was also generalissimo, and commanded the warriors, when called out upon service; but, by all accounts, this is very seldom. The king frequently took some pains to inform us of Feenou's office; and among other things, told us, that if he himself should become a bad man, Feenou would kill him. What I understood by this expression of being a bad man, was, that if he did not govern according to law or custom, Feenou would be ordered by the other great men, or by the people at large, to put him to death. There should seem to be no doubt, that a sovereign, thus liable to be controlled, and punished for an abuse of power, cannot be called a despotic monarch."

Poulaho appeared to be a sedate, sensible man; after he had seen every object on deck, and asked many pertinent questions, the captain desired him to walk down into the cabin; to this some of his attendants objected, observing that if he were to do so, it must happen, that people would walk over his head, which could not be permitted. To obviate this, the captain gave them to understand, that no one should presume to walk on that part of the deck which was over the cabin; whether this would have satisfied them was far from appearing; but the king himself, less scrupulous, waved all ceremony, and walked down without any stipulation; he sat down with them to dinner, but ate little, and drank less, and when he rose from the table, he desired the captain to accompany him ashore. Omai was asked to be of the party; but he had formed the closest connection with Feenou, with whom (as the strongest proof of it) he had exchanged names; and the crew was too faithfully attached to him to shew any attention to his competitor; he therefore excused himself; the captain, in his own boat, attended the king ashore; having first made him presents that surpassed his expectations; in return for which, Poulaho ordered two more hogs to be sent on-board. The chief was then carried out of the boat, by his own subjects, on a board resembling a hand-barrow, and immediately seated himself in a small house near the shore.

He placed the captain at his side ; and his attendants formed a semi-circle before them, on the outside of the house ; an old woman sat close to the chief, with a kind of fan in her hand, to prevent his being incommoded with the flies. The various articles which his people had procured by trading on-board the ships being now displayed before him, he attentively looked over them all, inquired what they had given in exchange, and at length ordered every thing to be returned to the respective owners, except a glass bowl, which he reserved for himself. Those who brought these things to him first squatted themselves down before him, then deposited their purchases, and instantly rose and retired ; they observed the same ceremony in taking them away ; and not one of them presumed to speak to him standing ; his attendants, just before they left him, paid him obeisance, by bowing their heads down to the sole of his foot, and touching it with the upper and under side of the fingers of each hand. Captain Cook was charmed with the decorum that was maintained on this occasion, having scarcely seen the like any where, even amongst more civilized nations.

When the captain arrived on-board he found the master returned from his expedition, who informed him, that as far as he had proceeded there was a passage for the ships, and tolerable anchorage ; but, that towards the south and south-east, he observed numerous shoals, breakers, and small isles. In consequence of this report, he relinquished all thoughts of a passage that way ; and being resolved to return to Annamooka by the same route which he had so lately experienced to be a safe one ; and should have sailed the next morning, which was the 28th, if the wind had not been unsettled ; Poulaho came early on-board, bringing a red-feathered cap as a present to Captain Cook. These caps were greatly sought after by our men, as they knew they would be highly valued at Otaheite ; but not one was ever brought for sale, though very large prices were offered ; nor could a person in either ship make himself the proprietor of one, except the two captains and Omai. They are composed of the tail feathers of the tropic bird, intermixed with the red feathers of the parroquet ; and are made in such a manner as to tie on the forehead without any crown, and have the form of a semi-circle, whose radius is eighteen or twenty inches ; the chief left the ship in the evening ; but his brother, whose name also was Futtafaihe, and some of his attendants, remained all night on-board.

On the 29th, at day-break, they weighed with a fine breeze at east north-east, and made sail to the westward, followed by several sailing canoes, in one of which was Poulaho, the king, who getting on-board the Resolution, inquired for his brother, and the others who had continued with them all night. It was now found that they had staid without his permission, for he gave them such a reprimand as brought tears from their eyes : however, he was soon reconciled to their making a longer stay ; for,

on his departure from the ship, he left his brother and five attendants on-board; they were also honoured with the company of a chief named Tooboueitoa, just then arrived from Tongataboo; who, as soon as he came, sent away his canoe, declaring that he, and five others who came with him, would sleep on-board; so that Captain Cook now had his cabin filled with visitors; this inconvenience he the more willingly endured, as they brought with them plenty of provisions as presents to him, for which they met with suitable returns.

In the afternoon, the easterly wind was succeeded by a fresh breeze at south south-east. Their course being now south south-west, they were obliged to ply to windward, and barely fetched the northern side of Footooha by eight o'clock in the evening. The next day, they plied up to Lo'anga, and got soundings, under the lee or north-west side, in forty fathoms' water; but the bottom being rocky, and a chain of breakers lying to leeward, they stretched away for Kotoo, expecting to find better anchorage there. It was dark before they reached that island, where finding no convenient place to anchor in, they passed the night in making short boards; on the 31st, at day-break, they stood for the channel which is between Kotoo and the reef of rocks lying to the westward of it; but, on their approach, they found the wind insufficient to lead them through; they therefore bore up on the outside of the reef, and stretched to the south-west till near twelve o'clock, when, perceiving that they made no progress to windward, and being apprehensive of losing the islands while they had so many of the natives on-board, they tacked and stood back, and spent the night between Footoolia and Kotoo. The wind now blew fresh, with squalls and rain; and, during the night, the Resolution, by a small change of the wind, fetching too far to the windward, was very near running full upon a low, sandy isle, named Pootoo-Pootooa, encompassed with breakers. The people having fortunately been just ordered upon deck, to put the ship about, and most of them being at their respective stations, the necessary movements were performed with judgment and alertness, and this alone preserved them from destruction; the Discovery being astern, incurred no danger.

This narrow escape so alarmed the natives who were on-board, that they were eagerly desirous of getting ashore; accordingly, on the return of day-light, a boat was hoisted out, and the officer who commanded her was ordered, after landing them at Kotoo, to sound for anchorage along the reef that projects from that island; during the absence of the boat, our men endeavoured to turn the ships through the channel between the reef of Kotoo and the sandy isle; but, meeting with a strong current against them, were obliged to desist, and cast anchor in fifty fathoms' water, the sandy isle bearing east by north, about the distance of one mile. Here they remained till the 4th of June,

being frequently visited by the king, by Tooboueitoa, and by people who came from the neighbouring islands to traffic with them. Mr. Bligh was, in the meantime, dispatched to sound the channels between the islands situated to the eastward; and Captain Cook himself landed on Kotoo, to take a survey of it. This island, on account of the coral reefs that environ it, is scarcely accessible by boats; its north-west end is low; but it rises suddenly in the middle, and terminates at the south-east end in reddish, clayey cliffs. It produces the same fruits and roots found on the adjacent islands, is tolerably cultivated, though thinly inhabited, and is about two miles in length. While the commodore was walking all over it, our people were occupied in cutting grass for the cattle, and they planted some melon seeds. On their return to the boat, they passed by some ponds of dirty, brackish water, and saw a burying-place, which was considerably neater than those at Hapae.

They weighed in the morning of the 4th, and with a fresh gale at east south-east, made sail towards Annamooka, where they anchored the next morning, nearly in the same station which they had so lately occupied. Captain Cook soon after went on-shore, and found the islanders very busy in their plantations, digging up yams for traffic. In the course of the day, about two hundred of them assembled on the beach, and traded with great eagerness. It appeared that they had been very diligent during their absence, in cultivating; for our men now observed several large plantain-fields in places which, in their late visit, they had seen lying waste. The yams were now in the highest perfection; and they obtained a good quantity of them, in exchange for iron. Before the captain returned on-board, he visited the several places where he had sown melon and cucumber seeds; but found, to his great regret, that most of them had been destroyed by vermin; though some pine-apple plants, which he had also left, were in a thriving condition.

On Friday, the 6th, about noon, Feenou arrived from Vavaoo, and informed them, that several canoes, laden with hogs and other provisions, had sailed with him from that island, but had been lost in the late tempestuous weather, and every person on-board of them had perished. This melancholy tale did not gain much credit, as our men were by this time sufficiently acquainted with the character of the relater; the truth perhaps was, that he had been unable to procure at Vavaoo the expected supplies; or if he had obtained any there, that he had left them at Hapae, which lay in his way back, and where he must have heard that Poulaho had come to visit us; who, therefore, he knew, would, as his superior, reap all the merit and reward of procuring these supplies, without having had any participation of the trouble. The invention, however, of this loss at sea was not ill imagined; for there had lately been very stormy weather. On the succeeding morning, Poulaho and some other chiefs arrived: at

which time Captain Cook happened to be ashore with Feenou, who now appeared to be sensible of the impropriety of his conduct, in arrogating a character which he had no just claim to; for he not only acknowledged Poulaho as sovereign of Tongataboo and the adjacent isles, but affected to insist much on it. The captain left him, and went to pay a visit to the king, whom he found sitting with a few of the natives before him, but great numbers hastening to pay their respects to him, the circle increased very fast. When Feenou approached, he placed himself among the rest that sat before Poulaho, as attendants on his majesty; he at first seemed to be somewhat confused and abashed; but soon recovered from his agitation; some conversation passed between these two chiefs, who went on-board with the captain to dinner; but only Poulaho sat at table. Feenou, after having made his obeisance in the usual mode, by saluting the foot of his sovereign with his head and hands, retired from the cabin; and it now appeared that he could neither eat nor drink in the king's presence.

On the 8th, they weighed anchor, and steered for Tongataboo, with a gentle breeze at north-east, accompanied by fourteen or fifteen sailing vessels belonging to the islanders, every one of which outran the ships. The royal canoe was distinguished from the rest by a small bundle of grass, of a red colour, fastened to the end of a pole, and fixed in the stern of the canoe, in the same manner as our ensign staffs; at five in the afternoon, they descried two small islands, at the distance of four leagues to the westward; one was called Hoonga Hapae, and the other Hoonga Tonga. They are situated in the latitude of 20 deg. 36 min. south, about ten leagues from the western point of Annamooka. According to the information of two islanders who had been sent on-board by Feenou as pilots, only five men resided on Hoonga Hapae, and Hoonga Tonga had no inhabitants. They still proceeded on a south-west course, and on the 9th, saw several little islands, beyond which Eooa and Tongataboo appeared. They had at this time twenty-five fathoms' water, the bottom consisting of broken coral and sand; the depth gradually decreased as the ship approached the above-mentioned small isles; steering by the direction of our pilots, for the widest space between those isles, they were insensibly drawn upon a large flat, on which lay innumerable rocks of coral below the surface of the sea. Notwithstanding the utmost care and attention to avoid these rocks, they were unable to prevent the ship from striking on one of them: nor did the Discovery, though behind, keep clear of them. It fortunately happened, that neither of the ships stuck fast, or sustained any damage, but they still continued their course, and the moment they found a place where they could anchor with any degree of safety, they came to, and the masters were dispatched with the boats to sound. Soon after they had cast anchor, several of the natives of Tongataboo came to them

in their canoes; and they, as well as the pilots, assured them, that they should meet with deep water further in, free from rocks; their intelligence was true, for about four o'clock, the boats made a signal of having found good anchoring-ground. The ships, therefore, weighed, and stood in till dark, when they anchored in nine fathoms' water, with a clear, sandy bottom. During the night they had some rain; but, early in the morning, the wind becoming southerly, and bringing on fair weather, they weighed again, and worked towards the shore of Tongataboo. While plying up the harbour, the king continued sailing round them in his canoe; and at the same time there was a great number of small canoes about the ships; two of these not getting out of the way of his royal vessel, he ran quite over them with the greatest unconcern. Among those who came on-board the Resolution, was Otago, who had been so useful to Captain Cook when he visited Tongataboo in his last voyage; and one Toobou, who had, at that time, attached himself to Captain Furneaux. Each of them brought some yams and a hog, in testimony of friendship; for which they received a suitable return. The ships arrived at their intended station about two o'clock in the afternoon of the 10th of June; it was a very convenient place, formed by the shore of Tongataboo on the south-east, and two little isles on the east and north-east. Here both ships anchored over a sandy bottom, where the depth of water was ten fathoms. The distance from the shore exceeded a quarter of a mile. They had not been long at anchor off Tongataboo, when Captain Cook landed on the island, accompanied by some of the officers and Omai; they found the king waiting for them on the beach, who conducted them to a small, neat house near the woods, with an extensive area before it, and told the captain, that it was at his service during his continuance on the island. Before they had been long in the house, a large circle of the natives assembled before them, and seated themselves upon the area. A root of the *kava* plant being brought to the king, he commanded it to be split in pieces, and distributed to several people, of both sexes, who began to chew it, and soon prepared a bowl of their favourite liquor. Meanwhile, a baked hog, and a quantity of baked yams, were produced, and divided into ten portions. These shares were given to those who were present, except one, which remained undisposed of, and which was probably reserved for the king himself. The liquor was next served out; and the first cup being brought to his majesty, he ordered it to be given to a person who sat near him: the second was also brought to him, which he kept: the third was given to Captain Cook; but their mode of preparing the liquor having given him a distaste for it, it was brought to Omai. The remainder of it was distributed to different people; and one of the cups being carried to Poulaho's brother, he retired with it, and with his share of provisions. Some others also withdrew from the circle with their

portions, because they could neither eat nor drink in his majesty's presence : but there were others of an inferior rank, of both sexes, who both ate and drank before him ; soon afterwards, the greater part of them went away, carrying with them what they had not eaten of their share of the feast. It is worthy of remark, that the servants, who distributed the meat and the *kava*, delivered it sitting, not only to the king, but to the others.

Captain Cook, before he returned on-board, went in search of a watering-place, and was conducted to some ponds, in one of which the water was tolerable, but it was at some distance inland. Being informed that the small island of Pangimodoo, near which the ships were stationed, could better supply this important article, he went over to it the next morning, and found there a pool containing fresher water than any he had met with among these islands. This pool being extremely dirty, he caused it to be cleaned ; and here it was that the men filled the water-casks. The same morning a tent was pitched near the house which the king had assigned for their use ; the horses, cattle, and sheep, were then landed, and a party of marines stationed there as a guard ; the observatory was set up at an inconsiderable distance from the other tent ; and Mr. King took up his residence on-shore to direct the observations, and superintend all other necessary business. A party was occupied in cutting wood for fuel, and planks for the ships ; and the gunners were appointed to conduct the traffic with the inhabitants, who flocked from all parts of the island with hogs, yams, cocoa-nuts, and other articles, insomuch, that the land station resembled a fair, and the ships were remarkably crowded with visitants. Feenou, residing in the neighbourhood, our voyagers had daily proofs of his opulence and generosity, by the continuance of his valuable donations ; Poulaho was equally attentive to our men in this respect, as scarcely a day passed without his favouring them with considerable presents ; they were now informed that a person of the name of Mareewagee was of a very high rank in that island, and was treated with great reverence ; nay, if the interpreter, Omai, did not misunderstand his informers, that he was superior to Poulaho himself ; but that, being advanced in years, he lived in retirement, and therefore was not inclined to pay them a visit. This intelligence exciting the curiosity of Captain Cook, he signified to Poulaho his intention of waiting upon Mareewagee ; and the king having agreed to accompany him, they set out the next morning in the pinnace, Captain Clerke joining them in one of his own boats ; they proceeded to the eastward of the little isles which form the harbour, and then, turning towards the south, entered a spacious bay, up which they rowed about three miles, and landed amidst a great concourse of people, who received them with shouts and acclamations. The crowd instantly separated, that Poulaho might pass, who took our gentlemen into a small enclosure, and

changed the piece of cloth he wore, for a new piece very neatly folded; an old woman assisted in dressing him, and put a large mat over his cloth. Being now asked where Mareewagee was, he said, to the great surprise of the gentlemen, that he was gone down to the ships; however, he requested them to accompany him to a *malaee*, or house of public resort; and when they came to a large area before it, he seated himself in the path, while they, at his desire, walked up to the house, and sat down in the front. After waiting a little while, they repeated their inquiries, by the medium of Omai, whether they were to be introduced to Mareewagee? But receiving no satisfactory answer, and being inclined to suspect that the aged chief was purposely concealed from them, they returned to their boats much piqued at their disappointment. It afterwards appeared that Mareewagee had not been there; and that, in this affair, some gross mistakes had been made, Omai, either having been misinformed, or having misunderstood what was told him concerning the old chief.

The place our gentlemen went to was a very pleasant village delightfully situated on the banks of the bay or inlet, where most of the principal persons of the island reside; each of these has a house in the midst of a small plantation, with a kind of out-house, and offices for servants. These plantations are neatly fenced round, and, in general, have only one entrance which is by a door fastened on the inside with a prop of wood; between each plantation there are public roads and narrow lanes; a considerable part of some of these enclosures is laid out in grass-plats, and planted with such things as seem less adapted for use than for ornament; in such other plantations as were not the residence of persons of high rank, every article of the vegetable produce of the island was in great plenty; and near the public roads are some large houses, with spacious grass-plats before them, which were said to belong to the king, and are probably the places where their public meetings are held.

On Friday, the 13th, about twelve o'clock, Mareewagee came within a small distance of the post on-shore, attended by a great number of people of all ranks. In the course of the afternoon, the two captains, and others of our gentlemen, accompanied by Feenou, went on-shore to visit him; they found a person sitting under a tree, with a piece of cloth, about forty yards long, spread before him, round which numbers of people were seated. They imagined that this was the great personage, but were undeceived by Feenou, who informed them that another, who was sitting on a piece of mat, was Mareewagee; to him they were introduced by Feenou; and he received them very graciously, and desired them to sit down by him. The chief, who sat under the tree, was named Toobou, whom we shall for the future call old Toobou to distinguish him from his namesake, who has been already mentioned as Captain Furneaux's friend.

Both he and Mareewagee were venerable in their appearance. The latter was slender in his person, and seemed to be near seventy years of age; old Toobou was somewhat corpulent, and almost blind from a disorder in his eyes; he was younger than Mareewagee. Captain Cook not expecting on this occasion to meet with two chiefs, had brought on-shore a present for one only: this therefore he was obliged to divide between them; but, as it happened to be considerable, both of them appeared to be satisfied. Our party now entertained them about an hour with the performance of two French horns and a drum; but the firing of a pistol that Captain Clerke had in his pocket, seemed to please them most. Before our gentlemen took their leave of the two chiefs, the large piece of cloth was rolled up, and presented to Captain Cook, together with a few cocoa-nuts. The next morning, old Toobou came on-board to return the captain's visit: he also visited Captain Clerke: and if the former present was not sufficiently considerable, the deficiency was now supplied. In the meantime, Mareewagee went to see our people who were stationed on-shore; and Mr. King shewed him whatever they had there. He was struck with admiration at the sight of the cattle; and the cross-cut saw rivetted his attention. Towards noon, Poulaho came on-board, bringing with him his son, who was about twelve years of age; he dined with Captain Cook; but the son, though present, was not permitted to sit down with him; the captain found it very convenient to have him for his guest; for, whenever he was present, which was frequently the case, every other native was excluded from the table, and few of them would continue in the cabin; whereas, if neither he nor Feenou were on-board, the chiefs of inferior rank were very importunate to be of the dining party, or to be admitted at that time into the cabin, which became consequently very much crowded. The king was soon reconciled to English cookery, and was fond of our wine; he now resided at the *malaee* near our tent, where he in the evening entertained our people with a dance, in which he himself, though so corpulent and unwieldy, engaged.

On the 15th, Captain Cook received a message from old Toobou, importing that he was desirous of seeing him on-shore. He and Omai accordingly waited on that chief, whom they found sitting like one of the ancient patriarchs under the shade of a tree, with a large piece of cloth, the manufacture of the island, spread out before him. He desired them to place themselves by him; after which he told Omai, that the cloth, with some cocoa-nuts and red feathers constituted his present to Captain Cook. The latter thanked him for the donation, and asked him to go on-board with him.—Omai, being sent for by Poulaho, now left the captain, who was informed by Feenou, that young Fattafaihe, the king's son, desired to see him. He immediately obeyed the summons, and found the young prince and Omai seated under a

canopy of fine cloth, with a piece of a coarser kind, twenty-six yards long, and seven and a half broad, spread before them, and under them. On one side was a quantity of cocoa-nuts; and, on the other a large boar; a multitude of people sat round the cloth; and among them was Mareewagee, with other persons of rank. The captain was requested to seat himself by the prince; and then Omai informed him that he had been instructed by Poulaho to tell him, that as his majesty and the captain were friends, he hoped that his son Fattafaihe might be comprehended in this friendship; and that the captain, as a testimony of his consent, would accept the prince's present.—Captain Cook readily agreed to this proposal, and invited them all to dine on-board. Accordingly the young prince, old Toobou, Mareewagee, three or four subordinate chiefs, and two old ladies of high rank, accompanied the commodore to the ship, Mareewagee was dressed in a new piece of cloth, with six patches of red feathers on the skirts of it. This dress was probably made on purpose for this visit: for, as soon as he arrived on-board, he put it off, and presented it to Captain Cook; when dinner was served up, not one of them would even sit down, or eat a morsel of any thing, as they were all *taboo*, they said, which word, though it has a comprehensive meaning, generally signifies that a thing is prohibited. Why they were thus restrained at present was not accounted for; but, having made presents to them all, and gratified their curiosity by shewing them every part of the ship, the captain conducted them on-shore. When the boat had reached the land, Feenou and several others immediately stepped out; and the young prince following them, was called back by Mareewagee, who now paid the heir apparent the same obeisance as the king was accustomed to receive; and when old Toobou, and one of the old ladies, had honoured him with the same marks of respect, he was suffered to land. After this ceremony, the old people stepped out of the boat into a canoe, which was waiting to convey them to their place of residence. Captain Cook was pleased at being present on this occasion, as he was thus furnished with the most convincing proofs of the supreme dignity of Poulaho and his son. By this time, indeed, he had gained some certain information with regard to the relative situation of several of the chiefs; and, he now knew that old Toobou and Mareewagee were brothers; both of them were men of very considerable property, and in high estimation with the people: Mareewagee, in particular, had obtained the honourable appellation of *Motoaa Tonga*, which implies, father of Tonga, or of his country; it was now understood that he was the king's father-in-law, Poulaho having espoused one of his daughters, by whom he had young Fattafaihe; so that Mareewagee was grandfather to the prince. As for Feenou, he was one of the sons of Mareewagee, and Tooboueitoa was another.

Captain Cook on his landing, found Poulaho in the house

adjoining to the tent, who immediately made him a present of a quantity of yams and a hog. Towards evening, a number of the islanders came, and having seated themselves in a circle, sung in concert with the music of bamboo-drums, which were placed in the centre; three of them were long ones, and two were short. With these they struck the ground endwise.—There were two others that lay side by side on the ground, one of which was partly split; on these a person continued beating with two sticks. They sung three songs while the captain staid; and the entertainment lasted, after he had left them, till ten o'clock.—They burned the leaves of the wharra-palm for a light.

In the meantime, Mr. Anderson, with several others, made an excursion into the country, which, westward of the tent, for about two miles is entirely uncultivated, though covered with trees and bushes, growing naturally with the greatest vigour. Beyond this a pretty, large plain extends itself, on which are cocoa-trees, and some small plantations. Near the creek, which runs west of the tent, the land is perfectly flat, and partly overflowed every tide by the sea; when the water retires, the surface is seen to consist of coral rock interspersed with holes of yellowish mud; and near the edges, where it is rather more firm, are vast numbers of little openings, whence issue innumerable small crabs, which swarm upon the spot, but are so very nimble that when approached, they instantaneously disappear, and baffle all the dexterity of the natives who endeavour to catch them. At this place is a work of art, which testifies some degree of ingenuity and perseverance; on one side is a narrow causeway, which, gradually increasing in breadth, rises with a gentle ascent to the height of ten feet, where its breadth is five paces, the whole length being about seventy-four paces. Adjacent to this is a kind of circus, thirty paces in diameter, about one or two feet higher than the causeway that joins it; and in the middle of this circus some trees are planted; on the opposite side, another causeway descends, which is partly in ruins and not above forty paces in length. The whole is built of large, coral stones, with earth on the surface, which is overgrown with shrubs and low trees; from its decaying in several places it is probably of some antiquity, and it seems to be of no service at present, whatever may have been its use in former times. All the intelligence concerning it that Mr. Anderson could procure from the natives was, that it was called *Etchee*, and belonged to the king.

In the morning of the 16th, Captain Cook and Mr. Gore took a walk into the country; in the course of which they met with an opportunity of seeing the whole process of making cloth, the principal manufacture of these islands, as well as of many others in the South Sea; an account of this operation is worth relating. The manufacturers, who are of the female sex, take the slender stalks or trunks of the paper-mulberry, which rarely grows more

n a present of
g, a number of
in a circle, sung
ch were placed
two were short.
here were two
e of which was
with two sticks.
and the enter
o'clock.—They

others, made
f the tent, for
covered with
reatest vigour.
, on which are
e creek, which
at, and partly
ter retires, the
ed with holes
is rather more
issue innumer-
out are so very
usly disappear,
avour to catch
ifies some de-
e is a narrow
n, rises with a
breadth is five
paces. Ad-
ameter, about
ns it; and in
the opposite
in ruins and
uilt of large,
rgrown with
l places it is
no service at
times. All
uld procure
belonged to

Gore took
y met with
g cloth, the
many others
th relating.
he slender
rows more

than seven feet in height, and about the thickness of four fingers. From these stalks they strip the bark, and scrape off the exterior rind; after which the bark is rolled up, and macerated for some time in water; it is then beaten with a square instrument of wood, full of coarse grooves, but sometimes with a plain one. The operation is often repeated by another person; or, the bark is folded several times and beat longer, which is probably intended to close rather than divide its texture. It is then spread out to dry; the pieces being from four to six or seven feet in length, and about half as broad. These pieces are joined by smearing part of them with the glutinous juice of a berry called *tooo*; and, after being thus lengthened, they are placed over a large piece of wood, with a sort of stamp, composed of a fibrous substance, laid beneath them.—The manufacturers then take a bit of cloth, and having dipped it in a juice extracted from the bark of a tree called *kokku*, rub it briskly over the piece that is making. This leaves upon the surface, a dry gloss, and a dull brown colour, and the stamp makes at the same time a slight impression; thus they proceed, joining and staining by degrees, till a piece of cloth the requisite length and breadth is produced. They generally leave a border, about a foot broad, at the sides, and rather longer at the ends, unstained. If any parts of the original pieces have holes, or are too thin, they glue spare bits upon them till their thickness equals that of the rest. Whenever they are desirous of producing a black colour, they mix the juice of the *kokku* with the soot procured from the oily nut called *dooedooe*; they assert, that the black cloth, which is usually most glazed, makes a cold dress; but the other a warm one.

The commodore and Mr. Gore, meeting with Feenou on their return from their excursion, took him and another chief on board to dinner; which being served up, neither of them would eat a morsel, alleging that they were *taboo avy*; but when they found that in dressing a pig and some yams, no *avy* (water) had been made use of, they both sat down, and ate very heartily, and drank some wine, on being assured that there was no water in it; from this circumstance it was inferred, that they were at this time, for some particular reason, forbidden to use water; or that perhaps they did not like the water then used, it being taken out of one of the places where the islanders bathed.

The following day, which was the 17th, was fixed upon by Mareewagee for giving a grand *haiva*, or entertainment, at which all our crew were invited to attend.—Before the temporary hut of this chief, near the land station, a large space had been cleared for that purpose; in the morning, vast numbers of the natives came in from the country, every one of whom bore on his shoulder a long pole, at each end of which a yam was suspended. These poles and yams being deposited on each side of the open space, or area, formed two large heaps, decorated

with small fish of different kinds. They were Mareewagee's present to the Captains Cook and Clerke; the necessary preparations being made, the islanders began, about eleven o'clock, to exhibit various dances, which they call *mai*. The band of music at first consisted of seventy men as a chorus, amidst whom were placed three instruments that our men called drums, though they did not much resemble them. They are cylindrical pieces of wood, from three to four feet in length, some of them twice as thick as a man of ordinary size, and some not so large; they are entirely hollow, but close at each end, and open only by a chink, about the breadth of three inches, running nearly the whole length of the drums. By this opening, the rest of the wood is hollowed; which must be an operation of some difficulty; this instrument is called by the natives *naffa*; and, having the chink turned towards them, they sit and beat vigorously upon it, with two cylindrical pieces of wood, as thick as the wrist, and about a foot in length; by which means a rude, but loud and powerful sound, is produced. They occasionally vary the strength and rate of their beating; and likewise change the tones by beating towards the end or in the middle of the instrument.

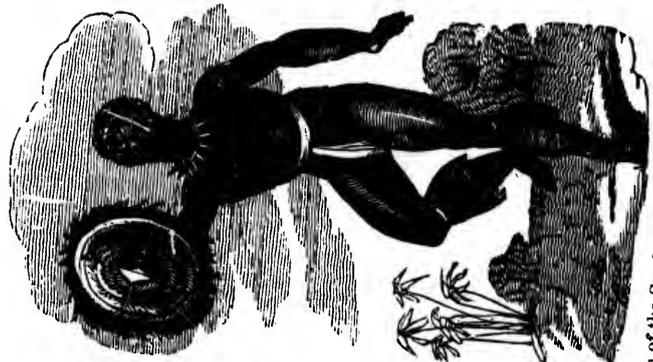
There were four ranks, of twenty-four men each, in the first dance; these held in their hands a small, thin, wooden instrument, above two feet in length, resembling in its shape an oblong paddle. With these instruments which are called *pagge*, they made many different motions; such as pointing them towards the ground on one side; and inclining their bodies that way at the same instant; then shifting them to the opposite side in the same manner; passing them with great quickness from one hand to the other, and twirling them about with remarkable dexterity; with various other manœuvres. Their motions, which were slow at first, quickened as the drums beat faster; and they repeated sentences the whole time in a musical tone, which were answered by the chorus; but, in a short time, they all joined and ended with a shout. After a cessation of a few minutes, they began as before, and continued with short intervals, upwards of a quarter of an hour; and then the rear rank dividing, moved slowly round each end, met in the front, and formed the first rank; during which time the whole number continued to recite sentences. The other ranks successively did the same, till that which was foremost became the rear; and this evolution did not cease till the last rank regained its former situation; a much quicker dance, though slow at first, was then begun, and they sung for ten minutes when the whole body in a two-fold division, retreated and then advanced, forming a kind of circular figure which concluded the dance; the chorus retiring, and the drums being removed at the same time.

In the second dance there were forty men as a chorus, with only two drums; and the dancers, or rather actors, consisted of two

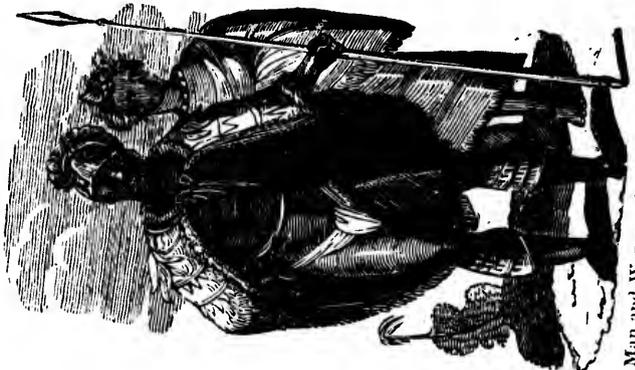
Mareewagee's
 the necessary
 , about eleven
 call *mai*. The
 n as a chorus,
 our men called
 em. They are
 feet in length,
 size, and some
 e at each end,
 of three inches,
 y this opening,
 e an operation
 e natives *naffu*;
 ey sit and beat
 s of wood, as
 y which means
 oduced. They
 r beating; and
 the end or in

ach, in the first
 wooden instru-
 nape an oblong
 d *pagge*, they
 them towards
 es that way at
 te side in the
 ess from one
 markable dex-
 otions, which
 ter; and they
 , which were
 y all joined
 few minutes,
 ntervals, up-
 nk dividing,
 and formed
 er continued
 d the same,
 is evolution
 ituation; a
 begun, and
 a two-fold
 of circular
 iring, and

with only
 ed of two



A Man of the Sandwich Islands in a War Dance.
page 17.



A Man and Woman of the Sandwich Islands.

ranks, the foremost of which had seventeen persons, and the other fifteen. Feenou was in the middle of the first rank, which is considered, on these occasions, as the principal place. They danced and repeated sentences, with very short intervals, for half an hour, sometimes slowly, and at other times quickly, with the highest degree of exactness and regularity.—Towards the close, the rear rank divided, came round, and occupied the place of the front, which afterwards resumed its former situation. This dance being finished, the drums were taken away, and the chorus retired, as in the preceding dance.

Three very large drums were now brought in, and seventy men served as a chorus to the third dance.—This consisted of two ranks of sixteen men each, having young Toobou at their head, who was splendidly ornamented with a kind of garment covered with red feathers. These persons danced, sung, and twirled the *pagge*, so as to meet the continual applause of the spectators, who were particularly pleased with a motion in which they held the face aside, as if ashamed, with the *pagge* before it. The hindermost rank closed before the front one, which soon after resumed its place, as in the first and second dances; then beginning again, they formed a triple row, divided, retreated to each end of the area, and left the ground, in a great measure, clear. Two men rushing in at that instant, began to exercise the clubs which they make use of in battle. They first twirled them in their hands, and made circular strokes before them with great quickness, managing them with such skill, that, though they stood close to each other, they never interfered. They shifted their clubs, with uncommon dexterity, from one hand to the other; and, after some time, kneeled down, and made various motions, tossing up their clubs in the air, and catching them as they fell; they then retired as hastily as they entered. They had pieces of white cloth about their heads, fastened at the crown with a wreath of foliage round their foreheads; and that they might be free from all encumbrance, they had only a very small piece of cloth tied round the waist. A man armed with a spear then rushed in, and put himself in a menacing attitude, as if he intended to strike at one of the people in the crowd; at the same time bending the knee a little, and trembling as it were with fury. He continued in this position near a minute, and then moved to the other side, where, having stood in the same posture, he hastily retreated from the area. During all this time, the dancers, who had divided themselves into two parties, continued to repeat something slowly; and they now came forward, and joined again, concluding the dance with general applause. This dance was probably considered as a capital performance, as some of the principal people were engaged in it; one of the drums being beat by Futtafaihe, the king's brother, another by Feenou, and the third by Mareewagee himself.



A Man and Woman of the Sandwich Islands.



A Man of the Sandwich Islands in a War Dance. page 17.

In the fourth and last dance, there were forty men as a chorus, with two drums. The performers were sixty men, arranged in three rows, having twenty-four in front. Before they commenced, our people were entertained with a preliminary harangue, in which the whole number made responses to an individual speaker. They recited sentences alternately with the chorus, and made with the *pagge* many quick motions. They divided into two parties, with their backs to each other; formed again, shifted their ranks, as in the preceding dances, divided, and retreated, being succeeded by two men who exercised their clubs as before, after whom came two others; the dancers in the mean time repeating in their turn with the chorus: they then advanced and terminated the dance.

These amusements continued from eleven o'clock till near three. The number of islanders who attended as spectators, together with those who were round the trading-place at the tent, or were straggling about, amounted to at least ten thousand, all within the compass of a quarter of a mile. If our men had understood what was spoken in this entertainment, they might probably have gained much information with regard to the genius and customs of these people. Though the spectators constantly applauded the different motions, when well made, a considerable share of the pleasure they received, seemed to arise from the sentimental part, or what the performers recited. However, the mere acting part well deserved our notice, on account of the extensiveness of the plan, the variety of the motions, and the exact unity, ease, and gracefulness, with which they were performed.

In the evening, our voyagers were entertained with the *bomai*, or night dances, on a large area before the temporary dwelling-place of Feenou. They continued three hours; during which time about twelve of them were performed, nearly in the same manner as those at Hapae. In two of them, which were performed by women, a party of men came and formed a circle within theirs. In another, which consisted of twenty-four men, many motions which they had not before seen were made with the hands, and met with great applause. The music was once changed in the course of the evening; and, in one of the dances, Feenou himself appeared at the head of fifty men; he was well dressed in linen, and some small pictures were hung round his neck.

Though the whole entertainment was conducted with better order than could reasonably have been expected, yet the utmost care and attention could not prevent our men being plundered by the natives, in the most daring and insolent manner. There was scarcely any thing which they did not endeavour to steal. They once, in the middle of the day, attempted to take an anchor from off the Discovery's bow, but without effect. The only violence of which they were guilty, was, the breaking the

men as a chorus, men, arranged in before they com- minary harangue, to an individual with the chorus. They divided formed again, divided, and re- versed their clubs ers in the mean then advanced

clock till near as spectators, g-place at the ten thousand, our men had ut, they might egard to the he spectators a well made, d, seemed to ners recited. notice, on ac- the motions, which they

h the *bomai*, ry dwelling- uring which n the same h were per- ned a circle y-four men, de with the was one- he dances, he was well round his

with better he utmost plundered r. There r to steal an anchor The only king the

shoulder-bone of one of the goats; in consequence of which he died soon after. On Wednesday, the 18th, an islander got out of a canoe into the *Resolution*, and stole a pewter-basin; but being detected, he was pursued, and brought along-side the ship. Upon this occasion, three old women in the canoe, made loud lamentations over the prisoner, beating their faces and breasts with the palms of their hands in a most violent manner, but without shedding a tear. This mode of expressing sorrow occasions the mark which most of these people bear on the face, over their cheek bones; for the repeated blows inflicted by them on this part, rub off the skin, and cause some blood to flow out; and when the wound is recent, it looks as if a hollow circle had been made by burning. On some occasions they cut this part of the face with an instrument.

The same day, Captain Cook bestowed some presents on *Mareewagee*, in return for those which had been received from that chief the preceding day; and as the entertainments then exhibited, called upon our men to make some exhibition in return, he ordered all the marines to go through their exercise, on the spot where the late dances had been performed; and in the evening, some fireworks were also played off at the same place. The king, the principal chiefs, and a vast multitude of people, were present. The platoon-firing seemed to please them; but, when they beheld our water-rockets, they were filled with astonishment and admiration. They did not much regard the fife and drum, or French horns, that were playing during the intervals. *Poulaho* sat behind every one, no person being permitted to sit behind him; and that his view might receive no interruption, none sat immediately before him; but a lane, as it were, was made by the spectators from him, quite down to the space allotted for playing off the fire-works.

While the natives were in expectation of this evening exhibition, they engaged, for the greatest part of the afternoon, in wrestling and boxing. When a person is desirous of wrestling, he gives a challenge by crossing the ground in a kind of measured pace, and clapping smartly on the elbow joint of one arm, which is bent, and sends forth a hollow sound. If no opponent steps forth, he returns and sits down; but if an antagonist appears, they meet with marks of the greatest good-nature, generally smiling, and deliberately adjusting the piece of cloth that is fastened round the waist. They then lay hold of each other by this cloth, and he who succeeds in drawing his opponent to him, instantly endeavours to lift him upon his breast, and throw him on his back; and if he can turn round with him in that position two or three times, before he throws him, he meets with great applause for his dexterity. If they are more equally matched, they quickly close, and attempt to throw each other by entwining their legs, or raising each other from the ground; in which struggles they display an extraordinary

exertion of strength. When one of them is thrown, he immediately retires, while the conqueror sits down for nearly a minute, then rises, and goes to the side from whence he came, where the victory is proclaimed aloud. After sitting for a short time, he rises again, and challenges; and if several antagonists appear, he has the privilege of choosing which of them he pleases to engage with: he may also, if he should throw his competitor, challenge again, till he himself is vanquished; and then the people on the opposite side chant the song of victory in favour of their champion. It frequently happens that five or six rise from each side, and give challenges together; so that it is not uncommon to see several sets engaged on the field at the same time. They preserve great temper in this exercise, and leave the spot without the least displeasure in their countenances. When they find that they are too equally matched, they desist by mutual consent; and if it does not clearly appear which of them has had the advantage, both sides proclaim the victory, and then they engage again. But no one, who has been vanquished, is permitted to engage a second time with his conqueror.

Those who intend to box, advance side-ways, changing the side at every pace, having one arm stretched out before, the other behind; and holding in one hand a piece of cord, which they wrap firmly about it, when they meet with an opponent. This is probably intended to prevent a dislocation of the hand or fingers. Their blows are dealt out with great quickness and activity, and are aimed principally at the head. They box equally well with either hand. One of their most dexterous blows is, to turn round on the heel, just after they have struck their adversary, and to give him another pretty violent blow with the other hand backward. In boxing matches, unless a person strikes his antagonist to the ground, they never sing the song of victory; which shews that this diversion is less approved among them than wrestling. Not only boys engage in both these exercises, but it not unfrequently happens that little girls box with great obstinacy. On all these occasions they do not consider it as any disgrace to be overcome; and the vanquished person sits down with as much indifference as if he had never engaged. Some of our people contended with them in both exercises, but were generally worsted.

As Captain Cook intended to leave behind him some of the animals he had brought, he thought proper to make a distribution of them before his departure. He, therefore, on the 19th, assembled the chiefs before his house, and marked out his intended presents to them. To the king he gave a bull and a cow; to Mareewagee a Cape ram and two ewes; and to Feenou a horse and a mare. He instructed Omai to tell them, that no such animals existed within many months' sail of their island; that they had brought them, with a great degree of trouble and

expense, for their use; that, therefore, they ought not to kill any of them till they had multiplied considerably; and finally, that they and their posterity ought to remember that they had received them from the natives of Britain. Omai also explained to them their respective uses, as far as his limited knowledge in such points would permit him. The captain had intended to give old Toobou two or three goats; but finding that chief indifferent about them, he added them to the share of Poulaho. It soon appeared that some of the natives were dissatisfied with the allotment of the animals; for, the next morning, two of the turkey-cocks and one kid were missing. Our commodore being determined to get them restored, seized on three canoes that were along-side the ships; then went on-shore, and having found his majesty, his brother, Feenou, and some other chiefs, in his house, he immediately appointed a guard over them, and intimated to them, that they must continue under restraint till not only the turkeys and the kid, but the other things of which he had been plundered at various times were restored. They assured him that the things in question should all be returned; and then sat down to drink *kava*, with an appearance of unconcern. Soon afterwards, an axe and an iron wedge, were brought to our men. Some armed natives, in the mean time, began to assemble behind the house; but they dispersed when a part of the guard marched against them; and the chiefs at the instigation of the commodore, gave notice that no more should appear. When he invited them to dine on-board, they readily consented. Some of them having afterwards objected to Poulaho's going, he rose up immediately, and declared that he would be the first man. Accordingly the chiefs went on-board with Captain Cook, and remained in the ship till near four o'clock; he then conducted them ashore, and not long after, the kid and one of the turkeys were restored to him. On their promising that the other turkey should be brought back the next morning, he released both them and the canoes.

Captain Cook now walked out with Omai, with a view of observing how the natives in the neighbourhood fared; for this was the usual time of their meals. He found that they were, in general, ill supplied; a circumstance not to be wondered at, since most of the yams, and other provisions that they brought with them, they disposed of to the ships, and were unwilling to return to their own habitations while they could procure any sustenance near the station of our men. That particular part of the island where the post was, being uncultivated, there were none of the natives who had a fixed residence within half a mile of them, Those, therefore, who were at the post were obliged to live under trees and bushes, or in temporary sheds; and the cocoa-trees were stripped of their branches for the purpose of erecting huts for the chiefs.

Omai and the captain in the course of their walk, found six

or seven women at supper together, two of whom were fed by the others. On their asking the reason of this circumstance, the women replied *taboo mattee*. Upon further inquiry it appeared, that one of them, about two months before, had washed the corpse of a chief, on which account she was not allowed to handle any food for five months; and that the other had performed the same office to the dead body of a person of inferior rank, and was therefore under a similar restriction, though not for so long a space.

On Saturday, the 21st, early in the morning, Poulaho came on-board to invite Captain Cook to a *haiva* or entertainment, which he designed to give the same day. He had already had his head besmeared with red pigment, in order to communicate a red colour to his hair, which was naturally of a dark brown. The captain, after breakfast, attended him to the shore, and found the islanders very busy in two places, fixing, in a square and upright position, four very long posts, at the distance of nearly two feet from each other. They afterwards filled up with yams the space between the posts; and fastened sticks across, from one post to another, at the distance of every four feet, to prevent the posts from separating, by the weight of the enclosed yams, and also to ascend by. As soon as the yams had reached the summit of the first posts, they continued to fasten others to them, till each pile was thirty feet or more in height. They placed on the top of one of the piles two baked hogs; and on the top of the other a living one; and they tied another by the legs half-way up. The facility and dispatch with which these two piles were raised, was remarkable. After they had completed them, they accumulated some other heaps of yams, and also of bread-fruit, on each side of the area; to which a turtle, and a great quantity of excellent fish were added. The whole of this, with some red feathers, a mat, and a piece of cloth, composed the king's present to Captain Cook. About one o'clock the *mai*, or dances, were begun. The first of these very nearly resembled the first that was performed at Mareewagee's entertainment. The second was conducted by young Toobou; and in this four or five women were introduced, who equalled the men in the exactness and regularity of their motions. Near the end, the performers divided, in order to leave the room for two champions, who exercised their clubs. In the third dance, which was the last, two other men, with clubs, exhibited their skill and activity. The dances were succeeded by boxing and wrestling; and one man entered the list with a kind of heavy club, made from the stem of a cocoa-leaf, but could meet with no opponent to engage with him in so rough a diversion. Towards the evening the *bomat*, or night-dances, began, in which the king himself, apparelled in a garb of English manufacture, was a performer; but neither these, nor the dances in the day-time, were so capital as those of Feenou or Mareewagee.

The commodore, in order to be present the whole time, dined on-shore. Poulaho sat down with him, but neither ate nor drank, which was owing to the presence of a female, who had been admitted, at his request, to the dining party, and who, as they were informed in the sequel, was of superior rank to himself. This lady had no sooner dined, than she walked up to Poulaho, who applied his hands to her feet; after which she retired. He immediately dipped his fingers into a glass of wine, and then all her attendants paid him obeisance. At his desire, some of the fire-works were played off in the evening; but, being damaged, they did not answer the expectations of the spectators.

No more entertainments being expected on either side, and the curiosity of the people being in a great degree satisfied, most of them deserted the place the day after Poulaho's *haiva*. Still, however, there were thieves amongst them, and our men had continual instances of their depredations.

Some of the officers of both ships, who had made an excursion into the interior parts of the island, returned on the 22nd of June, in the evening, after an absence of two days. They had taken their muskets and necessary ammunition with them, besides several small articles of the favourite commodities; the whole of which the natives had the dexterity to steal from them in the course of their short journey. Inconvenient consequences were likely to have attended this affair; for, when the plundered travellers returned, they employed Omai, without consulting Captain Cook, to complain to the king of the treatment they had received. He, not knowing how the captain would proceed in this affair, and apprehending that he might again lay him under restraint, set off early the next morning, and Feenou followed his example; so that not a chief of any authority remained near them. The captain was offended at this business, and reprimanded Omai for having presumed to interfere in it. This reprimand induced him to endeavour to bring back his friend Feenou, and he succeeded in his negotiation, by assuring him, that no violent measures would be pursued to oblige the natives to return what they had stolen. Trusting to this declaration, Feenou came back in the evening, and was favourably received. Poulaho also favoured them with his company the next day.

Upon this occasion the two chiefs very justly observed to Captain Cook, that whenever any of his people wanted to take an excursion into the country, they ought to be made acquainted with it, that they might order proper people to attend them, to prevent such outrages. And, had this precaution been taken, it is not to be doubted, but that a man and his property would have been as safe here as in other parts of the more civilized world. Though the captain did not afterwards endeavour to recover the articles taken upon this occasion, the whole of them were returned, through the interposition of Feenou, except one

musket, and a few other insignificant articles. By this time also, they recovered the tools and other matters that had been stolen from the workmen.

On Wednesday, the 25th of June, two boats, which Captain Cook had sent in search of a commodious channel to sea, returned. The commander of them reported, that the channel to the north, through which they came in, was imminently dangerous, being full of coral rocks; that there was a good channel to the eastward, though contracted, in one place, by the small islands; consequently, a westerly wind would be necessary to get through it. They had now recruited the ships, and repaired the sails, and had little more to expect of the produce of the island; but, as an eclipse of the sun was to happen on the 5th of July, the captain determined to stay till that time, to have a chance of observing it.

Having now some leisure before them, Captain Cook and a party of the crew, accompanied by Poulaho, set out the next morning, in a boat, for Mooa, a kind of village, where he and the other men of consequence usually reside. Rowing up the inlet, they saw fourteen canoes fishing in company; in one of which was Poulaho's son. They had then taken some fine mullets, about a dozen of which they put into the boat. They shewed them their whole method of fishing, which appeared to be an effectual one.

Taking leave of the prince and his fishing party, they were rowed to the bottom of the bay, and landed where they had done before, when they went to see Mareewagee. As soon as they got on-shore, they were conducted to one of Poulaho's houses; which, though tolerably large, seemed to be his private place of residence, and was situated within a plantation. The king seated himself at one end of the house, and those who came to visit him sat down in a semi-circle at the other end. A bowl of *kava* was immediately prepared for them, and directions were given to bake some yams. While these were getting ready, some of them, together with a few of the king's attendants, and Omai as the interpreter, went to take a view of a *fiatooka*, or burying-place, at a small distance from the habitation. It belonged to the king, and consisted of three pretty large houses, situated upon rising ground, with a small one not far off, all ranged longitudinally. The largest of the three first was the middle house, which was placed in a square, twenty-four paces by twenty-eight, raised about three feet. The other houses were placed on little mounts. On the floors of these houses, as also on the tops of the mounts, were fine, loose pebbles; and the whole was enclosed by large, flat stones of coral rock. One of the houses was open on one side, and two wooden busts of men rudely carved, were within it. They inquired of the natives who followed them (but durst not enter here) what these images were; who informed them, that they were memorials of some chiefs who had been buried there, and not meant as the represen-

tatives of any deity. Such monuments, it is presumed, are seldom raised; for these appeared to have been erected many ages.

They were informed that dead bodies had been buried in each of these houses; but no marks of them were to be distinguished; the carved head of an Otaheite canoe, which had been driven ashore on their coast, was deposited in one of them. On the rising ground was a grass-plot, on which different large trees were planted; among which were several of those called *etou*; they greatly resemble the cypress, and had a very solemn effect. A row of low palms was also planted near one of the houses.

After refreshing themselves with some provisions which they had brought from the ships, they took a pretty large circuit into the country, attended by one of the king's ministers, who would not suffer any of the rabble to follow them, and obliged those whom they met upon their progress to sit down while they were passing; a mark of respect due only to their sovereigns. The greatest part of the country was cultivated, and most of their plantations fenced round; some parts, indeed, lay fallow, and others in a state of nature; the latter afforded large quantities of timber.

They found many public and well-beaten paths, leading to different parts of the island. Travelling here was, indeed, very commodious, the roads being excellent, and the country level. They were conducted to several pools and springs of water, but they were, in general, either brackish or stinking.

In the dusk of the evening they returned from their walk, and found supper in readiness. It consisted of some fish and yams, and a baked hog, in which all the culinary art of the island had been displayed. There being nothing to amuse them after supper, our men lay down to sleep, according to the custom of the country, on mats spread upon the floor, and had a covering of cloth. The king, who became happy with wine and brandy which they had brought, also slept in the house, as did several of the natives. Before day-break they all rose, and entered into conversation by moon-light. As soon as it was day, they dispersed different ways, but it was not long before they all returned, accompanied by several of their countrymen.

While they were preparing a bowl of *kava*, Captain Cook went to pay a visit to Toobou, Captain Furneaux's friend, who had a house not far distant, which for size and neatness was hardly exceeded in the place. Here also they found a company preparing a morning draught. The chief made a present to the captain of a living hog, and one that was baked; also a quantity of yams, and a large piece of cloth. Returning to the king, they found him and his attendants drinking the second bowl of *kava*. That business being performed, he informed Omai that he was going to perform a mourning ceremony, called *tooge*, in memory

of a son who had been some time dead, and desired them to accompany him. Naturally expecting to see something new or curious, our men readily complied with the request.

The king stepped out of the house, attended by two old women, and put on a new clothing, over which was placed an old ragged mat, which might probably have served his grandfather upon a similar, solemn occasion. His attendants were habited in the same manner, excepting that, in point of antiquity, none of their mats could vie with that of their master. Thus equipped, they marched off, preceded by eight or ten persons in the same uniform, each of them having likewise a green bough about his neck. Poulaho, who held his bough in his hand till he approached the place of rendezvous, then, also put it about his house, and a man sitting before it. As the company entered, they took the branches from their necks, and threw them away; the king seated himself, and the others sat before him in the usual manner. By the arrival of other persons, the circle increased to upwards of a hundred, principally old men, all assembled, a large root of *kava* was produced by one of the king's servants, and a capacious bowl that would contain five or six gallons. Many persons now began to chew the root, and the bowl was filled with liquor up to the brim. Others were employed in making drinking-cups of plantain-leaves. The first cup that was filled, being presented to the king, he ordered it to be given to another person; the second was also presented to him, and he drank it; the third was offered to Captain Cook. Afterwards a cup was given to several others, till the liquor was exhausted; and, though not half the company partook of it, no one appeared in the least dissatisfied. Each cup, as it was emptied, was thrown upon the ground, whence it was taken up and carried to be filled again. All this time the chief, and his whole circle, sat with a great deal of gravity, hardly speaking a syllable to each other.

All this while they were in expectation of seeing the mourning ceremony begin, when, to their great surprise, as soon as the *kava* was drank out, they all rose up, and dispersed; and Poulaho informed them he was now ready to attend them to the ships.

They had sometimes seen the drinking of *kava* at other islands, but no where so frequent as here. The *kava* is a species of pepper, which the natives esteem a valuable article, and cultivate for this purpose, carefully defending the young plants from any injury; and it is usually planted about their houses. It does not often exceed the height of a man, though it is sometimes seen much higher, and has large, heart-shaped leaves, with jointed stalks.

Only the root of the *kava* is used at the Friendly Islands;

after being dug up, it is given to the servants, who, breaking it in pieces, scrape the dirt off, and each chews his portion, which he afterwards spits into a piece of plantain-leaf. Those who are to prepare the liquor, collect these mouthfuls together, and deposit them in a large, wooden bowl, adding a sufficient quantity of water to make it of a proper strength. It is then well mixed up with the hands, and wrung hard, in order to make it productive of as much liquid as possible.

About a quarter of a pint of this beverage is usually put into each cup. It has no perceptible effect upon these people, who use it so frequently; but, on some of our men it operated like spirits, occasioning intoxication, or rather stupefaction.

The mourning ceremony being over, they left Mooa, and set out on their return to the ships. Rowing down the inlet, they met with two canoes returning from fishing. Poulaho ordered them to approach him, and took from them every fish and shell: he afterwards stopped two other canoes, and searched them, but found nothing. He gave the crew some of the fish, and the rest were sold by his servants on-board the ship. Proceeding down the inlet, they overtook a large sailing canoe, when every person sat down till they had passed; even the man who steered, though he could not possibly manage the helm but in a standing posture.

Having been informed by Poulaho and others, that there was some good water at Onevy, a small island about a league off the mouth of the inlet, they landed there, in order to taste it, and found it to be extremely brackish. This island is quite in a natural state, and only frequented as a fishing-place, having nearly the same productions as at Palmerston's Island.

When they returned to the ship, Captain Cook was informed, that every thing had been quiet during his absence; not a single theft having been committed; of which Feenou, and Futtafaihe, the king's brother, who had undertaken the management of his countrymen in the captain's absence, boasted not a little. This evinces what power the chiefs have when they are inclined to exert it, which is not often to be expected, for whatever was stolen was generally conveyed to them.

The next day six or eight of the natives assaulted some of our people, who were sawing planks; in consequence of which, they were fired on by the sentry; one of them was supposed to be wounded, and three were taken: the latter were confined till night, when they were punished and set at liberty. After this, their behaviour was very decent and circumspect, occasioned, as was imagined, by the man being wounded: for, till this time, they had only heard of the effect of fire-arms, but now they felt it. Our men were not mistaken in this conjecture, for Mr. King and Mr. Anderson, in an excursion they took into the country, met with the very man, and found indubitable marks of his having been wounded with a musket-ball.

Nothing worthy of notice happened at the ships for two days;

we shall therefore fill up that interval with an account of Mr. Anderson's excursion, above-mentioned. "On Monday, the 30th of June, Mr. King and he, accompanied Futtafaihe, as visitors to his house, which is not far from that of his brother Poulaho at Mooa. Soon after they arrived, a pretty large hog was killed, which was effected by repeated strokes upon the head. The hair was then dexterously scraped off, with the sharp edge of pieces of split bamboo, and the entrails taken out by the same simple instrument. Previous to this an oven had been prepared, which is a large hole dug in the earth, the bottom of which was covered with stones about the size of a man's fist, which are made red hot by kindling a fire over them; they then wrapt up some of these stones in leaves of the bread-fruit tree, with which they filled the hog's belly; stuffing in a quantity of leaves to prevent their falling out, and thrusting a plug of the same kind in the anus. This being done, the carcase was placed upon some sticks laid across the stones, and covered with plantain-leaves. The earth was afterwards dug up all round; and the oven being thus effectually closed, the operation of baking required no further aid.

"They afterwards amused themselves by walking about the country, but saw nothing remarkable, except a *fiatooka* of about thirty feet high. At a small distance there was a number of *etooa* trees, on which were vast quantities of *ternatte* bats, making a disagreeable noise. Not having their muskets at that time, they could not kill any of them, but some, taken at Annamooka, measured almost a yard when the wings were extended.

"On their return to Futtafaihe's house, the baked hog was produced, accompanied with some cocoa-nuts, and several baskets of baked yams. The person who prepared the hog in the morning, now cut it up in a very masterly manner with a knife made of split bamboo. Though the weight of it was at least fifty pounds, the whole was placed before them; when they took a small part, and desired the rest might be partaken of by the people sitting round. Futtafaihe could hardly be prevailed upon to eat a morsel. Dinner being ended, they went with him and his attendants towards the spot where Poulaho's mourning ceremony was performed. They saw nothing but a kind of continuation of the same solemn rites, by way of condolence. Upon inquiring on whose account it was now transacted, they were informed that it was in memory of a chief who had long since died at Vavaoo; that they had practised it ever since, and should continue to do so for a considerable length of time to come. They were entertained in the evening with a pig for supper, dressed like the hog, and as before, accompanied with yams and cocoa-nuts. When the supper was over, a large quantity of cloth was brought for them to sleep in; but they were disturbed in their repose, by a singular instance of luxury, in which their men of consequence indulge themselves; that of being thumped

or beat while they are asleep. Two women, who sat by Futtaihe, performed this operation, which they call *tooge tooge*, by striking his body and legs with both fists till he fell asleep, and, with some intervals, continued it the whole night. The person being fast asleep, they abate a little of the strength and briskness of the beating; but, if they observe any appearance of his awaking, they resume it. In the morning they were informed that Futtaihe's women relieved each other, and went alternately to sleep. Such a practice as this, in any other country, would be supposed to be destructive of all rest; but here, it operates like an opiate, and is a strong proof of what habit may effect.

"They set out with Futtaihe the next morning, and walked to the point, down the east-side of the bay. The country all along this side appeared to be well cultivated, but not so much enclosed as at Mooa. They found, that in travelling, Futtaihe exercised a power, which shewed the great authority the principal men are invested with. To one place he sent for fish, to another for yams; and his orders were as readily obeyed as if he had been absolutely master of all the people's property.

"They crossed the bay in the evening, to their station, in a canoe procured by Futtaihe, by exercising his authority in calling to the first that appeared; he had also a large hog at this place, and wanted them to accept of a bundle of cloth; but the boat being small, they objected, and he ordered it to be taken to them the next day."

Captain Cook had prolonged his stay at this island on account of the approaching eclipse; but, on looking at the micrometer, (on the 2nd of July) he found some accident had happened to it, and that it was rendered useless till repaired, which could not be done before the time it was intended to be used. They, therefore, got on-board this day, all the cattle and other animals, except those that were destined to remain. The captain designed to have left a turkey-cock and hen, but two hens being destroyed by accident, and wishing to carry the breed to Otaheite, he reserved the only remaining pair for that purpose.

They took up the anchor next day, and moved the ships behind Pangimodoo, to be ready for the first favourable wind to take them through the narrows. The king, who was of the company this day at dinner, Captain Cook observed, took particular notice of the plates. This occasioned him to make an offer of one, either of pewter, or of earthenware. Poulaho chose the first; and then began to tell them the several uses to which he intended to apply it; two of which are so extraordinary, that we cannot omit mentioning them. He said, that whenever he should have occasion to visit any of the other islands, he should leave this plate behind him at Tongataboo, as a sort of representative in his absence, that the people might pay it the same obeisance they do to him in person. He was asked what had been usually

employed for that purpose, before he got this plate? and they had the satisfaction of learning from him, that this singular honour had been conferred on a wooden bowl in which he washed his hands. The other extraordinary use to which he meant to apply it in the room of his wooden bowl, was to discover a thief. He said, that when any thing was stolen, and the thief could not be found out, the people were all assembled together before him, when he washed his hands in water in this vessel; after which it was cleaned, and then the whole multitude advanced, one after another, and touched it in the same manner as they touch his foot when they pay him obeisance. If the guilty person touched it, he died immediately upon the spot; not by violence, but by the hand of providence; and if any one refused to touch it, his refusal was a clear proof that he was the man. In the morning of Saturday, the 5th of July, the day of the eclipse, the weather was cloudy, with some showers of rain. About nine o'clock, the sun broke out at small intervals for about half an hour, but was totally obscured just before the beginning of the eclipse. The sun again appeared at intervals till about the middle of the day; but was seen no more during the remainder of the day, so that they could not observe the end. This disappointment was the less to be lamented, as the longitude was sufficiently determined by lunar observations.

The eclipse being over, they packed up the instruments, and every thing was conveyed on-board. None of the natives having taken any care of the three sheep allotted to Mareewagee, the commodore ordered them to be carried back to the ships. He was apprehensive, that if they had been left there they would probably be destroyed by dogs. These animals did not exist upon the island in 1773, when the commodore first visited it; but there is now plenty of them, partly from the breed left by him, and partly from some imported from an island called Freejee. At present, however, the dogs have not got into any of the Friendly Islands except Tongataboo.

Mr. Anderson gives us the following description of this island. "Amsterdam, Tongataboo, or Tonga (as it is sometimes called by the natives), is about twenty leagues in circumference, rather oblong, though broadest at the east end, and its greatest length is from east to west. The south shore is straight, consisting of coral rocks of about eight or ten feet high, terminating perpendicularly, except in some few places where there are sandy beaches. The west end is about five or six miles broad, and has a shore like that of the south-side; but the north-side is environed with shoals and islands; and the east-side is, most probably, like the south.

"This island may with propriety be called a low one; the only eminent part to be observed from a ship, is the south-east point, though many gentle-rising, and declining grounds are perceivable by those who are on-shore. Though the general appearance of

the country does not exhibit that beautiful kind of landscape, produced by a variety of hills and valleys, rivulets and lawns, yet it conveys an idea of the most exuberant fertility. The surface, at a distance, seems entirely clothed with trees of various sizes: but, the tall cocoa-palms raise their tufted heads high above the rest, and are a noble ornament to any country that produces them. The *bogoo*, which is a species of the fig, is the largest sized tree upon the island; and the most common bushes and small trees, on the uncultivated spots, are the *pandanus*, the *saitanoo*, several sorts of *hibiscus*, and a few others.

“The climate of Tongataboo, from the situation towards the tropic, is more variable than in countries far within that line; though that might, perhaps, be occasioned by the season of the year, which was now the winter solstice. The winds are generally from some point between the south and east. The wind, indeed, sometimes veers to the north-east, or even north-west, but never continues long, nor blows strong from thence, though accompanied with heavy rain, and close sultry weather. The vegetable productions are never so much affected, respecting the foliage, as to shed it all at once; but every leaf, as it falls, is succeeded by another, which causes the appearance of universal spring.

“A coral rock appears to be the basis of the island, that being the only sort that presents itself on the shore. There was not the appearance of any other stone, except some small, blue pebbles about the *fiatookas*, and the smooth, black stone of which the natives make their hatchets; and these have, perhaps, been brought from other islands in the neighbourhood. Though in many places the coral projects above the surface; the soil is, in most parts, of a considerable depth. In cultivated places, it is generally of a loose, black colour, seemingly produced by the rotten vegetables. The principal of the cultivated fruits in this island are plantains, of which they have fifteen varieties; the *jambuu*, and the *eevee*; the latter being a kind of plum; and vast quantities of shaddocks, as often found in a natural state as planted. Of yams there are two sorts; one black, and so large, as to weigh from twenty to thirty pounds; the other white and long, seldom exceeding a pound in weight. There is a large root called *kappe*; another like our white potatoes, called *mauhaha*; the *taro*, and the *jeejee*.

“They have vast numbers of cocoa-nut trees, and three other sorts of palms. One is called *beeoo*, growing almost as high as the cocoa-tree, and having very large leaves plaited like a fan. The other is a kind of cabbage-tree, much resembling the cocoa, but rather thicker. A third sort is called *ongo-ongo*; it seldom grows higher than five or six feet. Plenty of excellent sugarcane is cultivated here; also gourds, bamboo, turmeric, and a species of fig, called *mattee*; but the catalogue of uncultivated plants is too large to be enumerated. There are no quadrupeds

in this island, but hogs, dogs, and a few rats. Fowls of a large breed are domesticated here. Among the birds are parrots, and parroquets, cuckoos, king-fishers, and a bird of the thrush kind, of a dull, green colour, which is the only singing-bird we could find here; but it compensates in a great degree for the want of others, by the force and melody of its voice. Among the other land birds, are rails about the size of a pigeon, of a variegated, grey colour; a black sort with reddish eyes; large violet-coloured coots, with red, bald crowns; two sorts of fly-catchers; a small swallow; and three sorts of pigeons. Of water-fowl, are the ducks seen at Annamooka; tropic birds; blue and white herons; noddies: white terns; a new species of a leaden colour; a small, bluish curlew: and a large, spotted plover.

“Among the animals of the reptile, or insect tribe, are sea-snakes, (though often seen on-shore), about three feet long, with alternate black and white circles; some scorpions, and centipedes; also green guanoes, about eighteen inches long, and two smaller sorts. Here are some beautiful moths and butterflies, and some very large spiders; together with others, making, in the whole, about fifty different sorts of insects.

“Though the sea abounds with fish, the variety is less than might be imagined; those in the greatest plenty are mullets, silver-fish, old wives, parrot-fish, soles, leather-jackets, albicores, bonnetos, eels like those about Palmerston's Island, rays, a sort of pike, and some devil-fish.

“There are an endless variety of shell-fish about the reefs and shoals; among which are the hammer-oyster; a large, indented oyster, and many others; but none of the common sort; a gigantic cockle; panamas; cones; pearl-shell oysters, &c. Also several sorts of sea-eggs; many curious star-fish, crabs, cray-fish, &c. and several sorts of sponge.”

Though Captain Cook was now ready to sail, he had not sufficient day-light to turn through the narrows; the morning flood falling out too early, and the evening flood too late. He was, therefore, under a necessity of waiting two or three days, unless he should be fortunate enough to have a leading wind. This delay gave the officers an opportunity to be present at a public solemnity, to which the king had invited them, and which was to be performed on the 8th. He and all the people of consequence repaired to Mooa on the 7th, where the solemnity was to be exhibited. Several of our officers followed them the next morning. Poulaho had informed them, that his son was now to be initiated into certain privileges; one of which was, that of eating with his father; an honour he had not hitherto enjoyed. About eight o'clock in the morning, they arrived at Mooa, where they found the king, with a number of attendants sitting before him, within a small, dirty enclosure. They were, as usual, busied in preparing a bowl of *kava*; but, as this was not liquor for our men, they went to pay a visit to some of their friends, and to observe

what preparations were making for the ceremony, which was soon expected to begin.

About ten o'clock, the people assembled in a large area before the *malae*, or great house. At the end of a road, opening into this area, stood several men with spears and clubs, incessantly reciting short sentences, in mournful accents, which conveyed an idea of distress. This was continued about an hour, during which time, many people came down the road, each having a yam tied to the middle of a pole, which they laid down before those who continued repeating the sentences. At length the king and prince arrived, and seated themselves upon the area; and our officers were requested to sit down by them, to take off their hats, and to untie their hair. The bearers of the yams having all entered, each pole was taken up between two men, who carried it over their shoulders: they afterwards formed themselves into two companies, of ten or twelve each, and marched across the place with a rapid pace, each company headed by a man who had a club or spear, and defended on the right, by several others, armed with different weapons. About two hundred and fifty persons walked in the procession, which was closed by a man carrying on a perch a living pigeon.

Omai was desired by Captain Cook to ask the chief where the yams were to be carried with so much solemnity; but he seemed unwilling to give the information he required: some of our men therefore, followed the procession, seemingly contrary to his inclination. They stopped before the *morai* or *statooka* of one house standing upon a mount, about a quarter of a mile from where they first assembled. Here they deposited the yams, and gathered them into bundles; but for what purpose could not possibly be learnt. The presence of our men seeming to give them offence or uneasiness, they quitted them, and returned to Poulaho, who advised them to amuse themselves by walking about, as nothing would be done for a considerable time: the fear of losing the sight of any part of the ceremony, however, prevented them being long absent. When they returned to the king, he desired Captain Cook to order the boat's crew not to presume to stir from the boat, for every thing would, very soon, be *taboo*; and if any of our people, or of their own, should be seen walking about, they would certainly be knocked down with clubs; nay *mateed*, that is, killed. He also informed them, that they could not be present at the ceremony; but should be placed in such a situation as to be able to see every thing that passed. The dress of our men was particularly objected to, and they were told, that to qualify them to be present, they must be naked as low as the breast, and their hats taken off, and their hair untied. Omai readily agreed to conform to these requisites, and immediately began to strip; but other objections were then started, and he was excluded equally with the rest.

Not relishing this restriction, the Captain stole out, to see

what might now be going forward. Very few people, however, were to be seen, except those who were dressed to attend the ceremony; some having in their hands small poles, about four feet in length, to the under part of which were fastened two or three other small sticks, about six inches long. These men were going towards the *morai*. Captain Cook took the same road, and was frequently stopped by them, all crying out *taboo*, however, he ventured to go forward till he came in sight of the *morai*, and of the people sitting before it. He was now strongly urged to go back, and not knowing what might be the consequence of a refusal, he complied. He had observed, that those who carried the poles, passed the *morai*; and guessing, from this circumstance, that something was transacting beyond it, he had some thoughts of advancing, by making a round for this purpose; but was so narrowly observed by three men, that he had no opportunity of putting his design in execution. In order to shake off these fellows, he returned to the *malaee*, where he had parted from the king, and afterwards made an escape a second time; but he instantly met with the same three men, who had doubtless received instructions to watch him. He paid no attention to them, till he came within sight of the king's principal *fiatooka* or *morai*, before which a great number of people were sitting, being those whom he had just before seen pass by the other *morai*, from which this was but a little distant. Seeing that he could observe the proceedings of this company from the king's plantation, he repaired thither, accompanied by several of his people.

The number of persons at the *fiatooka* continued increasing for some time; and at length, they quitted their sitting posture, and marched off in procession. They walked in pairs, every pair carrying between them one of the small poles on their shoulders. They were informed, that the small pieces of sticks fastened to the poles were yams; it is therefore probable that they were meant to represent this root emblematically. The hindmost man of each couple placed one of his hands to the middle of the pole, as if it were not strong enough to carry the weight that hung to it, and under which they all seemed to bend, as they proceeded. This procession consisted of one hundred and eight pairs, and principally men of rank. Having seen them all pass, our men repaired to Poulaho's house, and saw him going out, they were not permitted to follow him; but were immediately conducted to the place allotted to them, behind a fence adjoining the area of the *fiatooka* where the yams had been deposited in the morning.

Arriving at the station, they saw two or three hundred people sitting on the grass, near the end of the road opening into the area of the *morai*; and others were continually joining them. At length, arrived a few men, each carrying some small poles, and branches, or leaves of the cocoa-nut tree; as soon as they appeared, an old man seated himself in the road, and pro-

-1780.

people, however,
ssed to attend the
poles, about four
fastened two or
These men were
the same road,
out *taboo*, how-
e in sight of the
was now strongly
ht be the conse-
rved, that those
guessing, from
g beyond it, he
round for this
e men, that he
tion. In order
ulaec, where he
e an escape a
ree men, who
He paid no
ing's principal
f people were
n pass by the
tant. Seeing
any from the
ed by several

d increasing
ing posture,
s, every pair
r shoulders.
fastened to
t they were
admost man
of the pole,
at hung to
proceeded.
pairs, and
i, our men
they were
conducted
he area of
morning.
ed people
; into the
ng them.
all poles,
as they
nd pro-



r
c
s
(
a
s
V
p
c

a
d
w
pe
th
as

no

nounced a long oration in a serious, majestic tone. He then retired, and the others advancing to the middle of the area, began to erect a small shed or hut; employing, for that purpose, the materials already mentioned. Their work being finished, they all squatted down for a moment before it, then rose up, and joined the rest of the company. Poulaho's son arrived soon after, preceded by four or five men: after them appeared about twelve or fourteen women of the first rank, advancing slowly in pairs, each pair carrying between them a narrow piece of white cloth, about two or three yards in length. They approached the prince, squatted down before him, and wrapped some of the pieces of the cloth round his body; they then rose up, and retired in the same order, to some distance on his left, where they seated themselves. Poulaho now made his appearance, preceded by four men, walking two and two abreast, and sat down on his son's left hand, at a small distance from him. The young prince then quitted his first position, and seated himself under the shed, with his attendants; many others placed themselves on the grass before this royal canopy. The prince sat facing the people, with his back to the *morai*. Three companies of about ten or a dozen men in each, started up from among the crowd, soon after each other, and running hastily to the opposite side sat down for a few seconds; and then returned, in the same manner to their former stations. To them succeeded two men, each having a small green branch in his hand, who rose and advanced towards the prince, sitting down for a few seconds, three different times as they approached; and retired in the same manner inclining their branches to each other as they sat: afterwards two others repeated the same ceremony.

The grand procession, which marched from the other *morai*, now began to come in. As they entered the area, they proceeded to the right of the shed, and having prostrated themselves on the grass, deposited their pretended, heavy burthens, (the poles) and faced round to the prince. They then rose up, and retired in the same order, closing their hands with the most serious aspect, and seated themselves along the front of the area. While this numerous band were entering and depositing their poles, three men, who sat with the prince, continued pronouncing separate sentences, in a mournful, melancholy tone.

A profound silence then ensued for a short time, after which a man, who sat in the front of the area, began a kind of oration, during which at several different times, he broke one of the poles which had been brought in. Having concluded his oration, the people sitting before the shed, separated, to make a lane, through which the prince and his attendants passed, and the assembly closed.

Satisfied with what they had already seen, some of the party now returned to the ships; but Captain Cook, and some more

of the officers, remained at Mooa, to see the conclusion of the solemnity, which was not to be till the day following. The small poles, which had been brought by those who walked in procession, being left on the ground, after the crowd had dispersed, the commodore examined them, and found that to the middle of each, two or three small sticks were tied, as has been related: they were probably intended as only artificial representations of small yams.

The supper, consisting of fish and yams, was got ready about seven o'clock. The king supped with them, and drank so freely of brandy and water, that he retired to bed with a sufficient dose. Our officers continued the whole night in the same house with him and his attendants. All, except Poulaho himself, rose at day-break; soon after which a woman, one of those who generally attended upon the chief, came in, and sitting down by him, immediately began the same operation which had been practised upon Futtasaihe, tapping or beating gently with her clenched fists, on his thighs. This instead of adding to his repose, had the contrary effect, and he awoke.

Captain Cook and Omai now paid a visit to the prince, who had parted from them early the preceding evening; for he did not lodge with the king, but in apartments of his own, at some distance from his father's house. He found him with a circle of boys, about his own age sitting before him, and an old man and woman: there were others of both sexes employed about their necessary affairs, who probably belonged to his household. Captain Cook then returned to the king, who had a crowded levee before him, consisting principally of old men. While a bowl of *kava* was preparing, a baked hog and yams, smoking hot, were introduced; the greatest part of which fell to the share of our officers, for these people, especially the *kava* drinkers, eat very little in the morning. They afterwards walked out, and visited several other chiefs; all of whom were taking their morning draught, or had already taken it. Returning to the king, they found him asleep in a retired hut, with two women tapping or striking on his breech: about eleven o'clock he rose again, and ate some fish and yams, and again lay down to sleep: after leaving him, they waited on the prince, with a present of cloth, beads, and other articles: there was a sufficient quantity of cloth to make him a complete suit, and he was immediately clad in his new habiliments. Proud of his dress, he first went to exhibit himself to his father, and then conducted Captain Cook to his mother, with whom were about a dozen other women of a very respectable appearance. Here the prince changed his apparel, and made Captain Cook a present of two pieces of the cloth which had been manufactured in the island.

It was now about noon, when, by appointment, the captain repaired to the palace to dinner; which was soon after served

up, and consisted of two pigs and some yams. The drowsy monarch was roused to partake of what he had appointed for their entertainment. Two mullets, and some shell fish, were introduced, as if intended for his own separate portion, which he added to their fare, sat down with them, and made a very hearty meal. Dinner being over, our officers were informed that the ceremony would soon begin, and were strictly enjoined not to venture out: the commodore had resolved, however, to peep no longer from behind the curtain, but, if possible to mix with the actors themselves. With this view he walked toward the *morai*, the scene of the solemnity: he was frequently desired to return, but he paid no regard to the admonitions he received, and was permitted to pass on: when arrived at the *morai*, he saw a number of men seated on the side of the area: a few were also sitting on the opposite side, and two men in the middle, with their faces turned to the *morai*. When Captain Cook had got into the midst of the first company, he was desired to sit down, which he accordingly did: where he sat there was lying a number of small bundles, composed of cocoa-nut-leaves, and fastened to sticks made into the form of hand-barrows. All the information he could get concerning them was, that they were *taboo*, and from time to time, one or another of the company turned to those who were coming to join them, and made a short speech, in which it was remarked, that the word *arekee* (king) was generally mentioned. Something was said by one man that produced loud bursts of laughter from all around; others of the speakers were also much applauded. The captain was frequently desired to leave the place; but, at length, finding him determined to stay, they requested him to uncover his shoulders as theirs were: this he readily complied with, and then they no longer seemed uneasy at his presence.

The prince, the women, and the king at length appeared, as they had done the preceding day: the prince being placed under the shed, two men, each with a piece of mat, came, repeating something in a very serious strain, and put them about him: the people now began their operations, and different companies ran backward and forward across the area, as in the former day: soon after, the two men in the middle of the area, made a short speech, and then the whole company rose up, and placed themselves before the shed in which the prince and three or four men were seated. One of the company, who seemed very desirous of obliging Captain Cook, procured him such a situation, that if he could have made use of his eyes, nothing could have escaped him; but it was necessary to have a demure countenance and downcast looks.

The procession soon after arrived, as on the preceding day; a pole, with a cocoa-nut leaf plaited round the middle of it, being carried on the shoulders of every two persons, these were deposited with the same ceremonies as on the day before: after

this succeeded another procession, composed of men who brought baskets made of palm-leaves, such as are generally used by this people to carry provisions in. A third procession followed, in which a variety of small fish, each placed at the end of a forked stick, were brought. An old man, who sat on the prince's right hand, without the shed, received the baskets; each of which he kept in his hand, making a short speech or prayer: then laying that aside, he called for another, repeating the same kind of prayer; he proceeded in this manner till he had gone through the whole number of baskets: two men, who, till this time, had in their hands green branches, and were seated on the left, received the fish one by one as they were presented to them on the forked sticks: the first fish they laid down on their right, and the second on their left: the third being presented, a man, rather stout, who was seated behind the other two, endeavoured to seize it, as did also the other two at the same time: thus every fish was contended for; but the man behind, on account of his disadvantageous situation, got only pieces; for he never quitted his hold till the fish was torn out of his hand. What the others got were laid on the right and left. At last the person behind got possession of a whole fish, the other two not even touching it. Upon this the word *mareeai*, (very good), was pronounced in a low voice throughout the whole crowd. It appeared that he had now done all that was expected from him; for he did not contend for the other fish. The persons who brought in these baskets and fish delivered them sitting; and in the same manner, the poles carried in the first procession, had been placed upon the ground: at the close of the last procession, there was some speaking or praying by different persons. Then, on a signal being given, they all rose up, ran several paces, and sat down, with their backs to the prince. The commodore was requested not to look behind him; but he was not discouraged by this injunction from facing about. The prince had now turned his face to the *morai*, and from that moment he was admitted to the honour of eating with his father; and a piece of roasted yam was presented to each of them for that purpose.

Soon after, they all turned about, forming a kind of semicircle before the prince, and leaving an open space between them; presently some men advanced towards them, two and two, bearing large poles upon their shoulders, waving their hands as they proceeded, and making a noise like singing. When they came near them, they made a shew of walking quick, without advancing a single step: several men, armed with large sticks, immediately started from the crowd, and ran towards the new visitors, but they instantly made off, having thrown down the poles from their shoulders; the others attacked the poles, and having beat them most unmercifully, returned to their places. The former, as they ran off, gave the challenge used here in wrestling; and in a short

time, some lusty fellows came from the same quarter, repeating the challenge as they approached. These were resisted by a company, who arrived at that instant from the opposite side: both parties, however, returned to their own quarter, after having paraded about the area for some minutes: afterwards, for the space of half an hour, wrestling and boxing-matches succeeded. Speeches were then delivered by two men, who seated themselves before the prince, with which the solemnity ended, and the whole assembly broke up.

In vain did they endeavour to find out the purport of the solemnity called *natche*: all the answer they received to their inquiries, was a *taboo*; which, as has been already observed, is applied to many things. There was a mysterious solemnity in the whole transaction; and from the manner of performing it, as well as the place where it was performed, it was evident that there was a mixture of religion in the institution. Upon no other occasion had they regarded their dress and deportment; but now it was required that their hair should flow about their shoulders; that they should be uncovered to the waist; sit cross-legged; and have their hands locked together. It should be observed also, that none but the chief people, and those who were concerned in the ceremony, were admitted to assist in the celebration of it. All these circumstances evidently pointed out, that they supposed themselves acting under the inspection of a Supreme Being upon this occasion.

From the above account of the present *natche*, it may be considered as merely figurative. The few yams which were seen the first day, could not be meant as a general contribution; and it was intimated to them, that they were a portion consecrated to the *Otooa*, or Divinity. They were, however, informed, that in the space of three months, there would be represented a more important solemnity; on which occasion, the tribute of Tongataboo, Hapae, Vavaoo, and all the other islands would be brought to the chief, and more awfully confirmed, by sacrificing ten human victims from amongst the people. A horrid solemnity indeed! On inquiring into the occasion of so barbarous a practice, they were informed, that it was a necessary part of the *natche*; and that, if omitted, the Deity would destroy their king. The day was far spent before the breaking up of the assembly; and as they were at some distance from the ships, they were impatient to set out from Moca. Taking leave of Poulaho, he pressed them earnestly to stay till the next day, in order to be present at a funeral ceremony. The wife of Mareewagee, his mother-in-law, had lately died; and, on account of the *natche*, her corpse had been carried on-board a canoe in the *lagoon*. Poulaho told Captain Cook, that when he had paid the last offices to her, he would attend him to Eooa; but if he did not choose to wait, that he would follow him thither: he would gladly have seen this ceremony, had not the tide been now favourable. The wind too,

which had been very boisterous, was now moderate and settled; besides, they were informed, the funeral ceremonies would continue five days, which, as the ships lay in such a situation, that they could not get to sea at pleasure, was too long a time to stay. The captain, however, assured the king, that if he did not immediately sail, he would visit him again the next day: upon which they all took leave of him, and arrived at their ships about eight o'clock in the evening. While the commodore was attending the *natche* at Mooa, he ordered the horses, bull, and other cattle, to be brought thither, thinking they would be safer there than at a place that would be, in a great measure, deserted the moment after their departure. Besides, they had left with their friends here, a young English boar, and three young English sows; they were exceedingly desirous of them, naturally supposing, that they would greatly improve their own breed, which is but small; Feenou also got two rabbits from them, a buck and a doe, from which young ones were produced before they sailed. If the cattle succeed, the acquisition to these islands will be great; and as Tongataboo is a fine, level country, the horses will be extremely useful.

The ships weighed anchor on the 10th, about eight o'clock in the morning, and with a steady gale, turned through the channel, bc. the small isles called Makkahaa and Monooafai: the flood at first set strong in their favour, till leading up to the lagoon, where the eastward flood meets that from the west. This, with the indraught of the lagoon, and of the shoals before it, occasioned strong rippings and whirlpools. Besides these disadvantages, the depth of the channel exceeds the length of a cable; consequently there can be no anchorage, except close to the rocks, in forty and forty-five fathoms' water, where a ship would be exposed to the whirlpools. The captain, therefore, abandoned the design he had formed of coming to an anchor when they were through the narrows, and afterwards of making an excursion to see the funeral. He rather chose to be absent from that ceremony than to leave the ships in so dangerous a situation. They plied to windward, between the two tides, till it was near high water, without either gaining or losing an inch, when they suddenly got into the influence of the eastern tide, where they expected the ebb to run strong to the eastward in their favour. It proved, however, very inconsiderable. Convinced that they could not get to sea before it was dark, they anchored under the shore of Tongataboo, in forty-five fathoms' water; the *Discovery* dropped anchor under their stern, but drove off the bank before the anchor took hold, and did not recover till about midnight.

After remaining in this station till eleven o'clock the next day, they weighed, and plied to the eastward. At ten o'clock at night, they weathered the east end of the island, and stretched away for Middleburg, or Eooa (as the inhabitants called it) where

they anchored, about eight the next morning, in forty fathoms' water; being nearly the same place where the captain took his station in 1773, when he named it English Road. As soon as they had anchored, Taoofoa, the chief, and several of the natives visited them on-board, and seemed rejoiced at their arrival. This Taoofoa had been Captain Cook's *Tayo* when he was here in 1773, and therefore they were not strangers to each other. The captain accompanied him on-shore in search of fresh water, the procuring of which was the chief object that brought him to Eooa; he had heard at Tongataboo of a stream here, which ran from the hills into the sea; but this was not the case at present. He was conducted to a brackish spring, among rocks, between low and high water mark. When the natives perceived that they did not approve of this, they were shewn a little way into the island, where, in a deep chasm, they found some excellent water; which, though attended with some trouble, might be conveyed to the shore, by means of spouts or troughs that could be provided for that purpose; but, rather than undertake that tedious task, the captain contented himself with the supply the ships had received at Tongataboo.

Before he returned on-board he began a traffic for hogs and yams; of the former, they could not procure many; but, of the latter, plenty. At this island they landed the rams and two ewes, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, and committed them to the care of Taoofoa, who seemed delighted with his charge: it was, perhaps, a fortunate circumstance that Mareewagee, to whom they had been given, as before related, slighted the present; as Eooa had no dogs upon it, at present, it seemed to be a fitter place for the rearing of sheep than Tongataboo. While lying at anchor, this island had a very different aspect from any that they had lately seen, and formed a most pleasing landscape. It is the highest of any they had seen since they left New Zealand; and from its top, which appears to be almost flat, declines gradually toward the sea. The other isles which form this cluster being level, the eye cannot discover any thing except the trees that cover them; but here the land rising gently upwards, presents an extensive prospect, where groves of trees, in beautiful disorder, are interspersed at irregular distances. Near the shore it is quite shaded with a variety of trees, among which are erected the habitations of the natives; and to the right of where they were stationed was one of the most extensive groves of cocoa-palms they had ever seen. In the afternoon of the 13th, a party of them ascended the highest part of the island, a little to the right of the ships, to have a perfect view of the country. Having advanced about half-way up, they crossed a deep valley, the bottom and sides of which were clothed with trees: they found plenty of coral till they approached the summits of the highest hills; the soil near the top is, in general, a reddish clay, which, in many places, is very deep. On the most elevated part

of the island they saw a round platform supported by a wall of coral stones: their conductors informed them that this mount had been raised by the direction of their chief; and that they met there occasionally to drink *kava*, which they called *Etchee*, by which name an erection was distinguished which they had seen at Tongataboo. At a small distance from it was a spring of most excellent water; and, about a mile lower down, a stream, which, they were told, ran into the sea when the rains were copious; they also discovered water in several small holes; and supposed that plenty might be found by digging.

From this elevation they had a complete view of the whole island, except a small part to the south: the south-east side, from which the hills they were now upon are not far distant, rises, with great inequalities, immediately from the sea; so that the plains and meadows lie all on the north-west side, which, being adorned with tufts of trees, intermixed with plantations, form a most delightful landscape in every point of view. While Captain Cook was surveying this enchanting prospect, he enjoyed the pleasing idea, that some future navigator might, from the same eminence, behold these meadows stocked with cattle, brought by the ships of England; and that the completion of this single, benevolent purpose, exclusive of all other considerations, would sufficiently prove, that the voyages had not been useless. They found on this height, besides the plants common in the neighbouring isles, a species of *acrosticum*, *melastoma*, and fern-tree.

All, or most of the land on this island, belonged to the chiefs of Tongataboo; the inhabitants being only tenants or vassals to them; this seemed, indeed, to be the case at all the neighbouring isles, except Annamooka, where a few of the chiefs seemed to act with some kind of independence. Omiai, who was much esteemed by Feenou and many others, was tempted with the offer of being appointed a chief of this island, if he would continue among them; and he seemed inclinable to have accepted the offer, had he not been advised to the contrary by Captain Cook; though not because he thought he would do better for himself in his native isle.

Returning from their country excursion, they heard that a party of the natives, in the quarter where our people traded, had struck one of their own people with a club, which fractured his skull, and afterwards broke his thigh with the same instrument: no signs of life were remaining, when he was carried to a neighbouring house, but in a short time he recovered a little. On desiring to know the reason of such severity, they were informed, that he had been discovered in an indelicate situation with a woman who was *taboo'd*. They soon understood, however, that she was no otherwise *taboo'd* than by belonging to another person, who was superior in rank to her gallant. They discovered from this circumstance, how these people punish such infidelities.

But the female sinner has a much milder punishment for her misdemeanor, only receiving a remonstrance, and a very slight beating.

Captain Cook, the next morning, planted a pine-apple, and sowed the seeds of melons, and other articles, in the chief's plantation. He had reason, indeed, to suppose, that his endeavours of this kind would not be fruitless; for a dish of turnips was this day served up at his dinner, which was the produce of the seeds he had left here in 1773. The captain having fixed upon the 15th for sailing, Taofa pressed him to stay a little longer, in order to receive a present which he had prepared for him; his entreaties, together with the daily expectation of receiving a visit from some of his friends at Tongataboo, induced him to defer his departure; the next day he received from the chief, the present, consisting of two little heaps of yams, and a quantity of fruit, which seemed to be collected by contribution, as at the other isles. On this occasion the greatest part of the inhabitants of the island had assembled, and, as our crews had many times experienced on such numerous meetings among their neighbouring islanders, it gave no small trouble to prevent their pilfering. Cudgelling, wrestling, and boxing, were exhibited for their entertainment; and in the latter, combatants of both sexes engaged; the diversions were intended to have been finished with the *bomai*, or night-dance; but an accident happened that either put a total stop to it, or at least prevented their staying on-shore to see it. One of our people was surrounded by twenty or thirty of the natives, some of whom knocked him down, stripped him, and carried off all his clothes; hearing of this, the commodore seized two canoes and a large hog, and insisted on the chief's not only causing the clothes to be restored, but also the offenders being delivered up to him. Taofa seemed greatly concerned at what had happened, and took the necessary steps to satisfy him: the people who were assembled were also so alarmed at this affair, that most of them immediately fled; however, when they were informed that the captain meant to take no other measures to revenge the insult, they returned. One of the delinquents was soon delivered up to him, and a shirt and a pair of trowsers restored; the remainder of the stolen goods not coming in before the evening, the commodore was obliged to leave them, in order to go on-board; the sea running so high, that it was extremely difficult for the boats to get out of the creek even with day-light, and would be attended with much more danger in the dark; he came ashore again the next morning, bringing with him a present for Taofa, in return for what he had received from him. Being early, there were but few people at the landing-place, and even those few not without their fears and apprehensions; but, on the captain desiring Omai to assure them that they did not mean to injure them, and having restored the canoes, and released the offender, who had been delivered up to him, they resumed their usual

cheerfulness, and a large circle was presently formed, in which the chief and the principal men of the island took their respective places.

The remainder of the clothes were at length brought in, but, having been torn off the man's back by pieces, they were not thought worth carrying on-board. Taoofa shared the present he had received with three or four other chiefs, reserving a small part only for himself. This donation so far exceeded their expectation, that a venerable old chief told the captain, they were not deserving of it, considering how little he had received from them, and the ill treatment one of his people had met with. Captain Cook continued with them till they had emptied their bowl of *kava*; and then, after paying for the hog, which he had taken the day before, returned on-board, in company with Taoofa, and one of Poulaho's servants, by whom he sent a piece of bar-iron, as a parting mark of his esteem for that chief, that being as valuable a present as any he could possibly make.

They weighed soon after, and with a light breeze at south-east, stood out to sea, when Taoofa, and some other natives left them; the cable had been much injured by the rocks, and besides this, they experienced that a most astonishing swell rolls in there from the south-west. Presently they observed a sailing canoe entering the creek before which they had anchored their ships. A few hours after, a small canoe, conducted by four men, came off to them, for having but very little wind, they were still at no considerable distance from the land. They were informed by those men, that the sailing canoe which they had seen arrive, had brought directions to the people of Eooa to furnish them with hogs; and that the king and the other chiefs would be with them in the space of two or three days. They requested, therefore, that they would return to their former station. There was no reason to doubt the truth of this information; but being now clear of the land, it was not a sufficient inducement to bring them back; especially as they had already a sufficient stock of provisions to last them during their passage to Otahcite. Besides Taoofa's present, they received a large quantity of yams at Eooa, in exchange for nails, &c. and added considerably to their supply of hogs: finding that they would not return, these people left them in the evening, as did some others, who had come off in two canoes, with cocoa-nuts and shaddocks, to barter for what they could get; their eagerness to possess more commodities, inducing them to follow the ships out to sea, and to continue their intercourse with them to the last moment.

Our voyagers had now taken leave of the Friendly Islands and their inhabitants, after a cordial intercourse with the latter for between two and three months; some differences, indeed, occasionally happened, on account of their natural propensity to thieving, though too frequently encouraged by the negligencies and inattention of our people. These differences, however,

were never attended with any fatal consequences, and few belonging to the ships parted from their friends without some regret.

"The time employed among the natives of the Friendly Islands," says Captain Cook, "was not thrown away. We expended very little of our sea-provisions; subsisting, in general, upon the produce of the islands while we staid; and carrying away with us a quantity of refreshments sufficient to last till our arrival at another station, where we could depend upon a fresh supply. I was not sorry, besides, to have had an opportunity of bettering the condition of these good people, by leaving several very useful animals among them; and at the same time, those designed for Otaheite, received fresh strength in the pastures of Tongataboo. Upon the whole, therefore, the advantages we received by touching here, were very great; and I had the additional satisfaction to reflect, that they were received without retarding one moment the prosecution of the great object of our voyage; the season for proceeding to the north, being, as has been already observed, lost, before I took the resolution of bearing away from these islands."

Iron tools are the best articles for traffic here. Axes, hatchets, nails of all sizes, knives, rasps, and files, are much demanded. Red cloth, white and coloured linen, looking-glasses and beads, are also in great estimation; but of the latter, those which are blue are preferred to all others, especially to the white ones. A hog might at any time be purchased for a string of large blue beads; it should, nevertheless, be observed, that articles merely ornamental, may be highly esteemed at one time, and disregarded at another. On their first arrival at Annamooka, the people were unwilling to take them in exchange for fruit, but when Feenou arrived, his approbation of them brought them into vogue, and stamped them with the value above-mentioned.

In return for the commodities just enumerated, all the refreshments that the islands produce may be procured. The yams produced by the Friendly Islands are excellent, and when grown to perfection, preserve well at sea: but their pork, plantains, and bread-fruit, are inferior in quality to the same articles at Otaheite.

Good water is scarce in these islands, and may be found, indeed, in all of them, but not to serve the purposes of navigators for either the situations are too inconvenient, or the quantities too inconsiderable, although, whilst they lay at anchor under Kotoo, they were informed that there was a stream of water at Kao, which ran from the mountains into the sea, on the south-west side of the island.

The Friendly Islands include not only the group at Hapae, but also those which have been discovered to the north, nearly under the same meridian, as well as some others under the dominion of Tongataboo, which is the capital, and seat of government: this archipelago is very extensive. One of the natives

enumerated one hundred and fifty islands, and Mr. Anderson procured all their names. Sixty-one of them are marked upon the chart of the Friendly Islands, and upon the sketch of the harbour of Tongataboo; Keppel's and Boscawen's Islands, two of Captain Wallis's discoveries in 1765, are doubtless comprehended in Mr. Anderson's list; but the most considerable of all the islands that they heard of in this neighbourhood, are Hamoa, Vavaoo, and Feejee; each of which is larger than Tongataboo, but it does not appear that any European has ever yet seen any one of them.

Hamoa lies two days' sail north-west from Vavaoo. It is said to be the largest of all their islands; affords harbours and good water, and produces, in abundance, all the articles of refreshment that are found at the places visited. Poulaho frequently resides upon this island; and the people here are in high estimation at Tongataboo. Feejee lies in the direction of north-west-by-west, about three days' sail from Tongataboo. It abounds with hogs, dogs, fowls, and such fruits and roots as are to be found in any of the others, and is much larger than Tongataboo; but not subject to its dominion as the other islands of the archipelago are.—Feejee and Tongataboo often engage in war against each other; and the inhabitants of the latter are often so much afraid of this enemy, that they bend the body forward, and cover the face with their hands, to express the sense of their own inferiority to the Feejee men. This is, indeed, no matter of surprise, for those of Feejee have rendered themselves formidable by their dexterity in the use of bows and slings; but more so, by the savage practice of eating such of their enemies as they kill in battle.

It has been insisted on, that extreme hunger first occasioned men to feed on human flesh; but where could be the inducement for the Feejee people to continue the practice in the midst of plenty? It is held in detestation by the inhabitants of Tongataboo, who seem to cultivate the friendship of their savage neighbours of Feejee through fear; though they occasionally venture to skirmish with them on their own territory, and carry off large quantities of red feathers as trophies. When a profound peace reigns between the two islands, they have frequent intercourse together; though it is probable they have not been long known to each other; or, it might be supposed that Tangataboo, and its neighbouring islands, would, before this time, have been supplied with a breed of dogs which are numerous at Feejee, and were not brought to Tongataboo when Captain Cook first visited it in 1773.

The colour of the natives of Feejee was, at least, a shade darker than that of the inhabitants of the other Friendly Islands: one of the natives of Feejee, had his left ear slit, and the lobe so stretched, that it almost extended to his shoulder; which singularity had been observed by Captain Cook at other islands of

Mr. Anderson
marked upon
sketch of the
Islands, two
withoutless compre-
siderable of all
d, are Hamoa,
n Tongataboo,
er yet seen any

oo. It is said
ours and good
les of refresh-
who frequently
e in high esti-
tion of north-
oo. It abounds
as are to be
Tongataboo;
s of the archi-
in war against
ften so much
ard, and cover
their own in-
matter of sur-
es formidable
but more so,
mies as they

t occasioned
the induce-
in the midst
ants of Ton-
their savage
occasionally
y, and carry
hen a pro-
y have fre-
they have
e supposed
uld, before
s which are
aboo when

ade darker
lands: one
he lobe so
ich singu-
islands of

the South Sea, during his second voyage. The Feejee men were much revered here, not only on account of their power and cruelty in war, but also for their ingenuity: for they greatly excel the inhabitants of Tongataboo in workmanship. Specimens were shewn our people of their clubs and spears, which were ingeniously carved; they were also shewn some of their beautifully chequered cloth, variegated mats, earthen pots, and other articles, all of which displayed a superiority in the execution.

Feejee, as has been already mentioned, is three days' sail from Tongataboo; these people having no other method of discovering the distance from island to island, but by mentioning the time required for the voyage in one of their canoes. That this might be ascertained with precision, Captain Cook sailed in one of their canoes, and, by repeated trials with the log, found that she went, close hauled, in a gentle gale, seven miles in an hour. He supposed from this, that they will sail, with such breezes as, in general, blow in their seas, seven or eight miles in an hour on an average. Each day, however, is not to be reckoned at twenty-four hours; for when they talk of one day's sail, they mean no more than from the morning to the evening, or ten or twelve hours at the most. From the morning of the first day till the evening of the second, is with them, two days' sail. In the day they are guided by the sun, and, in the night, by stars; when these are obscured, they can only have recourse to the points from whence the winds and waves come upon the vessel. If, at that time, the winds and waves should shift, they are quite bewildered, often missing their intended port, and being never heard of more. The story of Omai's countrymen, who were driven to Wateoo, convinces us, however, that those who are not heard of are not always lost.

The harbour and anchoring-place of Tongataboo were superior to any they had met with among these islands, as well from its great security, as its capacity, and goodness of bottom. The risk they ran in entering it from the north, should caution every future commander from attempting that passage again, especially with a ship of burden, since that by which they left it may be pursued with greater ease and safety.

Though the harbour of Tongataboo has the preference, its water is exceeded in goodness by that at Annamooka, and yet this cannot be reckoned good. Tolerable water may, nevertheless, be procured by digging holes near the side of the pond. Besides, Annamooka being nearly in the centre of the group, is the best situated for procuring refreshments from the others. There is a creek in the reef on the north-side of the island, wherein two or three ships may lie securely.

Those who are desirous of having a more particular description of the Friendly Islands, must have recourse to the chart, where every thing is delineated as accurately as circumstances would permit. To the same chart recourse may

also be had for tracing the several stations of the ships, and the route.

After living among them between two and three months, it is reasonable to expect that our voyagers should be able to clear up every difficulty, and to give a tolerably good account of their manners, customs, and institutions, civil as well as religious; particularly as they had a person with them, who, by understanding their language as well as ours, might be enabled to act as an interpreter. But Omai was not qualified for that task. Unless they had before them the object or thing concerning which they wanted information, they found it difficult to obtain a competent knowledge from his explanations. Omai was certainly more liable to make mistakes than our men were; for, having no curiosity, he never troubled himself with making remarks; and when he attempted to explain matters to them, his ideas were apparently so limited, and, probably, differed so much from theirs, that his confused accounts, instead of instructing, often only perplexed them; besides, they could seldom find a person, among the natives, who had both the ability and inclination to give the information required: many of them, they observed, appeared offended at being asked what they, perhaps, deemed frivolous questions. At Tongataboo, where they continued the longest, their situation was likewise unfavourable; being in a part of the country, where, except fishers, there were but few inhabitants. With their visitors, as well as with those visited, it was always holiday; so that they could not observe what was really the domestic way of living among the natives. That they could not, therefore, in this situation, bring away satisfactory accounts of many things, is not the least surprising. Some of them endeavoured, by diligent observation, to remedy those disadvantages; and they were indebted to Mr. Anderson, for a considerable share of what information they obtained.

The Friendly Islanders seldom exceed the common stature, (though some here were above six feet in height) and are strong and well-proportioned. Their shoulders are, in general, broad; and several were really handsome, though their muscular disposition rather conveyed the idea of strength than of beauty. Their features are so various, that, unless it be by a fulness at the point of the nose, which is common, it is impossible to fix any general likeness by which to characterize them; on the other hand, many genuine Roman noses, and hundreds of European faces, were seen amongst them. They have good eyes and teeth; but the latter are neither so well set, nor so remarkably white, as among the Indian nations: few of them, however, have that uncommon thickness about the lips, so common in other islands. The women are less distinguished from the men by their features, than by their general form, which seems destitute of that strong, fleshy firmness that appears in the latter. Though the features of some are very delicate, and a true index of their sex,

laying claim to a considerable share of beauty and expression, yet the rule is not, by any means, so general as in many other countries. This is generally, however, the most exceptionable part; for the bodies and limbs of most of the females are well-proportioned and some absolutely perfect models of a beautiful figure; but the most remarkable distinction in the women, is the uncommon smallness and delicacy of their fingers, which may be put in competition with the finest in Europe.

The general colour is a cast deeper than the copper brown; but several of the men and women have a true olive complexion; and some of the last are even a great deal fairer; which is probably the effect of being less exposed to the sun; as a tendency to corpulency, in a few of the principal people, seems to be the consequence of a more indolent life. It is also among the last, that a soft, clear skin is most frequently observed. Amongst the bulk of the people, the skin is more commonly of a dull hue, with some degree of roughness, especially the parts that are not covered; which, perhaps, may be occasioned by some cutaneous disease. There were a man and boy at Hapace, and a child at Annamooka, perfectly white. Such have been found amongst all black nations; but it is probable that their colour is rather a disease than a natural phenomenon.

Upon the whole, however, few natural defects or deformities are to be seen amongst them; though there were two or three with their feet bent inward.—Neither are they exempt from some diseases: vast numbers of them are affected with the tetter or ring-worm, which leaves whitish, serpentine marks behind it. But they have another disease of a more mischievous consequence, which is also very frequent, and appears on every part of the body, in large, broad ulcers, some of which had a very virulent appearance, particularly those on the face. Some appeared to be cured of it, and others mending; but it was generally attended with the loss of the nose, or a considerable part of it. It being certainly known, and even acknowledged by themselves, that the natives were subject to this disease before they were visited by the English, it cannot be the effect of an odious contagion, notwithstanding the similarity of the symptoms; unless we adopt a supposition, that it was introduced here by our people in 1773. It certainly was amongst them at present; for, soon after they arrived there, some of our people received the infection; and Captain Cook had the mortification to learn from thence, that all the care he took in 1773, to prevent the communication of this dreadful disease, had proved ineffectual. They do not seem, however, to regard it much; and, as our men did not see many instances of its destroying effects, perhaps the climate, and the way of living of these people, may abate its virulence. Two other diseases are common amongst them; one of which is a firm swelling, which affects the legs and arms; the other is a tumour in the testicles, which sometimes exceeds the size of two fists. In other

respects, they are remarkably healthy, not a single person having, during their stay, been seen confined to the house by any kind of sickness. Their strength and activity are, in every respect, answerable to their muscular appearance; and they exert both in such a manner as to prove that they are as yet little debilitated by the numerous diseases that are the natural consequence of indolence.

The graceful mien and firmness of step with which they walk, are obvious proofs of their personal accomplishments. They consider this as a thing so necessary to be acquired, that their laughter was excited when they saw our men frequently stumbling upon the roots of trees, or other inequalities in walking.

Their countenances very remarkably express the abundant mildness, or good-nature, which they possess, and are entirely free from that savage keenness which marks nations in a barbarous state. One would, indeed, be apt to fancy, that they had been bred up under the severest restrictions, to acquire an aspect so settled, and such a command of their passions, as well as steadiness in conduct. But they are, at the same time, frank, cheerful, and good-humoured; though sometimes, in the presence of their chiefs, they put on a degree of gravity, and such a serious air, as becomes stiff and awkward, and has an appearance of reserve.

Their peaceable disposition is sufficiently evinced, from the friendly reception all strangers have met with who have visited them. Instead of offering to attack them openly, or clandestinely, as has been the case with most of the inhabitants of these seas, they have never appeared, in the smallest degree, hostile; but, on the contrary, like the most civilized people, have courted an intercourse with their visitors, by bartering, which is the only medium that unites all nations in a sort of friendship. Perhaps, no nation in the world traffics with more honesty and less distrust: our voyagers could always safely permit them to examine their goods, and to hand them about, one to another: and they put the same confidence in them. If either party repented of the bargain, the goods were re-exchanged with mutual consent and good humour. Upon the whole, they seemed possessed of the most excellent qualities that adorn the human mind; such as industry, ingenuity, perseverance, affability, and, perhaps, other virtues, which our short stay with them might prevent our observing.

The only defect sullyng their character, that was discovered, is a propensity to thieving; to which those of all ages, and both sexes, were addicted, to an uncommon degree. It should, however, be considered, that this exceptionable part of their conduct seemed to exist merely with respect to strangers; for, in their general intercourse with one another, there was reason to be of opinion, that thefts do not happen more frequently (perhaps less so) than in other countries, the dishonest practices of whose worthless individuals are not supposed to authorize any indis-

criminate censure on the whole body of the people. Great allowances should be made for the foibles of these poor natives of the Pacific Ocean, whose minds were overpowered with the glare of objects, equally new to them, as they were captivating. Stealing, amongst the civilized and enlightened nations of the world, may well be considered as denoting a character deeply stained with moral turpitude, with avarice unrestrained by the known rules of right, and with profligacy producing extreme indigence, and neglecting the means of relieving it. But at the Friendly and other islands which our people visited, the thefts so frequently committed by the natives, of what they had brought along with them, may be fairly traced to less culpable motives. They seemed to arise solely from an intense curiosity or desire to possess something which they had not been accustomed to before, and belonging to a sort of people so different from themselves. And perhaps, if it were possible, that a set of beings, seemingly as superior in our judgment, as we are in theirs, should appear amongst us, it might be doubted, whether our natural regard to justice would be able to restrain many from falling into this error.

The hair of these islanders is, in general, thick, straight, and strong; though some have it bushy, or frizzled; the natural colour appears to be black, but many of the men, and some of the women stain it of a brown, or purple colour; and a few give it an orange cast. The first of these colours is produced by applying a sort of plaster of burnt coral, mixed with water; the second, by the raspings of a reddish wood, mixed into a poultice, and laid over the hair; and the third is said to be the effect of *turmeric root*.

They are so whimsical in their fashions of wearing their hair, that it is difficult to say which is most in vogue. Some have none on one side of the head, when it remains long on the other side; others have only a part of it cut short; some have parted with the whole, except a single lock on one side; others permit it to grow to its full length, without any of these mutilations. The women usually wear it short. The beards of the men are cut short; and both sexes strip the hair from their arm pits. The men are stained with a deep, blue colour from the middle of the belly, to half-way down the thighs. This is effected with a flat bone instrument, full of fine teeth, which, by a stroke of a bit of stick, introduces the juice of *dooe dooe* into the skin, by which means indelible marks are made. Lines and figures are thus traced, which in some are very elegant. The women have only some small lines, thus imprinted, in the inside of their hands. As a mark of distinction, their kings are exempted from this custom. The men are all circumcised, or rather supercised; the operation consists in cutting off only a piece of the foreskin at the upper part, which is thus rendered incapable of ever covering the *glans*. They have no other aim in this operation, but only practise it from a notion of cleanliness.

The dress of both sexes is the same, consisting of a piece of cloth or matting, about two yards in breadth, and two yards and a half in length: it is double before, and, like a petticoat, hangs down to the middle of the leg. That part of the garment which is above the girdle, is platted into several folds, which extended, is sufficient to draw up and wrap round the shoulders. This, as to form, is the general dress; but the fine matting, and long pieces of cloth, are worn only by the superior class of people. The inferior sort are contented with small pieces, and very often have only a covering made of leaves of plants, or the *maro*, a narrow piece of cloth, or matting, like a sash. They pass this between the thighs and round the waist. It is seldom used but by the men; in their *haivas*, or grand entertainments, they have various dresses, which, though the same in form, are embellished, more or less, with red feathers.

Both men and women occasionally defend their faces from the sun with little bonnets, made of various sorts of materials.

The ornaments worn by those of either sex are the same. Those which are most common are necklaces made of the fruit of the *pandanus*, and various sweet-smelling flowers, known by the general name of *kahulla*. Others consist of small shells, shark's teeth, the wing and leg bones of birds, &c. all which are pendent upon the breast. In this manner, they often wear a polished mother-of-pearl shell, or a ring, on the upper part of the arm; rings of tortoise-shell on the fingers; and several of these joined together, formed into bracelets, on the wrists.

Two holes are perforated in the lobes of the ears, in which they wear cylindrical bits of ivory, of the length of three inches, introduced at one hole and drawn out at the other; or bits of reed filled with a yellow pigment. This appears to be a fine powder of turmeric, which the women rub all over their bodies, in the same manner as the European ladies use their dry rouge upon their cheeks.

Personal cleanliness is their delight, to produce which they bathe frequently in the ponds. Though the water has an intolerable stench in most of them, they always prefer them to the sea; and they are so sensible that their skin is injured with salt water, that when they are obliged to bathe in the sea, they have fresh water to pour over them, to wash off its bad effects. They are extravagantly fond of cocoa-nut oil; a great quantity of which they pour upon their head and shoulders, and rub the body all over with a smaller quantity.

The domestic life of these people is neither so laborious as to be disagreeable, nor so free from employment as to suffer them to degenerate into indolence.—Their country has been so favoured by nature, that the first can scarcely occur; and their disposition appears to be a sufficient bar to the last. By this fortunate concurrence of circumstances, their necessary labour seems to yield, in its turn, to their amusements and recreations, which

are never interrupted by the thoughts of being obliged to recur to business till they are induced by satiety to wish for that transition. The employment of the women is not difficult; and is generally such as they can execute in the house: the making of cloth is entirely intrusted to their care, the process of which manufacture has been already described: the cloth, in general, is able, to resist water for some time, but that which has the strongest glaze is the least liable to be penetrated with that fluid.

Another manufacture, which is also consigned to the women, is that of their mats, which excel those of most other countries, both with respect to their texture and their beauty. Of these mats there are seven or eight different sorts, which they either wear or sleep upon: and many are merely ornamental. The last are principally made from the tough, membranous part of the stock of the plantain-tree; those that they wear, are generally composed of the *pandanus*; and the coarser kind, on which they sleep, are formed from a plant called *evarra*. There are several other articles of less importance, that employ their females; as combs, of which they make great quantities; and small baskets made of the same substance as the mats, and others composed of the fibrous husk of the cocoa-nut, either interwoven with beads, or plain; all which are finished with extraordinary neatness and taste.

The province of the men is, as might reasonably be expected, far more laborious and extensive than that of the other sex. Architecture, boat-building, agriculture, and fishing, are the principal objects of their care. As cultivated roots and fruits form their chief subsistence, they find it necessary to practise husbandry, which they have brought by their diligence, to some degree of perfection. In planting yams and plantains they dig small holes for their reception, and afterwards root up the surrounding grass: the instruments used by them for this purpose are called *hoo*; and are nothing more than stakes of various lengths, flattened and sharpened to an edge at one end; and the largest ones have a short piece fixed transversely, by means of which they press the implement into the ground with the foot. When they plant the two above-mentioned vegetables, they observe such particular exactness, that whichever way you turn your eyes, the rows present themselves complete and regular.

The bread-fruit and cocoa-nut trees are dispersed about, without any order; and when they have arrived at a certain height, give them little or no trouble. The same may be said of another large tree, which produces a roundish, compressed nut, called *eejee*; and of a smaller tree bearing an oval nut, with two or three triangular kernels. The *kappe* is, in general, planted regularly, and in large spots: but the *muwhaha* is interspersed among other things, as are also the yams and *jeejee*. Sugar-cane is usually in small spots, closely crowded. The mulberry, of which the cloth is made, is kept very clean, and has a good space allowed

for it. The *pandanus* is commonly planted in a row, close together, at the sides of the fields.

They display very little taste or ingenuity in the construction of their houses. Those of the lower class of people are wretched huts, scarcely sufficient to shelter them from the weather. Those of the better sort are larger, as well as more commodious and comfortable.—A house of a middling size is of the following dimensions, viz. about twelve feet in height, twenty in breadth, and thirty in length. Their houses are, properly speaking, thatched roofs or sheds, supported by rafters and posts. The floor is raised with earth smoothed, and covered with thick matting. Some of their habitations are open all round; but the major part of them are enclosed on the weather-side with strong mats, or with branches of the cocoa-nut tree plaited or interwoven with each other. A thick mat about three feet broad, bent into a semicircular form, and placed edgewise, with the ends touching the side of the house, encloses a sufficient space for the master and mistress to sleep in. The rest of the family sleep upon any part of the floor, the unmarried men and women laying apart from each other. If the family is large, there are little huts adjoining, in which the servants sleep. Their whole furniture consists of some wooden stools, which serve them for pillows; baskets of different sizes, in which they put their combs, fish-hooks, and tools; two or three wooden bowls, in which they make *kava*; and some cocoa-nut shells, a few gourds, and a bundle or two of cloth.

They are very skilful in building their canoes, which, indeed, are the most perfect of their mechanical productions. The double ones are made sufficiently large to carry about fifty persons, and sail at a great rate.—Upon them they generally fix a hut or shed, for the reception of the master and his family. They are made of the bread-fruit tree, and the workmanship is extremely neat. They appear on the outside as if they were composed of one solid piece; but, upon closer inspection, they are found to consist of a great number of pieces, which fit each other exactly, and by means of a ledge on the inside are secured together with cocoa-nut line. The single canoes are furnished with an out-rigger. The only tools which they make use of in the construction of these boats, are hatchets, or adzes, of a smooth, black stone; augers, made of shark's teeth; and rasps, composed of the rough skin of a fish, fastened on flat pieces of wood. The same tools are all they have for other works, except shells, which serve them for knives. Their cordage is made of the fibres of the cocoa-nut husk, which, though not above ten inches long, they plait about the size of a quill, to whatever length is required, and roll it up in balls; from which the ropes of a larger size are made, by twisting several of those together. Their fishing-lines are as strong and even as our best cord. Their small hooks consist entirely of pearl-shell; but the large

ones are only covered with it on the back; and the points of both, are, in general, of tortoise-shell. With the large hooks they catch albicores, and bonnetos, by putting them to a bamboo-rod, about twelve feet long, with a line of the same length. They have also numbers of small seines, some of which are of the most delicate texture.

Their musical reeds or pipes, which resemble the *syrix* of the ancients, have eight or ten pieces placed parallel to each other, most of which are of unequal lengths. Their flutes are made of a joint of bamboo, about eighteen inches long, and are closed at both ends, having a hole near each end, and four others; two of which, and only one of the first, are used by them in playing. They close the left nostril with the thumb of the left hand, and blow into the hole at one end with the other nostril. The fore-finger of the right hand is applied to the lowest hole on the right, and the middle finger of the left to the first hole on that side. In this manner, with only three notes, they produce a pleasing, though simple music. Their *naffu*, or drum, has been already described.

Their warlike weapons are clubs, curiously ornamented, spears, and darts. They also make bows and arrows; but these are intended for amusement, such as shooting at birds, and not for the purposes of war.—Their stools, or rather pillows, are about two feet long, but only four or five inches in height, and nearly four in breadth, inclining downwards towards the middle, with four strong legs and circular feet; the whole composed of brown or black wood, neatly polished, and sometimes inlaid with ivory. They likewise inlay with ivory the handles of fly-flaps; and with a shark's tooth, shape bones into figures of men, birds, &c.

Their vegetable diet principally consists of plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and yams. Their chief articles of animal food are hogs, fish, and fowls; but the common people frequently eat rats. Their hogs, fowls, and turtle, however, seem to be only occasional dainties, reserved for persons of rank. Their food is, in general, dressed by baking, as at Otaheite; and they make, from different sorts of fruit, several dishes, which are very good. They sometimes boil their fish in the green leaves of the plantain-tree, which serve as a bag to hold both fish and water: having tied them up, they wrap them again in three or four other leaves, and place them upon stones heated for the purpose: when they are sufficiently done, they not only eat the fish, but drink the liquor or soup. They are not very cleanly either in their cookery, or their manner of eating. Their usual drink at their meals is water, or cocoa-nut milk, the *kava* being only their morning beverage. The food that is served up to the chiefs is generally laid upon plantain-leaves. The king, at his meals, was commonly attended upon by three or four of the natives, one of whom cut large pieces of the fish, or of the joint another after-

wards divided it into mouthfuls, and the rest stood by with cocoa-nuts, and whatever else he might happen to want. A large company was never observed to sit down to a sociable meal, by eating from the same dish. The women are not excluded from taking their meals with the men; but there are certain ranks that are not allowed either to eat or drink together. This distinction begins with his majesty, but it is not known where it ends.

They rise at day-break, and retire to rest as soon as it becomes dark. They, for the most part, sleep also in the day-time, when the weather is very hot. They are fond of associating together; in consequence of which, it is not uncommon to find several houses empty, and the possessors of them assembled in some other house, or upon some convenient spot in the neighbourhood, where they relax themselves by conversation and other amusements. Their private diversions consist chiefly of dancing, singing, and music. When two or three women snap their fingers, and sing in concert, it is called *hoobai*; but when there are more, they form several parties, each of which sings in a different key, which constitutes an agreeable melody, and is termed *heeva* or *haiva*: the songs are generally accompanied with the music of their flutes. The dances both of the men and women are performed with an ease and grace which are difficult to be described.

Captain Cook could not determine with precision, whether their marriages were rendered durable by any kind of solemn contract: it is certain, however, that the major part of the people contented themselves with one wife. The chiefs, indeed, have commonly several women, though there was only one who (as they thought), was considered in the light of mistress of the family. Though female chastity seemed to be held in little estimation, not a single breach of conjugal fidelity happened, to the knowledge of our men, during their whole continuance at these islands; nor were the unmarried women more liberal of their favours: but there were great numbers of a very different character.

The concern shewn by these islanders for the dead, is a strong proof of their humanity: besides the *tooge*, already mentioned, and burnt circles and scars, they strike a shark's tooth into their heads till the blood flows in streams, beat in their teeth with stones, and thrust spears, not only through their cheeks into their mouths, but also into the inner part of their thighs, and into their sides. The more painful operations, however, are only practised when they mourn the death of those who were most nearly connected to them. When one of them dies, he is wrapped up in mats and cloth, and then interred. The *fiatookas* seem to be appropriated to the chiefs and other persons of distinction, as their burial-places; but the inferior people have no particular spot, set apart for their interment. It is uncertain what part of

the mourning ceremony follows immediately afterwards; but there is something besides the general one which is continued for a considerable time, the funeral of Mareewagee's wife being attended with ceremonies of five days' duration. They seem to consider death as a great evil, to avert which they practise a very singular custom. When Captain Cook during his second voyage first visited these islands, he observed that many of the natives had one or both of their little fingers cut off; of the reason of which mutilation he could not then obtain a satisfactory account. But he was now informed, that they perform this operation when they are afflicted with some dangerous disorder, which they imagine may bring them to the grave. They suppose that the little finger will be accepted of by the deity as a kind of propitiatory sacrifice, sufficiently efficacious to procure their recovery. In cutting it off, they make use of a stone hatchet.—There was scarcely one person in ten who was not thus mutilated; and they sometimes cut so close, as to encroach upon that bone of the hand which joins the amputated finger. It is also common for the lower class of people to cut off a joint of their little finger, on account of the sickness of the chiefs to whom they respectively belong.

When the rigid strictness with which they perform their mourning and religious ceremonies is considered, it might be expected, that they endeavoured thereby to secure to themselves eternal happiness; but their principal object regards things merely temporal; for they have apparently little conception of future punishment for sins committed in the present life. They believe, however, that they meet with just punishment upon earth; and therefore put every method in practice to render their divinities propitious. They admit a plurality of deities, all of them inferior to *Kallafootonga*, who they say is a female, and the supreme author of most things, residing in the heavens, and directing the wind, rain, thunder, &c. They are of opinion, that when she is much displeased with them, the productions of the earth are blasted, many things consumed by lightning, and themselves afflicted with sickness and death; but that when her anger abates, every thing is immediately restored to its former state. Among their subordinate deities, they mention *Futtafuihe*, or *Footafooa*, who has the administration of the sea, and its productions; *Toofooloolootoo*, god of the clouds and fog; *Talletteboo*, *Mataba*, *Tareeava*, and others. The same system of religion does not extend all over the Friendly Islands; the supreme deity of Hapae, for instance, being called *Alo Alo*. They entertain very absurd opinions relative to the power and various attributes of these beings, who, they suppose, have no farther concern with them after death. They have, however, juster sentiments respecting the immortality and immateriality of the soul; which they call life, the living principle, or an *Otooa*, that is, a divinity. They imagine that immediately after

the souls of their chiefs are separated from their bodies, and go to a delightful region called *Boolootoo*, the god of which is called *Gooleho*. By this *Gooleho* they probably personify death; his country according to their mythology, is the general repository of the dead; and those who are once conveyed thither, are no more subject to death, but feast on all the favourite productions of their native soil, with which this blissful abode is plentifully furnished. As for the souls of people of an inferior class, they are supposed by them to suffer a kind of transmigration; or are eaten up (they say) by a bird called *loata*, which walks upon their graves with that intent.

They do not worship any part of the creation, or any thing made by their own hands. They make no offerings of dogs, hogs, and fruit (as is the custom at Otaheite), unless emblematically; but there seems to be no reason to doubt of their offering up human sacrifices. Their *statookas* or *morais* are, in general, burying-grounds and places of worship: some of them, however, appeared to be appropriated only to the former purpose; but these were small, and greatly inferior to the rest.

We are very little acquainted with their form of government. A subordination, resembling the feudal system of our ancestors in Europe, is established among them; but of its subdivisions, and the constituent parts, we are ignorant. Though some of them informed our men that the king's power is unbounded, and that he has the absolute disposal of the lives and properties of his subjects; yet, the few circumstances that offered themselves to their observation, contradicted rather than confirmed the idea of despotic sway. Mareewagee, Feenou, and old Toobou, acted each the part of a petty sovereign, and not unfrequently counteracted the measures of the king. Nor was his court superior in splendour to those of old Toobou and Mareewagee, who, next to his majesty, were the most potent chiefs in these islands; and next after them, Feenou appeared to stand highest in rank and authority. But, however independent of the king the principal men may be, the inferior people are totally subject to the will of the chiefs to whom they severally belong.

The island of Tongataboo is divided into numerous districts, each of which has its peculiar chief, who distributes justice, and decides disputes, within his own territory. Most of these chiefs have estates in other islands, whence they procure supplies. The king, at stated times, receives the product of his distant domains at Tongataboo, which is not only the usual place of his residence, but the abode of most persons of distinction among these islands. Its inhabitants frequently call it the Land of Chiefs, and stigmatize the subordinate isles with the appellation of Lands of the Servants.

The chiefs are styled by the people lords of the earth, and also of the sun and sky; the royal family assume the name of Futtasaihe, from the god distinguished by that appellation, who

is probably considered by them as their tutelary patron. The king's peculiar title is simply *Tooe Tunga*. The order and decorum observed in his presence, and likewise in that of the other chiefs, are truly admirable. Whenever he sets down, all the attendants seat themselves before him, forming a semicircle, and leaving a sufficient space between them and him, into which no one, unless he has particular business, presumes to come. Neither is any one suffered to sit, or pass behind him, nor even near him, without his permission. When a person wishes to speak to his majesty, he comes forward, and having seated himself before him, delivers in a few words what he has to say; and, having received his answer, retires again to the circle. But if the king speaks to any one, that person answers from his seat, unless he is to receive an order, in which case he rises from his place, and seats himself cross-legged* before his majesty. To speak to the king standing would here be considered as a glaring mark of rudeness.

None of the most civilized nations have ever exceeded these islanders in the great order and regularity maintained on every occasion, in ready and submissive compliance with the commands of their chiefs, and in the perfect harmony that subsists among all ranks.—Such a behaviour manifests itself in a remarkable manner whenever their chiefs harangue a body of them assembled together, which frequently happens. The greatest attention and most profound silence are observed during the harangue; and whatever might have been the purport of the oration, our people never saw a single instance, when any one of those who were present shewed signs of his being displeased, or seemed in the least inclined to dispute the declared will of the speaker.

It is a peculiar privilege annexed to the person of the king, not to be punctured, nor circumcised, or rather supercised, as all his subjects are. Whenever he walks out, all who meet him must sit down till he has passed. No person is suffered to be over his head; but on the contrary all must come under his feet. The method of doing homage to him and the other chiefs, is as follows:—the person who is to pay obeisance squats down before the great personage, and bows the head down to the sole of his foot, which he taps or touches with the under and upper side of the fingers of each hand; then rising up, he retires. They had reason to think, that his majesty cannot refuse any one who is desirous of paying him this homage, which is called by the natives *moe moea*; for the people would frequently think proper to shew him those marks of submission when he was walking; and he was on those occasions obliged to stop, and hold up one of his feet behind him, till they had performed this respectful cere-

* It may be proper to mention here, on the authority of Captain King, that this posture is peculiar to the men; for the females always sit with both their legs thrown a little on one side.

mony. This, to so corpulent and unwieldy a man as Poulaho, must have been painful and troublesome; and we have sometimes seen him endeavour, by running, to get out of the way, or to reach a convenient place for sitting down. The hands, after having been thus applied, become, in some cases, useless for a little time; for till they are washed, they must not touch food of any sort. This prohibition, in a country where water is far from being plentiful, would be attended with inconvenience, if a piece of any juicy plant, which they can immediately procure, being rubbed over the hands, did not serve for the purpose of purification. When the hands are in this situation, they term it *taboo rema*; the former generally signifying forbidden, and the latter implying hand. When the *taboo* is incurred, by doing homage to a person of rank, it may thus easily be washed off; but in several other cases, it must continue for a certain period. They have often seen women, who have been *taboo rema*, not fed by themselves, but by others. The interdicted person, after the limited time has elapsed, washes herself in one of their baths, which are, in general, dirty ponds of brackish water. She then waits upon the sovereign, and after having paid the customary obeisance, takes hold of his foot, which she applies to her shoulders, breast, and other parts: he then embraces her on both shoulders, and she immediately retires, purified from her uncleanness. If it be always necessary to have recourse to his majesty for this purpose (of which our voyagers were not certain, though Omai assured them it was,) it may be one reason for his travelling very frequently from one island to another.

The word *taboo* has a great latitude of signification. They call human sacrifices *tangata taboo*; and when any particular thing is prohibited to be eaten, or made use of, they say it is *taboo*. They informed us, that, if the king should go into a house belonging to one of his subjects, that house would in consequence become *taboo*, and could never be inhabited by the owner of it; so that, wherever his majesty travels, there are houses peculiarly assigned for his accommodation. At this time, old Toobou presided over the *taboo*; that is (if Omai did not misunderstand those who gave him the intelligence,) he and his deputies had the inspection of all the produce of the island, taking care that each individual should cultivate and plant his quota, and directing what should, and what should not, be eaten. By so prudent a regulation, they take effectual precautions against a famine; sufficient ground is employed in raising provisions; and every article is secured from unnecessary consumption.

When we take into consideration the number of islands of which this state consists, and the distance at which some of them are removed from the seat of government, attempts to throw off the yoke of subjection might be apprehended: but they stated that this circumstance never happens; one reason of their not being thus embroiled in domestic commotions may be this, that

all their principal chiefs take up their residence at Tongataboo. They also secure the dependence of the other isles, by the decisive celerity of their operations; for if a seditious and popular man should start up in any of them, Feenou, or whoever happens to hold his office, is immediately dispatched thither to put him to death; by which means they extinguish an insurrection while it is yet in embryo.

The different classes of their chiefs seemed to be nearly as numerous as among us: but there are few comparatively speaking, that are lords of extensive districts of territory. It is said, that when a person of property dies, all his possessions devolve on the sovereign: but that it is customary to give them to the eldest son of the deceased, with this condition annexed, that he should provide out of the estate for the other children. The crown is hereditary; and it is known from a particular circumstance, that the Futtafaihes, of which family is Poulaho, have reigned in a direct line, for the space of at least one hundred and thirty-five years, which have elapsed between the present visit to these islands, and Tasman's discovery of them. Upon inquiring of them, whether any traditional account of the arrival of Tasman's ships had been preserved among them till this time, it was found that this history had been delivered down to them from their ancestors with great accuracy: for they said that his two ships resembled theirs, and also mentioned the place where they had lain at anchor, their having continued but a few days, and their quitting that station to go to Annamooka; and, for the purpose of informing our officers how long ago this affair had happened, they communicated to them the name of the Futtafaihe who reigned at that time, and those who had succeeded him in the sovereignty, down to Poulaho, who is the fifth monarch since that period.

It might naturally be imagined, that the present sovereign of the Friendly Isles had the highest rank of any person in his dominions: but it was found to be otherwise; for Latoolibooloo, who has been already mentioned, and three women, are superior, in some respects, to Poulaho himself. The great personages are distinguished by the title of *Tammaha*, which implies a chief. When they made inquiry concerning them, they were informed that the late king, father of Poulaho, left behind him a sister of equal rank, and older than himself; that she, by a native of Feejee, had a son and two daughters, and that these three persons, as well as their mother, are of higher rank than the king. They endeavoured to discover the reason of this pre-eminence of the *Tammahas*, but without effect. The mother, and one of her daughters, named Tooleela-kaipa, reside at Vavaoo. The other daughter, called Mougoula-kaipa, and Latoolibooloo, the son, dwell at Tongataboo. Mougoula-kaipa is the lady who has been mentioned as having dined with Captain Cook on the 21st of June. Latoolibooloo was supposed by his countrymer.

to be disordered in his senses. At Eooa, or Middleburg, they shewed them a considerable quantity of land, which was said to be his property; and they saw there a son of his, a child, who was honoured with the same title that his father enjoyed.

The language of these islands bears a striking resemblance to that of New Zealand, of Otaheite, and the Society Isles. The pronunciation of these people differs, indeed, in many instances, from that both of Otaheite and New Zealand; but, notwithstanding that, a great number of words are either very little changed, or exactly the same. The language, as spoken by the Friendly Islanders, is sufficiently copious to express all their ideas; and, besides, being tolerably harmonious in common conversation, is easily adapted to the purposes of music. They have terms to signify numbers as far as a hundred thousand, beyond which they either would not, or could not reckon.

The latitude of that part of Tongataboo where the observatory was erected, which was near the middle of the north-side of the island, was, according to the most accurate observations, 21 deg. 8 min. and 19 sec. south; and its longitude was 184 deg. 55 min. and 88 sec. east.

The tides are more considerable at the Friendly Islands, than at any other of Captain Cook's discoveries in this ocean, that are situated within either of the tropics. At Annamooka the tide rises and falls about six feet, upon a perpendicular. At Tongataboo, it rises and falls four feet and three quarters, on the full and change days; and three feet and a half at the quadratures.

Captain Cook now took his final leave of the Friendly Islands. On the 17th of July, at eight o'clock in the evening, Eooa bore north-east-by-north, distant three or four leagues. The wind blew a fresh gale at east: the ships stood to the south, till after six o'clock the next morning, when, from the same direction, a sudden squall took the ships aback; and before they could trim the ships on the other tack, the main-sail and the top-gallant sail were considerably torn. On the 19th and 20th, the wind kept between the south-west and south-east; then it veered to the east-north-east, and north. They now stretched to the east-south-east without meeting with any thing remarkable, till the 29th, at seven o'clock in the evening, when they had a very heavy squall of wind from the north. They were, at this time, under single-reefed top-sails, courses, and stay-sails. Two of the latter were almost demolished by the wind; and it was with the utmost difficulty that they saved the other sails. This squall being over, they saw several lights moving on-board the Discovery; whence they conjectured that something had given way; and, the next morning, they perceived that her main-top-mast had been lost. Both wind and weather remained very unsettled till noon, when the latter cleared up, and the former settled in the north-west quarter. Their latitude was now 28 deg. 6 min.

south, and longitude 198 deg. 23 min. east. They saw some pintado birds, which were the first they had seen since they left the land.

At noon, on the 31st, Captain Clerke made a signal to speak with Captain Cook; and afterwards informed him, that the head of the main-mast had sprung, and in such a manner as to render the rigging of another top-mast extremely dangerous; that he must therefore rig something lighter in its place. He further informed him, that he had lost his main-top gallant-yard, and had not another on-board, nor a spar to make one. Captain Cook sent him the Resolution's sprit-sail-top-sail-yard, which supplied this want for the present; the next day, by getting up a jury top-mast, on which he set a mizen top-sail, he was enabled to keep way with the Resolution.

They steered east-north-east, and north-east, without meeting with any remarkable occurrence till the morning of the 8th of August, at eleven o'clock, when land was observed bearing north-north-east, about nine or ten leagues distant. At first it appeared like so many separate islands: but, as they approached they found it was all connected, and formed one and the same island. They steered directly for it with a fine gale, and, at half-past six in the afternoon, it extended from north-by-east, to north-north-east, distant three or four leagues. At day-break, the next morning, they steered for the north-west side of the island, and as they stood round its south-west part, they saw it guarded by a reef of coral rock, extending, in some places, at least a mile from land, and a high surf breaking upon it. As they drew near, saw people walking or running along shore on several parts of the coast; and, in a short time after, when they had reached the lee-side of the island, they saw two canoes launched, in which were about a dozen men, who paddled towards them.

In order to give these canoes time to come up with them, as well as to sound for anchorage, they shortened sail, and at the distance of half a mile from the reef, they found from forty to thirty five fathoms' water. The canoes, after having advanced within pistol-shot of the ships, suddenly stopped. Omai was desired, as was usual on such occasions, to endeavour to prevail upon the men in them to come nearer; but no arguments could induce them to trust themselves within their reach. They often pointed eagerly to the shore with their paddles, at the same time calling to our men to go thither; and many of their people who were standing upon the beach, held up something white in their hands, which was construed as an invitation for them to come to land. They could easily have accomplished this, there being good anchorage without the reef, and an opening in it, through which the canoes had passed, which had no surf upon it; but the captain did not choose to risk the advantage of a fair wind, in order to examine an island that appeared to be but of little

consequence : besides, they required no refreshments, if they had been certain of meeting with them there, and, therefore, after making several unsuccessful attempts to prevail upon these people to come near, they made sail to the north, and left them; having first learned that the name of their island was Toobouai: it is situated in the latitude of 23 deg. 25 min. south; and in 210 deg. 37 min. east longitude.

The greatest extent of this island, in any direction, is not above five or six miles. Small, however, as it appears, there are hills in it of a considerable elevation; at the foot of which is a narrow border of flat land, extending almost round it, bordered with a white sand-beach; the hills were covered with herbage, except a few rocky cliffs, with patches of trees interspersed to their summits. This island, as they were informed by the men in the canoes, is plentifully stocked with hogs and fowls; and produces the several kinds of fruits and roots that are to be met with at the other islands in this neighbourhood.

From the conversation our men had with those who came off to the ships, they discovered, that the inhabitants of Toobouai speak the Otaheite language; an indubitable proof that they are of the same nation. Those whom they saw in the canoes were a stout, copper-coloured people; some wearing their hair (which was straight and black) flowing about the shoulders, and others having it tied in a bunch on the crown of the head. Their faces were roundish and full, but the features, flat; and their countenances expressed a degree of natural ferocity. Their covering was a piece of narrow stuff wrapped round the waist, and passed between the thighs; but some of those whom they beheld upon the beach were completely clothed in white. Some of the visitors in the canoes had their necks ornamented with pearl-shells; and one of them continued blowing a large conch-shell, to which a reed of about two feet long was fixed; he began in a long tone, without any variation, and afterwards converted it into a kind of musical instrument. Whether the blowing of the conch portended any thing, is not known, but it was never found the messenger of peace.

The length of their canoes appeared to be about thirty feet, and they rose about two feet above the surface of the water, as they floated. The fore part projected a little; the after part rose to the height of two or three feet, with a gradual curve, and, like the upper part of the sides, was carved all over. The rest of the sides were ornamented with flat, white shells, curiously disposed: there were eight men in one of the canoes, and seven in the other.—They were managed with small paddles, whose blades were almost circular; and they sometimes paddled with the two opposite sides so close together, that they appeared to be but one boat; the rowers occasionally turning their faces to the stern, and pulling that way, without paddling the canoes round. Seeing the ships were determined to leave them, they

stood up and repeated something aloud; but whether they were expressing their enmity or friendship was not known. It is certain, however, that they had not any weapons with them; nor could our men with their glasses discover that those on-shore were armed.

Leaving the island, the ships steered to the north with a fresh gale, and at day-break, on the 12th, they perceived the island of Maitea. Otaheite appeared soon after; the point of Oheitepeha Bay bearing west about four leagues distant: they steered for this bay, intending to anchor there, in order to draw some refreshments from the south-east part of the island, before they proceeded to Matavai, where they expected their principal supply: they had a fresh gale till two o'clock in the afternoon, when, at about a league from the bay, the wind suddenly died away: about two hours after they had sudden squalls with rain from the east; and about nine o'clock they were obliged to stand out, and spend the night at sea.

When near the island, several canoes came off to the ship, each conducted by two or three men. But, as they were common fellows, Omai took no particular notice of them, nor they of him: they did not even seem to perceive that he was one of their countrymen, although they conversed with him for some time. At length a chief, whom Captain Cook had known before, named Ootee, and Omai's brother-in-law, who chanced to be now at this corner of the island, and three or four more persons, all of whom knew Omai before he embarked with Captain Furneaux, came on-board: yet there was nothing either tender or striking in their meeting: on the contrary, there seemed to be a perfect indifference on both sides, till Omai, having taken his brother down into the cabin, opened the drawer where he kept his red feathers, and gave him a few. This being presently known among the rest of the natives upon deck, the face of affairs was entirely turned, and Ootee, who would hardly speak to Omai before, now begged that they might be *tayos* (friends), and exchange names. Omai accepted the honour, and confirmed it with a present of red feathers; and Ootee, by way of return, sent ashore for a hog; but it was evident to every one of them, that it was not the man but his property they were in love with. Had he not shewn to them his treasure of red feathers, which is the commodity in greatest estimation at the island, it is doubtful whether they would have bestowed even a cocoa-nut upon him. Such was Omai's first reception among his countrymen; indeed, our officers never expected it would be otherwise; but still they were in hopes, that the valuable cargo of presents, with which the liberality of his friends in England had loaded him, would be the means of raising him into consequence, and of making him respected, and even courted, by the first persons throughout the extent of the Society Islands. This could not but have happened, had he conducted himself with any degree of prudence;

but, instead of that, he paid too little regard to the repeated advice of those who wished him well, and suffered himself to be duped by every designing knave.

The important news of red-feathers being on-board the ships, having been conveyed on-shore by Omai's friends, day had no sooner began to break next morning, than they were surrounded by a multitude of canoes crowded with people bringing hogs and fruit to market. At first, a quantity of feathers, not greater than what might be got from a tom-tit, would purchase a hog of forty or fifty pounds weight. But, as almost every person in the ships was possessed of some of this precious article of trade, it fell in its value above six hundred *per cent.* before night. However, even then, the balance was much in their favour; and red-feathers continued to preserve their superiority over every other commodity. Some of the natives would not part with a hog, unless they received an axe in exchange; and nails, beads, and other trinkets, which, during the former voyages, had so great a run at this island, were now so much despised, that few would deign to look at them.

In the morning of the 13th, Captain Cook came to anchor in a bay called Oheitepeha: soon after, Omai's sister came on-board to see him: and the captain was happy to observe, that, much to the honour of each, their meeting was marked with expressions of the most tender affection: after this moving scene, Omai and the captain went ashore, when the attention of the former was soon drawn to an old woman, the sister of his mother. She was already at his feet, and had bedewed them plentifully with tears of joy.—The captain left him with the old lady, encircled by a number of people, in order to go and take a view of a house and cross erected by the Spaniards. When he returned, he found Omai holding forth to a large company; and it was with some difficulty he could be got away to accompany the captain on-board.—Captain Cook, it seems, had found from the natives, that two Spanish ships from Lima had twice put into Oheitepeha Bay, since his last visit in 1774. They had left some hogs, dogs, goats, a bull, and a ram on-shore: the first time they came they built a house, and left four men behind them, carrying away four of the natives: in about ten months the same ships returned, bringing back two of the islanders, the other two having died at Lima: after a short stay, they took away their own people, but left the house standing. This was situated at a small distance from the beach: the wooden materials of which it was composed, seemed to have been brought, ready prepared, to set up occasionally; for all the planks were numbered. It was divided into two small rooms; and, in the inner one were a bench, a table, a bedstead, some old hats, and other trifles, of which the natives seemed to be very careful, as also of the house itself, which had suffered no damage from the weather, a shed having been built over it. There were scuttles all round, which

l to the repeated
ffered himself to

-board the ships,
nds, day had no
were surrounded
bringing hogs
ers, not greater
urchase a hog of
ry person in the
ticle of trade, it
e night. How-
avour; and red
ver every other
art with a hog,
ails, beads, and
, had so great
that few would

e to anchor in
ster came on-
observe, that,
arked with ex-
noving scene,
ion of the for-
of his mother.
m plentifully
old lady, en-
ake a view of
he returned,
; and it was
ompany the
and from the
vice put into
ad left some
st time they
hem, carry-
s the same
e other two
away their
tuated at a
ls of which
prepared,
bered. It
ne were a
r trifles, of
the house
r, a shed
ud, which

served as air-holes; and perhaps they were also meant to fire from with muskets, if ever it should be found necessary. At some distance stood a wooden cross, on the transverse part of which was cut,

CHRISTUS VINCIT.

And on the perpendicular part was

CAROLUS III. IMPERAT. 1774

On the other side of the post Captain Cook took care to preserve the memory of the prior visits of the English, by inscribing,

GEORGIUS TERTIUS, REX,

Annis 1767,
1769, 1773, 1774, and 1777.

Near the foot of this cross was the grave of the commodore of the two ships, who died here, while they lay in the bay the first time. The Spaniards seemed to have taken great pains to ingratiate themselves with the inhabitants, who, on every occasion, mentioned them with the strongest expressions of esteem and veneration: the former, however, did not succeed in their attempts to depreciate the character of the English. One of the four persons whom they left behind, and whom the natives called Mateema, made himself very popular: he took uncommon pains to study their language, that he might be enabled to impress their minds with the most exalted ideas of the greatness of the Spanish monarchy, and make them think meanly of the English. He even went so far as to assure them, that we no longer existed as an independent nation; that *Pretane* (Britain) was only a small island which the Spaniards had entirely destroyed; and that as for Captain Cook, they had met with him at sea, and with a few shot had sent his ship, with every soul in her to the bottom: all this, and many other improbable falsehoods, did the Spaniards make these people believe. But if Spain had no other views in this expedition than to depreciate the English, she had better have kept her ships at home; for Captain Cook's return to the island (which, of course, was quite unexpected), was considered as a complete refutation of all that Mateema had said.

Waheia doo, sovereign of Tiaraboo, (which was the name of this part of the island) was now absent.—However, he soon after sent a message to notify his arrival, and to desire that the captain would visit him ashore. This was not the same person, though of the same name, with the chief, whom Captain Cook had seen here during his last voyage; but his brother, a boy about ten years old, who had succeeded on the death of the elder Waheia doo, about twenty months before, and was now under the tutorage of a chief, named Etoreo.—The celebrated queen Oberea was dead. Accordingly, Omai and the Captain prepared to make him a formal visit: on this occasion, Omai, assisted by some of his friends, dressed himself, not after the English fashion, nor that of Otaheite, nor that of Tongataboo,

nor in the dress of any country upon earth, but in a strange medley of all that he was possessed of. There was nothing remarkable in this interview, except the information which Captain Cook received, that the Spaniards, when they visited the island, had desired the chiefs not to suffer him to enter Oheitepeha Bay, if he should return again, for that the island belonged to them; "but the person," says Captain Cook, "who addressed me with this information, assured me, that they were so far from paying any regard to this request, that he was authorized now to make a formal surrender of the province of Tiaraboo to me, and of every thing in it; which marks very plainly, that these people are no strangers to the policy of accommodating themselves to present circumstances. At length the young chief was directed by his attendants to come and embrace me: and, by way of confirming this treaty of friendship, we exchanged names. The ceremony being closed, he and his friends accompanied me to dinner.

"Omai had prepared a *maro*, composed of red and yellow feathers, which he intended for Otoo, the king of the whole island; and, considering where we were, it was a present of very great value. I said all that I could to persuade him not to produce it now, wishing him to keep it on-board till an opportunity should offer of presenting it to Otoo with his own hands. But he had too good an opinion of the honesty and fidelity of his countrymen to take my advice. Nothing would serve him, but to carry it ashore on this occasion, and to give it to Waheia-dooa, to be by him forwarded to Otoo, in order to its being added to the royal *maro*. He thought by this management that he should oblige both chiefs, whereas he highly disobliged the one, whose favour was of the most consequence to him, without gaining any reward from the other. What I had foreseen, happened; for Waheia-dooa kept the *maro* himself, and only sent to Otoo a very small piece of feathers, not the twentieth part of what belonged to the magnificent present."

On the 19th, Captain Cook received from the young chief a present of ten or a dozen hogs, some cloth, and a quantity of fruit. In the evening, our men exhibited some fire-works, which both pleased and astonished the numerous spectators. Some of our gentlemen, in their walks, discovered, as they thought, a Roman Catholic chapel. They described the altar which they said they had seen, and every other constituent part of such a place of worship. They mentioned, however, that two persons, who had the care of it, would not permit them to go in; on which account the captain imagined they were mistaken, and had the curiosity to pay a visit to it himself: the supposed chapel happened to be a *toopapaoo*, in which the body of the late Waheia-dooa lay in a kind of state: it was in a pretty large house, enclosed with a low palisade: the *toopapaoo* was remarkably neat, and resembled one of those little awnings over their large

t in a strange
was nothing re-
ion which Cap-
they visited the
o enter Oheite-
land belonged
who addressed
ere so far from
horized now to
boo to me, and
at these people
themselves to
ef was directed
and, by way of
d names. The
mpanied me to

ed and yellow
of the whole
s a present of
ade him not to
ill an opportu-
nis own hands.
and fidelity of
uld serve him,
it to Waheia-
er to its being
agement that
disobliged the
him, without
oreseen, hap-
and only sent
entieth part of

oung chief a
a quantity of
works, which
ators. Some
y thought, a
which they
rt of such a
wo persons,
o go in; on
staken, and
osed chapel
e late Wa-
erge house,
remarkably
their large

canoes: it was hung and covered with cloths and mats of a variety of colours, which had a beautiful effect. One piece of scarlet, broad cloth, of the length of four or five yards, appeared conspicuous among the other ornaments; which had probably been received as a present from the Spaniards. This cloth, and some tassels of leathers, suggested to our gentlemen the idea of a chapel; and their imagination supplied whatever else was wanting to create a resemblance: hearing that the Spaniards had visited this place, might operate on their minds upon this occasion, and add to the probability of its being a chapel. Small offerings of fruits and roots seemed to be daily made at this shrine, some pieces being now quite fresh. These were deposited on a kind of altar, which stood without the palisades; within which they were not permitted to enter. Two men constantly attended here, both night and day; as well to watch over the place, as to dress and undress the *toopapaoo*. When Captain Cook went to survey it, the cloth and its appendages were rolled up; but, at his request, the two attendants placed it in order, but not till after they had dressed themselves in clean, white robes. The chief had been dead about twenty months.

Having provided a fresh supply of water, and finished all the necessary operations, on the 22nd, they brought off the animals from shore, and made ready for sea. While the ships were unmooring, Omai and Captain Cook landed, on the morning of the 23rd, to take leave of the young chief: while they were with him, one of those persons, whom they called *Eatoos*, from a persuasion that they possess the spirit of the divinity, presented himself before them. He had all the appearances of insanity about him; and his only covering was a quantity of plantain-leaves wrapped round his waist: he uttered what he had to say in a low, squeaking voice, so as hardly to be understood. But Omai said he perfectly comprehended him, and that he was advising Waheia doo not to accompany Captain Cook to Matavai, an expedition which he had never known that he intended, nor had the captain ever made such a proposal to him. The *Eatoos* also predicted, that the ships would not arrive that day at Matavai. In this, however, he was mistaken; though appearances, at that time, favoured his assertion, as there was not a single breath of wind in any direction: while he was delivering his prophecy, a heavy shower of rain came on, which occasioned all to run for shelter, except himself, who appeared to disregard it. He continued squeaking about half an hour, and then retired; no attention being paid to what he uttered, though some of the natives laughed at him.

Captain Cook asked the chief, whether he was an *Earce* or a *Toutou*? the answer he received was, that he was *taata eno*, that is, a bad man; and yet, notwithstanding this, and the little notice taken of the mad prophet, superstition so far governs the

natives, that they absolutely believe such persons to be possessed of the spirit of the *Eatooa*. Omai seemed to be well instructed concerning them; he said, that during the fits with which they are seized, they know nobody, and that if any one of them is a man of property, he will then give away every moveable he possesses, if his friends do not put them out of his reach; and, when he recovers, he seems not to have the least remembrance of what he had done during the time the fit was upon him.

Soon after the captain got on-board, a light breeze springing up at east, they got under sail, and the *Resolution* anchored the same evening at Matavai Bay; but the *Discovery* did not get in till the next morning; consequently, the man's prophecy was half fulfilled.

On the 24th of August, Captain Cook left the bay of Oheitepeha, and in the evening, anchored in Matavai Bay, in another part of the island, where he expected his principal supply: here he and Omai had an interview on-shore with Otoo, the king of the whole island. "Omai," says the captain, "had prepared himself for this ceremony, by dressing himself in his very best clothes, and behaved with a great deal of respect and modesty. Nevertheless, very little notice was taken of him. Perhaps envy had some share in producing this cold reception. He made the chief a present of a large piece of red feathers, and about two or three yards of gold cloth; and I gave him a suit of fine linen, a gold laced hat, some tools, and, what was of more value than all the other articles, a quantity of red feathers, and one of the bonnets in use at the Friendly Islands.

"After the hurry of this visit was over, the king and the whole of the royal family accompanied me on-board, followed by several canoes, laden with all kinds of provisions, in quantity sufficient to have served the companies of both ships for a week. Each of the family owned, or pretended to own a part; so that I had a present from every one of them; and every one of them had a separate present in return from me; which was the great object in view. Soon after, the king's mother, who had not been present at the first interview, came on-board, bringing with her a quantity of provisions and cloth, which she divided between me and Omai. For, although he was but little noticed at first by his countrymen, they no sooner gained the knowledge of his riches, than they began to court his friendship. I encouraged this as much as I could; for it was my wish to fix him with Otoo. As I intended to leave all my European animals at this island, I thought he would be able to give some instruction about the management of them, and about their use. Besides, I knew and saw, that the farther he was from his native island, he would be the better respected. But, unfortunately, poor Omai, rejected my advice, and conducted himself in so imprudent a manner, that he soon lost the friendship of Otoo, and of every other person of note in Otaheite. He associated with none but

to be possessed
well instructed
with which they
one of them is a
y moveable he
his reach; and,
t remembrance
upon him.

eeze springing
n anchored the
r did not get in
prophecy was

bay of Oheite-
Bay, in another
l supply: here
oo, the king of
had prepared
his very best
t and modesty.
Perhaps envy
He made the
d about two or
of fine linen, a
value than all
d one of the

king and the
, followed by
, in quantity
s for a week.
part; so that
one of them
as the great
who had not
d, bringing
she divided
ttle noticed
knowledge

I encour-
x him with
nals at this
instruction

Besides,
island, he
por Omai,
prudent a
of every
none but

vagabonds and strangers, whose sole views were to plunder him; and, if I had not interfered, they would not have left him a single article worth the carrying from the island. This necessarily drew upon him the ill-will of the principal chiefs, who found, that they could not procure from any one in the ships such valuable presents as Omai bestowed on the lowest of the people, his companions."

Captain Cook was next engaged in landing the poultry, with which he was to stock the island; they consisted of a peacock and hen, a turkey-cock and hen, a gander and three geese, a drake and four ducks. All these he left at Oparee, in the possession of Otoo; and the geese and the ducks began to breed before he sailed; at Oparee he found a gander, which the natives said was the same that Captain Wallis had given Oberea ten years before, several goats, and the Spanish bull; which latter could have been of no use, if Captain Cook had not arrived, as the Spaniards had left no cows ashore; probably they died in their passage from Lima. Captain Cook sent three cows to this bull; and the bull which he himself had brought, with the horse, and mare, and sheep, he put ashore at Matavai; he likewise planted a piece of ground with several articles very few of which he believed the natives would ever look after. Some melons, potatoes, and two pineapple plants, were in a fair way of succeeding before he left the place; he also planted several shaddock-trees, which he had brought from the Friendly Islands. These, he thought could hardly fail of success, unless their growth should be impeded by the same premature curiosity which destroyed a vine planted by the Spaniards at Oheitepeha. A number of the natives got together, to taste the first fruit it bore; but, as the grapes were still sour, they considered it as little better than poison, and it was unanimously determined to tread it under foot. In that state Omai found it by chance, and was overjoyed at the discovery: for he had a full confidence, that if he had but grapes, he could easily make wine. Accordingly he had several slips cut off from the tree, to carry away with him; and the remainder of it was pruned and put in order. Perhaps, becoming wise by Omai's instructions, they may now suffer the fruit to grow to perfection, and not pass so hasty a sentence upon it again. As Captain Cook intended to continue here a considerable time, they set up the two observatories on Matavai Point; and, adjoining to them, two tents were pitched for the reception of a guard, and of such people as might be left on-shore, in different departments. The command at this station was intrusted to Mr. King, who also attended the astronomical and other observations; while he remained here the crews of both ships were occupied in many necessary operations. The Discovery's main-mast was carried ashore, and made as good as it had ever been. The sails and water-casks were repaired; both the ships were caulked; and the rigging was completely over-hauled; they likewise inspected

the bread which they had on-board in casks, and found that but little of it was damaged.

At Matavai Captain Cook renewed his intercourse with his old friends, whose names are recorded in his account of his second voyage; and, while there, one of the natives, whom the Spaniards had carried with them to Lima, paid him a visit. Though not to be distinguished, in appearance, from the rest of his countrymen, he had not forgot some Spanish words. Among them the most frequent were *Si Sennor*; and when a stranger was introduced to him, he did not fail to rise up and accost him as well as he could.

"We also found here," says Captain Cook, "the young man whom we called Oedidee, but whose real name is Heete-heete. I had carried him from Ulietea in 1773, and brought him back in 1774, after he had visited the Friendly Islands, New Zealand, Easter Island, and the Marqueses, and been on-board my ship, in that extensive navigation, about seven months. He was at least, as tenacious of his good-breeding, as the man who had been at Lima; and *yes, sir, or if you please, sir*, were as frequently repeated by him as *Si Sennor* was by the other. Heete-heete, who is a native of Bolabola, had arrived in Otaheite about three months before, with no other intention, that we could learn, than to gratify his curiosity, or perhaps some other favourite passion; which are very often the only objects of the pursuit of other travelling gentlemen. It was evident, however, that he preferred the modes, and even garb of his countrymen, to ours; for, although I gave him some clothes, which our Admiralty Board had been pleased to send for his use, (to which I added a chest of tools, and a few other articles, as a present from myself), he declined wearing them after a few days. This instance, and that of the person who had been at Lima, may be urged as a proof of the strong propensity natural to man, of returning to habits acquired at an early age, and only interrupted by accident; and, perhaps, it may be concluded, that even Omai, who had imbibed almost the whole English manners, will, in a very short time after our leaving him, like Oedidee, and the visitor of Lima, return to his own native garments."

In the morning of the 27th, a man from Oheitepeha informed them, that two Spanish ships had anchored in that bay the preceding night; and, to confirm this intelligence, he produced some coarse blue cloth, which, he said, he had got out of one of the ships. He further said, that Mateema, was in one of the ships: and, that they would come to Matavai in two or three days. These, and some other circumstances which he mentioned, gave the story so much the appearance of truth, that the commodore dispatched Lieutenant Williamson in a boat, to look into Oheitepeha Bay: and, in the mean time, both of their ships were put in a posture of defence; for, although England

and Spain were at peace when he left England, he did not know but that a different scene might by this time have opened. Upon inquiry, however, they had reason to imagine, that the narrator of the story had imposed upon them; and this was put beyond all doubt, when Mr. Williamson returned the day following, who made his report to Captain Cook, that he had been at Oheitepeha, and found that no ships were there at present nor had any been there since he left it. The people of this part of the island, where they now were stationed, told them, indeed, at first, that it was a fiction invented by those of Tiaraboo. But what view they could have, he could not conceive, unless they supposed that the report would induce them to quit the island, and thus deprive the inhabitants of Otaheite-nooe of the advantages they might otherwise reap, from our ships remaining there; the natives of the two parts of the island being inveterate enemies to each other. Since they arrived at Matavai, the weather had been unsettled till the 29th; before which day, our officers were unable to get equal altitudes of the sun for ascertaining the going of the time-keeper. The caulking, and other repairs of the ships, were also retarded by the same cause. In the evening of this day, the islanders made a precipitate retreat, both from our land station, and from on-board the ships, and it was conjectured, that this arose from their knowing that some theft had been committed, and apprehending punishment on that account. At length, the whole affair became known, one of the surgeon's mates had made an excursion into the country to purchase curiosities, and had taken with him four hatchets, for the purpose of exchange. Having been so imprudent, as to employ a native to carry them, the fellow took an opportunity of running off with so valuable a prize. This was the reason of the sudden flight, in which Otoo himself, and all his family, had joined; and, it was with difficulty that the captain stopped them, after following them for the space of two or three miles. As he had determined to take no measures for the recovery of the hatchets, that his people for the future might be more upon their guard against such negligence, every thing quickly resumed its former tranquillity.

The next morning, some messengers arrived from Eimeo, with intelligence, that the people of that island were in arms; and, that Otoo's partizans there, had been obliged by the opposite party, to retreat to the mountains. The quarrel between the two islands, which began in 1774, had partly subsisted ever since. A formidable armament had sailed, soon after Captain Cook left Otaheite, in his last voyage; but, the mal-contents of Eimeo, had made so gallant a resistance, that the fleet had returned without success; and now, another expedition was deemed necessary. On the arrival of these messengers, the chiefs assembled at Otoo's house, where the captain actually was at that time, and had the honour of being admitted into their

council. One of the messengers, opened the business with a speech of considerable length, the purport of which was, to shew the situation of affairs at Eimeo, and to excite the Otaheitean chiefs to arms on the occasion. This opinion was opposed by others, who were against commencing hostilities; and the debate, was for some time carried on with great order and decorum. At length, however, they became very tumultuous, and the captain began to expect, that their meeting would conclude like a Polish diet. But the contending chiefs cooled, as fast as they grew warm, and order was speedily restored. In the end, the party for war prevailed; and, it was resolved, though not unanimously, that a strong force should be sent to Eimeo. Otoo, said very little during the whole debate. Those of the council, who were inclinable for war, applied to the captain for his assistance: and all of them, were desirous of knowing, what part he would take. Omai was sent for, to act as interpreter; but, as he could not be found, the captain being under the necessity of speaking for himself, told them, as well as he could, that he was not perfectly acquainted with the dispute, and as the natives of Eimeo, had never given him the least cause of offence, he could not think of engaging in hostilities against them. With this declaration, they either were, or appeared to be satisfied. The council was then dissolved; but, before the captain retired, Otoo desired him to come again in the afternoon, and bring Omai with him.

A party of our men, accordingly waited upon him, at the appointed time; and, he conducted them to his father, in whose presence, the dispute with Eimeo was again discussed. The commodore, being very desirous of effecting an accommodation, sounded the old chief on that subject; but he was deaf to any such proposal, and fully determined to carry on hostilities. On our officers inquiring into the cause of the war, they were informed, that several years ago, a brother of Waheia doo, of Tiaraboo, was sent to Eimeo, at the desire of Maheine, a popular chief of that island, to be their king: but, he had not been there many days, before Maheine, in opposition to Tierataboonooe, death, set up for himself, in opposition to Tierataboonooe, nephew of the deceased, who now became the lawful heir, or, perhaps, had been appointed by the people of Otaheite, to succeed to the government, on the death of the other.

Towha, who is related to Otoo, and the chief of the district of Tettaha, and who had been commander in chief of the armament sent against Eimeo, in 1774, happened not to be at Matavai at this time: and therefore, was not present at these consultations. It appeared, however, that he was no stranger to what was transacted; and, that he entered into the affair with great eagerness and spirit. For, on the 1st of September, a messenger arrived from him to acquaint Otoo, that he had killed a man, to be sacrificed to the *Eatooa*, with the view of imploring the assist-

ance of the deity against Eimeo. This ceremony, was to be performed at the great *morai*, at Attahooroo; and, Otoo's presence was necessary on the occasion. Captain Cook, was desirous of being present at this solemnity, and therefore, proposed to Otoo, that he might be permitted to accompany him. To this, the king readily consented; and they immediately set out in the captain's boat, with his old friends Potatou, Mr. Anderson, and Mr. Webber, while Omai followed them in a canoe. In their way, they landed upon a small island, lying off Tettaha, where they found Towha and his attendants. After a little conversation between the chiefs, on the subject of the war, Towha addressed himself to the captain, soliciting his assistance. When he excused himself, Towha seemed displeased, thinking it rather extraordinary, that one who had constantly declared himself the friend of their island, should now refuse to fight against its enemies. Before they parted, Towha gave to Otoo two or three red feathers, tied up in a tuft: our party then re-embarked, having taken on-board a priest, who was to assist at the solemnity.

As soon as they landed at Attahooroo, which was about two o'clock, Otoo desired, that the sailors might be ordered to continue in the boat; and, that Captain Cook, Mr. Anderson, and Mr. Webber, would take off their hats, as soon as they should come to the *morai*, to which they immediately proceeded, attended by numbers of men, and some boys; but, not one woman was present. They found four priests, with their assistants, waiting for them. The dead body, or sacrifice, was in a small canoe, that lay on the beach, fronting the *morai*. Two of the priests, with several of their attendants, were sitting by the canoe, the others at the *morai*. Our gentlemen stopped at the distance of twenty or thirty paces from the priests. Here, Otoo placed himself; our gentlemen, and a few others, standing by him, while the majority of the people, remained at a greater distance.

The ceremonies now commenced; one of the attendants of the priests, brought a young plantain-tree, and laid it down before the king: another approached, bearing a small tuft of red feathers, twisted on some fibres of the cocoa-nut husk, with which he touched one of Otoo's feet, and afterwards retired with it to his companions; one of the priests, who was seated at the *morai*, now began a long prayer; and, at particular times, sent down young plantain-trees, which were placed upon the sacrifice. During this prayer, an islander, who stood by the officiating priest, held in his hands two bundles, in one of which, as they afterwards found, was the royal *maro*; and the other, if we may be allowed the expression, was the ark of the *Eatooa*. The prayer being finished, the priests at the *morai*, with their assistants, went and sat down by those who were upon the beach, carrying the two bundles with them. They here renewed their prayers, during which the plantain-trees were taken, one by one, at various times, from off the dead body, which being

wrapped up in cocoa-leaves and small branches, was now taken out of the canoe, and laid upon the beach. The priests placed themselves around it, some standing and others sitting; and one, or more of them, repeated sentences for about ten minutes; the body was now stripped of the leaves and branches, and placed parallel with the sea-shore. Then one of the priests, standing at the feet of the corpse, pronounced a long prayer, which he was occasionally joined by the others, each of them holding a tuft of red feathers in his hand. During this prayer, some hair was pulled off the head of the intended sacrifice, and the left eye was taken out; both which, being wrapped up in a green leaf, were presented to the king; who, however, did not touch them, but gave, to the man who presented them, the tuft of red feathers, which he had received from Towha. This, with the eye and hair, was taken to the priests. Not long after, his majesty sent them another piece of feathers. In the course of this last ceremony, a king-fisher, making a noise in the trees, Otoo turned to Captain Cook, saying, "That is the *Eatooa*;" and seemed to consider it as a favourable prognostic.

The corpse was then carried a little way, and laid under a tree; near which was fixed three thin pieces of wood variously carved; the bundles of cloth were placed on a part of the *morai*; and the tufts of red feathers were laid at the feet of the dead body, round which the priests stationed themselves; and our gentlemen were permitted to go as near as they pleased. He, who seemed to be their chief priest, spoke for about a quarter of an hour, with different tones and gestures; sometimes appearing to expostulate with the deceased; at other times asking several questions; then, making various demands, as if the dead person either had power himself, or interest with the deity, to engage him to grant such requests; among which, he desired him to deliver Eimeo, Maheine, its chief, the women, hogs, and other things of the island, into their hands; which was, indeed, the express object of the sacrifice. He then prayed, near a half an hour, in a whining tone, and two other priests joined in the prayer, in the course of which, a priest plucked some more hair from the head of the corpse, and put it upon one of the bundles. The chief priest now prayed alone, holding in his hand the feathers received from Towha. Having finished, he gave them to another priest, who prayed in like manner; then, all the tufts of feathers were placed upon the bundles of cloth, which concluded the ceremony at this place.

The dead body was now carried to the most conspicuous part of the *morai*, with the feathers, and the two bundles of cloth, while the drums beat slowly. The feathers and bundles were laid against the pile of stones, and the body at the foot of them. The priests having again seated themselves round the corpse, renewed their prayers, while some of their assistants dug a hole about the depth of two feet, into which they threw the victim

es, was now taken
The priests placed
thers sitting; and
for about ten mi-
ves and branches,
one of the priests,
a long prayer, in
ers, each of them
uring this prayer,
ded sacrifice, and
wrapped up in a
however, did not
ed them, the tuft
a Towha. This,
Not long after,
In the course
oise in the trees,
is the *Eatooa* ;”
ostic.

aid under a tree;
ariously carved;
he *morai* ; and,
the dead body,
and our gentle-
sed. He, who
a quarter of an
mes appearing
asking several
he dead person
city, to engage
desired him to
ogs, and other
s, indeed, the
near a half an
joined in the
ome more hair
f the bundles.
his hand the
ne gave them
, all the tufts
, which con-

picuous part
les of cloth,
undles were
oot of them.
the corpse,
dug a hole
the victim

and covered it over with stones and earth. While they were committing the body to the grave, a boy squeaked aloud, upon which Omai said to Captain Cook, that it was the *Eatooa*. A fire having been made in the mean time, a lean, half-starved dog was produced, and killed by twisting his neck. The hair was then singed off, and the entrails being taken out, were thrown into the fire, where they were left to be consumed; but the kidney, heart, and liver, were only roasted, by being put on heated stones; and the carcase of the dog, after being rubbed over with the blood, was, with the liver, &c. laid down before the priests, who were seated round the grave, praying. They, for some time, uttered ejaculations over the dog, while two men, at intervals, beat very loud on two drums; and a boy screamed in a loud, shrill voice, three times. This, they said, was to invite the *Eatooa* to feast on the banquet that they had provided for him. When the priests had finished their prayers, the body, heart, liver, &c. of the dog, were placed on a *whatta*, or scaffold, about six feet in height, on which lay the remains of two other dogs, and of two pigs, which had been lately sacrificed: the priests and attendants now give a kind of shout, which put an end to the ceremonies at present. The evening being arrived, our gentlemen were conducted to a house belonging to Potatou, where they were entertained and lodged for the night. Having been informed that the religious rites were to be renewed the next morning, they would not quit the place while any thing remained to be seen. Some of them repaired to the scene of action early in the morning, and soon afterwards, a pig was sacrificed, and laid upon the same scaffold with the others. About eight o'clock, Otoo took the party again to the *morai*, where the priests, and a great multitude of people, were by this time assembled. The two bundles occupied the place where they had been deposited the preceding evening; the two drums were in the front of the *morai*, and the priests were stationed beyond them. The king placed himself between the drums, and desired Captain Cook to stand by him.

The ceremony of this day began with bringing a young plantain-tree, and placing it at his majesty's feet. A prayer was then repeated by the priests, who held in their hands several tufts of red feathers, and also a plume of ostrich feathers, which the commodore presented to Otoo on his first arrival. When the priests had ended the prayer, they changed their station, and placed themselves between our gentlemen and the *morai*. One of them, the same who had performed the principal part on the preceding day, began another prayer, which continued near half an hour. During this prayer, the tufts of red feathers were put, one by one, upon the ark of the *Eatooa*. Not long after, four pigs were produced, one of which was immediately killed, and the three others were taken to a neighbouring sty.

One of the bundles was now untied; and it was found to

contain the *maro*, with which the Otaheiteans invest their kings; when taken out of the cloth, it was spread on the ground, at full length, before the priests. It is a girdle about fifteen feet in length, and one foot and a quarter in breadth, and is probably put on in the same manner as the common *maro*, or piece of cloth, used by these islanders to wrap round the waist. It was ornamented with yellow and red feathers: but principally with the former. One end of it was bordered with eight pieces, about the size and figure of a horse-shoe, whose edges were fringed with black feathers. The other end was forked, having the points of various lengths; the feathers were ranged in two rows, in square compartments, and produced a pleasing effect. They had been first fixed upon some of the cloth of the island, and then sewed to the upper end of the pendent which Captain Wallis had left flying on the shore, the first time of his arrival at Matavai. The priests pronounced a long prayer, relative to this part of the ceremony; and after it was ended, the badge of royalty was folded up with great care, and put into the cloth.

The other bundle, which we have already mentioned, under the name of the ark, was next opened at one end; but our party were not permitted to approach near enough to examine its mysterious contents. The intelligence they obtained respecting it, was, that the *Eatooa*, (or rather what is supposed to represent him) was concealed in it. This sacred repository is composed of the twisted fibres of the husk of the cocoa-nut; and its figure is roundish, with one end considerably thicker than the other.

The pig that had been killed, was by this time cleaned, and its entrails taken out; these happened to have many of those convulsive motions which frequently appear in different parts, when an animal is killed; and this was considered as a very favourable omen to the intended expedition. After being exposed for some time, the entrails were carried and laid down before the priests. While one of them prayed, another closely inspected the entrails, and continued turning them gently with a stick. Having been sufficiently examined, they were then thrown into the fire. The sacrificed pig, and its liver, heart, &c. were now put upon the scaffold where the dog had been deposited; and then all the feathers, except the ostrich plume, being closed in the ark, an end was put to the whole solemnity.

Four double canoes remained upon the beach, all the morning, before the place of sacrifice: a small platform, covered with palm-leaves, fastened in mysterious knots, was fixed on the fore-part of each of these canoes; and this also is called a *morai*. Some plantains, cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, fish, and other articles, lay upon each of these naval *morais*. The natives said that they belong to the *Eatooa*, and that they were to attend the fleet that was to be sent out against Eimeo.

The unfortunate victim, offered on this occasion, was, to appearance, a middle-aged man, and one of the lowest class of

the people, but it did not appear that they had fixed upon him on account of his having committed any particular crime that deserved death. It is certain, however, that they usually select such guilty persons for their sacrifices, or else, vagabonds, who have no visible way of procuring an honest livelihood. Our gentlemen having examined the body of the unhappy sufferer, now offered up to the object of these people's worship, observed, that it was bloody about the head and face, and much bruised upon the right temple, which denoted the manner in which he had been killed. And they were informed that he had been knocked on the head with a stone: the wretches who are destined to suffer on these occasions, are never previously apprized of their fate. Whenever any one of the principal chiefs deems a human sacrifice necessary, on any great emergency, he fixes upon the victim, and then dispatches some of his trusty servants, who fall upon him suddenly, and either stone him to death, or beat out his brains with a club. The sovereign is next acquainted with it, whose presence is said to be absolutely requisite at the solemn rites that follow; and, on the late occasion, Otoo bore a capital part. The solemnity itself is termed *Poore Erce*, or the prayer of the chief; and the victim is called *Tuatuboo*, or consecrated man.

The *morai*, where the late sacrifice was offered, is always appropriated for the burial of the king of the whole island, and likewise of his family, and some other persons of distinguished rank. It differs little, except in extent, from the common *morais*. Its principal part is a large oblong pile of stones, about thirteen feet in height, and contracted towards the top, with a quadrangular area on each side, loosely paved with pebbles, under which the bones of the chiefs are deposited. Not far from the end nearest the sea is the place of sacrifice, where is a very large *whatta*, or scaffold, on which the offerings of fruits, and other vegetables are placed, but the animals are laid on a smaller one, and the human sacrifices are interred under the pavement. There are several relics scattered about the place, such as small stones raised in various parts of the pavement, some with bits of cloth fastened round them, others entirely covered with it; and upon the side of the large pile fronting the area, are a great number of pieces of carved wood, in which their gods are supposed to reside occasionally. There is a heap of stones at one end of the large scaffold, with a sort of platform on one side. On this they deposit all the skulls of the human sacrifices, which they take up after they have remained under ground for some months. Just above them, many of the carved pieces of wood are placed; and here the *maro*, and the other bundle, supposed to contain the god *Ooro*, were laid during the celebration of the late solemn rites.

It is probable that this barbarous custom of offering human victims prevails in all, or most of the islands of the Pacific

Ocean, however distant from each other some of them may be. And though we should suppose that not more than one person is sacrificed at one time, either at Otaheite, or the other islands, yet these occasions in all probability, occur so frequently, as to make a terrible havoc of the human species; for Captain Cook reckoned no less than forty-nine skulls of former victims lying before the *morai*, at Attahooroo: and as none of those skulls appeared to have suffered any considerable change or decay from the weather, it may be inferred, that but a short time had elapsed since these victims had been offered. This horrid practice, though no consideration whatever can make it cease to be detestable, might, perhaps, be thought less detrimental, in some respects, if it contributed to impress any awe for the Deity, or veneration for religion, upon the minds of the spectators.—But this was so far from being the case on the late occasion, that though a vast multitude of people had assembled at the *morai*, they showed very little reverence for what was transacting. And Omai happening to arrive after the ceremonies had begun, many of the islanders thronged round him, and were engaged for the remaining part of the time in making him recount some of his adventures, to which they listened with great eagerness of attention, regardless of the solemn offices which their priests were then performing. Indeed the priests themselves, except the one who sustained the principal part, either from their being familiarized to such objects, or from their reposing no great degree of confidence in the efficacy of their religious institutions, maintained very little of that solemnity which is necessary to give to acts of devotion their proper effect. Their habit was but an ordinary one; they conversed together with great familiarity; and the only attempt they made to preserve decorum, was by exerting their authority, to prevent the populace from encroaching on the very spot where the rites were performed, and to suffer our gentlemen, as strangers, to come forward. They were, however, very candid in the answers which they gave to any interrogatories that were put to them with regard to this inhuman institution. And, particularly, on being asked, what the design of it was, they replied, that it was an ancient custom, and was highly agreeable to their god, who came and fed upon the sacrifices; in consequence of which, he granted their petitions. It was then objected, that he certainly did not feed on these, as he was neither observed to do it, nor were the bodies of the sacrificed animals soon consumed; and that as to the corpse of a human victim, they prevented his feeding on that, by interring it. In answer to these objections, they gave it as their opinion, that he came in the night, invisibly, and fed only on the soul, or immaterial part, which, (these people say) remains about the place of sacrifice, till the carcase of the victim is totally wasted by putrefaction.

Human sacrifices are not the only barbarous custom that still prevails amongst the inhabitants of Otaheite, though, in many

other respects, they have emerged from the brutal manners of savage life. Besides cutting out the jaw bones of their enemies slain in battle, which they carry about with them as trophies, they, in some measure, offer up their bodies to the *Eatooa*. Soon after an engagement, in which they have come off victorious, they collect all the dead, and bring them to the *morai*, where, with great form and ceremony, they dig a large hole, and bury them all in it, as so many offerings to their divinities.

They treat in a different manner their own chiefs who fall in battle, their late king Tootaha, Toubourai-tamaide, and another chief, who were all slain in an engagement with those of Tiara-boo, were brought to the *morai* at Atahooroo. There the priests cut out their bowels before the great altar; and their dead bodies were afterwards interred in three different places, near the great pile of stones above mentioned; and the common men who lost their lives in the battle, were all buried in one hole, at the foot of the same pile. This was performed the day after the battle with much pomp and formality, amidst a numerous concourse of people, as a thanksgiving offered to the deity for the victory they had obtained the preceding day. The vanquished, in the mean time, had taken refuge in the mountains, where they remained upwards of a week, till the fury of the victors began to abate. A treaty was then set on foot, by which it was agreed, that Otoo should be proclaimed king of the whole island; and the solemnity of investing him with the *maro*, or badge of royalty, was performed at the *morai*, with great magnificence.

At the close of the very extraordinary scene exhibited at the *morai*, the party embarked about twelve o'clock, in order to return to Matavai; and in their way, paid a visit to Towha, who had continued in the little island, where they met him the preceding day. Some conversation about public affairs passed between Otoo and him; and the latter entreated Captain Cook, once more, to join them as an ally in their war against Eimeo. By his positive refusal, he entirely lost the good opinion of this chief.

Before they separated, he interrogated our gentlemen concerning the solemnity at which they had been present; and asked particularly, if it answered their expectations; what opinion they entertained of its efficacy; and whether such acts of worship were frequent in their own country? They had been silent during the celebration of the horrid ceremony; but as soon as it was completed, freely expressed their sentiments upon the subject to Otoo and his attendants; consequently Captain Cook did not conceal his detestation of it in this conversation with Towha. Exclusive of the barbarity of the bloody custom, he urged the unreasonableness of it; alleging, that such a sacrifice, instead of making the *Eatooa* propitious to their nation, would excite his vengeance; and that, from this very circumstance, he concluded that their intended expedition against Maheine would

be unsuccessful. This was proceeding to great lengths upon conjecture; but there was little danger of being mistaken; for, respecting this war, there were three parties in the island, one violent for it, another perfectly indifferent about it, and the third avowed supporters of Maheine and his cause. Under these circumstances, it was not probable that such a plan of military operations would be settled as could ensure success. Omai acted as interpreter, in conveying the captain's sentiments to Towha, on the subject of the late horrid sacrifice; and he supported his arguments with such spirit, that the chief appeared to be extremely angry; especially on being informed, that if he had taken away the life of any man in England, as he had done here, his rank would not have protected him from an ignominious death. Upon this he exclaimed, *maeno! maeno!* (vile! vile!) and would not hear a syllable more about it. Many of the natives were present at this debate; particularly the servants and attendants of Towha; and when Omai mentioned the punishment that would in England be inflicted upon the greatest man, if he dared to kill the meanest servant, they listened very attentively; and, perhaps, on this subject they thought differently from their master.

Leaving Towha, our gentlemen proceeded to Oparee, where Otoo solicited them to pass the night; they landed in the evening; and, on their way to his habitation, had an opportunity of observing how these people amuse themselves in their private *heevas*. They saw about a hundred of them sitting in a house; in the midst of whom were two women, and an old man behind each of them, beating gently upon a drum; and the women at intervals, singing with great softness and delicacy: the assembly were very attentive, and seemed, as it were, absorbed in the pleasure the music gave them; few of them taking any notice of the strangers, and the performers never once ceasing. When the party arrived at Otoo's house, it was almost dark. Here they were entertained with one of their public *heevas* or plays, in which his three sisters represented the principal characters: this they call a *heeva raa*, and no person is suffered to enter the house or *area* where it is exhibited; this is always the case when the royal sisters are the performers. Their dress, on this occasion was truly elegant and picturesque, and they acquitted themselves in a very distinguished manner; though some comic interludes, wherein four men were the performers, seemed to afford greater entertainment to the audience, which was numerous. The captain and his companions proceeded the next morning to Matavai, leaving Otoo at Oparee; but his mother, sisters, and many other women attended the captain on-board, and Otoo followed a short time after.

While Otoo and Captain Cook had been absent from the ships, they had been sparingly supplied with fruit, and had not many visitors: after their return, our crews had abundance of

company and provisions. On the 4th, a party of them, among whom was Otoo, dined ashore with Omai, who provided excellent fare, consisting of fish, fowls, pork, and puddings. Dinner being over, Captain Cook accompanied Otoo back to his dwelling, where he found all his servants busy in getting a quantity of provisions ready for him. Amongst other articles there was a large hog, which they killed in his presence: a large pudding, the whole process in making which, the captain saw. It was composed of bread-fruit, plantains, taro, and palm, or *pandanus*' nuts, each rasped, scraped, or beat up very fine, and baked by itself. A quantity of the juice of cocoa-nut kernels was put into a kind of wooden tray. The other articles, hot from the oven, were put into this vessel, together with some hot stones, in order to make the contents simmer. Three or four persons were employed in stirring up the several ingredients, till they were perfectly incorporated, and the juice of the cocoa-nut was turned to oil; so that the whole mass, at last, was nearly of the consistency of a hasty-pudding. The hog being baked, and the pudding being made, they, together with two living hogs, some bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts, were sent on-board the captain's ship in a canoe, followed by him and all the royal family.

A young ram of the Cape breed, that had been lambed, and carefully brought up on-board Captain Cook's ship, was killed by a dog the following day. This was the more to be regretted, as it was the only one of that breed that they had; and only one of the English breed was now remaining.

On the 7th, in the evening, our men exhibited some fire-works before a vast concourse of people, some of whom were highly entertained, but the greater number were much terrified with the exhibition; insomuch, that they could hardly be prevailed on to keep together, to see the whole of the entertainment. What concluded the business was a table-rocket. It flew off the table, and dispersed the whole crowd in an instant; even the most resolute amongst them now fled with precipitation.

"On the 8th of September," says Captain Cook, "a party of us dined with our former shipmate Oedidee, on fish and pork. The hog weighed about thirty pounds; and it may be worth mentioning, that it was alive, dressed, and brought upon the table within the hour. We had but just dined, when Otoo came and asked me if my belly was full? On my answering in the affirmative, he said, 'Then come along with me.' I accordingly went with him to his father's, where I found some people employed in dressing two girls with a prodigious quantity of fine cloth, after a very singular fashion. The one end of each piece of cloth, of which there were a good many, was held up over the heads of the girls, while the remainder was wrapped round their bodies under the arm-pits; then the upper ends were let fall, and hung down in folds to the ground, over the other, so as to bear some resemblance to a circular hoop petticoat. Afterward,

round the outside of all, were wrapped several pieces of differently-coloured cloth, which considerably increased the size, so that it was not less than five or six yards in circuit, and the weight of this singular attire was as much as the poor girls could support. To each were hung two *toames*, or breast-plates, by way of enriching the whole, and giving it a picturesque appearance. Thus equipped, they were conducted on-board the ship, together with several hogs, and a quantity of fruit, which, with the cloth, was a present to me from Otoo's father. Persons of either sex, dressed in this manner, are called *atee*; but I believe it is never practised, except when large presents of cloth are to be made. At least I never saw it practised upon any other occasion; nor, indeed, had I ever such a present before; but, both Captain Clerke and I had cloth given to us afterward, thus wrapped round the bearers."

The next day Captain Cook received a present of five hogs, and some fruit from Otoo; and one hog and some fruit from each of his sisters: other provisions were also in great plenty: great quantities of mackerel had been caught here by the natives for two or three successive days; some of which were sold on-board the ships.

Otoo was equally attentive to supply the wants of the crews, and contribute to their amusement. On the 10th, he treated a party of them at Oparee with a play, in which his three sisters were the performers, and their dresses were new and elegant, much more so than they had met with in any of these islands.

The principal object, however, that the captain had now in view in going to Oparee, was to see an embalmed corpse near the residence of Otoo. "On inquiry," says he, "I found it to be the remains of Tee, a chief well known to me when I was at this island during my last voyage. It was lying in a *toopapaoo*, more elegantly constructed than their common ones. It was in a pretty large house, enclosed with a low palisade. It resembled one of those little houses or awnings, belonging to their large canoes. When we arrived at the place, the body was under cover, and wrapped up in cloth within the *toopapaoo*; but, at my desire, the man who had the care of it brought it out, and laid it upon a kind of bier, in such a manner that we had as full a view of it as we could wish; but we were not allowed to go within the pales that enclosed the *toopapaoo*. After he had thus exhibited the corpse, he hung the place with mats and cloth, so disposed as to produce a very pretty effect. We found the body not only entire in every part; but, what surprised us much more, was, that putrefaction seemed scarcely to be begun, as there was not the least disagreeable smell proceeding from it; though the climate is one of the hottest, and Tee had been dead above four months. The only remarkable alteration that happened, was a shrinking of the muscular parts and eyes; but the hair and nails were in their original state, and still adhered firmly; and the several

pieces of differ-
ed the size, so
ircuit, and the
poor girls could
breast-plates, by
resque appear-
board the ship,
uit, which, with
r. Persons of
; but I believe
s of cloth are to
n any other oc-
nt before; but,
afterward, thus

nt of five hogs,
ome fruit from
n great plenty:
e by the natives
were sold on-

s of the crews,
h, he treated a
is three sisters
w and elegant,
ese islands.

ad now in view
e near the resi-
it to be the res-
s at this island
more elegantly
a pretty large
d one of those
noes. When
and wrapped
sire, the man
pon a kind of
w of it as ve
he pales that
d the corpse,
d as to pro-
t only entire
e, was, that
was not the
the climate
our months.
a shrinking
ails were in
the several

Preserved Body of a Dead Chief at Oranieto.



r
w
t
A
w
a
r
al
g
fic
T
pr
ro
be
of
be
da
of
aft
C
dis
hon
mo
the
bef
he
prop
bod
daily
nativ
was

joints were quite pliable, or in that kind of relaxed state which happens to persons who faint suddenly. Such were Mr. Anderson's remarks to me, who also told me, that on his inquiring into the method of effecting this preservation of their dead bodies, he had been informed, that soon after their death they had been disembowelled, by drawing the intestines, and other *viscera*, out at the *anus*; and the whole cavity is then filled or stuffed with cloth introduced through the same part; that when any moisture appeared on the skin, it was carefully dried up, and the bodies afterwards rubbed all over with a large quantity of perfumed cocoa-nut oil; which being frequently repeated, preserved them a great many months; but that at last they gradually moulder away. This was the information Mr. Anderson received; for my own part, I could not learn any more about their mode of operation than what Omai told me, who said, that they made use of the juice of a plant which grows amongst the mountains, of cocoa-nut oil, and of frequent washing with seawater. I was also told, that the bodies of all their great men who die a natural death, are preserved in this manner; and that they expose them to public view for a very considerable time after. At first they are laid out every day when it does not rain; afterward, the intervals become greater and greater; and at last they are seldom to be seen."

They quitted Oparee in the evening, leaving Otoo and all the royal family; the captain saw none of them till the 12th; when all, except the chief himself, honoured him with a visit: he was gone, they said, to Attahooroo, to assist at another human sacrifice, sent by the chief of Tiaraboo to be offered up at the *morai*. This second instance, within so short a period, was a melancholy proof that the victims of this bloody superstition are very numerous amongst this humane people. The captain would have been present at this sacrifice also, had he been earlier informed of it, but now it was too late. From the same cause he missed being present at a public transaction at Oparee the preceding day, when Otoo, with great solemnity, restored to the adherents of the late king Tootaha, the lands and possessions of which, after his death, they had been deprived.

Otoo returned the next evening from exercising this most disagreeable of his royal duties; and, the next day, being honoured with his company, the Captains Cook and Clerke mounted on horseback, and rode round the plain of Matavai, to the astonishment of a vast train of spectators. Once or twice before this, Omai had, indeed, attempted to get on a horse, but he had as often fallen off before he could contrive to seat himself properly; this was, therefore, the first time they had seen any body on horseback; what the captains had begun, was repeated daily by one or other of our people; and yet the curiosity of the natives continued unabated. After they had seen the use that was made of these animals, they were greatly delighted with

them; and Captain Cook was of opinion, that they conveyed to them a better idea of the greatness of other nations, than all the novelties that their European visitors had carried amongst them.

The next day Etary, or Olla, the god of Bolabola, removed from the neighbourhood of Matavai to Oparee, attended by several sailing canoes. Otoo, they were told, did not approve of his being so near their station, where his people could more conveniently invade their property; Otoo, it must be acknowledged, took every prudent method to prevent thefts and robberies, and it was principally owing to his regulations that so few were committed. He had erected a small house or two behind their post; and two others near the tents between the river and the sea. Some of his own people continually kept watch in all these places; and, as his father usually resided on Matavai Point, our men were in a manner surrounded by them, who not only defended them in the night from thieves, but, they had an opportunity of observing every thing that passed in the day; and were ready to receive contributions from such girls as were privately connected with our people, which was usually done every morning; so that the measures taken by him to secure their safety, answered the more essential purpose of enlarging his own profits.

Otoo acquainted Captain Cook that his presence was required at Oparee, where an audience was to be given to the great personage from Bolabola, and begged he would accompany him thither: the captain readily consented, expecting to meet with something deserving his notice; accordingly, they set out on the 16th, attended by Mr. Anderson. Nothing, however, occurred that was interesting or curious; Etary and his followers presented some coarse cloth and hogs to Otoo, with some ceremony, and a set speech. After this a consultation was held between them and some other chiefs about their expedition to Eimeo; Etary at first disapproved of it; but, his objections were at length over-ruled. It appeared, indeed, the next day, that it was too late to deliberate upon this business; for, in the evening, a messenger arrived with intelligence, that there had been some skirmishes, but that the loss or advantage on either side was inconsiderable.

Captain Cook, Mr. Anderson, and Omai, in the morning of the 19th, went again to Oparee, accompanied by Otoo, taking with them the sheep which the captain intended to leave upon the island; they consisted of an English ram and ewe, and three Cape ewes; all which he made a present of to Otoo. All the three cows had taken the bull; he, therefore, thought it advisable to divide them, and carry some to Ulietea. With this view he ordered them to be brought before him, and proposed to Etary, that if he would leave his bull with Otoo, he should have his and one of the cows; to this proposal Etary at first started

some objections, but at last agreed to it: however, as the cattle were putting into the boat, one of Etary's followers opposed the making any exchange whatever.

The captain, upon this, suspecting that Etary had agreed to the arrangement, for the present, only to please him, dropped the idea of an exchange, and finally determined to leave them all with Otoo; whom he strictly enjoined not to suffer them to be removed from Oparee, till he should have got a stock of young ones; which he might then dispose of to his friends, or send to the neighbouring islands. This matter being settled, our gentlemen left Etary and his party, and attended Otoo to another place not far distant, where they found the servants of a chief waiting with a hog, a pig, and a dog, as a present from their master to the king: these were delivered with the usual ceremonies, and a harangue, in which the speaker inquired after the health of Otoo and of his principal people. This compliment was re-echoed in the name of Otoo, by one of his ministers; and then the dispute with Eimeo was formally discussed: the deputies of this chief were advocates for prosecuting the war with vigour, advising Otoo to offer a human sacrifice on the occasion; but a chief who constantly attended the person of Otoo opposed it, seemingly with great strength of argument. The captain was now confirmed in his opinion, that Otoo never entered heartily into the spirit of this war; he received repeated messages from Towha, urging him to hasten to his assistance. Having dined with Otoo, our party returned to Matavai, leaving him at Oparee: this day and the 19th, they were very sparingly supplied with fruit; Otoo being informed of this, he and his brother, who had particularly attached himself to Captain Clerke, came from Oparee with a large supply for both ships: all the royal family came the next day with presents, so that they now had more provisions than they could consume. The water being all on-board, and every thing put in order, the captain began to think of quitting the island, that he might have sufficient time for visiting others in this neighbourhood. They therefore removed their observatories and instruments from the shore, and bent the sails.

Early the next morning, Otoo came on-board to inform Captain Cook, that the war canoes of Matavai, and of three other districts, were going to join those belonging to Oparee and that part of the island, and that there would be a general review there. The squadron of Matavai was soon after in motion; and, after parading for some time about the bay, assembled ashore near the middle of it. Captain Cook now went in his boat to take a survey of them.

What they call their war-canoes, which are those with stages on which they fight, amount to about sixty in number; there are nearly as many more of a smaller size. The captain was ready to have attended them to Oparee; but the chiefs soon after

formed a resolution, that they should not move till the next day: this appeared to be a fortunate delay, as it afforded him an opportunity of getting some insight into their manner of fighting. He therefore desired Otoo to give orders, that some of them should go through the necessary manœuvres: two were accordingly ordered out into the bay; in one of which, Otoo, Captain Cook, and Mr. King, embarked, and Omai went on-board the other. When they had got sufficient sea-room, they faced, and advanced upon each other, and retreated by turns, as quick as the rowers could paddle. During this, the warriors on the stages flourished their weapons, and played a hundred antic tricks, which could answer no other end, in the judgment of Captain Cook, than to work up their passions, and to prepare them for fighting. Otoo stood by the side of the stage, and gave the necessary orders when to advance and when to retreat: in this, great judgment, and a quick eye, combined together, seemed requisite to seize every advantage that might offer, and to avoid giving any advantage to the adversary: at last after advancing and retreating to and from each other, at least a dozen times, the two canoes closed head to head, or stage to stage; and, after a short conflict, the troops on one stage were supposed to be all killed, and it was boarded by Omai and his associates. At this very instant, Otoo and all the paddlers leaped over-board, as if reduced to the necessity of endeavouring to save their lives by swimming.

If Omai's information is to be depended upon, their naval engagements are not always conducted in this manner: he said, they sometimes begin with lashing the two vessels together, head to head, and then fight till all the warriors are killed on one side or the other. But this close combat, it is supposed, is never practised but when they are determined to conquer or die: indeed, one or other must happen, for all agree that they never give quarter, unless it be to reserve their prisoners for a more cruel death the next day.

The power and strength of these islands lie entirely in their navies; and our men never heard of a general engagement on land; all their decisive battles are fought on the water. If the time and place of conflict are fixed upon by both parties, the preceding day and night are spent in diversions and feasting. Toward morning, they launch the canoes, put every thing in order, and, with the day, begin the battle, the fate of which generally decides the dispute. The vanquished save themselves by a precipitate flight, and such as reach the shore fly with their friends to the mountains; for the victors, while their fury lasts, spare neither the aged, nor women, nor children. The next day they assemble at the *morai*, to return thanks to the *Eatooa* for the victory, and to offer up the slain as sacrifices, and the prisoners also, if they have any. After this a treaty is set on foot, and the conquerors, for the most part, obtain their own terms;

till the next day :
 ordered him an op-
 manner of fighting.
 at some of them
 two were accord-
 a, Otoo, Captain
 ent on-board the
 they faced, and
 rns, as quick as
 rs on the stages
 ed antic tricks,
 ent of Captain
 epare them for
 and gave the
 etreat : in this,
 urther, seemed
 r, and to avoid
 ter advancing
 dozen times,
 ge ; and, after
 posed to be all
 iates. At this
 er-board, as if
 their lives by

their naval en-
 ner : he said,
 els together,
 killed on one
 sed, is never
 r or die : in-
 t they never
 s for a more

ely in their
 agement on
 ter. If the
 parties, the
 and feasting.
 ry thing in
 e of which
 themselves
 with their
 fury lasts,
 e next day
 Eatooa for
 and the pri-
 et on foot,
 wn terms ;

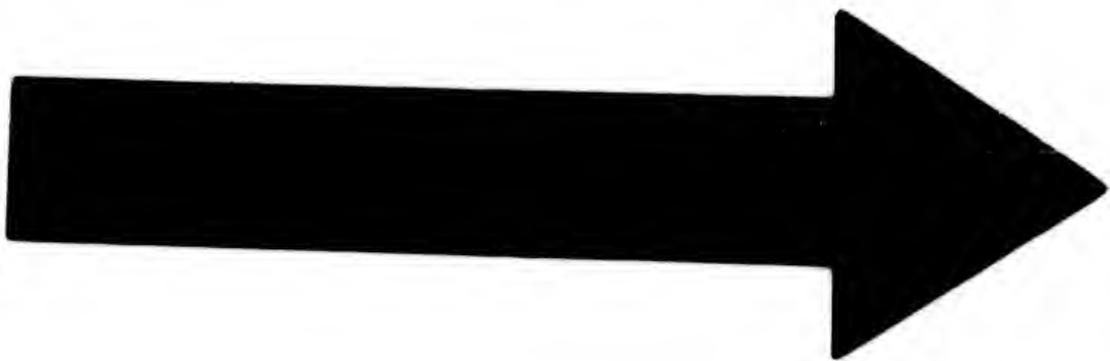
by which, particular districts of land, and sometimes whole islands, change their owners. Omai told them, that he was once taken prisoner by the men of Bolabola, and carried to that island, where he and some others would have been put to death the next day, if they had not found means to escape in the night.

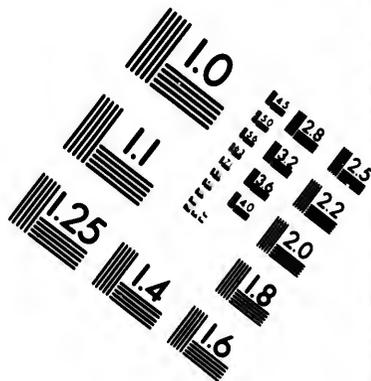
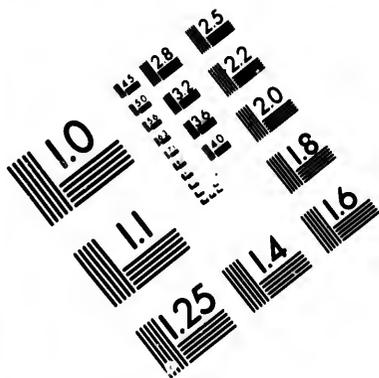
As soon as this mock-fight was over, Omai put on his suit of armour, mounted a stage in one of the canoes, and was paddled all along the shore of the bay, so that every one had a full view of him. His coat of mail did not draw the attention of his countrymen so much as might have been expected : some of them, indeed, had seen a part of it before ; and there were others again who had taken such a dislike to Omai, from his imprudent conduct at this place, that they would hardly look at any thing, however singular, that was exhibited by him.

Otoo and his father came on-board in the morning of the 22nd, to know when Captain Cook proposed sailing : for, hearing that there was a good harbour at Eimeo, he had informed them that he should visit that island on his passage to Huaheine ; and they proposed to accompany him, and that their fleet should sail at the same time, to reinforce Towha. Being ready to take his departure, he submitted to them the appointment of the day ; and the Wednesday following was determined upon, when he was to receive on-board Otoo, his father, mother, and the whole family. These points being decided, the captain proposed immediately setting out for Oparee, where all the fleet was to assemble that day, and be reviewed.

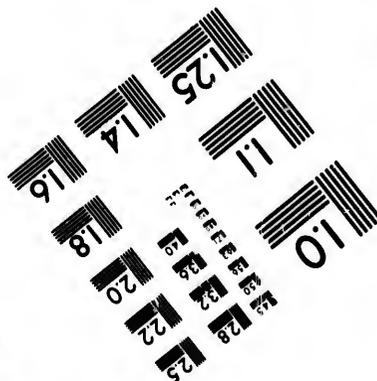
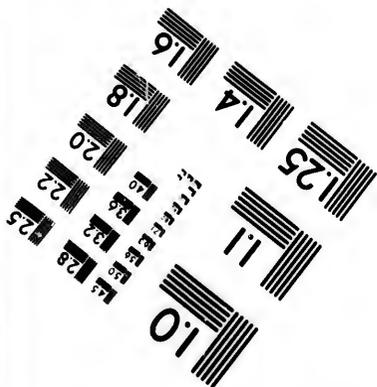
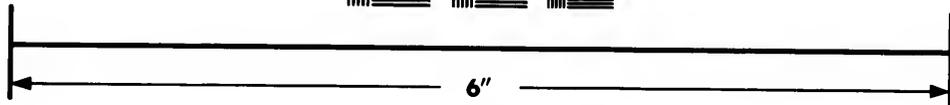
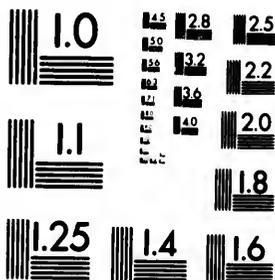
As Captain Cook was getting into his boat, news arrived that a treaty had been concluded between Towha and Maheine, and Towha's fleet had returned to Atahooroo : from this unexpected event, the war canoes, instead of rendezvousing at Oparee, were ordered to their respective districts. Captain Cook, however, followed Otoo to Oparee, accompanied by Mr. King and Omai. Soon after their arrival, a messenger arrived from Eimeo, and related the conditions of the peace, or rather truce, it being only for a limited time. The terms being disadvantageous to Otaheite, Otoo was severely censured, whose delay, in sending reinforcements, had obliged Towha to submit to a disgraceful accommodation. It was even currently reported, that Towha, resenting the treatment he had received, had declared that, immediately after Captain Cook's departure, he would join his forces to those of Tiaraboo, and attack Otoo. This called upon the captain to declare, that he was determined to espouse the interest of his friend ; and that whoever presumed to attack him, should experience the weight of his displeasure, when he returned to their island.

This declaration probably had the desired effect, and if Towha did entertain any such hostile intention at first, they heard no more of the report. Whappai, the father of Otoo, highly disapproved of the peace, and censured Towha for concluding it.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0

10

The old man wisely considered, that Captain Cook's going out with them to Eimeo might have been of singular service to their cause, though he should not interfere in the quarrel. He therefore concluded, that Otoo had acted prudently in waiting for the captain; though it prevented his giving that early assistance to Towha which he expected.

While they were debating on this subject at Oparee, a messenger arrived from Towha, desiring the attendance of Otoo the next day at the *morai* in Attahooroo, to return thanks to the gods for the peace he had concluded. Captain Cook was asked to attend; but being unwell he chose rather to decline it. Desirous, however, of knowing what ceremony might be exhibited on so memorable an occasion, he sent Mr. King and Omai to observe the particulars, and returned to his ship, attended by Otoo's mother, his three sisters, and several other women.

"At first," says Captain Cook, "I thought that this numerous train of females came into my boat with no other view than to get a passage to Matavai.—But, when we arrived at the ship, they told me, they intended passing the night on-board, for the express purpose of undertaking the cure of the disorder I complained of; which was a pain of the rheumatic kind, extending from the hip to the foot. I accepted the friendly offer, had a bed spread for them on the cabin floor, and submitted myself to their directions. I was desired to lay myself down amongst them. Then, as many of them as could get round me, began to squeeze me with both hands, from head to foot, but more particularly on the parts where the pain was lodged, till they made my bones crack, and my flesh became a perfect mummy. In short, after undergoing this discipline about a quarter of an hour, I was glad to get away from them. However, the operation gave me immediate relief, which encouraged me to submit to another rubbing down before I went to bed; and it was so effectual that I found myself pretty easy all the night after. My female physicians repeated their prescription the next morning before they went ashore, and again in the evening, when they returned on-board; after which I found the pains entirely removed: and the cure being perfected, they took their leave of me the following morning. This they call *romee*; an operation which, in my opinion, far exceeds the flesh brush, or any thing of the kind that we make use of externally. It is universally practised among these islanders; being sometimes performed by the men, but more generally by the women. If, at any time one appears languid and tired, and sits down by any of them, they immediately begin to practise the *romee* upon his legs; and I have always found it to have an exceedingly good effect."

On Thursday, the 25th of September, Otoo, Mr. King, and Omai, returned from Attahooroo: and Mr. King gave a narrative of what he had seen to the following effect:—"At sun-set we embarked in a canoe, and left Oparee. About nine o'clock

we landed at that extremity of Tettaha, which joins to Attahooroo. The meeting of Otoo and Towha, I expected would be interesting. Otoo and his attendants seated themselves upon the beach, near the canoe in which Towha sat. He was then asleep; but being awakened, and Otoo's name mentioned to him, a plantain-tree and a dog were immediately laid at Otoo's feet; and several of Towha's people came and conversed with him. After I had been for some time seated close to Otoo, Towha never stirring from his canoe, nor saying any thing to us, I repaired to him. He asked me if *Toote* was displeased with him; I answered, no; that he was his *taio*; and that I was ordered to go to Attahooroo, to let him know it. Omai then entered into a long conversation with this chief, but I could not gather any information from him.—On my returning to Otoo, he desired that I should go to eat, and then to sleep; in consequence of which Omai and I left him. On questioning Omai on that head, he said Towha was lame, and therefore could not stir; but that Otoo and he would soon converse together in private. This was probably true; for those we left with Otoo came to us in a little time; and about ten minutes after, Otoo himself arrived, when we all went to sleep in his canoe.

“The *kava* was given the next morning in great plenty.—One man drank to such excess, that he lost his senses, and appeared to be convulsed. He was held by two men, who busied themselves in plucking off his hair by the roots. I left this spectacle to see a more affecting one. It was the meeting of Towha and his wife, and a young girl, who was said to be his daughter. After the ceremony of cutting their heads, and discharging plenty of blood and tears, they washed, embraced the chief, and seemed perfectly unconcerned. But the young girl's sufferings were not yet concluded. Terridiri (Operea's son) arrived; and she, with great composure, repeated those ceremonies to him which she had just performed on meeting her father. Towha having brought a war canoe from Eimeo, I inquired if he had killed the people belonging to her; and was informed, that there was not a person in her when she was captured.

“About ten or eleven o'clock, we left Tettaha, and landed close to the *morai* of Attahooroo early in the afternoon. Three canoes lay hauled upon the beach opposite the *morai*, having three hogs in each. We expected the solemnity would have been performed the same afternoon; but nothing was done as neither Towha nor Potatou had joined us. A chief came from Eimeo, with a small pig and a plantain-tree, which he placed at Otoo's feet. They conversed some time together, and the Eimeo chief often repeated the words, *Warry, Warry*, (false.) Otoo was probably relating to him what he had heard, and the other contradicted it.

“The next day, Towha and Potatou, with seven or eight large canoes arrived, and landed near the *morai*. Several plantain-

trees were brought to Otoo, on behalf of different chiefs. Towha remained in his canoe.—The ceremony was commenced by the principal priest, who brought out the *maro*, wrapped up, and a bundle of a conic shape. These were placed at the head of what I supposed to be a grave. Then three priests sat down at the other end of the grave; bringing with them a plantain-tree, the branch of some other kind of tree, and the sheath of the flower of the cocoa-nut tree.

“The priests separately repeated sentences; and at intervals two, and sometimes all three, chanted a melancholy ditty, very little attended to by the natives; this kind of recitative continued near an hour; then, after a short prayer, the chief priest uncovered the *maro*, and Otoo rose up, and wrapped it about him, holding in his hand a bonnet, composed of the red feathers of the tropic bird, mixed with other blackish feathers. He stood opposite the three priests, who continued their prayers for about ten minutes, when a man rising suddenly from the crowd, said something ending with *heiva*, and the crowd echoed back to him three times *Earec!* The company then repaired to the opposite side of a large pile of stones, where is the king's *morai*; which is not much unlike a large grave.—Here the same ceremony was again performed, and ended with three cheers. The *maro* was now wrapped up, and ornamented by the addition of a small piece of red feathers.

“The people now proceeded to a large hut near the *morai*, where they seated themselves in solemn order. An oration was then made by a man of Tiaraboo, which ended in about ten minutes; he was followed by a man of Attahooroo: Potaton spoke next, and with much more fluency and grace than any of them. Tootoo, Otoo's orator, exhibited after him, and then a man from Eimeo. Some other speeches were made, but not attended to. Omai said, that the substance of their speeches recommended friendship, and not fighting; but as many of the speakers expressed themselves with great warmth, there were, perhaps, some recriminations and protestations of their future good intentions. In the midst of their harangues, a man of Attahooroo rose up, having a sling fastened to his waist, and a large stone upon his shoulder. After parading for about fifteen minutes in the open space, and chanting a few short sentences, he threw the stone down. This stone, together with a plantain-tree, that lay at Otoo's feet, were, at the conclusion of the speeches, carried to the *morai*; one of the priests, and Otoo with him, saying something upon the occasion.

“Returning to Oparee, the sea-breeze having set in, we were obliged to land, and had a pleasant walk from Tettaha to Oparee. A tree, with two large bundles of dried leaves suspended upon it, pointed out the boundary of the two districts. We were accompanied by the man who had performed the ceremony of the stone and sling. With him Otoo's father held a long conversation, and

chiefs. Towha appeared extremely angry. He was enraged as I understood, at the part which Towha had taken in the Eimeo business."

From what can be judged of this solemnity, as related by Mr. King, it had not been wholly a thanksgiving, as Omai told them, but rather a confirmation of the treaty. The grave mentioned by Mr. King, appears to be the very spot where the celebration of the funeral rites began, when the human sacrifice was offered, at which Captain Cook was present, and before which the victim was laid. It is here also that they first invest the kings with the *maro*; Omai, who had seen the ceremony when Otoo was made king, described the whole solemnity when they were here; which is nearly the same as that now described by Mr. King; though, perhaps, upon a very different occasion. The plantain-tree is always the first thing introduced in all their religious ceremonies, as well as in all their public and private debates; and probably on many other occasions. While Towha was at Eimeo, he sent one or more messengers to Otoo every day. Every messenger at all times carried a young plantain-tree in his hand, which he laid at the feet of Otoo, before he mentioned his errand; then seated himself before him and related the particulars of his message. When two men are in such high dispute that blows are expected to ensue, if one should lay a plantain-tree before the other, they both become cool, and proceed in the argument without further animosity.—It is, indeed, the olive branch of these people upon all occasions.

As they knew that the ships were upon the point of sailing, they all paid them a visit on the 26th, and brought more hogs with them than were wanted; for having no salt left to preserve any, our men had fully sufficient for present use. Captain Cook accompanied Otoo the next day to Oparee; and before he left it, took a survey of the cattle and poultry, which he had consigned to his friend's care. Every thing was in a promising way; and seemed properly attended to. Two of the geese, as well as two of the ducks, were sitting; but the pea-hen and turkey-hen had neither of them begun to lay. He took four goats from Otoo, two of which he intended to leave at Ulietea; and to reserve the other two for the use of any other islands he might touch at in his passage to the north.

"A circumstance," says Captain Cook, "which I shall now mention, will shew, that these people are capable of much address and art, to gain their purposes. Amongst other things which, at different times, I had given to this chief, was a spy-glass. After having it in his possession two or three days, tired of its novelty, and probably finding it of no use to him, he carried it privately to Captain Clerke, and told him, that as he had been his very good friend, he had got a present for him, which he knew would be very agreeable. 'But,' says Otoo, 'you must not let *Toote* know it, because he wants it, and I would not let him have it.' He then put the glass into Captain Clerke's hands; at the same

time assuring him, that he came honestly by it. Captain Clerke at first declined accepting it: but Otoo insisted upon it, and left it with him. Some days after he put Captain Clerke in mind of the glass; who, though he did not want it, was yet desirous of obliging Otoo; and thinking that a few axes would be of more use at this island, produced four to give him in return. Otoo no sooner saw this than he said, 'Toote offered me five for it.'—'Well,' says Captain Clerke, 'if that be the case, your friendship for me shall not make you a loser, and you shall have six axes.' These he accepted; but desired again, that I might not be told what he had done.

"Our friend Omai got one good thing at this island, for the many good things he gave away. This was a very fine, double, sailing canoe, completely equipped, and fit for the sea. Some time before, I made up for him a suit of English colours, but he thought these too valuable to be used at this time; and patched up a parcel of colours, such as flags and pendants, to the number of ten or a dozen, which he spread on different parts of his vessel, all at the same time; and drew together as many people to look at her, as a man of war would, dressed, in an European port. These streamers of Omai were a mixture of English, French, Spanish, and Dutch, which were all the European colours he had seen. When I was last at this island, I gave to Otoo an English jack and pendant, and to Towha a pendant, which I now found they had preserved with the greatest care.

"Omai had also provided himself with a good stock of cloth and cocoa-nut oil, which are not only in greater plenty, but much better, at Otaheite, than at any of the Society Islands; insomuch, that they are articles of trade. Omai would not have behaved so inconsistently, and so much unlike himself, as he did, in many instances, but for his sister and brother-in-law, who, together with a few of their acquaintances, engrossed him entirely to themselves, with no other view than to strip him of every thing he had got. And they would, undoubtedly, have succeeded in their scheme, if I had not put a stop to it in time, by taking the most useful articles of his property into my possession. But even this would not have saved Omai from ruin, if I had suffered these relations of his to have gone with, or to have followed us to his intended place of settlement, Huaheine. This they had intended; but I disappointed their further views of plunder, by forbidding them to shew themselves in that island, while I remained in the neighbourhood; and they knew me too well not to comply.

"On the 28th, Otoo came on-board, and informed me, that he had got a canoe, which he desired I would take with me, and carry home, as a present from him to the *Earee rahie no Prctane*; it being the only thing he could send worth his majesty's acceptance. I was not a little pleased with Otoo, for this mark of his gratitude. It was a thought entirely his own, not

one of us having given him the least hint about it; and it shewed that he fully understood to whom he was indebted for the most valuable presents that he had received. At first I thought that this canoe had been a model of one of their vessels of war; but I soon found that it was a small *evaa*, about sixteen feet long.—It was double, and seemed to have been built for the purpose; and was decorated with all those pieces of carved work which they usually fix upon their canoes. As it was too large for me to take on-board, I could only thank him for his good intention; but it would have pleased him much better if his present could have been accepted.

“The frequent visits we had lately paid to this island, seem to have created a full persuasion, that the intercourse will not be discontinued. It was strictly enjoined to me by Otoo, to request in his name, the *Earee rahié no Pretane*, to send him, by the next ships, red feathers, and the birds that produce them, axes, half a dozen muskets, with powder and shot, and by no means to forget horses.”

When these people make a present, it is customary for them to state what they expect in return, and it is found convenient to gratify them; by which means the presents come dearer than what is got by barter. Captain Cook, in general, paid for each separate article as he received it, except in his intercourse with Otoo.—His presents were so numerous, that no account was kept between him and the captain. Whatever he asked for, if it could be spared, the captain never denied him, and he always found him moderate in his demands.

Captain Cook would not have quitted Otaheite so soon as he did, if he could have prevailed upon Omai to fix himself there, as there was not even a probability of being better supplied with provisions elsewhere, than they continued to be here, even at the time of leaving it. Besides, such a friendship and confidence subsisted between our men and the inhabitants, as could hardly be expected at any other place; and it was rather extraordinary, had never been once interrupted or suspended by any accident, or misunderstanding; nor had there been a theft committed worthy of notice. It is probable, however, that their regularity of conduct resulted from their fear of interrupting a traffic, which might procure them a greater share of our commodities, than they could obtain by plunder or pilfering. This point, indeed, was in some degree settled at the first interview with their chiefs after the ships' arrival, for Captain Cook declared then to the natives, in the most decisive terms, that he would not suffer them to rob his people, as they had formerly done. Omai was singularly useful in this business, being instructed by the captain to point out to them the happy consequences of their honest conduct, and the fatal mischiefs that must attend a deviation from it. But the chiefs have it not always in their power to prevent thefts; they are often robbed themselves;

and complain of it as the worst of evils. The most valuable things that Otoo received from Captain Cook were left in the captain's possession till the day before they sailed; Otoo declaring, at the same time, that they were no where so safe. From the acquisition of new riches, the inducements to pilfering must certainly have increased; and the chiefs are sensible of this, from their being so extremely desirous of having chests. The few that the Spaniards left amongst them are highly prized; and they were continually asking our men for some. Captain Cook had one made for Otoo, the dimensions of which were eight feet in length, five in breadth, and about three feet in depth. Locks and bolts are not considered as a sufficient security; but it must be large enough for two people to sleep upon, and consequently guard it in the night.

It may appear extraordinary, that Captain Cook could never get any distinct account of the time when the Spaniards arrived, the time they staid, or when they departed. The more he made inquiry into this matter, the more he was convinced of the incapability of most of these people to remember, calculate, or note the time, when past events happened; especially if for a longer period than eighteen or twenty months. It, however, appeared by the inscription upon the cross, and by the information of the most intelligent of the natives, that two ships came to Oheitepeha, in 1774, not long after Captain Cook left Matavai, which was in May the same year. The live stock they left here consisted of one bull, some goats, hogs, and dogs, and the male of another animal, which they were afterwards informed was a ram, and was, at that time, at Bolabola.

The hogs are large; have already much improved the breed originally found upon the island; and, on the late arrival, were very numerous: goats are also in plenty, there being hardly a chief without some. The dogs that the Spaniards put ashore are of two sorts: if they had been all hanged, instead of being left upon the island, it would have been better for the natives.— Captain Cook's young ram fell a victim to one of these animals. We have already mentioned the four Spaniards that remained on the island after their ships left it.—Two of these were priests who resided the whole time in the house at Oheitepeha; but Mateema roved about continually, visiting many parts of the island: after he and his companions had staid ten months, two ships arrived at Oheitepeha, took them on-board, and sailed again in five days. Whatever design the Spaniards might have had upon this island, this hasty departure shews they had now laid it aside. They endeavoured to make the natives believe that they still intended to return, and that they would bring with them houses, all kinds of animals, and men and women who were to settle on the island. Otoo, when he mentioned this to Captain Cook, added, that if the Spaniards should return, they should not come to Matavai Fort, which he said was ours: the

idea pleased him; but he did not consider that the completion of it would deprive him of his kingdom, and the people of their liberties. Their occasional visits may have been of service to its inhabitants, but, (considering how most European establishments are conducted among Indian nations) a permanent establishment amongst them would, probably, give them just cause to lament that our ships had ever discovered it. Indeed, a measure of this kind can hardly ever be seriously thought of, as it can neither answer the purposes of public ambition, nor of private avarice.*

It has been already observed, that Captain Cook received a visit from one of the two natives of this island, who had been taken to Lima by the Spaniards: it is somewhat remarkable that he never saw him afterwards, especially as the captain received him with uncommon civility. The captain, however, supposed, that Omai had kept him at a distance from him, from motives of jealousy, he being a traveller that in some degree might vie with himself. Their touching at Teneriffe was a lucky circumstance for Omai; who prided himself in having visited a place belonging to Spain as well as this man. Captain Clerke, who had seen the other man, spoke of him as a low fellow, a little out of his senses; and his own countrymen entertained the same opinion of him. In short, these two adventurers seemed to be held in little or no esteem. They had not been so fortunate, indeed, as to return home with such valuable property as had been bestowed upon Omai: whose advantages from going to England were so great, that if he should sink into the same state of insignificance, he has only himself to blame for it.

On the 30th of September, at day-break, after leaving Otaheite, the ships stood for the north end of the island of Eimeo. Omai, in his canoe, arrived there before them, and endeavoured, by taking some necessary measures, to shew the situation. They were not, however, without pilots, having several men of Otaheite on-board, and not a few women; but, unwilling to rely entirely upon these guides, Captain Cook dispatched two boats to examine the harbour; when, on a signal being made for safe anchorage, they stood in with both the ships, and anchored in ten fathoms' water.

Taloo is the name of this harbour: it is on the north-side of the island, and in the district of Oboonohoo or Poonohoo: it runs above two miles between the hills, south, or south-by-east. It is not inferior to any harbour they had met with in this ocean, both for security and goodness of bottom. It has also this singular advantage, that a ship can sail in and out with the reigning trade wind: several rivers fall into it; one of which is so considerable as to admit boats a quarter of a mile up, where the water is perfectly fresh. The banks on the sides of this stream

* The history of the world, however, furnishes many instances of public ambition and private avarice grasping at smaller, and less valuable domains than Otaheite.—*Ed.*

are covered with what the natives call the *pooroo* tree, on which they set no value, as it only serves for firing, so that wood and water may be procured here with great facility.

The harbour of Parowroah, on the same side of the island, is about two miles to the eastward, and is much larger within than that of Taloo; but the opening in the reef lies to leeward of the harbour, and is considerably narrower: these striking defects must give the harbour of Taloo a decided preference. There are one or two more harbours on the south-side of the island, but they are not so considerable as those already mentioned.

As soon as they had anchored, great numbers of the inhabitants came aboard the ships from mere motives of curiosity, for they brought nothing with them for the purposes of barter: but several canoes arrived the next morning from more distant parts, bringing with them an abundant supply of bread-fruit, coconuts, and a few hogs, which were exchanged for beads, nails, and hatchets; red feathers not being so much demanded here as at Otaheite.

On Thursday, the 2nd of October, in the morning, Captain Cook received a visit from Maheine, the chief of the island: he approached the ship with as great caution and deliberation as if he apprehended mischief from our men, as friends of the Otaheiteans; these people having no idea that a person can be in friendship with any one, without adopting his cause against his enemies. This chief was accompanied by his wife, who they were told, is sister to Oamo of Otaheite, whose death they heard of while remaining at this island. Captain Cook made them presents of such articles as seemed most to strike their fancy; and after staying about half an hour they went on-shore: they returned soon after with a large hog, meaning it as a return for the captain's favour; but he made them an additional present to the full value of it, after which they went on-board the *Discovery* to visit Captain Clerke.

Maheine, supported with a few adherents, has made himself in some degree, independent of Otaheite.—He is between forty and fifty years of age, and is bald-headed, which, at that age, is rather uncommon in these islands. He seemed ashamed of shewing his head, and wore a kind of turban to conceal it: whether they considered this deficiency of hair as disgraceful, or whether they supposed that our men considered it in that light, it is not easy to determine. The latter, however, appears the most probable, from the circumstance of their having seen them shave the head of one of the natives whom they detected stealing. They naturally concluded, therefore, that this was the kind of punishment inflicted upon all thieves; and some of our gentlemen whose heads were but thinly covered with hair, were violently suspected by them of being *tetos*.

Towards the evening, Captain Cook and Omai mounted on horseback, and rode along the shore: Omai having forbid the

natives to follow them, the train was not very numerous: the fear of giving offence having got the better of their curiosity. The fleet of Towha had been stationed in this harbour, and though the war was but of short duration, the marks of its devastation were every where conspicuous. The trees had lost all their fruit, and the houses in the neighbourhood had been burnt, or otherwise destroyed.

Having made every preparation for sailing, the ships was hauled off into the stream in the morning of the 6th, intending to put to sea the next day, but a disagreeable accident prevented it. Captain Cook had, in the day-time, sent the goats ashore to graze; and, notwithstanding two men had been appointed to look after them, one of them had been stolen this evening: this was a considerable loss, as it interfered with the captain's views of stocking other islands with these animals, he, therefore, was determined, if possible, to recover it. He received intelligence the next morning, that it had been conveyed to Maheine, who was at that time at Parowroah harbour. Two elderly men offered their services to conduct any of our people to him, in order to bring back the goat, accordingly the captain dispatched some of his people in a boat, charged with a message to that chief, and insisted on both the goat and the thief being immediately given up.

Maheine had, only the day before, requested the commodore to give him two goats, but, as he could not spare them, without depriving other islands which had none of these animals, and was informed that there were two already upon this, he refused to gratify him.—Willing, however, to assist his views in this respect, he desired an Otaheitean chief then present, to beg Otoo, in his name, to convey two of these animals to Maheine: and, to induce him to comply with this request, sent to Otoo, by the same chief, a quantity of red feathers, equal in value to the two goats that were required.—The commodore expected that Maheine, and all the other chiefs of the island, would have been perfectly satisfied with this arrangement; but he was mistaken, as the event clearly proves.

Little suspecting that any one would presume to steal a second, while the necessary measures were taking to recover the first, the goats were again put ashore this morning; and a boat, as usual, was sent for them in the evening. While our people were getting them into the boat, one was conveyed away undiscovered; as it was immediately missed, they expected to recover it without much trouble, since it could not have been carried to any considerable distance. Several of the natives set out different ways to seek after it; for they all endeavoured to persuade our men, that it must have strayed into the woods, not one of them admitting that it was stolen. They were, however, convinced to the contrary, when they perceived that not any of the pursuers returned; their intention was only to amuse our men till their prize was

safely deposited; and, night coming on, prevented all further search. At this instant, the boat returned with the other goat, and one of the persons who had stolen it.

Most of the inhabitants, the next morning, were moved off, taking with them a corpse, which lay opposite the ship on a *toopapavao*; and Maheine it was said, had retired to the remotest part of the island. It now plainly appeared that a regular plan had been projected to steal what the commodore had refused to give; and that, having restored one, they were determined not to part with the other, which was a female, and with kid; and the commodore was equally determined to have it back again; he, therefore, applied to the two elderly men, who had been instrumental in recovering the first, who informed him that this had been taken to a place on the south-side of the island, called Watea, by Hamoa, who was the chief of that place; but that it would be delivered up if he would send for it. They expressed a willingness to conduct some of his people to the spot; but, finding that a boat might go and return in one day, he sent one with two of his officers, Mr. Roberts and Mr. Shuttleworth; one to remain with the boat, if she could not get to the place, while the other went with the guides, accompanied by some of our people. The boat returned late in the evening, when Captain Cook was informed by the officers, that, after proceeding in the boat, as far as rocks and shoals would permit, Mr. Shuttleworth landed; and, attended with two marines and one of the guides, proceeded to the house of Hamoa, at Watea, where they were for some time amused by the people, who pretended they had sent for the goat, and that it would soon be produced. It however, never arrived; and night approaching, Mr. Shuttleworth was obliged to return to his boat without it.

The commodore lamented that he had proceeded so far in this business, as he could not retreat with credit, and without giving encouragement to other islands to rob him with impunity. Consulting with Omai and the two old men what method to take, they advised him, without hesitation, to go into the country with a party of men, and shoot every person he should meet with.—The commodore did not approve of this bloody counsel: but, early the next morning, set out with thirty-five of his people, accompanied by Omai, one of the old men, and three or four attendants. He also ordered Lieutenant Williamson round the western part of the island, with three armed boats to meet them.

This party had no sooner landed, than the few remaining natives fled before them. The first person they met with upon the march was in a kind of perilous situation; for Omai, the instant he beheld him, asked Captain Cook if he should shoot him, so fully was he persuaded that the advice he had given was immediately to be carried into execution. The commodore then gave orders, both to him and the guide, to let it be made known that

it was not their intention to injure, much less to destroy a single native; these joyful tidings soon circulated, and prevented the flight of the inhabitants.

Ascending the ridge of hills on the road to Watea, they were informed that the goat had been carried the same way, and could hardly have passed the hills: they therefore marched up in great silence, expecting to surprise the party who were bearing off the prize: but when arrived at the uppermost plantation, they were told that the animal they were in search of had indeed been kept there the first night, but had been carried to Watea the next morning. They made no further inquiry till within sight of Watea, where they were directed to Hamoa's house by some people, who also informed them that the goat was there. They therefore fully expected to obtain it on their arrival, but when they reached the house, the people denied that they had ever seen it, or knew any thing concerning it. Hamoa himself appeared, and expressed himself to the same effect.

On first coming to Watea, several men were seen running to and fro in the woods with clubs and darts in their hands; and Omai, who ran towards them, had stones thrown at him: hence it appeared that they intended to oppose any attempt that Captain Cook and his men might be induced to make, but on seeing the strength of the party, had given up the design; what confirmed this opinion was that all their houses were empty.

After collecting a few of the natives together, Omai was directed to expostulate with them on the absurdity of their conduct, and tell them that Captain Cook had received sufficient evidence that the goat was in their possession, and that if it was not immediately delivered up, he should burn all their houses and canoes; but, notwithstanding this expostulation, they persisted in their denial of having any knowledge of it. In consequence of which the commodore set fire to six or eight of their houses, and two or three war canoes, which were presently consumed. After this they marched off to join the boats, which were, at that time, about seven or eight miles from them, and, in the road, burnt six other war canoes, without any opposition. On the contrary, many of the natives assisted them, more perhaps from fear than any other motive; at length Omai, who was at some distance before, came back with information that a multitude of men were assembling to attack them. They prepared themselves to receive them, but instead of enemies they were petitioners, with plantain-trees in their hands, which they laid down before our men, entreating the commodore to spare a canoe that lay close by, which he readily complied with.

About four o'clock, in the afternoon, Captain Cook arrived at Wharrarrade, where the boats were waiting for him. The district of Wharrarrade belongs to Tiarrataboonoué; but this chief, together with the other principal people of the place, had fled to the hills; though they made no attack upon their property, they

being in amity with Otoo. Here they remained about an hour in order to rest themselves, and afterwards set out for the ships, where they arrived at eight o'clock in the evening; but no tidings of the goat had been at that time received, so that the operations of the day had been ineffectual.

Early on Friday morning, October the 10th, the captain dispatched one of Omai's men to Maheine, charged with this peremptory message, that if he persisted in his refusal to deliver up the goat, a single canoe should not be left upon the island, and that hostilities should never cease while the stolen animal remained in his possession. That the messenger might perceive that the commodore was in earnest, he ordered the carpenter, in his presence, to break up three or four canoes that lay at the head of the harbour. The planks, were by his direction, taken on-board, to serve as materials for building a house for Omai, at the place where he intended to reside. The commodore, properly attended, went afterwards to the next harbour, where he destroyed seven or eight more canoes, and returned on-board about seven in the evening. On his arrival he was informed that the goat had been returned about half an hour before; and it appeared, from good intelligence, that it came from the very place where the inhabitants the day before, declared they knew nothing about it. But from the message delivered to the chief, in the morning, he perceived that the commodore, was not to be trifled with.

Thus ended this troublesome and unfortunate business, equally to be regretted by the natives and by Captain Cook. He was grieved to reflect, that after refusing to assist his friends at Otaheite in the invasion of this island, he should soon be obliged to engage in hostilities against its inhabitants; which, perhaps, were more injurious to them than Towha's expedition.

The intercourse with the natives was renewed the next morning, several canoes bringing bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts to the ships to barter; whence it was natural to conclude, that they were conscious they had merited the treatment they had received; and that the cause of Captain Cook's displeasure being now removed, they apprehended no further mischief. The ships weighed, with a breeze, down the harbour about nine, but it was so faint and variable that they did not get out till noon, when they steered for Huaheine, Omai attending in his canoe.

At Eimeo, the ships were abundantly supplied with fire-wood, of which they did not supply themselves at Otaheite, as there is not a tree in Matavai but what is useful to the inhabitants; they also received here a large supply of refreshments in hogs, bread-fruit, and cocoa-nuts. There is very little difference between the produce of this island and that of Otaheite; but the difference in their women is remarkable. Those of Eimeo have a dark hue, are low in stature, and have forbidding features.

The appearance of Eimeo bears not the least resemblance to that of Otaheite. The latter rising in one steep, hilly body, has

about an hour
for the ships.
but no tidings
of the operations

in dispatched
peremptory
up the goat,
that hostil-
in his
at the com-
his presence,
head of the
on-board, to
at the place
y attended,
oyed seven
ven in the
t had been
rom good
he inhabi-
t it. But
arning, he
h.

s, equally
He was
ls at Ota-
e obliged
perhaps,

xt morn-
ts to the
ey were
ed; and
moved,
ed, with
int and
ered for

e-wood,
here is
; they
bread-
en the
nce in
t hue,

nce to
, has



pr
w
se
m
to
ab
ob
me
isla
the
tha
ma
any
ren
pos

little low land, except some deep valleys, and the flat border that almost surrounds it near the sea. Eimeo has steep, rugged hills running in different direction, leaving large valleys, and gently rising grounds about their sides. The hills, though rocky, are generally covered with trees almost to the tops. At the bottom of the harbour of Taloo, the ground gradually rises to the foot of the hills; but the flat border on the sides becomes quite steep at a small distance from the sea. This renders it a prospect superior to any thing at Otaheite. In the low grounds the soil is a yellowish, stiff mould; on the lower hills it is blacker and looser, and the stone which composes the hills is of a blueish colour, interspersed with some particles of glimmer. Near the place where the ships were stationed were two large stones, concerning which some superstitious notions are entertained by the natives: they consider them as brother and sister; that they are *Eatooos* or divinities, and that they come from Ulietea, by some supernatural means.

On the morning that succeeded their departure from Eimeo, they saw Huaheine extending from south-west-by-west, to west-by-north. At twelve o'clock, anchored in the northern entrance of Owharre harbour, situated on the west-side of the island; Omai, in his canoe, entered the harbour just before them, but did not land. Though many of his countrymen crowded to see him, he did not take much notice of them; great numbers also came off to the ships, insomuch that they were greatly incommoded by them; the passengers immediately informed them of the transactions at Eimeo, multiplying, by ten at least, the number of houses and canoes that our men had destroyed. Captain Cook was not much displeas'd at their giving this exaggerated account, as he found that it made a considerable impression upon all who heard it, so that he had hopes that it would induce the natives of this island to treat him in a better manner than they had done in his prior visits.

"Our arrival here," says Captain Cook, "brought all the principal people of the island to our ships. This was just what I wished, as it was high time to think of settling Omai; and the presence of these chiefs, I guessed, would enable me to do it in the most satisfactory manner. He now seem'd to have an inclination to establish himself at Ulietea; and if he and I could have agreed about the mode of bringing the plan to bear, I should have had no objections to adopt it. His father had been dispossessed, by the men of Bolabola, when they conquer'd Ulietea, of some land in that island, and I made no doubt of being able to get it restored to the son in an amicable manner. For that purpose, it was necessary that he should be upon good terms with those who were now masters of the island; but he was too great a patriot to listen to any such thing; and was vain enough to suppose that I would reinstate him in his forfeited lands by force. This made it impossible to fix him at Ulietea, and pointed out to me Huaheine as

the proper place. I, therefore, resolved to avail myself of the presence of the chief men of the island, and to make this proposal to them.

“After the hurry of the morning was over, we got ready to pay a formal visit to Taireetareea, meaning then to introduce this business. Omai dressed himself very properly on the occasion, and prepared a very handsome present for the chief himself, and another for his *Eatooa*. Indeed, after he had got clear of the gang that surrounded him at Otaheite, he behaved with such prudence as to gain respect. Our landing drew most of our visitors from the ships; and they, as well as those that were on shore, assembled in a large house. The concourse of people on this occasion was very great; and, amongst them there appeared to be a greater proportion of personable men and women than we had ever seen in one assembly at any one of these new islands. Not only the bulk of the people seemed, in general, much stouter and fairer than those of Otaheite, but there was also a much greater number of men who appeared to be of consequence, in proportion to the extent of the island, most of whom had exactly the corpulent appearance of the chiefs of Wateoo. We waited some time for Taireetareea, as I could do nothing till the *Earee rahie* came; but when he appeared, I found that his presence might have been dispensed with, as he was not above eight or ten years of age. Omai, who stood at a little distance from this circle of great men, began with making his offering to the gods, consisting of red feathers, cloth, &c. Then followed another offering which was to be given to the gods by the chief; and after that, several other small pieces, and tufts of red feathers were presented. Each article was laid before one of the company, who, I understood, was a priest, and was delivered with a set speech or prayer, spoken by one of Omai's friends, who sat by him, but mostly dictated by himself. In these prayers, he did not forget his friends in England, nor those who had brought him safe back. The *Earee rahie no Pretane*, Lord Sandwich, *Toote, Tatee* (Cooke and Clerke) were mentioned in every one of them. When Omai's offerings and prayers were finished, the priest took each article, in the same order in which it had been laid before him, and, after repeating a prayer sent it to the *morai's* which, as Omai, told us, was at a great distance, otherwise the offerings would have been made there.

“These religious ceremonies having been performed, Omai sat down by me, and we entered upon business, by giving the young chief my present, and receiving his in return; and, all things considered, they were liberal enough on both sides. Some arrangements were next agreed upon as to the manner of carrying on the intercourse betwixt us; and I pointed out the mischievous consequences that would attend their robbing us, as they had done during my former visits. Omai's establishment was then proposed to the assembled chiefs.

“ He acquainted them, ‘ That he had been carried by us into our country, where he was well received by the great king and his *Earees*, and treated with every mark of regard and affection while he staid amongst us ; that he had been brought back again, enriched by our liberality with a variety of articles, which would prove very useful to his countrymen ; and that besides the two horses which were to remain with him, several other new and valuable animals had been left at Otaheite, which would soon multiply and furnish a sufficient number for the use of the islands in the neighbourhood. He then signified to them that it was my earnest request, in return for all my friendly offices, that they would give him a piece of land to build a house upon, and to raise provisions for himself and servants ; adding, that if this could not be obtained for him in Huaheine, either by gift or by purchase, I was determined to carry him to Ulietea and fix him there.’

“ Perhaps I have here made a better speech for my friend than he actually delivered, but these were the topics I dictated to him. I observed, that what he concluded with, about carrying him to Ulietea, seemed to meet with the approbation of all the chiefs ; and I instantly saw the reason. Omai had, as I have already mentioned, vainly flattered himself that I meant to use force in restoring him to his father’s lands in Ulietea, and he had talked idly, and without any authority from me, on the subject, to some of the present assembly ; who dreamed of nothing less than a hostile invasion of Ulietea, and of being assisted by me to drive the Bolabola men out of the island. It was of consequence, therefore, that I should undeceive them ; and, in order to do this, I signified in the most peremptory manner, that I neither would assist them in such an enterprise, nor suffer it to be put in execution while I was in their seas ; and that if Omai fixed himself in Ulietea, he must be introduced as a friend, and not forced upon the Bolabola men as their conqueror.

“ This declaration gave a new turn to the sentiments of the council. One of the chiefs immediately expressed himself to this effect :—‘ That the whole island of Huaheine, and every thing in it were mine, and that, therefore, I might give what portion of it I pleased to my friend.’ Omai, who, like the rest of his countrymen, seldom sees things beyond the present moment, was greatly pleased to hear this, thinking, no doubt, that I should be very liberal, and give him enough.—But to offer what it would have been improper to accept, I considered as offering nothing at all ; and, therefore, I now desired, that they would not only assign the particular spot, but also the exact quantity of land which they would allot for the settlement. Upon this, some chiefs, who had already left the assembly, were sent for ; and, after a short consultation among themselves, my request was granted by general consent, and the ground immediately pitched upon adjoining to the house where our meeting was held. The

extent, along the shore of the harbour, was about two hundred yards, and its depth, to the foot of the hill, somewhat more; but a proportional part of the hill was included in the grant.

"This business being settled to the satisfaction of all parties, I set up a tent ashore, established a post, and erected the observatories. The carpenters of both ships were also set to work to build a small house for Omai, in which he might secure the European commodities that were his property. At the same time, some hands were employed in making a garden for his use, planting shaddocks, vines, pine-apples, melons, and the seeds of several other vegetable articles: all of which I had the satisfaction of observing to be in a flourishing state before I left the island.

"Omai now began seriously to attend to his own affairs, and repented heartily of his ill-judged prodigality while at Otaheite. He found at Huaheine a brother, a sister, and a brother-in-law; the sister being married. But these did not plunder him, as he had lately been by his other relations. I was sorry, however, to discover, that though they were too honest to do him any injury, they were of too little consequence in the island to do him any positive good. They had neither authority nor influence to protect his person or his property: and, in that helpless situation, I had reason to apprehend, that he ran great risk of being stripped of every thing he had got from us, as soon as he should cease to have us within his reach, to enforce the good behaviour of his countrymen by an immediate appeal to our irresistible power.

"A man who is richer than his neighbours is sure to be envied by numbers who wish to see him brought down to their own level. But in countries where civilization, law, and religion impose their restraints, the rich have a reasonable ground of security. And, besides, there being in all such communities a diffusion of property, no single individual need fear that the efforts of all the poorer sort can ever be united to injure him, exclusively of others who are equally the objects of envy. It was very different with Omai. He was to live amongst those who are strangers in a great measure, to any other principle of action besides the immediate impulse of their natural feelings. But, what was his principal danger, he was to be placed in the very singular situation of being the only rich man in the community to which he was to belong. And having, by a fortunate connection with us, got into his possession an accumulated quantity of a species of treasure, which none of his countrymen could create by any art or industry of their own, while all coveted a share of this envied wealth, it was natural to apprehend, that all would be ready to join in attempting to strip its sole proprietor.

"To prevent this, if possible, I advised him to make a proper distribution of some of his moveables to two or three of the principal chiefs, who, being thus gratified themselves, might be in-

duced to take him under their patronage, and protect him from the injuries of others. He promised to follow my advice; and I heard, with satisfaction, before I sailed, that this very prudent step had been taken. Not trusting, however, entirely to the operation of gratitude, I had recourse to the more forcible motives of intimidation. With this view, I took every opportunity of notifying to the inhabitants, that it was my intention to return to their island again, after being absent the usual time; and that if I did not find Omai in the same state of security in which I was now to leave him, all those whom I should then discover to have been his enemies, might expect to feel the weight of my resentment. This threatening declaration will probably have no inconsiderable effect. For our successive visits of late years have taught these people to believe that our ships are to return at certain periods; and while they continued to be impressed with such a notion, which I thought it a fair stratagem to confirm, Omai has some prospect of being permitted to thrive upon his new plantation."

While they remained in this harbour, they carried the bread on-shore to clear it of vermin, as the number of cock-roaches that infested the ship at this time is almost incredible. The damage sustained from them was very considerable, and every attempt to destroy them proved fruitless. If any kind of food was exposed for a few minutes, it was covered with these noxious insects, who soon pierced it full of holes, so that it resembled a honeycomb. They proved particularly destructive to birds which had been stuffed for curiosities, and were so fond of ink, that they ate out the writing on the labels fastened to different articles; and the only thing that preserved books from their ravages was the closeness of the binding, which prevented these devourers from insinuating themselves between the leaves. According to Mr. Anderson, they were of two sorts, the *blatta orientalis*, and *germanica*.

The intercourse of trade and friendly offices between the ships and the inhabitants of Huaheine was undisturbed by any accident till the evening of the 22nd, when one of the natives found means to get into Mr. Bayly's observatory, and carry off a sextant, unobserved. Captain Cook was no sooner informed of this theft than he went ashore, and desired Omai to apply to the chiefs to procure restitution. He accordingly made application to them, but they took no steps towards recovering the instrument, being more attentive to a *heeava* that was then exhibiting, till the captain ordered the performers to desist. Being now convinced that he was in earnest, they began to make some inquiry after the delinquent, who was sitting in the midst of them, with such marks of unconcern, that the captain was in great doubt of his being guilty, particularly, as he denied it. Omai, however, assuring him that this was the person, he was sent on-board the ship and there confined: this raised an universal

ferment among the assembled islanders, and the whole body fled with precipitation. The prisoner being examined by Omai, was with difficulty brought to confess where he had concealed the sextant; and it was brought back unhurt the next morning: after this, the natives recovered from their consternation, and began to gather about our men as usual. As the thief appeared to be a shameless villain, Captain Cook punished him with greater severity than he had ever done any culprit: besides having his head and beard shaved, he commanded that both his ears should be cut off, and then dismissed him.

This punishment, however, did not deter him from committing other offences; for, early in the morning of the 25th, a general alarm was spread, occasioned, as was reported, by one of the goats being stolen by this very man; and though, upon examination, they found every thing safe in that quarter, yet it appeared that he had destroyed and carried off from Omai's grounds several vines and cabbage-plants; and he publicly threatened to put him to death, and set fire to his house, as soon as they should quit this place. To prevent his doing any further mischief, the captain ordered him to be seized and confined again on-board the ship with a view of carrying him off the island; and this intention seemed to give general satisfaction to all the chiefs. He was a native of Bolabola; but there were too many of the people here ready to co-operate with him in all his designs. Our ships had indeed always met with more troublesome persons in Huahaine than in any other of the adjacent islands; and it was only fear and the want of proper opportunities that induced them to behave better now. Anarchy and confusion seemed to prevail among them. Their *Earee rahie*, as already observed, was but a child; and they did not find that there was any individual, or any set of men who held the reins of government for him; so that whenever any misunderstanding occurred between our men and the natives, they never knew, with sufficient precision, to whom it was necessary to apply, in order to effect an accommodation, or procure redress.

Omai's house being now almost finished, many of his moveables were carried ashore on the 26th.—Amongst a variety of other useless articles was a box of toys, which, when exposed to public view, seemed greatly to please the gazing multitude. But, as to his pots, kettles, dishes, plates, drinking-mugs, glasses, and the whole train of domestic accommodations, hardly any of his countrymen would so much as look at them. Omai himself now began to think that they were of no use to him; that a baked hog was more savoury food than a boiled one; that a plantain-leaf made as good a dish or plate as pewter; and that a cocoa-nut shell was as convenient a goblet as a black-jack; and, therefore, he very wisely disposed of as many articles of English furniture for the kitchen and pantry as he could find purchasers for, amongst the people of the ships, receiving from them in re-

turn hatchets and other iron tools, which had a more intrinsic value in this part of the world, and added more to his distinguishing superiority over those with whom he was to pass the remainder of his days.

Among the numerous presents bestowed upon him in England, fire-works had not been omitted; some of which were exhibited in the evening of the 28th, before a great multitude of people, who beheld them with a mixture of pleasure and fear. Those which remained were put in order and left with Omai, pursuant to their original destination.

On Thursday, the 30th, early in the morning, the Bolabola man whom they had put in confinement, found means to escape out of the ship, carrying with him the shackle of the bilbo-bolt that had been put about his leg, which was taken from him, as soon as he arrived on-shore, by one of the chiefs, and given to Omai, who quickly came on-board to inform the captain, that his mortal enemy was again let loose on him. He found, upon inquiry, that the sentry placed over the prisoner, and even the whole watch in that part of the ship where he was confined, having fallen asleep, he seized the favourable opportunity, took the key of the irons out of the drawers into which he had seen it put, and set himself at liberty. This escape convinced the commodore that his people had been very remiss in their night duty, which rendered it necessary to chastise those who were now in fault, and to establish some new regulations that might prevent similar negligence in future. He was pleased at hearing afterwards, that the fellow who had escaped had gone over to Ulietea.

Omai was no sooner settled in his new habitation, than Captain Cook began to think of departing from Huaheine, and got every thing off from the shore this evening except a goat big with kid, and a horse and mare, which were left in the possession of their friend, who was now to be finally separated from them. He also gave him a boar and two sows of the English breed; and he had got two or three sows of his own. The horse had covered the mare during their continuance at Otaheite, so that the introduction of a breed of horses into these islands has probably succeeded by this valuable present.

“The history of Omai,” says Captain Cook, “will perhaps interest a very numerous class of readers, more than any other occurrence of a voyage, the objects of which do not, in general, promise much entertainment. Every circumstance, therefore, which may serve to convey a satisfactory account of the exact situation in which he was left, will be thought worth preserving; and the following particulars are added to complete the view of his domestic establishment. He had picked up at Otaheite four or five *toutous*; the two New Zealand youths remained with him, and his brother and some others joined him at Huaheine; so that his family consisted already of eight or ten persons; if that can be called a family, to which not a single female as yet be-

longed; nor, I doubt, was likely to belong, unless its master becomes less volatile. At present, Omai did not seem at all disposed to take unto himself a wife.—The house which we erected for him was twenty-four feet by eighteen, and ten feet high. It was composed of boards, the spoils of our military operations at Eimeo; and in building it, as few nails as possible were used, that there might be no inducement, from the love of iron, to pull it down. It was settled that, immediately after our departure, he should begin to build a large house after the fashion of his country; one end of which was to be brought over that which we had erected, so as to enclose it entirely for greater security. In this work some of the chiefs promised to assist him; and if the intended building should cover the ground which he marked out, it will be as large as most upon the island.

His European weapons consisted of a musket, bayonet, and a cartouch-box, a fowling-piece, two pair of pistols, and two or three swords or cutlasses. The possession of these made him quite happy; which was my only view in giving him such presents. For I was always of opinion that he would have been happier without fire-arms and other European weapons, than with them; as such implements of war, in the hands of one whose prudent use of them I had some grounds for mistrusting, would rather increase his dangers than establish his superiority. After he had got on-shore every thing that belonged to him, and was settled in his house, he had most of the officers of both ships two or three times at dinner, and his table was always well supplied with the very best provisions that the island produced.

“ Before I sailed I had the following inscription cut upon the outside of his house:—

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 2nd de Novembris, 1777.

Naves. { Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.
Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.

“ On the 2nd of November, at four in the afternoon, I took the advantage of a breeze which then sprung up at east, and sailed out of the harbour. Most of our friends remained on-board till the ships were under sail, when to gratify their curiosity, I ordered five guns to be fired. They then all took their leave except Omai, who remained till we were at sea. We had come to sail by a hawser fastened to the shore. In casting the ship it parted, being cut by the rocks, and the outer end was left behind, as those who cast it off did not perceive that it was broken; so that it became necessary to send a boat to bring it on-board. In this boat Omai went ashore, after taking a very affectionate farewell of all the officers. He sustained himself with a manly resolution till he came to me. Then his utmost efforts to conceal his tears failed; and Mr. King, who went in the boat, told me that he wept all the time in going ashore.

“ It was no small satisfaction to reflect that we had brought

him safe back to the very spot from which he was taken. And yet, such is the strange nature of human affairs, that it is probable we left him in a less desirable situation than he was in before his connection with us. I do not, by this, mean, that because he has tasted the sweets of civilized life, he must become more miserable from being obliged to abandon all thoughts of continuing them. I confine myself to this single disagreeable circumstance, that the advantages he received from us have placed him in a more hazardous situation with respect to his personal safety. Omai, from being much caressed in England, lost sight of his original condition, and never considered in what manner his acquisitions, either of knowledge or of riches, would be esteemed by his countrymen at his return; which were the only things he could have to recommend him to them now, more than before, and on which he could build either his future greatness or happiness. He seemed even to have mistaken their genius in this respect, and, in some measure, to have forgotten their customs; otherwise he must have known the extreme difficulty there would be in getting himself admitted as a person of rank, where there is, perhaps, no instance of a man's being raised from an inferior station by the greatest merit. Rank seems to be the very foundation of all distinction here, and of its attendant, power; and so pertinaciously, or rather blindly, adhered to, that, unless a person has some degree of it, he will certainly be despised and hated, if he assumes the appearance of exercising any authority. This was really the case, in some measure, with Omai, though his countrymen were pretty cautious of expressing their sentiments while we remained amongst them.—Had he made a proper use of the presents he brought with him from England, this, with the knowledge he had acquired by travelling so far, might have enabled him to form the most useful connections. But we have given too many instances, in the course of our narrative, of his childish inattention to this obvious means of advancing his interest. His schemes seemed to be of a higher, though ridiculous nature; indeed I might say meaner; for revenge, rather than a desire of becoming great, appeared to actuate him from the beginning. This, however, may be excused, if we consider that it is common to his countrymen. His father, was doubtless a man of considerable property in Ulitea, when that island was conquered by those of Bolabola, and, with many others, sought refuge in Huaheine, where he died, and left Omai, with some other children, who by that means became totally dependant. In this situation he was taken up by Captain Furneaux, and carried to England. Whether he really expected, from his treatment there, that any assistance would be given him against the enemies of his father and his country, or whether he imagined that his own personal courage and superiority of knowledge would be sufficient to dispossess the conquerors of Ulitea, is uncertain; but from the beginning of the voyage this

was his constant theme. He would not listen to our remonstrances on so wild a determination; but flew into a passion, if more moderate and reasonable counsels were proposed for his advantage. Nay, so infatuated and attached to his favourite scheme was he, that he affected to believe that those people would certainly quit the conquered island as soon as they should hear of his arrival in Otaheite. As we advanced, however, on our voyage, he became more sensible of his error; and by the time we reached the Friendly Islands, had even such apprehensions of his reception at home, that he would fain have staid behind at Tongataboo, under Feenon's protection. At these islands he squandered away much of his European treasure very unnecessarily; and he was equally imprudent at Tiaraboo, where he could have no view of making friends, as he had not any intention of remaining there. At Matavai he continued the same inconsiderate behaviour, till I absolutely put a stop to his prosecution; and he formed such improper connections there, that Otoo, who was at first much disposed to countenance him, afterwards openly expressed his dislike of him, on account of his conduct. It was not, however, too late to recover his favour; and he might have settled to great advantage in Otaheite, as he had formerly lived several years there, and was now a good deal noticed by Towha, whose valuable present, of a very large, double canoe, we have seen above. The objection to admitting him to some rank would also have been much lessened, if he had fixed at Otaheite; as a native will always find it more difficult to accomplish such a change of state among his countrymen than a stranger, who naturally claims respect. But Omai remained undetermined to the last, and would not, I believe, have adopted my plan of settlement in Huaheine, if I had not so explicitly refused to employ force in restoring him to his father's possessions. Whether the remains of his European wealth, which, after all his improvident waste, was still considerable, will be more prudently used by him, or whether the steps I took, as already explained, to ensure him protection in Huaheine, shall have proved effectual, must be left to the decision of future navigators of this ocean, with whom it cannot but be a principal object of curiosity to trace the future fortunes of our traveller. At present, I can only conjecture, that his greatest danger will arise from the very impolitic declarations of his antipathy to the inhabitants of Bolabola. For these people, from a principle of jealousy, will no doubt endeavour to render him obnoxious to those of Huaheine, as they are at peace with that island at present, and may easily effect their designs, many of them living there. This is a circumstance which, of all others, he might the most easily have avoided; for they were not only free from any aversion to him, but a person whom we found at Tiaraboo, as an ambassador or priest, absolutely offered to reinstate him in the property that was formerly his father's; but he refused

this pre-emptorily, and to the very last continued determined to take the first opportunity that offered of satisfying his revenge in battle. To this I guess he is not a little spurred by the coat of mail he brought from England; clothed in which, and in possession of some fire-arms, he fancies that he shall be invincible.

“Whatever faults belonged to Omai's character, they were more than overbalanced by his great good nature and docile disposition. During the whole time he was with me I very seldom had reason to be seriously displeas'd with his general conduct. His grateful heart always retained the highest sense of the favours he had received in England; nor will he ever forget those who honoured him with their protection and friendship, during his stay there. He had a tolerable share of understanding, but wanted application and perseverance to exert it; so that his knowledge of things was very general, and in many instances very imperfect. He was not a man of much observation. There were many useful arts, as well as elegant amusements, amongst the people of the Friendly Islands, which he might have conveyed to his own, where they probably would have been readily adopted, as being so much in their own way; but I never found that he used the least endeavour to make himself master of any one. This kind of indifference is indeed the characteristic foible of his nation. Europeans have visited them at times for these ten years past, yet we could not discover the slightest trace of any attempt to profit by this intercourse; nor have they hitherto copied after us in any one thing. We are not, therefore, to expect that Omai will be able to introduce many of our arts and customs amongst them, or much improve those to which they have been long habituated. I am confident, however, that he will endeavour to bring to perfection the various fruits and vegetables we planted, which will be no small acquisition. But the greatest benefit these islands are likely to receive from Omai's travels will be the animals that have been left upon them, which probably they never would have got, had he not come to England. When these multiply, of which I think there is little doubt, Otaheite and the Society Islands will equal, if not exceed, any place in the known world for provisions.

“Omai's return, and the substantial proofs he brought back with him of our liberality, encouraged many to offer themselves as volunteers to attend me to *Pretane*, (Britain.) I took every opportunity of expressing my determination to reject all such applications; but, notwithstanding this, Omai, who was very ambitious of remaining the only great traveller, being afraid lest I might be prevailed upon to put others in a situation of rivalling him, frequently put me in mind, that Lord Sandwich had told him no others of his countrymen were to come to England.

“If there had been the most distant probability of any ship being again sent to New Zealand, I would have brought the two youths of that country home with me, as both of them were very

desirous of continuing with us. Tiarooa, the eldest, was an exceedingly well-disposed young man, with strong, natural sense, and capable of receiving any instruction. He seemed to be very sensible of the inferiority of his own country to these islands, and resigned himself, though, perhaps, with reluctance, to end his days in ease and plenty in Huaheine. But the other was so strongly attached to us that he was taken out of the ship, and carried ashore by force. He was a witty, smart boy, and on that account much noticed on-board."

As soon as the boat in which Omai was conveyed ashore had returned with the remainder of the lawser to the ship, they hoisted it in, and stood over for Ulietea without delay. The next morning, which was the 3rd of November, they made sail round the southern end of that island, for the harbour of Ohamano.—They met with variable, light airs and calms alternately, so that at twelve o'clock they were still at the distance of a league from the mouth of the harbour; and while they were thus detained, Oreo, the chief of the island, with his son and son-in-law, came off to pay them a visit. All the boats were now hoisted out, and sent a-head to tow, being assisted by a slight, southerly breeze.—This soon failing, and being succeeded by an easterly one, which blew right out of the harbour, they were obliged to anchor at its entrance, about two o'clock, and warp in, which employed them till night. They were no sooner within the harbour than the ships were surrounded with canoes, filled with the natives, who brought a supply of fruits and hogs, which they exchanged for their commodities.

The following day, the Resolution was moored close to the northern shore, at the head of the harbour, and the Discovery alongside the southern shore. Captain Cook in the meantime returned Oreo's visit, and presented that chief with a red-feathered cap from Tongataboo, a shirt, a linen gown, and a few other things of less value. Oreo and some of his friends then accompanied him on-board to dinner. On Thursday, the 6th, the observatories were set up, and the necessary instruments carried on-shore: the two succeeding days, Captain Cook, Mr. King, and Mr. Bayly, observed the sun's azimuths, both on-shore and on-board, with all the compasses, in order to discover the variation. Nothing remarkable happened till very early on the morning of the 13th, when a marine, named John Harrison, who was sentinel at the observatories, deserted, taking with him his musket and accoutrements. As soon as they gained intelligence which way he had gone, a party was detached in search of him; but they returned towards the evening without success. The next day, Captain Cook applied to the chief concerning this affair, who promised to send a party of the islanders after the fugitive, and gave hopes that he should be brought back in the course of that day: this, however, did not happen; and they had reason to imagine that the chief had taken no steps towards finding him.

They had at this time a considerable number of the natives about the ships, and several thefts were committed, the consequence of which being apprehended by them, very few of them came to visit our men the next morning; Oreo himself caught the alarm, and fled with his whole family. Captain Cook considered this as a good opportunity to insist upon their delivering up the deserter; and having heard that he was then at a place called Hamao, situated on the other side of the island, he repaired thither with two armed boats, attended by a native. In their way they met with the chief, who also embarked with them. The captain with a few of his men landing about a mile and a-half from the spot, marched up to it with great expedition, lest the sight of the boats should give the alarm, and allow the offender sufficient time to make his escape to the mountains. This precaution proved unnecessary; for the natives of that part of the island having obtained information of the captain's approach, were prepared to deliver up the fugitive. He was found with his musket lying before him, seated betwixt two women, who, the instant that the captain entered the house, rose up to plead in his vindication. As such proceedings ought to be discouraged, the captain with a stern look, bade them begone, upon which they burst into tears, and retired. Paha, the chief of that district, now came with a sucking-pig and a plantain-tree, which he was on the point of presenting to Captain Cook, as a peace-offering, who rejected it; and having ordered the chief to quit his presence, embarked with Harrison in one of the boats, and returned to the ships. After this, harmony was speedily restored: the delinquent made no other excuse for his conduct than that the natives had enticed him away, which, perhaps, was in a great measure true, as Paha and the two women above-mentioned had been at the ship the day before his desertion. As he had remained at his station till within a few minutes of the time in which he was to have been relieved by another, the punishment he received was not very severe.

About a fortnight after they had arrived in Ulietea, Omai dispatched two of his people in a canoe, with intelligence, that he continued undisturbed by the inhabitants of Huaheine, and that every thing succeeded with him, except that his goat had died in kidding. This information was accompanied with a request, that Captain Cook would send him another goat, and also two axes. Pleased with this additional opportunity of serving his friend, the captain sent back the messengers to Huaheine, on the 18th, with the axes, and a male and female kid.

On Wednesday, the 19th, the commodore delivered to Captain Clerke his instructions how to proceed in case of separation after quitting these islands. The purport of these instructions was as follows:—That whereas the passage from the Society Isles to the northern coast of America was of considerable length, and as a part of it must be performed in the depth of winter, when

boisterous weather must be expected, which might perhaps occasion a separation, Captain Clerke should take all possible care to prevent this; but that if the two ships should chance to be separated, he, after searching for Captain Cook, and not finding him in five days, was to proceed towards the coast of New Albion, and endeavour to fall in with it in the latitude of 45 deg. where he was to cruize for him ten days; and not seeing him in that time, was to put into the first convenient harbour in, or to the north of, that latitude, to obtain refreshments, and to take in wood and water; that, during his continuance in port, he was constantly to look out for Captain Cook; and if the latter did not join him before the 1st of April following, he was to proceed northward to the latitude of 56 deg. where, at such a distance from the coast as did not exceed fifteen leagues, he was to cruize for him till the 10th of May; and not finding him, was to proceed on a northerly course, and attempt to discover a passage into the Atlantic Ocean, either through Hudson's or Baffin's Bays, as directed by the instructions of the Board of Admiralty: that, if he should fail in these endeavours, he was to repair to the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, in Kamtschatka, and pass the winter there; but that if he could not procure refreshments at that port, he was at liberty to go where he should think proper, leaving with the governor, before his departure, an account of his destination, to be delivered to Captain Cook on his arrival; and that, in the spring of the year following (1779) he was to return to the port above-mentioned; that if he then received no further orders from Captain Cook, so as to justify his pursuing any other measures than those which were pointed out in the instructions of the Lords of the Admiralty, his future proceedings were to be directed by them; and that, in case of being prevented, by illness or any other cause, from carrying these and the instructions of their Lordships into execution, he was to leave them with the officer who was next in command.

While they lay moored to the shore, they scrubbed both sides of the bottoms of the vessels, and also fixed some plates of tin under the binds. These plates Captain Cook received from the ingenious Mr. Pelham, secretary to the Commissioners for victualling the royal navy, for the purpose of trying whether tin would succeed as well as copper in sheathing the bottoms of ships.

On Monday, the 24th, in the morning, the commodore was informed, that two of the Discovery's people, one of whom was a midshipman, were missing. Not long after, he learned from the natives that they had embarked in a canoe the preceding night, and were now at the other end of the island. As the midshipman had expressed a desire of continuing at one end of these islands, it was extremely probable that he and his companion had gone off with that intent. Captain Clerke, therefore, with two armed boats, and a detachment of marines, set out in quest

of the fugitives, but returned in the evening without success. From the conduct of the islanders, he was of opinion, that they intended to conceal the deserters, and with this view had deceived him with false information, directing him to seek for them where they could not be found. He was not mistaken; for, the next morning, intelligence was brought, that the two runaways were in the isle of Otaha. These not being the only persons in the ships who were desirous of remaining at these favourite islands, it was necessary, in order to give an effectual discouragement to any further desertion, to recover them at all events. Captain Cook, therefore, determined to go in pursuit of them himself, having observed that the natives seldom attempted to amuse him with false information. He accordingly set out with two armed boats, accompanied by Oreo himself: they proceeded without stopping at any place, till they came to the eastern side of Otaha, where they put ashore; and the chief dispatched a man before them, with orders to seize the fugitives, and to keep them till the captain and his attendants should arrive with the boats. But when they had got to the place where they expected to find them, they were informed that they had quitted this island, and gone to Bolabola the preceding day. The captain not choosing to follow them thither, returned to the ships, with a full determination to have recourse to a measure which, he had reason to believe, would compel the natives to restore them.

On the 26th, soon after the break of day, Oreo, with his son, daughter, and son-in-law, having come on-board the *Resolution*, Captain Cook resolved to detain the three last till the deserters should be delivered up. With this view, Captain Clerke invited them on-board his ship, and as soon as they arrived in his cabin, a sentinel was placed at the door, and the window secured. This proceeding greatly surprised them; and Captain Clerke having explained the reason of it, they burst into tears, and begged he would not kill them. He assured them he would not, and that the moment his people were brought back they should be released. This, however, did not remove their uneasiness, and they bewailed their fate in silent sorrow. The chief being with Captain Cook when he received intelligence of this affair, immediately mentioned it to him, imagining that this step had been taken without his knowledge and approbation. The captain instantly undeceived him, and then he began to entertain apprehensions with respect to his own situation, and his countenance indicated the greatest perturbation of mind. But the captain soon quieted his fears, by telling him that he was at liberty to quit the ship whenever he chose, and to take such steps towards the recovery of the two men as he should judge best calculated for that purpose; and that, if he should meet with success, his friends on-board the *Discovery* should be released from their confinement; if not, that they should certainly be carried away with them. The captain added, that the chief's

conduct, as well as that of many of his countrymen, in not only assisting these two men to make their escape, but in endeavouring at this very time to prevail upon others to follow them, would justify any measure that would serve to put a stop to such proceedings. This explanation of the motives upon which the commodore acted, seemed to remove, in a great degree, that general consternation into which Oreo and his people, who were present, were at first thrown. But, though relieved from all apprehensions with regard to their own safety, they were still under the deepest concern for the prisoners on-board the *Discovery*. Numbers of them went under the stern of the ship in canoes, and lamented their captivity with long and loud exclamations. The name of Poedooa (for that was the appellation of Oreo's daughter,) resounded from every quarter; and the women not only made a dismal howling, but struck their bosoms, and cut their heads with shark's teeth, which occasioned a considerable effusion of blood.

The chief now dispatched a canoe to Bolabola, with a message to Opoony, king of that island, informing him with what had happened, and requesting him to seize the two deserters, and send them back. The messenger, who was the father of Oreo's son-in-law, Pootoe, came to receive Captain Cook's commands before his departure, who strictly enjoined him not to return without the fugitives, and to tell Opoony from him, that if they had left the isle of Bolabola, he must send canoes in pursuit of them.

The impatient natives, not thinking proper to trust to the return of our people for the release of the prisoners, meditated an attempt which, if it had not been prevented, might have involved them in still greater distress. Between five and six o'clock, Captain Cook, who was then on-shore, abreast of the ships, observed that all their canoes in and about the harbour began to move off. He inquired in vain for the cause of this, till our people calling to him from the *Discovery*, informed him that some of the islanders had seized Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore, as they were walking at a small distance from the ships. The commodore, struck with the boldness of this scheme of retaliation, which seemed to counteract him in his own way, instantly commanded his people to arm; and in a few minutes a strong party, under the command of Mr. King, was sent to the rescue of our two gentlemen. Two armed boats and a party under Mr. Williamson were dispatched at the same time, to intercept the flying canoes in their retreat to the shore. These detachments had scarcely gone out of sight, when intelligence arrived that our men had been misinformed, upon which they were immediately called in.

It manifestly appeared, however, from several corroborating particulars, that the natives had actually formed the design of seizing Captain Clerke; and they even made no secret in speaking of it the following day. But the principal part of their plan of operations was to have laid hold of the person of Captain Cook. He was accustomed to bathe every evening in the fresh water;

on which occasion he frequently went alone, and always unarmed. Expecting him to go this evening as usual, they had resolved upon seizing him and Captain Clerke also, if he had accompanied him. But Captain Cook, after confining the chief's family, had taken care to avoid putting himself in their power, and had cautioned Captain Clerke and the officers not to go to any considerable distance from the ships. Oreo, in the course of the afternoon, asked the commodore three or four times, if he would not go to the bathing-place, till, at length, finding he could not be prevailed upon, he retired with his people, notwithstanding all their entreaties to the contrary. Having no suspicion at this time of their design, Captain Cook imagined that a sudden panic had seized him which would probably be soon over. Being disappointed with respect to him, they fixed upon those who were more in their power. It was a fortunate circumstance that they did not succeed in their design, and that no mischief was done on the occasion: no muskets being fired except two or three to stop the canoes, to which firing, perhaps, Captain Clerke and Mr. Gore owed their safety,* for, at that moment a party of the islanders, armed with clubs, were marching towards them, but dispersed on hearing the report of the muskets.

This conspiracy was first discovered by a girl who had been brought from Huaheine by one of our officers. She happening to overhear some of the Ulieteans say that they would seize Messrs. Clerke and Gore, immediately ran to acquaint the first of our people she met with. Those who had been intrusted with the execution of the design, threatened to put her to death as soon as our ships should quit Ulietea, for disappointing them. Being aware of this, Captain Cooke contrived that the girl's friends should come a day or two afterwards, and take her out of the ship, to convey her to a place where she might remain concealed till she could find an opportunity of returning to Huaheine.

On Thursday, the 27th, our men took down the observatories, and carried on-board whatever they had ashore, they then unmoored the ships, and moved a little way down the harbour, where they anchored again. Towards the afternoon, the natives, shaking off their apprehensions, gathered round and on-board the ships as usual; and the displeasing transactions of the preceding day seemed to be almost forgotten by both parties. In the succeeding night the wind blew in hard squalls, which were accompanied with heavy showers of rain. In one of these squalls the cable by which the Resolution was riding at anchor parted; but, as they had another anchor ready to let go, the ship was quickly brought up again.

No account of the two fugitives having been received from Bolabola, Oreo now set out for that island, desiring Captain

* It is not improbable that they were also indebted for their safety to Captain Clerke's walking with a pistol in his hand, which he once fired. We mention this circumstance on the authority of Captain King.

Cook to follow him the next day with the ships; this was the captain's intention, but the wind prevented his getting out to sea; the same wind, however, which detained the vessels in the harbour, brought back Oreo with the two deserters from Bolabola. They had reached Otaha on the night of desertion, but being unable, for the want of wind, to get to any of the islands lying to the eastward, as they at first intended, they proceeded to Bolabola, and thence to a little island called Toobae, where they were apprehended by Pootoe's father. As soon as they were brought on-board, the three prisoners in the Discovery were restored to their liberty. Such was the termination of an affair which had given the commodore much trouble and vexation.

The wind continuing constantly between the north and west, kept the vessels in the harbour till Sunday, the 7th of December, when, at eight o'clock in the morning, they weighed and made sail, with a light breeze at the north-east point. During the preceding week, they had been visited by persons from all quarters of the island, who afforded a plentiful supply of hogs and green plantains, so that the time they remained wind-bound in the harbour was not totally lost; for green plantains are an excellent succedaneum for bread, and will keep good for two or three weeks; besides being furnished with these provisions, they also took in plenty of wood and water.

The Ulieteans appeared to be, in general, smaller and more black than the natives of the adjacent islands, and seemed also less orderly, which may, perhaps, be owing to their having become subject to the inhabitants of Bolabola. Oreo, their chief, is only a kind of deputy of the Bolabolan monarch; and the conquest seems to have diminished the number of subordinate chiefs resident among them: they are, therefore, less immediately under the eye of those whose interest it is to enforce a proper obedience. Though Ulietea is now reduced to this state of humiliating dependence, it was formerly, as our men were informed, the most eminent of this group of islands, and was probably the first seat of government; for they were told that the present royal family of Otaheite derives its descent from that which ruled here before the late revolution. The dethroned king of Ulietea, whose name is Ooroo, resides at Huaheine, furnishing in his own person an instance not only of the instability of power, but also of the respect paid by these islanders to particular families of princely rank: for they allow Ooroo to retain all the ensigns which are appropriated by them to royalty, notwithstanding his having been deprived of his dominions. A similar instance of this was observed during their stay at Ulietea, where one of their occasional visitants was Captain Cook's old friend Oree, late chief of Huaheine, who still maintained his consequence, and was constantly attended by a numerous retinue.

Having taken leave of Ulietea, they steered for Bolabola. The principal reason for visiting this island was to procure one of the

anchors which had been lost at Otaheite by Monsieur de Bougainville. This, Captain Cook was informed, had been afterwards found by the natives there, and sent by them to Opoony, the chief of Bolabola. It was not on account of being in want of anchors that they were anxious to get possession of it, but having parted with all their hatchets, and other iron tools and implements in purchasing refreshments, they were now obliged to create a fresh assortment of trading articles, by fabricating them from the spare iron they could find on-board, and even the greatest part of that had been already expended. Captain Cook, therefore, supposed Monsieur de Bougainville's anchor would in a great measure supply the want of that useful material, and he did not entertain a doubt that Opoony might be induced to part with it.

Oreo, accompanied by six or eight others from Ulietea, attended them to Bolabola: and, indeed, most of the natives, except the chief, would gladly have taken a passage to England. At sun-set, being off the south point of Bolabola, they shortened sail, and passed the night making short boards. On the 8th, at day-break, made sail for the harbour on the west-side of the island. The wind being scant, it was nine o'clock before they were near enough to send away a boat to sound the entrance.

The master, when he returned with the boat, reported that the entrance of the harbour was rocky at the bottom, but that there was good ground within, and the depth of water twenty-five and twenty-seven fathoms, and that there was room to turn the ships in. Upon this information they attempted to work the ships in; but the wind and tide being against them, they made two or three trips, and found it could not be accomplished till the tide should turn in their favour; whereupon Captain Cook gave up the design of carrying the ships into the harbour, and, embarking in one of the boats, attended by Oreo and his companions, was rowed in for the island.

As soon as they were got ashore, the commodore was introduced to Opoony, surrounded by a vast concourse of people; the necessary formality of compliments being over, he requested the chief to give him the anchor; and to induce him to comply with the request, produced the present he intended for him; it consisted of a linen night-gown, some gauze handkerchiefs, a shirt, a looking-glass, some beads and toys, and six axes. Opoony, however, refused to accept the present till the commodore had received the anchor, and ordered three persons to go and deliver it to him, with directions to receive from him what he thought proper in return. With these messengers they set out in their boats for a neighbouring island, where the anchor had been deposited, but it was neither so large nor so perfect as was expected. By the mark that was upon it, they found that it had originally weighed seven hundred pounds: but it now wanted the two palms, the ring, and part of the shank. The reason of Opoony's refusing Captain Cook's present was now apparent:

he doubtless supposed that the anchor, in its present state, was so much inferior to it in value, that, when he saw it he would be displeas'd. The commodore, notwithstanding, took the anchor, as he found it, and sent the whole of the present which he at first intended. This negociation being completed, the commodore returned on-board, hoisted in the boats, and made sail to the north; while they were hoisting in the boats, they were visited by some of the natives, who came off in three or four canoes to see the ships. They brought with them one pig and a few cocoa-nuts.

Had they remained there till the next day, they would probably have been supplied with plenty of provisions; and the natives would doubtless be disappointed when they found they were gone: but having already a good stock of hogs and fruit on-board, and not many articles left to purchase more, they had no inducement to defer the prosecution of their voyage.

Oteavanooga, the harbour of Bolabola, situated on the west-side of the island, is very capacious; and, though they did not enter it, Captain Cook had the satisfaction of being informed, by persons employed by him for that purpose, that it was a very proper place for the reception of ships.

Towards the middle of the island is a lofty double-peaked mountain, which appeared to be barren on the east-side, but on the west-side had some trees or bushes. The lower grounds towards the sea, like the other islands of this ocean, are covered with cocoa-palms, and bread-fruit trees. There are many little islets that surround it, which add to the number of its inhabitants, and to the amount of its vegetable productions.

Considering the small extent of Bolabola, being only eight leagues in circumference, it is remarkable that its people should have been able to conquer Ulietea and Otaha; the former of which island is alone more than double its size. In each of Captain Cook's three voyages, the war which produced this great revolution was frequently mentioned; and, as it may amuse the reader we shall give the history of it, as related by themselves:—

“Ulietea and Otaha had long been friends; or, as the natives emphatically express it, they were considered as two brothers, whose views and interests were the same. The chief of Huaheine was also admitted as their friend, but not in so eminent a degree. Like a traitor, Otaha leagu'd with Bolabola, jointly to attack Ulietea, whose people required the assistance of their friends of Huaheine against these united powers. The inhabitants of Bolabola were encouraged by a prophetess who predicted their success: and, that they might rely upon her predictions, she desired a man might be sent to a particular part of the sea, where from a great depth would arise a stone. He was accordingly sent in a canoe to the place specified, and was going instantly to dive after the stone, when, behold, it spontaneously

started up to the surface, and came immediately into his hand! All the people were astonished at the sight: the stone was deemed sacred, and deposited in the house of the *catooa*, and is still preserved, as a proof that this prophetess had great influence with the divinity. Elevated with the hopes of victory, the canoes of Bolabola attacked those of Ulietea and Huaheine; the encounter was of long duration, and, notwithstanding the miracle, the Bolabola fleet would have been vanquished, had not that of Otaha arrived at the critical moment; the fortune of the day was now turned, and their enemies were totally defeated. Two days after the men of Bolabola invaded Huaheine, of which they made themselves masters, it being weakly defended, as most of its warriors were then absent; many of its fugitives, however, having got to Otaheite, there related their lamentable tale: this so affected their own countrymen, and those of Ulietea, whom they found in that island, that they obtained their assistance; they were furnished with only ten fighting canoes, and with that inconsiderable force effected a landing at Huaheine, when dark at night, and taking the Bolabola men by surprise, killed many of them, and dispersed the rest. Thus, they again possessed themselves of their own island, which now remains independent, and is governed by its own chiefs. When the united fleets of Ulietea and Huaheine were defeated, the men of Bolabola were applied to by their allies of Otaha, to be allowed an equal share of the conquests; this being refused, the alliance broke, and during the war Otaha was conquered, as well as Ulietea, both of which remain subject to Bolabola, the chiefs by whom they are governed being only deputies to Opoony, the king of that island." Such was their history of the war.

It has already been observed, that these people are extremely deficient in recollecting the exact dates of past events, and respecting this war, though it happened but a few years ago, our men could only guess at the time of its commencement and duration, the natives not being able to satisfy their inquiries with any precision. The final conquest of Ulietea, which terminated the war, had been achieved before Captain Cook was there in 1769; but it was very apparent, that peace had not been long restored, as marks of recent hostilities having been committed, were then to be seen. By attending to the age of Teereetareca, the present chief of Huaheine, some additional, collateral proof may be gathered. He did not appear to be above ten or twelve years of age, and his father, it was said, had been killed in one of the engagements.

The Bolabola men, since the conquest of Ulietea and Otaha, are considered as invincible; and their fame is so far extended, that even at Otaheite, if not dreaded, they are respected for their valour. It is asserted, that they never fly from an enemy, and that they always are victorious, against an equal number of the other islanders. Their neighbours too, ascribe much to the

superiority of their god, who, they believed, detained them by contrary winds at Ulietea.

The estimation in which the Bolabola men are held at Otaheite, may be gathered from Monsieur Bougainville's anchor having been sent to their sovereign. The intention of transporting the Spanish bull to their island, must be ascribed to the same cause. And, they already possessed a third European curiosity, a male animal brought to Otaheite by the Spaniards. This animal, had been so imperfectly described by the natives, that our men had been much puzzled to conjecture what it could be; some good, however, generally arises out of evil, and when Captain Clerke's deserters were brought back from Bolabola, they told the crew, that animal had been shown to them, and that it was a ram. If the men had not deserted, it is probable they would never have known this.

In consequence of this intelligence, Captain Cook, when he landed to meet Opoony, carried an ewe on-shore, of the Cape of Good Hope breed, by which he has probably laid the foundation for a breed of sheep at Bolabola. He also left with Oreo, at Ulietea, two goats, and an English boar and sow; so, that the race of hogs, will be considerably improved at Otaheite, and all the neighbouring islands; and, they will, perhaps, be stocked with many valuable European animals.

When this is really the case, these islands will be unrivalled in abundance and variety of refreshments, for the supply of navigators: even in their present state, they are hardly to be excelled, and when the inhabitants are not disturbed by intestine broils, which has been the case for several years past, their productions are numerous and plentiful.

If our voyagers had possessed a greater assortment of goods, and a proper quantity of salt, they might have salted as much pork as would have been sufficient to last both ships almost a year: but they quite exhausted their trading commodities at the Friendly Islands, Otaheite, and its neighbourhood. Their axes in particular were nearly gone, with which alone hogs were in general to be purchased. The salt that remained on-board, was not more than requisite for curing fifteen puncheons of meat.

The following process of curing pork has been adopted by Captain Cook in his several voyages. The hogs were killed in the evening, when cleaned they were cut up, and the bone taken out: the meat was salted while it was hot, laid so as to permit the juices to drain from it till the next morning; it was then salted again, put into a cask, and covered with pickle. It remained in this situation for four or five days, when it was taken out and carefully examined; and, if any of it appeared to be in the least tainted, which was sometimes the case, it was separated from the rest, which was re-packed, heaped up, and filled with good pickle. It was again examined in about eight or ten days' time: but there appeared to be no necessity for it, as it

was generally found to be all perfectly cured. Bay and white salt mixed together answer the best, though either of them will do alone. Great care was taken, that none of the large blood-vessels remained in the meat, and not too much should be packed together at the first salting, lest those pieces which are in the middle should heat, and hinder the salt from penetrating them. In tropical climates meat ought not to be salted in rainy, sultry weather.

Europeans having of late so frequently visited these islands, they may on that account, have been induced to breed a larger stock of hogs; knowing, that whenever our people visit them, they may be certain of receiving what they esteem a valuable consideration for them. They daily expect the Spaniards at Otaheite, and in two or three years time they will doubtless expect the English there, as well as at the other islands. It is useless to assure them that our men will not return, for they suppose they cannot avoid it; though none of them either know or inquire the reason of their coming. It would, perhaps, have been better for these people to have been ignorant of their superiority, than after once knowing it to be abandoned to their original incapacity. They cannot, indeed, be restored to their former happy mediocrity, if the intercourse between them should be discontinued.

It is in a manner incumbent on the Europeans to pay them occasional visits, once in three or four years, to supply them with those articles which we by introducing have given them a predilection for. The want of such supplies may be severely felt, when it is too late, to return to their old, imperfect contrivances, which they now despise and discard. When the iron tools with which Captain Cook had furnished them are worn out, their own will be almost forgotten. A stone hatchet, is now as great a curiosity among them, as an iron one was seven or eight years ago; and a chisel made of bone, or stone, is no where to be seen. Spike-nails, have been substituted in the room of the latter articles; and, they are weak enough to imagine, that their store of them is inexhaustible, for they were no longer sought after.

Knives happened at this time, to be in high estimation at Ulitea: and axes and hatchets bore unrivalled sway at all the islands. Respecting articles merely ornamental, these islanders are as changeable as the most polished European nations; for, an article which may be prized by them to-day, may perhaps, be rejected by them to-morrow, as a fashion or whim may alter. But iron implements are so evidently useful, that they must continue to be high in their estimation. They would indeed be miserable, if they should cease to receive supplies of what appears necessary to their comfortable existence, as they are destitute of the materials, and ignorant of the art of fabricating them.

In the former relations too much has already been published, respecting some of the modes of life which rendered Otaheite so pleasing an abode to many of our people; and, if any finishing strokes could be added to that picture, they would only exhibit a view of such licentious manners as cannot fail to be disgusting.

Having now concluded the account respecting these islands, which stand so conspicuous in the list of Captain Cook's discoveries, we refer our reader to the following descriptions, for which we are indebted to Mr. Anderson.

After some prefatory remarks, on the accounts of the successive voyages of Captain Wallis, Monsieur de Bougainville, and Captain Cook, Mr. Anderson begins to relate such particulars concerning Otaheite, and its neighbouring islands, as he was able to procure from Omai, or by conversing with the other natives:—

“For the greatest part of the year the wind blows from between east south-east and east north-east. It sometimes blows with considerable force, and is called by the natives *Maarae*. When the wind blows strong the weather is usually cloudy, with some rain; but when it is more moderate, it is clear, settled, and serene: if the wind should veer to south-east, or south south-east, it blows more gently, and is called *Maoui*. In December and January, when the sun is nearly vertical, both the winds and weather are very variable; but it often blows from west north-west, or north-west. This wind is called *Toerou*; and is usually attended with cloudy weather, and sometimes rain. It seldom continues more than five or six days without interruption, and is the only wind that will permit the inhabitants of the islands to leeward, to visit this in their canoes. If the wind is still more northerly, it has the different appellation of *Erapotaia*. The wind from south-west and west south-west is more frequent than the former, and is usually gentle, with occasional calms and breezes, yet it sometimes blows in very brisk squalls. The weather is then generally cloudy and rainy, with a close, hot air, often accompanied with much thunder and lightning. It is called by the natives *Etoa*.

“Though the natives have no very accurate knowledge of these changes, they pretend to have drawn some conclusions from their effects. When the sea has a hollow sound, and dashes mildly on the shore, they say it portends good weather; but, if it sounds harshly, and the waves rapidly succeed each other, the reverse is to be expected.

“The south-east part of Otaheite affords one of the most luxuriant prospects in the universe. The hills are high, steep, and craggy; but they are covered to the very summits with trees and shrubs, the rocks seeming to possess the property of producing their verdant clothing. The lower land and valleys teem with various productions, that grow with exuberant vigour, and convey to the mind of the beholders an idea, that no country

upon
veget
lets, v
the se
they r

“T

the fla
deligh
reef is
for the
their c
often m
them a
felt, wh
The na
and ser
in their
places
product
pepper,
attention

“The
roots of
of the g
Otaheite
bread, w
perhaps
trees, wh

“The
the first
two abov
the culti
begins to
shoots, w
cut down

“The p
abundanc
numerous
water on t
of almost
abounds w
the greatest
from other
their return
water on th
It has the a
taste, and c
and those w

“On the

upon earth can vie with this in the strength and beauty of vegetation; nature has been equally liberal in distributing rivulets, which glide through every valley, dividing as they approach the sea into several branches, fertilizing the lands through which they run.

“The habitations of the natives are irregularly scattered upon the flat land; and many of them along the shore afforded us a delightful scene from the ships; especially as the sea within the reef is perfectly still, and affords at all times a safe navigation for the inhabitants, who are often seen passing and repassing in their canoes. On beholding these delightful scenes, I have often regretted my inability to transmit such a description of them as would convey an impression somewhat similar to what I felt, who have been fortunate enough to have been on the spot. The natural fertility of the country, combined with the mildness and serenity of the climate, has rendered the natives so careless in their cultivation, that the smallest traces of it cannot in many places be discovered, though overflowing with the richest productions. The cloth plant and the *kava*, or intoxicating pepper, are almost the only things to which they show any attention.

“The bread-fruit tree is never planted, but springs from the roots of the old ones, which spread themselves near the surface of the ground. Hence, we may observe, that the inhabitants of Otaheite, instead of being under a necessity of planting their bread, will rather be obliged to prevent its progress, which is perhaps sometimes done, to afford room for a different sort of trees, which may enable them to make some variety in their food.

“The principal of these trees are the cocoa-nut and plantain; the first of which requires no attention after it appears a foot or two above the ground; but the plantain requires some care in the cultivation; for, about three months after it shoots up it begins to bear fruit, during which time it puts forth young shoots, which supply a succession of fruit, the old stocks being cut down as the fruit is taken off.

“The products of the island are more remarkable for their great abundance than for their variety, and curiosities here are not very numerous. Among these may be reckoned a large lake of fresh water on the top of one of the highest mountains, at the distance of almost two days' journey. It is remarkable for its depth, and abounds with eels of an enormous size. This being esteemed the greatest natural curiosity of the country, travellers who come from other islands are usually asked, among the first things, at their return, whether they have seen it. There is also a pond of water on this island, which has a yellow sediment at the bottom. It has the appearance of being very good, but has an offensive taste, and often proves fatal to those who drink a quantity of it; and those who bathe in it break out in blotches.

“On the arrival of our ships we were struck with the remark-

able contrast between the inhabitants of Tongataboo and those of Otaheite, the former being of a robust make and dark colour, and the latter having a distinguished delicacy and whiteness. That difference, however, did not immediately preponderate in favour of the Otaheiteans; and when it did, it was, perhaps, occasioned more by our becoming accustomed to them, the marks which had recommended the others beginning now to be forgotten.

"The women of Otaheite, however, possess all those delicate characteristics which in many countries distinguish them from the other sex. The men wear their beards long here, and their hair considerably longer than at Tongataboo, which gives them a very different appearance. The Otaheiteans are timid and fickle. They are not so muscular and robust as the Friendly Islanders, arising, perhaps, from their being accustomed to less action; the superior fertility of their country enabling them to lead a more indolent life. They have a plumpness and smoothness of the skin, which, though more consonant with our ideas of beauty, is far from being an advantage, and is attended with a kind of languor in all their motions. This is visible in their boxing and wrestling, which display all the feeble efforts of children, if compared to the activity with which such exercises are performed at the Friendly Islands.

"As personal endowments are held in high estimation among them, they have various methods of improving them, according to their ideas of beauty. Among the *erreos*, or unmarried men, especially those of some consequence, it is customary to undergo a kind of physical operation, to render them fair, which is done by continuing a month or two in the house, wearing a great quantity of clothes the whole time, and eating nothing but bread-fruit, which they say is remarkably efficacious in whitening the skin. They also intimate, that their corpulence and colour, at other times, depend upon their food, being obliged as the seasons vary to use different food at different times.

"Nine-tenths at least of their common diet consists of vegetable food; and the *mahee*, or fermented bread-fruit; which is an article in almost every meal, prevents costiveness, and has a singular effect in producing a coolness about them, which was not perceivable in us who fed on animal food. To this temperate course of life may, perhaps, be attributed their having so few diseases among them. Indeed they mention only five or six chronic or national disorders, among which are the dropsy and the *sesui*, mentioned as frequent at Tongataboo. This was, however, before the arrival of the Europeans; for we have added a disease to their catalogue, which abundantly supplies the place of all others, and is become almost universal, and for which they seem to have no effectual remedy. The priests, indeed, administer a medley of similes, but they acknowledge it never cures them. They admit, however, that in some few cases nature alone

has exterminated the poison of this loathsome disease, and produced a perfect recovery. They say also, that those infected with it communicate it to others by handling them, or feeding on the same utensils.

“They show an openness and generosity of disposition upon all occasions. Omai, indeed, has frequently said that they exercise cruelty in punishing their enemies, and torment them with great deliberation, sometimes tearing out small pieces of flesh from different parts of the body; at other times plucking out the eyes; then cutting off the nose; and lastly completing the business, by opening the belly; but this is only on very extraordinary occasions. If cheerfulness results from conscious innocence, one would imagine their whole lives had been unsullied with a crime. This, however, may be rather imputed to their feelings, which, though lively, are never permanent. Under any misfortune, after the critical moment is past, they never labour under the appearance of anxiety. Care never produces a wrinkle on their brow; even the approach of death does not deprive them of their vivacity. I have seen them when on the brink of the grave by disease, and when preparing to attack the enemy; but in neither of these cases have I ever observed their countenances overclouded with melancholy or dread.

“Disposed, as they naturally are, to direct their aims to what will afford them ease or pleasure, all their amusements tend to excite their amorous passions; and their songs, with which they are greatly delighted, are directed to the same purpose. A constant succession of sensual enjoyment must, however, cloy, and they occasionally varied them to more refined subjects: they chanted their triumphs in war, and their amusements in peace, their travels and adventures, and the peculiar advantages of their own island.

“This shews that they are immoderately fond of music; and though they did not relish our complicated compositions, they were much delighted with the more melodious sounds, when produced singly, as they in some degree resembled the simplicity of their own. They equally experience the soothing effects produced by particular kinds of motion, which in many cases will allay any perturbation of mind as successfully as music. Of this the following may serve as a remarkable instance. ‘Walking one day,’ says Mr. Anderson, ‘about Matavai Point, I saw a man in a small canoe, paddling with such expedition, and looking so eagerly about him, as to command my whole attention. At first I supposed he had been pilfering from one of the ships, and was pursued; but he presently repeated his amusement. He proceeded from the shore to the place where the swell begins, and attentively watching its first motion, paddled swiftly before it, till he perceived it overtook him, and had sufficient strength to force his canoe before it with passing underneath. He then ceased paddling, and was carried along as rapidly as the wave, till he

was landed upon the beach, when he started from his canoe, emptied it, and went in pursuit of another swell. He seemed to experience the most supreme delight, while he was thus swiftly and smoothly driven by the sea. His mind was so wholly occupied in this business, that though crowds of his countrymen were collected to observe our tents and ships, as being objects that were both rare and curious to them, he did not notice them in the least. Two or three of the natives drew near while I was observing him, and seemed to partake of his felicity, calling out to inform him when there was an appearance of a favourable swell. This exercise which I understand is very frequent among them, is called *ehorooc*.

“Though the language of Otahite seems radically the same as that of New Zealand and the Friendly Islands, it has not that guttural pronunciation, and is pruned of some of the consonants with which those dialects abound, which has rendered it, like the manners of the inhabitants, soft and soothing. It abounds with beautiful and figurative expressions, and is so copious that they have above twenty different names for the bread-fruit, as many for the *taro* root, and half that number for the cocoa-nut.

“They have one expression corresponding exactly with the phraseology of the scriptures, viz. ‘Yearning of the bowels.’ They use it upon every occasion, when affected by the passions, constantly referring pain from grief, desire, and other affections, to the bowels, as the seat of it; where they imagine all operations of the mind are also performed.

“In the arts they are extremely deficient; yet they pretend to perform cures in surgery which our knowledge in that branch has not enabled us to imitate. Simple fractures are bound up with splints; but, if a part of the bone be lost, they insert between the fractured ends a piece of wood made hollow, to supply its place. The *rappaoo*, or surgeon, inspects the wound in about five or six days; when he finds the wood is partly covered by the growing flesh, and in as many more days visits the patient a second time, when it is generally completely covered; and when he has acquired some strength he bathes in the water, and is restored.

“Wounds, it is well known, will heal over leaden bullets, and there are some instances of their healing over other extraneous bodies. But what makes me entertain some doubt of the truth of this relation is, that in those cases which fell under my observation they were far from being so dexterous. I was shown the stump of an arm which had been taken off, that had not the appearance of a skilful operation, after making a due allowance for their defective instruments. And I saw a man going about with a dislocated shoulder, some months after he had received the accident, from their being unacquainted with a method of reducing it, though it is one of the simplest operations of our surgery.

“Fractures of the spine they know are mortal; and they also know from experience, in what particular parts of the body wounds prove fatal. Their physical knowledge seems yet more limited, because perhaps their diseases are fewer than their accidents. In some cases, however, the priests administer the juices of herbs; and women afflicted with after-pains, or other complaints after child-bearing, use a remedy which seems unnecessary in a hot country. Having heated some stones, they lay a thick cloth over them, covered with a quantity of a small plant of the mustard kind, and over them is spread another cloth. On this they seat themselves, and sweat profusely, to obtain a cure. This method has been practised by the men, though ineffectually, for the cure of the venereal *lues*. It is remarkable that they have no emetic medicines here.

“A famine frequently happens in this island, notwithstanding its extreme fertility, in which many people are said to perish. Whether this calamity be owing to the scanty produce of some seasons, to over-population, or to wars, I have not been sufficiently informed; but it has taught them to exercise the strictest economy, even in the times of plenty.

“In a scarcity of provision, when their yams and bread-fruit are consumed, they have recourse to various roots which grow uncultivated upon the mountains. The *patarra*, which is found in great plenty, is first used; it somewhat resembles a large potatoe, or yam; and when in its growing state is good, but becomes hard and stringy when old. They next eat two other roots, one of which appears like *taro*; and then the *chooe*. Of this there are two sorts, one of which possesses deleterious qualities, which requires to be sliced, and macerated in water, a night before it is baked for eating. It resembles, in this respect, the *cassava* root of the West Indies, but in the manner which they dress it, it has a very insipid taste. This and the *patarra* are creeping plants, the latter having ternate leaves.

“A very small portion of animal food is enjoyed by the lower class of people; and if at any time they obtain any, it is either fish, sea-eggs, or other marine productions, for pork hardly ever falls to their share. Only the *Eree de hai* is able to afford pork every day, and the inferior chiefs, according to their riches, perhaps once a week, a fortnight, or a month. Sometimes indeed they are not allowed that; for when the island is impoverished by war, or any other means, a prohibition is granted against the killing of hogs, which sometimes continues in force for several months, and even for a year or two. In such an interval the hogs have multiplied so fast, that there have been instances of their changing their domestic state, and becoming wild.

“When this prohibition is taken off, the chiefs assemble at the king's habitation, each bringing with him a present of hogs. After this the king orders some of them to be killed, of which they all partake, and each returns to his own home, with full

permission to kill as many as he pleases for his own use. On our arrival here, such a prohibition was actually in force, at least in those districts under the immediate direction of Otoo. And when we quitted Oheitepeha, fearing we should not have got to Matavai, he sent a messenger, assuring us, that as soon as the ships arrived there it should be taken off. We found it so; but our consumption of them was so great, that there is very little doubt but it would be laid on again, immediately after we had sailed. A prohibition is sometimes extended to fowls.

"The *kava* is chiefly used among the better sort of people: but this beverage is differently prepared from that which we saw in the Friendly Islands. Here they pour a small quantity of water upon the root, and often bake, roast, or bruise the stalks, without chewing it before it is infused. They also bruise the leaves of the plant here, and pour water upon them as upon the root. It is not drank in large companies, in that sociable way which is practised among the people at Tongataboo; but it has more pernicious effects here, owing, perhaps, to the manner of its preparation, as we saw frequent instances of its intoxicating powers.

"Many of us who had visited these islands before, were surprised to find several of the natives who were remarkable for their size and corpulency, when we saw them last, now almost reduced to skeletons: and, the cause of this alteration was universally attributed to the use of the *kava*. Their skins were dry, rough, and covered with scales; which they say, occasionally fall off, and their skin becomes in some degree renewed. As an excuse for so destructive a practice, they allege it is to prevent their growing too corpulent; but it enervates them exceedingly, and probably shortens the duration of their lives.

"Their meals at Otaheite are very frequent. The first is about two o'clock in the morning, after which they go to sleep; the next is at eight; they dine at eleven, and again, as Omai expressed it, at two, and at five; and they go to supper at eight. They have adopted some very whimsical customs, in this article of domestic life. The women are not only obliged to eat by themselves, but are even excluded from partaking of most of the better sorts of food. Turtle, or fish of the tunny kind, they dare not touch, though it is in high esteem; some particular sorts of the best plantains are also forbidden them; and even those of the first rank are seldom permitted to eat pork. The children of both sexes also eat apart; and the women usually serve up their own provisions.

"In this, and many other customs relative to their eating, there is something exceedingly mysterious. On our inquiring into the reasons of it, we were told that it was necessary it should be so; and that was the only answer we could receive, when we interrogated them upon that subject.

"They are not so obscure and mysterious in their other

customs respecting the females, especially with regard to their connections with the men. When a young man and woman, from mutual choice, agree to cohabit, the man makes a present to the father of the girl of the common necessities of life, as hogs, cloth, or canoes; and if he supposes he has not received a valuable consideration for his daughter, he compels her to leave her former friend, and to cohabit with a person who may be more liberal. The man, indeed, is always at full liberty to make a new choice; or, should his consort become a mother, he may destroy the child; and afterwards either leave the woman, or continue his connection with her. But, if he adopts the child, and permits it to live, the man and woman are then considered as in the married state; and, after that, they seldom separate. A man may, however, without being censured, join a more youthful partner to his first wife, and live with both of them.

“The custom of changing their conjugal connections is very general, and is so common an occurrence, that they mention it with indifference. The *errocs*, or those of the better sort, who possess the means of purchasing a succession of fresh connections, are generally roaming about; and, having no particular attachment, seldom adopt the plan of a settled cohabitation. And this licentious plan of life is so agreeable to their disposition, that the most beautiful of both sexes exhaust their youthful days in practices which would disgrace the most savage tribes. These enormities are peculiarly shocking, in a country whose general character has, in other respects, evident traces of the prevalence of human feelings. When an *erroe* woman brings forth a child, it is suffocated by applying a cloth to its mouth and nose, which has been previously dipped in water.

“As the woman, in such a life, must contribute greatly to its happiness, it is surprising that they should not only suffer the most humiliating restraints with regard to food, but should be often treated with a degree of brutality, which one would suppose a man must be incapable of towards an object for whom he had the least affection or esteem. It is, however, extremely common to see the men beat them most unmercifully; and, unless this behaviour proceeds from jealousy, which both sexes sometimes pretend to be infected with, it will be difficult to assign a reason for it. This may the more readily be admitted as a motive, as I have known many instances where interest has been rejected for personal beauty; though, even in these cases, they are not susceptible of those delicate sentiments that result from mutual affection. Platonic love is hardly known in Otaheite.

“From a notion of cleanliness, the cutting off the foreskin is a practice adopted among them; and they bestow a reproachful epithet upon those who neglect that operation. When five or six lads in a neighbourhood are pretty well grown up, it is made known to a *tahoua* by the father of one of them. The *tahoua*,

attended by a servant, conducts the lads to the top of the hills; and, after seating one of them in a proper manner, places a piece of wood beneath the foreskin; at the same time amusing him, by desiring him to look aside, at something which he pretends to see. The young man's attention being thus engaged, he immediately cuts through the skin with a shark's tooth, and separates the divided parts; then, after putting on a bandage, he performs the same operation on the other lads who attend him.

“Five days after they have been thus disciplined, they bathe, the bandages are removed, and the matter is cleaned away. When five days more are expired, they bathe again, and are recovered; but, as a thickness of the prepuce remains, occasioned by the cutting, they again ascend the mountains with the *tahoua* and servant, where a fire is prepared, and some stones heated; between two of which the prepuce is placed by the *tahoua*, and is gently squeezed, in order to remove the thickness. This done, they return home adorned with odoriferous flowers; and the *tahoua* is rewarded by the fathers of the lads, according to their several abilities, with a present of hogs and cloth; and if their poverty will not permit them to make a proper acknowledgment, their relations, on this occasion, are expected to be liberal.

“Their religious system abounds in singularities, and few of the common people have a competent knowledge of it, that being principally confined to their priests, who, indeed, are numerous. They pay no particular respect to one god as possessing pre-eminence, but believe in a plurality of divinities, who have each a plenitude of power.

“As different parts of the island, and the other neighbouring islands have different gods, the respective inhabitants imagine they have chosen the most eminent, or one who is at least sufficiently powerful to protect them, and to supply their necessities. If he should not give them satisfaction, they think it no impiety to change. An instance of this kind has lately happened in Tiaraboo, where two divinities have been discarded, and Oraa, god of Bolabola, has been adopted in their room. They have probably been induced to make this new choice, because his people have been victorious in war, and having, since their new election, been successful against the inhabitants of *Otaheite-nooe*, it is solely imputed to Oraa, who literally fights their battles.

“In serving their gods, their assiduity is remarkably conspicuous. The *whattas*, or offering-places of the *morais* are, in general, loaded with fruits and animals, and almost every house has a portion of it set apart for a similar purpose. Many of them are so religiously scrupulous in their religious matters, that they will not even begin a meal till they have laid aside a morsel for the *eatooa*; and we have seen their superstitious zeal carried

to a most pernicious height in their human sacrifices, which are, I fear, too frequent. They probably have recourse to them to avert misfortunes. Their prayers, which they always chant like the songs in their festive entertainments, are also very frequent.

“As in other cases, so in religion, the women are obliged to show their inferiority. When they pass the *morais*, they must partly uncover themselves, or take an extensive circuit to avoid them. Though they do not entertain an opinion, that their god must be continually conferring benefits, without sometimes forsaking them, they are less concerned at this than at the attempts of some inauspicious being to injure them. *Etee*, they say, is an evil spirit, who delights in mischief, and to whom they make offerings, as well as to their divinity. But all the mischiefs they apprehend from invisible beings are merely temporal.

“As to the soul, they believe it to be both immortal and immaterial; that, during the pangs of death, it keeps fluttering about the lips, and that it ascends and is eaten by the deity: that it continues in this state for some time, after which it takes its passage to a certain place destined to receive the souls of men, and has existence in eternal night; or rather in a kind of dawn or twilight.

“They expect no permanent punishment hereafter, for crimes committed upon earth; the souls of good and bad men being indiscriminately eaten by the deity. But, they consider this coalition as a kind of necessary purification before they enter the regions of bliss; for their doctrine inculcates, that those who refrain from all sensual connection with women some months before they depart this life pass into their eternal mansion, without such a previous union, as if, by such an abstinence, they were sufficiently pure to be exempted from the general lot.

“They have not, indeed, those sublime conceptions of happiness which our religion, and, indeed, our reason, teach us to expect hereafter. Immortality is the only great privilege they think they shall acquire by death; for they suppose that spirits are not entirely divested of those passions by which they were actuated, when combined with material vehicles. Thus, at a meeting of souls which were formerly enemies, many conflicts may ensue, which must certainly be ineffectual, as those who are in this invulnerable state must be invulnerable.

“Their reasoning is similar with regard to the meeting of a man and his consort. If the husband departs this life first, the soul of his wife is no stranger to him on its arrival in the land of spirits. They renew their former intimacy in a capacious building called *Tourooa*, where departed souls assemble to recreate themselves with the gods. The husband then conducts her to his separate habitation, where they eternally reside, and have an offspring which, however, is purely spiritual, as their embraces are supposed to be far different from those of corporeal beings.

“Many of their notions respecting the deity are extravagantly

absurd. They suppose him to be under the influence of those spirits who derive their existence from him, and that they frequently eat him, though he has power to re-create himself. They cannot converse about immaterial things without referring to material objects to convey their meaning, and, therefore, perhaps they use this mode of expression.

“They further add, that, in the *tourooa*, the deity inquires whether they mean to destroy him or not, and their determination is unalterable. This is not only known to the spirits, but also to the inhabitants of the earth; for, when the moon is on its wane, they are supposed to be devouring their *eatooa*; and, in the proportion that it increases, he is renewing himself. And the superior as well as the inferior gods are liable to this accident.

“Other places, they also believe, are prepared for the reception of departed souls. Thus they are of opinion, that those who are drowned in the sea continue there, and enjoy a delightful country, sumptuous habitations, and every thing that can contribute to their happiness. They even maintain that all other animals have souls, and even trees, fruit, and stones: which, at their decease, or upon their being consumed or broken, ascend to the deity, from whom they pass into their destined mansion.

“They imagine, that every temporal blessing is derived from their punctual performance of religious offices. They believe that the powerful influence of the divine spirit is universally diffused, and, therefore, it cannot be a matter of surprise that they adopt many superstitious opinions concerning its operations. Sudden deaths, and all other accidents, they suppose to be effected under the immediate impulse of some divinity. If a man receives a wound in his toe, by stumbling against a stone, it is imputed to an *eatooa*.

“In the night, on approaching a *toopapaoo*, where dead bodies are exposed, they are startled and terrified, as many of our ignorant and superstitious people are at the sight of a church-yard, or with the apprehensions of ghosts. They have implicit confidence in dreams, supposing them to be communications from their deity, or from the spirits of their friends who have departed this life, and that those who are favoured with them can foretel future events: but this kind of knowledge is limited to particular persons. Omai pretended to have these communications. He assured us, that, on the 26th of July, 1776, his father's soul had intimated to him, in a dream, that he should land somewhere in three days; but, he was unfortunate in his first prophetic attempt, for we did not get into Teneriffe till the first of August.

“Their dreamers, however, are thought little inferior to their inspired priests and priestesses, whose predictions are universally credited: and all undertakings of consequence are determined by them. Opoony has a particular esteem for the priestess who persuaded him to invade Ulietea, and always consults her pre-

vious to his going to war. Our old doctrine of planetary influence they in some degree adopt; and are sometimes regulated in their public councils by the appearance of the moon. If, on its first appearance after the change, it lies horizontally, they are encouraged to engage in war, and seem confident of success.

“They have strange, obscure traditions concerning the creation. Some goddess, they say, had a lump of clay suspended in a cord, and, by giving it a swing round, scattered about several pieces of land, which constituted Otaheite and the adjacent islands; and that they were all peopled by one of each sex, who originally fixed at Otaheite; but, this only respects their own immediate creation, for they admit of an universal one before this. Their remotest account extends to Tatoona and Tapuppa, who are male and female rocks, and support our globe. These begat Totorro, who was killed and divided into parts and parcels of land, then Otaia and Oroo were produced, who were afterwards married, and first begat land, and then a race of gods. Otaia being killed, Oroo marries her son, a god, named Teorraha, whom she orders to create animals, more land, and every kind of food found upon the earth. She also ordered him to create a sky, which is supported by men called Teefeerei. The spots observable in the moon, they say, are groves of a certain tree which once grew in Otaheite, and being accidentally destroyed, some doves carried its seeds thither, where they flourish at this day.

“They have many religious and historical legends; one of which, relative to eating human flesh is, in substance, as follows: a very long time ago there lived at Otaheite two men who were called *Taheei*, a name which is now given to cannibals. They inhabited the mountains, whence they issued forth, and murdered the natives, whom they afterwards devoured, and thus prevented the progress of population. Two brothers, anxious to rid the country of such enemies, successfully put in practice a stratagem for their destruction. They lived farther upward than the *Taheei*, and were so situated, that they could converse with them without hazarding their own safety. They invited them to partake of an entertainment, to which they readily consented. The brothers then heated some stones in a fire, and thrusting them into pieces of *mahee*, requested one of the *Taheei* to open his mouth, when one of those pieces was immediately dropped in, and some water poured after it, which, in quenching the stone, made a hissing noise, and killed him. The other was entreated to do the same, but at first declined it, mentioning the consequences of his companion's eating; but, upon being assured that the food was excellent, that these effects were only temporary, and that his companion would soon recover, he was so credulous as to swallow the bait, and was also killed.

“Their bodies were then cut in pieces, and buried by the natives, who rewarded the brothers with the government of the

island, for delivering them from such monsters. They resided at Whapaenoo, a district in the island, where there now remains a bread-fruit tree, which was once the property of the *Tuheecais*. They had a woman who lived with them who had two enormous teeth. After they were killed, she lived at Otaha, and when she died, she was ranked among their deities. She did not, like the men, feed upon human flesh; but, from the prodigious size of her teeth, the natives still call any animal that has large tusks, *Tuhecai*.

"This story, it must be acknowledged, is as natural as that of Hercules destroying the hydra, or of Jack the Giant-killer. But it does not appear that there is any moral couched under it, any more than under most of the old fables which have been received as truths in ignorant ages. It, however, was not injudiciously introduced, as serving to express the detestation entertained here against cannibals. And yet, it appears probable, from some circumstances, that the natives of these isles formerly fed upon human flesh. Upon asking Omai a few questions upon this subject, he resolutely denied it; though, at the same time, he related a fact within his own knowledge, which almost establishes such a conjecture.

"When the Bolabola men defeated those of Huuheine, many of his kinsmen were slain; but a relation of his had an opportunity of being revenged, when the people of Bolabola were worsted in their turn; and, cutting a piece of flesh from the thigh of one of his enemies, he broiled and devoured it. The offering made to the chief, of the eye of the person sacrificed, appears to be a vestige of a custom that once existed to a great extent.

"The principal characteristics of the sovereign are, the being invested with the *maro*, the presiding at human sacrifices, and the blowing of the conch-shell. On hearing the latter, every subject is obliged to bring food, in proportion to his circumstances, to his royal residence. Their veneration for his name, on some occasions, they carry to an extravagant height. When he accedes to the *maro*, if any words in the language are found to have a resemblance to it in sound, they are immediately changed for others; and if any man should be presumptuous enough to continue the use of those words, not only he, but his whole family are put to death.

"A similar fate attends all those who shall dare to apply the sacred name of the sovereign to any animal. Whence Omai, when in England, expressed his indignation, that the names of Prince and Princess should be given to our dogs and horses. But though death is the punishment for taking this liberty with the name of the sovereign, abuse against his government is only punished with the forfeiture of lands and houses.

"The sovereign never deigns to enter the habitation of any of his subjects; in every district where he visits he has houses belonging to himself. And if, by accident, he should ever be obliged to deviate from this rule, the habitation thus honoured

with his presence, together with its furniture, is entirely burnt. When present, his subjects uncover to him as low as the waist; and when he is at any particular place, a pole, with a piece of cloth affixed to it, is set up in some conspicuous part near, on which the same honours are bestowed. To the first part of this ceremony his brothers are entitled, but the women only uncover to the royal females.

“They are even superstitious in respect to their sovereign, and esteem his person as almost sacred. To these circumstances, perhaps, he is indebted for the quiet possession of his dominions. Even the people of Tiaraboo admit his claim to the same honours, though they esteem their own chief as more powerful, and assert that, should the reigning family become extinct, he would succeed to the government of the whole island.

“This indeed is probable, as Waheia dooa, exclusive of Tiaraboo, possesses many districts of Opooreanoo. The extent of his territories is, therefore, almost equal to those of Otoo; and his part of the island is more populous and fertile. His subjects too have shown their superiority, by frequently defeating those of Otaheite-nooe, whom they hold in a contemptible light as warriors, and over whom they might be easily victorious, if their chief would be inclined to put it to the test.

“The people, exclusive of the *Eree de hoi*, and his family, are classed in the following order: the *Erees*, or powerful chiefs; the *Manahoone*, or vassals; and the *Teou*, or *Toutou*, servants, or slaves. The men, agreeably to the regular institution, connect themselves with women of their respective ranks; but if with one of an inferior class, and she brings forth a child, it is not only preserved, but is entitled to the rank of the father, unless he should happen to be an *Eree*, in which case the child is killed.

“If a woman of condition permits a man of an inferior rank to officiate as a husband, the children they produce are also killed. And if a *Teou* be detected in an intrigue with a female of the royal family, he is punished with death. The son of the *Eree de hoi*, at his birth, succeeds his father in titles and honours; but, if he has no children, the government devolves to the brother at his death. Possessions, in other families, descend to the eldest son, who is, nevertheless, obliged to support his brothers and sisters, and allow them houses on his estates.

“Otaheite is divided into several districts, the boundaries of which are generally rivulets or low hills; but the subdivisions, by which particular property is ascertained, are pointed out by large stones, which have continued from generation to generation. Quarrels are sometimes produced, by the removal of these stones, which are decided by battle, each party claiming the assistance of his friends. But, upon a complaint being properly made to the *Eree de hoi*, he determines the difference in an amicable manner.

“These offences, however, are not common; and property seems to be as secure here, from long custom, as from the severest laws in other countries. It is an established practice among them, that crimes which are not of a general nature, are left to be punished by the party who is injured, supposing that he will decide as equitably as a person totally unconcerned: and, long custom having allotted certain punishments for certain crimes, he may inflict them without being amenable to any one. If, for instance, any person be detected stealing, which is usually done in the night, the owner of the goods stolen may kill the thief immediately; but they seldom inflict so severe a punishment, unless the property taken is very valuable; such as plaited hair and breast-plates. When only cloth or hogs are stolen, and the robber escapes, if, upon his being afterwards discovered, he engages to return the same number of hogs, and pieces of cloth, he is acquitted of the offence, or, at most, receives a slight beating.

“If, in a quarrel, one person should kill another, the friends of the deceased attack the survivor and his adherents. If they are victorious, they take possession of the house and property of the other party; but, if they are vanquished, the reverse takes place. Should a *Manahoone* kill the slave of a chief, the latter seizes the property of the former, and flies the country. A few months after he returns, and, finding his stock of hogs increased, makes a large present of these, and other valuable articles, to the *Toutou's* master, who generally considers it as a compensation, and suffers him to repossess his premises. But, it is not surprising that the killing of a man should be considered as so trifling an offence, among a people who do not think it a crime to murder their own children. On conversing with them concerning such instances of unnatural cruelty, and asking them if their chiefs were not offended, and did not punish them, they said the chief had no right to interfere in such cases, every one being at liberty to do what he pleased with his own child.

“Though the people, their customs and manners, and the productions of the islands in the neighbourhood, may, in general, be considered the same as at Otaheite, yet there are a few differences. In the little island Mataia, or Osnaburgh Islands, which lies twenty leagues east of Otaheite, is spoken a different dialect from that of Otaheite. The men of Mataia also wear long hair; and, previous to their fighting, cover their arm with something beset with sharks' teeth, and their bodies with a skin of fishes, not unlike shagreen. They are likewise ornamented with polished pearl-shells, which make a refulgent glittering in the sun; and they have a very large one before, which covers them like a shield.

“In the language of Otaheite, there are many words and phrases very different from those of the islands to the westward of it. This island is remarkable for producing, in great abundance, that deli-

cious fruit which we call apples, but they are not to be found in any of the others, except Eimeo. It also produces an odoriferous wood, called *cahoi*, which is much esteemed at the other isles. Huaheine and Eimeo produce more yams than the other islands; and upon the hills at Mourroa, a particular bird is found, which is highly valued for its white feathers.

“ Besides the number or cluster of islands, extending from Mataia to Mourroa, we were informed by the people at Otaheite, that there was a low, uninhabited island, called Mopeeha; and also several low islands, to the north-eastward, at the distance of about two days' sail with a fair wind.

“ At Mataeva it is said to be customary for men to present their daughters to strangers who visit that island. The pairs, however, must lie near each other for the space of five nights, without presuming to take any liberties. On the sixth evening the father entertains his guest with food, and orders the daughter to receive him that night as her husband. Though the bed-fellow be ever so disagreeable to the stranger, he must not dare to express the least dislike; for that is an unpardonable affront, and punishable with death. Forty men of Bolabola, whom curiosity had excited to go to Mataeva, were treated in this manner; one of them having declared his aversion to the female who fell to his lot, in the hearing of a boy, who mentioned it to the father. Fired with this information, the Mataevans fell upon them; but the Bolabolans killed thrice their own number, though with the loss of the whole party except five. These, at first, hid themselves in the woods, and afterwards effected their escape in a canoe.

“ The low isles are, perhaps, the farthest navigation performed by the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the Society Islands. Monsieur de Bougainville is certainly in an error when he says, ‘ These people sometimes navigate to the distance of more than three hundred leagues.’* For it is deemed a sort of prodigy, that a canoe, which was once driven from Otaheite in a storm, should have arrived at Mopeeha, though directly to leeward, at no great distance. Their knowledge of distant islands is merely traditional, communicated to them by the natives of those islands who have been accidentally driven upon their coasts.”

On quitting Bolabola, and taking leave of the Society Islands, on Monday, the 8th of December, the ships steered to the northward, with the wind between north-east and east, scarcely ever having it in the south-east point till after they had crossed the equator.

Though a year and five months had now elapsed since their departure from England, during which period our voyagers had not been, upon the whole, unprofitably employed, Captain Cook was sensible, that with respect to the principal object of his instructions, the voyage might be considered, at this time, as only at

* Bougainville's Voyage autour du Monde, p. 228.

its commencement; and, therefore, his attention to whatever might contribute towards their safety and final success, was now to be exerted as it were anew. He had, with this view, examined into the state of their provisions at the islands they had visited; and having now, on leaving them, proceeded beyond the extent of his former discoveries, he ordered an accurate survey to be taken of all the stores that were in each ship, that, by being fully informed of the quantity and condition of every article, he might know how to use them to the greatest advantage.

Before he quitted the Society Isles, he had taken every opportunity of inquiring of the natives, whether there were any islands situated in a northerly or north-westerly direction from them; but it did not appear that they knew of any; nor did they meet with any thing by which the vicinity of land was indicated, till they began, about the latitude of 8 deg. south, to see boobies, men-of-war birds, terns, tropic-birds, and a few other sorts. Their longitude, at this time, was 205 deg. east. In the night, between the 22nd and 23rd, they crossed the equinoctial line; and on the 24th, soon after day-break, discovered land, bearing north-east-by-east. It was found, upon making a nearer approach to it, to be one of those low islands which are so frequently met with in this ocean between the tropics; that is, a narrow bank of land that encloses the sea within. They observed some cocoa-nut trees in two or three places; but the land in general had a very sterile aspect. At twelve o'clock, it was about four miles distant. On the western side they found the depth of water to be from fourteen to forty fathoms, over a sandy bottom.

Captain Cook being of opinion that this island would prove a convenient place for procuring turtle, resolved to anchor here. He accordingly dropped the anchors in thirty fathoms' water, and a boat was immediately dispatched to seek for a convenient landing-place. When she returned, the officer who had been employed in this search reported, that he found no place where a boat could land, but that fish greatly abounded in shoal water, without the breakers. Early the next morning, which was Christmas-day, two boats were sent, one from each ship, to examine more accurately whether it was practicable to land; and, at the same time, two others were ordered out to fish at a grappling near the shore. These last returned about eight, with as many fish as weighed upwards of two hundred pounds. Encouraged by this success, the commodore dispatched them again after breakfast, and he then went himself in another boat, to view the coast, and attempt landing, which, however, he found to be impracticable. The two boats which had been sent out on the same search returned about twelve o'clock; and the master, who was in that belonging to the Resolution, reported to Captain Cook, that about four or five miles to the northward, there being a break in the land, and a channel into the lagoon, there was consequently a proper place for landing; and that he had found

off this entrance the same soundings as they had where they were now stationed. In consequence of this report, they weighed, and after two or three trips, anchored again over a bottom of fine, dark sand, before a little island lying at the entrance of the lagoon.

On Friday, the 26th, in the morning, the commodore ordered Captain Clerke to send out a boat, with an officer in it, to the south-east part of the lagoon, in quest of turtle, and went himself with Mr. King, each in a boat, to the north-east part. It was his intention to have gone to the eastern extremity, but the wind not permitting it, he and Mr. King landed more to leeward, on a sandy flat, where they caught one turtle, which was the only one they saw in the lagoon. They waded through the water to an island, where they found nothing but a few birds. Captain Cook leaving Mr. King here to observe the sun's meridian altitude, proceeded to the land that bounds the sea towards the north-west, which he found even more barren than the last-mentioned isle; but, walking over to the sea-coast, he observed five turtles close to the shore, one of which he caught; he then returned on-board, as did Mr. King soon afterwards. Though so few turtles were observed by these two gentlemen, they did not despair of a supply; for some of the officers of the *Discovery*, who had been ashore to the southward of the channel leading into the lagoon, had had more success, and caught several.

The next morning, the cutter and pinnace were dispatched under the command of Mr. King, to the south-east part of the island, within the lagoon, to catch turtle, and the small cutter was sent towards the north, for the same purpose. Some of Captain Clerke's people having been on-shore all night, had been so fortunate as to turn upwards of forty turtles on the sand, which were this day brought on-board; and in the course of the afternoon the party detached to the northward returned with half-a-dozen; and being sent back again, continued there till they departed from the island, having, upon the whole, pretty good success. The day following (the 28th) Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. Bayly, landed on the island situated between the two channels into the lagoon, to prepare the telescopes for observing the solar eclipse that was to happen on the 30th. Towards noon Mr. King returned with one boat and eight turtles, seven being left behind to be brought by the other boat, whose people were occupied in catching more; and in the evening the same boat conveyed them provisions and water. Mr. Williamson now went to superintend that business in the room of Mr. King, who remained on-board, in order to attend the observation of the eclipse. The next day, the two boats, laden with turtle, were sent back to the ship by Mr. Williamson, who, at the same time, in a message to Captain Cook, requested that the boats might be ordered round by sea, as he had discovered a landing-place on the south-east side of the island, where the

greatest numbers of turtle were caught; so that, by dispatching the boat thither, the trouble of carrying them over the land, as had been hitherto done, to the inside of the lagoon, would be saved. This advice was followed.

On Tuesday, the 30th, Captain Cook, and Messrs. King and Bayly, repaired in the morning to the small island above-mentioned, to observe the eclipse of the sun: the sky was overcast at times, but it was clear when the eclipse ended. In the afternoon, the party who had been employed in catching turtle at the south-eastern part of the island, returned on-board, except a sailor belonging to Captain Clerke's ship, who had been missing for two days. At first there were two men who had lost their way; but happening to disagree with respect to the track that was most likely to bring them to their companions, they had separated, and one of them found means to rejoin the party, after an absence of twenty-four hours, during which he had experienced great distress. There being no fresh water in the whole island, and not one cocoa-nut tree in that part of it, he, in order to allay his thirst, had recourse to the extraordinary expedient of drinking the blood of turtle, which he killed for that purpose. His method of refreshing himself when fatigued was equally singular, though he said he felt the good effects of it; he undressed himself, and lay down in the shallow water upon the beach for some time.

How these men had contrived to lose their way was a matter of astonishment; the land over which their journey lay, from the sea-coast to the lagoon, where the boats were stationed, did not exceed three miles across; nor was there any thing that could impede their view, for the country was level, with a few shrubs dispersed about it; and from many parts the masts of the vessels could be easily discerned. This, however, was a rule of direction which they did not think of; nor did they recollect in what part of the island the ships lay at anchor; and they were totally at a loss how to get back to them, or to the party they had so carelessly straggled from. Considering what a strange set of beings the generality of sailors are while on-shore, we might, instead of being much surprised that these two should thus lose themselves, rather wonder that no more of the party were missing.

Captain Clerke was no sooner informed that one of the stragglers was still in this disagreeable situation, than he detached a party in search of him: but neither the man nor the party having returned, the next morning the commodore ordered two boats into the lagoon, to prosecute the search by different tracks. In a short time after, Captain Clerke's detachment returned with their lost companion; in consequence of which, the boats dispatched into the lagoon were called back by signal: this man's distress must have been far greater than that of the other straggler not only as he had been lost a longer time, but as he was too squeamish to drink turtle's blood.

Having some yams and cocoa-nuts on-board in a state of vegetation, they planted them, by Captain Cook's order, on the small island where he had observed the late eclipse; and some seeds of melons were sown in another place; the captain also left on that little isle a bottle containing the following inscription

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 31 de Decembris, 1777.

Naves { Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.
Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.

On Thursday, the 1st of January, 1778, the commodore sent out several boats, to bring on-board the different parties employed ashore, with the turtles they had caught. It being late before this business was completed, he thought proper to defer sailing till the next morning. They procured at this island, for both ships, about three hundred turtles, which weighed, one with another, about ninety pounds, all of the green sort, and perhaps not inferior in goodness to any in the world: they also caught with hook and line, a great quantity of fish, principally consisting of cavallies, snappers, and a few rock-fish of two species, one with whitish streaks scattered about, and the other with numerous, blue spots.

The soil of this island (to which Captain Cook gave the name of Christmas Island, as they kept that festival here) is in some places light and blackish, composed of sand, the dung of birds, and rotten vegetables. In other parts it is formed of broken coral-stones, decayed shells, and other marine productions: these are deposited in long, narrow ridges, lying parallel with the sea-coast, and must have been thrown up by the waves, though they do not reach at present within a mile of some of these places. This seems to prove incontestibly that the island has been produced by different accessions from the sea, and is in a state of augmentation; the broken pieces of coral, and likewise many of the shells, being too large and heavy to have been brought from the beach by any birds to the places where they are now lying. They could not find any where a drop of fresh water, though they frequently dug for it; but they met with several ponds of salt water, which, as they had no visible communication with the sea, were probably filled with the water filtrating through the sand during the time of high tides. One of the men who lost their way found some salt on the south-eastern part of the island. They could not discover the smallest trace of any human creature having ever been here before; and, indeed, should any one be accidentally driven on the island, or left there, he would hardly be able to prolong his existence; for though there are birds and fishes in abundance, there are no visible means of allaying thirst, nor any vegetable that would serve as a substitute for bread, or correct the bad effects of an animal diet. On the few cocoa-nut trees upon the island they found very little fruit, and that little not good.

A few low trees were observed in some parts, besides several small shrubs and plants, which grew in a very languid manner. They found a sort of purslain, a species of *sida* or Indian mallow, and another plant that seemed, from its leaves, to be a *mesembryanthemum*, with two species of grass; under the low trees sat vast numbers of a new species of tern, or egg-bird, black above and white below, having a white arch on the forehead; these birds are somewhat larger than the common noddy, and their eggs are bluish and speckled with black. There were likewise many common boobies, a sort greatly resembling a gannet, and a chocolate-coloured species with a white belly. Men-of-war birds, curlews, plovers, tropic-birds, petrels, &c. are also to be seen here. They saw several rats, smaller than ours; and there were numbers of land-crabs and small lizards.

Christmas Island is supposed by Captain Cook to be between fifteen and twenty leagues in circuit; its form is semi-circular, or like the moon in its last quarter, the two horns being the north and south points. The west-side, or the small island situated at the entrance into the lagoon, lies in the longitude of 202 deg. 30 min. east, and in the latitude of 1 deg. 59 min. north.

Like most of the other isles in this ocean, Christmas Island is surrounded by a reef of coral rock, extending but a little way from the shore; and further out than this reef, on the western side, is a bank of sand, which extends a mile into the sea. There is good anchorage on this bank, in any depth between eighteen and thirty fathoms. During their continuance here, the wind generally blew a fresh gale at east-by-south, or east; and they had consequently a great swell from the northward, which broke upon the reef in a prodigious surf.

Weighing anchor at day-break, on Friday, the 2nd of January, 1778, they resumed a northerly course, with a gentle breeze at east and east-south-east, which continued till they arrived in the latitude of 7 deg. 45 min. north, and the longitude of 205 deg. east, where they had a day of perfect calm; a north-east-by-east wind then succeeded, which blew faintly at first, but freshened as they proceeded northward. They daily observed tropic-birds, men-of-war birds, boobies, &c. and between the latitude of 10 and 11 deg. north, saw several turtles. Though all these are considered as signs of the proximity of land, they discovered none till early on the morning of Sunday, the 18th, when an island appeared, bearing north-east-by-east. Not long after more land was seen, which bore north, and was totally detached from the former: at noon, the first was supposed to be eight or nine leagues distant. The longitude at this time was 200 deg. 41 min. east, and latitude 21 deg. 12 min. north. The next day, at sun-rise, the island first seen bore east, at the distance of several leagues. Not being able to reach this, they shaped their course for the other; and soon after observed a third island, bearing west-north-west.

They had now a fine breeze at east-by-north; and at noon the second island, named Atooi, for the east-end of which they were steering, was about two leagues distant. As they made a nearer approach, many of the inhabitants put off from the shore in their canoes, and very readily came alongside the ships: they were agreeably surprised to find, that they spoke a dialect of the Otaheitean language: they could not be prevailed upon by any entreaties to come on-board. Captain Cook tied some medals to a rope, which he gave to those who were in one of the canoes, and they, in return, fastened some mackerel to the rope, by way of equivalent. This was repeated; and some nails, or pieces of iron, were given them, for which they gave in exchange some more fish, and a sweet potatoe; a sure indication of their having some notion of bartering, or at least of returning one present for another. One of them even offered for sale the piece of stuff which he wore about his waist. These people did not exceed the ordinary size, and were stoutly made; their complexion was brown; and though there appeared to be little difference in the casts of their colour, there was a considerable variation in their features. Most of them had their hair cropped rather short, a few had it tied in a bunch on the crown of the head, and others suffered it to flow loose; it seemed to be naturally black; but the generality of them had it stained with some stuff which communicated to it a brownish colour: most of them had pretty long beards. They had no ornaments about their persons, nor did they observe that they had their ears perforated. Some of them were *tattooed* on the hands, or near the groin; and the pieces of cloth which were worn by them round their middle were curiously coloured with white, black, and red. They seemed to be mild and good-natured; and were furnished with no arms of any kind, except some small stones, which they had evidently brought for their own defence, and these they threw into the sea when they found that there was no occasion for them.

As they perceived no signs of an anchoring-place at this eastern extremity of the island, they bore away to leeward, and ranged along the south-east side, at the distance of about a mile and a half from the shore. The canoes left them when they made sail; but others came off as they proceeded along the coast, and brought with them pigs and some excellent potatoes, which they exchanged for whatever was offered to them; and several small pigs were purchased for a sixpenny nail. They passed several villages, some of which were situated near the sea, and others further up the country. The inhabitants of all of them came in crowds to the shore, and assembled on the elevated places, to take a view of the ships. On this side of the island the land rises in a gentle acclivity from the sea to the bottom of the mountains, which occupy the central part of the country, except at one place near the eastern end, where they rise immediately from the sea; they

seemed to be composed of stone, or rocks lying in horizontal strata. They observed a few trees about the villages, near which they could also discern several plantations of sugar-canes and plantains: they continued to sound, but did not strike ground with a line of fifty fathoms, till they came abreast of a low point near the north-west extremity of the island, where they found from twelve to fourteen fathoms, over a rocky bottom. Having passed this point, they met with twenty fathoms, then sixteen, twelve, and at last five, over a bottom of sand: they spent the night in standing off and on, and the next morning stood in for the land, and were met by several canoes filled with natives, some of whom ventured to come on-board.

None of the inhabitants they ever met with before, in any other island or country, were so astonished as these people were upon entering a ship; their eyes were incessantly roving from one object to another, and the wildness of their looks and gestures fully indicated their perfect ignorance with respect to every thing they saw, and strongly marked to us, that they had never, till the present time, been visited by Europeans, nor been acquainted with any of our commodities except iron. This metal, however, they had in all probability only heard of, or had, perhaps, known it in some inconsiderable quantity, brought to them at a remote period. They asked for it by the appellation of *hamaite*, referring probably to some instrument, in making which iron could be serviceably employed; for they applied that name to the blade of a knife, though they had no idea of that particular instrument, which they could not even handle properly; they also frequently called iron by the name of *toe*, which signifies a hatchet or adze. On shewing them some beads, they first asked what they were, and then whether they were to be eaten; but on their being informed that they were to be hung in their ears, they rejected them as useless. They were equally indifferent with regard to a looking-glass that was offered them, and returned it for a similar reason. China cups, plates of earthen-ware, and other things of that kind, were so new to them, that they asked whether they were made of wood; they were, in many respects, naturally polite, or at least cautious of giving offence. Some of them, just before their venturing on-board, repeated a long prayer, and others afterwards sung, and made various motions with their hands. On their first entering the ship, they attempted to steal every thing that they could lay hands on, or rather to take it openly, as if they supposed that our people either should not resent such behaviour, or not hinder it. But our men soon convinced them of their error; and when they observed that they kept a watchful eye over them, they became less active in appropriating to themselves what did not belong to them.

About nine o'clock, Captain Cook dispatched Lieutenant Williamson, with three armed boats, to look out for a proper landing-place, and for fresh water; with orders that, if he should

find it necessary to land in search of the latter, he should not allow more than one man to accompany him out of the boats. The very moment they were putting off from the ship, one of the islanders having stolen a cleaver, leaped overboard, got into his canoe, and hastened towards the shore, while the boats pursued him in vain.

The reason of the commodore's order that the crews of the boats should not go on-shore was, that he might prevent, if possible, the importation of a dangerous disease into this island, which he knew some of the crew now laboured under, and which they unfortunately had already communicated to other islands in this ocean. From the same motive, he commanded that all female visitors should be excluded from both the ships; many persons of this sex having come off in their canoes. Their features, complexion, and stature, were not very different from those of the men; and though their countenances were remarkably open and agreeable, few traces of delicacy were visible either in their faces or other proportions. The only difference in their dress, was their having a piece of cloth about their bodies, reaching from near the middle almost down to the knees, instead of the *maro* worn by the male sex. They were as much inclined to favour the ships with their company on-board, as some of the men were; but the commodore was extremely desirous of preventing all connection which might, in all probability, convey an irreparable injury to themselves, and afterwards, through their means, to the whole nation. Another prudent precaution was taken, by strictly enjoining, that no person known to be capable of communicating infection, should be sent upon duty out of the ships.

Captain Cook had paid equal attention to the same object, when he first visited the Friendly Isles; but he afterwards found, to his great regret, that his endeavours had not succeeded; and there is reason to apprehend that this will constantly be the case in such voyages as these; whenever it is necessary that many people should be employed on-shore.

Waiting for the return of the boats, which had been sent out to reconnoitre the coast, they stood off and on with the ships. Towards mid-day, Mr. Williamson came back, and reported, that he had observed behind a beach, near one of the villages, a large pond, which was said by the natives to contain fresh water; and, that there was tolerable anchoring-ground before it. He also mentioned, that he had made an attempt to land in another place, but was prevented by the islanders, who, coming down in great numbers to the boats, endeavoured to take away the oars, muskets, and every other article which they could lay hold of; and crowded so thick upon him and his people, that he was under the necessity of firing, by which one man was killed. This unfortunate circumstance, however, was not known to Captain Cook, till after they had quitted the island, so that all his measures were directed as if no affair of that kind had hap-

pened. Mr. Williamson informed him, that, as soon as the man fell, he was taken up and carried off by his countrymen, who then retired from the boats; but still they made signals for our people to land, which they declined. It did not appear, that the natives had the least intention of killing or even hurting any of Mr. Williamson's party; but, they seemed to have been excited by curiosity alone, to get from him what he had, being prepared to give in return, any thing that appertained to themselves.

Captain Cook then dispatched one of the boats, to lie in the best anchoring-ground: and when she had gained this station, he bore down with the ships, and cast anchor in twenty-five fathoms' water, over a sandy bottom. The eastern point of the road, which was the low point already mentioned, bore south 51 deg. east; the west point north 65 deg. west; and the village near which the fresh water was said to be, was one mile distant. The ships being thus stationed, between three and four in the afternoon, the captain went ashore with three armed boats, and twelve of the marines, with a view of examining the water, and trying the disposition of the inhabitants, who had assembled in considerable numbers, on a sandy beach before the village; behind it was a valley, in which was a piece of water. The moment he leaped on-shore, all the islanders fell prostrate upon their faces, and continued in that posture of humiliation till, by signs, he prevailed on them to rise. They then presented to him many small pigs, with plantain-trees, making use of nearly the same ceremonies which they had seen practised on similar occasions at the Society and other isles; and a long oration or prayer being pronounced by an individual, in which others of the assembly occasionally joined. Captain Cook signified his acceptance of their proffered friendship, by bestowing on them, in return, such presents as he had brought ashore. This introductory business being ended, he stationed a guard upon the beach, and was then conducted by some of the natives to the water, which he found extremely good, and so considerable, that it might be denominated a lake. After this he returned on-board, and issued orders that preparations should be made for filling the water-casks in the morning, at which time he went ashore with some of his people, having a party of marines for a guard. They had no sooner landed, than a trade was entered into for potatoes and hogs, which the islanders gave in exchange for nails and pieces of iron. Far from giving any obstruction to our men who were occupied in watering, they even assisted them in rolling the casks to and from the pool, and performed with alacrity whatever was required of them. Captain Cook leaving the command at this station to Mr. Williamson, who had landed with him, made an excursion into the country, up the valley, accompanied by Messrs. Anderson and Webber, and followed by a numerous train of natives, one of whom, who had been very

active in keeping the others in order, the captain made choice of as a guide. This man, from time to time, proclaiming the approach of our gentlemen, every person who met them fell prostrate on the ground, and remained in that humble position till they had passed; this is their method of shewing respect to their great chiefs.

Our men had observed at every village, as they ranged along the coast in the ships, one or more elevated white objects, resembling pyramids, or rather obelisks; one of which, supposed by Captain Cook to be at least fifty feet in height, was very conspicuous from the anchoring-station, and seemed to be at a small distance up this valley. To have a nearer view of it, was the principal motive of our gentlemen's walk: their guide was acquainted with their desire of being conducted to it; but, it happened to be in such a situation that they could not get at it, the pool of water separating it from them; however, as there was another of the same kind about half a mile distant, upon their side of the valley, they set out to visit that. As soon as they reached it, they perceived it was situated in a burying-ground or *morai*, which bore a striking resemblance in several respects to those they had seen at Otaheite and other islands in this ocean. It was an oblong space of considerable extent, environed by a stone wall four or five feet high; the enclosed space was loosely paved; and, at one end of it, was placed the obelisk or pyramid, called by the natives *henananoo*, which was an exact model of the larger one that they had discerned from the ships; it was about twenty feet in height, and four feet square at the base. Its four sides were formed of small poles interwoven with twigs and branches, thus composing an indifferent wicker-work, hollow within from the top to the bottom. It appeared to be in a ruinous state, and had been originally covered with a thin, grayish cloth. On each side of it were long pieces of wicker-work, termed *hereanee*, in a condition equally ruinous, with two poles inclining towards each other at one corner, where some plantains were placed on a board, fixed at the height of about half-a-dozen feet. This was called by the islanders *herairemy*, and they said that the fruit was an offering to their deity; before the *henananoo* were several pieces of wood, carved into some resemblance of human figures; there was also a stone, nearly two feet in height, covered with cloth. Adjoining to this on the outside of the *morai* was a small shed, which they denominated *hareepaho*; and before it there was a grave where the remains of a woman had been deposited.

There was a house or shed, called *hemanaa*, on the further side of the area of the *morai*; it was about forty feet in length, ten or eleven feet in height, and ten in breadth in the middle, but narrower at each end; though, considerably longer, it was lower than their common habitations. Opposite the entrance into this house, stood two images near three feet high, cut out of

one piece of wood, with pedestals; they were said to be *Eatooa no Veheina*, or representations of goddesses, and were not very indifferent either in point of execution or design. On the head of one of them, was a cylindrical cap, not unlike the head-dress at Otaheite, called *tomou*; and, on that of the other, a carved helmet, somewhat resembling those of the ancient warriors; and both of them had pieces of cloth fastened about the loins, and hanging down a considerable way. There was also, at the side of each, a piece of carved wood, with cloth hung on it; before the pedestals, lay a quantity of fern, which had been placed there at different times; in the middle of the house, and before the images just described, was an oblong space, enclosed by an edging of stone, and covered with shreds of cloth; this was the grave of seven chiefs, and was called *hencene*.

Our gentlemen, had already met with so many instances of resemblance between the *morai* they were now visiting, and those of the islands they had lately quitted, that they entertained little doubt in their minds, that a similarity existed also in the rights here solemnized, and particularly in the horrid oblation of human victims. Their suspicions were soon confirmed; for, on one side of the entrance into the *hemanaa*, they observed a small square place, and another still smaller; and, on asking what these were, they were informed by their conductor, that in one of them was interred a man who had been sacrificed; and, in the other a hog, which had also been offered up to the deity. At no greater distance from these were three other square enclosed places, with two pieces of carved wood at each of them, and a heap of fern upon them. These were the graves of three chiefs, and before them was an enclosed space, of an oblong figure, called *Tangata-taboo* by our gentlemen's guide, who declared to them, that three human sacrifices, one at the funeral of each chief, had been there buried.

Every appearance induced the commodore to believe, that this inhuman practice was very general here. The island seemed to abound with such places of sacrifices as this, at which he was now present, and which was probably one of the most considerable of them; being much less conspicuous than some others which they had observed as they sailed along the coast, and particularly, than that on the opposite side of the piece of water running through this valley; the white pyramid of which, in all probability, derived its colour solely from the consecrated cloth put over it. In many spots within this burying-ground, were planted trees of the *morinda citrifolia*, and *cordiu sebestina*, besides several plants of the *etea*, with the leaves of which the *hemanaa* was thatched.

The journey of our gentlemen to and from this *morai*, lay through the plantations. Most of the ground was perfectly flat, with ditches intersecting different parts, and roads that seemed to have been raised to some height by art. The intervening

to be *Eatooa*
were not very
On the head
the head-dress
er, a carved
warriors; and
the loins, and
, at the side
n it; before
been placed
and before
losed by an
his was the

stances of
siting, and
ntertained
also in the
oblation of
t; for, on
d a small,
ing what
at in one
; and, in
city. At
enclosed
n, and a
e chiefs,
g figure,
lared to
of each

hat this
med to
he was
incon-
others
t, and
water
in all
l cloth
were
stina,
h the

; lay
flat,
med
ning

spaces, in general, were planted with *taro*, which grew with great vigour. There were several spots where the cloth-mulberry was planted in regular rows: this also grew vigorously. The cocoa-trees were in a less thriving condition, and were all low; but the plantain-trees, though not large, made a pretty good appearance. Upon the whole, the trees that are most numerous round this village, are the *cordia sebastina*. The greater part of the village is situated near the beach, and consists of upwards of sixty houses there; but, perhaps, about forty more stand scattered about, towards the *morai*.

After the commodore, and Messrs. Anderson and Webber, had carefully examined whatever was worthy of notice about the *morai*, and the latter had taken drawings of it, and of the surrounding country, they returned by a different route, they found a multitude of people collected at the beach, and a brisk trade for fowls, pigs, and vegetables, going on there, with the greatest order and decorum. At noon, Captain Cook went on-board to dinner, and then sent Mr. King to take the command of the party on-shore. During the afternoon he landed again, accompanied by Captain Clerke, intending to make another excursion up the country, but, before he could execute this design, the day was too far advanced, he therefore relinquished his intention for the present, and no other opportunity afterwards occurred. Towards sun-set, he and his people returned on-board, after having procured, in the course of this day, nine tons of water, and (principally by exchanging nails and pieces of iron), seventy or eighty pigs, some fowls, plantains, potatoes, and *taro* roots. In this commercial intercourse, the islanders deserved their best commendations, making no attempts to cheat them, either along-side the ships or on-shore. Some of them, indeed, as our people have already related, betrayed at first a pilfering disposition; or, perhaps, they imagined that they had a right to all that they could lay their hands upon: but they quickly desisted from a conduct, which, they convinced them, could not be persevered in with impunity.

Among the various articles which they brought to barter this day, our voyagers were particularly struck with a sort of cloak or cap, which, even in more polished countries, might be esteemed elegant. These cloaks are nearly of the same shape and size of the short ones worn by the men in Spain, and by the women in England, tied loosely before, and reaching to the middle of the back. The ground of them is a net-work, with the most beautiful red and yellow feathers, so closely fixed upon it, that the surface, both in point of smoothness and glossiness, resembles the richest velvet. The method of varying the mixture is very different; some of them having triangular spaces of yellow and red alternately; others a kind of crescent; while some were entirely red, except that they had a broad yellow border. The brilliant colours of the feathers in those cloaks that were new, had a very

fine effect. The natives, at first, refused to part with one of these cloaks for any thing that was offered in exchange, demanding no less a price than one of their muskets. They afterwards, however, suffered them to purchase some of them for very large nails. Those of the best sort were scarce; and it is probable, that they are used only on particular occasions.

The caps are made in the form of a helmet, with the middle part, or crest, frequently of a hand's breadth. They sit very close upon the head, and have notches to admit the ears. They consist of twigs and osiers, covered with a net-work, into which feathers are wrought, as upon the cloaks, but somewhat closer, and less diversified; the major part being red, with some yellow, green, or black stripes, on the sides. These caps, in all probability, complete the dress, with the cloak; for the islanders appeared sometimes in both together.

Our men could not conjecture from whence they obtained such a quantity of these beautiful feathers; but they soon procured intelligence respecting one sort: for they afterwards brought for sale great numbers of skins of a small, red species of bird, frequently tied up in bunches of twenty or upwards, or having a wooden skewer run through them. At first, those that were purchased, consisted only of the skin from behind the wings forward, but they afterwards obtained many with the hind part, including the feet and tail. The former instantly suggested to them the origin of the fable of the birds of paradise being destitute of legs; and, sufficiently explained that circumstance. The reason assigned by the inhabitants of Atooi, for the custom of cutting off the feet of these birds, is, that by this practice they can preserve them the more easily, without losing any part which they consider as valuable.

The red bird of this island, was, according to Mr. Anderson, a species of *merops*, about as large as a sparrow; its colour was a beautiful scarlet, with the tail and wings black; and it had an arched bill, twice as long as the head, which, with the feet, was of a reddish hue. The contents of the heads were taken out, as in the birds of paradise; but our men did not find that they practised any other mode of preserving them than by simple drying; for the skins, though they were moist, had neither a smell nor taste that could give any reason for suspecting the use of anti-putrescent substances.

On Thursday, the 22nd, there was almost continual rain for the whole morning; the wind was at south-east, south-south-east, and south, and the surf broke so high upon the shore, that the boats were prevented from landing. The Resolution was not in a very secure situation there being breakers within little more than two cables' length from her stern. The natives, notwithstanding the surf, ventured out in their canoes, bringing off to the ships, hogs and vegetables, which they exchanged, as before, for our commodities. One of their number who offered some

fish-hooks for sale, was observed to have a very small parcel fastened to the string of one of them, which he carefully separated, and reserved for himself, when he disposed of the hook. When asked what it was, he pointed to his belly, and intimated something of its being dead; saying, at the same time, that it was bad. He was requested to open the parcel, which he did with great reluctance: and they found that it contained a small, thin piece of flesh, which had to all appearance been dried, but was at present wet with salt water. Imagining that it might be human flesh, they put the question to the producer of it, who answered that the flesh was part of a man. Another of the islanders, who stood near him, was then asked, whether it was a custom among them to eat their enemies who had been slain in battle? and he immediately answered in the affirmative.

In the afternoon, there were some intervals of fair weather; the wind then changed to the east, and north-east, but towards the evening it veered back again to south-south-east. The rain also returning, continued the whole night, but was not accompanied with much wind; at seven, the next morning, a north-easterly breeze springing up, Captain Cook ordered the anchors of his ship to be taken up, with a view of removing her further out. As soon as the last anchor was up, the wind veering to the east, rendered it necessary to make all the sail he could, for the purpose of clearing the shore: so that, before he had good sea-room, he was driven considerably to leeward. He endeavoured to regain the road, but having a strong current against him, and very little wind, he could not accomplish that design; he therefore dispatched Messrs. King and Williamson ashore, with three boats, to procure water and refreshments, sending, at the same time, an order to Captain Clerke to put to sea after him, if he should find that the Resolution was unable to recover the road.

The commodore having hopes of finding a road, or perhaps a harbour, at the west-end of the island, was the less anxious about regaining his former station; but as he had sent the boats thither, he kept as much as possible to windward; notwithstanding which, at noon, the ship was three leagues to leeward. As they approached the west-end they found that the coast rounded gradually to the north-east, without forming a cove or creek, wherein a vessel might be sheltered from the violence of the swell, which, rolling in from the northward, broke against the shore in a prodigious surf: all hopes, therefore, of meeting with a harbour here soon vanished. Many of the natives in their canoes followed as they stood out to sea, bartering various articles; as they were extremely unwilling, notwithstanding the suspicious circumstance of the preceding day, to believe that these people were cannibals, they now made some further inquiries on this subject. A small instrument of wood, beset with sharks' teeth, had been purchased, which, as it resembled the saw or knife made use of by the savages of New Zealand to dissect the bodies of their

enemies, was suspected by our men to be employed here for the same purpose. One of the islanders being questioned on this point, informed them, that the instrument above-mentioned served the purpose of cutting out the fleshy part of the belly when any person was slain.—This explained and confirmed the circumstance before related, of the man's pointing to his belly. The native, however, from whom they now received this intelligence, being asked whether his countrymen ate the part thus cut out, strongly denied it; but when the question was repeated, he shewed some degree of apprehension, and swam off to his canoe. An elderly man, who sat foremost in the canoe, was then asked whether they ate the flesh, and he answered in the affirmative. The question being then put to him a second time, he again affirmed the fact; adding that it was savoury food.

The boats returned about seven o'clock in the evening, with a few hogs, some plantains and roots, and two tons of water. Mr. King reported to the commodore that the islanders were very numerous at the watering-place, and had brought great numbers of hogs to barter; but our people had not commodities with them adequate to the purchase of them all. He also mentioned, that the surf had run so very high, that it was with extreme difficulty our men landed, and afterwards got back into the boats.

On Saturday, the 24th, at day-break, it was found that the ship had been carried by the currents to the north-west and north, and so that the western extremity of Atooi bore east, at the distance of one league. A northerly breeze sprung up soon after, and Captain Cook expecting that this would bring the *Discovery* to sea, steered for Oneeheow, a neighbouring island which then bore south-west, with a view of anchoring there. He continued to steer for it till past eleven, at which time he was at the distance of about six miles from it; but not seeing the *Discovery*, he was apprehensive lest some ill consequence might arise from their separating so far; he therefore relinquished the design of visiting Oneeheow for the present, and stood back to Atooi, intending to cast anchor again in the road, in order to complete their supply of water. At two o'clock, the northerly wind was succeeded by calms and variable, light airs, which continued till eleven at night. They stretched to the south-east till early in the morning of the 25th, when they tacked and stood in for the Atooi road, and not long after were joined by the *Discovery*. They were utterly unable to regain the road; and by the morning of the 29th, the currents had carried them to the west-ward, within nine or ten miles of Oneeheow. Weary with plying so unsuccessfully, Captain Cook laid aside all thoughts of returning to Atooi, and resumed his intention of paying a visit to Oneeheow. With this view he dispatched the master in a boat, to sound along the coast, and search for a landing-place, and afterwards for fresh water; in the mean time the ships followed under an easy sail. The master, at his return, reported that there was tolerable

and
pla
C
con
vill
anc
wat
grea
sou
one
the
at t
can
besi
pers
with
and
this
they
had
Man
deck
requ
with
muel
they
perfo
breas
not c
of the
the d
Th
was t
quest
to ren
at the
they v
ing th
ertain
oppo
man h
were l
that h
their
enmit
Mr.
in sear
rected
return

anchorage all along the coast; and that he had landed in one place, but could not find any fresh water.

Captain Cook being informed by some of the natives who had come off to the ships, that fresh water might be obtained at a village which they saw at a little distance, ran down, and cast anchor before it, about six furlongs from the shore, the depth of water being twenty-six fathoms. The *Discovery* anchored at a greater distance from the shore, in twenty-three fathoms; the south-eastern point of Oneeheow bore south, 65 deg. east, about one league distant; and another island, which they had discovered the preceding night, named Tahoorā, bore south, 61 deg. west, at the distance of seven leagues. Before they anchored, several canoes came off to them, bringing potatoes, yams, and small pigs, besides mats. The people who were in them resembled in their persons the inhabitants of Atooi, and like them were acquainted with the use of iron, which they asked for by the names off *toe* and *hameite*, readily parting with all their commodities for pieces of this metal. Some more canoes soon reached the ships, after they had come to anchor; but the islanders who were in these had apparently no other object than to make a formal visit. Many of them came on-board, and crouched down upon the deck: nor did they quit that humble posture till they were requested to rise.—Several women, whom they brought along with them, remained alongside in the canoes, behaving with much less modesty than the females of Atooi; and at intervals they all joined in a song, which, though not very melodious, was performed in the exactest concert, by beating time upon their breasts with their hands.—The men who had come on-board did not continue long with them; and before their departure, some of them desired permission to lay down locks of their hair on the deck.

The curious inquiry, whether these islanders were cannibals, was this day renewed; and the subject did not arise from any questions put by our people, but from a circumstance that seemed to remove all doubt: One of the natives who wished to get in at the gun-room port was refused; and he then asked, whether they would kill and eat him, if he should come in? accompanying this question with signs so expressive, that they did not entertain a doubt with respect to his meaning. They had now an opportunity of retorting the question as to this practice; and a man behind the other, in the canoe, instantly replied, that if they were killed on-shore they would not scruple to eat our men, not that he meant they would destroy them for that purpose, but that their devouring them would be the consequence of being at enmity with them.

Mr. Gore, was sent in the afternoon, with three armed boats, in search of the most commodious landing-place: being also directed to look for fresh water when he should get on-shore. He returned in the evening, and reported to Captain Cook, that he

had landed at the village above-mentioned, and had been conducted to a well above half a mile up the country; but that the water which it contained was in too small a quantity for their purpose, and the road that led to it was extremely bad. The next day, Mr. Gore was sent ashore again, with a guard, and a party to trade with the inhabitants for refreshments. The commodore's intention was to have followed soon afterwards, and he went from the ship with that design; but the surf had so greatly increased by this time, that he was apprehensive, if he got ashore, he should not be able to get off again.—This circumstance really happened to our people who had landed with Mr. Gore for the communication between them and the ships, by their own boats, was quickly stopped. They made a signal in the evening for the boats, which were accordingly sent, and in a short time afterwards returned, with some good salt, and a few yams. A considerable quantity of both these articles had been obtained in the course of the day; but the surf was so exceedingly high, that the greatest part of both had been lost in bringing them off to the boats. The officer and twenty men, not venturing to run the risk of coming off, remained all night on-shore, by which unfortunate circumstance the very thing happened which Captain Cook, as we have already related, so eagerly wished to prevent, and imagined he had so effectually guarded against.

The violence of the surf did not prevent the natives from coming off in canoes to their ships; they brought with them some refreshments, for which they gave them, in exchange, some nails and pieces of iron hoops; and they distributed among the women in the canoes many pieces of ribbon, and some buttons as bracelets. Some of the men had representations of human figures punctured upon their breasts, and one of them had a lizard represented. These visitants acquainted our men that there was no chief of this island, but that it was subject to one of the chiefs of Atooi, whose name was Teneoneoo. Among other articles which the natives now brought off to them, was a small drum, that had a great resemblance to those of Otaheite.

Between ten and eleven o'clock at night, the wind became southerly, and the sky seemed to indicate an approaching storm. In consequence of these threatening appearances, Captain Cook, thinking that they were rather too near the shore, caused the anchors to be taken up; and the ships being carried into forty-two fathoms' water, came to again in that more secure station. This, however, proved an unnecessary precaution; for the wind, not long after, veering to the north-north-east, blew a fresh gale, with squalls and violent showers of rain. This weather continued for the whole succeeding day, during which the sea ran so high, that all communication with the party on-shore was totally intercepted, and the islanders themselves would not venture out to the ships in their canoes. Towards the evening, the commodore sent the master in a boat to the south-east part of the island, to

try w
favou
till th
anoth
was d
Gore,
where
point.
one o
tions.
with t
off the
of the
of the
and m
the po
natives
rity ov
to have
so une

Wh
from a
Cook n
the isla
carried
ground
ately o
he had
Upon t
as if he
walkin
circuit
strang
walk,
called
till he
though
plants
delicio

The
those
ponds
but o
stream
the fr
house
suppo
the w
decer

try whether he could land in that quarter. He returned with a favourable report; but it was now too late to send for the party till the following morning; so that they were obliged to stay another night on-shore. On the appearance of day-light, a boat was dispatched to the south-east point, with orders to Lieutenant Gore, that, if he could not embark his people from the spot where they at present were, he should march them up to the point. The boat being prevented from getting to the beach, one of the crew swam off to shore, and communicated the instructions. After the boat had returned, Captain Cook went himself with the launch and pinnace up to the point, in order to bring off the party from the land. He took with him three goats, one of them a male, and the others females; a young boar and sow of the English breed; and also the seeds of onions, pumpkins, and melons. He landed with great ease under the west-side of the point, where he found his party in company with some of the natives. To one of these, who assumed some degree of authority over the rest, he gave the goats, pigs, and seeds: he intended to have left these useful presents at Atooi, if they had not been so unexpectedly driven from that island.

While our people were employed in filling some water-casks from a little stream which the late rains had occasioned, Captain Cook made a short excursion into the country, accompanied by the islander above-mentioned, and followed by two others, who carried the two pigs. When they had arrived upon a rising ground, the captain stopped to look around him, and immediately observed a woman on the opposite side of the valley where he had landed, calling out to her countrymen who attended him. Upon this, the man who acted as chief began to mutter something, as if he was praying; and the two bearers of the pigs continued walking round the captain all the time, making about a dozen circuits before the other had made an end of his oration. This strange ceremony being performed, they proceeded on their walk, and met people coming from all quarters, who, upon being called to by the captain's attendants, fell prostrate on their faces till he was out of sight.—The ground over which he passed, though it was uncultivated and very stony, was covered with plants and shrubs, some of which perfumed the air with the most delicious fragrance.

The party who had been detained so long on-shore, found, in those parts of the island which they had traversed, several salt ponds, some of which had a small quantity of water remaining, but others had none. They saw no appearance of a running stream; and though, in some small wells which they met with, the fresh water was pretty good, it seemed to be scarce. The houses of the natives were thinly scattered about; and it was supposed that there were not more than five hundred persons in the whole island. The method of living among these people was decent and cleanly. No instance was observed of the men and

women eating together; and the latter seemed in general to be associated in companies by themselves. The oily nuts of the *dooc dooc* are burned by these islanders for light during the night; and they dress their hogs by baking them in ovens, splitting the carcasses through their whole length. Our people met with a sufficient proof of the existence of the *taboo* among them: for one woman was employed in feeding another who was under that interdiction. Several other mysterious ceremonies were also observed; one of which was performed by a woman, who threw a pig into the surf and drowned it, and then tied a bundle of wood, which she also disposed of in the same manner. The same female, at another time, beat a man's shoulders with a stick, after he had seated himself for that purpose. An extraordinary veneration seemed to be paid here to owls, which they keep very tame. It appeared to be a pretty general practice among them, to pull out one of their teeth; and when they were asked the reason of this remarkable custom, the only answer they gave was, that it was *teeha*, which was also the reason assigned by them for giving a lock of their hair.

After the water-casks had been filled, and some roots, salt, and salted fish had been purchased from the natives, Captain Cook returned on-board with all his people, intending to make another visit to the island the next day. But, about seven in the evening, the anchor of the *Resolution* started, so that she drove off the bank. By this accident they found themselves at day-break the next morning, which was the 2nd of February, nine miles to the leeward of their last station; and the captain, foreseeing that it would require more time to regain it than he chose to employ, made the signal for the *Discovery* to weigh anchor and join them. This junction was effected about noon; and both ships immediately directed their course to the northward in prosecution of their voyage. Thus, after they had spent more time in the neighbourhood of these islands than was necessary to have answered all their purposes, they were obliged to quit them before they had completed their stock of water, or procured from them such a plentiful supply of refreshments as the natives were both able and willing to have furnished them with. The ship, however, obtained from them provisions that lasted at least three weeks; and Captain Clerke, more fortunate than they were, acquired such a quantity of vegetables as sufficed the *Discovery's* people upwards of two months.

The observations which Captain Cook was enabled to make on these islands combined with those of Mr. Anderson, whose abilities and assiduity rendered him a very useful assistant on such occasions, are as follow:—

“The islands in the Pacific Ocean, which have been discovered in the course of our late voyages, have been generally found situated in groups; the single, intermediate isles, hitherto met with, being few in proportion to the rest, though, in all proba-

bili
as a
num
be l
ther
and
the
point
birds
tellig
in th
six, v
eastw
group
Earl
latitu
tween
“V
seen
land,
“O
alread
chorin
circum
We pr
is prod
and som
good,
except
the sea
which
“O
an elev
of One
“O
procee
able to
at leas
its circ
much
anchor
side of
a villag
bank
where
breake
notwit
and gr
ships t

bility, there are many more of them yet unknown, which serve as gradations or steps between the several clusters. Of what number this newly-discovered Archipelago is composed, must be left to the decision of future navigators. We observed five of them, whose names are Woahoo, Atooi, Oneeheow, Oreehoua, and Tahoorā. The last of these is a small, elevated island, at the distance of about four or five leagues from the south-east point of Oneeheow. We were informed that it abounds with birds, which are its sole inhabitants. We also gained some intelligence with regard to the existence of a low, uninhabited island in the neighbourhood, named Tammatapappa. Besides these six, we were told that there were some other islands both to the eastward and westward. Captain Cook distinguished the whole group by the name of the Sandwich Islands, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich. Those which he saw are situated between the latitude of 21 deg. 30 min., and 22 deg. 15 min. north, and between the longitude of 199 deg. 20 min. and 201 deg. 30 min. east.

“With respect to Woahoo, the most easterly of these islands, seen by us, we could get no other information but that it is high land, and is inhabited.

“Oneeheow, concerning which some particulars have been already mentioned, lies seven leagues to the westward of our anchoring-place at Atooi, and does not exceed fifteen leagues in circumference. Yams are its principal vegetable production. We procured some salt here, called by the natives *patai*, which is produced in salt ponds. With it they cure both fish and pork: and some salt fish, which we purchased from them, were extremely good, and kept very well. This island is chiefly low land, except the part opposite Atooi, which rises immediately from the sea to a considerable height, as does also its south-east point, which terminates in a round hill.

“Of Oreehoua we knew no other particulars than that it is an elevated island, of small extent, lying close to the north-side of Oneeheow.

“Of Atooi, which is the largest of those we saw, we shall now proceed to lay before our readers such information as we were able to collect concerning it. From what we observed of it, it is, at least, ten leagues in length from east to west; from whence its circumference may nearly be guessed, though it appears to be much broader at the east than at the west point. The road, or anchoring-place which our vessels occupied, is on the south-west side of the island, about two leagues from the west-end, before a village named Wymoa. As far as we sounded, we found the bank free from rocks; except to the eastward of the village, where there projects a shoal, on which are some rocks and breakers. This road is somewhat exposed to the trade-wind; notwithstanding which defect, it is far from being a bad station, and greatly superior to those which necessity continually obliges ships to use, in countries where the winds are not only more vari-

able, but more boisterous, as at Madeira, 'Teneriffe, the Azores, &c. The landing too is not so difficult as at most of those places; and unless in very bad weather, is always practicable. The water in the neighbourhood is excellent, and may be conveyed with ease to the boats. But no wood can be cut at any convenient distance, unless the islanders could be prevailed upon to part with the few *etooa* trees (for that is the name they give to the *cordia sebestina*) that grows about their villages, or a species called *dooe dooe*, which grows farther up the country.

"The land does not in the least resemble, in its general appearance, any of the islands we have visited within the tropic of Capricorn; if we except its hills near the centre, which are high, but slope gradually towards the sea, or lower lands. Though it be destitute of the delightful borders of Otaheite, or the luxuriant plains of Tongataboo, covered with trees, which at once afford a shelter from the scorching rays of the sun, a beautiful prospect to the eye, and food for the natives, yet its possessing a greater portion of gently rising land, renders it in some degree superior to the above-mentioned favourite islands, as being more capable of improvement. The height of the land within, and the number of clouds which we saw during the whole time of our continuance, hanging over it, and not unfrequently on the other parts, seem to indicate that there is a sufficient supply of water, and that there are some running streams which we had not an opportunity of seeing particularly in the deep vallies, at the entrance of which the villages are in general situated. The ground, from the wooded part of the sea, is covered with an excellent kind of grass, about two feet in height, which sometimes grows in tufts, and appeared capable of being converted into abundant crops of fine hay. But on this extensive space not even a shrub grows naturally.

"In the narrow valley leading to the *morai*, the soil is of a dark brown colour, rather loose; but on the high ground it is of a reddish brown, more stiff and clayey. It is probably the same all over the cultivated parts; for what adhered to most of the potatoes that we purchased, which doubtless came from very different spots, was of this sort. Its quality, however, may be better estimated from its productions than from its appearance. For the vale, or moist ground produces *taro*, much larger than any we had ever seen; and the more elevated ground furnishes sweet potatoes, that seldom weigh less than two or three pounds, and frequently weigh ten, and sometimes a dozen or fourteen pounds.

"Were we to judge of the climate from our experience, it might be said to be very variable; for, according to the general opinion, it was, at this time, the season of the year when the weather is supposed to be most settled, the sun being at his greatest annual distance. The heat was now very moderate; and few of those inconveniences to which many countries lying

with
to b
quen
the l
" "
grey
rusty
It is
thoug
off to
hered
proba
For, c
lydius
times
comm
the na
stone.
from it
quantit
artificia
" Be
among
island p
as we o
cocoa-p
Virginia
cape jus
that bea
and ma
same m
except i
ing thes
species
which is
intoxica
last grov
which p
the villa
in this o
bearing
" The
met with
canary
owl, tw
from th
were the
brel. I
we may

within the tropics are subject, either from heat or moisture, seem to be experienced here. Nor did we find any dews of consequence; a circumstance which may partly be accounted for by the lower part of the country being destitute of trees.

“The rock that constitutes the sides of the valley, is a dark, grey ponderous stone, but honey-combed, with some spots of a rusty colour, and some very minute, shining particles interspersed. It is of an immense depth, and seems to be divided into *strata*, though nothing is interposed; for the large pieces always broke off to a determinate thickness, and did not appear to have adhered to those that were below them. Other stones are, in all probability, much more various than in the southern islands. For, during the short time we remained here, besides the *lapus lydius*, we found a species of cream-coloured whet-stone, sometimes variegated with whiter or blacker veins, like marble; and common writing slate, as well as some of a coarser sort; and the natives brought us some pieces of a coarse, whitish pumice-stone. We also procured a brown sort of *hæmatites*, which, from its being strongly attracted by the magnet, discovered the quantity of metal it contained. What we saw of this was cut artificially, as were also the slates and whet-stones.

“Besides the vegetables purchased by us as refreshments, among which were at least five or six varieties of plantains, the island produces bread-fruit; this, however, seems to be scarce, as we only saw one tree of that species. There are also a few cocoa-palms, some yams, the *kappe* of the Friendly Islands, or Virginian *arum*; the *etooa* tree, and odoriferous *gardenia*, or *cape jasmine*. We met with several trees of the *dooe dooe*, that bear the oily nuts, which are stuck upon a kind of skewer, and made use of as candles. Our people saw them used in the same manner at Onecheow. We were not on-shore at Atooi, except in the day-time, and then we observed the islanders wearing these nuts, hung on strings, round their necks. There is a species of *sida*, or Indian mallow; also the *morinda citrifolia*, which is here called *none*; a species of *convolvulus*; the *kava*, or intoxicating pepper; besides great quantities of gourds. These last grow to a very large size, and are of a vast variety of shapes, which probably is effected by art. Upon the dry sand, about the village, grew a plant that had never been seen by any of us in this ocean, of the size of a common thistle, and prickly, but bearing a fine flower, greatly resembling a white poppy.

“The scarlet birds, which were brought for sale, were never met with alive; but we saw one small one, about the size of a canary bird, of a deep, crimson colour.—We also saw a large owl, two brown hawks or kites, and a wild duck. We heard from the natives the names of some other birds, among which were the *otoo*, or blueish heron, and the *torata*, a sort of whimbrel. It is probable that the species of birds are numerous, if we may judge by the quantity of fine yellow, green, and small,

velvet-like, blackish feathers used upon the cloaks, and other ornaments, worn by these people.

“Fish, and other productions of the sea, were, to appearance, not various; as, besides the small mackerel, we only saw common mullets; a species of a chalky colour; a small brownish rock-fish, adorned with blue spots; a turtle, which was penned up in a pond; and three or four sorts of fish salted. The few shell-fish seen by us were chiefly converted into ornaments, though they were destitute either of beauty or novelty.

“The only tame or domestic animals that we found here were hogs, dogs, and fowls, which were all of the same kind that we met with at the islands of the South Pacific. There were also small lizards, and some rats, resembling those of every island which we had hitherto visited.

“The inhabitants of Atooi are of the middle size, and, in general stoutly made. They are neither remarkable for a beautiful shape, nor for striking features; their visage particularly that of the women, is somewhat round, but others have it long; nor can it justly be said that they are distinguished, as a nation, by any general cast of countenance. Their complexion is nearly of a nut-brown, but some individuals are of a darker hue. We have already mentioned the women as being little more delicate than the men in their formation; and we may add, that, with few exceptions, they have little claim to those peculiarities that distinguish the sex in most other parts of the world. There is, indeed, a very remarkable equality in the size, colour, and figure of the natives of both sexes; upon the whole, however, they are far from being ugly, and have, to all appearance, few natural deformities of any kind. Their skin is not very soft nor shining; but their eyes and teeth are for the most part, pretty good. Their hair, in general, is straight; and though its natural colour is usually black, they stain it, as at the Friendly and other islands. We perceived but few instances of corpulence and these more frequently among the women than the men; but it was principally among the latter that personal defects were observed; though, if any of them can lay claim to a share of beauty, it appeared to be most conspicuous amongst the young men.

“They are active, vigorous, and most expert swimmers; leaving their canoes upon the most trifling occasion, diving under them, and swimming to others, though at a considerable distance. We have frequently seen women, with infants at their breast, when the surf was so high as to prevent their landing in the canoes, leap overboard, and swim to the shore, without endangering their little ones.

“They appear to be of a frank, cheerful disposition; and are equally free from the fickle levity which characterizes the inhabitants of Otaheite, and the sedate cast which is observed among many of those of Tongataboo. They seem to cultivate a social

into
thie
hav
And
ours
pear
asto
appl
ever
of th
natio
Japa
ing t
infan
ance
from
rather
esteem

“F
as we
this is
there
as that
sons to
or, th
means
people
be sup
presen

“Th
The w
about t
and so
thrown
part of
naked.
of men
fashion
and lon
in such
the cre
sexes, I
had no
men so
the tails
of these
artificia
“Cor
Pacific

intercourse with each other; and, except the propensity of thieving, which is, as it were, innate in most of the people we have visited in these seas, they were extremely friendly to us. And it does no small credit to their sensibility, without flattering ourselves, that when they saw the different articles of our European manufacture, they could not refrain from expressing their astonishment, by a mixture of joy and concern, that seemed to apply the case as a lesson of humility to themselves; and on every occasion, they appeared to have a proper consciousness of their own inferiority; a behaviour that equally exempts their national character from the ridiculous pride of the more polished Japanese, and of the ruder native of Greenland. It was pleasing to observe with what affection the women managed their infants, and with what alacrity the men contributed their assistance in such a tender office; thus distinguishing themselves from those savages who consider a wife and child as things rather necessary than desirable, or worthy of their regard and esteem.

“From the numbers that we saw assembled at every village as we coasted along, it may be conjectured that the inhabitants of this island are pretty numerous. Including the straggling houses, there might perhaps be, in the whole island, sixty such villages as that near which our ships anchored; and if we allow five persons to each house, there would be in every village five hundred, or, thirty thousand upon the island. This number is by no means exaggerated; for there were sometimes three thousand people at least collected upon the beach, when it could not be supposed that above the tenth part of the natives were present.

“The ordinary dress of both sexes has been already described. The women have often much larger pieces of cloth wrapped about them, extending from just below the breasts to the hams, and sometimes lower; and several were observed with pieces thrown loosely over their shoulders, which covered the greatest part of the body; but the children, when very young, are entirely naked. They wear nothing upon the head; but the hair both of men and women is cut in various forms; and the general fashion, particularly among the latter, is to have it short behind, and long before. The men frequently had it cut on each side, in such a manner, that the remaining part somewhat resembled the crests of their caps, or helmets before-mentioned. Both sexes, however, seemed to be very careless about their hair, and had no combs nor any thing of the kind to dress it with. The men sometimes twist it into a number of separate parcels, like the tails of a wig, each about as thick as a finger; though most of these, which are so long as to reach far down the back, are artificially fixed upon the head over their own hair.

“Contrary to the general practice of most of the islands of the Pacific Ocean, the people of the Sandwich Isles have not their

ears perforated; nor do they wear any ornaments in them. Both men and women, however, adorn themselves with necklaces composed of bunches of small, black cord, often above a hundred fold, exactly resembling those we saw worn at Wateoo, except that, instead of the two little balls on the middle before, they fix a small piece of wood, stone, or shell, about two inches in length, with a broad hook, well polished. They have also necklaces of many strings of very small shells, or of the dried flowers of the Indian mallow; and they sometimes hang round their necks a small human figure of bone, about the length of three inches. The women likewise wear bracelets of a single shell, pieces of black wood, with bits of ivory interspersed, and neatly polished, fastened together by a string drawn closely through them, or others of hogs' teeth, placed parallel to each other, with the concave part outward, and the points cut off; some of which, formed only of large boars' tusks, are very elegant. The men sometimes wear on their heads plumes of feathers of the tropic-bird, or those of cocks, fastened round neat, polished sticks, two feet in length; and for the same purpose they sew the skin of a white dog's tail over a stick, with its tuft at the end. They also not unfrequently wear on the head a kind of ornament, of the thickness of a finger or more, covered with yellow and red feathers, curiously varied, and tied behind; and on that part of the arm which is above the elbow, a sort of broad shell-work grounded upon net-work.

"The men sometimes puncture themselves upon their hands or arms, and near the groin; but frequently we saw no marks at all, though a few individuals had more of this species of ornament than we had usually seen at other places, and curiously executed in a great variety of lines and figures, on the arms and forepart of the body. Contrary to the custom of the Friendly and Society Islands, they do not slit or cut off any part of the prepuce; but have it universally drawn over the glands, and tied with a string.

"There is no appearance of defence or fortification near any of their villages, and the houses are scattered about without the least order. Some of these habitations are large and commodious, from forty to fifty feet in length, and twenty or thirty in breadth, while others of them are contemptible hovels. Their figure resembles that of hay-stacks; or, perhaps, a better idea may be conceived of them, by supposing the roof of a barn placed on the ground, in such a manner as to form a high, acute ridge, with two low sides. The gable at each end corresponding to the sides, makes these habitations close all round; and they are well thatched with long grass, which is laid on slender poles. The entrance is made either in the end or side, and is an oblong hole, extremely low; it is often shut up by a board of planks fastened together, which serves as a door; but, as it has no hinges, must be removed occasionally. No light enters the

ho
ma
bu
ke
gra
end
ute
nat
and
of a
"
mar
tain
that
Of a
num
and
stock
ing-b
toler
tom
gour
reddi
same
colour
of the
lumps
"
T
and f
we im
consi
oven.
island
obser
ovens
tice a
could
ficial
sour,
sort o
from
same
allow
"
T
see th
but fi
occas
lar to
so sk

house except by this opening; and though such close habitations may be comfortable places of retreat in bad weather, they seem but ill adapted to the warm climate of this country. They are kept remarkably clean, and the floors are strewed with dried grass, over which mats are spread to sit and sleep on. At one end stands a bench about three feet high, on which the domestic utensils are placed. These consist of gourd-shells, which the natives convert into vessels that serve as bottles to hold water, and as baskets to contain their food, and other things; and also of a few wooden bowls and trenchers of various size.

“From what we saw growing, and from what was brought to market, we have no doubt that sweet potatoes, *taro*, and plantains, constitute the principal part of their vegetable diet; and that yams and bread-fruit are rather to be considered as rarities. Of animal food they appear to be in no want, as they have great numbers of hogs, which run without restraint about the houses; and if they eat dogs, which is not altogether improbable, their stock of these seemed very considerable. The quantities of fishing-hooks found among them, indicated that they procure a tolerable supply of animal food from the sea. They have a custom of salting fish, and likewise pork, which they preserve in gourd-shells. The salt which they use for this purpose is of a reddish colour, but not very coarse, and seems to be nearly the same with what our stragglers found at Christmas Island. Its colour is doubtless derived from a mixture of mud at the bottom of the part where it is formed; for some of it, which adhered in lumps, was of a tolerable whiteness.

“They bake their vegetable articles of food with heated stones; and from the great quantity which we saw dressed at one time, we imagined that all the inhabitants of a village, or at least a considerable number of people, joined in the use of a common oven. We did not perceive them dress any animal food at this island; but Mr. Gore's party, as has been already mentioned, observed that it was dressed at Oneeheow in the same kind of ovens; which makes it highly probable that this is also the practice at Atooi; particularly, as we met with no utensil there that could serve the purpose of boiling or stewing. The only artificial dish we saw there was a *taro* pudding, which, though very sour, was devoured with avidity by the natives. They eat off a sort of wooden trenchers; and as far as we were enabled to judge from one instance, the women, if restrained from feeding at the same dish with the men, as is the custom at Otahete, are at least allowed to eat in the same place near them.

“The amusements of these people are various. We did not see the dances at which they use the feathered cloaks and caps; but from the motions which they made with their hands on other occasions, when they sung, we judged they were somewhat similar to those we had met with at the southern islands, though not so skillfully performed. They had not among them either flutes

or reeds; and the only two musical instruments seen by us were of an extremely rude kind. One of them does not produce a melody superior to that of a child's rattle. It consists of what may be denominated a conic cap inverted, but very little hollowed at the base, made of a sedge-like plant, the upper part of which, and likewise the edges, are embellished with beautiful red feathers, and to the point, or lower part, is fixed a gourd-shell. Into this they put something to rattle, which is done by holding the instrument by the small part, and shaking it briskly before the face, at the same time, striking the breast with the other hand. The other instrument was a hollow vessel of wood, not unlike a platter, combined with the use of two sticks, on which one of our gentlemen observed a man performing. He held one of the sticks, about two feet in length, with one hand, in the same manner as we hold a violin, and struck it with the other, which was smaller, and resembled a drum-stick, in a quicker or slower measure, beating with his foot at the same time upon the hollow vessel that lay upon the ground inverted, and thus producing a tune that was not disagreeable. This music was accompanied by the vocal performance of some women, whose song had a pleasing effect.

“They have great numbers of small, polished rods, of the length of between four and five feet, rather thicker than the rammer of a musket, with a tuft of long white dog's hair fixed on the small end. These they probably make use of in their diversions. We saw a native take one of them in his hand, and holding it up, give a smart stroke, till it was brought into a horizontal position, striking the ground with his foot on the same side, and beating his breast with his other hand. They play at bowls with pieces of the whet-stone before-mentioned, shaped somewhat like a small cheese, but rounded at the edges and sides, which are very neatly polished. They have other bowls made of a reddish, brown clay, glazed over with a composition of the same colour, or of a coarse, dark, grey slate. They also use as quoits small, flat, roundish pieces of the writing-slate, scarcely a quarter of an inch thick.

“In the different manufactures of these people there appears to be an extraordinary degree of ingenuity and neatness. Their cloth is made from the *morus papyrifera*, and doubtless in the same manner as at Tongataboo and Otaheite; for we bought some of the grooved sticks with which they beat it. Its texture, however, though thicker, is inferior to that of the cloth of either of the places just mentioned; but in colouring or staining it the inhabitants of Atooi display a superiority of taste, by the infinite variety of figures which they execute. Their colours, indeed, are not very bright, except the red, but the regularity of the figures and stripes is amazing; for, as far as we know, they have nothing like stamps or prints to make the impressions. We had no opportunity of learning in what manner they produce

their colours; but, besides the variegated sorts, they have some pieces of plain, white cloth, and others of a single colour, particularly light-blue and dark-brown. In general, the pieces brought to us were about the breadth of two feet, and four or five yards in length, being the form and quantity made use of by them for their common dress *or maro*; and even some of these were composed of pieces sewed together. They have also a particular sort that is thin, and greatly resembles oil-cloth, and which is either oiled, or soaked in some kind of varnish. They fabricate numbers of white mats, which are strong, with many red stripes, rhombuses, and other figures interwoven on one side. These, in all probability, occasionally make a part of their dress; for when they offered them to sale they put them on their backs. They manufacture others of a coarser sort, plain and strong, which they spread over their floors to sleep upon.

“They stain their gourd-shells neatly with undulated lines, triangles, and other figures of a black colour.—They also seem to be acquainted with the art of varnishing; for some of these stained gourd-shells are covered with a sort of lacker; and on other occasions they make use of a strong size, or glutinous substance, to fasten things together. Their wooden dishes and bowls, out of which they drink their *kava*, are of the *etooa* tree, or *cordia*, extremely neat and well polished. They also make small, square fans of mat or wicker-work, with handles of the same, or of wood, tapering from them, which are curiously wrought with small cords of hair and cocoa-nut fibres intermixed. Their fishing-hooks are ingeniously made, some of bone, many of pearl-shells, and others of wood, pointed with bone. The bones are for the most part small, and consist of two pieces, and the various sorts have a barb, either on the inside, like ours, or on the outside; but others have both, the exterior one being farthest from the point. Of the latter sort, one was procured, nine inches in length, made of a single piece of bone, the elegant form and polish of which could not be exceeded by any European artist. They polish their stones by constant friction, with pumice-stone, in water; and such of their tools as we saw, resembled those of the Southern Islanders. Their hatchets, or rather adzes, were exactly of the same pattern, and were either formed of a blackish stone, or of a clay-coloured one. They have also small instruments, composed of a single shark's tooth, some of which are fixed to the fore-part of the jaw-bone of a dog, and others to a thin, wooden handle, of a similar shape, and at the other end there is a bit of string fastened through a little hole. These serve occasionally for knives, and are probably used in carving.

“The only iron tools seen amongst them, and which they possessed before our arrival, were a piece of iron hoop, about the length of two inches, fitted into a wooden handle, and another edge-tool, which we supposed to have been made of

the point of a broad-sword. Their having the actual possession of these, and their being well acquainted with the use of this metal, inclined some of our people to imagine that we were not the first European visitors of these islands. But the very great surprise which they testified on seeing our ships, and their total ignorance of the use of fire-arms, cannot be reconciled with such an opinion. There are many ways by which such people may obtain pieces of iron, or acquire the knowledge of the existence of that metal, without having had an immediate connection with those nations that use it. It can scarcely be doubted that it was unknown to all the inhabitants of the Pacific Ocean till Magalhaens led the way to it; for no navigator, immediately after his voyage, found any of this metal in their possession; though, in the course of our late voyages, it has been remarked that the use of it was known at several islands, which no former European vessels had ever to our knowledge visited. At all the places where Mendana touched, during his two voyages, some of it must have been left; and this would doubtless extend the knowledge of it to all the various islands with which the people whom he visited had any immediate intercourse. It might even have been carried further; and where specimens of this valuable article could not be met with, descriptions might in some degree serve to make it known, when afterward seen. The next voyage to the southward of the equator, in which any intercourse was had with the people who inhabit the islands of this ocean, was that of Quiros, who landed at Sagittaria, the Island of Handsome People, and at Tierra del Espiritu Santo; at all which places, as well as at those with which they had any communication, it must undoubtedly have been made known. To him succeeded, in this navigation, Le Maire and Schouten, whose connection with the natives began much farther to the eastward, and terminated at Cocos and Horn Islands. It is certain that the inhabitants of Otaheite and the Society Isles had a knowledge of iron, and purchased it with the greatest avidity, when Captain Wallis discovered Otaheite; and they could only have acquired this knowledge through the mediation of those neighbouring islands at which it had been originally left. They acknowledge, indeed, that this was really the case; and they have since informed us, that they held it in such estimation before the arrival of Captain Wallis, that an Otaheitean chief, who had got possession of two nails, received no small emolument, by letting out the use of them to his neighbours, for the purpose of boring holes. The natives of the Society Islands, whom we found at Watecoo, had been driven to that place long after the knowledge and use of iron had been thus introduced among their countrymen; and though, perhaps, they had no specimen of it with them, they would naturally communicate at that island, by description, their knowledge of this useful metal. From the people of Watecoo, again, those of Hervey's Island might derive

that inclination for it, of which we had sufficient proofs during our short intercourse with them.

“The consideration of these facts will shew how the knowledge of iron has been conveyed throughout the Pacific Ocean, to islands which never had an immediate connection with Europeans; and it may be easily imagined, that wherever the history of it only has been reported, or a very inconsiderable quantity of it has been left, the greater eagerness will be shewn by the inhabitants to procure plentiful supplies of it. The application of these particulars, to the object of our present consideration, is manifest. The natives of Atooi and Onecheow, without having ever been visited by Europeans before us, might have received this metal from intermediate islands, situated between them and the Ladrões, which the Spaniards have frequented almost ever since the period of Magalhaens's voyage. Or, if the distant western position of the Ladrões should detract from the probability of this solution, is there not the American continent to windward, where the Spaniards have been settled for upwards of two centuries and a half; during which long space of time, shipwrecks must frequently have happened on its coasts? It cannot be deemed surprising, that part of such wrecks, containing iron, should, by the easterly trade winds, be occasionally cast upon some of these islands which are dispersed about this immense ocean. The distance of Atooi from America is no argument against this supposition; and even if it were, it would not destroy it. This ocean is annually traversed by Spanish vessels; and it is highly probable, that, besides the accident of losing a mast and its appendages, casks with iron hoops, and many other things that contain iron, may fall or be thrown overboard during so long a passage, and thus find their way to land. These are not mere conjectures; for one of our people actually saw some wood in a house at Wymoa, which he supposed to be fir: it was worm-eaten, and the natives informed him, that it had been driven ashore by the waves; and we had their own express testimony, that they had obtained from some places to the eastward, the specimens of iron found amongst them.

“From this digression (if it can justly be called so) let us return to the observations made during our continuance at Atooi. The canoes of these people are commonly about four-and-twenty feet in length, and have the bottom, in general, formed of a single piece of wood, hollowed out to the thickness of an inch or more, and brought to a point at each end. The sides are composed of three boards, each about an inch thick, neatly fitted, and lashed to the bottom. The extremities, both at head and stern, are a little elevated, and both are made sharp, somewhat resembling a wedge, but they flatten more abruptly, so that the two side-boards join each other, side by side, for upwards of a foot. As they seldom exceed a foot and a half in breadth, those that go single (for they sometimes join them)

have out-riggers, which are shaped and fitted with more judgment than any we had before seen. They are rowed by paddles, such as we had generally observed at other islands; and some of them have a light, triangular sail, extended to a mast and boom. The ropes which they use for their boats, and the smaller cords for their fishing-tackle, are strong, and neatly made.

“They are by no means novices in the art of agriculture. The vale-ground is one continued plantation of *taro* and some other articles, which have all the appearance of being carefully attended to. The potatoe-fields, and spots of sugar-cane or plantains, on the higher grounds, are planted with great regularity; but neither these nor the others are enclosed with any fence, unless we consider the ditches in the low grounds as such; which, it is more probable, are designed to convey water to the *taro*. The great quantity and excellence of these articles may perhaps be as much owing to skilful culture as natural fertility of soil, which seems better adapted to them than to bread-fruit and cocoa-nut trees; the few we saw of these latter not being in a thriving state. Notwithstanding their skill in agriculture, the island, from its general appearance, seemed to be capable of more extensive improvement, and of maintaining thrice as many inhabitants as are now upon it; for the greater part of it that now lies waste, was apparently as good a soil as those parts that are cultivated. It must therefore be inferred, that these people do not increase in that proportion which would render it necessary for them to take advantage of the extent of their island, towards raising a greater quantity of its vegetable productions for their maintenance.

“Though Captain Cook did not see a chief of any note, there were, however several, as the islanders informed us, who reside at Atooi, and to whom they prostrate themselves as a mark of homage and respect. This prostration seems equivalent to the *moe moea* paid to the chiefs of the Friendly Islands, and is here denominated *hamoea moe*. Whether they were, at first, afraid to shew themselves, or happened to be absent, we cannot determine; but, after the Resolution had left the island, one of these great men made his appearance, and visited Captain Clerke on-board the Discovery; he came off in a double canoe; and, like the sovereign of the Friendly Isles, paid no regard to the small canoes that chanced to be in his way, but ran against, or over them, without making the least attempt to avoid them. And it was impossible for these poor people to avoid him, for they could not then manage their canoes, it being a necessary mark of their submission, that they should lie down till he had passed. His attendants assisted him in getting on-board the ship, and placed him in the gang-way, where they stood round him, holding each other by the hands; nor, would they suffer any one to approach him, but Captain Clerke himself. He was

a young man, appalled from head to foot, and was accompanied by a young woman, who was perhaps his wife. His name was said to be Tamahano. Captain Clerke having made him some presents, received from him in return a large bowl, supported by two figures of men, the carving of which displayed some degree of skill, both with respect to the design and execution. This bowl used to be filled with the *kava* or *ava*, (as it is termed at Otaheite), which liquor is prepared and drank here, as at the other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Captain Clerke could not prevail upon this chief to go below, nor to move from the spot where his attendants had first placed him; so, after remaining some time in the ship, he was carried back into his canoe, and returned to the island. The following day, several messages were sent to Captain Clerke, inviting him to return the visit on-shore, and giving him to understand, that the chief had prepared a considerable present for the occasion; but, the captain being anxious to get out to sea and join the *Resolution*, did not think proper to accept of the invitation.

“The short and imperfect intercourse we had with the natives, did not enable us to form any accurate judgment of the form of government established amongst them; but, from the general similarity of customs, and particularly from what we observed of the honours paid to their chiefs, it seems reasonable to imagine, that it is of the same nature with that which prevails in all the islands we had hitherto visited; and, in all probability, their wars among themselves are equally frequent. This, indeed, might be inferred from the number of weapons which we found in their possession, and from the excellent order in which they kept them. But, we had proofs of the fact from their own confession; and, as we were informed, these wars were carried on between the different districts of their own island, as well as between it and the neighbouring inhabitants of the isles of Oneeheow and Oreehoua. We scarcely need assign any other cause besides this, to account for the appearance before-mentioned of their population not being proportioned to the extent of their ground that is capable of cultivation.

“Besides their spears, formed of a fine, brownish wood, beautifully polished, some of which are barbed at one end, and flattened to a point at the other, they have a kind of weapon which we had never met with before. It somewhat resembles a dagger, and is, in general, about eighteen inches in length, sharpened at one, or both ends, and secured to the hand by a string. Its use is to stab at close combat, and it seems well adapted for that purpose. Some of these may be denominated double daggers, having a handle in the middle, with which they are the better enabled to strike different ways. They have likewise bows and arrows; but, from their slender construction, and their apparent scarcity, it is probable that they never make use of them in battle. The knife or saw, already mentioned, with which they

dissect the dead bodies of their enemies, may also be ranked among their weapons, as they both strike and cut with it when engaged in close fight. It is a small, flat, wooden instrument, about a foot in length, of an oblong shape, rounded at the corners; its edges are surrounded with sharks' teeth strongly fixed to it, and pointing outwards; and it has generally a hole in the handle, through which passes a long string, which they wrap several times round the wrist. We also conjectured, that they use slings on some occasions; we procured some pieces of *hæmatites* or blood-stone, artificially made of an oval form, longitudinally divided, with a narrow groove in the middle of the convex part. To this, the person who had one of them, applied a thin cord, but would not dispose of it, though he was not unwilling to part with the stone, which, as it weighed a pound, must prove fatal when thrown with some degree of force. We likewise saw some pieces of whet-stone neatly polished of an oval figure, but somewhat pointed towards each end; nearly resembling in shape some stones seen by Captain Cook, at New Caledonia, in 1774, and made use of there in slings.

“As some of their religious institutions, and their method of disposing of their dead, strongly indicate an affinity between the manners of these people, and of the natives of the Friendly and Society Islands, we shall mention a few particulars that will serve to place this in a striking point of view. The inhabitants of Tongataboo bury their dead with great decency, and they also inter their human sacrifices; but they do not, to our knowledge, offer any other animals, or even vegetables to their deities. The Otaheiteans do not inter their dead, but expose them to waste by time and putrefaction, though they afterwards bury the bones; and, as this is the case, it is remarkable that they should inter the entire bodies of their human sacrifices. They also offer up to their gods other animals and vegetables; but, are far from being attentive to the condition of the places where they celebrate those solemn rites; most of their *morais* being in a ruinous state, and shewing manifest tokens of neglect. The people of Atooi, again, bury their common dead and their human sacrifices, as at Tongataboo; but, they resemble those of Otaheite, in offering vegetables and animals to their gods, and in the neglected state of their religious places.

“The *taboo* also prevails in Atooi, in its full extent, and apparently with greater strictness than even at Tongataboo. For the natives here always asked, with great eagerness, and with indications of a fear of offending, whether any particular thing which they desired to see, or we were unwilling to shew, was a *taboo*, or, (as they pronounced the word) *tafoo*? The *mai*, *raa*, or prohibited articles at the Society Islands, though undoubtedly the same thing, did not appear to be so rigorously observed by them, except with regard to the dead, respecting whom we thought them more superstitious than any of the others were.

These, however, are circumstances concerning which we cannot pretend to speak decisively; and, we shall only observe, to shew the similitude in other points connected with religion, that the *tahoumas*, or priests, seem to be as numerous here as at the other islands.

“But whatever resemblance we might discover, between the general manners of the inhabitants of Atooi to those of Otaheite, these were less striking than the similarity of language. Indeed, the languages of both places may be said to be almost entirely the same. The people of Atooi, in general, have neither the strong guttural pronunciation of the New Zealanders, nor that smaller degree of it which also distinguishes the Friendly Islanders; and, they have not only adopted the soft mode of the Otaheiteans, in avoiding harsh sounds, but the whole idiom of their language; using, not only the same affixes and suffixes to their words, but the same measure and cadence in their songs. At first hearing, indeed a stranger may perceive some disagreement; but, it should be considered, that the natives of Otaheite, from their frequent connections with the English, had learned, in some measure, to adapt themselves to our imperfect knowledge of their language, by using not only the most common, but even corrupted expressions in conversation with us; whereas, when they talked with each other, and used the several parts necessary to propriety of speech, they were hardly at all understood by those amongst us, who had made the greatest progress in the knowledge of their vocabulary. A list of words was collected at Atooi, by the indefatigable Mr. Anderson, who embraced every opportunity of rendering our voyage useful, to those who amuse themselves, in tracing the emigrations of the tribes that have peopled the globe, by the most convincing of all arguments, that drawn from affinity of language.

“How widely has this nation diffused itself, in so many detached islands, so far distant from each other, in every quarter of the Pacific Ocean! We find it, from New Zealand, in the south, as far as the Sandwich Islands to the north; and, in another direction, from Easter Island, to the New Hebrides: that is, over an extent of 60 degrees of latitude, or 3,600 miles, north and south; and 83 degrees of longitude, or 4,980 miles, east and west! How much further, in either of those directions, its colonies reach, is not known; but, from what we are already acquainted with, we are authorized in pronouncing it to be the most extensive nation upon earth, though perhaps, not the most numerous.

“If the Sandwich Islands had been discovered at an early period by the Spaniards, they would doubtless have availed themselves of so excellent a situation, and have made use of Atooi, or some other of the islands, as a place of refreshment for the ships that sail annually between Manilla and Acapulco.—They lie almost mid-way between the last mentioned place and Guam, one of the Ladrões, which is at present their only port in traversing this vast ocean; and it would not have been a

week's sail, out of their ordinary route to have touched at them. An acquaintance with the Sandwich Isles, would also have been equally favourable to our Buccaneers, who have sometimes passed from the coast of America to the Ladrões, with a stock of provisions and water scarcely adequate to the support of life. Here they might always have met with a plentiful supply, and have been within a month's sail of the very part of California, which the Manilla ship is obliged to make. How happy would Lord Anson have been, and what difficulties would he have avoided, had he known that there was a cluster of islands, half-way between America and Tinian, where all his wants might have been effectually relieved!"

We now return to the progress of their voyage:—

The Discovery having joined, they stood away to the northward, with a gentle gale from the east, but the tides are so considerable at the Sandwich Islands, that with the great surf breaking against the shore, it was difficult at all times to know whether they had high or low water, or whether it ebbed or flowed. On the south-side of Atooi, a current generally set to the westward or north-westward; but, at anchor off Oneehew, they found a current setting nearly north-west and south-east, six hours each way. This was doubtless a regular tide, and the flood appeared to come from the north-west.

On Saturday, the 7th of February, being in the latitude of 29 deg. north, and in the longitude of 200 deg. east, the wind veered to the south-east. They steered north-east and east till the 12th, when the wind had veered round to the north-east and east-north-east: and then tacked, and stood to the northward, being in the latitude of 30 deg. north, and in the longitude of 206 deg. 15 min. east. In this advanced latitude, and even in the winter season, they had only begun to feel a sensation of cold in the mornings and evenings; a proof of the equal and durable influence of the heat of the sun, at all times, to 30 deg. on each side the line. After that, the disproportion is known to become very great. This must be principally attributed to the direction of the sun's rays, independent of the bare distance, which is not equal to the effect. On Thursday, the 19th of February, the wind veered to the south-east, and they were again enabled to steer to the east, inclining a little to the north. On the 25th. they reached the latitude of 42 deg. 30 min., and in the longitude of 219 deg., when they began to meet with the rockweed, mentioned in Lord Anson's voyage by the name of sea-leek, which is generally seen by the Manilla ships. Sometimes a piece of wood appeared; but, if they had not known themselves near the continent of North America, they might have supposed, from the few signs of the vicinity of land that had been seen, that they were not within some thousand leagues of any. Since leaving the Sandwich Islands, they had hardly beheld a bird, or any oceanic animal.

On the 1st of March, they had a calm day, which was succeeded by a wind from the north, with which they stood to the east, intending to make land, and ought to have been near it, according to the charts. Such moderate and mild weather, appeared extraordinary, when they were so far north, and so near an extensive continent, at this time of the year. This season must have been remarkably mild, for Sir Francis Drake, met with very severe cold in this latitude, even in the month of June. Viscaïno, indeed, who was in the same part of the world, in the depth of winter, hardly takes notice of the cold, and mentions a ridge of snowy mountains on this coast, as something extraordinary.

It is a singular circumstance, that they should meet with so few birds, compared to those they had seen in the same latitudes to the south of the line. This must either proceed from a scarcity of them, or from a deficiency of resting-places. Hence, it may be concluded, that, in the southern hemisphere, beyond 40 deg. the species are much more numerous, and the islands more plentifully scattered, than any where near that latitude, between the coast of California and Japan.

On the morning of the 2nd, during a calm, part of the sea appeared to be covered with a kind of slime, and some small sea animals were seen swimming about. Those, which were most conspicuous, were of the gelatinous kind, almost globular; a smaller sort, had a white or shining appearance, and were in great abundance. Some of the latter, were put into a glass cup, with some salt water; and, when in a prone situation, they appeared like small scales or pieces of silver.

When they swam about, which they did with equal ease in various directions, they emitted the brightest colours of the most valuable gems, according to their position, with respect to the light. At one time they appeared pellucid, at another, displayed the various tints of blue, from a sapphirine to a violet, mixed with a kind of ruby, and glowing with a sufficient strength to illuminate the vessel and water. When the vessel was held to the strongest light, the tints appeared most vivid, but almost vanished when the animals subsided to the bottom, and they had then a brownish appearance. By candle-light, the colour was principally a beautiful, pale green, with a burnished gloss; and in the dark, it had a faint appearance of glowing fire.

They are a new species of *oniscus*, and were called by Mr. Anderson *oniscus fulgens*; being supposed to be an animal that contributes to that lucid appearance, often observed at sea in the night. Two large birds, settled this day on the water near the ship: one was the *procellaria maxima*, and the other of little more than half the magnitude of the former, appearing to be of the *albatross* kind. It was larger than a sea-gull, but resembled it in other respects. About noon, on the 6th, they beheld two seals, and several whales, and early the next morning, the long-

expected coast of New Albion was seen, at the distance of ten or twelve leagues, extending from north-east to south-east. At noon they were in the latitude of 44 deg. 33 min. north, and in the longitude of 235 deg. 20 min. east, and the land about eight leagues distant.

They had now seventy-three fathoms' water, over a muddy bottom, and found ninety fathoms about a league farther off. The land, which was of a moderate height, appeared to be diversified with hills and vallies, and principally covered with wood. No very striking object, however, presented itself, except a high hill, with a flat summit, which bore east from them at noon. The land formed a point at the northern extremity, which Captain Cook named, Cape Foul-weather, from the exceeding bad weather he afterwards met with.

After variable light airs and calms, at eight o'clock in the evening of the 7th, a breeze sprung up at the south-west. They stood to the north-west, under an easy sail, intending to range along the coast at day-light: but the next morning at four, the wind having shifted to the north-west, it blew in squalls, with rain. Till near ten o'clock, their course was north-east; but, not being able to make any progress on this tack, and seeing nothing that had the appearance of a harbour, they tacked, and stood off south-west. Cape Foul-weather at this time, bore north-east by north, distant about eight leagues.

In the evening of the 8th, the wind veered to the north-west, with squalls, hail, and sleet; and the weather being hazy and thick, they stood out to sea till about noon the next day, when they stood in again for the land, which was seen at two in the afternoon, bearing east-north-east. In the evening, the wind veered more to the west, and the weather grew worse, which obliged them to tack, and stand off, till about four the next morning, when they stood in again. In the afternoon, at four, they discovered the land, which at six was about eight leagues distant. Here they tacked and sounded, but could not reach the ground with a line of one hundred and sixty fathoms. They stood off till near midnight, and then stood in again. At half past six the next morning, they were about three leagues from the land. Seeing nothing like a harbour, and the weather continuing unsettled, they tacked and stretched off south-west, having then fifty-five fathoms' water.

The land which they approached when they tacked, is moderately high, but in many places, it rises still higher within. It is diversified with hills and rising grounds, many of which are covered with tall, straight trees, and others which were not so high, grew in spots, like clumps or coppices: but, the spaces between, and the sides of the rising grounds, were clear.

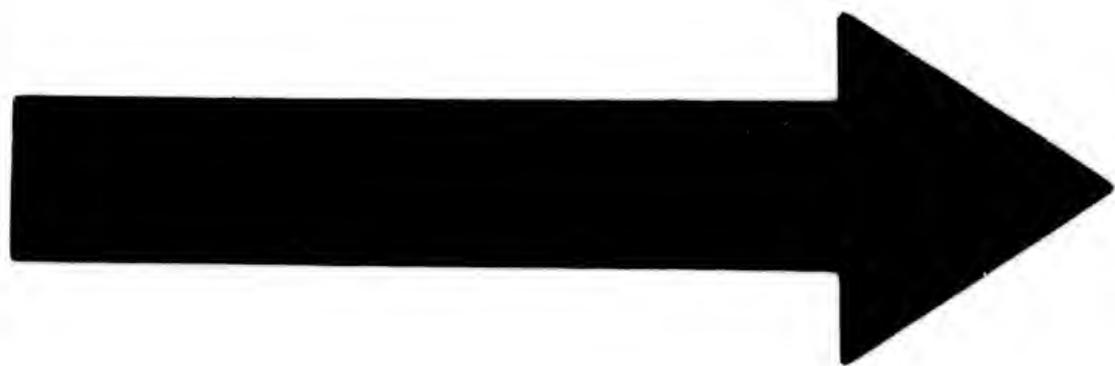
Though, perhaps, as a summer prospect this might be very agreeable, yet at this season it had an uncomfortable appearance, the bare grounds along the coast being covered with snow,

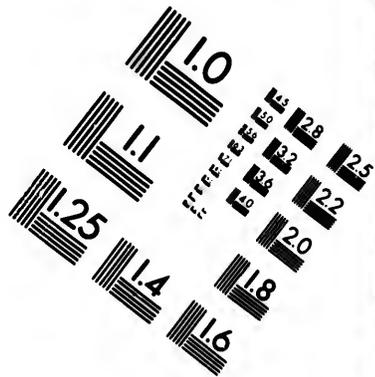
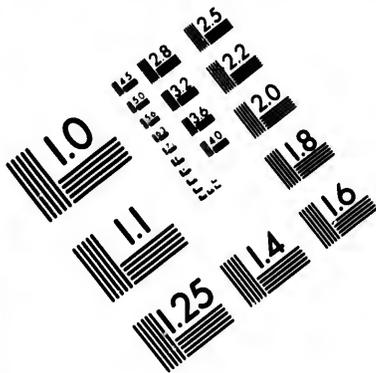
which seemed to lie in abundance between the hills and rising grounds; and in many places towards the sea, had at a distance the appearance of white cliffs. On the rising ground the snow was thinner spread; and farther inland there seemed to be none at all. Hence it might, perhaps, be concluded, that the snow which they had seen towards the sea had fallen the preceding night, which was indeed the coldest they had experienced since their arrival on that coast; sometimes there was a kind of sleet.

The coast appeared almost straight in every part, not having any opening or inlet, and terminated in a kind of white, sandy beach; though it was imagined by some on-board that such appearance was owing to the snow. Each extreme of the land shot out into a point; the northern one was that which had been seen on the 7th, and therefore Captain Cook called it Cape Perpetua; its latitude is 44 deg. 6 min. north, and its longitude 235 deg. 52 min. east. The southern extreme the commodore named Cape Gregory; it lies in the latitude of 43 deg. 30 min. and in the longitude of 235 deg. 57 min. east.—This point is rendered remarkable by the land of it rising immediately from the sea, to a tolerable height, while that on each side of it is very low. They stood off till almost one in the afternoon, and then tacked and stood in, hoping in the night to have the wind off from the land, they were, however, mistaken, for at five o'clock it veered to the west and south-west, which induced them once more to stand out to sea.

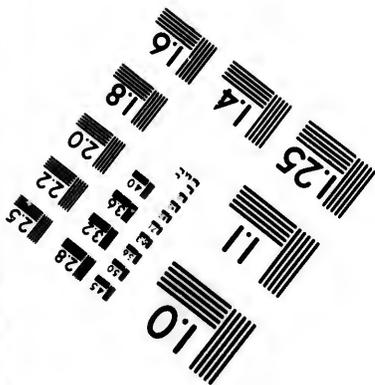
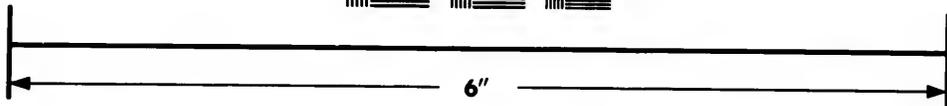
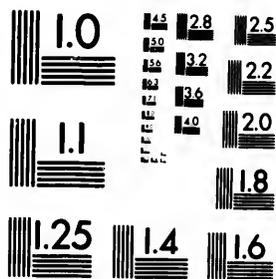
Cape Perpetua now bore north-east by north; and the farthest land to the south of Cape Gregory bore south by east, distant about ten or twelve leagues.—Its latitude will therefore be 43 deg. 10 min. and its longitude 235 deg. 55 min. east, which is nearly the situation of Cape Blanco, discovered the 19th of January, 1603, by Martin d'Aguilar. It is remarkable, that in this very latitude geographers have placed a large entrance or strait, ascribing the discovery of it to the same navigator; whereas nothing more is mentioned in his voyage, than his having discovered a large river in this situation, which he would have entered but was prevented by the currents.

The wind was now very unsettled, and blew in squalls, with snow-showers. At midnight it shifted to west-north-west, and soon increased to a very hard gale, with heavy squalls, attended with sleet or snow. They had not a choice now, but were obliged to stretch to the southward, to get clear of the coast; this was done under more sail than the ships could bear with safety; but it was absolutely necessary to carry it, to avoid the more imminent danger of being forced on-shore. This gale abated at eight o'clock on the morning of the 13th, and then they stood in again for the land. The wind remained at west and north-west. Storms, breezes, and calms, alternately succeeded each other, till the morning of the 21st, when a breeze





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

25 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

18
20
22
25
28
32
36
40

10
15
20
25
30
35
40

sprung up at south-west. This being accompanied with fair weather, they steered north-easterly, hoping to fall in with the land, beyond which they had been tossed about for the preceding fortnight. In the evening the wind shifted to the westward, and the next morning, about eight o'clock, they beheld the land at the distance of about nine leagues. The latitude was now 47 deg. 5 min. north, and their longitude 235 deg. 10 min. east. They stood to the north, with a fine breeze, till near seven in the evening, when they tacked, in order to wait for day-light. They were now in forty-eight fathoms' water, and four leagues from the land, extending from north to south-east; and a small, round hill, which was supposed to be an island, bore north three quarters east, at the distance of about six or seven leagues. It seemed to be of a tolerable height, and could but just be seen from the deck.

There appeared to be but a small opening between this supposed island and the northern extremity of the land; hopes were therefore entertained of finding a harbour, but they gradually vanished as they drew nearer, and at length they were almost convinced that the opening was closed by low land. The commodore, for this reason, named the point of land, to the north of it Cape Flattery. Its latitude is 48 deg. 15 min. north, and its longitude 235 deg. 3 min. east.

All the land upon this part of the coast is of a pretty equal height, is principally covered with wood, and has a very fertile appearance. In this very latitude geographers have placed the pretended strait of Juan de Fuca; but nothing of that kind presented itself to view, nor is it probable that any such thing ever existed. They stood to the southward till midnight, and then tacked, and with a gentle breeze at south-west steered to the north-west, intending at day-light to stand in for the land. But before that time they had a very hard gale, with rain, right on-shore; instead, therefore, of running in for the land, they endeavoured to get an offing, or at least to preserve that which they had already got. The south-west wind, however, did not continue long, for it veered again to the west before night.

Thus were they perpetually encountering with strong west and north-west winds. In an evening the wind would sometimes become moderate, and veer southward; but this was a certain prelude to a storm, which blew the hardest at south-south-east, and was generally accompanied with rain and sleet. In the course of six hours it was usually succeeded by a gale from the north-west, which introduced fair weather. About nine o'clock, in the morning of Sunday the 29th, they again saw the land, the nearest part about six leagues distant. They were now in the latitude of 49 deg. 29 min. north, and in the longitude of 232 deg. 29 min. east.

The face of the country was very different from that of the parts which they had before seen; numbers of lofty mountains presented themselves to view, whose summits were covered

with snow. The vallies between them and the land towards the coast, were covered with high, straight trees, that appeared like a vast forest. A low point was formed at the south-east extreme of the land, off which are several breakers, occasioned by some sunken rocks. It was, therefore, called Point Breakers. Its latitude is 49 deg. 15 min. north, and its longitude 233 deg. 20 min. east. The latitude of the other extreme is about 50 deg. and the longitude 232 deg. This last was named Woody Point. It is high land, and projects to the south-west.

Between these two points a large bay is formed, which the commodore called Hope Bay; hoping, as he said, to find in it a good harbour: and the event proved that he was not mistaken. As they approached the coast, they saw the appearance of two islets, one of which was in the north-west, and the other in the north-east corner of the bay. They bore up for the latter, and passed some breakers about a league from shore. Half a league without them they had nineteen and twenty fathoms' water; but after passing them the depth increased to fifty fathoms; and farther in the ground was unfathomable with the greatest length of line.

Though appearances were in their favour, they were not yet certain that there were any inlets; but being in a deep bay, Captain Cook resolved to anchor, in order to endeavour to get some water, which they began to be much in need of. As they advanced, however, the existence of the inlet no longer remained doubtful. About five o'clock, when they reached the west point of it, they were becalmed for some time. In this situation the commodore ordered all the boats to be hoisted out, in order to tow the ships in; presently a fresh breeze sprung up at north-west, with which they stretched up to an arm of the inlet, which ran into the north-east. Here they were again becalmed, and found it necessary to anchor in eighty-five fathoms' water, and so near the land as to be able to reach it with a hawser.—The Discovery was becalmed before she got within the arm, when she anchored in seventy fathoms' water.

As soon as they approached the inlet they perceived the coast to be inhabited; and three canoes came off to the ship at the place where they were first becalmed, in one of which were two men, in another six, and in the third ten. Advancing pretty near, a person stood up in one of the two last, and spoke for a considerable time, inviting the ships, as was supposed by his gestures, to go ashore; and at the same time continued strewing handfuls of feathers towards them. Some of his companions also threw a red powder in the same manner.

The person who was the orator upon this occasion was clothed with the skin of some animal, and held something in each hand, which rattled as he shook it. At length, grown weary with his repeated exhortations, of which they could not comprehend a word, he became quiet; and the others, in their turn, had some-

thing to say to them; but their speeches were neither so long nor so vehement as that of the other. The hair of two or three of these people was strewed over with small, white feathers, and that of others with large ones, stuck into different parts.

The tumultuous noise having ceased, they lay at a small distance from the ship, conversing together with much ease and composure, without shewing the least distrust or surprise. Some of them rose occasionally, and said something aloud, after the manner of their first harangues, and one in particular sang a most agreeable air, accompanied with a great degree of melody and softness, the word *haela* being frequently repeated as the burden of the song.

A breeze springing up soon after, brought the ships closer to the shore, when the canoes began to visit them in great numbers, having had, at one time, no less than thirty-two of them about the ship, containing from three to seven or eight persons each, and of both sexes. Several of them also stood up and spake aloud, using the same gestures as the first visitors. One canoe particularly attracted observation, by a peculiar head, which had a bird's eye, and an enormous large beak painted on it. The person who was in it, and who appeared to be a chief, was equally remarkable for his singular appearance, having a large quantity of feathers hanging from his head, and being painted or smeared in a very extraordinary manner. In his hand he had a carved bird of wood, of the size of a pigeon, with which he often rattled, like the person before mentioned, and was equally vociferous in his harangue, which he accompanied with many expressive gestures. Though these natives were so peaceable that they could not be suspected of any hostile intention, not any of them could be prevailed upon to come on-board. They were very ready, however, to part with any thing they had, and received whatever was offered them in exchange; but were more solicitous after iron than any other articles of commerce, appearing to be no strangers to the use of that valuable metal.

The ships were followed by many of the canoes to the anchoring-place; and a group, consisting of about ten or a dozen of them, continued alongside the Resolution the greatest part of the night. Hence our people flattered themselves, that they were comfortably situated as to be able to get all their wants supplied, and forget the delays and hardships they had experienced in almost a constant succession of adverse winds and tempestuous weather, ever since their arrival upon this coast.

Having happily found such excellent shelter for the ships, in an inlet whose coasts appeared to be inhabited by an inoffensive race of people, no time was lost after coming to anchor, in searching for a commodious harbour, where they might be stationed during their continuance in the Sound. Upon this service Captain Cook sent three armed boats, under the command of Mr. King, and went himself in a small boat, on the same busi-

ness. He had no difficulty in finding what he wanted; for, on the north-west of the arm, and at a small distance from the ships, he found a convenient, snug cove, perfectly adapted to their purpose. Mr. King was also successful and found a still better harbour, lying on the north-west side of the land. It would, however, have required more time to take the ships thither than to the cove where the captain had been, therefore his choice was determined in favour of the latter situation: but, apprehending that they could not transport the ships to it, and moor them properly, before night had overtaken them, he thought it prudent to continue where they were till the next morning.

Plenty of canoes, filled with inhabitants, were about the ships the whole day; and a reciprocal trade was commenced between them, which was conducted with the strictest harmony and integrity on both sides. The articles of commerce were the skins of various animals; such as bears, sea-otters, wolves, foxes, deer, racoons, martins, and pole-cats. They also produced garments made of skins; and another kind of clothing, fabricated from the bark of a tree, or a plant resembling hemp. Besides these articles, they had bows, arrows, and spears; fish-hooks, and various kinds of instruments; wooden vizors, representing horrid figures; a sort of woollen stuff; carved work; beads, and red ochre: also several little ornaments of thin brass and iron, resembling a horse-shoe, which they wear pendent at their noses. They had likewise several pieces of iron fixed to handles, somewhat resembling chisels. From their being in possession of these metals, it was natural to infer, that they must either have been visited before by persons of some civilized nation, or had connections with those on their own continent, who had some communication with them.

Among all the articles, however, which they exposed to sale, the most extraordinary were human skulls and hands, with some of the flesh remaining on them, which they acknowledged they had been feeding on; and some of them indeed bore evident marks of their having been upon the fire. From this circumstance, it was but too apparent, that the horrid practice of devouring their enemies is practised here, as much as at New Zealand, and other South Sea Islands. For the various articles they brought, they received in exchange knives, chisels, nails, looking-glasses, buttons, pieces of iron or tin, or any kind of metal: they had not much inclination for glass beads, and rejected every kind of cloth.

The next day was employed in hauling the ships into the cove, where they were moored: and it was found, on heaving up the anchor, notwithstanding the great depth of water, that rocks were at the bottom; these had greatly injured the cable, as well as the hawsers that were carried out to warp the ship into the cove; consequently, the whole bottom was strewed with rocks. The ship was now become very leaky in her upper works; the car-

penters were therefore ordered to caulk her, and to repair any other defects they might discover.

In the course of this day (the 31st of March) the news of their arrival brought vast numbers of the natives about the ships: at one time they counted above a hundred canoes, each of which, on an average, had five people on-board, few containing less than three, many having seven, eight, or nine, and one was manned with seventeen. Many of these were new visitors, which was discovered by their orations and ceremonies when they approached the ships.

If they, at first, had apprehended our men meant to be hostile, their fears were now removed; for they ventured on-board the ships, and mixed with our people with the utmost freedom and familiarity. It was discovered, however, by this intercourse, that they were as fond of pilfering as any they had met with during the voyage: and they were much more mischievous than any of the other thieves they had found; for, having sharp instruments in their possession, they could, the instant that our people's backs were turned, cut a hook from a tackle, or a piece of iron from a rope.

Besides other articles, they lost several hooks in this manner, one of which weighed between twenty and thirty pounds. They stripped the boats of every morsel of iron that was worth taking away, though some of our men were always left in them as a guard. They were, indeed, so dexterous in effecting their purposes, that one fellow would contrive to amuse our people at one end of the boat, while another was forcing off the iron-work at the other. If an article that had been stolen was immediately missed, the thief was easily detected, as they were fond of impeaching each other. But the prize was always reluctantly given up by the guilty person; and sometimes compulsive means were obliged to be had recourse to for that purpose.

Our ships being safely moored, the men proceeded the next day, to other necessary business: the observatories were taken ashore, and placed upon a rock on one side of the cove, not far from the Resolution, and a party of men was ordered to cut wood, and clear a place for watering. Having plenty of pine-trees here others were employed in brewing spruce-beer. The forge was also erected to make the necessary iron-work for repairing the fore-mast, which had one of the bibs defective, and was otherwise incomplete.

The ships were daily visited by a considerable number of the natives, and among them they frequently saw new faces. They had a singular mode of introducing themselves on their first appearance; they paddled with their utmost strength and activity round both the ships: a chief, all this time, standing up in the canoe with a spear in his hand, and speaking, or rather bawling, most vociferously.

Sometimes the face of this orator was covered with a mask,

representing either a human countenance, or that of some other animal; and instead of a spear, he would hold a kind of rattle in his hand. Having made this ceremonious circuit round the ship, they would come along-side, and then begin to traffic. Frequently, indeed, they would entertain our men with a song, in which their whole company joined, and produced a very agreeable harmony. During these visits, the principal care was to guard against their thievery.

Our men had, however, in the morning of the 4th of April, a very serious alarm. The party, who were employed on shore in cutting wood and filling water, observed, that the natives in all quarters were arming themselves in the best manner they were able, and that those who had not proper weapons were collecting sticks and stones. Hearing this, they thought it necessary to arm also; but being resolved to act upon the defensive, the commodore ordered all his workmen to repair to the rock, upon which the observatories had been placed, leaving the natives in quiet possession of the ground where they had assembled, which was within about a hundred yards of the Resolution's stern.

The danger, however, was only imaginary: for these hostile preparations were not directed against our men, but against a body of their own countrymen, who were advancing to attack them; and our friends of the Sound perceiving the apprehensions, used their best endeavours to convince the men that this was the case. People were looking out on both sides of the cove, and canoes were frequently dispatched between them and the main body. The adverse party, on-board of about a dozen large canoes, at length drew up in a line of battle, off the south point of the cove, a negotiation for the restoration of peace having commenced. In conducting the treaty, several people in canoes passed between the two parties, and some debates ensued. At length the matter in dispute appeared to be adjusted; but the strangers were not permitted to approach the ships, nor to have any intercourse or dealings with the crews.

Our men were probably the occasion of the quarrel; the strangers, perhaps, insisting on having a right of sharing in the advantages of a trade with them, and their first friends resolving to engross them entirely to themselves. There were proofs of this on many other occasions: nay, even among those who lived in the Sound, the weaker were often obliged to submit to the stronger party, and were plundered of every thing, without even attempting to make the least resistance.

In the afternoon, the crews resumed their work, and the next day rigged the fore-mast; the head of which being rather too small for the cap, the carpenter was ordered to fill up the vacant space. In examining the state of the mast-head for this purpose, both cheeks were discovered to be rotten, insomuch that there was no possibility of repairing them. Our men were

therefore obliged to get the mast out, and to supply it with new ones.

Thus, when almost ready for sea, all the work was to be done over again, and an additional repair was necessary to be undertaken, which would require much time to be completed. It was, however, fortunate, that these defects should be discovered when the ships were so commodiously situated, as to be able to procure the materials that were requisite. For, in the cove where the ships lay, there were some small seasoned trees, perfectly adapted for the purpose; and two new cheeks were immediately made from one of these. In the morning of the 7th of April, having got the fore-mast out, they hauled it ashore, and the carpenters were set to work upon it. Some of the lower standing rigging being much decayed, the commodore embraced the opportunity, while the fore-mast was repairing, of ordering a new set of main-rigging to be fitted, and the fore-rigging to be improved.

From the time of putting into the Sound, till the 7th of April, the weather had been remarkably fine; but, in the morning of the 8th, the wind blew fresh at south-east, accompanied with hazy weather and rain; it increased in the afternoon, and in the evening it blew extremely hard. It came in heavy squalls right into the cove, from over the high land on the opposite shore; and, though the ships were well moored, they were in a dangerous situation.

Though these tempestuous blasts succeeded each other quickly, they were of short duration; and, in the intervals they had a perfect calm. Another misfortune now befell them. On-board the Resolution, the mizen was the only mast that now remained rigged, with its top-mast up. The former was too defective to support the latter during these squalls, and gave way at the head under the rigging. The gale abated about eight o'clock; but the rain continued, almost without intermission, for several days, during which time a tent was erected over the fore-mast, that the carpenters might be enabled to proceed in their labours with some degree of convenience.

The natives were not discouraged by this bad weather from making daily visits; and, in their situation, such visits were very acceptable to them; for they frequently brought a supply of fish, when unable to catch any with a hook and line, and they had not a convenient place to draw a net. The fish they brought consisted of small cod, and a small kind of bream, and sardines.

On the 11th, the main-rigging was fixed and got over-head, notwithstanding the rainy weather; and, the next day, they took down the mizen-mast, the head of which was so rotten, that it dropped off in the slings. They received a visit in the evening from a tribe of natives whom they had not seen before; and who, in general, made a better appearance than their old friends.

The commodore conducted them into the cabin, but there was not an object that demanded their attention; all their novelties were looked on with indifference, except by a very few, who showed a certain degree of curiosity. The next day, a party of our men went into the woods, and cut down a tree, of which a mizen-mast was to be made. The day after, it was conveyed to the place where the carpenters were at work upon the fore-mast. The wind, in the evening, veered to the south-east, and blew a very hard gale, attended with rain, till eight o'clock the next morning; at which time it abated, and veered again to the west.

The fore-mast being now finished, it was hauled along-side; but, on account of the bad weather, they could not get it in till the afternoon. They set about rigging it with great expedition, while the carpenters were employed on the mizen-mast on-shore. On the 16th, when they had made considerable progress in it, they discovered that the tree on which they were at work was wounded, owing, it was imagined, to some accident in cutting it down. It therefore became necessary to procure another tree out of the woods, on which occasion all hands were employed about half a day.

During these operations, many of the natives were about the ships, gazing on with an expressive surprise, which, from their general inattention, was not expected. A party of strangers, in seven or eight canoes, came into the cove on the 18th, and, after looking at our men for some time retired. Captain Cook apprehended that their old friends, who, at this time, were more numerous about them than their new visitors, would not suffer them to have any dealings with our people. It was evident, indeed, that the neighbouring inhabitants engrossed them entirely to themselves; and that they carried on a traffic with more distant tribes in those articles they had received from them; for they frequently disappeared for four or five days together, and returned with fresh quantities of curiosities and skins.

Such of the natives as visited the ships daily were the most beneficial; for, after disposing of their articles, they employed themselves in fishing, and our men always partook of what they caught. They also procured from them a considerable quantity of good animal oil, which they brought to them in bladders. Some, indeed, attempted to cheat them, by mixing water with the oil; and, once or twice, they so far imposed upon them as to fill their bladders with water only. But it was better to wink at these impositions, than suffer them to produce a quarrel; for our people's articles of traffic chiefly consisted of trifles, and it was found difficult to furnish a constant supply even of these. Beads, and such like toys, of which they had some remaining, were not highly estimated. Metal was principally demanded by the visitors; and brass had now supplanted iron, being sought after with such eagerness, that, before leaving the Sound, hardly a bit of it was to be found in the ships, except what con-

stituted a part of their necessary instruments. Suits of clothes were stripped of their buttons; bureaus of their furniture; kettles, canisters, and candlesticks, all went to wreck; so that our American friends procured from our men a greater variety of things than any other nation whom they had visited.

Having had a fortnight's bad weather, Sunday, the 19th, being a fair day, our men embraced the opportunity of getting up the top-masts and yards, and of fixing up the rigging. Most of the heavy work being now finished, the commodore set out the next morning to survey the Sound; and, going first to the west-point, he discovered a large village, and before it a very snug harbour, with from nine to four fathoms' water.

The inhabitants of this village, were numerous, and with many of whom the commodore was no stranger, received him very courteously, every one pressing him to go into his house, or rather his apartment; for several families live under the same roof. He did not decline the invitations; and the hospitable friends whom he visited testified every mark of civility and respect.

Women were employed in many of these habitations, in making dresses of the bark or plant already mentioned, and executed their business much like the inhabitants of New Zealand. Others were busy in opening sardines; large shoals of which were brought on-shore, and measured out to several people, who carried them home, where they performed the operation of curing them, which is done by smoke-drying them. They are hung upon small rods, at first, about a foot from the fire; they are then removed higher and higher, to make room for others. When dried, they are closely packed in bales, and the bales covered with mats. Thus they are preserved till they are wanted; and they are not unpleasant food. They also cure cod and other large fish in the same manner; but these are sometimes dried in the open air.

Leaving this village, the commodore proceeded up the west-side of the Sound. For about three miles he saw several small islands, so situated as to form some convenient harbours, the depths being from thirty to seventy fathoms. About two leagues within the Sound, on the same side, an arm runs in the direction of north-north-west, and another in the same direction about two miles further.

About a mile above the second arm he found the ruins of a village: the framings of the houses remaining standing, but the boards or roofs were taken away. Behind this deserted village is a small plain, covered with the largest pine-trees that the commodore had ever seen. This was indeed singular, as most of the elevated ground on this side of the Sound appeared rather naked.

Passing from this place to the east-side of the Sound, Captain Cook found, what he had before imagined, that it was an island

under which the ships lay; and that many smaller ones lay scattered on the west-side of it. Upon the main-land, opposite the north-end of the island, the commodore observed a village, and landed there; but he was not so politely received by the inhabitants, as by those of the other village he had visited. This cold reception was occasioned by one surly chief, who would not suffer the commodore to enter their houses, but followed him wherever he went: making expressive signs that he was impatient for him to be gone. Captain Cook attempted, but in vain, to soothe him with presents; but, though he did not refuse them, he continued the same kind of behaviour. Notwithstanding this treatment from the inhospitable chief, some of the young women dressed themselves expeditiously in their best apparel, and assembling in a body, gave our men a hearty welcome to the village, by joining in an agreeable song. Evening now drawing on, Captain Cook proceeded for the ships round the north-end of the island.

When he returned on-board, he was informed that, in his absence, some strangers, in two or three large canoes, had made a visit to the ships; from whom our people understood, by signs, that they had come from the south-east. They brought with them several garments, skins, and other articles, which they bartered for some of theirs. But the most remarkable circumstance was, that two silver table-spoons were purchased of them by our people, which appeared to be of Spanish manufacture. They were worn round the neck of one of these visitors, by way of ornament.

On the 21st, the mizen-mast was got in and rigged, and the carpenters ordered to make a new fore-mast to replace that which had been carried away. A number of strangers visited the ships about eight o'clock, the next morning, in twelve or thirteen canoes. They came from the south-ward; and when they had turned the point of the cove, they drew up in a body, where they remained about half an hour, at the distance of two hundred yards from the ships. It was imagined at first, they were afraid to approach; but in this our men were mistaken, for they were only making preparations for an introductory ceremony.

At length they advanced towards the ships, all standing up in their canoes, and began to sing. Some of their songs were slow and solemn, in which they were joined by the whole body; others were in quicker time, and their notes were regularly accompanied by the motions of their hands, or beating in concert with their paddles on the sides of the canoes; and, at the same time, making the most expressive gestures. They remained silent, for a few seconds, after the conclusion of each song, and then began again, frequently pronouncing the word *hoocce!* forcibly, as a chorus.

Having thus favoured our men with a specimen of their music,

with which they were highly entertained, for half an hour, they came nearer the ships, and bartered. It was now perceived that some old friends from the Sound were amongst them, who managed for the strangers in the traffic between our men and them.

These visitors being gone, the Captains Cook and Clerke went with two boats to the village at the west point, where Captain Cook had been two days before, and had observed that plenty of grass was to be had near it; and it was necessary to get a supply of this for the few remaining goats and sheep which were still on-board. They experienced the same welcome reception that Captain Cook had met with before; and, soon after they were ashore, the commodore ordered some of his people to begin cutting; not imagining the natives would object to their furnishing themselves with what could not be of any use to them, though essentially necessary to our voyagers. In this, however, he was mistaken, for as soon as our men began cutting the grass, some of the inhabitants would not suffer them to proceed, saying, *makook*, that is, must first buy it.

The commodore, at the time, was in one of the houses, but, hearing of this he repaired immediately to the field, where he found about a dozen claimants to some part of the grass that grew in this place. The commodore treated with them for it, and having completed the purchase, thought that they were now at full liberty to cut wherever he pleased. But here he was again mistaken, for he had so liberally paid the first proprietors, that fresh demands were made from others; so that it almost appeared that every single blade of grass had a separate owner; and so many of them were to be satisfied, that his pockets very soon became empty. When they were, however, convinced that he had nothing more to give, they ceased to be importunate, and our men were permitted to cut wherever they pleased, and as much as they pleased.

It is worthy of observation, that Captain Cook never met with any uncivilized nation, or tribe, who possessed such strict notions of their having an exclusive property in the produce of their country, as the inhabitants of this Sound. They even wanted our people to pay for the wood and water that were carried on-board. Had Captain Cook been present when those demands were made he would doubtless have complied with them: but our workmen thought differently, and paid little attention to such claims. The natives thinking they were determined to pay nothing, at length ceased to apply. But they frequently took occasion to remind our men that their esteem had induced them to make them a present of wood and water.

While our men remained at this village, Mr. Webber, who attended the commodore thither, made drawings of every thing that was thought curious, both within doors and without. This he was well enabled to do, as he had an excellent opportunity of in-

specting narrowly the construction of their buildings, their furniture, and implements or utensils, as well as the most striking peculiarities of the modes of living of the inhabitants. Having at length completed all the operations at this village, the natives and the two captains took a friendly leave of each other, and they returned to the ships in the afternoon. The 23rd, 24th, and 25th of April were employed in preparing to put to sea; the sails were bent, the observatories and other articles removed from the shore, and both ships were put into a proper condition for sailing.

Thus prepared, Captain Cook intended to have put to sea on the morning of the 26th, but having both wind and tide against him, he was under the necessity of waiting till noon, when a calm succeeded the south-west wind, and the tide at the same time turning in their favour, they towed the ships out of the cove; and they had variable airs and calms till about four in the afternoon, when a breeze sprung up, attended with thick, hazy weather.

The mercury in the barometer fell uncommonly low, and there was every appearance of an approaching storm from the southward. In this situation Captain Cook hesitated for a short time, as night was then approaching, whether he should sail immediately, or stay till the next morning. But his anxiety to proceed upon the voyage, and the fear of losing so good an opportunity of getting out of the Sound, operated more strongly upon his mind than the apprehension of danger, and he resolved to put to sea.

The ships were attended by the natives till almost out of the Sound; some in their canoes, and others on-board the ships; one of the chiefs, who had particularly attached himself to the commodore, was among the last who parted from them. The commodore, a little time before he went, made him a small present, for which he received in return a beaver-skin of much greater value. This occasioned him to make some addition to his present, which pleased the chief so highly, that he presented to the commodore the beaver-skin cloak which he then wore, and of which he was particularly fond.

Struck with this instance of generosity, and wishing him not to be a sufferer by his gratitude, Captain Cook insisted upon his acceptance of a new, broad sword, with a brass hilt, with which he appeared greatly delighted, our men were earnestly importuned by the chief, and many of his countrymen, to pay them another visit, who, by way of inducement, promised to procure a large stock of skins.

King George's Sound was the appellation given by the commodore to this inlet on his first arrival; but he was afterwards informed that the natives called it Nootka. The entrance is in the east corner of Hope Bay; its latitude is 49 deg. 33 min. north, and its longitude 283 deg. 12 min. east. The east coast of that bay is covered by a chain of sunken rocks; and near the Sound are

islands and rocks above water. The Sound is entered between two rocky points, lying east-south-east and west-north-west from each other, distant about four miles. The Sound widens within these points, and extends in, to the northward, at least four leagues.

A number of islands of various sizes appear in the middle of the Sound; the depth of water, not only in the middle of the Sound, but also close to some parts of its shore, is from forty-seven to ninety fathoms or more. Within its circuit the harbours and anchoring-places are numerous. The cove where the ships anchored is on the east-side of the Sound, and also on the east of the largest island. It is covered from the sea, but has little else to recommend it, being exposed to the south-east wind, which they found to blow with great violence, and sometimes makes great devastation, as was apparent in many places.

Upon the sea-coast the land is tolerably high and level; but within the Sound it rises into steep hills, which have a uniform appearance, ending in roundish tops, with sharp ridges on their sides. Many of these hills are high, and others are covered to their tops with the thickest woods. Some bare spots are to be seen on the sides of some of the hills, but they are not numerous, though they sufficiently show the general rocky disposition of these hills. They have indeed no soil upon them, except what has been produced from rotten mosses and trees, of the depth of about two feet. Their foundations are indeed nothing more than stupendous rocks, which are of a grey or whitish cast when exposed to the weather; but when broken, are of a bluish, grey colour. The rocky shores consist entirely of this; and the beaches of the little coves in the Sound are composed of fragments of it.

During their stay the weather nearly corresponded with that which they had experienced when off the coast. They had fine, clear weather, if the wind was between north and west, but if more to the southward of west, hazy, with rain. The climate appears to be infinitely milder than that on the east coast of America, under the same parallel of latitude. They perceived no frost in any of the low ground; but, on the contrary, vegetation proceeded very briskly, for they saw grass at this time upwards of a foot long.

The trees of which the woods are principally composed are the Canadian pine, white cypress, and two or three other sorts of pine. The two first are in the greatest abundance, and at a distance resemble each other, though they are easily distinguished on a near view, the cypress being of a paler green than the other. In general, the trees grow here with great vigour, and are of a large size. At this early season of the year they saw but little variety of other vegetable productions.

About the rocks and borders of the woods, were some strawberry plants, and raspberry, currant, and gooseberry bushes, all

in a flourishing state. There were also a few black alder-trees, a species of sow-thistle, some crow's foot, with a fine crimson flower, and two sorts of *anthericum*: some wild rose-bushes, just budding, some young leeks, a small sort of grass, and some water-cresses, besides a great abundance of *andromeda*. Within the woods are two sorts of unknown underwood shrubs, and some mosses and ferns.

The season of the year did not permit their acquiring much knowledge of the vegetables of this country; and, it was impossible, from the situation, to learn much about its animals. The want of water, induced Captain Cook to enter the Sound at first; and the accidents that happened there, though they obliged him to stay longer than he intended, were unfavourable to his acquiring any knowledge of this kind. It was of importance, that every person should be employed in forwarding the necessary business of the ships; which was the principal object, as the season was advancing, and the success of the voyage depended upon their diligence in performing their several tasks. Excursions of any kind were, therefore, never attempted.

Lying in a cove, on an island, all the animals that were seen alive, were two or three racoons, martins, and squirrels: some of our people, indeed, who landed on the continent, on the south-east side of the Sound, saw the print of a bear's foot, not far from the shore. The only account, therefore, that could be furnished of the quadrupeds, is taken from the skins which they purchased of the inhabitants; and these were sometimes so mutilated in the heads, tails, and paws, that they could not even guess to what animals they belonged; though others were either so perfect, or so well known, that they did not admit of a doubt about them. The most common among them were bears, deer, foxes, and wolves. Bear-skins were very plentiful, generally of a shining, black colour, but not very large. The deer-skins were scarcer, and appeared to belong to what the historians of Carolina call the fallow-deer; though Mr. Pennant thinks it quite a different species from ours, and distinguishes it by the name of Virginian deer. Their foxes are numerous, and of several varieties; the skins of some being yellow, with a black tip at the tail; others of a deep or reddish yellow, intermixed with black; and a third sort of an ash colour, also intermixed with black.

When the skins were so mutilated as to admit of a doubt, our people applied the name of fox, or wolf, indiscriminately. At length they met with an entire wolf's skin, and it was grey. Here is the common martin, the pine martin, and another of a lighter brown colour. The ermine is also found in this country, but is small, and not very common; its hair is not remarkably fine, though the animal be entirely white, except about an inch at the tip of the tail. The racoons and squirrels are of the common sort, but the latter is not so large as ours, and has a deeper rusty colour, running along the whole length of the back

Though clear as to the existence of the animals already mentioned, there were two other sorts that they could not, with any certainty, distinguish. One of them they concluded to be the elk, or mouse deer; and the other was conjectured to be the wild cat, or *lynx*. Hogs, dogs, and goats, have not yet made their appearance in this place. Nor have the natives any knowledge of our brown rats, to which they applied the name they give to squirrels, when they saw them on-board the ships.

The sea animals seen off the coast, were whales, porpoises, and seals; the latter, from the skins which they saw, seemed to be of the common sort. The porpoise is the *phocœna*. It was doubted, for some time, whether the skins, which the natives sold for otter-skins, really belonged to that animal; but, a short time before their departure, a whole one, just killed, was purchased from some strangers, of which Mr. Webber made a drawing. It was young, weighing only twenty-five pounds; was of a glossy, black colour, but many of the hairs being tipped with white, gave it, at first sight, a greyish cast. The face, throat, and breast, were of a light brown, or yellowish white; and, in many of the skins, that colour extended the whole length of the belly. In each jaw, it had six cutting teeth; two in the lower jaw being exceedingly small, and placed without, at the base of the two in the middle. In these respects, it differs from those found by the Russians, and also in the outer toes of the hind feet, not being skirted with a membrane. There also appeared a greater variety in colour than is mentioned, by those who describe the Russian sea-otters. It is most probable, that these changes of colour naturally take place at the different gradations of life. The very young ones had brown, coarse hair, with a little fur underneath; but those of the animal just mentioned, had a greater quantity of that substance. After they have attained their full growth, they lose the black colour, which is succeeded by a deep brown. At that period they have a greater quantity of fine fur, and very few long hairs. Some, which were supposed to be older, were of a chestnut brown; and they saw some few skins that were of a perfect yellow. The fur of these animals, is certainly finer than that of any they know of: and, therefore, the discovery of this part of the continent of North America, where so valuable an article of commerce is to be procured ought certainly to be considered as a matter of some consequence.

Birds are far from being numerous here, and those that are to be seen are remarkably shy, owing, perhaps, to their being continually harassed by the natives, either to eat them, or become possessed of their feathers to be worn as ornaments. There are crows and ravens, not differing in the least from those in England; also, a jay or magpie; the common wren, which is the only singing-bird they heard; the Canadian thrush; the brown eagle, with a white head and tail; a small species of

hawk; a heron; and the large-crested American king-fisher. There are also some that have not yet been mentioned by those who have treated on natural history. The two first are a species of wood-peckers. One is somewhat smaller than a thrush, of a black colour on the back, having white spots on the wings; the head, neck, and breast, of a crimson colour, and the belly of a yellowish, olive colour; whence it might, with propriety, be called the yellow-bellied wood-pecker. The other is larger and more elegant; the back of it is of a dusky, brown colour, richly waved with black; the belly has a reddish cast, with black spots; it has also a black spot on the breast, and the lower part of the wings and tail are of a scarlet colour, the upper part blackish, with a crimson streak running, from the angle of the mouth, a little down the neck on each side. The third and fourth are, one of the finch kind, not larger than a linnæus, of a dusky colour, black head and neck, and white bill; and a sand-piper, of a dusky, brown colour, with a broad, white band across the wings, of the size of a small pigeon. There are also humming-birds, which differ, in some degree, from the numerous sorts already known of this delicate little animal.

The quebrantahuessos, shags, and gulls, were seen off the coast; and the two last were also frequent in the Sound. There are also two sorts of wild ducks; one of which was black, with a white head; the other was white, and had a red bill, but of a larger size. Here are also the great *lumme*, or diver, which are found in our northern countries. Some swans, too, were once or twice seen flying to the northward, but they were unacquainted with their haunts. On the shores were found another sand-piper, almost the size of a lark, and not unlike the *burre*; also a plover, very much resembling our common sea-lark.

Though the variety of fish is not very great here, they are more plentiful in quantity than the birds. The principal sorts are, the common herring, which are very numerous, though not exceeding seven inches in length; a smaller sort, which, though larger than the anchovy or sardine, is of the same kind; a silver-coloured bream, and another of a gold, brown colour, with narrow, blue stripes. It is most probable, that the herrings and sardines, come in large shoals, at stated seasons, as is usual with those kinds of fish. The two sorts of bream, may be reckoned next to these in quantity, and those which were full grown weighed about a pound. The other fish, which were scarce, consisted of a brown kind of *sculpin*, such as are taken on the coast of Norway; another of a reddish cast; frost-fish; a large one, without scales, resembling the bull-head; and a small, brownish cod, with whitish spots; also, a red fish, of nearly the same size, which some of our people had seen in the Straits of Magalhaen; and another somewhat like the hake. Considerable numbers of those fish, called the *chimæra*, or little sea-wolves, are met with here. Sharks also frequent the Sound, the teeth of

which many of the natives had in their possession. The other marine animals are a small cruciated *medusa*, or blubber, star-fish, small crabs, and a large cuttle-fish.

About the rocks there are abundance of large muscles, also sea-ears; and they often found shells of pretty large plain *chamæ*. Also some *trochi* of two species, a curious *murex*, rugged wilks, and a snail. Besides these, there are some plain cockles and limpets. Many of the muscles are a span long, in some of which there are large pearls, but they are disagreeable both in colour and shape. It is probable, that there is red coral either in the Sound, or on the coast: large branches of it having been seen in the canoes of the natives.

The only reptiles observed here were brown snakes, about two feet in length, having whitish stripes on the back and sides, and brownish water-lizards. The former are so perfectly harmless, that the natives carried them alive in their hands. The insect tribe seem to be more numerous. For, though the season for their appearance was only beginning, there were several different sorts of butterflies, all of which were common: also humble bees, gooseberry-moths, a few beetles, two or three sorts of flies, and some musquitoes.

Though they found both iron and copper here, they did not imagine that either of them belonged to this country; nor, did they even see the ores of any metal, except a red, ochry substance, used by the natives in painting and staining themselves. This may, perhaps, contain a small quantity of iron; as may also a black and white pigment made use of for the same purpose.

Exclusive of the rock, which constitutes the shores and mountains, Captain Cook saw, amongst the natives, some articles of a hard, black granite, which were neither very compact nor fine-grained; also, a greyish whet-stone, the common oil-stone, and a black sort, little inferior to the hone-stone. The natives were seen to use the transparent, leafy glimmer, and a brown, leafy, or martial sort. They had also pieces of rock crystal. The two first articles were probably to be obtained near the spot, as they had considerable quantities of them; but the latter, it may be supposed, came from a greater distance, or is extremely scarce, for our visitors always parted with it reluctantly.

The persons of the natives are, in general, below the common stature; but their persons are not proportionably slender; being commonly pretty plump, though not muscular. Their soft fleshiness, however, seems never to swell into corpulence, and many of the older people are rather lean. Most of the natives have round, full visages, which are sometimes broad, with high, prominent cheeks. Above these, the face frequently appears fallen in, quite across the temples; the nose flattens at its base, with wide nostrils, and a rounded point. The forehead is low, the eyes small, black, and languishing; the mouth round,

• It
Indians
Samat

the lips thick, and the teeth regular and well set, but not remarkable for their whiteness.

Some have no beards at all, and others only a small, thin one upon the point of the chin. This does not arise from an original deficiency of hair on that part, but from their plucking it out by the roots; for those who do not destroy it, have not only considerable beards on every part of the chin, but also whiskers, or mustachoes, running from the upper lip to the lower jaw obliquely downward.* Their eye-brows are also scanty and narrow; but, they have abundance of hair on the head, which is strong, black, straight, and lank. Their necks are short, and their arms are rather clumsy, having nothing of beauty, or elegance, in their formation. The limbs, in all of them, are small in proportion to the other parts; besides, they are crooked and ill-formed, having projecting ankles, and large feet badly shaped. The latter defect seems to be occasioned, in a great measure, by their sitting so constantly on their hams or knees.

Their colour cannot be properly ascertained, their bodies being incrustated with paint and nastiness, though, when these have been carefully rubbed off, the skin was almost equal in whiteness to that of Europeans, though of that polished cast, which distinguishes the inhabitants of the southern nations. Some of them, when young, appear rather agreeable, when compared to the generality of the people, which is, perhaps, owing to the particular animation attending that period of life; but, after a certain age, the distinction is hardly observable, a remarkable sameness characterize every countenance, dulness, and want of expression, being visibly portrayed in every visage. The women, in general, are of the same size, colour, and form, with the men; from whom, it is not easy to distinguish them, as they possess no natural feminine delicacies. Nor was there a single one to be found, even among those who were in their prime, who had the least pretensions to beauty or comeliness.

Their common dress is a flaxen garment, or mantle, ornamented with a narrow stripe of fur on the upper edge, and fringes at the lower edge. Passing under the left arm, it is tied over the right shoulder, leaving both arms perfectly free. Sometimes the mantle is fastened round the waist by a girdle of coarse matting. Over this is worn a small cloak of the same substance, reaching to the knees, also fringed at the bottom. They wear a cap, like a truncated cone, or a flower-pot, made of very fine matting, ornamented with a round knob, or a bunch of leathern tassels, having a string passing under the chin to prevent its blowing off.

The above dress is common to both sexes, and the men often wear, over their other garments, the skin of some animal, as a

* It is a mistaken notion, though espoused by eminent writers, that the American Indians have no beards. See "Carter's Travels," p. 224, 225; "Marsden's History of Sumatra," p. 39, 40.

bear, wolf, or sea-otter, with the hair outwards; sometimes tying it before, and sometimes behind, like a cloak. They throw a coarse mat about their shoulders in rainy weather, and they have woollen garments which are but little used. They generally wear their hair hanging loosely down, but those who have not a cap, tie it into a kind of bunch on the crown of the head.

Their dress is certainly convenient, and, were it kept clean, would not be inelegant; but, as they are continually rubbing their bodies over with a red paint, mixed with oil, their garments become greasy, and contract a rancid, offensive smell. The appearance, indeed, of these people, is both wretched and filthy, and their heads and garments swarm with lice. So lost are they to every idea of cleanliness, that we frequently saw them pick off these vermin, and eat them with the greatest composure.

Their bodies, it has been observed, are always covered with red paint, but their faces are ornamented with a variety of colours, a black, a brighter red, or a white colour; the last of these gives them a ghastly, horrible appearance. They likewise strew the brown martial *mica* over the paint, which causes it to glitter. Many of their ears are perforated in the lobe, where they make a large hole, and two smaller ones higher up on the outer edge. In these holes are iung bits of bone, quills fastened upon a leathern thong, shells, bunches of tassels, or thin pieces of copper. In some, the *septum* of the nose is also perforated, and a piece of cord drawn through it. Others wear, at the same place, pieces of copper, brass, or iron, shaped somewhat like a horse-shoe, the narrow opening receiving the *septum*, so that it may be pinched gently by the two points, and thus the ornament hangs over the upper lip. The rings of our buttons were eagerly purchased, and appropriated to this use. Their bracelets, which they wear about their wrists, are bunches of white bugle beads, or thongs with tassels, or a broad, black, horny, shining substance. Round their ankles they frequently wear leathern thongs, or the sinews of animals curiously twisted.

Such are their common dresses and ornaments, but they have some that are used only on extraordinary occasions, such as going to war, and exhibiting themselves to strangers in ceremonial visits. Amongst these are the skins of wolves, or bears, tied on like their other garments, but edged with broad borders of fur, ingeniously ornamented with various figures. These are occasionally worn separately, or over their common clothing. The most usual head-dress, on these occasions, is a quantity of white, wrapped about the head, with large feathers, particularly those of eagles, stuck in it; or, it is entirely covered with small white feathers. At the same time, the face is variously painted, the upper and lower parts, being of opposite colours, and the strokes having the appearance of fresh gashes; or, it is besmeared with a kind of fat, or tallow, mixed with paint, formed into a great variety of figures, somewhat like carved work.

es tying
throw a
ey have
enerally
ve not a

t clean,
rubbing
arments
. The
d filthy.
re they
pick off

ed with
riety of
e last of
ikewise
ses it to
, where
up on
, quills
sels, or
is also
s wear,
d some-
septum,
hus the
outtors
Their
hes of
black,
nently
visted.
r have
ch as
cere-
ears,
rders
e are
ing.
ty of
larly
small
ted,
the
be-
med



s
t
l
t
v
t
h
a
a
fl
w
ti
up
bl
dis
of
the
on
the
and
trav
and
peo
ther
you
taki
A
liar
doub
is fa
cove
time
very
arrov
cann
defen
over
and
rattlin
strike
uncer
which
mask
The
ror, w

The hair sometimes is separated into small parcels, and tied, at intervals, with thread; and others tie it together behind, after the English manner, and stick in it some branches of the *cypressus thyoides*. Thus equipped, they have a truly savage, and ridiculous appearance, which is much heightened, when they assume their monstrous decorations. These consist of a great variety of wooden masks, applied to the face, forehead, or upper part of the head. Some of these visors, resemble human faces, having hair, beards, and eye-brows; others represent the heads of birds, and many the heads of animals, such as deer, wolves, porpoises, and others.

These representations, generally exceed the natural size, and they are frequently strewed with pieces of the foliaceous *mica*, which makes them glitter, and augments their deformity. Sometimes they even exceed this, and fix large pieces of carved work upon the head, projecting to a considerable distance, and resembling the prow of a canoe. So much do they delight in these disguises, that, for want of another mask, our voyagers saw one of them, thrust his head into a tin-kettle, which he had got from them.

Whether these extravagant masquerade ornaments are used on any religious occasion, or in any kind of diversion; or, whether they are calculated to intimidate by their monstrous appearance, or as decoys when hunting animals, is uncertain; but, if travellers, in an ignorant and credulous age, when unnatural and marvellous things were supposed to exist, had seen several people decorated in this manner, and had not approached so near them as to be undeceived, they would have believed, and endeavoured to make others believe, that a race of beings existed partaking of the nature of man and beast.

Among the people of Nootka, one of the dresses seems peculiarly adapted to war. It is a thick, tanned, leathern mantle, doubled, and appears to be the skin of an elk, or buffalo. This is fastened on in the ordinary manner, and is so contrived, as to cover the breast quite up to the throat, part of it, at the same time, falling down to their heels. This garment is sometimes very curiously painted, and is not only strong enough to resist arrows, but, as our voyagers understood from them, even spears cannot pierce it; so that it may be considered, as their completest defensive armour. Sometimes they wear a sort of leathern cloak, over which are rows of the hoofs of deer, placed horizontally, and covered with quills, which, on their moving, make a loud, rattling noise. Whether this part of their garb is intended to strike terror in war, or to be used on ceremonious occasions, is uncertain; but, they saw one of their musical entertainments, which was conducted by a man habited in this manner, having a mask on, and shaking his rattle.

Though these people cannot be viewed without a kind of horror, when they are thus strangely appalled, yet when divested

of these extravagant dresses, and beheld in their common habit, they have not the least appearance of ferocity in their countenances; but, on the contrary, they seem to be of a quiet phlegmatic disposition, deficient in animation and vivacity to render themselves agreeable in society. They are rather reserved than loquacious; but, their gravity seems constitutional, and not to arise from a conviction of its propriety, or to be the result of any particular mode of education; for, in the greatest paroxysms of rage, they have not heat of language, or significancy of gestures, to express it sufficiently.

The orations which they make on all public occasions are little more than short sentences, and sometimes only single words, forcibly repeated in one tone of voice, accompanied with a single gesture at every sentence; at the same time, jerking their whole body a little forward, by bending their knees, and their arms hanging down by their sides.

From exhibiting human skulls and bones to sale, there is reason to infer that they treat their enemies with a degree of brutal cruelty: but this circumstance rather marks a general agreement of character with that of almost every uncivilized tribe, in every age and country, than that they are to be reproached with any charge of peculiar inhumanity. Their disposition in this respect, they had not any reason to judge unfavourably of. They appear to be docile, courteous, and good-natured; but, they are quick in resenting injuries, notwithstanding the predominancy of their phlegm; and, like all other passionate people, as soon forgetting them.

These fits of passion never extended farther than the parties immediately concerned; the spectators never entering into the merits of the quarrel, whether it was with any of our men, or among their own people; showing as much indifference as if they were wholly unacquainted with the whole transaction. It was common to see one of them rave and scold, while all his agitation did not in the least excite the attention of his countrymen, and when none of our people could trace the object of his displeasure. They never betray the least symptoms of timidity upon these occasions, but seem resolutely determined to punish the insult. For, even with respect to our people, they were under no apprehensions about their superiority; but when any difference arose, were as ready to avenge the wrong, as if the quarrel had been among themselves.

Their other passions appear to lie dormant, especially their curiosity. Few expressed any desire or inclination to see or examine things with which they were unacquainted; and which, to a curious observer, would have appeared astonishing. If they could procure the articles they knew and wanted, they were perfectly satisfied; regarding every thing else, with great indifference. Nor did the persons, dress, and behaviour of our men (though so very different from their own) or even the size

and construction of our ships, seem to excite their admiration or attention.

Their indolence may, indeed, be a principal cause of this; but it must be admitted, that they are not wholly unsusceptible of the tender passions, which is evident from their being fond of music, and that too of the truly pathetic kind. Their songs are generally slow and solemn: but their music is less confined than that which is usually found in other rude nations; the variations being very numerous and expressive, and the melody powerfully soothing. Besides their concerts, sonnets were frequently sung by single performers, who kept time by striking the hand against the thigh. Though solemnity was predominant in their music, they sometimes entertained our people in a gay and lively strain, and even with a degree of pleasantry and humour.

A rattle and a small whistle were the only instruments of music which our voyagers saw amongst them; the rattle is used when they sing; but upon what occasions the whistle is used is not known, unless it be when they dress themselves like particular animals, and endeavour to imitate their howl or cry. Our men once saw one of these people dressed in the skin of a wolf, with the head covering his own, striving to imitate that animal, by making a squeaking noise with a whistle he had in his mouth. The rattles are generally in the shape of a bird, with small pebbles in the belly, and the tail is the handle; they have another sort, which resembles a child's rattle.

Some of them displayed a disposition to knavery, and, in trafficking took away the goods without making any return. But of this there were few instances; and there was abundant reason to approve the fairness of their conduct. Their eagerness, however, to possess iron, brass, or any kind of metal, was so great, that, when an opportunity presented itself, few of them could resist the temptation to steal it. The natives of the South Sea Islands, as it appears in many instances, would steal any thing they could find, without considering whether it was useful to them or not. The novelty of the object was a sufficient inducement for them to get possession of it by any means. They were rather actuated by a childish curiosity, than by a thievish disposition. The inhabitants of Nootka, who made free with the property, are entitled to no such apology. The appellation of thief is certainly due to them; for they knew that what they pilfered might be converted to the purposes of private utility; and, according to their estimation of things, was really valuable. Luckily they set no value upon any of the articles except the metals. Linens, and many other things, were secure from their depredations; and our men could safely leave them hanging out all night ashore, without being watched. The principle which prompted those people to pilfer would probably operate in their intercourse with each other; and there was, indeed, abundant reason to believe that stealing is very common amongst

them, and frequently produces quarrels of which our people saw more instances than one.

The only inhabited part of the Sound seemed to be the two villages already mentioned. A pretty exact computation of the number of inhabitants of both might be made from the canoes that visited the ships the second day after their arrival. They consisted of about a hundred, which, upon an average, contained at least five persons each. But, as there were very few women, children, or youths among them, it may reasonably be supposed that the number of inhabitants of the two villages could not be less than four times the number of the visitors; being two thousand in the whole.

The village, which is situated at the entrance of the Sound, stands on the side of a pretty steep ascent, extending from the beach to the wood. The houses consist of three ranges or rows, placed at almost equal distances behind each other, the front row being the largest; and there are few straggling houses at each end. These rows are intersected by narrow paths or lanes, at irregular distances, passing upward; but those between the houses are considerably broader. Though this general disposition has some appearance of regularity there is none in the respective houses; for, every division made by the paths, may either be considered as one or more houses; there being no regular separation to distinguish them by, either within or without.—These erections consist of very long, broad planks, resting upon the edges of each other, tied in different parts, with withes of pine-bark. They have only slender posts on the outside, at considerable distances from each other, to which they are also fastened; but there are some larger poles within placed aslant. The sides and ends of these habitations are about seven or eight feet in height, but the back part is somewhat higher. The planks, therefore, which compose the roof, slant forward, and being loose, may be moved at pleasure. They may either be put close to exclude the rain, or separated to admit the light in fair weather.

Upon the whole, however, they are most miserable dwellings and display very little attention or ingenuity in their construction, for, though the side planks are pretty close to each other in some places, they are quite open in others. Besides, these habitations have no regular doors, and can only be entered by a hole which the unequal length of the planks has accidentally made. In the sides of the houses they have also holes to look out at, serving for windows; but these are very irregularly disposed, without attending, in the least, to the shape or size of them.

Within these habitations our men had frequently a view from one end to the other of these ranges of building; for, though there are some appearances of separations on each side, for the accommodation of different persons or families, they do not intercept the sight, and generally consist of pieces of plank, extended from the side to the middle of the house. On the sides of each

of t
the
and
eigh
has
One
a clo
that
cach
ratio
comm

Th
boxe
of th
mask
these
some
have
puttin
black
figure
oblong
of abo
bags d

The
scatter
order,
on the
mats, v
have t

The
far exc
their fi
ther wi
meals,
fill the
Every
in a w

But
are dec
trunks
the upp
front, a
are var
lous ap
but the
other,
and M
before

of these parts is a little bench, about five or six inches higher than the rest of the floor, covered with mats, whereon the family sit and sleep. The length of these benches is generally seven or eight feet, and the breadth four or five. The fire-place, which has neither hearth nor chimney, is in the middle of the floor. One house, in particular, was nearly separated from the rest by a close partition; and this was the most regular building of any that our people had seen. In it there were four of these benches, each holding a single family at a corner; but it had not any separation by boards, and the middle of the house seemed to be common to all the inhabitants.

The furniture of their houses consists principally of chests, and boxes of various sizes, piled upon each other at the sides or ends of the house; in which are deposited their garments, skins, masks, and other articles that are deemed valuable. Many of these are double, or the upper one serves as a lid to the other; some have a lid fastened with thongs, others, that are very large, have a square hole cut in the upper part, for the convenience of putting things in or taking them out. They are frequently painted black, studded with the teeth of animals, or rudely carved with figures of birds, &c. as decorations. They have also square and oblong pails, round wooden cups and bowls, wooden troughs, of about two feet in length, out of which they eat their food, and bags of matting, baskets of twigs, &c.

Their fishing implements, and other things, are hung up, or scattered in different parts of the house, without any kind of order, so that the whole is a complete scene of confusion, except on the sleeping benches, which have nothing on them but the mats, which are of a finer quality than those that they usually have to sit on in their boats.

The irregularity and confusion of their houses were, however, far exceeded by their nastiness and stench. They not only dry their fish within doors, but they also gut them there, which, together with their bones and fragments thrown upon the ground at meals, occasion several heaps of filth, which are never removed till they becomes troublesome, from their bulk, to pass over them. Every thing about their houses stinks of train-oil, fish, and smoke; in a word, their houses are as filthy as hog-stys.

But amidst all this filth and confusion, many of their houses are decorated with images; which are nothing more than the trunks of large trees, of the height of four or five feet, placed at the upper end of the apartment, with a human face carved on the front, and the hands and arms upon the sides. These figures too are variously painted, and make, upon the whole, a most ridiculous appearance. These images are generally called *Klumma*; but the names of two particular ones, standing abreast of each other, at the distance of about three or four feet, were *Natehkoa* and *Matseeta*. A sort of curtain, made of mat, usually hung before them, which the natives were sometimes unwilling to

remove; and when they did consent to unveil them, they seemed to express themselves in a very mysterious manner. It seems probable that they sometimes make offerings to them; for, if our people rightly interpreted their signs, they requested them to give something to these images, when they drew the mats from before them.

From these circumstances it was natural to suppose that they were representatives of their gods, or some superstitious symbols: and yet they were held in no very extraordinary degree of estimation, for, with a small quantity of brass or iron, any person might have purchased all the gods in the place.

Mr. Webber, in drawing a view of the inside of a Nootka house, wherein these figures are represented, was interrupted and hindered from proceeding by one of the inhabitants, who held a mat before the figure. Thinking a bribe would have a proper effect upon this occasion, Mr. Webber made him an offer of a button from his coat, which, being metal, immediately operated as it was intended, and he was left at liberty to proceed as before. But soon after he had made a beginning, he was again interrupted by the same man, who returned and renewed his former practice, till Mr. Webber had parted with every single button; and, when he saw that he had completely stripped him, permitted him to proceed without any farther obstruction.

The men seemed to be chiefly employed in fishing, and killing animals for the sustenance of their families; few of them being seen engaged in any business in the houses; but the women, were occupied in manufacturing their garments, and in curing the sardines, which they also carry from the canoes to their houses. The women also go in the small canoes, to gather muscles and other shell-fish. They are as dexterous as the men in the management of their canoes; and, when there are men in the canoes with them, they are paid very little attention to on account of their sex, none of the men offering to relieve them from the labour of the paddle. Nor do they show them any particular respect, or tenderness on other occasions.

The young men are remarkably indolent; being generally sitting about in scattered companies, basking themselves in the sun, or wallowing in the sand upon the beach like so many hogs, without any kind of covering. This disregard of decency was, however, confined solely to the men. The women were always decently clothed, and behaved with great propriety; justly meriting all commendation for a modest bashfulness, so becoming in their sex. In them it is the more meritorious, as the men have not even a sense of shame.

Besides seeing something of their domestic life and employments, our voyagers were enabled to form some judgment of their disposition and method of living, from the frequent visits received from them at their ships, in the canoes, in which it was understood they pass much of their time, especially in the sum-

mer; for they not only eat and sleep frequently in them, but lie and bask themselves in the sun, as they had seen them at their village. Their large canoes are, indeed, sufficiently spacious for that purpose; and are, except in rainy weather, more comfortable habitations than their filthy houses.

Their great reliance for food seems to be upon the sea, as affording fish and sea-animals. The principal of the first are herrings and sardines, two species of bream, and some small cod. The herrings and sardines not only serve to be eaten fresh in their season, but to be dried and smoked as stores. The herrings also afford them another grand resource for food: which is a vast quantity of roe, prepared in a very extraordinary manner. It is strewed upon small branches of the Canadian pine. They also prepare it upon a long sea-grass, which is found in great plenty upon the rocks under water. This *caviare* is prepared in baskets of mat, and used occasionally, after being dipped in water. It has no disagreeable taste, and serves these people as a kind of winter bread. They also eat the roe of some other large fish, that has a very rancid smell and taste.

The large muscle is an essential article of their food, great abundance of which are found in the Sound. After roasting them in their shells, they are stuck upon long, wooden skewers, and taken off as they are wanted to be eaten, as they require no further preparation, though they are sometimes dipped in oil as a sauce. The smaller shell-fish, contribute to increase the general stock, but cannot be considered as a material article of their food.

The porpoise is more common among them as food, than any of the sea-animals; the flesh and rind of which they cut in large pieces, dry them as they do herrings, and eat them without further preparation. They have also a very singular manner of preparing a sort of broth from this animal, when in its fresh state. They put some pieces of it in a wooden vessel, or pail, in which there is also some water, and throw heated stones into it. This operation is repeatedly performed, till the contents are supposed to be sufficiently stewed. Then fresh stones are put in and the others taken out with a cleft stick, serving as a pair of tongs; the vessel being, for that purpose, always placed near the fire. This is a common dish among them, and seems to be a very strong, nourishing food. From these, and other sea-animals, they procure oil in great abundance, which they use upon many occasions, mixed with other food, as sauce, and frequently sip it alone, with a kind of scoop made of horn.

They probably feed upon other sea-animals, such as whales, seals, and sea-otters; the skins of the two latter, being common amongst them; and, they are furnished with implements of all sorts, for the destruction of these animals, though, perhaps, they may not be able, at all seasons, to catch them in great plenty, as no great number of fresh skins were to be seen while they lay in the Sound.

The land-animals, at this time, appeared also to be scarce, as our men saw no flesh belonging to any of them; and though their skins were to be had in plenty, they might, perhaps, have been procured by traffic from other tribes. It plainly appears, therefore, from a variety of circumstances, that these people are furnished with the principal part of their animal food by the sea, if we except a few gulls and some other birds, which they shoot with their arrows.

Their only winter vegetables seem to be the Canadian pine-branches and sea-grass; but, as the spring advances, they use others as they come in season. The most common of these were two sorts of liliaceous roots, of a mild, sweetish taste, which are mucilaginous and eaten raw. The next is a root called *ahaita*, and has a taste resembling liquorice. Another small, sweetish root, about the thickness of a *sarsaparilla*, is also eaten raw. As the season advances they have doubtless many others which they did not see. For, though there is not the least appearance of cultivation among them, there are plenty of alder, gooseberry, and currant bushes. One of the conditions, however, which they seem to require in all food, is, that it should be of the less acrid kind; for they would not touch the leek or garlic, though they sold our men vast quantities of it, when they understood they liked it. They seemed, indeed, not to relish any of their food, and rejected their spirituous liquors as something disgusting and unnatural.

Small marine animals, in their fresh state, are sometimes eaten raw; though it is their ordinary practice to roast or broil their food; for they are absolute strangers to our method of boiling, as appears from their manner of preparing porpoise-broth; besides, as they have only wooden vessels, it is impossible for them to perform such an operation. Their manner of eating corresponds with the nastiness of their houses and persons; for the platters and troughs, out of which they eat their food, seem never to have been washed since their original formation; the dirty remains of a former meal being only swept away by the succeeding one. Every thing solid and tough they tear to pieces with their hands and teeth; for though their knives are employed in cutting off the larger portions, they have not yet endeavoured to reduce these to mouthfuls by the same means, though so much more cleanly and convenient. But they seem to have no idea of cleanliness, for they eat the roots which are dug from the ground, without so much as shaking off the soil that adheres to them.

Whether they have any set times for meals is not certainly known, for they eat at all hours in their canoes; but as several messes of porpoise-broth were preparing about noon, when our men visited the village, they probably make a principal meal about that time.

They have bows and arrows, spears, slings, short truncheons

to be scarce, as
them; and though
nt, perhaps, have
plainly appears,
these people are
food by the sea,
which they shoot

Canadian pine-
vances, they use
ommon of these
fish taste, which
not called *acheita*,
small, sweetish
also eaten raw,
ny others which
east appearance
der, gooseberry,
owever, which
d be of the less
r garlic, though
they understood
sh any of their
othing disgust-

ometimes eaten
t or broil their
od of boiling,
orpoise-broth;
impossible for
nner of eating
d persons; for
eir food, seem
ormation; the
t away by the
tear to pieces
are employed
endeavoured
ough so much
have no idea
lug from the
that adheres

not certainly.
ut as several
n, when out
ncipal meal
truncheons

made of bone, and a small pick-axe, somewhat resembling the common American tomahawk. Some of the arrows are pointed with iron, and others with indented bone; the spear has usually a long point made of bone. The tomahawk is a stone of the length of six or eight inches; one end terminating in a point, and the other fixed into a wooden handle. This handle is intended to resemble the head and neck of a human figure; the stone being fixed in the mouth, so as to resemble a tongue of great magnitude. To heighten the resemblance, human hair is also fixed to it. This weapon is called *taawoesh*; and they have another weapon made of stone, which they call *seeaik*, about ten or twelve inches long, having a square point.

It may be reasonably concluded that they frequently engage in close combat, from the number of their stones and other weapons; and our men had very disagreeable proofs of their wars being both frequent and bloody, from the quantity of human skulls that were offered for sale.

The design and execution of their manufactures, and mechanic arts, are more extensive and ingenious than could possibly have been expected from the natural disposition of the people, and the little progress they had made in civilization. The flaxen and woollen garments engage their first care, as being the most material of those that may be classed under the head of manufactures. The former are fabricated from the bark of the pine-tree, bent into a mass resembling hemp. After being prepared in a proper manner, it is spread upon a stick, which is fastened to two others in an erect position. The manufacturer, who sits on her hams at this simple machine, knots it across, at the distance of about half an inch from each other, with small, plaited threads. Though it cannot by this method be rendered so close and firm as cloth that is woven, it is sufficiently impervious to the air, and is likewise softer and more pliable.

Though their woollen garments are probably manufactured in the same manner, they have much the appearance of woven cloth; but the supposition of their being wrought in a loom is destroyed, by the various figures that are ingeniously inserted in them, it being very improbable that these people should be able to produce such a complex work, except immediately by their hands. They are of different qualities, some resembling our coarsest sort of blankets, and others not much inferior to our finest sorts, and certainly both warmer and softer.

The wool, of which they are manufactured, seems to be taken from different animals, particularly the fox and brown lynch; that from the lynch is the finest, and nearly resembles our coarser wools in colour; but the hair, which also grows upon the animal, being intermixed with it, its appearance, when wrought, is somewhat different. The ornamental figures in these garments are disposed with great taste, and are generally of a different colour, being usually dyed either of a deep brown or a yellow;

the latter of which, when new, equals in brightness, the best in our carpets.

Their fondness for carving on all their wooden articles, corresponds with their taste in working figures upon their garments. Nothing is to be seen without a kind of freeze-work, or a representation of some animal upon it; but the most general figure is that of the human face, which is frequently cut out upon birds, and the other monstrous things already mentioned, and even upon their weapons of bone and stone.

The general design of these figures conveys a sufficient knowledge of the objects they are intended to represent, and although, in the carving, very little dexterity is displayed; yet, in the execution of many of the masks and heads, they have shown themselves ingenious sculptors. They preserve, with the greatest exactness, the general character of their own faces, and finish the more minute parts with great accuracy and neatness. That these people have a strong propensity to works of this sort, is observable in a variety of particulars. Representations of human figures, birds, beasts, fishes, models of their canoes, and household utensils, were found among them in very great abundance.

Having mentioned their skill in some of the imitative arts, such as working figures in their garments, and engraving or carving them in wood, we may also add their drawing them in colours. The whole process of their whale fishery has been represented, in this manner, on the caps they wear. This indeed was rudely executed, but served at least to convince them, that though they have not the knowledge of letters amongst them, they have a notion of representing actions, in a lasting way, exclusive of recording them in their songs and traditions. They have also other painted figures, which, perhaps, have no established significations, and are only the creation of fancy or caprice.

Though the structure of their canoes is simple, they appear well-calculated for every useful purpose. The largest, which carry upwards of twenty people, are formed of a single tree. The length of many of them is forty feet, the breadth seven, and the depth three. They become gradually narrower from the middle towards each end, the stern ending perpendicularly, with a knob at the top. The fore part stretches forwards and upwards, and ends in a point or prow, much higher than the sides of the canoe, which are nearly straight. For the most part they are without any ornament; but some have a little carving, and are studded with seals' teeth on the surface. A few have also a kind of additional prow, usually painted with the figure of some animal. They have neither seats nor any other supporters on the inside, except some small, round sticks, about half the depth of the canoe. They are very light, and, on account of their breadth and flatness, swim firmly without an out-rigger, of which they are all destitute. Their paddles, which are small and light,

ness, the best in

den articles, cor-
a their garments.
work, or a repre-
general figure is
out upon birds,
oned, and even

insufficient know-
at, and although,
yet, in the exe-
ve shown them-
th the greatest
s, and finish the
ss. That these
is sort, is ob-
tions of human
es, and house-
at abundance.
imitative arts,
engraving or
rawing them in
ery has been
. This indeed
onvince them,
tters amongst
s, in a lasting
and traditions.
haps, have no
n of fancy or

they appear
argest, which
a single tree.
th seven, and
ver from the
icularly, with
ards and up-
han the sides
most part they
carving, and
v have also a
gure of some
upporters on
all the depth
unt of their
er, of which
ill and light,

resemble a large leaf in shape, being pointed at the bottom, broad in the middle, and gradually becoming narrower in the shaft, the whole length being about five feet. By constant use they have acquired great dexterity in the management of these paddles, but they never make use of any sails.

For fishing and hunting, their implements are both ingeniously contrived, and well-made. They consist of nets, hooks, and lines, harpoons, gigs, and an instrument resembling an oar. The latter is about twenty feet in length, four or five inches in breadth, and of the thickness of half an inch. The edges, for about two-thirds of its length, are set with sharp, bone teeth, about two inches long, the other third serving for a handle. With this instrument they attack herrings and sardines, and such other fish as come in shoals. It is struck into the shoal, and the fish are taken either upon or between the teeth. Their hooks, which are made of bone and wood, display no great ingenuity; but the harpoon, which is used in striking whales, and other sea-animals, manifests a great extent of contrivance. It consists of a piece of bone, formed into two barbs, in which the oval blade of a large muscle-shell, and the point of the instrument is fixed. Two or three fathoms of rope are fastened to this harpoon, and, in throwing it, they use a shaft of about fifteen feet long, to which the rope is fastened, to one end of which the harpoon is fixed, so as to leave the shaft floating, as a buoy upon the water, when the animal darts away with the harpoon.

Captain Cook was ignorant as to the manner of their catching or killing land animals, but it is probable that they shoot the smaller sorts with their arrows, and encounter bears, wolves and foxes, with their spears. They have, indeed, several sorts of nets, which are probably applied to that purpose, as they frequently threw them over their heads, to signify their use, when they offered them for sale. Sometimes they decoy animals by disguising themselves with a skin, and running about upon all-fours, which they do very nimbly, making, at the same time, a kind of noise or neighing. The masks, or carved heads, as well as the dried heads of different animals, are used upon these occasions.

Every thing of the rope kind, which they use in making their various articles, is formed either from thongs of skins, and sinews of animals, or from the flaxen substance of which their mantles are manufactured. The sinews were sometimes so remarkably long, that it was hardly possible they could have belonged to any other animal than the whale. The same conjecture may be hazarded with regard to the bones of which they make their instruments and weapons.

The assistance they receive from iron tools, contributes to their dexterity in wooden performances.—Their instruments are almost wholly made of iron; at least they saw but one chisel that

was not made of that metal, and that was of bone. The knife and the chisel are the principal forms that iron assumes amongst them. The chisel consists of a flat, long piece fastened into a wooden handle. A stone is their mallet, and a bit of fish-skin their polisher. Some of these chisels were nine or ten inches in length, and three or four in breadth, but they were, in general, considerably smaller.

Some of their knives are very large, and their blades crooked, the edge being on the back or convex part. Most of them that Captain Cook saw were about the breadth and thickness of an iron hoop: and their singular form sufficiently proves that they are not of European make. Their iron tools are sharpened upon a coarse, slate whet-stone, and the whole instrument is kept continually bright.

Iron is called by the natives *seekemaile*, a name which they also give to tin, and other white metals.—It being so common among these people, our men were anxious to discover how it was conveyed to them. As soon as they arrived in the Sound, they perceived that they had a knowledge of traffic, and an inclination to pursue it; and our people were afterwards convinced that they had not acquired this knowledge from a cursory interview with any strangers, but it seemed habitual to them, and was a practice in which they were well skilled.

With whom they carry on this traffic, Captain Cook could not ascertain; for though he saw several articles of European manufacture, or such at least as had been derived from some civilized nation, such as brass and iron, it does not certainly follow that they received them immediately from these nations. Captain Cook never could obtain the least information of their having seen ships like ours before, nor of their having been engaged in commerce with such people. Many circumstances corroborate to prove this beyond a doubt; on the arrival of the ships, the natives were earnest in their inquiries whether our people meant to settle among them, and whether they were friendly visitors, informing them, at the same time, that they freely gave them wood and water from motives of friendship.

This not only proves that they considered themselves as proprietors of the place, and dreaded no superiority; but it would have been an unnatural inquiry, if any ships had been here before, and had supplied themselves with wood and water, and then departed for they might then reasonably expect that our men should do the same. It must be admitted, indeed, that they exhibited no marks of surprise at beholding the ships: but this may, with great propriety, be attributed to their natural indolence of temper, and their wanting a thirst of curiosity. Nor were they even startled at the report of a musket, till they one day shewed that their hide dresses were impenetrable to their spears and arrows, when one of the gentlemen shot a musket-ball through one of them that had been six times folded. Their astonishment at this

f bone. The knife
n assumes amongst
ce fastened into a
l a bit of fish-skin
e or ten inches in
were, in general,

ir blades crooked,
lost of them that
l thickness of an
y proves that they
e sharpened upon
nstrument is kept

name which they
eing so common
discover how it
ed in the Sound,
raffic, and an in-
wards convinced
a cursory inter-
l to them, and

Cook could not
European manu-
some civilized
inly follow that
ions. Captain
of their having
een engaged in
es corroborate
the ships, the
r people meant
riendly visitors,
ave them wood

mselves as pro-
; but it would
been here be-
ater, and then
urmen should
they exhibited
his may, with
ace of temper,
ere they even
r shewed that
s and arrows,
rough one of
ment at this

plainly indicated their ignorance of the effect of fire-arms. This was afterwards very frequently confirmed, when our men used them to shoot birds, at which they appeared greatly confounded. —The explanation of the piece, together with the nature of its operation, with the aid of the shot and ball, struck them so forcibly, as to convince Captain Cook of their having no previous ideas on this matter.

Though some account of a voyage to this coast, by the Spaniards, in 1774, or 1775, had arrived in England before our ships sailed, the circumstances just mentioned sufficiently prove that these ships had never been at Nootka.* It was also evident that iron would not have been in so many hands, nor would the use of it have been so well known, if they had so lately obtained the first knowledge of it.

From their general use of this metal, it probably comes from some constant source, in the way of traffic; and they have, perhaps, been long supplied with it, for they use their tools with as much dexterity as the longest practice can acquire. The most natural conjecture, therefore, is, that they trade for their iron with other Indian tribes, who may have some communication with European settlements upon that continent, or receive it through several intermediate nations. By the same means they probably obtain their brass and copper.

Not only the rude materials, but some manufactured articles seem to find their way hither. The brass ornaments for noses are made in so masterly a manner, that the Indians cannot be supposed capable of fabricating them. It is certain that the materials are European, as all the American tribes are ignorant of the making of brass, though copper has been frequently met with, and, from its ductility, might easily be fashioned into any shape, and polished. If such articles were not used by the traders to Hudson's Bay and Canada, in their traffic with the natives, they must have been introduced at Nootka from Mexico; whence, it is probable, the two silver table-spoons were originally derived.

Of the political and religious institutions established among these people, it cannot be supposed that our men should learn much. They discovered, however, that there were such men as chiefs, distinguished by the title of *Acweek*, to whom the others are, in some degree, subordinate. But the authority of each of these great men seems to extend no further than to his family, who acknowledge him as their head. As they were not always elderly men, it is possible this title may be hereditary.

Nothing that Captain Cook saw could give any insight into their notions of religion, except the figures already mentioned, called *Klumma*. These, perhaps, were idols, but as the word *Acweek* was frequently mentioned when they spoke of them, he

* It has since appeared, that they were not within two degrees of Nootka, and probably the inhabitants of that place never heard of these Spanish ships.

might suppose them to be images of some of their ancestors, whose memories they venerate. This, however, is all conjecture, for our men could receive no information concerning them, knowing little more of their language than to enable them to ask the names of things, without being able to hold any conversation with the natives relative to their traditions or institutions.

Their language is neither harsh nor disagreeable, farther than proceeds from their pronouncing the *k* and *h* with less softness than we do. As to the composition of their language we are enabled to say but little. It may, however, be inferred, from their slow and distinct method of speaking, that it has few prepositions or conjunctions, and is destitute of even a single interjection to express surprise or admiration. The affinity it may bear to other languages, Captain Cook was not able sufficiently to trace, not having proper specimens to compare it with; but from the Mexican words he had procured, there is an obvious agreement, throughout the language, in the frequent terminations of the words in *l*, *tl*, or *z*.

The word *wakash* was frequently in the mouths of the people of Nootka. It seemed to express approbation, applause, and friendship. Whenever they appeared to be pleased or satisfied at any sight or occurrence, they would call out *wakash! wakash!* It is worthy of remark, that as these people so essentially differ from the natives of the islands in the Pacific Ocean, in their persons, customs, and language, we cannot suppose their respective progenitors to have belonged to the same tribe, when they emigrated into those places where we now find their descendants.

We have already mentioned that the ships put to sea on the evening of the 26th of April, with manifest indications of an approaching storm, and these signs did not deceive them; for they had scarcely sailed out of the Sound when the wind shifted from north-east to south-east-by-east, and blew a strong gale, with squalls and rain, the sky being at the same time uncommonly dark. Being apprehensive of the winds veering more to the south, which would expose the ships to the danger of a lee-shore, they got the tacks on-board, and made all the sail they could to the south-west. It fortunately happened that the wind veered no further toward the south than south-east, so that early the next morning they were entirely clear of the coast. Captain Clerke's ship being at some distance astern, the commodore brought to till she came up, and then both vessels steered a north-westerly course. The wind blew with great violence, and the weather was thick and hazy. Between one and two o'clock, in the afternoon, there was a perfect hurricane; so that the commodore deemed it exceedingly dangerous to run any longer before it; he therefore brought the ships to, with their heads to the south. In this situation, the Resolution sprung a leak in her starboard quarter, which, at first, alarmed them extremely; but after the water was baled out, which kept the men employed till

of their ancestors, is all conjecture, concerning them, unable them to ask any conversationstitutions.

able, farther than with less softness language we are e inferred, from it has few prepo-a single interjec- nity it may bear ficiently to trace, h; but from the ous agreement, minations of the

s of the people a, applause, and used or satisfied *wakash! wakash!* essentially differ an, in their per- their respective be, when they air descendants.

t to sea on the ations of an ap- them; for they ad shifted from ong gale, with e uncommonly g more to the of a lee-shore, they could to wind veered hat early the ast. Captain e commodore els steered a violence, and d two o'clock, that the com- ay longer be- heads to the a leak in her tremely; but employed till

midnight, it was kept under by means of one pump. The wind having, in the evening, veered to the southward, its fury in some measure abated, upon which they stretched to the west; but about eleven, the gale again increased, and continued till five the next morning, when the storm began to moderate.

The weather now clearing up, they were able to see several leagues round, and steered more to the north. At noon the longitude was 229 deg. 26 min. east, and latitude 50 deg. 1 min. north. They now steered north-west-by-north, with a fresh gale, and fair weather; but, towards the evening, the wind again blew hard, with squalls and rain. With this weather they continued the same course till the 30th, when they steered north-by-west, intending to make the land. Captain Cook regretted that he could not do it sooner, as he was now passing the spot where the pretended strait of Admiral de Fonte had been placed by geographers.—Though the commodore gave no credit to such vague and improbable stories, he was desirous of keeping the coast of America aboard, that this point might be cleared up beyond dispute. But he considered, that it would have been very imprudent to have engaged with the land while the weather was so tempestuous, or to have lost the advantage of a fair wind by waiting for less stormy weather. This day at twelve o'clock, the latitude was 53 deg. 22 min. north, and longitude 225 deg. 14 min. east.

On Friday, the first of May, not seeing land, they steered to the north-east, having a fresh breeze at south-south-east and south, with squalls and showers of hail and rain. About seven o'clock in the evening they descried the land at the distance of twelve or fourteen leagues. At four, the next morning, the coast was seen from south-east to north-by-west, the nearest part of it being five or six leagues distant. At this time, the northern point of an inlet, or at least what appeared to be one, bore east-by-south: and from it to the northward there seemed to be many bays and harbours along the coast. At six o'clock, making a nearer approach to the land, they steered north-west-by-north, this being the direction of the coast; and, between eleven and twelve, passed a cluster of little islands lying under the main land, to the northward of the southern point of an extensive bay. An arm of this bay seemed to extend in toward the north, behind a round, lofty mountain that stands between it and the sea. To this mountain Captain Cooke gave the name of Mount Edgecumbe: and the point of land projecting from it, he called Cape Edgecumbe. The latitude of this cape is 57 deg. 3 min. north, and its longitude 224 deg. 7 min. east. The land, except in some parts close to the sea, is of a considerable height, abounding with hills. Mount Edgecumbe, which far out-tops all the rest, was entirely covered with snow, as were also the other elevated hills; but the lower ones, and the flatter spots near the sea, were destitute of it, and covered with wood.

In the progress to the northward they found that the coast from Cape Edgcumbe tended to the north and north-east for six or seven leagues, and there formed a spacious bay. There being some islands in the entrance of this bay, the commodore named it the Bay of Islands. It seemed to branch out into several arms, one of which turned towards the south, and may, perhaps, communicate with the bay on the eastern side of Cape Edgcumbe, and thus render the land of that cape an island. On the 3rd, at half an hour after four in the morning, Mount Edgcumbe bore south 54 deg. east; a large inlet north 50 deg. east; and the most advanced point of land towards the north-west lying under a very lofty peaked mountain, which obtained the appellation of Mount Fair-Weather, bore north 32 deg. west. The inlet was named Cross Sound, having first observed it on the day so marked in the calendar.—The south-eastern point of this Sound is an elevated promontory, which they distinguished by the name of Cross Cape. To the point under the above-mentioned peaked mountain they gave the name of Cape Fair-Weather. At noon this cape was distant twelve or thirteen leagues.

They had now light breezes from the north-west, which continued several days; and steered to the south-west, and west-south-west, till the morning of the 4th, when they tacked and stood towards the shore. At twelve o'clock, Mount Fair-Weather bore north 63 deg. east, and the shore under it was about a dozen leagues distant. This mountain is the highest of a chain or ridge of mountains that rise at the north-west entrance of Cross Sound, and extend toward the north-west, parallel with the coast. These mountains were covered with snow, from the highest summit down to the sea-coast, except a few places, where they could discern trees that seemed to rise, as it were, from the sea. About five o'clock, in the afternoon, the top of a high mountain appeared above the horizon, bearing north 26 deg. west, and, as was afterwards found, nearly forty leagues distant. It was supposed to be the Mount St. Elias of Commodore Behring. They saw, in the course of this day, several porpoises, seals, and whales; also great numbers of gulls, and many flocks of birds, which had a black ring about the head, and a black band on the tip of the tail and upper part of the wings, the rest being white below and bluish above. They likewise observed a brownish duck, with a blackish or deep blue head and neck.

As they had light winds, with occasional calms, they proceeded but slowly. On the 6th, at mid-day, the nearest land was at the distance of about eight leagues. In a north-easterly direction there appeared to be a bay, and an island near its southern point, covered with wood. This is probably the place where Behring anchored. Southward of the bay which Captain Cook named Behring's Bay, in honour of its discoverer, the chain of mountains already mentioned, is interrupted by a plain of several leagues in extent, beyond which the sight was unbounded. In

and that the coast
north-east for six
bay. There being
Commodore named
into several arms,
y, perhaps, com-
ape Edgcumbe,
On the 3rd, at
Edgcumbe bore
east; and the
west lying under
the appellation of
The inlet was
on the day so
of this Sound is
ed by the name
mentioned peaked
ther. At noon

est, which con-
west, and west-
y tacked and
t Fair-Weather
it was about a
chest of a chain
st entrance of
, parallel with
now, from the
a few places,
se, as it were,
n, the top of a
ring north 26
y leagues dis-
f Commodore
ral porpoises,
l many flocks
and a black
ings, the rest
e observed a
and neck.
ns, they pro-
st land was at
rly direction
uthern point,
ere Behring
Cook named
n of moun-
a of several
ounded. In

the afternoon they sounded, and found a muddy bottom at the depth of about seventy fathoms. Soon afterwards, having a light northerly breeze, steered to the westward; and at noon, the next day, were at the distance of four or five leagues from the shore. From this station they could perceive a bay under the high land, with low woodland on each side of it; and now found that the coast tended considerably to the west; and as they had but little wind, and that chiefly from the westward, they made a slow progress. On the 9th, about noon, Mount St. Elias bore north 30 deg. east, at the distance of nineteen leagues. This mountain stands twelve leagues inland, in the longitude of 219 deg. east, and in the latitude of 60 deg. 27 min. north. It belongs to a ridge of very lofty mountains, which may be reckoned a kind of continuation of the former, being separated from them only by the plain before-mentioned.

On Sunday, the 10th, at twelve o'clock, they were about three leagues distant from the coast of the continent, which extended from east-half-north, to north-west-half-west. To the westward of the latter direction was an island, at the distance of six leagues. A point, which the commodore named Cape Suckling, projects towards the north-eastern end of this island. The extremity of the cape is low, but within it stands a hill of considerable height, which is divided from the mountains by low land, so that the cape, at a distance, has an insular appearance. On the north-side of Cape Suckling is a bay, which seemed to be extensive, and to be sheltered from most winds. Captain Cook had some thoughts of repairing to this bay, in order to stop the leak of his ship, all their endeavours to effect that purpose at sea having proved fruitless. He therefore steered for the cape; but, having only variable, light breezes, they advanced towards it slowly. Before night, however, they had approached near enough to see some low land projecting from the cape to the north-west; they also observed some little islands in the bay, and several elevated rocks between the cape and the north-east extremity of the island. As there appeared to be a passage on each side of the rocks, they continued steering thither the whole night. Early the next morning, the wind shifted from north-east to north. This being against them, the commodore relinquished his design of going into the bay, and bore up for the west-end of the island. There being a calm about ten o'clock, he embarked in a boat, and landed on the island, with a view of seeing what lay on the other side; but finding that the hills were at a greater distance than he expected, and that the way was woody and steep, he laid aside that intention. On a small eminence near the shore, he left, at the foot of a tree, a bottle containing a paper, on which were inscribed the names of the ships, and the date of the discovery: he also enclosed two silver two-penny pieces of English coin, which, with many others, had been furnished him by Dr Kaye, afterwards Dean of Lincoln; and, in

testimony of his esteem for that gentleman, he distinguished the island by the name of Kaye's Island.

This isle does not exceed twelve leagues in length, and its breadth is not above a league and a half in any part of it. The south-west point, whose latitude is 59 deg. 49 min. north, and longitude 216 deg. 58 min. east, is a naked rock, considerably elevated above the land within it. There is also a high rock lying off it, which, when seen in some particular directions, has the appearance of a ruinous castle. The island terminates towards the sea, in bare, sloping cliffs, with a beach consisting of large pebbles, intermixed in some places with a clayey sand. The cliffs are composed of a bluish stone or rock, and are, except in a few parts, in a soft or mouldering state. Some parts of the shore are interrupted by small valleys and gullies, in each of which a rivulet or torrent rushes down with a considerable degree of impetuosity; though, perhaps, only furnished from the snow, and lasting no longer than till the whole is dissolved. These valleys are filled with pine-trees; and they also abound in other parts of the island, which, indeed, is covered as it were with a broad girdle of wood. The trees, however, are far from being of an extraordinary growth; few of them seeming to be larger than what a person might grasp round with his arms, and their general height being forty or fifty feet; so that they would be of no great service for shipping, except as materials for making top-gallant masts, and other small things. The pine-trees appeared to be all of one species; and neither the Canadian pine nor cypress were to be seen.

Upon the edge of the cliffs, the surface was covered with a kind of turf, about six inches thick, apparently composed of the common moss; and the upper part of the island had nearly the same appearance in point of colour; but that which covered it, whatever it was, seemed to be thicker. Among the trees were some currant and hawberry bushes, a yellow-flowered violet, and the leaves of other plants not yet in flower, particularly one which was supposed by Mr. Anderson to be the *heracleum* of Linnæus.

A crow was seen flying about the wood; two or three white-headed eagles, like those of Nootka, were also observed; besides another species equally large, which had a white breast. The commodore likewise saw, in his passage from the ship to the shore, a number of fowls sitting upon the water, or flying about; the principal of which were gulls, pures, shags, ducks, or large peterels, divers, and quebrantahuesses. The divers were of two sorts; one very large, whose colour was black, with a white belly and breast, the other of a smaller size, with a longer and more pointed bill. The ducks were also of two species, one brownish, with a dark-blue, or blackish head and neck, the other smaller, and of a dirty, black colour. The shags were large and black, having a white spot behind the wings.

The gulls were of the common sort, flying in flocks. There was also a single bird flying about, apparently of the gull kind, whose colour was a snowy white, with some black along part of the upper side of its wings. At the place where our party landed, a fox came from the verge of the wood, and eyeing them with little emotion, walked leisurely on without manifesting any signs of fear. He was not of a large size, and his colour was a reddish yellow. Two or three small seals were likewise seen near the shore; but no traces were discovered of inhabitants having ever been in the island.

Captain Cook, with those who accompanied him, returned on-board in the afternoon, and, with a light breeze from the east, steered for the south-west side of the island, which they got round by eight o'clock in the evening, and then stood for the westernmost land that was now in sight. At the north-east end of Kaye's Island stands another island, extending north-west and south-east about nine miles, to within the same distance of the north-western boundary of the bay mentioned before, to which the appellation of Comptroller's Bay was given. Early the next morning Kaye's Island was still in sight, bearing east by south; and, at this time, they were at the distance of four or five leagues from the main. At noon, the eastern point of a spacious inlet bore west-north-west, about three leagues distant. From Comptroller's Bay to this point, which the commodore named Cape Hinchingbroke, the direction of the coast is nearly east and west. Beyond this it appeared to incline towards the south; a direction very different from that which is marked out in the modern charts, founded on the late discoveries of the Russians, insomuch, that there was some reason to expect that they should find, through the inlet before them, a passage to the north, and that the land to the west and south-west was a group of islands. The wind was now south-easterly, and they were menaced with a fog and a storm; and Captain Cook was desirous of getting into some place to stop the leak, before he had another gale to encounter. They therefore steered for the inlet, which they had no sooner reached, than the weather became exceedingly foggy, and it was deemed necessary that the ships should be secured in some place or other, till the sky should clear up. With this view they hauled close under Cape Hinchingbroke, and cast anchor before a small cove over a clayey bottom, in eight fathoms' water, at the distance of about two furlongs from the shore.

Soon after they had anchored, the boats were hoisted out, some to fish and others to sound. The seine, at the same time, was drawn in the cove, but without success, as it was torn. At intervals, the fog cleared away, and gave a view of the neighbouring land. The cape was one league distant; the western point of the inlet five leagues; and the land on that side extended to west-by-north. Between this point and north-west-by-

west, they could discern no land. The most westerly point they had in view on the north shore, was at the distance of two leagues. Between this point, and the shore under which they were at anchor, is a bay about three leagues deep, on the southern side of which there are several coves, and, in the middle, some rocky islands.

Mr. Gore was dispatched in a boat to these islands, in order to shoot some birds that might serve for food. He had scarcely reached them, when about twenty natives appeared in two large canoes; upon which he returned to the ships, and they followed him. They were unwilling, however, to venture along-side, but kept at a little distance, shouting aloud, and alternately clasping and extending their arms. They then began a kind of song, much after the manner of those at King George's, or Nootka Sound. Their heads were decked with feathers; and one of them held out a white garment, which they supposed was intended as a token of friendship; while another, for nearly a quarter of an hour, stood up in the canoe entirely naked, with his arms extended like a cross, and motionless. Their canoes were constructed upon a different plan from those at Nootka. The frame consisted of slender laths, and the outside was formed of the skins of seals, or other animals of a similar kind. Though our men returned their signs of amity, and endeavoured, by the most expressive gestures, to encourage them to come along-side, they were unable to prevail upon them. Some of our people repeated several of the most common words of the language of Nootka, such as *mahook* and *seekemaile*, but they did not appear to understand them. After they had received some presents that were thrown to them, they retired towards the shore, intimating, by signs, that they would pay another visit the next morning. Two of them, however, came off to the ship in the night, each in a small canoe; hoping, perhaps, that they would find all asleep, and might have an opportunity of pilfering; for they went away as soon as they perceived themselves discovered.

During the night, the wind blew hard and in squalls, with rain, and thick, hazy weather. The next morning, about ten, the wind becoming more moderate, and the weather being somewhat clearer, our men got in the anchors and made sail, in order to search for some convenient place, where they might stop the leak, as their present station was too much exposed for that purpose. Captain Cook at first proposed to have gone up the bay before which the ships had anchored; but he was afterwards induced, by the clearness of the weather, to steer towards the north, further up the great inlet. After they had passed the north-west point of the above-mentioned bay, they found that the coast, on that side, inclined to the eastward. They did not follow it, but proceeded on their course to the northward, for a point of land which they observed in that direction.

The Americans who had visited the ships the preceding day,

western point they
the distance of two
under which they
deep, on the south-
end, in the middle,

islands, in order
He had scarcely
ared in two large
and they followed
e along-side, but
ernately clasping
a kind of song,
ge's, or Nootka
ers; and one of
ed was intended
a quarter of an
th his arms ex-
oes were con-
ka. The frame
formed of the
Though our
oured, by the
me along-side,
of our people
he language of
did not appear
e presents that
re, intimating,
ext morning.
ne night, each
ould find all
ng; for they
scattered.

squalls, with
, about ten,
eather being
made sail, in
they might
exposed for
ave gone up
c was after-
eer towards
l passed the
found that
they did not
ward, for a

eding day,

came off again in the morning in five or six canoes; but, as they did not come till after they were under sail, they were unable to reach the ships, though they followed them for a considerable time. In the afternoon, before two o'clock, the unfavourable weather returned with so thick a haze, that they could discern no other land but the point just mentioned, off which they arrived between four and five o'clock, and found it to be a little island situated at the distance of about two miles from the neighbouring coast; being a point of land, on the eastern side of which they discovered an excellent bay, or rather harbour. To this they plied up, while the wind blew in very hard squalls, accompanied with rain. Though, at some intervals, they could see land in every direction, yet, in general, there was so great a fog, that they could only perceive the shores of the bay for which they were now steering. In passing the island, they found a muddy bottom at the depth of twenty-six fathoms. Not long after, they found sixty and seventy fathoms, over a rocky bottom: and in the entrance of the bay, the depth of the water was from thirty to six fathoms. At length, about eight o'clock, they were obliged, by the violence of the squalls, to cast anchor in thirteen fathoms' water, before they had proceeded so far into the bay as the commodore intended; but thought themselves fortunate in having the ships already secured, for the night was extremely tempestuous.

Though the weather was so stormy, the natives were not deterred from paying them a visit. Three of them came off in two canoes; two men in one, and one in the other, being the number that each canoe could carry: for they were constructed nearly in the same manner with those of the Esquimaux, except that in one of them were two holes for two persons to sit in, and in the other but one. These men had each a stick of the length of about three feet, with large feathers or wings of birds fastened to it. These they frequently held up to our men, probably as tokens of peace. The treatment these men received, induced many others to visit them, between one and two o'clock the following morning, in both great and small canoes. Some of them ventured on-board the *Resolution*, though not before some of our people had stepped into their boats. Among those who came on-board was a middle-aged man, who, as they afterwards found, was the chief. His dress was made of the skin of the sea-otter, and he had on his head such a cap as is worn by the inhabitants of Nootka, ornamented with sky-blue glass beads. He appeared to value these much more than the white glass beads. Any sort of beads, however, seemed to be in high estimation with these people, who readily gave in exchange for them whatever they had, even their fine sea-otter skins.

They were very desirous of iron, but absolutely rejected small bits, and wanted pieces nine or ten inches long at least, and of the breadth of three or four fingers. They obtained

but little of this commodity from the ships, as, by this time, it was become rather scarce. The points of some of their spears were of this metal, others of copper, and a few of bone, of which last, the points of their arrows, darts, &c. were formed.

The chief could not be prevailed upon, to venture below the upper-deck; nor, did he and his companions continue long on-board. While they were in the ship, it was necessary to watch them narrowly, as they soon manifested an inclination to thieving. At length, when they had been three or four hours along-side the Resolution, they all quitted her, and repaired to the Discovery, which ship, none of them had before been on-board of, except one man, who came from her at this very time, and immediately returned to her, in company with the others. As soon as they had departed from the Resolution, Captain Cook dispatched a boat to sound the head of the bay; for, as the wind was moderate at present, he had an intention of laying the ship ashore, if a proper place could be found for the process of stopping the leak. Soon afterwards, all the Americans quitted the Discovery, and made their way towards a boat that was employed in sounding. The officer who was in her, observing their approach, returned to the ship, and all the canoes followed him. The crew of the boat had no sooner repaired on-board, leaving in her, by way of guard, two of their number, than several of the natives stepped into her; some of whom presented their spears before the two men, while others loosed the rope by which she was fastened to the ship, and the rest was so daring as to tow her away. But the moment they saw that our men were preparing to oppose them, they let her go, stepped out of her into their own boats, and made signs, to persuade them to lay down their arms, being to all appearance perfectly unconcerned.

This attempt, though a very bold one, was scarcely equal to what they had meditated on-board Captain Clerke's ship. The man who is mentioned before as having conducted his countrymen from the Resolution to the Discovery, had first been on-board the latter; where, after looking down all the hatch-ways, and observing no one except the officer of the watch, and one or two others, he doubtless imagined that she might be plundered with ease, particularly as she was stationed at some distance from the Resolution. It was unquestionably with this intent that the natives went off to her. Several of them went on-board without the least ceremony; and drawing their knives, made signs to the officer, and other people upon deck to keep off, and began to search for plunder. The first thing they laid hold of was the rudder of one of the boats, which they immediately threw over-board to those of their party who had remained in the canoes. But before they had time to find another object that struck their fancy, the ship's crew were alarmed, and many

of them armed with cutlasses, came upon deck. On observing this, the plunderers all sneaked off into their canoes, with much deliberation and indifference. It was at this time that the boat was occupied in sounding, as we have already mentioned; and the natives, without delay, proceeded towards her after the disappointment they had met with at the Discovery. Their visiting the ships so early in the morning, was undoubtedly with a view of plundering, on a supposition that they would find all our people asleep.

From these circumstances above related, it may reasonably be inferred, that these people are not at all acquainted with fire-arms. For, if they had known any thing of their effect, they would by no means have ventured to attempt carrying off a boat from under a ship's guns, in the face of upwards of a hundred men; for, most of the Resolution's people were looking at them, at the very instant of their making the attempt. However, Captain Cook, left them as ignorant in this particular as he found them; for, they neither saw nor heard a musket fired, except at birds.

As the ships were on the point of weighing anchor, in order to proceed farther up the bay, the wind began to blow as violently as before, and was attended with rain; insomuch, that our people were obliged to veer away the cable again, and lie fast. In the evening, perceiving that the gale did not abate, and thinking that it might be some time before an opportunity of getting higher up presented itself, the commodore was determined to heel the ship in their present station; and, with that view, caused her to be moored with a kedge anchor and hawser. One of the sailors, in heaving the anchor out of the boat, was carried over-board by the buoy-rope, and accompanied the anchor to the bottom. In this very hazardous situation, he had sufficient presence of mind to disengage himself, and come up to the surface of the water, where he was immediately taken up, with a dangerous fracture in one of his legs. Early the following morning, they heeled the ship, in order to stop the leak; which, on ripping off the sheathing, was found to be in the seams. While the carpenters were employed in this business, others of their people filled the water-casks at a stream not far from their station. The wind had by this time considerably abated; but, the weather was hazy, with rain. The Americans paid them another visit this morning: those who came off first, were in small canoes; others arrived afterwards in large ones. In one of these great canoes, were twenty women and one man, besides several children.

On Saturday, the 16th, towards the evening, the weather cleared up, and the ships then found themselves encompassed with land. Their station was on the eastern side of the Sound, in a place distinguished by the appellation of Snug Corner Bay. Captain Cook, accompanied by some of his officers, went to take a survey of the head of it; and they found, that it was sheltered from all winds, and had a muddy bottom, at the depth of from seven

to three fathoms. The land near the shore is low; partly wooded, and partly clear. The clear ground was covered with snow, but very little remained in the woods. The summits of the hills in the neighbourhood were covered with wood; but, those that were at a greater distance inland, had the appearance of naked rocks covered with snow.

The leak of the Resolution being at length stopped, they weighed anchor on the 17th, at four in the morning, and steered a north-west course, with a gentle breeze, at east-north-east. Soon after making sail, the Americans visited them again, seemingly with no other view than to gratify their curiosity, for they did not enter into any traffic with our men. When they had reached the north-western point of the arm wherein they had anchored, they found that the flood-tide came into the inlet, by the same channel through which they had entered. This circumstance, did not much contribute to the probability of a passage to the north through this inlet, though it did not make entirely against it. After passing the point just mentioned, they met with much foul ground, and many sunken rocks. The wind now failed, and was succeeded by calms, and variable light airs, so that they had some difficulty in extricating themselves from the danger that threatened them. At last, however, about one o'clock, they cast anchor in about thirteen fathoms' water, under the eastern shore, about four leagues to the northward of the last station. Though the weather in the morning had been very hazy, it cleared up afterwards, so as to afford a distinct view of all the surrounding land, particularly towards the north, where it appeared to close. This gave little hope of meeting with a passage that way; and that he might be enabled to form a better judgment, Captain Cook sent Mr. Gore, with two armed boats, to examine the northern arm; and, at the same time dispatched the master, with two other boats, to survey another arm that seemed to incline towards the east. Both of them returned at night. The master informed the commodore, that the arm to which he had been sent, communicated with that he had last quitted, and that one side of it was formed by a cluster of islands. Mr. Gore reported, that he had seen the entrance of an arm which, he thought, extended a very considerable way to the north-eastward, and by which a passage might probably be found. On the other hand, Mr. Roberts, one of the mates, who had accompanied Mr. Gore on this occasion, gave it as his opinion, that they saw the head of this arm. The disagreement of these two opinions, and the circumstance before-mentioned, of the flood-tide entering the inlet from the southward, rendered the existence of a passage this way extremely uncertain. Captain Cook, therefore, determined to employ no more time, in seeking a passage, in a place that afforded so small a prospect of success, particularly as the wind was now become favourable for getting out to sea.

The next morning, about three o'clock, they weighed, and made sail to the southward down the inlet, with a light northerly breeze. They met with some broken ground, as on the preceding day, but soon extricated themselves from it. They were enabled to shorten their way out to sea, by discovering another passage into the inlet, to the south-west of that by which they entered. It is separated from the other by an island, that extends eighteen leagues, in the direction of south-west and north-east, to which Captain Cook gave the appellation of Montagu Island.

There are several islands in this south-western channel. Those which are situated in the entrance, next the open sea, are elevated and rocky. Those that are within are low; and as they were totally free from snow, and covered with wood and verdure, they were, for this reason, denominated Green Islands.

The wind, at two o'clock in the afternoon, veered to the south-west, and south-west-by-south, which subjected them to the necessity of plying. They first stretched over, to the distance of within two miles of the eastern shore, and tacked in about fifty-three fathoms. As they stood back to Montagu Island, they discovered a ledge of rocks, some under water, and others about the surface. They afterwards met with some others towards the middle of the channel. These rocks rendering it unsafe to ply during the night, they spent it in standing off and on under Montagu Island; for the depth of water was too great, to come to an anchor. The next morning, at break of day, they steered for the channel between the Green Islands and Montagu Island, which is about two leagues and a half in breadth. The wind was inconsiderable the whole day, and about eight o'clock in the evening they had a perfect calm, when they let go the anchors, at the depth of twenty-one fathoms, over a muddy bottom, about the distance of two miles from Montagu Island. The calm continued till ten o'clock the next morning, when it was succeeded by a light breeze from the north, with which they again weighed and made sail. Having got into the open sea in the evening, it was discovered that the coast tended west-by-south, as far as the eye could reach.

The inlet which they had now quitted, was distinguished by Captain Cook, with the name of Prince William's Sound. From what they saw of it, it seems to occupy at least one degree and a half of latitude, and two degrees of longitude, exclusive of the branches or arms, with whose extent they were unacquainted. The natives whom they saw were, in general, of a middling stature, though many of them were under it. They were square, or strong chested, with short thick necks, and broad visages, which were, for the most part, rather flat. The most disproportioned part of their body appeared to be their heads, which were very large. Their teeth were of a tolerable whiteness, broad, well set, and equal in size. Their noses had full

round points, turned up at the tip; and their eyes, though not small, were scarcely proportioned to the largeness of their faces. They had black hair, which was strong, straight, and thick. Their beards were, in general, thin or deficient; but, the hairs growing about the lips of those who have them, were bristly or stiff, and often of a brownish colour; and some of the elderly men had large, thick, straight beards.

Though, for the most part, they agree in the formation of their persons, and the largeness of their heads, the variety in their features is considerable. Very few, however, can be said to be handsome, though their countenance usually indicates frankness, vivacity, and good nature; and yet, some of them shewed a reverse, and sullenness in their aspect. The faces of some of the women are agreeable; and many of them, but principally the younger ones, may easily be distinguished from the other sex, by the superior delicacy of their features. The complexion of some of the females, and of the children, is white, without any mixture of red. Many of the men, whom they saw naked, had rather a swarthy cast, which could scarcely be the effect of any stain, as they do not paint their bodies.

The men, women, and children of the Sound, are all clothed in the same manner. Their ordinary dress is a sort of close frock, or rather robe, which sometimes reaches only to the knees, but generally down to the ankles. It has at the upper part, a hole just sufficient to admit the head, with sleeves reaching to the wrist. These frocks are composed of the skins of various animals, such as the grey fox, racoon, pine-martin, sea-otter, seal, &c. and they are commonly worn with the hairy side outward. Some of the natives have their frocks made of the skins of fowls, with only the down left on them, which they glue upon other substances; they also saw one or two woollen garments, resembling those of the inhabitants of King George's Sound. At the seams, where the different skins are sewed together, they are usually adorned with fringes or tassels, of narrow thongs cut out of the same skins. A few have a kind of cape or collar, and some have a kind of hood; but the other, is the most customary form, and appears to constitute the whole dress in fair weather. They put over this, when it is rainy, another frock, made with some degree of ingenuity, from the intestines of whales, or of some other large animal, prepared with such skill as to resemble, in a great measure, our gold-beater's leaf. It is formed, so as to be drawn tight round the neck, and its sleeves extend down to the wrist, round which they are fastened with a string. When they are in their canoes, they draw the skirts of this frock over the rim of the hole in which they sit, so that the water is prevented from entering. At the same time it keeps the men dry upward, for no water can penetrate through it. It is apt to crack, or break, if it is not constantly kept moist. This frock, as well as the common one made of skins, is nearly similar

to the dress of the natives of Greenland, as described by Crantz*.

In general, the inhabitants of this inlet, do not cover their legs or feet, but a few of them wear a kind of skin stockings, which reach half-way up their thighs; and scarcely any of them are without mittens for their hands, formed from the skins of bears' paws. Those who wear any thing on their heads, resembled, in this respect, the people of Nootka, having high truncated conic caps, composed of straw, and sometimes of wood.

The hair of the men is commonly cropped round the forehead and neck; but the females, suffer it to grow long; and, the greatest part of them tie a lock of it on the crown, while a few club it behind, after our manner. Both the men and women perforate their ears with several holes, about the outer and lower part of the edge, wherein they suspend small bunches of beads. They also perforate the *septum* of the nose, through which they often thrust the quill-feathers of birds, or little bending ornaments, made of a tubulous, shelly substance, strung on a stiff cord, of the length of three or four inches, which give them a ridiculous and grotesque appearance. But the most extraordinary ornamental fashion, adopted by some of the natives of both sexes, is their having the under lip cut quite through length-wise, rather below the swelling part. This incision is often above two inches in length, and either by its natural retraction, when the wound is still fresh, or by the repetition of some artificial management, assumes the appearance and shape of lips, and becomes sufficiently large to admit the tongue through. This happened to be the case, when a person with his under lip thus slit was first seen by one of our sailors, who immediately exclaimed, that the man had two mouths, which indeed, it greatly resembles. They fix in this artificial mouth, a flat, narrow kind of ornament, made principally out of a solid shell, or bone, cut into small, narrow pieces, like teeth, almost down to the base or thick part, which has, at each end, a projecting bit, that serves to support it when put into the divided lip, the cut part then appearing outwards. Some of them only perforate the lower lip into separate holes, on which occasion, the ornament consists of the same number of distinct, shelly studs, the points of which are thrust through these holes, and their heads appear within the lip, not unlike another row of teeth under their natural ones.

Such are the native ornaments of these people. But our men observed among them, many beads of European manufacture, chiefly of a pale, blue colour, which they hang in their ears, about their caps, or join to their lip ornaments, which have a small hole drilled in each of the points to which they are fastened, and others to them, till they hang sometimes as low as the point of the chin. In this last case, however, they cannot remove

* Crantz's History of Greenland, Vol. 1. p. 136—138.

with such facility; for, with respect to their lip ornaments, they can take them out with their tongue at pleasure. They likewise wear bracelets of beads, made of a shelly substance, or others of a cylindrical form, composed of a substance resembling amber. And they are, in general, so fond of ornaments of some kind or other, that they fix any thing in their perforated lip; for one of them, appeared with two of their iron nails, projecting like prongs from it; and, another man attempted to put a large brass button into it.

The men often paint their faces of a black colour, of a bright red, and sometimes of a bluish or leaden hue; but not in any regular figure. The women puncture or stain the chin with black, that comes to a point in each cheek; a custom, very similar to which is in vogue among the Greenland females, as we are informed by Crantz. The bodies of these people are not painted, which may probably be owing to the scarcity of materials for that purpose; all the colours, which they brought for sale, being in very small quantities. Upon the whole they have, in no country, seen savages take more pains than these people do, to ornament, or rather disfigure, their persons.

Their canoes are of two sorts, the one large and open, the other small and covered. We have mentioned before, that there were twenty women and one man, besides children, in one of their large boats. Captain Cook having attentively examined this, and compared its construction with Crantz's description of the great, or women's boat, in Greenland, found that they were built in the same mode, with no other difference than the form of the head and stern, particularly of the former, which somewhat resembles a whale's head. The framing consists of slender pieces of wood; and the outside, is composed of the skins of seals, or other sea-animals, stretched over the wood. The small canoes of these people, are constructed of nearly the same form and materials as those of the Esquimaux and Greenlanders. Some of these, as we have already mentioned, carry two persons. Their fore-part, is carved like the head of a violin; and, they are broader in proportion to their length than those of the Esquimaux.

Their weapons, and implements for hunting, and fishing, are the same with those used by the Greenlanders and Esquimaux. Many of their spears are headed with iron, and their arrows are generally pointed with bone. Their larger darts, are thrown by means of a piece of wood about a foot long, with a small groove in the middle, which receives the dart: at the bottom, is a hole for the reception of one finger, which enables them to grasp the piece of wood much firmer, and to throw with greater force. For defensive armour, they have a sort of jacket, or, coat of mail, formed of laths, fastened together with sinews, which render it very flexible, though it is so close as not to admit a dart or arrow. It serves only to cover the trunk of the

body, and may not improperly be compared to the stays worn by women.

Captain Cook had not an opportunity of seeing any of the habitations of the natives, as none of them dwelt in the bay where the ships anchored, or where any of them landed. With respect to their domestic utensils, they brought in their canoes, some round and oval wooden dishes, rather shallow, and others of a cylindrical form, considerably deeper. The sides consisted of one piece, bent round, after the manner of our chip-boxes, but thick, and neatly fastened with thongs; the bottoms being fixed in with small pegs of wood. Others were somewhat smaller, and of a more elegant figure, not unlike a large oval butter-boat, without any handle, but shallower: these were made from a piece of wood, or some horny substance, and were sometimes neatly carved. They had a number of little square bags, made of the same gut with their exterior frocks, curiously adorned with very small red feathers interwoven with it, in which were contained several very fine sinews, and bundles of small cord made out of them, plaited with extraordinary ingenuity. They likewise brought some wooden models of their canoes, checkered baskets, wrought so closely as to hold water, and a considerable number of small images, of the length of four or five inches, either of wood or stuffed, which were covered with a piece of fur, and embellished with quill-feathers, with hair fixed on their heads. Our men, could not determine, whether they were intended merely as children's toys, or were held in veneration, as representing their deceased friends and relations, and applied to some superstitious purpose. They have many instruments, formed of two or three hoops, or concentric pieces of wood, having a cross bar fixed in the middle, by which they are held. To this they fix a number of dried barnacle-shells with threads, which, when shaken, produces a loud noise, and thus serve the purpose of a rattle. This contrivance is probably a substitute for the rattling-bird at King George's Sound.

It was not known with what tools their wooden utensils, frames of canoes, &c. were made; the only one that was observed among them, was a sort of stone adze, somewhat resembling those of Otaheite, and other islands of the Pacific Ocean. They have a great quantity of iron knives, some of which are rather curved, others straight, and some very small ones, fixed in pretty long handles, with the blades bent upward. They have knives of another sort, sometimes almost two feet in length, shaped in a great measure like a dagger, with a ridge in the middle. They wear these in sheaths of skins, hung by a thong round their necks, under their robe, or frock. It is probable, that they use them only as weapons, and that their other knives are applicable to different purposes. Every thing they have, is as well made as if they were provided with a complete chest of tools;

and their plaiting of sinews, sewing, and small work on their little bags, above-mentioned, may be said to vie with the neatest manufactures found in any part of the globe. Upon the whole, considering the uncivilized state of the natives of this Sound, their northerly situation, amidst a country almost continually covered with snow, and the comparatively wretched materials they have to work with, it appears, that, with respect to their skill and invention in all manual operations, they are at least equal to any other people.

The food that they were seen to eat, was the flesh of some animal, either roasted or broiled, and dried fish. Some of the former that was purchased, had the appearance of bear's flesh. They likewise eat a larger sort of fern-root, either baked or dressed in some other method. Some of our people observed them eat freely of another substance, which they imagined, was the inner part of the pine-bark. Their drink, in all probability, is water, for, in their canoes they brought snow in wooden vessels which they swallowed by mouthfuls. Their manner of eating is decent and cleanly, for they always took care to remove any dirt that might adhere to their food; and, though they would sometimes eat the raw fat of some sea-animals, they did not fail to cut it carefully into mouthfuls. Their persons were to appearance, always clean; and their utensils, in general, were kept in excellent order, as were also their boats.

The language of this people seems difficult to be understood; which is, perhaps, not owing to any confusion or indistinctness in their sounds, but to the various significations which their words bear. For, they appeared frequently to make use of the same word, on very different occasions; though, doubtless, if they had had a longer intercourse with them, this might have proved to be a mistake on their part. Among the very few words of their language, that Mr. Anderson was enabled to procure, are the following, viz:—*aa*, yes; *keeta*, give me something; *tawuk*, keep it; *akusbou*, what's the name of that? *namuk*, an ear-ornament; *natooneshuk*, a sea-otter's skin; *ahleu*, a spear; *yaut*, I'll go, or, shall I go? *kelashuk*, guts of which they make jackets; *naema*, give me something by way of exchange, or barter; *whaehai*, shall I keep it? *oocnuka*, of or belonging to me.

The knowledge of the animals of this part of the American continent, is entirely derived from the skins that were brought by the natives for sale. These were principally of bears, common and pine-martin, sea-otters, seals, racoons, small ermines, foxes, and the whitish cat, or lynx. Among these various skins, the most common were those of racoons, martins, and sea-otters, which constituted the ordinary dress of these people; but the skins of the martins, which were, in general, of a far lighter brown, than those of Nootka, were greatly superior to them in point of fineness; whereas, those of the sea-otters, which,

as
N
fin
to
Th
the
bla
we
H
skin
skin
who
erm
scar
very
not
shag
they
sea-b
their
length
whitish
few of
of the
doubt
his acc
mouse
squirre
though
same a
lation
they ok
mals th
that th
commo
With
king-fis
headed
ships, w
to live
The wa
such as
geese, a
saw at
them we
killed a
the wat
they we
in conse

as well as the martins, were much more plentiful here than at Nootka, seemed to be considerably inferior in the thickness and fineness of their fur, though they far exceeded them with respect to size; and were, for the most part, of the glossy, black sort. The skins of seals and bears were also pretty common; and the former were, in general, white, beautifully spotted with black, or sometimes simply white; and many of the bears here, were of a dark, brown hue.

Besides these animals, there is here, the white bear, of whose skins the natives brought several pieces, and some complete skins of cubs. There is also the wolverene, or quickhatch, whose skin has very bright colours; and a larger species of ermine than the common one, varied with brown, and having scarcely any black on its tail. The skin of the head of some very large animal, was likewise brought to them, but they could not possibly decide what it was; though, from the colour and shaginess of the hair, and its not resembling any land animal, they conjectured that it might be that of the male ursine seal, or sea-bear. But, one of the most beautiful skins that fell under their observation, was that of a small animal, near a foot in length, of a brown colour on the back, with a number of obscure, whitish specks, the sides being of a blueish, ash colour, with a few of these specks. The tail, is about a third part of the length of the body, and is covered with whitish hair. This animal, is doubtless the same, with that which is called by Mr. Stæhlin, in his account of the New Northern Archipelago, the spotted field-mouse. But, whether it is really of the mouse kind, or a squirrel, they could not determine for want of entire skins; though Mr. Anderson was inclined to imagine, that it is the same animal which Mr. Pennant has described, under the appellation of the Casan marmot. The great number of skins that they observed here, denotes the abundance of the various animals they have mentioned: but, it is somewhat remarkable, that they neither met with the skins of the mouse, nor of the common species of deer.

With respect to birds, they found here the *alcyon*, or great king-fisher, which had fine, bright colours; the shag, the white-headed eagle, and the humming-bird, which often flew about their ships, while they lay at anchor, though it can scarcely be supposed to live here during the winter, which must be extremely severe. The water-fowl seen by them, were black sea-pies with red bills, such as they met with in New Zealand and Van Diemen's Land; geese, a small sort of duck, nearly resembling that species they saw at Kergulen's Land, and another sort with which none of them were acquainted. Some of our people, who went ashore, killed a small snipe, a grouse, and some plovers; but, though the water-fowl were numerous, particularly the geese and ducks, they were so shy that it was scarcely possible to get within shot; in consequence of which, our men procured a very inconsider-

able supply of them as to refreshment. The duck before-mentioned, is about the size of the common wild duck, of a deep, black, with red feet, and a short pointed tail. Its bill is white, tinged towards the point with red, and has a large black spot, almost square, near its base, on each side, where it is also distended. On the forehead is a large triangular white spot; and on the hinder part of the neck is one still larger. The colours of the female are considerably duller than those of the male; and it has none of the ornaments of the bill, excepting the two black spots, which are rather obscure.

A species of diver, which seems peculiar to this place, was observed here. It is equal to a partridge in size, and has a short, black, compressed bill. Its head, and the upper part of its neck, are of a brownish black; and the remainder of its body is of a deep brown, obscurely waved with black, except the under part, which is totally of a blackish cast, minutely varied with white. They also found a small land bird of the finch kind, about the size of a yellow hammer, but they imagined it to be one of those which change their colour with the season, and with the different migrations. It was at this time of a dusky brown, with a reddish tail; and the supposed male had, on the crown of the head, a large yellow spot, with some varied black, on the upper part of its neck; but, the latter was on the breast of the female.

The fish that were principally brought by the natives for sale, were torsk and halibut; and our men caught some scalpins about the ship, with star-fish, of a purple hue, that had sixteen or eighteen rays. The rocks were almost destitute of shell-fish; and the other animals of this tribe, that were observed by them, were a reddish crab, covered with very large spines.

The metals seen were iron and copper; both which, but more particularly the former, were in such abundance, as to form the points of numbers of their lances and arrows. The ores which they made use of to point themselves with, were a brittle, unctuous, red ochre, or iron ore; a pigment of a bright blue, and black lead. Each of these seemed to be very scarce among them.

Captain Cook observed few vegetables of any kind; and the trees that chiefly grew about this Sound, were the Canadian and spruce pine, some of which were of a considerable size.

These people must, doubtless, have received from some more civilized nation the beads and iron found among them. It is almost certain that our men were the first Europeans with whom they had ever had a direct communication; and it remains only to be determined, from what quarter they had procured our manufactures, by intermediate conveyance. It is more than probable that they had obtained these articles through the intervention of the more inland tribes, either from the settlements about Hudson's Bay, or those on the lakes of Canada; unless

we can admit the supposition that the Prussians, from Kamtschatka, have already extended their traffic to this distance; or that the natives of their most easterly Fox Islands carry on an intercourse along the coast, with the inhabitants of Prince William's Sound.

With respect to copper, these people, perhaps, procure it themselves, or, at most, it passes to them through few hands; for, when our men offered any of it by way of barter, they used to express its being in sufficient plenty among them, by pointing to their weapons; as if they meant to intimate, that, as they had so much copper of their own, there was no occasion of increasing their stock.

If, however, the natives of this inlet are furnished with European commodities by means of the intermediate traffic to the eastern coast, it is rather remarkable that they should never, in return, have supplied the more inland Indians with some of their sea-otter skins, which would undoubtedly have appeared at some time or other in the environs of Hudson's Bay. But that does not appear to be the case; and the only method by which we can account for this, must be by considering the very great distance, which, though it might not prevent European articles of commerce from coming so far, as being so uncommon, might hinder the skins, which are common, from passing through more than two or three tribes, who might make use of them for their own clothing, and send others, which they reckoned of inferior value, as being of their own animals, towards the east, till they reach the traders of the European settlements.

Leaving Prince William's Sound, on Wednesday, the 20th of May, the ships steered to the south-west, with a gentle breeze, which was succeeded by a calm at four o'clock, the next morning, and the calm was soon after followed by a breeze from the south-west. They continued to stretch to the south-west, and passed a lofty promontory in the latitude of 59 deg. 10 min. and the longitude of 207 deg. 45 min. It having been discovered on Princess Elizabeth's birth-day, Captain Cook gave it the name of Cape Elizabeth. As they could see no land beyond it, they flattered themselves that it was the western extremity of the continent: but were soon convinced that they were mistaken, for fresh land appeared in sight, bearing west-south-west. The wind now increased to a strong gale, and forced them to a considerable distance from the coast. On the 22d. in the afternoon, the gale abated, and they stood for Cape Elizabeth, which, about noon the next day, bore west, distant ten leagues.—New land was then seen, bearing south-west, which, it was imagined, connected Cape Elizabeth with the land they had seen towards the west. They stood to the southward till the next day at noon, which time they were within three leagues of the coast, which they had seen on the 22nd. It here formed a point that bore west-north-west. At the same time more land was dis-

covered, extending to the southward; on which was seen a ridge of mountains, with summits covered with snow, behind the first land, which was supposed to be an island, from the very inconsiderable quantity of snow that lay upon it. The latitude of this point of land is 58 deg. 15 min. and its longitude 207 deg. 42 min. And, by what the commodore could gather from Behring's Voyage and Chart, he supposed it to be what he called Cape St. Hermogenes. But the account of that voyage, as well as the chart, are so extremely inaccurate, that it is almost impossible to discover any one place which that navigator either saw or touched at. The commodore, indeed, was by no means certain, that the bay which he had named after Behring was the place where he had anchored.

In the chart above mentioned, a space is here pointed out where Behring is supposed to have seen no land. This favoured Mr. Stæhlin's account, who makes Cape St. Hermogenes, and the land discovered by Behring to the south-west of it, to be a cluster of islands, and that St. Hermogenes is one of those which are destitute of wood. This appeared to be confirmed by what they now saw, and they entertained the pleasing hopes of finding here a passage northward, without being under the necessity of proceeding any farther to the south-west.

By variable light airs and calms they were detained off the cape till two o'clock in the morning of the 25th, when a breeze springing up, they steered along the coast, and perceived that the land of Cape St. Hermogenes was an island, about six leagues in circumference, separated from the coast by a channel of about one league in breadth. Some rocks lie above water, a league and a half to the north of this island: and on the north-east side of them they had from twenty to thirty fathoms' water.

About noon St. Hermogenes bore south-east, distant eight leagues, the land to the north-west extending from south half west to near west. In the last direction it ended in a low point named Point Banks. The ship was at this time in the latitude of 58 deg. 44 min. and in the longitude of 207 deg. 44 min. In this situation the land was in sight, bearing north-west, which, it was imagined, connected Cape Elizabeth with this south-west land. When they approached it, they saw it was a group of high islands and rocks, and consequently unconnected with any other land. From the nakedness of their appearance, they were denominated the Barren Isles; they are situated in the latitude of 59 deg. three leagues distant from Cape Elizabeth, and five from Point Banks.

They intended to have passed through one of the channels by which these islands are divided, but a strong current setting against them, they went to the leeward of them all. The weather which had been thick and hazy, cleared up towards the evening, and they perceived a very lofty promontory, whose elevated summit appeared above the clouds, forming two exceedingly

high
Dor
sor
10 m
of th

The
upon
26th
they
north
which
name

The
it to
They
Cape
that t
of isla
might

FL
north-
they
island
land,
accoun
wholly
sea-be
great
should
the sea
own o

Mo
league
wheth
ascert
they s
about

Bet
name
harbo
there
no su
very
The g
the a
south
over a
Th

high mountains. The commodore named this promontory Cape Douglas, in honour of his friend Dr. Douglas, Canon of Windsor. Its latitude is 58 deg. 56 min. and its longitude 206 deg. 10 min. twelve leagues from Point Banks, and ten to the westward of the Barren Isles.

The coast seemed to form a large deep bay, between this point and Cape Douglas, which from their observing some smoke upon Point Banks, received the name of Smoky Bay. On the 26th at day-break, being to the northward of the Barren Isles, they perceived more land, extending from Cape Douglas to the north. It formed a chain of mountains of vast height, one of which, being much more conspicuous than the rest, obtained the name of Mount St. Augustin.

They were not discouraged at perceiving this land, supposing it to be wholly unconnected with the land of Cape Elizabeth. They also expected to find a passage to the north-west, between Cape Douglas and Mount St. Augustin. It was, indeed, imagined, that the land to the north of Cape Douglas consisted of a group of islands, separated by so many channels, any of which they might have chosen, according to the direction of the wind.

Flattered with these ideas, and having a fresh gale at north-north-east, they stood to the north-west till eight o'clock, when they were fully convinced that what they had supposed to be islands, where summits of mountains, connected by the lower land, which they could not perceive at a greater distance on account of the haziness of the horizon. This land was covered wholly with snow, from the tops of the mountain down to the sea-beach, and had in every other respect the appearance of a great continent. Captain Cook was now convinced that he should discover no passage by this inlet; and his persevering in the search of it, was more to satisfy others than to confirm his own opinion.

Mount St. Augustin, at this time, bore north-west about three leagues distant. It is of vast height, and of a conical figure; but whether it be an island, or part of the continent, they did not ascertain. Perceiving that nothing was to be done to the west, they stood over to Cape Elizabeth, under which they fetched at about five in the afternoon.

Between Cape Elizabeth and a lofty promontory, which they named Cape Bede, is a bay in which there appeared two snug harbours. They stood into this bay, and might have anchored there in twenty-three fathoms' water; but the commodore having no such intention, tacked, and stood to the westward, with a very strong gale, accompanied with rain and hazy weather. The gale abated the next morning, and about three o'clock, in the afternoon the weather cleared up, Cape Douglas bearing south-west by west, and the depth of water being forty fathoms over a rocky bottom.

The coast from Cape Bede tended north-east by east, with a

chain of mountains inland, in the same direction. On the coast the land was woody, and there appeared to be some commodious harbours. They had the mortification, however, to discover low land in the middle of the inlet, extending from north-north-east to north-east by east; but, as it was supposed to be an island, they were not much discouraged. About this time they got a light breeze, and steered to the westward of this low land, as, in that direction, there was no appearance of obstruction. The soundings were from thirty to twenty-five fathoms.

In the morning of the 28th, having but little wind, the ship drove to the southward, and in order to stop her, they dropped the kedge-anchor, with an eight inch hawser, but in bringing the ship up, lost both the hawser and the anchor. They brought the ship up, however, with one of the bowers, and spent a considerable part of the day in sweeping for them, but without effect. They were now in the latitude of 59 deg. 51 min.; the low land extended from north-east to south-east, the nearest part distant about two leagues. The land on the western shore was distant about seven leagues. A strong tide set to the southward out of the inlet; it was the ebb, and ran almost four knots in an hour. At ten o'clock it was low water. Great quantities of seaweed, and some drift-wood, were carried out with the tide. Though the water had become thick, and resembled that in rivers, they were encouraged to proceed, by finding it as salt as the ocean, even at low water. The strength of the flood-tide was three knots, and the stream continued to run up till four o'clock in the afternoon.

Having a calm the whole day, they did not move till eight o'clock in the evening, when, with a light breeze at east, they stood to the north up the inlet. The wind soon after veered to the north, increased to a fresh gale, and blew in squalls, with some rain. But this did not hinder them from plying up while the flood continued, which was till the next morning at near five o'clock. They had from thirty-five to twenty-four fathoms water. They anchored about two leagues from the eastern shore, where the latitude was 60 deg. 8 min.; some low land, which they supposed to be an island, lying under the western shore, distant between three and four leagues.

The weather having now become fair and clear, they could see any land within the horizon, when nothing was visible to obstruct their progress in a north-east direction. But a ridge of mountains appeared on each side, rising behind each other without any separation. Captain Cook supposed it to be low water about ten o'clock, but the ebb ran down till almost twelve. Two columns of smoke were now visible on the eastern shore, a certain sign that inhabitants were near. They weighed at one in the afternoon, and plied up under double-reefed topsails, having a strong gale at north-east.

They stretched over to the western shore, intending to have

'ak
fron
of a
nine
part
O
weig
cont
anch
eastw
Tw
noon.
the d
the str
to ap
but to
said;
shore,
Capt
convey
Thes
Prince
noes w
visitors
jet black
a large
in the S
shore, v
inhabite
The sh
left, they
fetched u
on the op
about fo
looked fr
was thus
against s
to be the
They k
safest, an
two or th
eight o'cl
north-east
ebb.
Until th
saltness, b
which is in
displayed
ebb, was n

taken shelter till the gale should cease: but falling suddenly from forty fathoms' water into twelve, and seeing the appearance of a shoal, they stretched back to the eastward, and anchored in nineteen fathoms' water, under the eastern shore; the north-west part of which ended in a bluff point.

On the 30th of May, about two o'clock, in the morning, they weighed anchor again, the gale having much abated, but still continuing contrary, they plied up till near seven, and then anchored in nineteen fathoms' water, under the shore to the eastward.

Two canoes, with a man in each, came off to the ship about noon, nearly from that part where they had seen the smoke the day before. It cost them some labour to paddle across the strong tide, and they hesitated a little before they ventured to approach the ships. One of them was very loquacious, but to no purpose, for our men did not understand a syllable he said; while he was talking he kept pointing continually to the shore, which was supposed to be an invitation to go thither. Captain Cook made them a present of a few trifles which he conveyed to them from the quarter gallery.

These people greatly resembled those that had been seen in Prince William's Sound, both in dress and person; their canoes were also constructed in the same manner. One of the visitors seemed to have no beard, and his face was painted of a jet black; the other, who was older, was not painted, but he had a large beard, and a countenance like the common sort of people in the Sound. Smoke was this day seen upon the flat western shore, whence they inferred that these lower spots only are inhabited.

The ships weighed when the flood made, and the canoes having left, they stood over to the western shore, with a fresh gale, and fetched under the point above mentioned. This, with the point on the opposite shore, contracted the breadth of the channel to about four leagues, through which ran a prodigious tide. It looked frightful to persons, who were ignorant whether the water was thus agitated by the stream, or by the dashing of the waves against sands or rocks. Meeting, with no shoal, it was concluded to be the former, but they afterwards found themselves mistaken.

They kept the western shore aboard, it appearing to be the safest, and had a depth of thirteen fathoms near the shore, and two or three miles off, upwards of forty. In the evening, at eight o'clock, they anchored under a point of land, which bore north-east, distant about three leagues, and lay there during the ebb.

Until they got thus far, the water retained an equal degree of saltness, both at high and low water, and was as salt as that which is in the ocean; but now the marks of a river evidently displayed themselves. The water, which was taken up this ebb, was much fresher than any they had tasted, whence they

concluded that they were in a large river, and not in a strait which had a communication with the northern seas. But, having proceeded thus far, they were anxious to have stronger proofs, and, therefore, in the morning of the 31st, they weighed with the flood, and drove up with the tide, having but little wind.

They were visited about eight o'clock, by many of the natives, in one large, and several small canoes. The latter carried only one person each, and some of their paddles had a blade at each end, like those of the Esquimaux. Men, women, and children, were contained in the large canoes. At some distance from the ship they exhibited, on a long pole, a kind of leathern frock, which was interpreted to be a sign of their peaceable intentions. They conveyed this frock into the ship, as an acknowledgment for some trifles which the commodore had given them.

No difference appeared either in the persons, dress, or canoes of these people, and the natives of Prince William's Sound, except that the small canoes were not so large as those of the Sound, and carried only one man.

Our men bartered with them for some of their fur dresses, made of the skins of animals, particularly those of sea-otters, martins, and hares: they also procured a few of their darts, and a supply of salmon and halibut, and gave them, in exchange for these, some old clothes, beads, and pieces of iron.

They were already possessed of large iron knives, and glass-beads of a sky-blue colour, such as they saw among the inhabitants of Prince William's Sound. The latter, as well as those which they received of our men, they seemed to value highly. But they were particularly earnest in asking for large pieces of iron, to which they gave the name of *goone*; though with them, as well as with their neighbours in the Sound, one word seemed to have many significations. Their language is certainly the same, the words *oonaka*, *keeta*, and *naema*, and a few others which were frequently used in Prince William's Sound, were also commonly used by this new tribe. After passing about two hours between the two ships, they retired to the western shore.

The ships anchored at nine o'clock, in sixteen fathoms' water, and almost two leagues from the western shore, the ebb being already begun. It ran but three knots an hour at its greatest strength, and fell after they had anchored, twenty-one feet upon a perpendicular. The weather was alternately clear and misty, with drizzling rain. When it was clear, they perceived low land between the mountains on the eastern shore, bearing east from the station of the ships, which they concluded to be islands between them and the main-land. They also beheld low land to the northward, which appeared to extend from the mountains on one side to those on the other; and, at low water, large shoals were seen, stretching out from this low land, from some of which

they were not far distant. They doubted, from these appearances, whether the inlet did not take an easterly direction through the above opening, or whether that opening was only a branch of it, the main channel continuing its northern direction. The chain of mountains on each side of it strongly countenanced the latter supposition.

To be satisfied of these particulars, Captain Cook dispatched two boats, and when the flood tide made, followed with the two ships; but it being a dead calm, and having a strong tide, they anchored, after driving about ten miles. At the lowest of the ebb, the water at and near the surface was perfectly fresh, though retaining a considerable degree of saltness if taken above a foot below it. Besides this, they had many other convincing proofs of its being a river; such as thick, muddy water, low shores, trees, and rubbish of various kinds, floating backwards and forwards with the tide. In the afternoon they received another visit from the natives, in several canoes, who trafficked for some time with our people, without so much as attempting any dishonest action.

At two o'clock in the morning of the first of June, the master, who commanded the two boats, returned, informing Captain Cook, that he had found the inlet or river, contracted to one league in breadth, and that it took a northerly course through this narrow part, which he found from seventeen to twenty fathoms' deep. While the stream ran down, the water was perfectly fresh, but it became brackish when it ran up, and very much so towards high-water.

He went ashore upon an island, between this branch and that to the east, and saw some currant bushes, and some other fruit trees and bushes that were unknown to him. About three leagues to the northward of this search, he saw another separation in the eastern chain of mountains, through which he supposed it probable the river took a north-east direction; but this, perhaps, was only another branch, and the main channel continued in a northern direction between the two chains of mountains.

All hopes of finding a passage were no longer entertained; but as the ebb was spent, and the ships were unable to return against the tide, Captain Cook took advantage of the latter, to get a nearer view of the eastern branch, in order to determine whether the low land on the east side was an island or not. For this purpose he weighed with the first of the flood, and stood over for the eastern shore. At eight o'clock a breeze sprung up in an opposite direction to their course, so that they despaired of reaching the entrance of the river. The commodore, therefore dispatched two boats, under the command of Lieutenant King, to make such observations as might enable him to form some tolerable idea of the nature of the river.

The ships anchored about ten o'clock, in nine fathoms' water.

The commodore, observing the strength of the tide to be so great that the boats could not make head against it, made a signal for them to return before they had proceeded half way to the entrance of the river. The principal information gained by this tide's work, was, that all the low land which they had imagined to be an island, or islands, was one continued tract from the banks of the great river to the foot of the mountains, to which it joined, terminating at the south entrance of this eastern branch, which the commodore denominated the River Turnagain. The low land begins on the north-side of this river, and stretches out from the foot of the mountains down to the banks of the great river, forming, before the river Turnagain, a large bay, having from twelve to five fathoms' water.

After entering the bay the flood set very strong into the river Turnagain, and the ebb came out with still greater force, the water falling twenty feet upon a perpendicular. From these circumstances, it plainly appeared that a passage was not to be expected by this side river, any more than by the main branch. But, as the water at ebb, though much fresher, retained a considerable degree of saltness, it is probable, that both these branches are navigable by ships much farther than they examined them; and that a very extensive inland communication lies open by means of this river and its several branches. They had traced it as high as the latitude of 61 deg. 30 min., and the longitude of 210 deg. which is upwards of seventy leagues from its entrance, and saw no appearance of its source.

If the discovery of this great river* should hereafter prove useful to the present, or any future age, the time spent in it ought to be the less regretted. But to persons who had an object of greater magnitude in view, the delay thus occasioned was an essential loss. The season was far advanced; and it was now evident that the continent of North America extended much farther to the west, than they had reason to expect from the most approved charts. The commodore, however, had the satisfaction to reflect, that if he had not examined this very considerable inlet, speculative fabricators of geography would have assumed as a fact, that it had a communication with the sea to the north, or with Hudson's or Baffin's Bay to the east; and it would probably have been marked on future maps of the world, with as much appearance of precision, as the imaginary Straits of de Fuca and de Fonte.

In the afternoon, Mr. King was again sent with two armed boats, with orders from Captain Cook to land on the south-east side of the river, where he was to display the flag, and, in his Majesty's name, to take possession of the country and the river. He was also ordered to bury a bottle in the earth, containing some pieces of English coin of 1772, and a paper, whereon were

* Captain Cook having here left a blank, Lord Sandwich very judiciously directed it to be called *Cook's River*.

the tide to be so
against it, made a
ed half way to
ation gained by
h they had ima-
ined tract from
e mountains, to
e of this eastern
iver Turnagain,
r, and stretches
e banks of the
, a large bay,

g into the river
eater force, the
From these
was not to be
main branch,
retained a con-
at both these
they examined
tion lies open
. They had
nin., and the
leagues from

reafter prove
e spent in it
o had an ob-
easioned was
; and it was
ca extended
expect from
er, had the
is very con-
would have
h the sea to
east; and it
f the world,
ary Straits

two armed
south-east
and, in his
l the river.
containing
reon were

, directed it

written the names of the ships, and the date of the discovery. The ships, in the mean time, were got under sail. The wind still blew fresh easterly, but they had not been long under way before a calm ensued; and the flood-tide meeting them, they found it necessary to anchor in six fathoms' water; the point where Mr. King landed bearing south, at the distance of two miles. This point of land was named Point Possession.

On Mr. King's return, he informed the commodore, that when he approached the shore, eighteen or twenty of the natives made their appearance, with their arms extended; an attitude, he supposed, meant to signify their peaceable disposition, and to convince him that they were without weapons. On Mr. King and his attendants landing with muskets in their hands, they seemed alarmed, and requested (by expressive signs) that they would lay them down. This was immediately complied with, and then Mr. King and his party were permitted to walk up to them, when they appeared to be very sociable and cheerful.

They had with them several dogs, and a few pieces of fresh salmon. Mr. Law, surgeon of the *Discovery*, happening to be one of the party, purchased one of the dogs, and taking it toward the boat, shot it dead in their sight. At this they seemed exceedingly surprised; and not thinking themselves safe in such company, they walked away; but it presently appeared, that they had concealed their spears and other weapons in the bushes close behind them. Mr. King informed them, that the ground was swampy, and the soil poor and light. It, however, produced some pines, alders, birch, and willows; some rose and currant bushes, and a little grass; but there was not a plant in flower to be seen.

As soon as it was high-water, the ships weighed anchor, and, with a faint breeze, stood over to the west-shore, where the return of the flood obliged them to anchor early next morning. Soon after they were visited by several of the natives in canoes, who bartered their skins, and afterwards parted with their garments, many of them returning quite naked. Amongst others they brought a great quantity of the skins of white rabbits and red foxes, but only two or three skins of otters. Our men also purchased some pieces of halibut and salmon. The natives preferred iron to every thing else offered them in exchange: the lip ornaments were less in fashion among them than at Prince William's Sound; but those which pass through the nose were worn frequent, and, in general, considerably longer. They had likewise more embroidered work on their garments, quivers, knife-cases, and many other articles.

The ships weighed at half-past ten, and plied down the river with a gentle breeze at south; when, by the inattention of the man at the lead, the *Resolution* struck, and stuck fast upon a bank, nearly in the middle of the river. This bank was no doubt the occasion of that strong agitation of the stream, which had

been observed when turning up the river. They had twelve feet depth of water about the ship, at the lowest of the ebb, but the bank was dry in other parts.

When the *Resolution* came aground, Captain Cook made a signal for the *Discovery* to anchor. He was afterwards informed, that she had been almost ashore on the west-side of the bank. About five o'clock in the afternoon, as the flood-tide came in, the ship floated off without sustaining any damage, or occasioning the least trouble. They then stood over to the west shore, where they anchored in deep water, to wait for the ebb, as the wind was still contrary.

At ten o'clock at night they weighed again with the ebb; and about five the next morning, (the 3rd of June) when the tide was finished, they cast anchor on the west shore, about two miles below the bluff point. When they were in this station, a good many of the natives came off, and attended them all the morning. Their company was very acceptable, for they brought with them a large quantity of fine salmon, which they exchanged for some trifles. Most part of it was split and ready for drying, and several hundred weight of it was procured for the two ships.

The mountains for the first time since entering the river, were free from clouds, and our men perceived a volcano in one of those on the western side. Its latitude is 60 deg. 23 min.; and the first high mountain to the north of Mount St. Augustin. The volcano is near the summit, and on that part that is next the river. It did not now make any striking appearance, emitting only a white smoke, but no fire. The wind remaining southerly, they continued to tide it down the river; and on the morning of the fifth, arriving at the place where they had lost the kedg-anchor, they attempted to recover it, but without success.

Before departing from this place, they were again visited by some of the natives, in six canoes, from the eastern shore. For half an hour they remained at a small distance from the ships, gazing at them with a kind of silent surprise, without uttering a syllable to them, or to each other. At length they took courage, came along-side, and began to barter with our men; nor did they leave them till they had parted with every thing they had brought with them, consisting of a few skins and some salmon.

It may not be improper to remark, that all the people met with in this river had a striking resemblance to those who inhabit Prince William's Sound, but differed most essentially from those of Nootka, both in their persons and language. The language of these is rather more guttural; but, like the others, they speak strongly and distinct, in words which seem sentences.

The points of their spears and knives are made of iron; some of the former, indeed, are made of copper. Their spears resemble our spontoons; and their knives, for which they have sheaths, are of considerable length. These, with a few glass-beads, are the only things they saw amongst them that were not

of their own manufacture. They had already hazarded conjectures from whence they derive their foreign articles, and may observe, that if it were probable that they found their way to them from such of their neighbours with whom the Russians may have established a trade, it may be asserted, that the Russians themselves have never been amongst them, for if that had been the case, they would not then have found them clothed in such valuable skins as those of the sea-otter.

A very beneficial fur-trade might certainly be carried on with the natives of this vast coast: but without a northern passage, it is too remote for Great Britain to be benefitted by such commerce. It should, however be observed, that the only valuable skins on this west-side of North America, are those of the sea-otter. All their other skins were of an inferior quality; and it should be farther observed, that the greater part of the skins which was purchased from them, were made up into garments. Some of these, indeed, were in good condition, but others were old and ragged, and all of them very filthy. But, as skins are used by these people only for clothing themselves, they, perhaps, are not at the trouble of dressing more of them than they require for this purpose. This is probably the chief use for which they kill the animals, for the sea and the rivers seem to supply them with the principal articles of food. But if they were once habituated to a constant trade with foreigners, such an intercourse would increase their wants, by acquainting them with new luxuries; to be enabled to purchase these, they would become more assiduous in procuring skins; a plentiful supply of which might doubtless be obtained in this country.

The tide is very considerable in this river, and contributes very much to facilitate the navigation of it. In the stream it is high-water between two and three o'clock, on the days of the new and full moon; and the tide rises between three and four fathoms. The mouth of the river being situated in a corner of the coast, the flood that comes from the ocean is forced into it by both shores, which swells the tide to a greater height than at other parts of this coast.

The ebb-tide making in favour of the ships, they weighed, and with a gentle breeze at south-west, plied down the river. The flood, however, obliged them to anchor again; at length, about one o'clock the next morning, a fresh breeze sprung up at west, with which they got under sail, passed the Barren Islands about eight, and at noon Cape St. Hermogenes bore south-south-east, eight leagues distant. They intended to go through the passage between the island of that name and the main land; but the wind soon after failed, and they had baffling airs from the eastward; so that the commodore abandoned the design of carrying the ships through that passage.

At this time they saw several columns of smoke on the continent, northward of the passage; which were probably meant as

signals to attract them thither. The land forms a bay here, a low, rocky island lying off the north-west point of it. Some other islands of a similar appearance are scattered along the coast between this place and Point Banks.

About eight in the evening, *St. Hermogenes* extended from south half east to south-south-east; and the rocks bore south-east, distant three miles. Here they had forty fathoms' water, and caught several halibut with hooks and lines. They passed the rocks, and bore up to the southward about midnight; and, on the 7th, at noon, *St. Hermogenes* bore north, at the distance of four leagues. The southernmost point of the main land lay north half west, five leagues distant.

The latitude of this promontory is 58 deg. 15 min. and its longitude 207 deg. 24 min. It was named after the day, *Cape Whitsunday*; and a large bay, to the west of it, was called *Whitsuntide Bay*.

The wind, which had been at north-east, shifted to the southward about two in the afternoon. The weather was gloomy and the air cold. At midnight they stood in for the land, and at seven o'clock of the morning of the eighth, they were within four miles of it, and less than two miles from some sunken rocks, bearing west-south-west. Here they anchored in thirty-five fathoms' water. In standing in for this coast, they passed the mouth of *Whitsuntide Bay*, and perceived land all around the bottom of it; therefore the land must either be connected, or the points lock in behind each other; the former conjecture appears to be the most probable. There are some small islands to the west of the bay. To the southward the sea-coast is low, with projecting, rocky points, having small inlets between them. Upon the coast there was no wood, and but little snow; but the mountains at some distance inland, were wholly covered with snow. They were now in the latitude of 57 deg. 52½ min. The land here forming a point, it was named *Cape Greville*. Its latitude is 57 deg. 33 min. and its longitude 209 deg. 15 min. It is fifteen leagues distant from *St. Hermogenes*.

The 9th, 10th, and 11th, they had constant misty weather, with drizzling rain, so that they seldom had a sight of the coast; they had a gentle breeze of wind, and the air was raw and cold. They continued to ply up the coast, making boards of six or eight leagues each.

In the evening of the 12th, the fog clearing up, they saw the land about twelve leagues distant, bearing west; and they stood in for it early the next morning. At noon, they were within three miles of it; an elevated point, which was named *Cape Barnabas*, in the latitude of 57 deg. 13 min., bore north-north-east, at the distance of about ten miles. They could not see the north-east extreme for the haze, but the point to the southward had an elevated summit, which terminated in two round hills, and was therefore called *Two-headed Point*. This part of the coast, in

which are several small bays, is composed of high hills and deep vallies. They could sometimes perceive the tops of other hills, beyond those which form the coast, which had a very barren appearance, though but little encumbered with snow. Not a tree or bush was to be seen upon it, and the land, in general, had a brownish hue.

They continued to ply to the south-west-by-west, and at six in the evening, being mid-way between Cape Barnabas, and Two-headed Point, two leagues from the shore, they had sixty-two fathoms' water. Here, a low point of land was observed, bearing south 69 deg. west. On the 14th, at noon, they were in latitude 56 deg. 49 min. The land seen the preceding evening, now appeared like two islands. They were up with the southernmost part of this island the next morning, and perceived it to be an island, which was named Trinity Island. Its greater extent, in the direction of east and west, is about six leagues. It has naked, elevated land at each end, and is low towards the middle. Its latitude is 56 deg. 36 min., and its longitude 205 deg. It is distant about three leagues from the continent, between which rocks and islands are interspersed. There seems, nevertheless, to be good passage and safe anchorage. They, at first, imagined that this was Behring's Foggy Island, but its situation is not agreeable to his chart.

At eight in the evening, they were within a league of the small islands above-mentioned. The westernmost point of the continent, now in view, they called Cape Trinity, it being a low point facing Cape Trinity Island. In this situation, they stood over for the island, intending to work between it and the main. In standing over, they met two men in a canoe, paddling from thence to the main; instead of approaching the ships, they seemed carefully to avoid them.

The wind inclining to the south, they expected it would soon be at south-east. Knowing, from experience, that a south-easterly wind, was here generally accompanied with a thick fog, they were afraid to venture between the island and the continent, lest they should not be able to accomplish the passage before night, or before the thick weather came on, when they should be under the necessity of anchoring, and lose the advantage of a fair wind. Induced by these reasons, they stretched out to sea, and passed two or three rocky islets, near the east of Trinity Island. Having weathered the island, they tacked about four in the afternoon, and steered west, southerly, with a gale at south-south-east; which veered to the south-east about midnight, and was attended with misty, rainy weather.

They expected from the course they steered during the night, to fall in with the continent in the morning, and would doubtless have seen it, if the weather had been clear. No land appearing at noon, and the gale increasing with a thick fog and rain, they steered west-north-west, under such sail as they could easily

haul to the wind with; being fully sensible of the danger, of running before a strong gale in a thick fog, in the vicinity of an unknown coast. It was, however, necessary to run some risk, when the wind favoured them; for clear weather they had found, was generally accompanied with westerly winds.

About three in the afternoon, land was perceived through the fog, bearing north-west, about three miles distant. Upon this they immediately hauled up south, close to the wind. The two courses were soon after split, so that they had others to bring to the yards; and several others of the sails received considerable damage. The gale abated, and the weather cleared up about nine, when they again saw the coast, about the distance of five leagues. The depth was a hundred fathoms' water.

The fog returned soon after, and was dispersed about four o'clock the next morning; when they found themselves in some degree surrounded by land; the continent, or that which they supposed to be the continent, extending from south-west to north-east, and some elevated land, bearing south-east about nine leagues distant. The extremity of the main, at the north-east, was the same point of land that they had fallen in with during the fog; it was named Foggy Cape, and lies in the latitude of 56 deg. 31 min.

Having had but little wind all-night, a breeze now sprung up at north-west; with this they stood to the southward, in order to make the land plainer that was seen in that direction. About nine o'clock they discovered it to be an island, nine leagues in circumference in the latitude of 56 deg. 10 min., and the longitude of 202 deg. 45 min. In the chart, it is named Foggy Island; it being reasonable to suppose, from its situation, that it is the island on which Behring bestowed the same appellation. Three or four islands bore north-by-west; a point, with three or four pinnacle rocks upon it, bore north-west-by-west, called Pinnacle Point, and a cluster of islets, south-south-east, about nine leagues from the coast. In the afternoon had little wind, and the progress was inconsiderable.

On Wednesday the 17th, they had gentle breezes between west and north-west; the weather was perfectly clear, and the air dry and sharp. At noon, the continent extended from south-west to north-by-east; the nearest part seven or eight leagues distant; a group of islands lying to the south-west, about the same distance from the continent.

The weather was clear and pleasant on the 18th, and it was calm great part of the day. There is probably, a continuation of the continent, between Foggy Cape and Trinity Island, which the thick weather prevented them from seeing.

The commodore having occasion to send a boat to the Discovery, one of the people in her shot a most beautiful bird, of the hawk kind. It was smaller than a duck, and the colour black, except that the forepart of the head was white; behind

each eye an elegant yellowish white crest arose; the bill and feet were red. The first they saw of these birds, was to the southward of Cape Hermogenes, after which they saw them daily, and sometimes in large flocks, as well as most of the sea birds, that are usually met with in the northern oceans, such as shags, gulls, puffins, sheer-waters, ducks, geese, and swans; and they seldom passed a day without seeing seals, whales, and other large fish.

In the afternoon, they got a light breeze southerly, and steered west for the channel, between the islands and the continent. At day-break the next morning, they were not far from it, and perceived several other islands, with those they had already seen, of various dimensions. But, between these islands, and those they had seen before, there appeared to be a clear channel, for which they steered; and at noon, their latitude was 55 deg. 18 min., in the narrowest part of the channel. Of this group of islands, the largest was now upon the left, and is called Kodiak, as they were afterwards informed. The commodore did not bestow a name upon any of the others, though he supposed them to be the same that Behring has named Schumagin's Islands.* Islands appeared to the southward, as far as an island could be seen. They begin in the longitude of 200 deg. 15 min. east, and extend about two degrees to the westward.

Most of these islands are tolerably high, but very barren and rugged, exhibiting very romantic appearances, and abounding with rocks and cliffs. There are several snug bays and coves about them, and some streams of fresh water descend from the elevated parts, but not a tree or bush was to be seen growing on the land. A good deal of snow still lay on many of them, and those parts of the continent, which appeared between the innermost islands, were quite covered with it.

By four o'clock in the afternoon, they had passed all the islands to the southward of them, and found thirty fathoms' water in the channel, and soon after they had got through it, the Discovery, which was two miles astern, fired three guns, and brought to, making a signal to speak with them. Captain Cook was much alarmed at this; for, as no apparent danger had been observed in the channel, he was apprehensive that the Discovery had sprung a leak, or met with some similar accident. A boat was immediately sent to her, which in a short time returned with Captain Clerke. He informed the commodore, that some natives, in three or four canoes, having followed the ship for some time, at last got under his stern, one of whom made many signs, taking off his cap, and bowing in the European manner. A rope being handed down from the ship, to this he fastened a thin wooden box, and, after he had made some

* *Decouvertes des Russes, par Muller, p. 262, 277.*

more gesticulations, the canoes dropped astern, and left the Discovery.

It was not imagined that the box contained any thing, till after the canoes had departed, when it was accidentally opened, and found to contain a piece of paper, carefully folded up, on which some writing appeared, which they supposed to be in the Russian language. To this paper was prefixed the date of 1778, and in the body of it there was a reference to the year 1776. Though unable to decipher the alphabet of the writer, Captain Cook was convinced, by his numerals, that others had preceded him, in visiting these dreary regions. Indeed, the hope of meeting with some of the Russian traders, could not but be highly satisfactory, to those who had been so long conversant with the savages of the Pacific Ocean, and of the continent of North America.

At first Captain Clerke imagined, that some Russians had been shipwrecked here, and that, seeing their ships, these unfortunate persons were induced thus to inform them of their situation. Deeply impressed with sentiments of humanity on this occasion, he was in hopes the Resolution would have stopped till they had time to join them, but no such idea occurred to Captain Cooke. If this had really been the case, he supposed that the first step such shipwrecked persons would have taken, in order to secure relief, would have been to send some of their people off to the ships in the canoes. He therefore, rather thought, that the paper contained a note of information, left by some Russian trader, who had lately visited these islands, to be delivered to any of his countrymen who should arrive, and that the natives, supposing our voyagers to be Russians, had brought off the note. Convinced of this, he inquired no further into the matter, but made sail, and steered to the westward.

They ran all night with a gentle breeze at north-east, and the next morning, at two, some breakers were seen within, at the distance of two miles; others were soon after seen a-head, and they were innumerable on the larboard bow, and also between the ships and the land. By holding a south course, they with difficulty, cleared them. These breakers were occasioned by rocks, many of which were above water; they are very dangerous, and extend seven leagues from land. They got on their outside about noon, when the latitude was 54 deg. 44 min., and their longitude 198 deg. The nearest land, was an elevated bluff point, and was named Rock Point; it bore north, seven or eight leagues distant; the westernmost part of the main, bore north-west; and a round hill, called Halibut Head, bore south-west, distant about thirteen leagues.

At noon, on the 21st, they made but little progress, having only faint winds and calms. Halibut Head, then bore north 24 deg. west, and the island on which it is, called Halibut Island, extended from north-by-east to north-west. This island is seven

leagues in circumference, and, except the head, is very low and barren; several small islands are near it, between which and the main, there appears to be a passage of the breadth of two or three leagues.

The ships were kept at such a distance from the continent, by the rocks and breakers, that Captain Cook had a very distant view of the coast between Halibut Island and Rock Point; but, could perceive the main land covered with snow, and particularly some hills, whose elevated tops, towered above the clouds, to a most stupendous height. A volcano was seen, on the most south-westerly of these hills, which perpetually threw up immense columns of black smoke; it is at no great distance from the coast, and is in the latitude of 54 deg. 48 min., and the longitude of 195 deg. 45 min. Its figure is a complete cone, and the volcano is at the summit of it; remarkable as it may appear, the wind, at the height to which the smoke of the volcano rose, often moved in an opposite direction to what it did at sea, even in a fresh gale.

Having three hours calm in the afternoon, upwards of a hundred halibuts were caught by our people, some of which weighed upwards of a hundred pounds, and none of them less than twenty. They were highly acceptable; they fished in thirty-five fathoms' water, about four miles distant from the shore, during which time they were visited by a man in a small canoe, who came from the large island. When he approached the ship, he uncovered his head and bowed, as the other had done who had visited the *Discovery* the preceding day.

That the Russians had some communications with these people was evident, not only from their politeness, but from the written paper already mentioned. They had now additional proof of it, for the new visitor had on a pair of green cloth breeches, and a jacket of black cloth, under the frock of his own country. He had with him a grey fox-skin, and some fishing implements; also a bladder, in which was some liquid, that they supposed to be oil; for he opened it, drank a mouthful, and then closed it up again.

His canoe was smaller than those they had seen before, though of the same construction; like those who had visited the *Discovery*, he used the double-bladed paddle. His features resembled those of Prince William's Sound, but he was perfectly free from any kind of paint; and his lip had been perforated in an oblique direction, though, at that time, he had not any ornament in it. Many of the words, so frequently used by the previous visitors in the Sound, were repeated to him, but he did not appear to understand any of them, owing either to his ignorance of the dialect, or their faulty pronunciation.

The weather was most cloudy and hazy, till the afternoon of the 22nd, when the wind shifted to the south-east, attended, as usual, with thick rainy weather. Before the fog, they saw no

part of the main land, except the volcano, and a neighbouring mountain, and steered west till seven, when, fearing they might fall in with the land in thick weather, they hauled to the southward, till two the next morning, and then bore away to the west. Their progress was but trifling, having but little wind, and that variable; at five o'clock in the afternoon, they had an interval of sun-shine, when they saw land, bearing north 59 deg. west.

On the 24th, at six in the morning, they saw the continent, and at nine it extended from north-east-by-east to south-west-by-west; the nearest part four leagues distant. The land to the south-west consisted of islands, being what they had seen the preceding night. In the evening, being about the distance of four leagues from the shore, and having little wind, they threw out their hooks and lines, but caught only two or three little cod.

They got an easterly breeze the next morning, and, with it, what was very uncommon, clear weather; insomuch, that they clearly saw the volcano, the other mountains, and all the main land under them. It extended from north-east-by-north, to north-west-half-west. Between this point and the islands a large opening appeared, for which they steered, till land was seen beyond it; and, though they did not perceive that this land joined the continent, a passage through the opening was very doubtful, as well as whether the land to the south-west was insular or continental. Unwilling to trust too much to appearances, they therefore steered to the southward, when, having got without all the land in sight, they steered west, the islands lying in that direction.

Three of them all of a good height, had been passed by eight o'clock; more were now seen to the westward. In the afternoon, the weather became gloomy, and afterwards turned to a mist, the wind blowing fresh at east. They therefore hauled to the wind to the southward till day-break, and then proceeded on their course to the west.

They derived but little advantage from day-light, the weather being so thick, that they could not discover objects at the distance of a hundred yards, but, as the wind was moderate, they ventured to run. About half an hour after four, the sound of breakers alarmed them on the larboard-bow; they found twenty-eight fathoms' water, and then twenty-five. They brought the ship to, and anchored in the last depth, the commodore ordering the *Discovery*, which was not far distant, to anchor also.

Some hours after, the fog being a little dispersed, they discovered the imminent danger they had escaped. They were three quarters of a mile from the north-east side of an island; two elevated rocks were about half a league from them, and from each other. Several breakers also appeared about them; and yet, Providence had safely conducted the ships through in the

dark, between these rocks, which they should not have attempted to have done in a clear day, and to so commodious an anchoring-place.

Being so near land, Captain Cook ordered a boat ashore to examine what it produced. When she returned in the afternoon, the officer who commanded her said he saw some grass, and other small plants, one of which had the appearance of purslain, but the islands produced neither trees nor shrubs.

The wind blew fresh at south, in the night, but in the morning was more moderate, and the fog in a great degree dispersed. They weighed at seven o'clock, and steered between the island near which they had anchored, and a small one not far from it. The breadth of the channel does not exceed a mile, and the wind failed before they could pass through it; they were therefore obliged to anchor, which they did in thirty-four fathoms' water. Land now presented itself in every direction. That to the south extended, in a ridge of mountains, to the south-west, which they afterwards found to be an island called Oonalashka.

Between this island and the land to the north, which was supposed to be a group of islands, there appeared to be a channel in a north-west direction. On a point west from the ship at the distance of three quarters of a mile, they perceived several natives and their habitations. To this place they saw two whales towed in, which it was supposed had just been killed. A few of the inhabitants occasionally came off to the ships, and engaged in a little traffic with our people, but never continued with them above a quarter of an hour at a time. They seemed remarkably shy, though it could readily be discovered they were not unacquainted with vessels similar, in some degree to theirs. Their manner displayed a degree of politeness, which had never been experienced among any of the savage tribes.

About one in the afternoon, being favoured with a light breeze, and the tide of flood, they weighed, and proceeded to the channel last mentioned, expecting, when they had passed through, either to find the land tend away to the northward, or that they should discover a passage out to sea to the west. They did not suppose themselves to be in an inlet of the continent, but among islands, and were right in their conjectures. Soon after they got under sail the wind veered to the north, and they were obliged to ply. The depth of water was from forty to twenty-seven fathoms. In the evening, the ebb made it necessary to anchor within three leagues of the last station. They weighed the next morning at day-break, and were wafted up the passage by a light breeze at south; after which they had variable airs in all directions. There was, however, a rapid tide in their favour, and the Resolution got through before the ebb made. The Discovery was not equally fortunate, for she was carried back, got into the race, and found a difficulty in getting clear of it.

Being now through the channel they found the land, on one side tending west and south-west, and that on the other side to north. This encouraged them to hope that the continent had taken a new direction in their favour. Being short of water, and expecting to be driven about in a rapid tide, without wind sufficient to govern the ship, they stood for a harbour on the south side of the passage, but were driven beyond it; and, that they might not be forced back through the passage, anchored near the southern shore, in twenty-eight fathoms' water, and out of the reach of the strong tide, though even here it ran five knots and a half in the hour.

While they lay here they were visited by several of the natives, each in a canoe. They bartered some fishing implements for tobacco. A young man among them overset his canoe while he was alongside of our boats. He was caught hold of by one of our people, but the canoe drifted, and being taken up by another was carried ashore. In consequence of this accident the youth was obliged to come into the ship, where he was invited into the cabin, and readily accepted the invitation, without any surprise or embarrassment. He had an upper garment resembling a shirt, made of the gut of a whale, or some other large sea-animal. Under this he had another of the same form, made of the skins of birds with the feathers on, curiously sewed together, the feathered side placed next the skin. It was patched with several pieces of silk stuff, and his cap was embellished with glass beads.

His clothes being wet, our men furnished him with some of their own, which he put on with as much readiness as any person could have done. From the behaviour of this youth, and that of several others, it evidently appeared, that these people were no strangers to Europeans, and to many of their customs. Something in our ships, however, greatly excited their curiosity, for such as had not canoes to bring them off, assembled on the neighbouring hills to have a view of them.

At low water they towed the ship into the harbour, where they anchored in nine fathoms' water, the *Discovery* arriving soon after. A boat was sent to draw the seine, but our men caught only a few trout and some other small fish. They had not long anchored before a native of the island brought another note on board, similar to that which had been given to Captain Clerke. He presented it to Captain Cook, but as it was written in the Russian language, neither he, nor any of the gentlemen could read it. As it could not be of any use to our voyagers, and might probably be of consequence to others, the commodore returned it to the bearer, accompanied with a few presents, for which he expressed his thanks, by making several low bows as he retired. On the 29th they saw along the shore a group of the natives of both sexes, seated on the grass, partaking of a repast of raw fish, which they seemed to relish exceedingly. They were detained by thick fogs and a contrary wind till the 2nd of

July
coun
The
nated
55 m
separ
broad
It nar
quarte
but no
On
with a
met w
one sid
other
north-e
group
preced
and co
which
eagues
astwar
erior in
which w
ne ship
and the
orth-eas
f land t
ent on t
onema
eg. 30 m
e cape,
mountain
ast 2 deg
terward
e coast
ey steer
g, when
nd a-hea
ro hours
med the
nd a-hea
st, and a
hich was
tended f
ing five
s 195 d
six in
ck sand

July, during which time they acquired some knowledge of the country, as well as of its inhabitants.

The harbour is called Samganoodha by the natives, and is situated on the north side of Oonalashka, the latitude being 53 deg. 55 min., the longitude 193 deg. 30 min., and in the strait which separates this island from those of the north. It is about a mile broad at the entrance, and runs in about four miles south by west. It narrows towards the head, the breadth there not exceeding a quarter of a mile. Plenty of good water may be procured here, but no wood of any kind.

On the 2nd of July, Captain Cook steered from Samganoodha, with a gentle breeze at south-south-east, to the northward, and met with nothing to obstruct him in that course. For, on the one side, the Isle of Oonalashka tended south-west, and, on the other no land was visible in a direction more northerly than north-east; the whole of which was a continuation of the same group of islands that they had fallen in with on the 25th of the preceding month. That which is situated before Samganoodha, and constitutes the north-eastern side of the passage through which they came, is denominated Oonella, and is about seven leagues in circumference. Another island, lying to the north-eastward of it bears the name of Acootan; it is considerably superior in size to Oonella, and has in it some very lofty mountains, which were at this time, covered with snow. It appeared that the ships might have gone very safely between these two islands and the continent, whose south-western point opened off the north-eastern point of Acootan, and proved to be the same point of land that they had seen when they left the coast of the continent on the 25th of June, to go without the islands. It is termed Wonomak by the natives, and is situated in the longitude of 102 deg. 30 min. east, and in the latitude of 54 deg. 30 min. north. Over the cape, which of itself, is high land, there is a round elevated mountain, at present covered with snow. This mountain bore east 2 deg. north, at six o'clock, in the afternoon, and, two hours afterwards, no land was to be seen. Concluding, therefore, that the coast of the continent had now inclined to the north-eastward, they steered the same course till one o'clock the following morning, when the watch stationed upon deck imagined they saw a head. Upon this they wore, and for the space of about two hours stood towards the south-west, after which they returned their course to the east north-east. At six they discovered a head, at the distance of about five leagues, bearing south-east, and advancing, descried more and more land, the whole of which was connected. At twelve o'clock, observed that it was tended from south-south-west to east, the part nearest to them being five or six leagues distant. The longitude at this time was 195 deg. 18 min. east, and latitude 55 deg. 21 min. north. At six in the afternoon they sounded, and found a bottom of black sand at the depth of forty-eight fathoms. They were now

four leagues from the land; and the eastern part in sight was in the direction of east south-east, appearing as an elevated, round hummock.

On Saturday, the 4th, at eight o'clock in the morning, saw the coast from south-south-west to east by south; and at intervals, could discern high land covered with snow behind it. Not long after it became calm; and being in thirty fathoms' water, they caught, with hook and line, a good number of excellent cod. At twelve they had an easterly breeze and clear weather; at which time they found themselves at about six leagues from the land, which extended from south by west to east by south; and the hummock, seen the preceding evening, bore south-west by south, at the distance of nine or ten leagues. A great, hollow swell from the west-south-westward, convinced them, that there was no main land in that direction near. They steered a northerly course till six o'clock in the afternoon, when the wind veering to the south-east, enabled them to steer east-north-east. The coast lay in this direction, and at twelve o'clock on the following day was at the distance of about four leagues.

They made but little progress on the 6th and 7th, as the wind was northerly. In the evening of the latter day, about eight o'clock, the depth of water was nineteen fathoms' and they were three or four leagues from the coast, which on Wednesday the 8th, extended from south-south-west to east by north, and was all low land, with a ridge of mountains behind it covered with snow. It is not improbable, that this low coast extends to a considerable distance towards the south-west; and that these places which were sometimes supposed to be inlets or bays, are nothing more than vallies between the mountains. This day they put their hooks and lines over, and caught plenty of fine cod.

On the 9th, in the morning, having a breeze at north-west, they steered east by north, in order to make a nearer approach to the coast. At noon, were at the distance of about two leagues from the land, which was observed to extend from south by east to east north-east; being all a low coast, with points projecting in several places, which, from the deck, had the appearance of islands; but from the mast-head, it was seen that low land connected them. They were now in the longitude of 201 deg. 33 min. east, and in the latitude of 57 deg. 49 min. north. In this situation the soundings were fifteen fathoms, over a bottom of fine, black sand.

In advancing towards the north-east, they had found that the depth of water gradually decreased, and the coast tended more and more northerly. The ridge of mountains behind it continued to lie in the same direction as those that were more westerly; so that the extent of the low land, between the coast and foot of the mountains, insensibly increased. Both the low and high grounds were totally destitute of wood; but were apparently

covered with a green turf, except the mountains, which were involved in snow.

As they proceeded along the coast with a light westerly breeze, the water shoaled gradually from fifteen to ten fathoms, though they were eight or ten miles distant from the shore. At eight o'clock in the evening, a lofty mountain, which had been some time in sight bore south-east by east, at the distance of twenty-one leagues. Several other mountains, forming a part of the same chain, and much farther distant, bore east 3 deg. north. The coast extended as far as north-east half north, where it seemed to terminate in a point, beyond which it was hoped and expected, that it would take a more easterly direction. But not long afterwards, they saw low land, that extended from behind this point, as far as north-west by west, where it was lost in the horizon, and behind it were discerned high land, appearing in hills detached from each other. Thus the fine prospect of getting to the northward vanished in an instant. They stood on till nine o'clock, and then the point before-mentioned was about one league distant, bearing north-east-half-east. Behind this point is a river, which, at its entrance, seemed to be a mile in breadth. The water appeared somewhat discoloured, as upon shoals; but a calm would have given it a similar aspect. It seemed to take a winding direction through the extensive flat which lies between the chain of mountains towards the south-east, and the hills to the north-westward. It doubtless abounds with salmon, as many of those fish were seen leaping in the sea before the entrance, and some were found in the maws of cod that we had caught. The mouth of this river, which was distinguished by the appellation of Bristol River, is situated in the longitude of 201 deg. 55 min. east, and in the latitude of 58 deg. 27 min. north.

At day-break, on the 10th, they made sail to the west-south-west, with a light breeze at north-east. About eleven o'clock, thinking that the coast towards the north-west terminated in a point, bearing north-west by west, the commodore steered for that point, having ordered the *Discovery* to keep a-head; but, before that vessel had run a mile, she made a signal for shoal water. At that very time they had the depth of seven fathoms; and before they could get the head of our ship the other way, they had less than five; but the *Discovery's* soundings were less than four fathoms. They now stood back to the north-east three or four miles, but observing that there was a strong tide setting to the west-south-west, that is, towards the shoal, they brought the ships to anchor in about ten fathoms, over sandy bottom. Two hours after they had cast anchor, the water had fallen upwards of two feet, which proved that it was the tide of ebb that came from the Bristol River.

In the afternoon, at four o'clock, the wind having shifted to the south-west, they weighed and made sail towards the south, several boats being occupied a-head in sounding. Having

passed over the south-end of the shoal, in six fathoms' water, they afterwards got into thirteen and fifteen; in which last depth they anchored at half-past eight; some part of the chain of mountains on the south-east shore being in sight, and bearing south-east half south; and the westernmost land on the other shore bearing north-west. In the course of this day, they descried high land, which bore north 60 deg. west, and which they supposed to be about twelve leagues distant. Weighed anchor the next morning, at two o'clock, with a gentle breeze at south-west by west, and plied to windward till nine; when judging the flood tide to be now against them, they anchored in twenty-four fathoms' water. At one in the afternoon the fog, which had this morning prevailed, dispersing, and the tide making in their favour, weighed again, and plied to the south-westward. Towards the evening, the wind was variable, and there was some thunder. They had heard none before, from the time of their arrival on the coast; and that which they now heard was at a great distance. The wind setting again in the south-west quarter, in the morning of Sunday, the 12th, they steered a north-west course, and, at ten o'clock, saw the continent. At noon, it extended north-east by north, to north-north-west a quarter west; and an elevated hill bore north-north-west, ten leagues distant. This was found to be an island, to which, from its figure, Captain Cook gave the name of Round Island. It lies in the latitude of 58 deg. 37 min. north, and in the longitude of 20 deg. 6 min. east, and is seven miles from the continent. At nine in the evening, having steered a northerly course to within three leagues of the shore, they tacked in fourteen fathoms' water, the extremities of the coast bearing east-south-east half east, and west.

The wind veering to the north-west, enabled them to stretch along the shore till two the next morning, when they suddenly got into six fathoms' water, being then six miles from the land. After they had edged off a little, their depth of water gradually increased; and, at twelve o'clock, their soundings were twenty fathoms. Round Island, at this time, bore north, 5 deg. east; and the western extremity of the coast north 16 deg. west, seven leagues distant. It is an elevated point, to which the appellation of Calm Point was given, from their having calm weather while they were off it. To the north-west of Round Island, are two or three hillocks, which had an insular appearance; and perhaps they may be islands, for they had but a distant prospect of the coast in this place.

They advanced but slowly on the 14th and 15th, having little wind, and, at times, a very thick fog. The soundings were from twenty-six to fourteen fathoms; and they had pretty good success in fishing, for they caught plenty of cod, and some flat fish. On Thursday the 16th, at five in the morning, the fog clearing up, they found themselves nearer the shore than they expected. Calm Point bore north 72 deg. east, and a point, eight leagues

from it, in a westerly direction, bore north 3 deg. east, only three miles distant. Between these two points, the coast forms a bay, in some parts of which the land was hardly visible from the mast-head. There is another bay on the north-western side of the last-mentioned point, between it and a high promontory, which now bore north 36 deg. west, at the distance of sixteen miles. About nine o'clock, Captain Cook dispatched Lieutenant Williamson to this promontory, with orders to go ashore, and observe what direction the coast took beyond it, and what was the produce of the country; which, when viewed from the ships, had but a sterile aspect. They here found the flood-tide setting strongly to the north-west, along the coast. At twelve o'clock it was high-water, and they anchored in twenty-four fathoms' water, at the distance of twelve miles from the shore. At five in the afternoon, the tide making in their favour, they weighed, and drove with it, there being no wind.

Mr. Williamson, at his return, reported, that he had landed on the point, and, having ascended the highest hill, found, that the most distant part of the coast in sight bore nearly north. He took possession of the country in the name of his Britannic Majesty, and left on the hill a bottle, containing a paper, on which the names of the ships, and of their commanders, and the date of the discovery were inscribed. The promontory, which he named Cape Newenham, is a rocky point of considerable height, situated in the longitude of 197 deg. 36 min. east, and in the latitude of 58 deg. 42 min. north. Over, or within it, two lofty hills rise one behind the other; of which the innermost, or easternmost, is the highest. The country, as far as Mr. Williamson could see, produces neither tree nor shrub. The hills are naked; but, on the lower grounds, grew grass and plants of various kinds, very few of which were at this time in flower. He saw no other animal but a doe and fawn; and a dead sea-horse or cow upon the beach. Of the latter animal they had lately seen a great many.

As the coast takes a northerly direction from Cape Newenham, that cape is the northern boundary of the extensive bay and gulph, lying before the river Bristol, which, in honour of the admiral Earl of Bristol, received from the commodore the denomination of Bristol Bay. Cape Ooneemak forms the southern limit of this bay; and is eighty-two leagues distant, in the direction of south-south-west, from Cape Newenham.

A light breeze springing up about eight o'clock in the evening, and settling at south-south-east, the ships steered to the north-west, and north-north-west, round Cape Newenham; which, at twelve the following day, was four leagues distant, bearing south by east. Their soundings, at this time, were seventeen fathoms; the most advanced land towards the north bore north 30 deg. east; and the nearest part of the coast was three leagues and a half distant. During the whole afternoon, there was but little

wind; so that, by ten o'clock in the evening, they had only proceeded three leagues on a northerly course.

They steered north by west till eight o'clock the next morning, (Saturday, the 18th), when the depth of water suddenly decreasing to seven and five fathoms, they brought to, till a boat from each of the ships was sent a-head to sound, and then steered to the north-east. At noon, they had deepened the water to seventeen fathoms. Cape Newenham was now eleven or twelve leagues distant, bearing south nine deg. east; the north-east extremity of the land in sight bore north 66 deg. east; and the distance of the nearest shore was four or five leagues. The present latitude was 59 deg. 16 min. north. Between this latitude and Cape Newenham, the coast is composed of low land and hills, and seemed to form several bays.

Before one o'clock, the boats a-head made the signal of shoal water; they had, indeed, only two fathoms, and, at the same time, the ships were in six fathoms' water. By hauling more to the north, they continued nearly in the same depth till between five and six o'clock, when the boats finding less and less water, Captain Cook made the signal to the Discovery, which was then a-head, to cast anchor, and both ships soon came to. In bringing up the Resolution, her cable parted at the clinch, so that they were obliged to make use of the other anchor, and rode in six fathoms' water, over a bottom of sand, at the distance of four or five leagues from the continent; Cape Newenham bearing south, sixteen or seventeen leagues distant. The farthest hills they could see to the north, bore north-east by east; but there was low land stretching out from the more elevated land, as far as north-by-east. Without this was a shoal of stones and sand, that was dry at half ebb. The two masters having been sent, each in a boat, to sound between the shoal and the coast, reported, on their return, that there was a channel, in which the soundings were six and seven fathoms, but that it was rather narrow and intricate. It was attempted at low water to get a hawser round the lost anchor, but they did not succeed then: however, being resolved not to leave it behind, whilst there was a probability of recovering it, they persevered in their endeavours, and at last succeeded in the evening of the 20th. While thus occupied, the commodore ordered Captain Clerke to dispatch his master in a boat, to search for a passage in a south-west direction. He accordingly did so, but no channel was to be found in that quarter; nor did it appear that there was any other way to get clear of the shoals, than by returning by the same track in which they had entered. For, though by following the channel they were now in, they might perhaps have got farther down the coast; and though possibly this channel might have carried them at last to the northward, clear of the shoals, yet the attempt would have been attended with extreme hazard; and in case of ill success, there would have been a considerable

loss of
sons
brought

The
tions,
59 deg
the co
posed
a low
flood s
falls fi
to be h

At th
a gentl
south,
withstan
returnin
obliged
that had
seven A
which th
they hall
understo
near eno
to them.
and a tra
who got v
&c. in e
offered th
those tha
their lips
well clot
wholly un
the use of
any foreig
This, ind
wooden h
however,
it seemed

The ha
only a few
head, they
to be of
from them
with trapp
so as to co
it is proba
northern l
it under th

loss of time that they could not conveniently spare. These reasons induced the commodore to return by the way which had brought them in, and thus avoid the shoals.

The longitude of the ships' present station, by lunar observations, was 197 deg. 45 min. and 48 sec. east, and the latitude 59 deg. 37 min. and 30 sec. north. The most northern part of the coast that could be discerned from this station, was supposed to lie in the latitude of 60 deg. It formed to appearance, a low point, which received the name of Shoal Ness; the tide of flood sets to the north, and the ebb to the south: it rises and falls five or six feet upon a perpendicular; and it is calculated to be high water at eight o'clock, on the full and change days.

At three in the morning of the 21st, they weighed anchor with a gentle breeze at north-north-west, and steered back to the south, having three boats a-head employed in sounding. Notwithstanding this precaution, they met with greater difficulty in returning than they had found in advancing; and were at last obliged to anchor, to avoid the danger of running upon a shoal that had only a depth of five feet. While they lay here, twenty-seven Americans, each in a separate canoe, came off to the ships, which they approached with great caution; as they advanced, they hallooed and opened their arms; thereby intimating as was understood, their pacific intentions. Some of them, at last, came near enough to receive a few trifling articles, which were thrown to them. This encouraged the rest of them to venture alongside; and a traffic quickly commenced between them and our people, who got wooden vessels, bows, darts, arrows, dresses of skins, &c. in exchange for which the natives accepted whatever was offered them. They appeared to be the same sort of people with those that had been met with all along this coast, and wore in their lips and noses the same kind of ornaments, but were not so well clothed, and were far more dirty. They seemed to be wholly unacquainted with any civilized nation, were ignorant of the use of tobacco, nor did our men observe in their possession any foreign article, unless a knife may be considered as such. This, indeed, was only a piece of common iron fitted in a wooden handle, so as to answer the purpose of a knife; they, however, knew the use and value of this instrument so well, that it seemed to be almost the only article they were desirous of.

The hair of most of them was shaved, or cut short off, leaving only a few locks on one side or behind; as a covering for their head, they wore a hood of skins, and a bonnet, which appeared to be of wood. One part of their dress, which was procured from them, was a kind of a girdle, very neatly made of skin, with trappings depending from it, and passing betwixt the thighs, so as to conceal the adjacent parts. From the use of this girdle it is probable that they sometimes go naked, even in this high northern latitude; for it can scarcely be supposed that they wear it under their other clothing. Their canoes were made of skins,

like those lately seen, but they were broader, and the hole wherein the person sits was wider than in any of those they had before met with. The boats returning from sounding, seemed to alarm them, so that they all departed sooner than perhaps they otherwise would have done.

The ships did not get clear of the shoals before the evening of Wednesday, the 22nd; and then they durst not venture to steer towards the west during the night, but spent it off Cape Newenham; and at day-break, on the 23rd, they stood to the north-westward, the *Discovery* being ordered to lead. Before they had run two leagues, the soundings decreased to six fathoms. Being apprehensive, that if they continued this course, they should meet with less and less water, they hauled to the south, with a fresh, easterly breeze. This course gradually brought them into eighteen fathoms' water, upon which they ventured to steer a little westerly, and afterwards due west, when at length they found twenty-six fathoms. At noon, on the 24th, the longitude, by observation, was 194 deg. 22 min. east, and latitude 58 deg. 7 min. north. About three leagues to the west of this situation, the soundings were twenty-eight fathoms, and they then steered west-north-west, the depth of water gradually increasing to thirty-four fathoms; they should have steered more northerly, but the wind having veered in that direction prevented them.

In the evening of Saturday the 25th, having but little wind, and an exceedingly thick fog, they let go the anchors in thirty fathoms, the longitude being at that time, 191 deg. 37 min. east, and latitude 58 deg. 29 min. north. At six o'clock the next morning, the weather clearing up a little, they weighed, and, with a gentle breeze at east, steered to the northward, the depth of water being from twenty-five to twenty-eight fathoms. After running nine leagues upon this course, the wind again veered to the north, so that the ships were obliged to steer more westerly. The weather, for the most part, continued foggy till toward noon on the 28th, when they had clear sunshine for a few hours, during which the officers made several lunar observations. The mean result of these, reduced to noon, at which time the latitude was 59 deg. 55 min. north, gave 190 deg. 6 min. east longitude, and the time-keeper gave 189 deg. 59 min.

Continuing their westerly course, they discovered land at four in the morning of the 29th, bearing north-west-by-west, distant six leagues. They stood toward it till half-past ten, when they tacked in twenty-four fathoms, being then a league from the land, which bore north-north-west: it was the south-east extremity, and formed a perpendicular cliff of great height, on which account Captain Cook gave it the name of Point Upright. It stands in the longitude of 187 deg. 30 min. east, and in the latitude of 60 deg. 17 min. north. More land was seen to the westward of this point, and, at a clear interval, they discerned

another
seem
observed
hawk

The
ships
sufficient
the land
islands
Archipelago
of the

On
shower
the 3rd
their number
sixteen
longitude

Between
surgeon
a consultation
sible, in
skilled
knowledge
doubtless
in the course
to a latitude
many variations
of the distance
breathed
distance
the commander
whom he
Anderson
the *Discovery*
Samuel,
pointed to

On W
ran down
in seven
Mr. King
hoped to
westward
view was
coast of
a low point
north-west
but the
perceived
The land

another portion of high land, bearing west by south, which seemed to be perfectly separated from the other. They here observed an amazing number of birds, such as guillemots, hawks, &c.

There were baffling light winds all the afternoon, so that the ships made but little progress, and the weather was not sufficiently clear to enable our voyagers to determine the extent of the land before them. It was conjectured to be one of the many islands laid down in Mr. Stæhlin's map of the New Northern Archipelago, and they every moment expected to descry more of them.

On Sunday, the 2nd of August, variable light winds, with showers of rain, prevailed the whole day. In the morning of the 3rd, the wind settled in the south-east quarter, they resumed their northward course. At twelve o'clock the soundings were sixteen fathoms: the latitude was 62 deg. 34 min. north, and longitude 192 deg. east.

Between three and four o'clock this afternoon, Mr. Anderson, surgeon of the *Resolution*, expired, after he had lingered under a consumption for upwards of a twelve month. He was a sensible, intelligent young man, an agreeable companion, well skilled in his own profession, and had acquired considerable knowledge in other branches of science. Our readers will doubtless have observed, how useful an assistant he had proved in the course of the voyage; and if his life had been prolonged to a later period, the public might have received from him many valuable communications, respecting the natural history of the different places visited by our people. Soon after he had breathed his last, land was discovered to the westward, at the distance of twelve leagues. It was supposed to be an island, and the commodore, to perpetuate the memory of the deceased, for whom he had a particular esteem, distinguished it by the name of Anderson's Island. The following day Mr. Law, surgeon of the *Discovery*, was removed into the *Resolution*, and Mr. Samuel, the surgeon's first mate of the *Resolution*, was appointed to succeed Mr. Law as surgeon of the *Discovery*.

On Wednesday the 5th, at ten o'clock in the morning, they ran down, and anchored between the island and the continent in seven fathoms. Soon after Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King, and some other officers, landed upon the island. He hoped to have had from it a prospect of the coast and sea to the westward; but, in that direction, the fog was so thick, that the view was not more extensive than it was from their ships. The coast of the continent seemed to take a turn to the north, at a low point, named Point Rodney, which bore from the island north-west-half-west, at the distance of three or four leagues; but the high land, which took a more northerly direction, was perceived at a much greater distance.

The latitude of this island is 64 deg. 30 min. north, and its

longitude is 193 deg. 57 min. east. It is about twelve miles in circumference. The surface of the ground is composed chiefly of large loose stones, that are in many places covered with moss and other vegetables, of which there were twenty or thirty different species, and most of them in flower. But the captain saw neither tree nor shrub, either upon the island, or on the neighbouring continent. On a small spot near the beach where he landed, was a considerable quantity of wild purslain, long-wort, pease, &c. some of which he took on-board for boiling. He saw several plovers, and other small birds; a fox was also seen, and he met with some decayed huts, built partly under ground. People had lately been upon the island: and it is more than probable, that they frequently visit for some purpose or other, as there was a beaten path from one end to the other. A little way from that part of the shore where our gentlemen landed, they found a sledge, which induced Captain Cook to give the island the appellation of Sledge Island. It appeared to be such a one as the Russians in Kamtschatka make use of to convey goods from one place to another, over the snow and ice. It was about twenty inches in breadth, and ten feet in length, had a sort of rail-work on each side, and was shod with bone. Its construction was admirable, and its various parts were put together with great neatness; some with wooden pins, but for the most part with thongs, or lashings of whale-bone, which made the captain think that it was entirely the workmanship of the natives. Weighing anchor at three o'clock in the morning of the 6th, they made sail to the north-west, with a light southerly breeze. As they had but little wind, and that variable, they made but slow progress; and, at eight o'clock in the evening, finding the ships getting into shoal-water, anchored in seven fathoms, the distance from the coast being about two leagues. Sledge Island then bore south 51 deg. east, nine or ten leagues distant. Soon after they had let go their anchors, the weather, which had been misty, cleared up, and they perceived high land, extending from north 40 deg. east to north 30 deg. west, seemingly disjoined from the coast near which they lay at anchor, which appeared to extend to the north-eastward.

Being now satisfied that the whole was a continued coast, the ships tacked, and steered for its north-west part, near which they anchored in seventeen fathoms. The weather at present was very thick and rainy; but, at four the next morning, it cleared up, and enabled them to discern the neighbouring land. A lofty steep rock, or island, bore west-by-south; another island to the northward of it, and considerably larger, bore west-by-north; the peaked hill before-mentioned, south-east-by-east; and the point under it, south 32 deg. east. Under this hill is some land, extending towards the north-west, the extreme point of which was now about one league distant, bearing north-east-by-east. Over and beyond, some high land was

see
tin
7
the
all
deg
The
hap
tion
sam
A
cour
cleve
west
and
a spa
the
grave
W
a vill
into c
plain
upon
land;
panied
whom
drawn
down
were
bows.
them
party
retired
in his
stop, a
gave h
Captai
down
and, th
expect
The
by sig
come
one of
advan
to mak
prepar
captain
them.

seen, which was imagined to be a continuation of the continent.

This point of land, which the commodore distinguished by the name of Cape Prince of Wales, is the western extremity of all America hitherto known. It stands in the longitude of 191 deg. 45 min. east, and in the latitude of 65 deg. 46 min. north. They fancied they saw some people on the coast; and, perhaps, were not mistaken in their supposition, as some elevations like stages, and others resembling huts, were seen at the same place.

At day-break on Monday the 10th, they resumed a westward course for the land seen by them the preceding evening. At eleven minutes after seven, it extended from south 72 deg. west, to north 41 deg. east. Between the south-western extremity, and a point which bore west, six miles distant, the coast forms a spacious bay, in which they dropped their anchors at ten in the forenoon, about two miles from the north shore, over a gravelly bottom, at the depth of ten fathoms.

While steering for this bay, they observed on the north shore a village and some people, who seemed to have been thrown into confusion, or fear, at the sight of the vessels. They could plainly perceive persons running up the country with burthens upon their backs. At this village, Captain Cook proposed to land; and accordingly went with three armed boats, accompanied by some of the officers. Thirty or forty men, each of whom was armed with a spontoon, a bow, and arrows, stood drawn up on an eminence near the houses; three of them came down towards the shore, on the approach of our gentlemen, and were so polite as to pull off their caps, and make them low bows. Though this civility was returned, it did not inspire them with sufficient confidence to wait for the landing of the party; for the instant they put the boats ashore, the natives retired. Captain Cook followed them alone, without any thing in his hand; and, by signs and gestures, prevailed on them to stop, and accept some trifling presents; in return for these, they gave him two fox-skins, and a couple of sea-horse's teeth. The Captain was of opinion, that they had brought these articles down with them for the purpose of presenting them to him; and, that they would have given them to him, even if they had expected no return.

They seemed very timid and cautious; intimating their desire, by signs, that no more of our people should be permitted to come up. On the captain's laying his hand on the shoulder of one of them, he started back several paces; in proportion as he advanced, they retreated, always in the attitude of being ready to make use of their spears; while those on the eminence were, prepared to support them with their arrows. Insensibly, the captain, and two or three of his companions got in amongst them. The distribution of a few beads, to some of them, soon

created a kind of confidence, so that they were not alarmed when the captain was joined by a few more of his people, and, in a short time, a sort of traffic was entered into. In exchange for tobacco, knives, beads, and other articles, they gave a few arrows, and some of their clothing; but nothing that our people had to offer, could induce them to part with a spear or a bow. These they held in continual readiness, never quitting them, except at one time, when four or five persons laid theirs down, while they favoured our people with a song and a dance; and, even then, they placed them in such a manner, that they could lay hold of them in a moment.

Their arrows were pointed either with stone or bone, but very few of them had barbs; and some of them had a round blunt point. What use these are applied to, is not known, unless it be to kill small animals without damaging the skin. Their bows, are such as they had observed on the American coast: their spontoons, or spears, were of iron or steel, and of European or Asiatic workmanship; and considerable pains had been taken to ornament them with carvings, and inlayings of brass, and of white metal. Those who stood with bows and arrows in their hands, had the spear slung by a leathern strap over their right shoulder. A leathern quiver, slung over their left shoulder, served to contain arrows; and some of these quivers were exceedingly beautiful, being made of red leather, on which was very neat embroidery, and other ornaments. Several other things, and particularly their clothing, indicated a degree of ingenuity, far surpassing what any one would expect to find among so northern a people.

All the Americans that had been seen since their arrival on that coast, were rather low of stature, with round, chubby faces, and high cheek-bones. The people among whom our men now were, far from resembling them, had long visages, and were stout and well made; in short, they appeared to be quite a different nation. No women, or children of either sex, were observed, nor any aged persons, except one man, whose head was bald; and he was the only one who bore no arms; the others seemed to be picked men, and rather under than above the middle age. The elderly man had a black mark across his face, which was not perceived in any others; all of them had their ears perforated, and some of them had glass beads hanging to them. These were the only fixed ornaments our people saw about them, for they wear none to the lips; this is another particular, in which they differ from the Americans they had lately seen.

Their clothing consisted of a pair of breeches, a cap, a frock, a pair of boots, and a pair of gloves, all made of leather, or of the skins of deer, dogs, seals, and other animals, and extremely well dressed; some with the hair or fur on, and others without it. The caps were made in such a manner, as to fit the head very close; and besides these caps, which most of them wore, our

men procured from them some hoods, made of dog-skins, that were large enough to cover both head and shoulders. Their hair seemed to be black, but their heads were either shaved, or the hair cut close off, and some of them wore beards. Of the few articles which they got from our people, knives and tobacco were what they set the most value upon.

The village was composed both of their winter and their summer habitations; the former are exactly like a vault, the floor of which is sunk below the surface of the earth. One of them which Captain Cook examined, was of an oval form, about twenty feet in length, and twelve or more in height; the framing consisted of wood, and the ribs of whales, judiciously disposed, and bound together with smaller materials of the same kind. Over this framing a covering of strong, coarse grass was laid, and that again was covered with earth; so that on the outside, the house had the appearance of a little hillock, supported by a wall of stone, of the height of three or four feet, which was built round the two sides, and one end. At the other end of the habitation, the earth was raised sloping, to walk up to the entrance; which was by a hole in the top of the roof, over that end. The floor was boarded, and under it was a sort of cellar, in which the captain saw nothing but water; at the end of each house was a vaulted room, which he supposed was a store-room. These store-rooms communicated, by a dark passage, with the house; and with the open air, by a hole in the roof, which was even with the ground one walked upon; but they cannot be said to be wholly under ground; for one end extended to the edge of the hill, along which they were made, and which was built up with stone. Over it stood a kind of sentry-box, or tower, formed of the large bones of great fish.

Their summer huts were of a tolerable size, and circular, being brought to a point at the top. The framing was of slight poles and bones, covered with the skins of sea-animals. Captain Cook examined the inside of one; there was a fire-place just within the door, where a few wooden vessels lay, all very dirty. Their bed-places were close to the side, and took up about half the circuit; some degree of privacy seemed to be observed; for there were several partitions made with skins. The bed and bedding were of deer-skins, and most of them were clean and dry.

About the houses were erected several stages, ten or twelve feet in height, such as they had seen on some parts of the American coast. They were composed entirely of bones, and seemed intended for drying their fish and skins, which were thus placed out of the reach of their dogs, of which they had a great many. These dogs are of the fox kind, rather large, and of different colours, with long, soft hair, like wool. They are, in all probability, used for the purpose of drawing their sledges in winter, for it appears that they have sledges, as the captain saw many of them laid up in one of their winter huts. It is likewise not

improbable that dogs constitute a part of their food, for several lay dead, which had been killed that morning.

The canoes of these people are of the same kind with those of the North Americans, some, both of the large and small sort, being seen lying in a creek near the village.

From the large bones of fish and other sea-animals, it appeared that the sea furnished them with the greater part of their subsistence. The country appeared exceedingly barren, as our gentlemen saw neither tree nor shrub. At some distance towards the west they observed a ridge of mountains covered with snow, that had fallen not long before.

At first some of our men supposed this land to be a part of the island of Alaschka, laid down in Mr. Stæhlin's map before-mentioned; but from the appearance of the coast, the situation of the opposite shore of America, and from the longitude, they soon began to think that it was, more probably, the country of the Tschutski, or the eastern extremity of Asia, explored by Behring, in the year 1728. In admitting this, however, without farther examination they must have pronounced Mr. Stæhlin's map, and his account of the New Northern Archipelago, to be either remarkably erroneous, even in latitude, or else to be a mere fiction; a judgment which they would not presume to pass upon a publication so respectably vouched, without producing the most decisive proofs.

After the party had remained with these people between two and three hours, they returned on board; and soon after, the wind becoming southerly, weighed anchor, stood out of the bay, and steered to the north-east, between the coast and the two islands. At twelve o'clock the next day, (August 11) the former extended from south 80 deg. west, to north 84 deg. west; the later bore south 40 deg. west; and the peaked mountain, over Cape Prince of Wales, bore south 36 deg. east. The latitude of the ship was 66 deg. 5½ min. north, the longitude 191 deg. 19 min. east, the soundings were twenty-eight fathoms; and the position nearly in the middle of the channel, between the two coasts, each being at the distance of about seven leagues.

From this station they steered to the east, in order to get nearer to the American coast. In this course the water gradually shoaled; and there being very little wind, and all their endeavours to increase the depth failing, the ships were obliged at last to cast anchor in six fathoms; which was the only remedy remaining to prevent the ships driving into more shallow water. The nearest part of the western land bore west, twelve leagues distant; the peaked mountain over Cape Prince of Wales, bore south 16 deg. west; and the northernmost part of the American continent in sight, east-south-east; the distance of the nearest part being about four leagues.

On the 13th, at four in the afternoon, a breeze arising at south, the ships steered north-east by north, till four o'clock the

next morning, when seeing no land, they directed their course east by north; and between the hours of nine and ten, land appeared, which they supposed was a continuation of the continent. It extended from east by south, to east by north; not long afterwards they descried more land, bearing north by east. Coming rather suddenly into thirteen fathoms' water, at two in the afternoon, they made a trip off till four, when they again stood in for the land, which they saw soon after, extending from north to south-east, the nearest part being at the distance of three or four leagues. The coast here forms a point, named Point Mulgrave, which is situated in the latitude of 67 deg. 45 min. north, and in the longitude of 194 deg. 51 min. east. The land seemed to be very low near the sea, but a little farther it rises to hills of a moderate height; the whole was free from snow, and apparently destitute of wood. They now tacked, and bore away north-west by west. From noon of the 16th of August, to six in the morning of the following, they steered east by north; a course which brought them into fifteen fathoms' water. They now steered north-east by east, thinking, by such a course, to increase the depth of water. But, in the space of six leagues, it shoaled to eleven fathoms, which induced them to haul close to the wind, that now blew at west. About twelve o'clock, both sun and moon were seen clearly at intervals, and they made some hasty observations for the longitude; which, reduced to noon, when the latitude was 70 deg. 33 min. north, gave 197 deg. 41 min. east. The time-keeper, for the same time, gave 198 deg.

Some time in the afternoon, they perceived a brightness in the northern horizon, like that reflected from ice, commonly called the blink. Little notice was taken of it, from a supposition that it was improbable they should so soon meet with the ice. The sharpness of the air, however, and gloominess of the weather, for the two or three preceding days, seemed to indicate some sudden change. About an hour afterwards, the sight of an enormous mass of ice, left them no longer in any doubt respecting the cause of the brightness of the horizon. Between two and three o'clock, they tacked, close to the edge of the ice, in twenty-two fathoms' water, being then in the latitude of 70 deg. 41 min. north, and unable to stand on any farther: for the ice was perfectly impenetrable, and extended from west by south, to east by north as far as the eye could reach. Here they met with great numbers of sea-horses, some of which were in the water, but far more upon the ice. The commodore had thoughts of hoisting out the boats to kill some of these animals; but, the wind freshening, he gave up the design; and they continued to ply towards the south, or rather towards the west, for the wind came from that quarter. They made no progress; for, at twelve on the 18th, the latitude was 70 deg. 44 min. north, and they were almost five leagues farther to the east.

They were, at this time, close to the edge of the ice, which was as compact as a wall, and appeared to be at least ten or twelve feet in height; but, farther northward, it seemed to be much higher. Its surface was exceedingly rugged, and, in several places, they saw pools of water upon it. They now stood to the south, after running six leagues, shoaled the water to seven fathoms; but it soon increased to the depth of nine fathoms. At this time, the weather which had been hazy, clearing up a little, they saw land extending from south to south-east by east, at the distance of three or four miles. The eastern extremity forms a point, which was greatly encumbered with ice on which account it was distinguished by the name of Icy Cape. Its latitude is 70 deg. 29 min. north, and its longitude 198 deg. 20 min. east. The other extremity of the land was lost in the horizon; and they had no doubt of its being a continuation of the continent of America. The Discovery, being about a mile astern, and to leeward, met with less depth of water than they did; and tacking on that account, the commodore was obliged to tack also, to prevent separation. Their situation now became critical: they were upon a lee-shore in shoal water, and the main body of the ice, to windward, was driving down upon them. It was evident, that if they continued much longer between it and the land, it would force them ashore, unless it should chance to take the ground before them. It appeared almost to join the land to leeward, and the only direction that was free from it was the south-westward. After making a short board to the north, Captain Cook made a signal for the Discovery to tack, and his ship tacked at the same time. The wind proved in some measure favourable, so that they lay up south-west, and south-west by west.

On Wednesday, the 19th, at eight in the morning, the wind veering to the west, they tacked to the northward, and, at twelve, the latitude was 70 deg. 6 min. north, and the longitude 196 deg. 42 min. east. In this situation they had a good deal of drift ice about the ships, and the main ice was about two leagues to the north. Between one and two they got in with the edge of it. It was not so compact as that which was observed towards the north, but it was too close, and in too large pieces, to attempt forcing the ships through it. They saw an amazing number of sea-horses on the ice, and as they were in want of fresh provisions, the boats from each ship were dispatched to procure some of them. By seven in the evening they had received on-board the Resolution, nine of these animals, which, till this time, they had supposed to be sea-cows; so that they were greatly disappointed, particularly some of the sailors, who on account of the novelty of the thing, had been feasting their eyes for some days past. Nor could they have been disappointed now, nor known the difference, if there had not been two or three men on board who had been in Greenland, and declared what animals these were, and that no person ever eat them. Notwithstand-

ing this, they lived upon them as long as they lasted, and there were few of our people who did not prefer them to the salt meat.

The fat of these animals is, at first, as sweet as marrow; but, in a few days, it becomes rancid, unless it be salted, in which state it will keep much longer. The lean flesh is coarse and blackish, and has a strong taste, but the heart is almost as well tasted as that of a bullock. The fat, when melted, yields a good quantity of oil, which burns very well in lamps; and their hides, which are very thick, were very useful about their rigging. The teeth, or tusks, of most of them, were at this time, of very small size; even some of the largest and oldest of these animals had them not exceeding half a foot in length. Hence, it was concluded, that they had lately shed their old teeth.

They lie upon the ice in herds of many hundreds, huddling, one over the other, like swine; and roar very loud, so that in the night, or when the weather was foggy, they gave notice of the vicinity of the ice, before it could be discerned. They never found the whole herd of them sleeping, some of them being constantly upon the watch. These, on the approach of the boat, would awake those that were next to them, and, the alarm being thus gradually communicated, the whole herd would presently be awake. However, they were seldom in a hurry to get away before they had been once fired at. Then, they would fall into the sea, one over the other, in the utmost confusion; and, if they did not happen, at the first discharge, to kill those fired at, they generally lost them, though mortally wounded.

They did not appear to be dangerous, as some authors have represented them, not even when they were attacked. They are rather more so in appearance than in reality. Vast multitudes of them would follow, and come close up to the boats, but the flash of the musket in the pan, or even the mere pointing of one at them, would send them down in a moment. The female defends her young one to the very last, and at the expense of her own life, whether upon the ice or in the water. Nor will the young one quit the dam, though she should have been killed; so that, if you destroy one, you are sure of the other. It is, doubtless, the same animal that is found in the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and is there called a sea-cow. It is certainly more like a cow than a horse; but, this resemblance, consists in nothing but the snout. In short, it is an animal not unlike a seal, but incomparably larger. The length of one of them, which was none of the largest, was nine feet four inches from the snout to the tail; the circumference of its body at the shoulders, was seven feet ten inches; its circumference near the hinder fins was five feet six inches, and the weight of the carcass without the head, skin, or entrails, was eight hundred and fifty-four pounds, the head weighed forty one pounds and a half, and the skin two hundred and five pounds.

It may not be improper to remark, that, for some days before

this time, they had often seen flocks of ducks flying to the southward. They were of two species, the one much larger than the other. The larger sort was of a brown colour; and of the small sort, either the duck or drake was black and white, and the other brown. Some of our people said, that they also saw geese. This seems to indicate, that there must be land to the southward, where these birds, in the proper season find shelter for breeding, and whence they were now on their return to a warmer climate.

On Thursday, the 27th, at four in the morning, they tacked and stood to the westward, and at seven in the evening, they were close in with the edge of the ice, which lay east-north-east, and west-south-west, as far in each of those directions as the eye could reach. There being but little wind, Captain Cook went with the boats to examine the state of the ice. He found it to consist of loose pieces, of various extent, and so close together, that he could scarcely enter the outer edge with a boat; and, it was impracticable for the ships to enter it, as if it had been so many rocks. He particularly remarked, that it was all pure transparent ice, except the upper surface, which was rather porous. It seemed to be wholly composed of frozen snow, and to have been all formed at sea. For, setting aside the improbability of such prodigious masses floating out of rivers, none of the productions of the land were found incorporated, or mixed in it; which would certainly have been the case, if it had been formed in rivers, either great or small.

The pieces of ice that formed the outer edge of the main body, were from forty or fifty yards in extent, to four or five; and the captain judged, that the larger pieces reached thirty feet or more, under the surface of the water. He also thought it highly improbable, that this ice could have been the production of the preceding winter alone. He was rather inclined to suppose it to have been the production of many winters. It was equally improbable, in his opinion, that the little that now remained of the summer, could destroy even the tenth part of what now subsisted of this great mass; for the sun had already exerted upon it the full force and influence of his rays. The sun, indeed, according to his judgment, contributes very little towards reducing those enormous masses. For, though that luminary is above the horizon a considerable time, it seldom shines out for more than a few hours at a time, and frequently is not seen for several successive days.

It is the wind, or rather the waves raised by the wind, that brings down the bulk of these prodigious masses, by grinding one piece against another, and by undermining and washing away those parts which are exposed to the surge of the sea. This was manifest from the captain's observing, that the upper surface of many of the pieces had been partly washed away, while the base, or under part, continued firm for several fathoms

rou
high
fou
it.
unw
abo
may
seas
mul
rema
been
A
haste
wish
many
these
dible
drift
partly
for se
and t
consu
longit
At tw
horses
south-
south-
or to g
eight o
were o
ice. I
blowin
hauled
On
the no
west.
west.
the w
proach
that, a
fathom
from
mity t
before
The
afterw
ward,
view
site c

round that which appeared above water, like a shoal round a high rock. He measured the depth of water upon one, and found it was fifteen feet, so that the ships might have sailed over it. If he had not measured this depth, he would have been unwilling to believe, that there was a sufficient weight of ice above the surface, to have sunk the other so much below it. It may thus happen, that more ice is destroyed in one tempestuous season, than is formed in several winters, and an endless accumulation of it is prevented. But that there is constantly a remaining store, will be acknowledged by every one who has been upon the spot.

A thick fog coming on while the commodore was thus employed, hastened him with the boats aboard sooner than he could have wished, with one sea-horse to each ship. Our people had killed many, but could not wait to bring them off. The number of these animals, on all the ice that they had seen, is almost incredible. They spent the night standing off and on, amongst the drift ice, and at nine o'clock the next morning, the fog having partly dispersed, boats from each of the ships were dispatched for sea-horses; for our people by this time began to relish them, and those they had before furnished themselves with, were all consumed. At noon the latitude was 69 deg. 17 min. north, longitude 183 deg. east, and depth of water twenty-five fathoms. At two in the afternoon, having got on-board as many sea-horses as was thought necessary, and the wind freshening at south-south-east, they hoisted in the boats, and steered to the south-west: but being unable to weather the ice upon this tack, or to go through it, they made a board to the eastward, till about eight o'clock, then resumed their course to the south-west, and were obliged before midnight to tack again, on account of the ice. Not long after, the wind veering to the north-west, and blowing a stiff gale, they stretched to the south-west, close hauled.

On the 29th, in the morning, they saw the main ice towards the north, and soon after perceived land bearing south-west-by-west. In a short time after this, more land was seen, bearing west. It shewed itself in two hills resembling islands, but soon the whole appeared connected. As they made a nearer approach to the land, the depth of water decreased very fast, so that, at twelve o'clock, when they tacked, they found only eight fathoms; being three miles from the coast, which extended from south 30 deg. east to north 60 deg. west. This last extremity terminated in a bluff point, being one of the hills mentioned before.

The weather was now very hazy, with drizzling rain, but, soon afterwards, it cleared up, particularly to the southward, westward, and northward. This enabled them to have a tolerable view of the coast; which resembles, in every respect, the opposite coast of America; that is, low land next the sea, with the

higher land farther back. It was totally destitute of wood, and even of snow; but, was probably covered with a mossy substance, that gave it a brownish hue. In the low ground that lay between the sea and the high land, was a lake, extending to the south-east, farther than they could see. As they stood off, the westernmost of the two hills above-mentioned came open off the bluff point, in a north-west direction. It had the appearance of an island, but it might perhaps be connected with the other by low land, though they did not see it, and if that be the case, there is a two-fold point, with a bay between them. This point, which is rocky, and steep, received the name of Cape North. It is situated nearly in the latitude of 68 deg. 56 min. north, and in the longitude of 181 deg. 51 min. east. The coast beyond it, doubtless, takes a very westerly direction: for they could discern no land to the northward of it, though the horizon was there pretty clear. Wishing to see more of the coast to the westward, they tacked again, at two in the afternoon, thinking they should be able to weather Cape North; but, finding they could not, the wind freshening, a thick fog coming on, with much snow, and being apprehensive of the ice coming down upon them, the commodore relinquished the design he had formed of plying to the westward, and again stood off shore.

The season was now so far advanced, and the time when the frost generally sets in was so near, that Captain Cook did not think it consistent with prudence, to make any farther attempts to discover a passage into the Atlantic Ocean this year in any direction, so small was the probability of success. His attention was now directed to the search of some place, where they might recruit the wood and water; and the object that principally occupied his thoughts was, how he should pass the winter, so as to make some improvements in navigation and geography, and, at the same time, be in a condition to return to the northward the ensuing summer, to prosecute his search of a passage into the Atlantic.

Having stood off till the soundings were eighteen fathoms, they made sail to the eastward along the coast, which, they were now pretty well convinced, could only be the continent of Asia. The wind blowing fresh, and there being, at the same time, a thick mist, and a very heavy fall of snow, it was necessary that they should proceed with great caution; they therefore brought to for a few hours in the night. Early the next morning, which was the 30th of August, they steered such a course as was judged most likely to bring them in with the land, being guided, in a great measure by the lead; for the weather was extremely thick and gloomy, with incessant showers of snow; at ten o'clock, they got sight of the coast, which was at the distance of four miles, bearing south-west.

At noon the mist dispersing, they had a view of the coast, which extended from south-east to north-west-by-west. Some

part
low
now
along
night
more
west
borne
four
a m
with
45 m
disti
con
of co
with
low,

Du
cury
point
water
of ice
direct
they s
contin
and, v
and b
toward
1st of
wind
north
the la
south
east-b
whole
distan

The
that v
an ha
senten
with
aspec
the e
east.

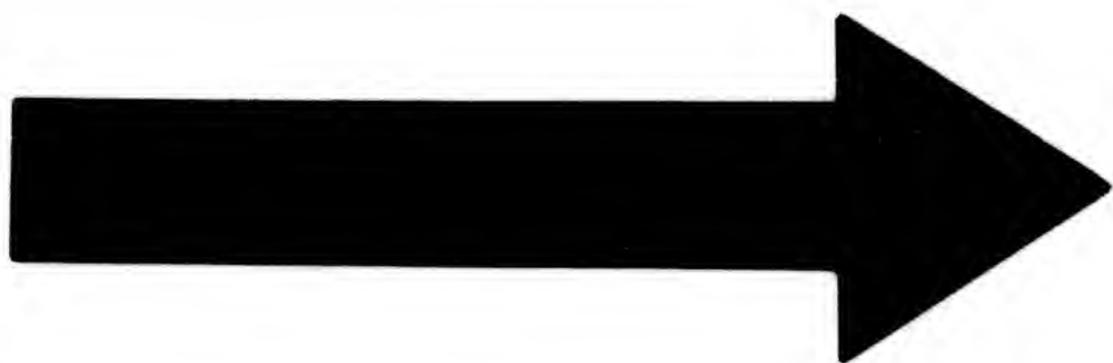
Ca
imagi
north
in th
Mulle

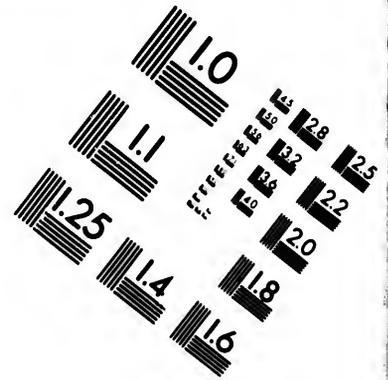
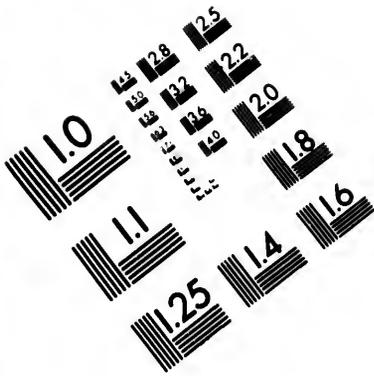
parts appeared higher than others; but, in general it was very low, with high land farther up the country. The whole was now covered with snow which had fallen very lately; they ranged along the coast at the distance of about two leagues, till ten at night, when they hauled off; but resumed their course early next morning, when they got sight of the coast again, extending from west by south-east-by-south. At eight o'clock, the eastern part bore south, and proved to be an island, which, at twelve, was four or five miles distant, bearing south-west-half-south. It is of a moderate height, between four and five miles in circumference, with a steep rocky coast. It is situated in the latitude of 67 deg. 45 min. north, about three leagues from the continent; and, is distinguished by the appellation of Burney's Island. The inland country about this part abounds with hills, some of which are of considerable elevation. The land, in general, was covered with snow, except a few spots on the coast, which still continued low, but less so than farther westward.

During the two preceding days, the mean height of the mercury in the thermometer, had frequently been below the freezing point, and, in general, very little above it; insomuch, that the water in the vessels upon deck, was often covered with a sheet of ice. They continued to steer south-south-east, nearly in the direction of the coast, till five o'clock in the afternoon, when they saw land bearing south 50 deg. east, which proved to be a continuation of the coast. They hauled up for it without delay; and, at ten in the evening, being abreast of the eastern land, and being doubtful of weathering it, tacked, and made aboard towards the west, till after ten the next morning (Tuesday the 1st of September), when they again made sail to the east. The wind was now very unsettled, continually varying from north to north-east. Between eight and nine, the eastern extremity of the land was at the distance of six or seven miles, bearing south-by-east. A head-land appeared, at the same time, bearing east-by-south, half-south: and soon after they could trace the whole coast that lay between them, and a little island at some distance from it.

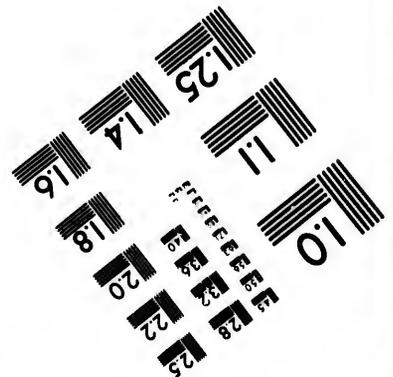
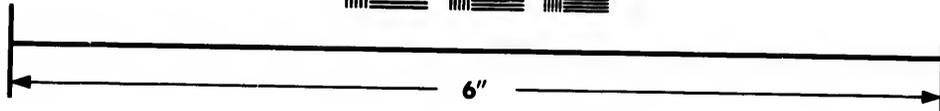
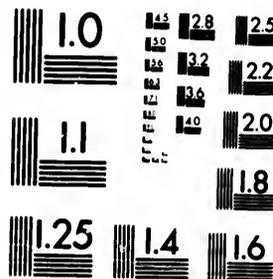
The coast now in sight seemed to form several rocky points, that were connected by a low shore, without any appearance of an harbour. At some distance from the sea, many hills presented themselves to the view, the highest of which were covered with snow: in other respects, the whole country had a naked aspect. At seven in the evening, two points of land, beyond the eastern head, opened off in the direction of south 37 deg. east.

Captain Cook was now convinced of what he had before imagined, that this was the country of the Tschutski, or the north-east coast of Asia; that Behring had proceeded thus far in the year 1728: that is, to this head, which, according to Muller, is denominated Serdze Kamen, on account of a rock





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

upon it, shaped like a heart. There are, indeed, many high rocks on this cape, some one or other of which may have the shape of a heart. It is a promontory of tolerable height, with a steep rocky cliff facing the sea. Its latitude is 67 deg. 3 min. north, and its longitude 188 deg. 11 min. east. To the east of it, the coast is high and bold: but, to the west it is low, and extends north-west-by-west, and north-north-west; which, is nearly its direction all the way to Cape North. The depth of water, is every where the same, at an equal distance from the shore; and this is likewise the case on the opposite coast of America. The greatest depth found in ranging along it, was twenty-three fathoms. During the night, or in thick foggy weather, the soundings are no bad guide to those who sail along either of these coasts.

On the 2nd of September, at eight in the morning, the most advanced land to the south-eastward, bore south 25 deg. east; and, from this point of view, had an insular appearance. But, the thick showers of snow that fell in quick succession, and settled on the land, hid great part of the coast from their sight at this time. Soon after, the sun, which had not been seen for near five days, broke out during the intervals between the showers, by which means the coast was, in some measure, freed from the fog; so that they obtained a sight of it, and found that the whole was connected. The wind was still northerly. the air was cold, and the mercury in the thermometer did not rise above 35 deg. and was sometimes as low as 30 deg.— At noon the latitude was 66 deg. 37 min. north; Cape Serdze Kamen was twelve or thirteen leagues distant, bearing north 52 deg. west; the southern utmost point of land in sight, bore south 41 deg. east; their soundings were, twenty-two fathoms; and the nearest part of the shore, was about two leagues distant.

The weather was now fair and bright; and as they ranged along the coast, they saw several of the natives, and some of their habitations, which looked like little hillocks of earth. In the course of the evening they passed Eastern Cape, or the point before-mentioned; from which the coast changes its direction, and tends to the south-west. This is the same point of land, that had been passed on the 11th of the preceding month. Those who gave credit to Mr. Stæhlin's map, then supposed to be the eastern point of his island Alaschka; but they were by this time convinced, that it is no other than the eastern promontory of Asia; and, perhaps, it is the proper Tschukotskoi Noss, though the promontory, to which Behring gave that name, is farther to the south-west.

Muller, in his map of the discoveries of the Russians, places the Tschukotskoi Noss nearly in the latitude of 75 deg. north, and extends it somewhat to the eastward of this cape; but Captain Cook was of opinion, that he had no good authority for so doing. Indeed Muller's, or rather Deshneff's account of the

distanc
ailed
he r
Noss
ourn
opes
his p
he co
he ea
able e
rently
cliff;
It is s
the la
distan
of W
monto
mate a
The l
destitu
Afte
half-w
which
reache
some o
them,
one of
as the
they h
people
lither
traffic
some
spont
lor.
Th
the er
the b
sea v
ships
was
parts
But l
and
poin

• C
Augu
very
island

Distance between the river Anadir and Noss, cannot be reconciled with this very northernly position. For he says, that with the most favourable wind, a person may go by sea from the Noss to the river Anadir in three whole days, and that the journey by land is very little longer. But Captain Cook, having hopes of visiting these parts again, deferred the discussion of this point to another opportunity. In the mean time, however, he concluded, as Behring had done before him, that this was the easternmost point of all Asia. It is a peninsula of considerable elevation, joined to the continent by a very low and apparently narrow neck of land. It has, next the sea, a steep rocky cliff; and off the very point are several rocks resembling spires. It is situated in the longitude of 190 deg. 22 min. east, and in the latitude of 66 deg. 6 min. north; and is thirteen leagues distant in the direction of north, 53 deg. west, from Cape Prince of Wales, on the coast of America. The land about this promontory, is composed of hills and valleys. The former terminate at the sea in steep rocky points, and the latter in low shores. The hills seemed to be naked rocks; but the valleys, though destitute of tree or shrub, were of a greenish hue.

After the ships had passed the Cape, they steered south-west-half-west, towards the northern point of St. Lawrence's Bay, in which the ships had anchored on the 10th of August. They reached it by eight o'clock the following morning, and saw some of the natives at the place where they had before seen them, as well as others on the opposite side of the bay. Not one of them, however, came off: which was rather remarkable, as the weather was sufficiently favourable, and as those whom they had lately visited had no reason to be displeased. These people are certainly the Tschutski, whom the Russians had not hitherto subdued; though it is manifest, they must carry on a traffic with the latter, either directly, or by the interposition of some neighbouring nations: as their being in possession of the spoontoons seen among them, cannot otherwise be accounted for.

The Bay of St. Lawrence* is, at least five leagues broad, at the entrance, and about four leagues deep, narrowing towards the bottom, where it seemed to be pretty well sheltered from the sea winds, provided there be a sufficient depth of water for ships. The commodore did not wait to examine it, though he was very desirous of finding a convenient harbour in those parts, to which he might resort in the succeeding spring.—But he wished to meet with one where wood might be obtained; and he knew that none could be found here. From the south point of this bay, which lies in the latitude of 65 deg. 30 min.

* Captain Cook called it by this name, from his having anchored in it on the 10th of August, which is St. Lawrence's day. It is remarkable, that Behring sailed past this very place on August 10, 1728; on which account he denominated the neighbouring island after the same saint.

north, the coast tends west-by-south, for the space of about nine leagues, and there forms a deep bay or river; or else, the land in that part is so low that they could not discern it.

At one in the afternoon, they saw what was first supposed to be a rock; but, it proved to be a whale, which some Asiatics had killed, and were towing ashore. They seemed to conceal themselves behind the fish, in order to avoid being seen; but this was unnecessary, for Captain Cook proceeded on his course without taking any notice of them. On the 4th, at day-break, they hauled to the north-west, in order to get a nearer view of the inlet seen the day before; but, the wind, soon after, veering to that direction, the design was abandoned; and, steering towards the south along the coast, they passed two bays, each about six miles deep. The northernmost one is situated before a hill, which is rounder than any other that had been observed upon the coast. There is an island lying before the other bay. It may be doubted, whether there be a sufficient depth of water for ships in either of these bays, as when edged in for the shore, they constantly met with shoal water. This part of the country, is extremely naked and hilly. In several places on the low ground, next the sea, were the habitations of the natives, near all of which were erected stages of bones, like those before-mentioned. This day, at noon, the latitude was 64 deg. 38 min. north, and the longitude 188 deg. 15 min. east; the nearest part of the shore, was at the distance of three or four leagues; and the southernmost point of the continent in sight bore south, 48 deg. west.

The wind, by this time had veered to the north, and blew a light breeze; the weather was clear, and the air sharp. The commodore did not think proper to follow the direction of the coast, as he perceived it inclined westward towards the gulph of Anadir, into which he had no motive for going. He, therefore, steered a southerly course, that he might have a sight of the isle of St. Lawrence, discovered by Behring. This island was quickly seen by them; and, at eight in the evening, it bore south 20 deg. east, supposed to be at the distance of eleven leagues. At the same time, the southernmost point of the main land was twelve leagues distant, bearing south 83 deg. west.— Captain Cook conjectured, that this was the point which Behring calls the east point of Suchotski, or Cape Tschukotskoi; an appellation which he gave it with some propriety, because of the natives, who said they were of the nation of Tschutski. Its latitude is 64 deg. 13 min. north, and its longitude 186 deg. 36 min. east.

The more the commodore was convinced, of his being at present upon the Asiatic coast, the more he was at a loss to reconcile his observations with Mr. Stæhlin's map of the New Northern Archipelago; and he could only account for the great difference, by supposing, that he had mistaken some part of

what
cont
rates
consi
of so
seaso
lowin
with
curin
to sta
the co
land
imagin
On St
Amer
evenin
bearin
north,
conjec
possib
which
the ma
after h
where

On t
the lan
leagues
east, w
next m
pretty
situati
sued th
half-so
point,
of 64 c
northe
appell
ernmo
the ne
they le

On
the co
islands
Not lo
wood;
accust
the di
tinueat
appar

what Mr. Stæhlin denominates the island of Alaschka for the continent of America, and had missed the channel that separates them. Admitting even this, there would still have been a considerable variation. The captain considered it as an affair of some consequence, to clear up this point during the present season, that he might have only one object in view in the following one. And as these northerly islands were said to abound with wood, he had some hopes, if he should find them, of procuring a competent supply of that article, of which they began to stand in great need. With these views, he steered over for the coast of America; and the next day, at five in the afternoon, land was seen bearing south three quarters east, which they imagined was Anderson's Island; or some other land near it. On Sunday the 6th, at four in the morning, they got sight of the American coast, near Sledge Island; and, at six the same evening, that island was seen at the distance of ten leagues, bearing north, 6 deg. east, and the easternmost land in view north, 49 deg. east. If any part of what Captain Cook had conjectured to be the coast of the American continent, could possibly be the island of Alaschka, it was that now in sight; in which case he must have missed the channel between it and the main land, by steering towards the west, instead of the east, after he had first fallen in with it. He was, therefore, at no loss where to go, for the purpose of clearing up these doubts.

On the 7th, at eight in the evening, they had got close in with the land, Sledge Island bearing north, 85 deg. west, about eight leagues distant; and the eastern part of the coast north, 70 deg. east, with elevated land in the direction of east-by-north. The next morning, at one o'clock, finding that the water shoaled pretty fast, they anchored in ten fathoms, and remained in that situation till day-light came on. They then weighed, and pursued their course along the coast, which tended east, and east-half-south. At seven in the evening, they were abreast of a point, lying in the longitude of 197 deg. east, and in the latitude of 64 deg. 21 min. north; beyond which, the coast takes a more northerly direction. At eight this point, which received the appellation of Cape Darby, bore south, 62 deg. west; the northernmost land in sight, north, 32 deg. east; and the distance of the nearest part of the shore was one league. In this situation, they let go their anchors in thirteen fathoms, over a muddy bottom.

On the 9th, at day-break, they weighed, and made sail along the coast; they now saw land, which was supposed to be two islands, the one bearing east, the other south, 70 deg. east.—Not long after, they found themselves near a coast covered with wood; an agreeable sight, to which of late they had not been accustomed. As they advanced northward, land was seen in the direction of north-east-half-north, which proved to be a continuation of the coast; they also saw high land over the islands, apparently at a considerable distance beyond them. This was

thought to be the continent, and the other land the island of Alaschka; but it was already doubtful, whether they should find a passage between them, for the water gradually shoaled as they proceeded farther towards the north. In consequence of this two boats were sent a head to sound; and the commodore ordered the Discovery, as she drew the least water, to lead, keeping nearly in the mid-channel, between the coast and the northernmost island. In this manner they continued their course, till three in the afternoon, when, having passed the island, the soundings did not exceed three fathoms and a half, and the Resolution at one time brought up the mud from the bottom. In no part of the channel could a greater depth of water be found, though they had sounded it from one side to the other; the commodore therefore deemed it high time to return.

The ships continued to ply back during the night; and, by day-break on the 10th, had deepened their water six fathoms. At nine o'clock, when about three miles from the west shore, Captain Cook, accompanied by Mr. King, went with two boats in search of wood and water: they landed where the coast projects into a bluff head, composed of perpendicular *strata* of a dark blue rock, intermixed with glimmer and quartz. Adjoining to the beach is a narrow border of land, which was at this time covered with long grass, and where they observed some angelica. The ground beyond this rises with some abruptness; at the top of this elevation, they found a heath that abounded with berries of various kinds; and farther on the country was level, and thinly covered with small spruce trees, birch, and willows. They saw the tracks of foxes and deer upon the beach; on which also lay a great quantity of drift-wood; and there was no want of fresh water.

The gentlemen and their attendants having returned on-board, the commodore had thoughts of bringing the ships to an anchor here; but the wind then shifting to the north-east, which blew rather on this shore, he stretched over to the opposite one, expecting to find wood there likewise. At eight in the evening, they anchored at the south end of the northernmost island, for so they imagined it to be; but the next morning, found that it was a peninsula, connected with the continent by a low isthmus on each side of which the coast forms a bay. They plied into the southernmost, and about noon anchored in five fathoms' water, over a muddy bottom: the point of the peninsula, to which the appellation of Cape Denbigh was given, bearing north, 60 degrees west, one league distant. They observed upon the peninsula several natives; and one of them came off in a small canoe. Captain Cook gave this man a knife and some beads, with which he appeared well pleased; they made signs to him to bring some provisions, upon which, he instantly paddled towards the shore. Happening to meet another man coming c^{d} , who had two dried salmon, he got them from him; and when he returned to the ship,

would
fanci
in th
came
trilles
dislik
In
to pr
great
a bo
three
ancho
found
tende
miles
the pu
on wi
about
wood.
little
withou
some
stood
all the
sent to
on the
After
with t
fathom
souther
about
Bald-H
east; a
Cape
was 52
This
station
the sto
time; l
a more
carried
(that pa
shore,
noon C
country
and ot
ripe.
such as
walking

would give them to nobody but Captain Cook. Some of our people fancied, that he asked for him under the name of *Capitane*; but, in this, they were perhaps mistaken. Others of the inhabitants came off soon after, and exchanged a few dried fish for such trifles as our men had to barter with them. They shewed no dislike for tobacco, but they were most desirous of knives.

In the afternoon Lieutenant Gore was sent to the peninsula, to procure wood and water: of the former of which articles, great plenty was observed upon the beach. At the same time, a boat from each ship was sent to sound round the bay; and at three o'clock, the wind freshening at north-east, they weighed anchor, and endeavoured to work further in. But that was soon found to be impracticable, by reason of the shoals which extended quite round the bay, to the distance of upwards of two miles from the shore; as the officers who had been sent out for the purpose of sounding reported. They therefore stood off and on with the ships, waiting for Lieutenant Gore, who returned about eight o'clock in the evening, with the launch loaded with wood. He informed the commodore that he had found but little fresh-water, and that the wood could not be procured without some difficulty, on account of the boats grounding at some distance from the beach. This being the case, the ships stood back to the other shore; and, at eight the next morning, all the boats, and a detachment of men, with an officer, were sent to get wood from the place where Captain Cook had landed on the 10th.

After having continued, for some time, to stand off and on with the ships, they at length cast anchor in less than five fathoms, at the distance of half a league from the coast, whose southern point bore south, 26 deg. west. Cape Denbigh was about twenty-six miles distant, bearing south, 72 deg. east; Bald-Head was nine leagues off, in the direction of north, 60 deg. east; and the island under the east shore to the southward of Cape Denbigh named by Captain Cook, Besborough Island, was 52 deg. east.

This being a very open road, and therefore not a secure station for the ships, the commodore resolved not to wait till the stock of water was completed, as that would take some time; but only to furnish the ships with wood, and then to seek a more commodious place for the other article. Our people carried off the drift-wood that lay on the beach, and performed that part with great expedition; for, as the wind blew along the shore, the boats were enabled to sail both ways. In the afternoon Captain Cook went on-shore, and took a walk into the country; which, where there was no wood, abounded with heath and other plants, several of which had plenty of berries, all ripe. Scarcely a single plant was in flower; the underwood, such as birch, alders, and willows, rendered it very troublesome walking among the trees, which were all spruce, and none of

them above seven or eight inches in diameter; but some were observed lying on the beach that were twice this size. All the drift-wood that was seen in these northern parts was fir.

The following day, which was Sunday, the 13th, a family of the natives came near the spot where our people were occupied in taking off wood. The captain saw only the husband and wife, and their child, besides a fourth person, who was the most deformed cripple he had ever seen. The husband was almost blind, and neither he nor his wife were such well-looking people as many of those whom we had met with on this coast. Both of them had their lower lips perforated; and they were in possession of some glass-beads, resembling those we had seen before among their neighbours. Iron was the article that pleased them most. For four knives which had been formed out of an old iron-hoop, the captain obtained from them near four hundred pounds weight of fish, that had been lately caught by them. Some were trout, and the rest were, in size and taste, somewhat between a herring and a mullet. The captain gave a few beads to the child, who was a female; upon which the mother burst into tears, then the father, next after him the cripple, and at last, to add the finishing stroke to the concert, the child herself. This music, however, was not of long duration.

Mr. King had, on the preceding day, been in company with the same family, and gives the following account of his interview with them: "On the 12th, while I attended the wooding party, a canoe full of natives approached us; and, beckoning them to land, an elderly man and woman came on shore. I gave the woman a small knife, making her understand, that I would give her a much larger one for some fish. She made signs for me to follow her. I had proceeded with them about a mile, when the man, in crossing a stony beach, fell down, and cut his foot very much. This made me stop; upon which the woman pointed to the man's eyes, which, I observed, were covered with a thick, white film. He afterwards kept close to his wife, who apprised him of the obstacles in his way.—The woman had a little child on her back, covered with the hood of her jacket; and which I took for a bundle, till I heard it cry. At about two miles distant we came to their open skin boat, which was turned on its side, the convex part towards the wind, and served for their house. I was now made to perform a singular operation on the man's eyes. First, I was directed to hold my breath; afterwards, to breathe on the diseased eyes; and next, to spit on them. The woman then took both my hands, and pressing them to his stomach, held them there for some time, while she related some calamitous history of her family; pointing sometimes to her husband, sometimes to a frightful cripple belonging to the family, and sometimes to her child. I purchased all the fish they had, consisting of very fine salmon, salmon trout and mullet; which were delivered most faithfully to the man I sent for them. The

man
of a
He
The
wore
boots
been
from
Bel
wood
water
cut br
ing be
board,
beach
difficu
As
the shi
Ameri
with tv
as mig
His in
northw
last, or
endeav
then up
island,
nent of
the dep
tide co
time in
chip, w
chored
a chang
turn to
you ar
longer
the bet
force t
sonable
that is,

The
"Our
covery
unluck
the wh

man was about five feet two inches high, well made; his colour of a light copper: his hair black and short, and with little beard. He had two holes in the under lip, but no ornaments in them. The woman was short and squat, with a plump round face; she wore a deer-skin jacket, with a large hood; and had on white boots. The teeth of both were black and seemed as if they had been filed down level with the gums. The woman was punctured from the lip to the chin."

Before night, on the 13th, the ships were amply supplied with wood, the men had conveyed on board about twelve tons of water to each. On the 14th a party was detached on-shore to cut brooms, and likewise the branches of spruce trees for brewing beer.—About twelve o'clock all our people were taken on-board, for the wind freshening had raised so heavy a surf on the beach, that our boats could not continue to land without extreme difficulty and danger.

As doubts were still entertained whether the coast upon which the ships now were beloged to an island, or to the continent of America, Lieutenant King was dispatched by the commodore, with two boats, well manned and armed, to make such searches as might leave no room for a variety of opinions on the subject. His instructions were as follow:—"You are to proceed to the northward as far as the extreme point we saw on Wednesday last, or a little further, if you think it necessary; land there, and endeavour, from the heights, to discover whether the land you are then upon, supposed to be the island of Alaschka, is really an island, or joins to the land on the east, supposed to be the continent of America. If the former, you are to satisfy yourself with the depth of the channel between them, and which way the flood-tide comes. But if you find the two lands connected, lose no time in sounding; but make the best of your way back to the ship, which you will find at anchor near the point of land we anchored under on Friday last. If you perceive any likelihood of a change of weather for the worse, you are, in that case, to return to the ship, although you have not performed the service you are sent upon. And, at any rate, you are not to remain longer upon it than four or five days; but the sooner it is done the better. If any unforeseen or unavoidable accident should force the ships off the coast so that they cannot return at a reasonable time, the rendezvous is at the harbour of Samganoodha; that is, the place where we last completed our water.

"JAMES COOK."

"To Lieutenant King."

The result of his researches, Lieutenant King thus describes: "Our cutter being hoisted out, and the signal made for the Discovery's at eight at night, on the 14th, we set out. It was a little unlucky, that the boats' crews had been much fatigued during the whole day in bringing things from the shore. They pulled

stomly, without rest or intermission, toward the land, till one o'clock in the morning of the 15th. I wanted much to have gone close to it, to have had the advantage of the wind, which had very regularly, in the evening, blown from the land, and in the day-time down the Sound, from the north-north-east, and was contrary to our course; but the men were at this time too much fatigued to press them farther. We, therefore, set our sails, and stood across the bay, which the coast forms to the west of Bald Head, and steered for it. But, as I expected, by three o'clock, the wind headed us; and it was in vain to endeavour to fetch Bald Head with our sails, we again took to the oars. The Discovery's boat (being a heavy king's built cutter, while ours was one from Deal) had, in the night-time, detained us very much, and now we soon pulled out of sight of her; nor would I wait, being in great hopes to reach the extreme point that was in sight, time enough to ascend the heights before dark, as the weather was at this time remarkably clear and fine; and we could see to a great distance. By two o'clock we had got within two miles of Bald Head, under the lee of the high land, and in smooth water; but, at the moment our object was nearly attained, all the men, but two, were so overcome with fatigue and sleep, that my utmost endeavours to make them pull on were ineffectual. They, at length, dropped their oars, quite exhausted, and fell asleep in the bottom of the boat. Indeed, considering that they had set out fatigued, and had now been sixteen hours out of the eighteen, since they left the ship, pulling in a poppling sea, it is no wonder that their strength and spirits should be worn out for want of sleep and refreshments. The two gentlemen who were with me, and myself, were now obliged to lay hold of the oars; and, by a little after three, we landed between the Bald Head and a projecting point to the eastward."

On Tuesday, the 15th, the ships removed over to the bay on the south-east side of Cape Denbigh, where they anchored in the afternoon. Not long after several of the inhabitants came off in canoes, and gave some dried salmon in exchange for trifling articles. Early the next morning, nine men, each in a separate canoe, paid them a visit, with no other view than to gratify their curiosity. They approached the ship with caution, and drawing up abreast with each other, under the stern, favoured them with a song; while one of their number made many ludicrous motions with his hands and body, and another beat upon a sort of drum. Their was nothing savage either in the song or in the gestures with which it was accompanied. There seemed to be no difference, either with respect to size or features, between these people and those whom they had met with on every other part of this coast, except King George's Sound. Their dress, which consisted principally of deer-skins, was made after the same mode; and they had adopted the practice of perforating their lower lips, and affixing ornaments to them.

The habitations of these people were situated close to the beach. They consist merely of a sloping roof without any side-walls, formed of logs, and covered with earth and grass. The floor is likewise laid with logs. The entrance is at one end, and the fire-place is just within it. A small hole is made near the door of the hut, for the purpose of letting out the smoke.

A party of men was dispatched this morning to the peninsula, for brooms and spruce. Half the remainder of the people of both ships, were at the same time, permitted to go ashore and gather berries. These returned on-board about twelve o'clock, and the other half then landed for the same purpose. The berries found here, were hurtle-berries, heath-berries, partridge-berries, and wild currant-berries. Captain Cook also went ashore himself, and walked over part of the peninsula. He met with good grass in several places, and scarcely observed a single spot on which some vegetables was not growing. The low land which connects this peninsula with the continent, abounds with narrow creeks, and likewise with ponds of water, some of which were at this time frozen over. There were numbers of bustards and geese, but so shy, that it was not possible to get within musket shot of them. Some snipes were also seen; and, on the higher grounds were partridges of two species; where there was wood, musquitoes were numerous. Some of the officers, who went farther into the country than Captain Cook did, met a few of the natives of both sexes, who treated them with civility and kindness.

The commodore was of opinion, that this peninsula had been an island in some distant period; for there were marks of the sea having formerly flowed over the isthmus; and even now, it appeared to be kept out by a bank of sand, stones and wood, which the waves had thrown up. It was evident from this bank that the land encroached upon the sea, and it was easy to trace its gradual formation.

Lieutenant King returned from his expedition about seven in the evening, and reported that he proceeded with the boats about three or four leagues farther than the ships had been able to go; that he then landed on the west side; that, from the heights, he could see the two coasts join, and the inlet terminate in a small creek or river, before which there were banks of sand or mud and every where shoal water. The land, too, was low and swampy for some distance to the northward, then it rose into hills; and the perfect junction of those, on each side of the inlet, was easily traced.

From the elevated spot on which Mr. King took his survey of the Sound, he could discern many spacious valleys, with rivers flowing through them, well wooded, and bounded by hills of a moderate height. One of the rivers to the north-west seemed to be considerable; and he was inclined to suppose, from its direction, that it emptied itself into the sea at the head of the bay.—Some of his people, penetrating beyond this into the country,

found the trees to be of a larger size the farther they proceeded.

To this inlet Captain Cook gave the name of Norton's Sound, in honour of Sir Fletcher Norton, afterwards Lord Grantley, a near relation of Mr. King. It extends northward as far as the latitude of 64 deg. 55 min. north. The bay wherein their ships were now at anchor, lies on the south-east side of it, and is denominated *Chacktoole* by the natives. It is but an indifferent station, being exposed to the south and south-west winds. Nor is a harbour to be met with in all this sound. Captain Cook was so fortunate, however, as to have the wind from the north-east and the north, during the whole time of his continuance here, with very fine weather. This afforded him an opportunity of making a great number of lunar observations, the mean result of which gave 197 deg. 13 min. east, as the longitude of the anchoring place on the west side of the Sound, while its latitude was 64 deg. 31 min. north. With respect to the tides, the night-flood rose two or three feet, and the day-flood was scarcely perceivable.

Captain Cook, being now perfectly convinced, that Mr. Stæhlin's map was extremely erroneous, and having restored the continent of America to the space which that gentleman had occupied with his imaginary island of Alaschka, thought it now high time to quit these northerly regions, and to retire to some place during the winter, where he might obtain provisions and refreshments. He did not consider Petropaulowska, or the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, in Kamtschatka, as likely to furnish a sufficient supply. He had, besides, other reasons for not going thither at present; the principal of which was his great unwillingness to remain inactive for six or seven months, which would have been the consequence of wintering in any of these northern countries. He at length concluded, that no situation was so convenient for their purpose as the Sandwich Islands. To them, therefore, he determined to proceed. But, a supply of water being necessary before he could execute that design, he resolved, with a view of procuring this essential article, to search the coast of America for a harbour, by proceeding along it to the south. If he should not meet with success in that search, his attention was to reach Samganoodha, which was appointed for their place of rendezvous, in case the ships should happen to separate.

In the morning of the 17th of September, the ships weighed anchor with a light easterly breeze, and steering to the southward, attempted to pass within Besborough Island; they continued to steer for this passage till the boats, which were a-head, made the signal for having no more than three fathoms' water. In consequence of this, they hauled without the island, and displayed the signal for the Resolution's boat to keep between the shore and the ships.

This island, to which the name of Stuart's Island was given, lies in the latitude of 63 deg. 35 min. north, and is seventeen leagues distant from Cape Denbigh, in the direction of south 27 deg. west. It is six or seven leagues in circumference. Some parts of it are of a moderate height, but, in general, it is low, with some rocks off the western part. The coast for the most part is low land, but we perceived high land up the country. It forms a point opposite the island, which was named Cape Stephens, and lies in the latitude of 63 deg. 33 min. north, and in the longitude of 197 deg. 41 min. east. Some drift-wood was observed upon the shores, both of the island and of the continent: but not a single tree was seen growing upon either. Vessels might anchor, upon occasion, between the continent and the north-east side of this island, in a depth of five fathoms, sheltered from the easterly, westerly, and southerly winds.— But this station would be entirely exposed to the northerly winds; the land, in that direction, being too remote to afford any security. Before they reached Stuart's Island, they passed two small islands, lying between them and the main; and, as they ranged along the coast, several of the natives made their appearance upon the shore, and by signs, seemed to invite them to approach.

They were no sooner without the island, than they steered south-by-west, for the most southern part of the continent in sight, till eight in the evening, when the depth of water having decreased from six fathoms to less than four, they tacked and stood to the northward, into five fathoms, and then spent the night in standing off and on. At the time they tacked, the southernmost point of land above-mentioned, which they named point Shallow-Water, bore south-half-east, at the distance of seven leagues. They resumed their southerly course on the 19th at day-break, but shoal water soon obliged them to haul more to the westward. At length they got so far advanced upon the bank, that they could not hold a north-north-west course, as they sometimes only met with four fathoms. The wind blowing fresh at east-north-east, it was now high time to endeavour to find a greater depth of water, and to quit a coast upon which they could no longer navigate with safety; they therefore hauled the wind to the northward, and the water gradually increased in depth to eight fathoms.

As soon as they had got into eight fathoms' water, they steered to the westward, and afterwards more southerly, for the land discovered on the 5th of September, which, at noon, on the 20th, bore south-west-by-west, ten or eleven leagues distant. They had now a fresh gale at north, and, at intervals showers of hail and snow, with a pretty high sea. To the land before them, the commodore gave the appellation of Clerke's Island. It stands in the latitude of 63 deg. 15 min., and in the longitude of 190 deg. 30 min. It seemed to be an island of considerable

extent, in which are several hills, all connected by low ground, so that it looks, at a distance, like a group of islands. Near its east part lies a small island, remarkable for having on it three elevated rocks. Both the greater island and the smaller one were inhabited.

On Wednesday, the 23rd, at day-break, the land made its appearance, bearing south-west, at the distance of six or seven leagues. From this point of view, it resembled a cluster of islands; but it was found to be only one of about thirty miles in extent, in the direction of north-west and south-east; the south-eastern extremity being Cape Upright, mentioned before. The island is narrow, particularly at the low neck of land by which the hills are connected. Captain Cook afterwards found that it was entirely unknown to the Russians, and, therefore, considering it as a discovery of our own, he named it Gore's Island. It appeared to be barren and destitute of inhabitants. Nor did our men observe such a number of birds about it as had been seen when they first discovered it. But they perceived some sea-otters, an animal which they had not found to the north of this latitude. About twelve miles from Cape Upright, in the direction of south 72 deg. west, stands a small island, whose lofty summit terminates in several pinnacle rocks, for which reason it obtained the name of Pinnacle Island.

At two o'clock in the afternoon, after they had passed Cape Upright, they steered south-east by south, for Samganoodha, with a gentle breeze at north-north-west, being resolved to lose no more time in searching for a harbour among islands which Captain Cook now began to suspect had no existence, at least, not in the latitude and longitude in which they have been placed by modern delineators of charts. On the 24th, in the evening, the wind veered to south-west and south, and increased to a fresh gale.

On Friday, the 2nd of October, at day-break, they saw the isle of Oonalashka, in a south-east direction; but as the land was obscured by a thick haze, they were not certain with respect to their situation till noon, when they observed latitude determined it. They hauled into a bay, ten miles to the westward of Samganoodha, known by the appellation of Egoochshak; but finding very deep water, speedily left it. The natives visited them at different times, bringing with them dried salmon, and other fish, which they exchanged with the sailors for tobacco. Only a few days before, every ounce of tobacco that remained in the ship had been distributed among them, and the quantity was not half sufficient to answer their demands. Notwithstanding this, so thoughtless and improvident a being is an English sailor, that they were as profuse in making their bargains, as if they had arrived at a port in Virginia; by which means, in less than two days, the value of this commodity was lowered above a thousand *per cent.*

The next day at one o'clock, in the afternoon, they anchored in the harbour of Samganoodha, and, on the morning of the 4th, the carpenters were employed in ripping off the sheathing of and under the wale of the Resolution on the starboard side. Many of the seams were found entirely open; it was, therefore, not to be wondered at, that so much water had got into the ship. They cleared the fish and spirit rooms, and the after-hold; and disposed things in such a manner, that, in case of any future leaks of the same nature, the water might find its way to the pumps. Besides this work, and completing the stock of water, they cleared the fore-hold and took in a quantity of ballast.

The vegetables met with when here before, were now, for the most part, in a state of decay. There being great plenty of berries, one-third of the people, by turns, had permission to go ashore and gather them. Considerable quantities of them were brought to us by the inhabitants. If there were any seeds of the scurvy among the people of either ship, these berries, and the use of spruce-beer, which they were allowed to drink every other day, effectually eradicated them. Our men procured abundance of fish; at first, chiefly salmon, both fresh and dried, which the natives brought us. Some of the fresh salmon was in the highest perfection; but there was one sort, which from the figure of its head, they called hook-nosed, that was but indifferent. They drew the seine several times at the head of the bay, and caught a good many salmon-trout, and once a halibut that weighed two hundred and fifty-four pounds. They afterwards had recourse to hooks and lines. A boat was sent out every morning, which seldom returned without eight or ten halibut, a quantity more than sufficient to serve all our people. These fish were excellent, and there were few who did not prefer them to salmon. Thus they not only obtained a supply of fish for present consumption, but had some to carry with them to sea.

Captain Cook received on the 8th, by the hands of a native of Onalashka, named Derramoushk, a very singular present, considering the place he was in. It was a rye loaf, or rather a pie in the form of a loaf, for it enclosed some salmon highly seasoned with pepper. This man brought a similar present for Captain Clerke, and a note for each of the Captains, written in a character which none of them could read. It was natural to imagine, that these two presents were from some Russians now in the neighbourhood, and therefore the captain sent, by the same messenger, to these unknown friends, a few bottles of rum, wine, and porter, which they supposed would be very acceptable. Captain Cook also sent in company with Derramoushk, Corporal Lediard, of the marines, an intelligent man, for the purpose of gaining further information, with orders, that if he met with any Russians he should endeavour to make them understand, that they were Englishmen, the friends and allies of their nation.

On the 10th, Corporal Lediard returned with three Russian seamen, or furriers, who, with some others, resided at Egoochshak, where they had some store-houses, a dwelling-house, and a sloop of about thirty tons burthen. One of these men was either master or mate of the vessel: another of them wrote a very good hand, and understood figures; and they were all three intelligent well-behaved men, and extremely ready to give our voyagers all the information they could desire. But, for want of an interpreter they had some difficulty to understand each other. They appeared to have a perfect knowledge of the attempts which their countrymen had made to navigate the Frozen Ocean, and of the discoveries that had been made from Kamtschatka, by Behring, Tscherikoff, and Spanberg. But they had not the least idea to what part of the world Mr. Stæhlin's map referred, when it was laid before them. When Captain Cook pointed out Kamtschatka, and some other places upon this map, they asked him whether he had seen the islands there represented; and on his answering in the negative, one of them put his finger upon a part of the map, where a number of islands are laid down, and said, that he had cruised there in search of land, but could never meet with any. The Captain then shewed them his own chart, and found that they were strangers to every part of the coast of America, except what lies opposite this island.

One of these men said that he had been with Behring in his American voyage; but must then have been very young, for he had not now, at the distance of thirty-seven years, the appearance of being aged. Never was greater respect paid to the memory of any eminent person, than these men paid to that of Behring. The trade in which they are engaged is very advantageous; and its being undertaken and extended to the eastward of Kamtschatka, was the immediate consequence of the second voyage of that distinguished navigator, whose misfortunes proved the source of much private advantage to individuals, and of public utility to the Russian empire. And yet if his distresses had not accidentally carried him to the island which bears his name, where he ended his life, and from whence the miserable remnant of his ship's crew brought back specimens of its valuable furs, probably the Russians would never have undertaken any future voyages, which could lead them to make discoveries in this sea, toward the American coast. Indeed, after his time, their government seems to have paid less attention to this object; and, for what discoveries have been since made, we are principally indebted to the enterprising spirit of private merchants, encouraged, however, by the superintending care of the court of Petersburg.

The three Russians having remained all night with the commodore, visited Captain Clerke the following morning, and then departed, very well satisfied with the reception they had met with. They promised to return in a few days, and bring with them a chart of the islands lying between Kamtschatka and Oonalashka.

In the evening of the 14th, while Captain Cook and Mr. Webber were at a village, at a small distance from Samganoodha, a Russian landed there, who proved to be the principal person among his countrymen in this and the adjacent islands. His name was Erasim Gregorioff Sin Ismyloff. He arrived in a canoe that carried three persons, attended by twenty or thirty other canoes, each conducted by one man. Immediately after landing, they constructed a small tent for Ismyloff, of materials which they had brought with them, and they afterwards made others for themselves, of their canoes and paddles, which they covered with grass. Ismyloff having invited the Captain and Mr. Webber into his tent, set before them some dried salmon and berries. He appeared to be a man of sense; and the Captain felt no small mortification in not being able to converse with him, unless by signs, assisted by figures and other characters. The captain requested him to favour him with his company on-board the next day, and accordingly he came with all his attendants. He had, indeed, moved into the neighbourhood of their station, for the express purpose of waiting upon them.

Captain Cook was in hopes of receiving from him the chart which his three countrymen had promised, but he was disappointed. However, Ismyloff, assured him he should have it, and he kept his word. The Captain found him very well acquainted with the geography of these parts, and with all the discoveries which had been made in them by the Russians. On seeing the modern maps, he instantly pointed out their errors. He told the captain that he had accompanied Lieutenant Synd (or as he called him Synd) in his northern expedition and according to his account, they did not proceed farther than the Tschukotskoi Noss, or rather than the Bay of St. Lawrence, for he pointed on their chart to the very place where Captain Cook landed. From thence he went to an island in the latitude of 63 deg. north, upon which they did not land. He did not recollect the name of that island: but the Captain conjectured that it was the same with that to which the appellation of Clerke's Island had been given. To what place Synd repaired afterwards, or in what particular manner he employed the two years, during which, as Ismyloff said, his researches lasted, he was either unable or unwilling to state. Perhaps he did not comprehend their inquiries on this point; and yet, in almost every other thing, our men found means to make him understand them. This inclined them to suspect that he really had not been in that expedition, notwithstanding what he had asserted.

Not only Ismyloff, but also the others affirmed that they were totally unacquainted with the American continent to the northward: and that neither Lieutenant Synd, nor any other Russian, had seen it of late years. They called it by the same name which Mr. Stæhlin gives to his great island, that is, Alaschka.

From what could be gathered from Ismyloff and his country-

men, the Russians have made several attempts to gain a footing upon that part of the North American continent that lies contiguous to Onalashka and the adjacent islands, but have always been repulsed by the natives, whom they describe as a very treacherous people. They mentioned two or three captains, or chief men, who had been murdered by them; and some of the Russians shewed us wounds which they declared they had received there.

Ismyloff also informed our voyagers, that, in the year 1773, an expedition had been undertaken into the Frozen Ocean in sledges, over the ice, to three large islands, that lie opposite the river Kovyma. Captain Cook was in some doubt whether he did not mean the same expedition of which Muller gives an account;* and yet he wrote down the year, and marked the islands on the chart. But a voyage which he said he himself had performed engaged our attention more than any other. He said that on the 12th of May, 1771, he sailed from Bolscheretzka, in Kamtschatka, in a Russian vessel, to Mareekan, one of the Kuril Islands, where there is a harbour, and a Russian settlement.

From this island he proceeded to Japan, where he seems to have made but a short stay; for, when the Japanese came to know that he and his companions were Christians, they made signs for them to depart; but did not, so far as our men could understand him, offer any insult or violence. From Japan he repaired to Canton, in China: and from thence, in a French ship to France. He then travelled to Petersburg, and was afterwards sent out again to Kamtschatka. Our men could not learn what became of the vessel in which he first embarked, nor what was the principal intention of the voyage. His being unable to speak a word of the French language, rendered this story rather suspicious; he seemed clear, however, as to the times of his arriving at the different places, and of his departure from them, which he put down in writing.

The next morning, Friday the 16th, he offered Captain Cook a sea-otter skin, which, he said, was worth eighty roubles at Kamtschatka. The Captain, however, thought proper to decline the offer; but accepted of some dried fish, and several baskets of the lily, or *saranne* root. In the afternoon Ismyloff, after dining with Captain Clerke, left us with all his retinue, promising to return in a few days. Accordingly, on the 19th, he paid another visit, bringing with him the charts before mentioned,

* The latest expedition of this kind, taken notice of by Muller, was in 1724. But in justice to Mr. Ismyloff, it may be proper to mention, which is done on the authority of a M. S. communicated by Mr. Pennant, and the substance of which has been published by Mr. Coxe, that, so late as 1768, the Governor of Siberia sent three young officers over the ice, in sledges to the islands opposite the Kovyma. There seems no reason for not supposing, that a subsequent expedition of this sort might also be undertaken in 1773. Mr. Coxe, p. 324, places the expedition on sledges in 1764, but Mr. Pennant's M. S. may be depended upon.

which he permitted Captain Cook to copy; and the contents of which are the foundation of the following remarks:—

There were two of them, both manuscripts, and bearing every mark of authenticity. One of them comprehended the Penschinskian sea; the Coast of Tartary, as low as the latitude of 41 deg. north; the Kuril Islands, and the peninsula of Kamtschatka. Since this chart has been made, Wawseelee Irkeehoff, a naval captain, explored in the year 1758, the coast of Tartary, from Okotsk and the River Amur, to Japan, or 41 deg. of northern latitude. They were informed by Mr. Ismyloff, that a great part of the sea-coast of Kamtschatka had been corrected by himself, and he described the instrument used by him for that purpose, which must have been a theodolite. He also told them that there were only two harbours fit for shipping on all the eastern coast of Kamtschatka, viz. the bay of Awatska, and the river Olutora, in the bottom of the gulph of the same name; that there was not a single harbour on its western coast; and that Yamsk was the only one, except Okotsk, on all the western side of the Penschinskian sea, till we come to the river Amur. The Kuril Islands contain but one harbour, and that is on the north-east side of Mareekan; where, as they have already mentioned, the Russians have a settlement.

The other chart comprehended all the discoveries that the Russians had made to the eastward of Kamtschatka, towards America. That part of the American coast with which Tscherikoff fell in, is laid down in this chart between the latitude of 58 deg. and 58½ deg. north, and 75 deg. of eastern longitude, from Okotsk, or 218½ deg. from Greenwich; and the place where Behring anchored, in 59½ deg. of latitude, and 63½ deg. of longitude from Okotsk, or 207 deg. from Greenwich. To say nothing of the longitude, which may, from several causes, be erroneous, the latitude of the coast discovered by Behring and Tschericoff, particularly that part of it which was discovered by the latter, differs considerably from Mr. Muller's chart. Whether the chart now produced by Ismyloff, or that of Muller, be most erroneous in this respect, it may be difficult to determine.

According to Ismyloff's account, neither the number nor the situation of the islands, which were dispersed between 52 deg. and 55 deg. of latitude, in the space between Kamtschatka and America, is properly ascertained. He struck out about a third of them, assuring our people that they did not exist; and he considerably altered the situation of others; which he said was necessary, from the observation which he himself had made; there was no reason to entertain a doubt about this. As these islands are nearly under the same parallel, different navigators, misled by different reckonings, might easily mistake one island, or cluster of islands, for another: and imagine they had made a new discovery, when they had only found old ones, in a position somewhat different from that assigned to them by their former visitors.

in a footing
t lies conti-
ave always
e as a very
captains, or
some of the
l they had

ear 1773, an
Ocean in
pposite the
whether he
r gives an
arked the
himself had
r. He said
olscheretzki,
an, one of
a Russian

seems to
se came to
they made
men could
Japan he
a French
, and was
could not
arked, nor
being un-
dered this
as to the
departure

ain Cook
oubles at
to decline
l baskets
off, after
, promis-
he paid
entioned,

724. But in
authority of
s been pub-
three young
e seems no
to be under-
4, but Mr.

The isles of St. Theodore, St. Stephen, St. Abraham, St. Macarions, Seduction Island, and several others, which are represented in Mr. Muller's chart, were not to be found in this now produced to them: nay, Ismyloff and the other Russians assured Captain Cook, that they had been frequently sought for without effect. Nevertheless, it is difficult to believe, that Mr. Muller could place them in his chart without some authority. Captain Cook, however, confiding in the testimony of these people, whom he thought competent witnesses, omitted them in his chart; and made such corrections respecting the other islands, as he had reason to think were necessary.

They then gave some account of the islands, beginning with those that lie nearest to Kamstchatka, and computing the longitude from the harbour of Petropaulowska, in the bay of Awatska. The first is Behring's Island, in 55 deg. of northern latitude, and 6 deg. of eastern longitude. Ten leagues from the south end of this, in the direction of east-by-south, or east-south-east, stands Maidenoi Ostroff, or the Copper Island. The next island is Atakou, in the latitude of 52 deg. 45 min., and in the longitude of 15 or 16 deg. This island is about eighteen leagues in extent, in the direction of east and west; and is perhaps the same land which Behring fell in with, and to which he gave the name of Mount St. John.

They next came to a cluster of islands, two of which, Amluk and Atghka, are of considerable extent, and in each of them is a good harbour. The middle of this group lies in the latitude of 52 deg. 30 min., and 28 deg. of longitude from the bay of Awatska; and its extent, east and west, is about four degrees. These are the isles that Mr. Ismyloff said were to be removed four degrees to the east, which was done. In the situation they have in Captain Cook's chart, was a group, comprehending ten little islands, which they were informed were wholly to be struck out; and also two islands, situated between them and the group to which Oonolashka appertains. In the place of these two, an island named Amoghta, was introduced.

The situation of many of these islands may, perhaps, be erroneously laid down, but the position of the largest group, of which Oonolashka is one of the most considerable islands, is free from such errors. Most of the islands that compose this cluster were seen by them; their longitude and latitude were therefore determined with tolerable accuracy, particularly the harbour of Samganoodha, in Oonolashka, which must be considered as a fixed point. This group may be said to extend as far as Halibut Isles, which are forty leagues distant from Oonolashka, towards the east-north-east. Within these isles a passage was marked in Ismyloff's charts, communicating with Bristol Bay, which converts about fifteen leagues of the coast that Captain Cook had supposed to be part of the continent, into an island named Ooneemak. This passage might

easily
narrow
or ve
Fr
his c
have
the ti
nation
where
Ismyl
been v
Kodia
name
not be
islands
chart;
that th
The
well as
proper
is mad
continen
This
respecti
this was
repeated
islands,
and that
continent
country
imposed
singular
lago, in
without
it "a ve
Mr. I
the 21st
to his c
chart o
there w
or Oko
Petersb
to Maj
Bolcher
officer
Mr.
to a hig
conside

easily escape them, being, as they were informed, extremely narrow, shallow, and only to be navigated through with boats, or vessels of very small burthen.

From the chart, as well as from the testimony of Ismyloff and his countrymen, it appears that this is as far as the Russians have made any discoveries, or have extended themselves, since the time of Behring. They all affirmed, that no persons of that nation had settled themselves so far to the eastward, as the place where the natives gave the note to Captain Clerke: which Mr. Ismyloff, to whom it was delivered, on perusing it, said, it had been written at Oomanak. From him we procured the name of Kodiak,* the largest of Schumagin's Islands: for it had no name assigned to it upon the chart which he produced. It may not be improper to mention, that no names were put to the islands which Ismyloff told them were to be struck out of the chart; and Captain Cook considered this as some confirmation that they have no existence.

The American continent is here called by the Russians, as well as the islanders, Alaschka; which appellation, though it properly belongs to that part which is contiguous to Ooneemak, is made use of by them when speaking of the American continent in general.

This is all the intelligence they obtained from these people, respecting the geography of this part of the globe; and, perhaps, this was all the information they were able to give; for they repeatedly assured Captain Cook that they knew of no other islands, besides those which were represented upon this chart; and that no Russian had ever visited any part of the American continent to the northward, except that which is opposite the country of the Tschutski. If Mr. Stæhlin was not greatly imposed upon, what could induce him to publish a map so singularly erroneous, as his map of the New Northern Archipelago, in which many of these islands are jumbled together without the least regard to truth? Nevertheless, he himself styles it "a very accurate little map."

Mr. Ismyloff continued with our voyagers till the evening of the 21st, when he took his final leave. Captain Cook intrusted to his care a letter to the Lords of the Admiralty, enclosing a chart of all the northern coasts he had visited. Ismyloff said there would be an opportunity of transmitting it to Kamtschatka, or Okotsk, in the succeeding spring; and that it would be at Petersburg the following winter. He gave the Captain a letter to Major Behm, Governor of Kamtschatka, who resides at Bolcheretsk in that peninsula, and another to the commanding officer at Petropaulowska.

Mr. Ismyloff seemed to possess abilities that might entitle him to a higher station than that in which they found him. He had considerable knowledge in astronomy, and in the most useful

* A Russian ship had touched at Kodiak in the year 1776.

branches of the mathematics. Captain Cook made him a present of a Hadley's octant; and though, perhaps, it was the first he had ever seen, he very quickly made himself acquainted with most of the uses to which that instrument can be applied.

In the morning of the 22nd, the ships made an attempt to get to sea, with the wind at south-east, but did not succeed. In the afternoon of the 23rd they were visited by one Jacob Ivanovitch Soposnicoff, a Russian, who commanded a small vessel at Oomanak. This man had a great share of modesty, and would drink no strong liquor, of which the other Russians, whom he had met with here, were extremely fond. He appeared to know what supplies could be obtained at the harbour of Petropaulowska, and the price of the various articles, more accurately than Mr. Ismyloff. But, by all accounts, every thing our men should have occasion to purchase at that place was very scarce, and bore a high price. This man informed them that he was to be at Petropaulowska in the ensuing May; and as was understood, was to have the charge of Captain Cook's letter. He seemed very desirous of having some token from the Captain to carry to Major Behm; and, to gratify him, the Captain sent a small spy-glass.

After our men became acquainted with these Russians, several of our gentlemen, at different times, visited their settlement on the island, where they always met with friendly treatment; this settlement consisted of a dwelling-house and two store-houses. Besides the Russians, there was a number of the Kamtschadales, and of the Oonalashkans, as servants, or slaves, to the former. Some others of the natives of this island, who appeared to be independent of the Russians, lived at the same place. Such of them as belonged to the Russians were all males; and they are taken, or, perhaps, purchased from their parents when young. There was, at this time, about twenty of these, who could be considered in no other light than as children. They all reside in the same house, the Russians at the upper end, the Kamtschadales in the middle, and the Oonalashkans at the lower end, where is fixed a capacious boiler for preparing their food, which principally consists of fish, with the addition of wild roots and berries. There is no great difference between the first and last table, except what is produced by cookery, by which the Russians can make indifferent things very palatable. They dress whale flesh in such a manner as to make it very good eating; and they make a kind of pan-pudding of salmon-roe, beaten up fine and fried, which is a tolerable substitute for bread. They may, now and then, taste real bread, or have a dish in which flour is an ingredient; but this can only be an occasional luxury. If we except the juice of berries, which they generally sip at their meals, they drink no other liquor besides pure water; and it seems to be very fortunate for them that they have nothing stronger.

him a present
the first he had
ced with most
l.

attempt to get
succeed. In the
bb Ivanovitch
small vessel at
ty, and would
ans, whom he
eared to know
of Petropau-
re accurately
hing our men
s very scarce,
that he was to
as was under-
's letter. He
the Captain to
captain sent a

se Russians,
d their settle-
friendly treat-
ouse and two
number of the
nts, or slaves,
island, who
at the same
ans were all
ed from their
out twenty of
n as children.
at the upper
alashkans at
or preparing
the addition
nce between
cookery, by
y palatable.
make it very
g of salmon-
ubstitute for
, or have a
only be an
which they
uor besides
m that they



117-118

As
meas
perha
like a
sides
fur ca
some
Russi
a calic
silk.

Mar
betwe
lecting
skins o
tain Co
upon C
form o
natives
furriers
met wit
in 1781.

As fo
pearanc
point of
lized na
with whe
whether
did not
necessit
bring th
inflicted
duced th
harmony
their ow
property
the Russ

reason t
The p
plump,
and they
and long
and cut

The o
the only
women
of birds
dress of

* Accord
to frequent

As the island supplies them with food, so it does in a great measure with clothing. This consists chiefly of skins, and is, perhaps, the best they could have. The upper garment is made like a waggoner's frock, and reaches as low as the knee. Besides this, they wear a waistcoat or two, a pair of breeches, a fur cap, and a pair of boots, the legs of which are formed of some kind of strong gut, but the soles and upper leathers are of Russian leather. Their two chiefs, Ismyloff and Ivanovitch, wore a calico frock; and they, as well as several others, had shirts of silk.

Many Russians are settled upon all the principal islands between Kamtschatka and Oonalashka, for the purpose of collecting furs. Their great object is the sea-beaver or otter; but skins of an inferior value also make a part of their cargoes. Captain Cook neglected to inquire how long they had a settlement upon Oonalashka and the neighbouring islands; but if he might form our judgment on this point from the great subjection the natives are under, this cannot be of a very late date.* These furriers are from time to time, succeeded by others. Those they met with arrived here from Okotsk in 1776, and were to return in 1781.

As for the native inhabitants of this island, they are, to all appearance, a very peaceable inoffensive race of people; and in point of honesty, they might serve as a pattern to the most civilized nations. But, from what was seen of their neighbours, with whom the Russians were unconnected, there is some doubt whether this was their original disposition. Indeed, if our men did not misunderstand the Russians, they had been under the necessity of making some severe examples before they could bring the islanders into any order. If severities were really inflicted at first, the best excuse for them is, that they have produced the most beneficial effects; and, at present, the greatest harmony subsists between the two nations. The natives have their own chiefs in each island, and seem to enjoy liberty and property without molestation. Whether they are tributaries to the Russians or not, our men could never learn; but there was reason to suppose that they are.

The people of Oonalashka are rather low of stature, but plump, and well shaped. Their necks are commonly short, and they have swarthy, chubby faces, black eyes, small beards, and long, straight, black hair, which the men wear loose behind, and cut before; but the women tie it up in a bunch.

The dress of both sexes is the same with respect to fashion, the only difference is in the materials. The frock worn by the women is made of seal-skins, and that of the men, of the skins of birds; both reach below the knee. This constitutes the whole dress of the females. But, over the frock the men wear another

* According to Mr. Coxe, in his account of the discoveries of the Russians, they began to frequent Oonalashka in the year 1762.

made of gut, which water cannot penetrate; it has a hood to it, which draws over the head. Some of them wear boots, and all of them have a kind of oval-snouted cap, made of wood, with a rim to admit the head. They dye these caps with green and other colours; and round the upper part of the rim, they fix the long bristles of some sea-animal, on which glass beads are strung; and on the front is a small image or two, formed of bone. They do not make use of paint; but the women puncture their faces slightly, and both sexes perforate the lower lip, in which they fix pieces of bone. But it is as uncommon here to see a man with this ornament, as to observe a woman without it. Some fix beads to the upper lip under the nostrils; and all of them suspend ornaments in their ears.

Their food consists of fish, sea-animals, birds, roots, berries, and sea-weed. They dry large quantities of fish during the summer which they lay up in small huts for their use in winter; and, probably, they preserve berries and roots for the same season of scarcity. They eat most of their provisions raw. Boiling and broiling were the only methods of cookery that we saw practised among them; and the former they in all probability learnt from the Russians. Some have in their possession small brass kettles, and those who have not, make one of a flat stone, with sides of clay, not unlike a standing pie.

Captain Cook was once present when the chief of this island made his dinner of the raw head of a large halibut, just caught. Before any part of it was given to the chief, two of his servants ate the gills, with no other dressing than squeezing out the slime. After this, one of them having cut off the head of the fish, took it to the sea, and washed it, then came with it, and seated himself by the chief; first pulling up some grass upon a part of which the head was laid, and the rest was strewed before the chief. He then cut large pieces off the cheeks, and put them within the reach of the chief, who swallowed them with as much satisfaction as we could do raw oysters. When he had finished his meal, the remains of the head being cut in pieces, were given to the servants, who tore off the meat with their teeth and gnawed the bones like so many dogs.

As the Oonalashkans use no paint, they are less dirty in their persons than those savages who thus besmear themselves; but they are full as filthy in their houses. Their method of building is as follows: they dig in the ground an oblong square pit, which seldom exceeds fifty feet in length, and twenty in breadth; but the dimensions are in general smaller. Over this excavation they form the roof of wood which the sea throws ashore. This roof they cover first with grass, and then with earth, so that the external appearance resembles a dung-hill. Near each end of the roof is left a square opening, which admits the light; one of these openings being only intended for this purpose, and the other being also used to go in and out by

has a hood to it,
 ar boots, and all
 of wood, with a
 with green and
 rim, they fix the
 glass beads are
 two, formed of
 women puncture
 the lower lip, in
 common here to
 woman without it.
 strils; and all of

ls, roots, berries,
 during the sum-
 e in winter; and
 he same season of
 aw. Boiling and
 we saw practised
 ability learnt from
 small brass kettles.
 one, with sides of

chief of this island
 libut, just caught.
 wo of his servants
 ing out the slime
 d of the fish, took
 , and seated him-
 upon a part of
 rewed before the
 s, and put them
 em with as much
 n he had finishe
 ieeces, were given
 eeth and gnawed

are less dirty m
 near themselves
 method of build-
 along square pit
 and twenty in
 aller. Over this
 n the sea throw
 s, and then with
 oles a dung-hill
 ening, which ad
 nly intended for
 o in and out by



with
are
rath
fam
apar
but
the h
clear
hous
cove
and
is by
cont
place
their

The
spoon
All th
observ
hatche
fitting

The
much
among
seen, r
bably
purcha
not bo

The
want a
being
and m
They
split to
female
or boar
woode
ture m
beautif
of their
nor pe

No
They a
simple
tended
a plate
grass,
selves
under

with the assistance of a ladder, or rather a post, in which steps are cut. In some houses there is an entrance below, but this is rather uncommon. Round the sides and ends of the huts, the families, several of which dwell together, have their separate apartments, where they sleep, and sit at work, not on benches, but in a sort of concave trench, dug entirely round the inside of the house, and covered with mats, so that this part is kept pretty clean and decent. The same cannot be said of the middle of the house, which is common to all the families. For though it be covered with dry grass, it is a receptacle for every kind of dirt, and the place were the urine trough stands; the stench of which is by no means improved by raw hides, or leather, being almost continually steeped in it. Behind, and over the trench, they place the few effects that they have in their possession, such as their mats, skins, and apparel.

Their furniture consists of buckets, cans, wooden bowls, spoons, matted baskets, and sometimes a Russian kettle or pot. All these utensils are made in a very neat manner; and yet they observed no other tools among them than the knife and the hatchet, that is, a small, flat piece of iron, made like an adze, by fitting it into a crooked wooden handle.

Though the Russians live among these people, they found much less iron in possession of the latter than they had met with among other tribes on the American continent, who had never seen, nor, perhaps, had any intercourse with the Russians. Probably a few beads, and a small quantity of tobacco and snuff, purchase all they have to spare. There are few of them that do not both smoke and chew tobacco, and take snuff.

They did not seem to be very desirous of more iron, or to want any other instruments, except sewing needles, their own being made of bone. With them they not only sew their canoes, and make their clothes, but also work very curious embroidery. They use, instead of thread, the fibres of sinews, which they split to the thickness required. All sewing is performed by the females; they are the shoemakers, tailors, and boat builders, or boat coverers; for the men, in all probability, construct the wooden frame over which the skins are sewed. They manufacture mats and baskets of grass, which are both strong and beautiful. There is, indeed, a neatness and perfection in most of their work, that shews they are neither deficient in ingenuity nor perseverance.

No fire-place was observed in any one of their habitations. They are lighted, as well as heated by lamps; which, though simple, effectually answer the purpose for which they are intended. They consist of a flat stone, hollowed on one side like a plate; in the hollow part they put the oil, mixed with some dry grass, which serves for a wick. Both sexes often warm themselves over one of these lamps, by placing it between their legs, under their garments, and sitting thus over it for a few minutes.

These people produce fire both by collision and attrition; the first by striking two stones against each other, on one of which a quantity of brimstone had been previously rubbed. The latter method is performed by means of two pieces of wood, one of which is flat and the other is a stick of about eighteen inches in length. They press the pointed end of the stick upon the other piece, whirling it nimbly round as a drill, and thus fire is procured in a few minutes. This method is common in many countries. It is not only practised by these people, but also by the Kamtschadales, the Greenlanders, the Otahiteans, the New Hollanders, and the Brazilians, and probably by other nations. Some men of learning and genius have founded an argument on this custom, to prove that this and that nation are of the same extraction; but accidental agreements, in a few particular instances, will not authorize such a conclusion; nor, on the other hand, will a disagreement either in manners or customs, between two different nations, prove of course, that they are of different extraction.

No offensive, nor even defensive weapon among the natives of Oonalashka were seen. It can scarcely be supposed that the Russians found them in such a defenceless state; it is rather to be imagined, that, for their own security, they have disarmed them. Political motives, likewise, may have induced the Russians not to permit these islanders to have any large canoes; for it can hardly be believed that they had none such originally as they were found among all their neighbours. However, none were seen here except two or three that belonged to the Russians.

The canoes in use among the natives, are smaller than any of those we had seen upon the coast of America, from which, however they differ but little in their construction. The form of these terminate somewhat abruptly; the head is forked, and the upper point of the fork projects without the under one, which is level with the surface of the water. Why they should thus construct them it is difficult to conceive, for the fork is apt to catch hold of every thing that comes in the way; to prevent which they fix a piece of small stick from one point to the other. In other respects they build their canoes after the manner of those of the Esquimaux and Greenlanders; the framing being of slender laths, and the covering of seal-skins. They are about twelve feet long, eighteen inches broad in the middle, and twelve or fourteen inches deep. Upon occasion, they can carry two persons, one of whom is stretched at full length in the canoe, and the other sits in the seat, or round hole, which is nearly in the middle. Round this hole is a rim or hoop of wood, about which gut-skin is sewed, which can be drawn together, or opened like a purse, with leathern strings fitted to the outer edge. The man sits in this place, draws the skin tight about his body over his gut-frock, and brings the ends of the thongs, or purse-strings, over his shoulder. The sleeves of his frock are fastened tight round his

rists
rawn
asily
ver, a
carries
be do
middle
ther,
mpelle
ailing
at the r
with be
Their
canoes,
remely
those us
point of
island,
Greenla
long.
ments, a
of fir, ar
bone, in
bone, w
as to be
the mid
compose
sooner s
remains
serves a
fatigue i
these da
fourteen
the bette
hollow,
piece o
extremi
fore-fing
fingers
The na
yards,
expert
use hoc
twisted
Wha
trout,
here; a
opport
the gr

trists; and it being close round his neck, and the hood being drawn over his head, where his cap confines it, water cannot easily penetrate, either into the canoe, or to his body. If, however, any water should find means to insinuate itself, the boatman carries a piece of sponge, with which he dries it up. He uses the double-bladed paddle, which is held with both hands in the middle, striking the water first on one side, and then on the other, with a quick regular motion. By this means the canoe is impelled at a great rate, and in a direction perfectly straight. In sailing from Egoochshak to Samganoodha, though the ship went at the rate of seven miles an hour, two or three canoes kept pace with her.

Their hunting and fishing implements lie ready upon their canoes, under straps fixed for the purpose. They are all extremely well made of wood and bone, and differ very little from those used by the Greenlanders. The only difference is in the point of the missile dart; which in some that they saw at this island, does not exceed an inch in length; whereas those of the Greenlanders, according to Crantz, are about eighteen inches long. Indeed these darts, as well as some other of their instruments, are extremely curious. Their darts are generally made of fir, and are about four feet in length. One end is formed of bone, into which, by means of a socket, another small piece of bone, which is barbed, is fixed, but contrived in such a manner as to be put in and taken out without trouble; this is secured to the middle of the stick by a strong, though thin piece of twine, composed of sinews. The bird, fish, or other animal, is no sooner struck, than the pointed bone slips out of the socket, but remains fixed in its body by means of the barb. The dart then serves as a float to trace the animal, and also contributes to fatigue it considerably, so that it is easily taken. They throw these darts by the assistance of a thin piece of wood, twelve or fourteen inches long; the middle of this is slightly hollowed, for the better reception of the weapon; and to the termination of the hollow, which does not extend to the end, is fixed a short pointed piece of bone, to prevent the dart from slipping. The other extremity is furnished with a hole for the reception of the fore-finger, and the sides are made to coincide with the other fingers and thumb, in order to grasp with greater firmness. The natives throw these darts to the distance of eighty or ninety yards, with great force and dexterity. They are exceedingly expert in striking fish, both in the sea and in rivers; they also use hooks and lines, nets and wears; the lines are formed of twisted sinews, and the hooks of bone.

Whales, porpoises, grampusses, halibut, sword-fish, salmon, trout, cod, soles, flat-fish, and several other sorts, are found here; and there may be many more that they had not an opportunity of seeing. Salmon and halibut appear to be in the greatest plenty; and on them the inhabitants of these

isles principally subsist, at least they were the only sort of fish, except cod, that they observed to be laid up for their winter store.

Seals, and all that tribe of sea-animals, are not so numerous as they are in many other seas. Nor can this be thought surprising, since there is hardly any part of the coast, on either continent, or any of the islands lying between them, but what is inhabited, and whose inhabitants hunt these animals for their food and clothing. Sea-horses are, indeed, to be found in prodigious numbers about the ice; and the sea-otter is scarce anywhere to be met with but in this sea. An animal was sometimes seen by us that blew after the manner of whales; it had a head resembling that of a seal, but was larger than that animal, and its colour was white with dark spots interspersed. This was, perhaps, the *manati* or sea-cow.

Water fowls are neither found here in such numbers, nor in such variety, as in the northern parts of the Atlantic Ocean. However, there are some in these parts that we do not recollect to have seen in other countries; particularly the *alca monochroa* of Steller, and a black and white duck, they judged to be different from the stone-duck that Krashcheninoff has described in his History of Kamstchatka. All the other birds they saw are mentioned by this author, except some which they met with near the ice; and the greatest part of these, if not all, have been described by Martin, in his voyage to Greenland. It is a little extraordinary, that penguins, which are so frequently met with in many parts of the world, should not be found in this sea. Albatrosses too are extremely scarce here. The few land-birds seen by us are the same with those of Europe; but there were probably many others which they had no opportunity of observing. A very beautiful bird was shot in the woods at Norton Sound: which, they understood, was sometimes found in England, and known by the appellation of chatterer. Our people saw other small birds there, but in no great abundance of variety; such as the bull-finch, the woodpecker, the yellow-finch, and titmouse.

The excursions and observations of the voyagers being confined to the sea-coast, they cannot be expected to have much knowledge of the animals or vegetables of the country. There are few other insects besides musquitoes; and they saw few reptiles except lizards. There are no deer at Oonalashka, or any of the neighbouring islands; nor are there any domestic animals, not even dogs. Weasels and foxes were the only quadrupeds they observed; but the natives told them that they had likewise hares, and the *marmottas* mentioned by Krashcheninoff. Hence, it appears, that the inhabitants procure the greatest share of their food from the sea and rivers. They are also indebted to the sea for all the wood which they use for building, and other necessary purposes; as there is not a tree to be seen growing

the only sort of
laid up for their

not so numerous
s be thought sur-
coast, on either
them, but what
animals for their
be found in pro-
r is scarce any-
l was sometimes
; it had a head
that animal, and
sed. This was,

numbers, nor in
Atlantic Ocean.
do not recollect
alca monochroa
judged to be dif-
has described
birds they saw
h they met with
t all, have been
d. It is a little
uently met with
nd in this sea.
few land-birds
but there were
nity of observ-
ods at Norton
found in Eng-
Our people
abundance of
the yellow-

rs being con-
to have much
ntry. There
saw few rep-
ashka, or any
estic animals,
r quadrupeds
had likewise
icoff. Hence,
est share of
indebted to
g, and other
en growing

upon any of the islands, nor upon the neighbouring coast of the continent.

The seeds of the plants are said to be conveyed, by various means, from one part of the world to another; even to islands lying in the midst of extensive oceans, and far distant from any other lands. It is therefore remarkable, that there are no trees growing on this part of the American continent, nor upon any of the adjacent isles. They are doubtless as well situated for receiving seeds, by the various ways we have heard of, as those coasts which have plenty of wood. Nature has, perhaps, denied to some soils the power of raising trees without the assistance of art. With respect to the drift-wood upon the shores of these islands, we have no doubt of its coming from America; for though there may be none on the neighbouring coast, a sufficient quantity may grow farther up the country, which may be broken loose by torrents in the spring, and brought down to the sea; and not a little may be conveyed from the woody coasts, though they lie at a greater distance.

Plants are to be found in great variety at Oonalashka. Several of them are such as they met with in Europe, and also in Newfoundland, and other parts of America: and others of them, which are likewise found in Kamtschatka, are eaten by the natives both there and here. Of these, Krushchenicoff has given us descriptions. The principle one is the *saranne*, or lily-root; which is about the size of a root of garlic, round, and composed of a number of small cloves and grains; when boiled, it somewhat resembles saloop, and the taste of it is not disagreeable. It does not appear to be in great abundance.

Among the food of the natives we may reckon some other wild roots; the stalk of a plant not unlike angelica; and berries of different species, such as cran-berries, hurtle-berries, bramble-berries, and heath-berries; besides a small, red berry, which, in Newfoundland, is denominated partridge-berry; and another brown berry, with which our men were unacquainted. This has somewhat of the taste of a sloe, but is different from it in every other respect. When eaten in a considerable quantity it is very astringent. Brandy may be distilled from it. Captain Clerke endeavoured to preserve some; but they fermented, and became as strong as if they had been steeped in spirits.

There were a few other plants which they found serviceable, but are not made use of either by the Russians or the natives. These were pea-tops, wild purslain, a sort of scurvy-grass, cresses, and some others. All these were found very palatable, whether dressed in soups or in salads. The valleys and low-grounds abound with grass, which grows very thick, and to a great length. Our men were of opinion that cattle might subsist at Oonalashka, all the year round, without being housed. The soil in many places appeared to be capable of producing grain and vegetables but at present the Russian traders and the

natives seem contented with the spontaneous productions of nature.

Native sulphur was observed among the people of this island: as well as ochre, and a stone that affords a purple colour, besides another that gives a good green: this last, in its natural state, is of a greyish, green hue, coarse, and heavy. It easily dissolves in oil; but when it is put into water, it entirely loses its properties. As for the stones about the shore and hills, there was nothing extraordinary in them.

The Oonalashkans inter their dead on the tops of hills, and raise over the grave a little hillock. One of the natives, who attended Captain Cook in a walk into the country, pointed out several of these repositories of the dead. There was one of them, by the side of the road, over which was raised a heap of stones; and all who passed added a stone to it. In the country were seen several stone hillocks, that seemed to have been artificially raised. Some of them were, to appearance, of great antiquity.

Nothing was ascertained as to the notions of these people respecting the Deity, and a future state; or with regard to their diversions, Captain Cook having seen nothing that could give him any insight into either.

The natives are extremely cheerful and friendly among each other, and they always treated our men with great civility. The natives are subject to the cancer, or a complaint of a similar nature, which those whom it attacks, are very careful to conceal. They do not appear to be long lived, as not a person, man or woman, was seen who could be supposed to be sixty years of age; and very few seemed to be above fifty.

It has been occasionally mentioned, from the time of the arrival in Prince William's Sound, how remarkably the inhabitants on this north-western side of America resemble the Esquimaux and Greenlanders in various particulars of person, dress, weapons, canoes, and the like. Captain Cook, was, however, less struck with this, than with the affinity subsisting between the dialects of the Greenlanders and Esquimaux, and those of the Oonalashka and Norton's Sound. But it must be observed with respect to the words collected on this side of America, that too much stress is not to be laid upon their being accurately represented; for, after the death of Mr. Anderson, the expedition had few who took any great degree of pains about such matters; and it has often been found that the same word, written down by two or more persons, from the mouth of the same native, differed considerably, on being compared together. Nevertheless, enough is certain to authorize this judgment, that there is great reason to suppose that all these nations are of the same extraction; and if that be the case, there is little doubt of there being a northern communication by sea, between the western side of America and the eastern side, through Baffin's Bay; which communication, however, is perhaps, effectually shut up

us productions of

people of this island: purple colour, be- last, in its natural heavy. It easily it entirely loses its ore and hills, there

tops of hills, and the natives, who ntry, pointed out was one of them, a heap of stones; country were seen been artificially of great antiquity. of these people th regard to their g that could give

ndly among each eat civility. The aint of a similar areful to conceal. person, man or e sixty years of

he time of the ably the inhabi- mble the Esqui- f person, dress, was, however, sisting between ux, and those of st be observed f America, that eing accurately on, the expedi- ins about such e word, written of the same na- gether. Never- ent, that there re of the same doubt of there en the western Baffin's Bay; tually shut up

against ships, by ice and other obstructions; such, at least, was Captain Cook's opinion at this time.

The tides in these parts are not very considerable, except in Cook's River. The flood comes from the south or south-east, following the direction of the coast to the north-west. Between Cape Prince of Wales and Norton's Sound they found a current setting towards the north-west, particularly off that cape, and within Sledge Island. This current, however, extended but a little way from the coast, and was neither consistent nor uniform. To the north of Cape Prince of Wales they observed neither tide nor current, either on the coast of America or that of Asia. This circumstance gave rise to an opinion which some of our people entertained, that the two coasts were connected either by land or ice; and that opinion received some degree of strength, from their never having any hollow waves from the northward, and from their seeing ice almost the whole way across.

From the observations made during their continuance in the harbour of Samganoodeha, its latitude is 53 deg. 5 min. north, and longitude 193 deg. 29 min. 45 sec. east.

On Monday, the 26th of October, Captain Cook sailed from Samganoodeha harbour, when the wind being southerly he stood to the westward, intending to proceed to the Sandwich Islands, in order to pass a few of the winter months there, if he should meet with the necessary refreshments, and then advance in his progress to Kamtschatka, so as to arrive there about the middle of May in the ensuing year. This being determined on, the commodore gave Captain Clerke instructions for proceeding, in case of separation; Sandwich Islands being appointed for the first place of rendezvous; and for the second, Petropaulowska, in Kamtschatka. Having got out of the harbour, the wind veered to the south-east, with which they were carried to the western point of Oonalashka, by the evening. Here the wind was at south, and they stretched to the westward till the next morning at seven, at which time the ship wore, and stood to the east. The wind had now so greatly increased, as to reduce their ship to the three courses. It blew in heavy squalls, accompanied with rain, hail, and snow.

At nine o'clock in the morning of the 28th, Oonalashka bore south-east, about four leagues distant. The strength of the gale was much abated, and towards the evening, insensibly veered round to the east, and soon after got to north-east, increasing to a very hard gale, attended with rain. At half past six, on the morning of the 29th, they discovered land, which was supposed to be the island Amoghtha. At eight, the wind having veered to the westward, they could not weather the island, and gave over plying; bearing away for Oonalashka, in order to go the north of it, not daring, in so hard a gale of wind, to attempt a passage to the south-east of it. When they bore away the land was

about four leagues distant. The longitude was 191 deg. 17 min., and the latitude 53 deg. 38 min.

On the 2nd of November, the wind was at south, and, in the evening, blew a violent storm, which occasioned the ship to bring to. Several guns were fired by the Discovery, which were immediately answered. Captain Cook lost sight of her at eight, and saw no more of her till eight the next morning. She joined at ten; when, the height of the gale being over, and the wind having veered to north-north-west, they made sail, and pursued their course to the south-ward.

In the morning of Saturday the 7th, a shag or cormorant flew often round the ship. As it is not common for these birds to go far out of the sight of land, it was supposed that there was some at no great distance; though they could not discover any. Having but little wind in the afternoon, Captain Clerke came on-board, and informed Captain Cook of a melancholy accident that happened on-board his ship the second night after they departed from Samganoodha. The main-tack gave way, killed one man, and wounded the boatswain and two or three others. In addition to this misfortune his sails and rigging received considerable damage on the 3rd, and he fired the guns as a signal to bring to.

At noon, on the 12th, the wind returned to the northward, and veered to the east on the 15th. At this time they saw a tropic-bird and a dolphin; the first observed in their passage. On the 17th, the wind was southward, where it continued till the afternoon of the 19th, when it was instantly brought round by the west to the north, by a squall of wind and rain. The wind increased to a very strong gale, and brought them under double-reefed topsails. In lowering the main top-sail in order to reef it, the force of the wind tore it out of the foot-rope, and it was split in several parts. They got, however, another topsail to the yard the next morning, and steered to the southward till the 25th, at day-light, when they were in the latitude of 20 deg. 55 min.

The next morning, at day-break, land was discovered, extending from south-south-east to west. They stood for it, and at eight o'clock it extended from south-east to west, the nearest part about two leagues distant. They now perceived that their discovery of the group of Sandwich Islands had been very imperfect, that the which they had visited in their progress northward, all lying to the leeward of the present station.

An elevated hill appeared in the country, whose summit rose above the clouds. The land, from this hill fell in a gradual slope terminating in a steep, rocky coast; the sea breaking against it in a most dreadful surf. Unable to weather the island, they bore up and ranged along the coast to the westward; and now perceived people on many parts of the shore, and several houses and plantations. The country appeared to be well

supplie
places
It be
of pro
accom
ed, C
on-bo
himself
only fo
mid ag
tain res
preven
About
the nea
59 min
came o
of them
that the
leeward
not mis
The
exchan
fruit or
island,
the eve
he coul
was. I
produc
stood
visited
bringin
small p
Captai
ship tr
time th
any in
On
the is
longe
He m
little
about
to ren
to att
In th
by th
some
A
exte

supplied with wood and water, and streams were seen in various places falling into the sea.

It being of the utmost importance to procure a proper supply of provisions at these islands, which could not possibly be accomplished if a free trade with the natives were to be permitted, Captain Cook published an order, prohibiting all persons on-board the ships from trading, except those appointed by himself and Captain Clerke; and these were enjoined to trade only for provisions and refreshments. Injunctions were also laid against the admittance of women into the ships, under certain restrictions, but the evil, which was intended to have been prevented by this regulation, had already got amongst them.

About noon, the coast extended from south-east to north-west, the nearest above three miles distant, in the latitude of 20 deg. 59 min., and the longitude of 203. deg. 50 min. Some canoes came off, and, when they got alongside, many of the conductors of them came into the ship without hesitation. It was perceived that they were of the same nation as those islanders more to the leeward, which had already been visited, and, if the men did not mistake them, they knew of their having been there.

The natives supplied them with a quantity of cuttle-fish, in exchange for nails and pieces of iron. They brought but little fruit or roots, but said that they had plenty of them on their island, as well as of hogs and fowls. The horizon being clear in the evening, Captain Cook supposed the westernmost land that he could see to be an island, distinct from that off which he now was. Expecting the natives would return the next day, with the produce of their island, the ship plied off the whole night, and stood close in shore the next morning. At first they were visited but by few, but, towards noon, many of them appeared, bringing with them potatoes, tarro, bread-fruit, plantains, and small pigs, all of which were bartered for iron tools and nails, Captain Cook having few other articles to give them. The ship traded with them till about four in the afternoon, at which time they had disposed of all their cargoes; and, not expressing any inclination to fetch more, they immediately made sail.

On the 30th, in the afternoon, being off the north-east end of the island, some more canoes come off. These principally belonged to a chief named Terreoboo, who came in one of them. He made the commodore a present of two or three pigs; and a little fruit was procured by bartering with the other people. In about two hours they all left, except seven or eight, who chose to remain on-board. Soon after a double sailing-canoe arrived to attend upon them, which they towed astern the whole night. In the evening another island was seen to the windward, called by the natives Owhyhee. That which this ship had been off for some days, was called Mowee.

At eight, in the morning, on the 1st of December, Owhyhee extended from south-east to south-west. Perceiving that the

ship could fetch Owhyhee, Captain Cook stood for it, when the visitors from Mowee thought proper to embark in their canoes, and went ashore. The ship spent the night standing off and on the north side of Owhyhee.

In the morning of the 2nd, to their great surprise, our men saw the summits of the mountains covered with snow. Though they were not of an extraordinary height, the snow, in some places, appeared to be of a considerable depth, and to have remained there some time. Drawing near the shore, some of the natives approached who appeared a little shy at first, but our men prevailed on some of them to come on board: and at length induced them to return to the island, to bring a supply of what was wanted. They brought a tolerable supply of pigs, fruit, and roots. The ship traded with them till about six in the evening, when they stood off, in order to ply to windward round the island.

An eclipse of the moon was observed in the evening of the 4th. Mr. King used, for the purpose of observation, a night telescope, with a circular aperture at the object end. The commodore observed with the telescopes of one of Ramsden's sextants.

In the evening of the 6th, being near the shore, and five leagues further up the coast, our men again traded with the natives; but, receiving only a trifling supply, they stood in the next morning, when the number of visitors was considerable, with whom they trafficked till two in the afternoon, and had now procured pork, fruit, and roots, sufficient to supply them for four or five days. They then made sail, and continued to ply to windward.

Captain Cook having procured a quantity of sugar-cane, and having upon a trial, discovered that a decoction of it made very palatable beer, he ordered some of it to be brewed for general use; but on the broaching of the casks, not one of the crew would even taste it. The commodore, having no other motive in preparing this beverage, than that of preserving the spirits for a colder climate, neither exerted his authority, nor had recourse to persuasion, to induce them to drink it; well knowing that so long, as they could be plentifully supplied with other vegetables, there was no danger of the scurvy. But that he might not be disappointed in his views, he ordered that no grog should be served in either of the ships. The commodore and his officers continued to drink this sugar-cane beer, whenever materials could be procured for brewing it. Some hops, which they had on-board, improved it much; and it was doubtless extremely wholesome; though the inconsiderate crew could not be persuaded but that it was injurious to their health.

Innovations of whatever kind on-board a ship are sure to meet with the disapprobation of the seamen, though ever so much to their advantage. Portable soup and sour kroust were condemned at first as improper food for human beings.—Few commanders

have
their
have
trying
deviat
great
that h
enemy
Have
Capt
than h
who ca
have a
ply of
south-e
eastwa
The w
on the
veering
it was
westerl
evening
now bo
they ex
came c
the met
toward
seen u
league.
At t
south-e
east, t
been o
the co
about
the sh
dange
more
just a
was r
topsa
two;
takin
yard
tance
appe
It
extr
beer

have introduced more useful varieties of food and drink into their ships than Captain Cook has done. Few others indeed have had the opportunities, or been driven to the necessity of trying such experiments. It was, nevertheless, owing to certain deviations from established practice, that he was enabled, in a great degree to preserve his people from the scurvy, a distemper that has often made more havoc in peaceful voyages than the enemy in military expeditions.

Having kept at some distance from the coast till the 13th, Captain Cook stood in again, six leagues farther to windward than he had as yet reached; and, after trading with the natives who came off to them, returned to sea. It was also intended to have approached the shore again on the 15th, to get a fresh supply of fruit and roots; but the wind happening to be then at south-east, they embraced the opportunity of stretching to the eastward, in order to get round the south-east end of the island. The wind continued at south-east the greatest part of the 16th; on the 17th it was variable, and on the 18th it was continually veering. Sometimes it blew in hard squalls, and at other times it was calm, with thunder lightning, and rain. The wind was westerly for a few hours in the afternoon, but it shifted in the evening to east by south. The south-east point of the island now bore south-west by south, distant about five leagues, and they expected that they would be able to weather it; but it became calm at one the next morning, and they were left wholly at the mercy of a north-easterly swell, which greatly impelled them towards the land; insomuch, that before morning lights were seen upon the shore, which was then about the distance of a league. It was a dark night, with thunder, lightning and rain.

At three o'clock the calm was succeeded by a breeze from the south-east, blowing in squalls with rain. They stood to the north-east, thinking it the best to tack to clear the coast; but, if it had been day-light they would have chosen the other. At day-break the coast extended from north by west to south-west by west, about half a league distant; a most dreadful surf breaking upon the shore. The ships had evidently been in the most imminent danger, from which they were not yet secure, the wind veering more easterly; so that for a considerable time they were but just able to keep their distance from the coast. Their situation was rendered the more alarming by the leach-ropes of the main-topsail giving way, in consequence of which the sail was rent in two; the top-gallant sails giving way in the same manner. By taking a favourable opportunity, they soon got others to the yards, and left the land astern. The Discovery was at some distance to the north, entirely clear from the land: nor did she appear in sight till eight o'clock.

It is an obvious remark, that the bolt ropes to the sails were extremely deficient in strength or substance. This has frequently been the source of infinite labour and vexation, and occasioned

the loss of much canvass, by their giving way. It was upon this occasion remarked by Captain Cook, that the cordage, canvass, and other stores made use of in the navy, are inferior in general to those used in the merchant service.

The commodore also observed, that an opinion prevailed among all naval officers, that the king's stores were better than any others, no ships being so well fitted out as those of the navy. They may be right, he admits, as to the quantity, but, he apprehends, not with respect to the quality of the stores. This, indeed, is not often tried, for these things are usually condemned, or converted to other uses before they are half worn out. Only such voyages as this afford an opportunity of making the trial; the ship's situation being such as to render it necessary to wear every thing to the extreme.

When day-light appeared, the natives ashore exhibited a white flag, as a signal, it was imagined of peace and friendship. Many of them ventured out after the ships; but, as the wind freshened, and the ships were unwilling to wait, they were soon left astern. In the afternoon the ships made another attempt to weather the eastern extreme, in which they failed; when the commodore gave it up, and ran down to the *Discovery*.

Getting round the island was, indeed, a matter of no importance; for they had seen the extent of it to the south-east, which was all the commodore aimed at, the natives having informed them that there was no other island to the windward of this; but, as they were so near accomplishing their design, they did not entirely abandon the idea of weathering it, and continued to ply.

At noon, on the 20th, the south-east point bore south, at the distance of three leagues; the snowy hills bore west-north-west; and the ships within four miles of the nearest shore. They were visited in the afternoon by some of the natives, who came off in their canoes, bringing with them pigs and plantains. The latter were very acceptable, having been without vegetables for some days; but the supply received was so inconsiderable (barely sufficient for one day) that they stood in the next morning, till within four miles of the land, when a number of canoes came off, laden with provisions. The people in them continued trading till four o'clock in the afternoon; when, having got a pretty good supply, they made sail, and stretched off to the northward.

Our men met with less reserve and suspicion in their intercourse with the people of this island, than they had ever experienced among any tribe of savages. They frequently sent up into the ship the several articles they meant to barter, and afterwards came in themselves, to traffic on the quarter-deck. The inhabitants of Otaheite, whom they had so often visited, had not that confidence in their integrity; whence it may be inferred that those of Owhyhee are more faithful in their dealings with each other than the Otaheiteans.

It was upon this ordage, canvass, superior in general

pinion prevailed were better than as those of the quantity, but, he the stores. This, are usually coney are half worn unity of making der it necessary

ore exhibited a and friendship, ut, as the wind they were soon nother attempt led ; when the overy.

r of no import- uth-east, which aving informed dward of this; gn, they did not ntinued to ply. e south, at the re west-north- nearest shore. e natives, who and plantains. out vegetables nconsiderable e next morn- ber of canoes em continued , having got ed off to the

n their inter- d ever expe- ently sent up er, and after- e-deck. The visited, had y be inferred ealings with

It is but justice to observe that they never attempted to overreach in exchanges, nor to commit a single theft; they perfectly understood trading, and seemed to comprehend the reason of the ship plying upon the coast, for, though they brought off plenty of pigs and other provisions, they were particular in keeping up their price, and, rather than dispose of them at an under-value, would carry them on shore again.

After purchasing what the natives had brought off on the 22nd, the ship made sail, and stretched to the north; at midnight they tacked, and stood to the south-east. Imagining the Discovery would see the tack, the Resolution omitted the signal, but it afterwards appeared that she did not see them, and continued standing to the north, as the next morning, at day-light, she was not to be seen. But, as the weather was now hazy, they could not see far; it was therefore possible that the Discovery might be following. At noon they were in latitude of 19 deg. 55 min. and in the longitude of 205 deg. 3 min.; and were two leagues from the nearest part of the island. In the evening, at six, the southernmost part of the island bore south-west, the nearest shore about seven miles distant. The ship had, therefore, now succeeded in getting to the windward of the island, which they had aimed at with so much perseverance.

The Discovery was not yet within sight, but as the wind was favourable for her to follow, it was expected she would shortly join; but it was afterwards conjectured, that she was gone to leeward, in order to meet the Resolution that way, not having been able to weather the north-east part of the island.

As the ship generally kept from five to ten leagues from the land, only one canoe came off till the 28th; when she was visited by about a dozen, bringing, as usual, the produce of the island. They were concerned that the people had been at the trouble of coming, as they could not possibly trade with them, not having consumed the former stock; and experience had convinced them that the hogs could not be kept alive, nor the roots be many days preserved from putrefaction. They meant, however, not to leave this part of the island till they had got a supply, as they could not easily return to it, if it should hereafter be found necessary. On the 30th, they began to be in want, but a calm prevented them from approaching the shore. A breeze, however, sprung up at midnight, which enabled the ship to stand in for the land at day-break; at ten o'clock the islanders visited them, bringing with them a quantity of fruit and roots, but only three small pigs. This scanty supply was, perhaps, occasioned by their not having purchased those which had lately been brought off.

For the purposes of traffic the ship brought to, but was shortly interrupted by an excessive rain, and indeed, they were too far from the shore, nor could they venture to go nearer, as they could not, for a moment, depend upon the wind's continuing

where it was. The swell, too, was extremely high, and set obliquely upon the shore, where it broke into a frightful surf. They had fine weather in the evening, and passed the night in making boards. Before day-break, on the 1st of January, 1779, the atmosphere was laden with heavy clouds; and the new year was ushered in with a heavy rain. There was a light breeze southerly, with some calms; at ten, the rain ceased, the sky became clear, and the breeze freshened.

Being now about four or five miles from the shore, some canoes arrived with hogs, fruit, and roots. The sailors traded with the people in the canoes till three in the afternoon, when, being well supplied, they made sail, in order to proceed to the lee-side of the island, in search of the Discovery. The ship stretched to the eastward, till midnight, when the wind was favourable, and they went upon the other tack.

The 2nd, 3rd, and 4th, were passed in running down the south-east side of the island, standing off and on during the nights, and employing part of each day in lying to, to give the natives an opportunity of trading with the men. They frequently came off at a distance of five leagues from the shore, but never brought much with them, at those times, either from a fear of losing their articles in the sea, or from the uncertainty of a market. The sailors procured a quantity of salt, of a most excellent quality.

In the morning of the 5th the ships passed the south point of the island, in the latitude of 18 deg. 54 min. beyond which the coast tends north, 60 deg. west. On this point stands a pretty large village, the inhabitants of which thronged off to the ship with hogs and women. The latter could not possibly be prevented from coming on board; and they were less reserved than any women our men had ever seen. They seemed, indeed, to have visited with no other view than to tender their persons.

Having now got a quantity of salt, they purchased only such hogs as were large enough for salting; refusing all those that were under size. But they could seldom procure any that exceeded the weight of sixty pounds. Happily they had still some vegetables remaining, as they were now supplied with but few of these productions. Indeed, from the appearance of this part of the country, it seemed incapable of affording them. Evident marks presented themselves of its having been laid waste by the explosion of a volcano; and though as yet nothing like one had been seen on the island, the devastation it had made in the neighbourhood was but too visible.

Though the coast is sheltered from the reigning winds, it had no anchorage; a line of a hundred and sixty fathoms not reaching the bottom, within half a mile of the shore. The natives having now left the ship, they ran a few miles down the coast in the evening, and passed the night in standing off and on. They were, the next morning, again visited by the natives,

who came laden with the same articles of commerce as before. Being not far from the shore, Captain Cook sent Mr. Bligh, in a boat, in order to scound the coast, and also to go ashore in search of fresh water. He reported, on his return, that, within two cables' length of the shore, he found no soundings with a line of one hundred and sixty fathoms; that, on the land, he found no stream or spring; that there was some rain water in holes, upon the rocks, and even that was brackish from the spray of the sea; that the whole surface of the country was composed of slags and ashes, with a few plants interspersed.

Between ten and eleven, the Discovery was seen coming round the south point of the island, and at one she joined. Captain Clerke then came on board the Resolution, and stated, that, having cruized four or five days where they were separated, he plied round the east side of the island; where, meeting with unfavourable winds, he had been driven to some distance from the coast. One of the islanders continued on board the whole time, at his own request, having refused to leave the ship, though opportunities had presented themselves.

The night was spent in standing off and on; in the morning the ships stood in again, and were visited by many of the natives. At noon, the latitude was 19 deg. 1 min. and the longitude 203 deg. 26 min.; the nearest part of the island two leagues distant. On the 8th, at day-break, they perceived that whilst plying in the night, the currents had carried them back considerably to windward; and that they were now off the south-west point of the island, where they brought to, to enable the inhabitants to trade with them.

The night was spent in standing off and on. Four men and ten women, who came on board the preceding day, remained. The commodore not liking the company of the latter, stood in for the shore, on the 29th, about noon, solely with a view of getting rid of the guests; when, some canoes coming off, he embraced that opportunity of sending them away.

On the 10th, in the morning, they had light airs from north-west, and calms; at eleven, the wind freshened at north-north-west, which so greatly retarded them, that, in the evening, at eight, the south snowy hill bore north, $1\frac{1}{2}$ deg. east.

At four in the morning of the 11th, the wind being at west, they approached the land, in expectation of getting some refreshments. The natives seeing them so near, began to come off, and continued trading with them the whole day; though they procured but a very scanty supply, many of those who came off in their canoes, not having a single thing to barter. From this circumstance, it appeared, that this part of the island was extremely poor, and had already furnished them with every thing they could spare.

The 12th was employed in plying off and on, with a fresh gale at the west. A mile from the shore they found ground, at

the depth of fifty-five fathoms. At five, they stood to the southward, and at midnight they had a calm. The next morning, at eight, they had a small breeze at south-south-east, and steered for the land.

A few canoes came off with some hogs, but they brought no vegetables, which were now much wanted. In the evening, they had got the length of the south-west point of the island, but, by the veering of the wind, they lost in the night all they had gained in the day. Being in the same situation the next morning, some more canoes attended them; but they brought nothing which they stood in need of. The ships were now destitute of roots and fruit, and therefore obliged to have recourse to sea provisions. Some canoes, however, arrived from the northward, which supplied some hogs and roots.

On the 15th they had variable light airs till five in the afternoon, when a breeze at east-north-east sprung up, and enabled them to steer along shore to the northward. The weather was this day remarkably fine, and they had plenty of company; many of whom continued on board all night, and their canoes were towed astern. On the 16th, at day-break, seeing the appearance of a bay, the commodore sent Mr. Bligh, with a boat from each ship, to survey it, being now about three leagues off.

Canoes arrived from all quarters; insomuch that, by ten in the morning, there were not fewer than a thousand about the two ships, most of them crowded with people, and well laden with hogs and other provisions. Captain Cook was perfectly convinced of their having no hostile intentions; not a single person having a weapon with him of any sort. Trade and curiosity were their only inducements to visit them. Among such numbers as they had at times on board, it might be expected that some should betray a thievish disposition. One of the visitors took a boat's rudder from the ship; he was discovered, but too late to recover it. Captain Cook imagined this to be a good opportunity to shew these islanders the use of fire-arms; and two or three muskets, and as many four-pounders, were, by his orders, fired over the canoe which carried off the rudder. But, as the shot was not intended to take effect, the surrounding multitude were more surprised than frightened.

Mr. Bligh, when he returned in the evening, reported, that he had found a bay with good anchorage, and fresh water, in a desirable situation. Into this bay the commodore determined to take his ships, in order to refit and supply with refreshments. At the approach of night the most considerable part of the visitors retired to the shore; but many, at their own earnest request, were permitted to sleep on board. Curiosity, at least with some of them, was not the only motive; for several articles were missing the next morning: in consequence of which, the commodore came to a resolution not to admit so many on any future night.

to the south
morning, at
and steered

brought no
the evening,
of the island,
might all they
tion the next
they brought
ere now des-
ave recourse
ed from the

in the after-
and enabled
weather was
f company
their canoes
eing the ap-
with a boat
leagues off.
t, by ten in
out the two
laden with
rfectly con-
ngle person
d curiosity
such num-
ected that
the visitors
d, but too
a good op-
; and two
re, by his
der. But,
rrounding

rted, that
ater, in a
etermined
eshments.
rt of the
rnest re-
at least
veral ar-
of which,
many on



On the 17th, at eleven in the forenoon, they anchored in the bay (called by the natives *Karakakooa*), in thirteen fathoms' water, over a sandy bottom, within a quarter of a mile of the north-east shore. The south point of the bay bearing south by west, and the north point west half north. After being moored, the ships continued much crowded with the natives, and surrounded by a vast multitude of canoes. In the course of their voyages they had no where seen such vast numbers of people assembled at one place. Besides those who visited in canoes, all the shore was covered with spectators, and hundreds were swimming about the ships, like shoals of fish. They were struck with the singularity of this scene; and few lamented that they had not succeeded in their late endeavours to find a northern passage homeward. To this disappointment they were indebted for revisiting the Sandwich Islands, and for enriching the voyage with a discovery, in many respects the most important that has been made by Europeans in the Pacific ocean.

The bay of *Karakakooa* is situated in the district of *Akona*, on the west side of the island of *Owhyhee*. It is about a mile in depth, and is bounded by two points of land, bearing south-east and north-west from each other, at the distance of half a league. On the north point, which is flat and barren, stands the village of *Kowrowa*; and in the bottom of the bay, near a grove of tall cocoa trees, there is another village of a more considerable size, called *Kakooa*; between them runs a high rocky cliff, inaccessible from the sea shore. On the south side, the coast for about a mile inland has a rugged appearance; beyond which the country rises with a gradual ascent, and is overspread with cultivated enclosures, and groves of cocoa trees, where the habitations of the people are scattered about in great numbers. Round the bay the shore is covered with a black coral rock, except at *Kakooa*, where there is a fine sandy beach, with a *Morai* at one extremity, and a spring of fresh water at the other. They moored at the north side of this bay, and within a quarter of a mile from the shore. As soon as the inhabitants perceived an intention of anchoring in the bay, they came off in great numbers, expressing their joy by singing, shouting, and the most extravagant gestures. The decks, sides, and rigging of both ships were covered with them. Women and boys, who were unable to procure canoes, came swimming round in shoals; some of whom not finding room to get on board, amused themselves the whole day by playing in the water.

Among the chiefs, who visited the *Resolution*, was a young man named *Pareea*, who was soon perceived to be a person of great authority. He told Captain Cook that he was a *Jakanee** to the sovereign of the island, who was then on a military expedition at *Mowee*, and was expected to return in a few days.

* They could not learn with certainty whether this was a name of office; or expressive of some degree of affinity.

Some presents from the commodore attached him to their interests, and they found him exceedingly useful in the management of his countrymen, as they had soon occasion to experience. For they had not been long at anchor, when it was observed that the *Discovery* had so many people hanging on one side, that she heeled considerably; and the people found it impossible to prevent the crowds from pressing into her. Captain Cook apprehensive that she might receive some injury, communicated his fears to Pareea, who instantly cleared the ship of its encumbrances, and dispersed the canoes that surrounded her.

From this circumstance it appears that the chiefs have a most despotic authority over the inferior people. An instance, similar to this, happened on board the *Resolution*, where the crowd being so great as to impede the necessary business of the ship, it was found necessary to apply to Kaneena, another chief, who had also attached himself particularly to Captain Cook. The inconvenience they laboured under was no sooner mentioned than the chief ordered the natives immediately to quit the vessel; when, without a moment's hesitation, they all jumped overboard, except one person, who, loitering behind, and shewing some unwillingness to obey, Kaneena took him up in his arms and threw him into the sea.

These two chiefs were exceedingly well proportioned, and had countenances remarkably pleasing. Kaneena, whose portrait was drawn by Mr. Webber, was as fine a figure as can be seen. He was about six feet high, had regular and expressive features, with lively dark eyes; his deportment was easy, firm, and graceful.

Mention has already been made that while they were cruising off this island, the inhabitants had acted fairly and honestly, without manifesting the least propensity to theft; which was the more remarkable, because those with whom they had hitherto had any dealing, were people of the lowest rank, such as fishermen or servants. The case was now exceedingly altered. The multitude of islanders who blocked up every part of the ship, afforded opportunities of pilfering without danger of discovery, and even if detected, must have escaped with impunity from our inferiority in number. To the encouragement of their chiefs this alteration in their behaviour might also be attributed; for, as they frequently traced the booty into the possession of some men of consequence, there is little doubt these depredations were committed at their instigation.

Soon after the *Resolution* had got into her station, the two chiefs, Pareea and Kaneena, brought a third on-board, whose name was Koah, who, they were told, was a priest, and had been in his youth a distinguished warrior. He was a little, old man, of an emaciated figure, having sore, red eyes, and his body covered with a leprous scurf, occasioned by the immoderate use

him to their inter-
 in the management
 on to experience,
 n it was observed
 ing on one side,
 e found it impos-
 to her. Captain
 e injury, commu-
 eared the ship of
 that surrounded

chiefs have a most
 n instance, simi-
 where the crowd
 ness of the ship,
 othor chief, who
 ain Cook. The
 oner mentioned
 y to quit the ves-
 ey all jumped
 g behind, and
 took him up in

portioned, and
 na, whose por-
 figure as can be
 and expressive
 was easy, firm,

were cruising
 and honestly,
 which was the
 y had hitherto
 such as fisher-
 altered. The
 rt of the ship,
 of discovery,
 nity from our
 f their chiefs
 ributed; for,
 sion of some
 depredations

tion, the two
 board, whose
 nd had been
 le, old man,
 nd his body
 moderate use

of the *kava*. Being conducted to the cabin, he approached the commodore with the greatest deference, threw a piece of red cloth over his shoulders, and retreating a few paces, made an offering of a small pig, at the same time pronouncing a discourse of considerable length.

During the stay at Owhyhee, this ceremony was repeated often, and appeared from many circumstances, to be a kind of religious adoration. Red cloth is an article with which their idols are arrayed, and a pig is their common offering to the *Fatoous*. Their speeches were delivered with a volubility that indicated them to be conformable to some ritual.

At the conclusion of this ceremony, Koah dined with the commodore, and ate plentifully of what was set before him; but, like most of the islanders in these seas, he could scarcely be prevailed on to taste our wine or spirits a second time. In the evening the commodore, Mr. King, and Mr. Bayly, accompanied him on-shore. As soon as they landed on the beach, they were received by four men, bearing each a wand tipped with dog's hair, and marched before them pronouncing, with a loud voice, a short sentence, in which they could only distinguish the word *Orono*.* The crowd, which had assembled on the shore, retired at the approach of Captain Cook, and not an individual was to be seen, except a few lying prostrate on the ground, near the habitations of the adjacent village.

Before relating an account of the peculiar ceremonies respecting the adoration paid to Captain Cook, it will be necessary to describe the *Morai* already mentioned, situated on the beach at *Kakooa*. It was a square, solid pile of stones, about forty yards long, twenty broad, and fourteen in height. The top was flat, and well paved, and surrounded by a wooden rail, on which were fixed the skulls of those captives sacrificed on the death of their chiefs. A ruinous, wooden building was situated in the centre of the area, connected with the rail on each side, by a stone wall, which divided the whole space into two parts. Five poles, upwards of twenty feet high supported an irregular kind of scaffold on the side next the country; on the opposite side, towards the sea, stood two small houses, with a covered communication.

"Koah conducted the officers to the top of this pile. At the entrance we saw two large, wooden images, with most distorted features, having a long piece of carved wood proceeding from the top of their heads, of a conical form inverted; the rest was without form, and wrapped round with red cloth. Here Captain Cook was received by a tall young man, having a long beard, who presented him to the images, and after chanting a kind of hymn, in which he was assisted by Koah, was led to that side of

* Captain Cook generally went by this name amongst the natives of Owhyhee; but he could never learn its precise meaning. Sometimes they applied it to an invisible being, who, they said, lived in the heavens. He also found that it was a title belonging to a personage of great rank and power in the island, who resembles pretty much the Delai Lama of the Tartars, and the ecclesiastical emperor of Japan.

the *Morai* where the poles were erected. At the foot of them were twelve images ranged in the form of a semicircle; the middle figure having a high table before it like the *Whatta* of Otaheite, on which lay a putrid hog, and under it some cocoa-nuts, plantains, potatoes, bread-fruit, and pieces of sugar-cane. Koah having placed the commodore under this stand, took down the hog, and held it toward him; when, having again addressed him in a long, vehement speech, he let it fall on the ground, and led him to the scaffolding, which they ascended, though at the risk of their falling.

“ We now beheld advancing in solemn procession, and entering the top of the *Morai*, ten men bearing a live hog, and a large piece of red cloth. Advancing a few paces, they stopped, and prostrated themselves; and Kaireekaea, the tall, young man already mentioned, approaching them, received the cloth, and carried it to Koah, who wrapped it round the commodore, and made him an offering of the hog.

“ Whilst Captain Cook was aloft, in a situation truly whimsical, swathed in red cloth, and hardly able to keep his hold on the rotten scaffolding, he was entertained with the chanting of Koah and Kaireekaea, sometimes in concert, and sometimes alternately. This lasted a considerable time; at length Koah let the hog drop, when he and the commodore immediately descended. He then led him to the images before-mentioned, and having said something to each in a sneering tone, snapping his fingers at them as he passed, he brought him to that in the centre; which, from its being covered with red cloth, appeared to be in the highest estimation. He fell prostrate before this figure, requesting Captain Cook would do the same; which he readily submitted to, being determined to follow Koah's directions throughout the whole of this ceremony.

“ We were now led back into the other divisions of the *Morai*, where there was a space of twelve feet square, sunk three feet below the level of the area. We descended into this, and the commodore was seated between two wooden idols; Koah supporting one of his arms, whilst Mr. King was requested to support the other. A second procession of natives at this time arrived with a baked hog, a pudding, some cocoa-nuts, bread-fruit, and other vegetables. As they drew near, Kaireekaea put himself at their head, and presented the hog to the commodore, in the usual manner; chanting as before, and his companions making regular responses, their speeches and responses, we observed, grew gradually shorter after every response, and, towards the conclusion, Kaireekaea's did not exceed three or four words, which was answered by the word *Orono*.

“ When this offering was concluded, which lasted a quarter of an hour, the natives set down fronting us, and began to cut up the baked hog, to break the cocoa-nuts, and to peel vegetables. Others were employed in brewing the *kava*, by chewing it in the

same manner as at the Friendly Islands. Kaireekea then chewed part of the kernel of a cocoa-nut, and wrapping it in a piece of cloth, rubbed the Captain's head, face, hands, arms, and shoulders. The *kava* was afterwards handed round, and when we had all tasted it, Koah and Pareea pulled the flesh of the hog in pieces, and proceeded to put some of it into our mouths. Mr. King had no particular objection to being fed by Pareea, who was remarkably cleanly in his person; but Captain Cook, to whom a piece was presented by Koah, could not swallow a morsel, the putrid hog being strong in his recollection; and as the old man, from motives of civility, had chewed it for him, his reluctance was much increased.

"This ceremony being concluded, we quitted the *Morai*, after distributing among the populace some pieces of iron and other articles, with which they were much delighted. We were then conducted in procession to the boats; the men with wands attending, and pronouncing sentences, as before. Most of the natives again retired, and the remaining few prostrated themselves as we passed along the shore.

"We went immediately on board, full of the idea of what we had seen, and perfectly satisfied with the good disposition of our new friends. Of the singularity and novelty of the various ceremonies performed upon this occasion, we can only form conjectures; but they were certainly highly expressive of respect on the part of the inhabitants; and as far as related to the commodore they approached to adoration."

Mr. King went on shore the next morning with a guard of eight marines, including the corporal and lieutenant, having orders to erect the observatory in such a situation as might best enable him to superintend and protect the watches and the other working parties that were to be on-shore. Observing a convenient spot for this purpose, almost in the centre of the village, Pareea immediately offered to exercise his power in their behalf, and proposed that some houses should be taken down, that their observations might not be obstructed. This generous offer, however, was declined, and they made choice of a potatoe field adjoining to the *Morai*, which was granted them most readily; and, to prevent the intrusion of the natives, the place was consecrated by the priests, by placing their wands round the wall by which it was inclosed.

This interdiction the natives call *taboo*, a term frequently repeated by these islanders, and which seemed to be a word of extensive operation. In this instance it procured more privacy than could have been wished. No canoes ever attempted to land near them: the natives sat on the wall, but no one offered to come within the *tabooed* space till he had obtained their permission. But though the men, at their request, would bring provisions into the field, yet not all their endeavours could prevail on the women to approach them. Presents were tried,

but without success. Attempts were made to prevail on Pareea and Koah to bring them, but to no purpose; the *Eatooa* and *Terreeoboo*, they said, would kill them if they did.

This circumstance afforded great amusement on-board, whither multitudes of people (particularly women) continually flocked; insomuch that they were frequently obliged to clear the vessel, in order to have room to perform their necessary duties. On these occasions two or three hundred women were sometimes obliged to jump at once into the water where they continued to swim and play till they could be re-admitted.

Pareea and Koah left them on the 19th of January, in order to attend *Terreeoboo* who had landed on a distant part of the island; and nothing material happened on board till the 24th. The caulkers were employed on the sides of the ships, and the rigging was carefully overhauled and repaired. The salting of hogs for sea store was also a principal object of the commodore's attention, and as they had improved in this operation since the former voyages, it may not be improper to give a detail of the operation.

To cure the flesh of animals in tropical climates, by salting, has long been thought impracticable; putrefaction making so rapid a progress, as not to allow the salt to take effect before the meat gets tainted. Captain Cook appears to be the first navigator who has attempted to make experiments relative to this business. His first trials in 1774, during his second voyage to the Pacific Ocean, so far succeeded, as to convince him of the error of the received opinion. As his present voyage was likely to be protracted a year beyond the time for which the ships had been victualled, he was obliged to contrive some method of procuring subsistence for the crews, or relinquish the prosecution of his discoveries. He, therefore, renewed his attempts, and the event answered his most sanguine expectations.

The hogs they cured were of various sizes, from four to ten or twelve stone, fourteen pounds to the stone. They were always slaughtered in the afternoon; and, after scalding off the hair, and removing the entrails, the hog was cut into pieces, from four to eight pounds each, and the bones of the legs and chine taken out; and, in the larger sort, the ribs also. The pieces were then carefully examined and wiped, and the coagulated blood taken from the veins. After this they were given to the salters, whilst they continued warm, and, after they had been well rubbed with salt, placed in a heap, on a stage in the open air, covered with planks, and pressed with very heavy weight. In this situation they remained till the next evening, when they were again well wiped and examined, and the suspicious parts taken away. This done, they were put into a tub of strong pickle, after which they were examined once or twice a day; and, if it happened that any piece had not taken the salt, which might be discovered by the smell of the pickle, they were

mm
put i
six d
being
thin
barre
1779
Chris
some

Bu
long
tation
by th
crect
by w
and a
Cook
termin
tion w
a drav

Wh
Orono
place,
those
suppor
and K
pig w
was st
for th
ing wa
the d
nose;
the o
the k
broug
Wh
he w
him p
the p

* Mr
wards
mende
the ye
prime
with t
handli
to bice
densec
He ad
taken
was fo
any le

immediately taken out and re-examined, and the sound pieces put into fresh pickle. This, however, seldom happened. After six days, they were taken out, examined for the last time, and being again slightly pressed, they were put into barrels, with a thin layer of salt between them. Mr. King brought home some barrels of this pork that had been pickled at Owhyhee, in January, 1779, which was tasted by several persons in England about Christmas, 1780, who declared it to be perfectly sound and wholesome.*

But to return from this digression. The officers had not been long settled at the observatory before they discovered the habitations of a society of priests, who had excited their curiosity by their regular attendance at the *Morai*. Their huts were erected round a pond, enclosed within a grove of cocoa-trees, by which they were separated from the beach and the village, and gave the situation an air of religious retirement. Captain Cook being made acquainted with these circumstances, he determined to visit them; and, expecting the manner of his reception would be singular, he took Mr. Webber with him, to make a drawing of the ceremony.

When arrived at the beach, he was conducted to *Harre-no-Orono*, or the house of Orono. On his approaching this sacred place, he was seated at the foot of a wooden idol, resembling those which he had seen at the *Morai*. Here Mr. King again supported one of his arms; he was then arrayed in red cloth, and Kaireekkea, accompanied by twelve priests, presented a pig with the usual solemnities. After this ceremony, the pig was strangled, and thrown into the embers of a fire prepared for that purpose. When the hair was singed off, a second offering was made, and the chanting repeated as before; after which the dead pig was held for a short time under Captain Cook's nose; and then laid, with a cocoa-nut, at his feet. This part of the ceremony being concluded, the performers sat down, and the *kava* was brewed and handed about; a baked hog was brought in, and they were fed as in the former ceremony.

While in the bay, whenever the commodore came on shore, he was attended by one of these priests, who went before him giving notice that the Orono had landed, and ordering the people to prostrate themselves. He was constantly accom-

* Mr. Vancouver, who was one of the midshipmen in the *Discovery*, and was afterwards appointed lieutenant of the *Martin* sloop of war, tried the method here recommended, both with English and Spanish pork, during a cruise on the *Spanish Main*, in the year 1782, and succeeded to the utmost of his expectations. He also made the experiment at Jamaica with the beef served by the Victualling Office to the ships, but not with the same success, which he attributes to the necessary precautions in killing and handling the beasts; to their being hung up and opened before they had sufficient time to bleed, by which means the blood-vessels were exposed to the air, and the blood condensed before it had time to empty itself; and to their being hard driven and bruised. He adds, that having himself attended to the killing of an ox, which was carefully taken on board of the *Martin*, he salted a part of it, which, at the end of the week, was found to have taken the salt completely, and he has no doubt would have kept for any length of time; but the experiment was not tried.

panied by the same person on the water, where he was stationed in the bow of the boat, having a wand in his hand, to give notice of his approach to the natives, who were in canoes; on which they instantly ceased paddling, and fell on their faces till he had passed. Whenever he visited the observatory, Kairee-keea and his assistants presented themselves before him, making an offering of hogs, bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, &c. with the accustomed solemnities. Upon these occasions some of the inferior chiefs entreated permission to make an offering to the *Orono*. When this was granted, they presented the hog themselves, generally with evident marks of fear in their countenances; whilst Kairee-keea and the priests chanted their accustomed hymns.

But the civilities of this society extended beyond parade and ceremony; the party on shore was daily supplied by them with hogs and vegetables more than sufficient for their subsistence; and canoes laden with provisions were as regularly sent off to the ships. Nothing was demanded in return, nor was the most distant hint ever given that any compensation was expected. Their manner of conferring favours appeared more like the discharge of a religious duty than to result from mere liberality. On asking to whom they were indebted for all this, they were informed that it was at the expense of Ka-*...* chief priest, and grandfather to Kairee-keea, who was then in the suite of the sovereign of the island.

Our men had less reason to be satisfied with the behaviour of the warrior chiefs, than with that of the priests. In their intercourse with the former, they were always sufficiently attentive to their own interests: and, besides their propensity to stealing, which may admit of palliation from its universality in those seas, they had other practices equally dishonourable. The following is one instance in which it was discovered, with regret, that their friend Koah was a party principally concerned.

As the chiefs, who made presents of hogs, were always sent back handsomely rewarded, the ships had generally a greater supply than they could make use of. A pig was one day presented by a man whom Koah introduced as a chief, which they knew to be the pig that had a short time before been given to Koah. Suspecting they had been imposed upon, they found on further inquiry, that the pretended chief was one of the common people; and, from other concurrent circumstances, they were perfectly convinced that they had been the dupes of similar imposition.

On Sunday the 24th, they were not a little surprised to find that no canoes were permitted to put off from the shore, and that the natives confined themselves to their houses. At length, however, they were informed that the bay was *tabooed*, and that all intercourse with them was interdicted, on account of the arrival of *Terreeoboo* their king. Not apprehending an accident of

he was stationed
 and, to give no
 e in canoes; on
 on their faces till
 ervatory, Kairee-
 ore him, making
 . with the accus-
 e of the inferior
 ng to the *Orono-*
 hog themselves,
 r countenances;
 their accustomed

ond parade and
 ed by them with
 their subsistence;
 larly sent off to
 or was the most
 was expected.
 ore like the dis-
 mere liberality.
 is? 'fidence,
 Ka . . . chief
 hen in the suite

the behaviour of
 In their inter-
 iently attentive
 sity to stealing,
 y in those seas,
 The following
 th regret, that
 ed.

re always sent
 rally a greater
 one day pre-
 ef, which they
 been given to
 they found on
 f the common
 es, they were
 of similar in-

prised to find
 he shore, and

At length,
 oed, and that
 nt of the arri-
 n accident of

this kind, the ships were deprived of their usual supply of vegetables.

The next morning, our men endeavoured, by threats and promises, to induce the inhabitants to come alongside. At length some of them were venturing to put off, and a chief was observed to be very active in driving them away. In order to make him desist, a musket was instantly fired over his head, which had the desired effect, and refreshments were soon after to be had as usual. In the afternoon the ships were privately visited by Terreeoboo, attended only by one canoe, which had his wife and family on board. After staying till almost ten o'clock, he returned to the village of Kowrowa.

About noon the next day, the king, in a large canoe, attended by two others, paddled from the village, in great state, towards the ships. Their appearance was grand and magnificent: Terreeoboo and his chiefs were in the first canoe, arrayed in feathered cloaks and helmets, and armed with long spears and daggers. In the second came Kaoo, the chief priest, and his brethren, with their idols displayed on red cloth. These idols were busts of an enormous size, made of wicker-work, and curiously ornamented with small feathers of various colours. Their eyes were made of large pearl oysters, with a black nut fixed in the centre; a double row of the fangs of dogs was fixed in each of their mouths, which, as well as the rest of their features, were strangely distorted. The third canoe was laden with hogs and vegetables. As they advanced, the priests, in the second canoe, chanted their hymns with great solemnity. After paddling round the vessels, they did not come on board, as was expected, but made immediately towards the shore, at the beach where our men were stationed. When Mr. King saw them approaching, he ordered out the little guard to receive the king; and Captain Cook, perceiving that he was going on shore, went thither also, and landed almost at the same time. They conducted them into the tent, where they had scarcely been seated, when the king rose up, and in a very graceful manner threw over the captain's shoulders the rich feathered cloak he himself wore, placed a helmet on his head, and presented him with curious fan. Five or six other cloaks, of great beauty and value, were spread at the commodore's feet.

Four hogs were then brought forward by the king's attendants, together with bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and sugar-canes. Then followed the ceremony of Terreeoboo's changing names with Captain Cook; the strongest pledge of friendship amongst all the islanders of the Pacific Ocean. A solemn procession now advanced, consisting of priests, preceded by a venerable old personage, followed by a train of people, leading large hogs; others being laden with potatoes, plantains, &c. They could instantly perceive by the countenance and gestures of Kaireekea, that the old man who headed the procession was

the chief priest, on whose bounty they were told they had so long subsisted. He wrapped a piece of red cloth round the shoulders of Captain Cook, and, in the usual form, presented him with a pig. He was then seated next the king, and Kairre-keea, and his attendants began their vocal ceremonies, Kaoo and the chiefs joining in the responses.

In the person of this king they were surprised to recognize the same emaciated old man who came on board the *Resolution* from the north-east side of the island of Mowee; and they perceived that several of his attendants were the same persons who at that time remained with them all night. Among these were the king's two youngest sons, the eldest about the age of sixteen; and Maiha-Maiha, his nephew, whom at first they could not recollect, having had his hair plastered over with a dirty brown paste and powder, which was no mean heightening to the most savage countenance they had ever seen.

The formalities of the meeting being ended, Captain Cook carried Terreeohoo, and as many chiefs as the pinnace could hold, on board the *Resolution*. They were received with every possible attention and respect; and the commodore, in return for the feathered cloak, put a linen shirt upon the sovereign, and girt his own hanger round him. Kaoo, and about half a dozen old chiefs, remained on shore. All this time not a canoe was permitted to appear in the bay, and those natives who did not confine themselves to their huts, lay prostrate on the ground. Before the king quitted the *Resolution*, Captain Cook obtained leave for the natives to come and trade with the ships as usual; but the women, for what reason they could not learn, were still interdicted by the *taboo*; that is, were forbidden to stir from home, or to have any kind of intercourse with them. The behaviour of the inhabitants was so civil and inoffensive, that all apprehensions of danger were totally vanished, and they did not hesitate to trust themselves amongst them at all times, and upon all occasions. The officers ventured frequently up the country, either singly or in small parties, and sometimes continued out the whole night. It would be endless to recount all the instances of generosity and civility which they experienced upon those occasions. In all places the people flocked about them, anxious to afford every assistance in their power, and appeared highly gratified if they condescended to accept of their services. Various little arts were practised to attract their notice, or to delay their departure. The boys and girls ran before, as they walked through their villages, stopping at every opening where there was a commodious place to form a group for dancing. At one time they were solicited to take a draught of the milk of cocoa-nuts, or accept of such other refreshment as their huts afforded; at another they were encircled by a company of young women, who exerted all their skill and agility to amuse them with songs and dances. But though their gentle-

told they had so
l cloth round the
l form, presented
king, and Kairre-
ceremonies, Kaoo

rised to recognize
rd the Resolution
e; and they per-
ame persons who
ng these were the
e age of sixteen;
t they could not
ith a dirty brown
ening to the most

l, Captain Cook
e pinnace could
eived with every
adore, in return
n the sovereign,
and about half a
time not a canoe
natives who did
e on the ground.
Cook obtained
ships as usual;
earn, were still
eu to stir from
them. The be-
ensive, that all
and they did
all times, and
uently up the
ometimes con-
to recount all
y experienced
flocked about
ower, and ap-
cept of their
tract their no-
girls ran be-
ping at every
form a group
ke a draught
r refreshment
ed by a com-
and agility to
their gentle-

ness and hospitality were pleasing to them, they were addicted to stealing, like all the other islanders of these seas. This was a distressing circumstance, and sometimes obliged them to exercise severity, which they would have been happy to have avoided, if it had not been essentially necessary. Some expert swimmers were one day detected under the ships, drawing out the filling nails from the sheathing, which they ingeniously performed with a flint stone, fastened to the end of a short stick. To put a stop to this practice, which endangered the very existence of the vessel, they at first fired small shot at the offenders; but they easily got out of their reach, by diving under the ship's bottom: it was therefore found necessary to make an example by flogging one of them on board the *Discovery*.

About this time a large party of gentlemen, from both ships, set out on an excursion into the country, in order to examine its natural productions; an account of which will be hereafter given. At present, however, we shall observe, that it afforded Kaoo a fresh opportunity of shewing his civility and generosity. For as soon as he was informed of their departure, he sent after them a large quantity of provisions, with orders, that every attention and assistance should be granted them by the inhabitants of those districts through which they were to pass. His conduct, on this occasion, was so delicate and disinterested, that even the people he employed were not permitted to accept of the smallest present. At the end of six days, the gentlemen returned, without having penetrated more than twenty miles into the island; owing partly to improper guides and partly to the impracticability of the country.

On the 27th the *Resolution's* rudder was unhung and sent ashore, in order to undergo a thorough repair: the carpenters, at the same time were sent into the country, under the guidance of some of Kaoo's people, to cut planks for the head rail-work, which was entirely rotten and decayed. Captain Clerke, whose ill health confined him for the most part on board, paid Terree-oooboo his first visit on the 28th, at his habitation on shore. The ceremonies observed with Captain Cook were performed in honour of Captain Clerke; and, on his return, he received a present of thirty large hogs, and such a quantity of vegetables as could not be consumed by his crew in less than a week; this was the more extraordinary, as it was quite an unexpected visit.

Not having seen any of their sports or exercises, the natives, on our request, entertained the crews in the evening with a boxing-match. Though these games were inferior, in every respect, to those exhibited at the Friendly Islands; yet, as they were somewhat different, a short account of them may not be thought improper.

"A vast concourse of people assembled on an even spot of ground, not far distant from our tents.—A long vacant space was left in the centre of them, at the upper end of which sat the judges, under three standards, from which hung slips of

cloth, of various colours, the skins of two wild geese, some small birds, and a few bunches of feathers.

“The sports being ready to begin, the judges gave the signal, and two combatants immediately appeared. They advanced slowly, lifting up their feet very high behind, and drawing their hands upon the soles. As they came forward, they frequently surveyed each other from head to foot, with an air of contempt, looking archly at the spectators, distorting their features, and practising a variety of unnatural gestures. Being advanced within the reach of each other, they held out both arms straight before their faces, at which part all their blows were aimed. They struck with a full swing of the arm, which to us had a very awkward appearance; made no attempt to parry; but endeavoured to elude their adversary's attack, by stooping, or retreating. The battle was quickly decided; for if either of them fell, whether by accident or from a blow, he was deemed vanquished; and the victor expressed his triumph by a variety of strange gestures, which usually excited, as was intended, a loud laugh among the spectators. The successful combatant waited for a second antagonist; and, if again victorious, for a third; and so on till he was at last defeated.

“It is very singular in these combats, that, when any two are preparing to attack each other, a third may advance, and make choice of either of them for his antagonist, when the other is under the necessity of withdrawing. If the combat proved long and tedious, or appeared unequal, a chief generally interfered, and concluded it by putting a stick between the combatants. As this exhibition was at our desire, it was universally expected that some of us would have engaged with the natives; but, though our people received pressing invitations to bear a part, they did not hearken to the challenges, not having forgot the blows they received at the Friendly Islands.

“William Watman, a seaman of the gunner's crew, died this day: this event is the more particularly mentioned, as death had hitherto been uncommon amongst us. He was a man in years, and much respected for his attachment to Captain Cook. He had served twenty-one years as a marine, after which he entered as seaman, in 1772, on board the *Resolution*, and served with the commodore in his voyage towards the South Pole. On their return he got admittance into Greenwich Hospital, through the interest of Captain Cook, at the same time with himself; and, anxious to follow the fortunes of his benefactor, he also quitted it with him, on his appointment to the command of the present expedition. He had been often subject to light fevers, in the course of the voyage, and was infirm when we arrived in the bay, where, being sent on shore for a few days, he thought himself perfectly recovered, and, at his own desire, returned on board; but the day following he had a stroke of the palsy, which, in two days afterwards, put a period to his life.

wild geese, some

edges gave the signal. They advanced and drawing their swords, they frequently in an air of contempt their features, and being advanced both arms straight downwards were aimed which to us had a tendency to parry; but either stooping, or retiring if either of them was deemed vanquished by a variety of blows was intended, a successful combatant was victorious, for a

when any two are engaged, and make an effort to strike the other is that proved long and mutually interfered, the combatants. As they expected that the combatants; but, though a part, they did not the blows they

crew, died this day. Oned, as death was a man in Captain Cook's boat, for which he engaged, and served with Pole. On his arrival at the hospital, through the assistance of himself; as a doctor, he also took the command of the vessel. On his return to light fevers, we arrived in the bay, he thought it best to return on board, and of the palsy, he died.

* At the request of Terreeboo, the remains of this honest seaman were buried in the *Morai*; the ceremony being performed with great solemnity. Kaoo and his brethren were present at the funeral, and preserved the most profound silence and attention whilst the service was reading. On our beginning to fill up the grave, they approached it with great awe, and threw in a dead pig, together with some cocoa-nuts and plantains. For three nights afterwards they surrounded it, sacrificing hogs and reciting hymns and prayers till day-break.

"We erected a post at the head of the grave, and nailed thereon a piece of board, on which was inscribed the name and age of the deceased, and the day of his death. These they assured us they would not remove; and they will probably be permitted to remain as long as such frail materials will endure."

The ships being in great want of fuel, Captain Cook desired Mr. King to treat with the priests for the purchase of the rail on the *Morai*. Mr. King had some doubts about the decency of this proposal, and apprehended that the bare mention of it might be deemed impious; but in this he was mistaken. They expressed no kind of surprise at the application, and the wood was delivered without the least stipulation. Whilst taking it away, our people saw one of the natives with a carved image; and upon inquiry, were informed, that the whole semi-circle (as mentioned in the description of the *Morai*) had been carried to the boats. Though the natives were spectators of this business, they did not seem to resent it; but, on the contrary, had even assisted in the removal. Mr. King thought proper to speak to Kaoo on the subject, who seemed very indifferent about the matter, begging him only to restore the centre image; which was immediately done, and it was conveyed to one of the priest's houses.

Terreeboo and his chiefs had for some time been very inquisitive to know the time of the ships' departure. Mr. King's curiosity was excited, from this circumstance, to know the opinion these people had entertained of our men, and what they supposed to be the objects of the voyage. He took considerable pains to satisfy himself on these points; but the only information he could get was, that they supposed they had left their native country on account of the scantiness of provisions, and had visited them for the sole purpose of filling their bellies. This conclusion was natural enough, considering the meagre appearance of some of the crew, the voracity with which they devoured their fresh provisions, and the anxiety to purchase as much of it as they were able. One circumstance may be added to these, which puzzled them exceedingly, that of our men having no women with them.

It was matter of entertainment to see the natives patting the bellies of the sailors (who were much improved in sleekness since their arrival in the bay) and telling them, in the best man

ner they could, that it was time for them to depart; but, if they would return the next bread-fruit season, they should be better able to supply them. The ships had now continued sixteen days in the bay, during which time the consumption of hogs and vegetables had been so enormous, that it need not excite surprise at their wishing to see them take leave. It is very probable, however, that Terreeboo had no other view, in his inquiries, than a desire of having sufficient notice, to prepare suitable presents at their departure; for, when they informed him of their intention to quit the island in two days, a kind of proclamation was immediately made, requiring the natives to bring in their hogs and vegetables, for the king to present to the Orono on his departure.

At the beach, the men were this day much entertained with the buffooneries of one of the natives. In his hand he held an instrument of music, such as has been already described; some bits of sea-weed were tied round his neck; and round each leg a piece of strong netting, on which a great number of dog's teeth were loosely fastened in rows. His dancing was accompanied with strange grimaces, and unnatural distortion of the features; which, though sometimes highly ridiculous, was, upon the whole, without meaning or expression. Mr. Webber made a drawing of this person; the manner in which the maro is tied, the figure of the instrument, and of the ornaments round the legs, which, at other times was seen used by their dancers.

Wrestling and boxing matches afforded diversion for the evening; and our men in return, exhibited the few fire-works they had remaining. Nothing could more effectually excite the admiration of these islanders, or strike them with more exalted ideas of our superiority, than such a representation. Though this was, in every respect much inferior to that made at Hapae, yet the astonishment of the people was equally great.

The carpenters who had been sent up the country to cut planks for the head rail-work of the Resolution, had now been gone three days: and, not having heard from them, Captain Cook began to be alarmed for their safety, and expressed his apprehensions to old Kaoo, who appeared equally concerned; but while planning measures with him for sending proper persons after them, they all arrived safe. They had gone further into the country than they expected, before they found any trees suitable for their purpose; and it was this circumstance, together with the badness of the roads, and the difficulty of conveying the timber to the ships, that had detained them so long. They bestowed high commendations on their guides, who not only supplied them with provisions, but faithfully protected their tools.

The 4th of February being fixed for the ships departure, Terreeboo invited Captain Cook and Mr. King to attend him, on the 3rd, to Kaoo's residence. On our arrival there, we saw large quantities of cloth lie scattered on the ground; abun-

dan
nut
bee
site
at a
first
info
the
than
feet
him
from
a th
thes
clot
tain
sent
imm
in o
veg

The
soor
gila
beh
retu
ing
reg
wou
am
cor
wit
qui
civ
by
sp
ha
tin
ce
hi
th
co
th
K
v
h
m

part; but, if they should be better continued sixteen months, the consumption of hogs need not excite any alarm. It is very proper, in his interview, in his interview, to prepare suitably informed him, a kind of propositions to bring present to the

entertained with hand he held an described; some round each leg number of dog's was accompanying of the distortion of the was, upon Webber made the maro is tied, ants round the dancers.

for the even-works they excite the admiration. Though he at Hapae, at.

country to cut had now been em, Captain expressed his concerned; proper person further and any trees ce, together conveying g. They do not only their tools. departure, attend him, there, we and; abun

dance of red and yellow feathers, fastened to the fibres of cocoa-nut husks; and plenty of hatchets and iron-ware, which had been received from us in barter. Not far from these was deposited an immense quantity of various kinds of vegetables; and, at a little distance, a large herd of hogs. We supposed, at first, that the whole was intended as a present for us; but we were informed by Kaireekeea, that it was a tribute to the king from the inhabitants of that district. And we were no sooner seated, than the bundles were brought, and laid severally at Terreeoboo's feet; and the cloth, feathers, and iron, were displayed before him. The king was perfectly satisfied with this mark of duty from his people; and selected about a third of the iron utensils, a third of the feathers, and some pieces of cloth; he ordered these to be set aside by themselves; and the remainder of the cloth, hogs, vegetables, &c. were afterwards presented to Captain Cook and Mr. King. The value and magnitude of this present far exceeded any thing they had met with. The whole was immediately conveyed on board. The large hogs were selected, in order to be salted for sea store; but the smaller pigs, and the vegetables, were divided between the crews.

"We left the *Morai*, and got our observatories on board. The *taboo* was removed, and with it its magical effects. As soon as we had quitted the place the people rushed in, and vigilantly searched it, hoping to find some valuable articles left behind. Mr. King being the last on shore, and waiting for the return of the boat, the inhabitants crowded about him, and having prevailed on him to sit down among them, expressed their regret at our separation. It was even with difficulty that they would suffer him to depart. He was, indeed, highly esteemed among them; for, having had, while we were in the bay, the command of the party on shore, he became more acquainted with the natives, and they with him, than those who were required to be on board. He experienced great kindness and civility from the inhabitants in general, but the friendship shewn by the priests was constant and unbounded. On his part he spared no endeavours to conciliate their esteem; in which he so happily succeeded, that, when they were acquainted with the time of our departure, he was urged to remain behind, and received offers of the most flattering kind. When he excused himself, by alleging, that Captain Cook would not permit it; they proposed to conduct him to the mountains, and there conceal him till the departure of the ships. On Mr. King's assuring them that the Captain would not sail without him, the king and Kao waited upon Captain Cook, (whose son they supposed he was) formally requesting that he might be suffered to remain behind. The commodore unwilling to give a positive refusal to a proposal so generously intended, assured them, that he could not then part with him; but he should return thither the next year, when he would endeavour to oblige them.

“On Thursday the 4th of February, early in the morning, we unmoored, and the Resolution and Discovery sailed out of the bay, attended by a vast number of canoes. It was Captain Cook's intention to finish the survey of Owhyhee before he went to the other islands, hoping to meet with a road more sheltered than Karakakooa Bay; and, if he should not succeed here, he meant to examine the south-east part of Mowee, where he had been informed there was a most excellent harbour. On the 5th, and the following day, we had calm weather, and consequently our progress was but slow. A great number of the natives followed us in their canoes; and Terreeoboo gave an additional proof of his esteem for the commodore by sending after him a large present of hogs and vegetables. Having a light breeze, in the night of the 5th of February, we made some progress to the northward; and, on the 6th, in the morning, we were abreast of a deep bay, which the natives call Toeyae-yah. We had great hopes of finding a commodious harbour in this bay, as we saw some fine streams of water to the north-east; and the whole appeared to be well sheltered.—These observations agreeing with the accounts given us by Koah, who accompanied Captain Cook, and had changed his name out of compliment to us into Britannee, the master was sent in the pinnace, with Koah as his guide, to observe and examine the bay.”

The weather became gloomy in the afternoon, and such violent gusts of wind blew off the land, that the ships were obliged to take in all the sails, and bring to under the mizen stay-stail. The canoes all left as soon as the gale began; and Mr. Bligh, on his return, had the satisfaction of saving an old woman and two men whose canoe had been upset in the storm. Several women remained on board, whom the natives in their hurry to depart, had left to shift for themselves.

Mr. Bligh reported, that he had landed at a village on the north side of the bay, where he was shewn some wells of water that would not by any means answer the purpose; that he afterwards proceeded further into the bay, where, instead of meeting with good anchorage, he found the shores were low, and a flat bed of coral rocks extended along the coast upwards of a mile from the land; the depth of water, on the outside, being twenty fathoms. During this survey, Britannee had contrived to slip away, being, perhaps, afraid of returning, as his information had proved erroneous.

The weather became more moderate in the evening, and the ships again made sail; but it blew so violently about midnight as to split the fore and main-top sails. They bent fresh sails in the morning of the 7th, and had a light breeze, and fair weather. Being now about four or five leagues from the shore, and the weather very unsettled, the canoes would not venture off, so that the guests were under the necessity of remaining with them, though much against their inclination; for they were ... ex-

ceedingly sea-sick, and many of them had left young children behind them.

Though the weather continued squally, the ships stood in for the land in the afternoon; and, being within three leagues of it, they saw two men in a canoe, paddling towards them. They naturally conjectured that they had been driven off the shore by the late violent gale; and stopped the ship's way, in order to take them in. They were so exhausted with fatigue, that had not one of the natives on-board jumped into the canoe to their assistance, they would hardly have been able to fix it to the rope thrown out for that purpose. With difficulty, however, they got them up to the ship's side, together with a child about four years of age, which had been lashed under the thwarts of the canoe, with only its head above the water. They informed the crew that they had quitted the land the morning before, since which time they had not had food or water. Provision was given them with the usual precautions, and the child entrusted to the care of one of the women; and the next morning they were all perfectly recovered. A gale of wind coming on at midnight, they were obliged to double reef the top-sails. At day-break, on the 8th, they found that the fore-mast had again given way; the fishes being sprung, and the parts so very defective, as to make it absolutely necessary to unstep the mast. Captain Cook, for sometime, hesitated whether he should return to Karakakooa, or take the chance of finding a harbour in the islands to leeward. The bay was not so commodious, but that a better might probably be met with, both for the purpose of repairing the masts, and for procuring refreshments, of which, it was imagined, the neighbourhood of Karakakooa had lately been pretty well drained. It was, on the other hand, considered as too great a risk to leave a tolerably good harbour, which, once lost, could not be regained, for the mere possibility of meeting with a better; especially as the failure of such a contingency might have deprived them of any resource.

They stood on towards the land, to give the natives on-shore an opportunity of releasing their friends on-board; and, about noon, when within a mile of the shore, several canoes came off, but so loaded with people that no room could be found in them for any of the guests; the pinnace was therefore hoisted out to land them; and the master who commanded it, was instructed to examine the south coasts of the bay for water, but returned without success.

Variable winds, and a strong current to the northward, retarded their progress in return; and, early in the morning of the 10th, in a heavy squall, the Resolution was close in with the breakers to the northward of the west point of Owhyhee. She had just room to avoid them, and fired several guns to alarm the Discovery, and apprise her of the danger.

The weather in the forenoon was more moderate, and a few

canoes ventured to come off, when those on-board them informed our people that much mischief had been occasioned by the late storms, and that a great many canoes had been lost. They kept beating to the windward the remainder of the day; and, in the evening, were within a mile of the bay; but stood off and on till day-light the next morning, when they anchored in their old station.

The whole of the 11th, and part of the 12th of February, they were engaged in getting out the foremast, and conveying it on-shore. Not only the head of the mast had sustained damage, but the heel was become exceedingly rotten, having a very large hole in the middle of it. As these repairs were likely to take up several days, Mr. King and Mr. Bayly got the observatory on-shore, and pitched their tents on the *Morai*, guarded by a corporal and six marines. A friendly intercourse was renewed with the priests, who, for the greater security of the workmen and their tools, *tabooed* the place where the mast lay, sticking their wands round it as before. The sail-makers were also sent on-shore to repair the damages in their department, sustained by the late heavy gales. They occupied an habitation, lent by the priests, adjoining to the *Morai*.

“Our reception, on coming to anchor, was so different from what it had been at our first arrival, that we were all astonished: no shouts, bustle, or confusion, but a solitary deserted bay, with hardly a canoe stirring. Their curiosity, indeed, might be supposed to be diminished by this time; but the hospitable treatment we had continually been favoured with, and the friendly footing on which we parted, induced us to expect that, on our return, they would have received us with the greatest demonstrations of joy.

“Various were our conjectures on the cause of this extraordinary appearance, when the whole mystery was unravelled by the return of a boat, which we had sent on shore, bringing intelligence that *Terreeoboo* was absent, and that the bay was *tabooed*. This account appeared very satisfactory to many of us; but others were of an opinion, that there was, at this time, something very suspicious in the behaviour of the natives, and that the *taboo* or interdiction, on pretence of *Terreeoboo's* absence was artfully contrived to give him time to consult his chiefs in what manner we should be treated. We never could ascertain whether these suspicions were well-founded, or whether the natives had given a true account. It is probable, indeed, that our sudden return, for which they could assign no apparent cause, might create alarms in them; yet the conduct of *Terreeoboo*, who, on his supposed arrival the next morning, immediately waited on Captain Cook, and the natives, from that moment, renewing their friendly intercourse with us, seemed to evince that they neither meant, nor apprehended, a different kind of conduct. An account of another accident, similar to this, may

rd them informed
oned by the late
lost. They kept
day; and, in the
od off and on till
red in their old

r February, they
conveying it on-
tained damage,
ing a very large
kely to take up
bservatory on-
arded by a cor-
e was renewed
f the workmen
st lay, sticking
were also sent
t, sustained by
on, lent by the

different from
all astonished:
rted bay, with
might be sup-
spitable treat-
l the friendly
pect that, on
the greatest

his extraordi-
velled by the
nging intelli-
he bay was
to many of
at this time,
natives, and
eoboo's ab-
consult his
never could
, or whether
ble, indeed,
no apparent
of Terreco-
nmediately
at moment,
d to evince
nt kind of
o this, may

be mentioned in support of this opinion, which happened to us on our first visit, the day before the king's arrival. A native having sold a hog on-board the Resolution, and received the price agreed on, Pareea, who saw the transaction, advised the seller not to part with his hog without an advanced price. For his interference in this business he was harshly spoken to and pushed away; and as the *taboo* was soon laid on the bay, we at first supposed it to be in consequence of the affront offered to the chief.

"These two circumstances considered, it is extremely difficult to draw any certain conclusion from the actions of a people with whose language and customs we are so imperfectly acquainted. Some idea, however, may be formed of the difficulties those have to encounter, who, in their intercourse with these strangers, are obliged to steer their course in the midst of uncertainty, where the most serious consequences may be occasioned by only imaginary offences. Whether these conjectures are erroneous or true, it is certain that things were conducted in their usual quiet course till the 13th of February, in the afternoon.

"At the approach of evening on that day, the commander of the Discovery's watering-party came to inform Mr. King that several chiefs were assembled near the beach, and were driving away the natives who assisted the sailors in rolling the casks to the shore: at the same time declaring that their behaviour seemed exceedingly suspicious, and that he imagined they would give him some further disturbance. He sent a marine with him, agreeable to his request, but permitted him to take only his side-arms. The officer in a short time returned, and informed Mr. King, that the inhabitants had armed themselves with stones and were become tumultuous. He, therefore, went himself to the spot, attended by a marine, with his musket. At their approach the islanders threw away their stones; and, on Mr. King's application to some of the chiefs, the mob was dispersed. Every thing being now quiet, Mr. King went to meet Captain Cook, who was then coming on-shore in the pinnace. He related to him what had recently happened, and received orders to fire a ball at the offenders, if they again behaved insolently, and began to throw stones. In consequence of these directions, Mr. King gave orders to the corporal, that the sentinels' pieces should be loaded with ball, instead of shot.

"On our return to the tents, we heard a continued fire of muskets from the Discovery; which we perceived to be directed at a canoe, which was hastening towards the shore, with one of our small boats in pursuit of it. This firing, we concluded, was the consequence of some theft, and Captain Cook ordered Mr. King to follow him with a marine armed, and to endeavour to seize the people as they landed. They accordingly ran to the place where the canoe was expected to come ashore, but did not arrive in time: the people having quitted it, and fled into the

country before their arrival. At this time they did not know that the goods had been already restored; and thinking it probable, from what they had observed, that they might be of importance, they did not choose to relinquish their endeavours to recover them; and having inquired of the natives what course the people had taken, they pursued them till it was almost dark, when they supposed themselves to be about three miles from the tents, and thinking the islanders amused them with false information in their pursuit, they gave up the search and returned.

“A difference of a more serious nature had happened during their absence. The officer who had been dispatched in the small boat after the thieves, and who was returning on-board with the booty that had been restored, seeing Captain Cook and Mr. King engaged in pursuit of the offenders, seized a canoe which was drawn up on the shore. This canoe, unfortunately, belonged to Pareea, who, at this instant arriving from on-board the Discovery, claimed his property, and protested his innocence. The officer persisted in detaining it, in which he was encouraged by the crew of the pinnace, then waiting for Captain Cook; in consequence of which a scuffle ensued, and Pareea was knocked down by a violent blow on the head with an oar. Several of the natives, who had hitherto been peaceable spectators, began now to attack our people with such a shower of stones, that they were forced to a precipitate retreat, and swam off to a rock, at a considerable distance from the shore. The pinnace was plundered immediately by the natives, and would have been entirely demolished, if Pareea had not interposed, who had not only recovered from his blow, but had also forgot it at the same instant. He ordered the crowd to disperse, and beckoned to our people to come and take possession of the pinnace; and afterwards assured them that he would use his influence to get the things restored which had been taken out of it. After their departure, he followed them in his canoe, carrying them a midshipman's cap, and some other articles of the plunder; and expressing much concern at what had happened, begged to know if the *Orono* would kill him, and whether he might be permitted to come on-board the next day. He was assured that he would be well received, and therefore joined noses with the officers, (their usual token of friendship) and paddled over to Kowrowa.

“Captain Cook, when these particulars were represented to him, was exceedingly concerned; and, when he and Mr. King were returning on-board, he expressed his fears that these islanders would oblige him to pursue violent measures; adding, they must not be permitted to suppose that they have gained an advantage over us. It was then, however, too late to take any steps that evening; he therefore only gave orders that every islander should be immediately turned out of the ship. This order being executed, Mr. King returned on-shore; and the

events of the day having much abated our former confidence in the natives, a double guard was posted on the *Morai*, with orders to let Mr. King know if any men were lurking about the beach. At eleven o'clock, five of the natives were seen creeping round the bottom of the *Morai*; they approached with great caution, and at last perceiving they were discovered, immediately retired out of sight. About midnight one of them ventured himself near the observatory, when a sentinel fired over him; on which they all fled, and we had no farther disturbance during the remainder of the night. At day-light the next morning Mr. King went on-board the *Resolution*, in order to get the time-keeper; and in his way thither was hailed by the *Discovery*, and received information that their cutter had, some time in the night, been stolen from the buoy where it had been moored.

“On Mr. King's return on board, he found the marines were arming themselves, and Captain Cook busied in loading his double-barrelled gun. Whilst he was acquainting him with what had happened in the night at the *Morai*, he eagerly interrupted him, and informed him of the loss of the *Discovery's* cutter, and of the preparations he was making to recover it. It was his usual practice in all the islands of this ocean, when any thing of consequence had been stolen from him, by some stratagem, to get the king, or some of the principal *Erees*, on-board; where he detained them as hostages till the property was restored. This method having hitherto proved successful, he meant to adopt it on the present occasion; and gave orders to stop every canoe that should attempt to leave the bay; resolving to seize and destroy them if the cutter could not be recovered by peaceable means. In pursuance of which, the boats of both ships, properly manned and armed, were stationed across the bay; and, before Mr. King quitted the ship, some great guns were fired at two canoes that were attempting to escape.

“Between seven and eight o'clock, Captain Cook and Mr. King quitted the ship together; the former in the pinnace with Phillips, and nine marines: and the latter in the small boat. The last orders Mr. King received from Captain Cook were, to quiet the minds of the people, on his side of the bay, by the strongest assurances that they should not be injured; to keep his people together, and to be continually on his guard: Captain Cook and Mr. King then separated; the Captain going towards Kowrowa, where Terreeoboo resided; and Mr. King proceeded to the beach. His first business, when he arrived on shore, was to issue strict orders to the marines to continue within the tent, to charge their muskets with ball, and not on any consideration to quit their arms. He then attended old Kaoo and the priests, at their respective huts, and explained to them, as well as he was able, the reason of the hostile preparations which had so exceedingly alarmed them. He found they were no strangers to the cir-

cumstance of the cutter's being stolen, and assured them, that though the Commodore was not only resolved to recover it, but also to punish, in the most exemplary manner, the authors of the theft, yet that they, and all the inhabitants of the village, on our side, had not the least occasion to be alarmed, or to apprehend the least danger from us. He importuned the priests to communicate this to the people, and entreat them not to entertain the least idea of fear, but to continue peaceable and quiet. Kaoo interrogated Mr. King, with great emotion, if any harm was to happen to Terreeoboo? He assured him there was not; and both he and his brethren appeared much satisfied with this assurance.

“ Captain Cook having in the mean time called off the launch from the north point of the bay, and taken it with him, landed at Kowrowa, with the lieutenant and nine marines. He proceeded immediately into the village, where he was respectfully received; the people as usual, prostrating themselves before him, and making their accustomed offerings of small hogs. Perceiving that his design was not suspected, his next step was to inquire for the king, and the two boys, his sons, who had been almost continually his guests on-board the Resolution. The boys presently returned with the natives, who had been searching for them, and immediately conducted Captain Cook to the habitation where Terreeoboo had slept. The old man had just awoken; and after some conversation respecting the loss of the cutter, from which the Commodore was convinced that he was not in any-wise privy to it, he invited him to accompany him, and spend the day on board the Resolution. The king accepted the invitation, and arose immediately to accompany him.

“ Every thing had now a prosperous appearance; the two boys were already in the pinnace, and the rest of the party approaching the water-side, when a woman, named Kanee-kabareea, the mother of the boys, and one of Terreeoboo's favourite wives, followed him, beseeching him, with tears and entreaties, not to venture to go on board. Two chiefs, who came with her, took hold of him, and insisting he should proceed no further, obliged him to sit down. The islanders were now collecting in vast numbers along the shore, and having probably been alarmed by the firing of the great guns, and the hostile appearances in the bay, gathered round Captain Cook, and Terreeoboo. In this situation, the lieutenant of marines perceiving that his men were huddled together in the crowd, and consequently unable to use their arms if there should appear to be a necessity for it, proposed to Captain Cook to draw them up along the rocks, close to the edge of the water. The populace making way for them to pass, the lieutenant drew them up in a line, within about thirty yards of the place where Terreeoboo was sitting.

The old king continued all this time on the ground, bearing

the mo-
nance.
occasio
proceed
inclinat
posed;
afterwar
maining
alarm h
bability
point;
pel him
many of
“ Not
abandon
son was
which o
across t
get out,
telligenc
then was
ing with
immedia
and chil
soon clac
One of t
long iron
wards th
threateni
desist; b
provoked
shielded
firing the
Vollies o
Erees att
not succe
the butt
his secon
violent of
which wa
not only
The nativ
great firm
again, the
What fol
be more
“ Four
sacrifice t
wounded

the most visible marks of terror and dejection in his countenance. Captain Cook, unwilling to abandon the object which occasioned him to come on-shore, urged him most earnestly to proceed; whilst, on the other hand, if the king expressed any inclination to follow him, the chiefs, who surrounded him, interposed; at first they had recourse to prayers and entreaties, but afterwards to force and violence, and even insisted on his remaining on-shore. Captain Cook, at length, perceiving that the alarm had spread too generally, and that there was not a probability of getting him off without much bloodshed, gave up the point; at the same time observing to Mr. Phillips, that, to compel him to go on-board would probably occasion the loss of many of the lives of the inhabitants.

“Notwithstanding this enterprise had now failed, and was abandoned by Captain Cook, yet it did not appear that his person was in the least degree in danger, till an accident happened which occasioned a fatal turn to the affair. The boats, stationed across the bay, having fired at some canoes that attempted to get out, unfortunately killed one of their principal chiefs. Intelligence of his death arrived at the village where Captain Cook then was, just as he had parted from the king, and was proceeding with great deliberation towards the shore. The ferment it immediately occasioned was but too conspicuous; the women and children were immediately sent away, and the men were soon clad in their war-mats, and armed with spears and stones. One of the natives, having provided himself with a stone, and a long iron spike, (called by the natives a *pahooa*) advanced towards the captain, flourishing his weapon in defiance, and threatening to throw the stone. The Captain requested him to desist; but the islander repeating his menaces, he was highly provoked, and fired a load of small-shot at him. The man was shielded in his war-mat, which the shot could not penetrate; his firing therefore served only to irritate and encourage them. Volleys of stones were thrown at the marines; and one of the *Erees* attempted the life of Mr. Phillips with his *pahooa*; but, not succeeding in the attempt, he received from him a blow with the butt end of his piece. Captain Cook immediately discharged his second barrel, loaded with ball, and killed one of the most violent of the assailants. A general attack with stones succeeded, which was followed on our part by a discharge of musketry, not only from the marines, but also from the people in the boats. The natives, to our great astonishment, received our fire with great firmness: and without giving time to the marines to charge again, they rushed in upon them with dreadful shouts and yells. What followed was a scene of horror and confusion, which can be more easily conceived than properly related.

“Four of the marines retreated among the rocks, and fell a sacrifice to the fury of the enemy; three others were dangerously wounded; and the lieutenant stabbed between the shoulders

with a *pahooa*; but having fortunately reserved his fire, shot the man from whom he had received the wound, at the instant he was preparing to repeat the blow. The last time our unfortunate Commodore was distinctly seen, he was standing at the water's edge, and ordering the boats to cease firing, and pull in.

"It was imagined by some of those who were present, that the marines, and those who were in the boats, fired without Captain Cook's orders, and that he was anxious to prevent the further effusion of blood; it is therefore probable, that, on this occasion, his humanity proved fatal to him; for it was observed, that while he faced the natives, no violence had been offered to him, but, when he turned about, to give directions to the boats, he was stabbed in the back, and fell with his face into the water. A general shout was set up by the islanders on seeing him fall, and his body was dragged inhumanly on shore, where he was surrounded by the enemy, who, snatching the dagger from each other's hands, displayed a savage eagerness to join in his destruction.

"Such was the fate of our most excellent Commander! After a life distinguished by such successful enterprises, his death can hardly be reckoned premature; since he lived to accomplish the great work for which he seemed particularly designed; being rather removed from the enjoyment than the acquisition of glory. How sincerely his loss was lamented by those who owed their security to his skill and conduct, and every consolation to his tenderness and humanity, it is impossible to describe; and the task would be equally difficult to represent the horror, dejection, and dismay, which followed so dreadful and unexpected a catastrophe."

It has already been observed that four of the marines, who accompanied Captain Cook were killed by the natives on the spot. The others with their lieutenant, Mr. Phillips, threw themselves into the sea, and made their escape, being protected by a smart fire from the boats. On this occasion, a striking instance of gallant behaviour, and of affection for his men, was displayed by Mr. Phillips; for he had scarcely got into the boat, when, seeing one of the marines, who was not a very expert swimmer, struggling in the water, and in danger of being taken by the islanders, he instantly leaped into the sea to his assistance, though considerably wounded himself; and, after receiving a blow on his head from a stone, which had almost sent him to the bottom, he caught the marine by the hair, and brought him off in safety. Our people for some time kept up a constant fire from the boats, (which, during the whole transaction, were at no greater distance from the land than twenty yards), in order to afford their unfortunate companions, if any of them should still remain alive, an opportunity of effecting their escape. These continued efforts, seconded by a few guns that were at the same time fired from the *Resolution*, having at length compelled the natives to

erved his fire, shot
und, at the instant
time our unfortu-
standing at the
firing, and pull in,
were present, that
ired without Cap-
revent the further
on this occasion,
s observed, that
n offered to him,
to the boats, he
e into the water,
a seeing him fall,
e, where he was
agger from each
to join in his

mander! After
es, his death can
o accomplish the
designed; being
acquisition of
those who owed
y consolation to
describe; and
e horror, deject-
d unexpected a

arines, who ac-
es on the spot,
ew themselves
ed by a smart
g instance of
s displayed by
when, seeing
immer, strug-
the islanders,
ugh consider-
w on his head
e bottom, he
off in safety.
om the boats,
greater dis-
afford their
remain alive,
e continued
e time fired
natives to

retire, a small boat, manned by five midshipmen, pulled towards the shore, where they perceived the bodies lying on the ground, without any signs of life. However, they judged it dangerous to attempt to bring them off with so inconsiderable a force: and their ammunition being nearly consumed, they returned to the ships, leaving the bodies in possession of the natives, together with ten stand of arms.

When the general consternation, which the news of this misfortune had diffused throughout the whole company of both ships, had in some degree subsided, their attention was called to the party at the *Morai*, where the mast and sails were on shore, guarded by only six marines. It is difficult to describe the emotions that agitated the minds of Mr. King and his attendants, at this station, during the time these occurrences had been carrying on at the other side of the bay. Being at the distance only of a mile from the village of Kowrowa, they could distinctly perceive a vast multitude of people collected on the spot where Captain Cook had just before landed. They heard the firing of the muskets, and observed an uncommon bustle and agitation among the crowd. They afterwards saw the islanders retreating, the boats retiring from the shore, and passing and repassing with great stillness between the ships. Mr. King's heart soon misgave him on this occasion. Where so valuable a life was concerned, he could not avoid being alarmed by such new and threatening appearances. Besides this, he knew that Captain Cook, from a long series of success in his transactions with the natives of this ocean, had acquired a degree of confidence, which might, in some ill-fated moment, put him too much off his guard; and Mr. King now saw all the dangers to which that confidence might lead, without deriving much consolation from the consideration of the experience which had given rise to it. His first care, on hearing the report of the muskets, was to assure the islanders, considerable numbers of whom were assembled round the wall of our consecrated field, and seemed at a loss how to account for what they had heard and seen, that they should meet with no molestation; and that, at all events, he was inclined to continue on peaceable terms with them.

Mr. King and his attendants remained in this situation, till the boats had returned on board, when Captain Clerke perceiving, by means of his telescope, that the party were surrounded by natives, who, he thought, designed to attack them, ordered two four pounders to be fired at the islanders. These guns, though well-aimed, did no mischief; but they gave the natives a convincing proof of their powerful effects. A cocoa-nut tree, under which some of them were sitting, was broken in the middle by one of the balls; and the other shivered a rock which stood in an exact line with them. As Mr. King had just before given them the strongest assurances of their safety, he was extremely mortified at this act of hostility; and, to prevent its being re-

peated, instantly dispatched a boat to inform Captain Clerke, that he was at present on the most amicable terms with the islanders, and that, if any future occasion should arise for changing his conduct towards them, he would hoist a jack as a signal for Captain Clerke to afford him his assistance.

Mr. King waited the return of the boat with the greatest impatience: and after remaining for the space of a quarter of an hour, under the utmost anxiety and suspense, his fears were at length confirmed by the arrival of Mr. Bligh, with orders to strike the tents immediately, and to send on board the sails that were repairing. At the same instant Kaireekkea having also received information of the death of Captain Cook, from a native who had arrived from the other side of the bay, approached Mr. King with great dejection and sorrow in his countenance, inquiring if it was true.

The situation of the party at this time was highly critical and important. Not only their own lives, but the issue of the expedition, and the return of at least one of the ships, were involved in the same common danger. They had the mast of the *Resolution* and the greater part of the sails on-shore protected by only half a dozen marines. The loss of these would have been irreparable; and though the islanders had not as yet testified the smallest disposition to molest the party, it was difficult to answer for the alteration, which the intelligence of the transaction at Kowrowa might produce. Mr. King therefore thought proper to dissemble his belief of the death of Captain Cook, and to desire Kaireekkea to discourage the report; apprehending that either the fear of resentment, or the successful example of their countrymen, might perhaps lead them to seize the favourable opportunity which at this time presented itself of giving the crews a second blow. He, at the same time, advised him to bring old Kaoo and the other priests into a large house adjoined to the *Morai*, partly from a regard to their safety, in case it should have been found necessary to have recourse to violent measures; and partly from a desire of having him near our people, in order to make use of his authority with the natives, if it could be instrumental in maintaining peace.

Mr. King having stationed the marines on the top of the *Morai*, which formed a strong and advantageous post, intrusted the command to Mr. Bligh, who received the most positive directions to act solely on the defensive, went on-board the *Discovery*, in order to confer with Captain Clerke on the dangerous situation of their affairs. He had no sooner left the spot than the islanders began to annoy our people with stones; and just after he had reached the ship, he heard the firing of the marines. He therefore hastily returned on shore, where he found affairs growing every moment more alarming. The natives were providing arms, and putting on their mats; and their numbers augmented very fast. He also observed several large

bodies
the vi
bay, w
The
walls
soon
crept
sented
stormi
sible p
consid
fall.
The
Having
amidst
obliged
afterwa
wound.
At that
man ret
Being
to fire;
which h
self, and
A stre
this tim
ing Mr.
his end
propose
he woul
our peo
sails, a
soon as
possess
howeve
Betw
board t
been a
The re
boats,
sist on
vigor
them s
Tho
on the
in this
of the
confid
mand

bodies advancing towards our party along the cliff by which the village of Kakooa is separated from the north side of the bay, where Kowrowa is situated.

They at first attacked our people with stones from behind the walls of their inclosures, and meeting with no resistance they soon became more daring. A few courageous fellows having crept along the beach, under cover of the rocks, suddenly presented themselves at the foot of the *Morai*, with an intention of storming it on the side next the sea, which was its only accessible part; and they were not dislodged before they had stood a considerable quantity of shot, and had seen one of their number fall.

The courage of one of these assailants deserves to be recorded. Having returned with a view of carrying off his companion, amidst the fire of the whole party, he received a wound, which obliged him to quit the body and retire; but a few minutes afterwards he again made his appearance, and, receiving another wound, was under the necessity of retreating a second time. At that moment Mr. King arrived at the *Morai*, and saw this man return a third time, faint from the loss of blood and fatigue. Being informed of what had happened, he forbade the soldiers to fire; and the islander was suffered to carry off his friend, which he was just able to accomplish; and then fell down himself, and breathed his last.

A strong reinforcement from both ships having landed about this time, the natives retreated behind their walls; which affording Mr. King access to the priests, he sent one of them to exert his endeavours to bring his countrymen to some terms, and to propose to them, that if they would desist from throwing stones, he would not allow our men to fire. This truce was agreed to, and our people were suffered to launch the mast, and carry off the sails, astronomical instruments, &c. without molestation. As soon as our party had quitted the *Morai*, the islanders took possession of it, and some of them threw a few stones, which, however, did no mischief.

Between eleven and twelve o'clock, Mr. King arrived on-board the *Discovery*, where he found that no decisive plan had been adopted for the regulation of their future proceedings. The recovery of Captain Cook's body, and the restitution of the boats, were the objects which, on all hands, was agreed to insist on; and Mr. King declared it to be his opinion, that some vigorous methods should be put in execution, if the demand of them should not be instantly complied with.

Though it may justly be supposed that Mr. King's feelings, on the death of a beloved and respected friend, had some share in this opinion, yet there were doubtless other reasons, and those of the most serious nature, that had some weight with him. The confidence which the success of the natives in killing the commander and obliging the ships to leave the shore, must naturally

have inspired; and the advantage, however inconsiderable, which they had gained over our men the preceding day, would, he had no doubt, excite them to make further dangerous attempts; and the more particularly, as they had no great reason, from what they had hitherto observed, to dread the effects of our fire-arms. This kind of weapon, indeed, contrary to the expectations of all, had produced in them no signs of terror. On our side, such was the condition of the vessels, and the state of discipline among the crew, that had a vigorous attack been made during the night, the consequences might perhaps have been highly disagreeable. Mr. King was supported, in these apprehensions, by the opinion of the greater part of the officers on board; and nothing seemed to him more likely to encourage the islanders to make the attempt, than the appearance of being inclined to an accommodation, which they could only impute to weakness or to fear.

On the other hand it was urged, in favour of more conciliatory measures, that the mischief was already done, and was irreparable; that the natives, by reason of their former friendship and kindness had a strong claim to their regard; and the more particularly, as the late calamitous accident did not appear to be a premeditated design; that, on the part of Terreeboo, his ignorance of the theft, his willingness to accompany Captain Cook on-board the *Resolution*, and his having actually sent his two sons into the pinnace, must rescue his character in this respect from the smallest degree of suspicion; that the behaviour of his women and the chiefs might easily be accounted for, from the apprehensions occasioned in their minds by the armed force with which Captain Cook landed, and the hostile preparations in the bay; appearances so unsuitable to the confidence and friendship in which both parties had hitherto lived, that the arming of the islanders was manifestly with a design to resist the attempt, which they had some reason to expect would be made, to carry off their sovereign by force, and was naturally to be expected from a people who had a remarkable affection for their chiefs.

To these dictates of humanity other motives of a prudential kind were added; that the ships were in want of a supply of water and other refreshments—that the *Resolution's* foremast would require seven or eight days' work before it could be stepped—that the spring was advancing very fast—that the speedy prosecution of the next expedition to the northward ought now to be the sole object; and that, therefore, to engage in a vindictive contest with the natives, might not only subject our men to the imputation of needless cruelty, but would require great delay in the equipment of the ships.

Captain Clerke concurred in the latter opinion; and though Mr. King was convinced that an early and vigorous display of our resentment would have more effectually answered every

considerable, which
y, would, he had
as attempts; and
ason, from what
of our fire-arms,
expectations of
n our side, such
ate of discipline
en made during
ve been highly
apprehensions,
on board; and
the islanders to
eing inclined to
ute to weakness

more conciliatory
nd was irrepar-
friendship and
d the more par-
t appear to be a
oboo, his igno-
y Captain Cook
y sent his two
in this respect
behaviour of his
d for, from the
rmed force with
arations in the
and friendship
e arming of the
t the attempt,
be made, to
aturally to be
ction for their

of a prudential
a supply of
on's foremast
e it could be
ast—that tho
ne northward
e, to engage
not only sub-
y, but would

and though
display of
wered every

object ooth of prudence and humanity, he was upon the whole, not sorry that the measures he had recommended were rejected. For, though the contemptuous behaviour of the islanders and the subsequent opposition to the necessary occupations on-shore, arising most probably from a misconstruction of lenity, obliged our men at last to have recourse to violence in their own defence; yet he was not certain that the circumstances of the case would, in the opinion of the generality of people, have justified the use of force on our part in the first instance.

While thus engaged in concerting some plan for future operations, a very numerous concourse of the natives still kept possession of the shore: and some of them coming off in canoes, approached within pistol-shot of the ships, and insulted the crew by various marks of defiance and contempt. It was extremely difficult to restrain the seamen from the use of their arms on these occasions; but, as pacific measures had been resolved on, the canoes were allowed to return unmolested.

Mr. King was now ordered to proceed towards the shore with the boats of both ships, well manned and armed, with a view of bringing the islanders to a parley; and of obtaining, if possible, a conference with some of the *Erees*. If he should succeed in this attempt, he was to demand the dead bodies, and particularly that of Captain Cook; to threaten them, in case of a refusal, with resentment; but by no means to fire, unless attacked; and not to go on shore on any account whatever. These instructions were delivered to Mr. King before the whole party in the most positive manner.

Mr. King and his detachment left the ships about four o'clock in the afternoon; and, as they approached the shore, they perceived every indication of a hostile reception. The natives were all in motion; the women and children retiring; the men arming themselves with long spears and daggers, and putting on their war mats. It also appeared that, since the morning, they had thrown up breast-works of stone along the beach where Captain Cook had landed, in expectation, perhaps, of an attack at that place.

As soon as our party were within reach, the islanders began to throw stones at them with slings, but without doing any mischief. Mr. King concluded from these appearances, that all attempts to bring them to a parley would be ineffectual, unless he gave them some ground for mutual confidence; he therefore ordered the armed boats to stop, and advanced alone in the small boat, holding in his hand a white flag; the meaning of which, from an universal shout of joy from the natives, he had the satisfaction to find was immediately understood. The women instantly returned from the side of the hill, whither they had retired; the men threw off their mats, and all seated themselves together at the sea side, extending their arms and inviting Mr. King to land.

Though such behaviour seemed expressive of a friendly disposition, he could not avoid entertaining suspicions of its sincerity. But when he saw Koah, with extraordinary boldness and assurance, swimming off towards the boat, with a white flag in his hand, he thought proper to return this mark of confidence, and accordingly received him into the boat, though he was armed; a circumstance which did not contribute to lessen Mr. King's suspicions. He had, indeed, long harboured an unfavourable opinion of Koah. The priests had always represented him as a person of a malicious temper, and no friend to our men; and the repeated detections of his fraud and treachery had convinced him of the truth of their assertions. Besides, the melancholy transactions of the morning, in which he was seen performing a principal part, inspired Mr. King with the utmost horror at finding himself so near him; and as he approached him with feigned tears, and embraced him, Mr. King was so distrustful of his intentions, that he took hold of the point of the *pahoa*, which the chief held in his hand, and turned it from him. He informed the islander that he had come to demand the body of Captain Cook, and to declare war against the natives, unless it was restored without delay. Koah assured him this should be done as soon as possible, and that he would go himself for that purpose; and after requesting a piece of iron of Mr. King, with marks of great assurance, he leaped into the water, and swam ashore, calling out to his countrymen that they were all friends again.

Our people waited with great anxiety near an hour for his return; during this interval the other boats had approached so near the shore, that the men who were in them entered into conversation with a party of the islanders at a little distance; by whom they were informed that the Captain's body had been cut to pieces, and carried up the country; but of this circumstance Mr. King was not apprized till his return to the ships.

Mr. King now began to express some degree of impatience at Koah's delay; upon which the chiefs pressed him exceedingly to land; assuring him, that, if he would go in person to *Terreeboo*, the body would be undoubtedly restored to him. When they found they could not prevail on Mr. King to go ashore, they endeavoured, on pretence of conversing with him with greater ease, to decoy his boat among some rocks, where they might have had it in their power to separate him from the other boats. It was easy to see through these artifices, and he was, therefore, very desirous of breaking off all communication with them, when a chief approached, who had particularly attached himself to Captain Clerke, and the officers of the *Discovery*, on board which ship he had sailed when they last quitted the bay, intending to take his passage to the island of *Mowee*. He said he came from *Terreeboo*, to acquaint our people, that the body was carried up the country, but that it should be brought back

the following morning; there appeared much sincerity in his manner; and being asked, if he uttered a falsehood he hooked together his two fore fingers, which is here understood as the sign of veracity, in the use of which these islanders are very scrupulous.

“Mr. King being now at a loss how to proceed, sent Mr. Vancouver to inform Captain Clerke of all that had passed; that it was his opinion the natives did not intend to keep their word; and, far from being grieved at what had happened, were, on the contrary, inspired with great confidence on account of their late success, and sought only to gain time till they could plan some scheme for getting our people into their power. Mr. Vancouver came back with orders for Mr. King to return on-board, after giving the islanders to understand, that if the body was not restored the next morning, the town should be destroyed.

“When they perceived our party retiring, they endeavoured to provoke them by the most contemptuous and insulting gestures. Several of our people said, they could distinguish some of the natives parading about in the clothes which had belonged to our unhappy countrymen, and among them, an *Eree* brandishing Captain Cook's hanger, and a woman holding the scabbard. In consequence of Mr. King's report to Captain Clerke, of what he supposed to be the present temper and disposition of the inhabitants, the most effectual methods were taken to guard against any attack they might make during the night. The boats were moored with top chains; additional sentinels were stationed in each of our ships; and guard-boats were directed to row round them, in order to prevent the islanders from cutting the cables. In the night a vast number of lights were seen on the hills, which induced some of us to imagine, that they were removing their effects further up into the country in consequence of our menaces. But it seems more probable, that they were kindled at the sacrifices that were performing on account of the war, in which they supposed themselves likely to be engaged; and perhaps the bodies of our slain countrymen were, at that time, burning. We afterwards observed fires of the same kind, as we passed the island of Morotoi; which, according to the information we received from some of the natives then on-board, were made on account of a war they had declared against a neighbouring island. This agrees with what we learned among the Friendly and Society Isles, that previous to any hostile expedition, the chiefs always endeavoured to animate the courage of the people, by feasts and rejoicings in the night.

“We passed the night without any disturbance, except from the howlings and lamentations which were heard on-shore. Early the next morning, (Monday the 15th) Koah came along-side the Resolution, with a small pig, and some cloth, which he desired permission to present to Mr. King. We have already mentioned, that this officer was supposed, by the islanders, to be

the son of Captain Cook; and as the latter had always suffered them to believe it, Mr. King was probably considered as the chief after his death. As soon as he came on deck, he interrogated Koah with regard to the body; and on his returning evasive answers, refused to accept his present; and was on the point of dismissing him with expressions of anger and resentment, had not Captain Clerke, with a view of keeping up the appearance of friendship, judged it more proper, that he should be treated with the customary respect. This chief came frequently to us, in the course of the morning, with some trifling present or other; and as we always observed him eyeing every part of the ship with a great degree of attention, we took care he should see we were well prepared for our defence. He was extremely urgent both with Captain Clerke and Mr. King, to go on shore, imputing the detention of the bodies to the other chiefs: assuring those gentlemen, that every thing might be adjusted to their satisfaction by a personal interview with the king. However, they did not think it prudent to comply with Koah's request; and, indeed a fact came afterwards to their knowledge, which proved his want of veracity. For they were informed, that immediately after the action in which Captain Cook had lost his life, Terreeboo had retired to a cave in the steep part of the mountain that hangs over the bay; which was accessible only by means of ropes, and where he continued several days, having his provisions let down to him by cords.

“After the departure of Koah from the ships, we observed that his countrymen, who had assembled by day-break, in vast crowds on the shore, flocked around him with great eagerness on his landing, as if they wished to learn the intelligence he had gained, and what steps were to be taken in consequence of it. It is highly probable that they expected we should attempt to put our threats in execution; and they appeared fully determined to stand their ground. During the whole morning, we heard conchs blowing in various parts of the coast; large parties were perceived marching over the hills; and, upon the whole, appearances were so alarming, that we carried out a stream anchor, for the purpose of hauling the ship abreast of the town, in case of an attack; and boats were stationed off the northern point of the bay in order to prevent a surprise from the natives in that quarter.

“The warlike posture in which they appeared at present, and the breach of their engagement to restore the bodies of the slain, occasioned fresh debates among us concerning the measures which should now be pursued. It was at length determined, that nothing should be permitted to interfere with the repair of the Resolution's mast and the preparations for our departure; but that we should, nevertheless, continue our negotiations for the restoration of the bodies of our countrymen. The greater part of the day was taken up in getting the fore-mast into a pro-

per si
and al
of the
bevolv
tion, I
Disco
second
vey a
his la
the wh
and, i
and g
eight
paddl
than
two o
out “
Mr. K
had s
When
the off
happ
balls o
was th
pellati
Cook v
and w
scarcel
ting of
tears t
a part
broug
ror w
human
he sai
had b
bones
posse
saw h
purpo
had s
“ V
canni
first
them
the c
const
the v
Who

per situation on deck, that the carpenters might work upon it; and also in making the necessary alterations in the commissions of the officers. The chief command of the expedition having devolved on Captain Clerke, he removed on-board the *Resolution*, promoted Lieutenant Gore to the rank of Captain of the *Discovery*, appointed Messrs. King and Williamson, first and second Lieutenants of the *Resolution*, and nominated Mr. Harvey a midshipman who had accompanied Captain Cook during his last two voyages, to fill the vacant lieutenancy. During the whole day we sustained no interruption from the islanders; and, in the evening, the launch was moored with a top-chain, and guard-boats stationed round both ships as before. About eight o'clock, it being exceedingly dark, we heard a canoe paddling toward the ship; and it was no sooner perceived than both the sentinels on deck fired into it. There were two of the natives in this canoe, who immediately roared out "*Tinnee*," (which was the way in which they pronounced Mr. King's name), and said that they were friends, and had something with them which belonged to Captain Cook. When they came on-board, they threw themselves at the feet of the officers, and seemed to be exceedingly terrified. It fortunately happened that neither of them was hurt, notwithstanding the balls of both pieces had gone through the canoe. One of them was the person who has been already mentioned, under the appellation of the *Taboo* man, who constantly attended Captain Cook with the particular ceremonies we have before described; and who, though a man of distinction in the island, could scarcely be prevented from performing for him the most humiliating offices of a menial servant. After bewailing, with many tears the loss of the *Orono*, he informed us that he had brought a part of his body. He then gave us a small bundle which he brought under his arm; and it is impossible to describe the horror with which we were seized, upon finding in it a piece of human flesh, of the weight of about nine or ten pounds. This, he said, was all that now remained of the body; that the rest had been cut in pieces and burnt; but that the head and all the bones, except those which belonged to the trunk, were in the possession of *Terreeboo* and the other *Erees*; that what we saw had been allotted to *Kaoo*, the chief of the priests, for the purpose of being used in some religious ceremony; and that he had sent it as a proof of his innocence and attachment to us.

"We had now an opportunity of learning whether they were cannibals: and we did not neglect to avail ourselves of it. We first endeavoured by several indirect questions, put to each of them apart, to gain information respecting the manner in which the other bodies had been disposed of, and finding them very constant in one account, that, after the flesh had been cut off, the whole of it was burnt, we at last put the direct question, Whether they had not eat some of it? They immediately testi-

fied as much horror at the idea, as any European would have done; and asked, whether that was the practice among us. They afterward asked us with great earnestness, and with the appearance of apprehension, when the *Orono* would come again, and how he would treat them on his return. The same inquiry was often made in the sequel by others; and this idea is consistent with the general tenor of their conduct towards him, which indicated, that they considered him as a being of a superior nature.

“Though we pressed our two friendly visitants to continue on-board till the next morning, we could not prevail upon them. They informed us, that, if this transaction should come to the knowledge of the king, or any of the other *Erees*, it might be attended with the most fatal consequences to their whole society; to prevent which, they had been under the necessity of coming to us in the dark; and the same precaution, they said, would be requisite in returning on-shore. They further told us that the chiefs were eager to take revenge on us for the death of their countrymen; and particularly cautioned us against trusting Koah, who they assured us was our implacable enemy, and ardently longed for an opportunity of fighting us, to which the blowing of the conchs, that we had heard in the morning, was intended as a challenge. It also appeared, from the information of these men that seventeen of their countrymen were slain in the first action at the village of Kowrowa, five of whom were chiefs; and that Kaneena and his brother, our particular friends, were of that number. Eight, they said, had lost their lives at the observatory; three of whom likewise were persons of the first distinction. The two natives left us about eleven o'clock, and took the precaution to desire, that one of our guard boats might attend them till they had passed the *Discovery*, lest they should again be fired upon, which by alarming their countrymen on-shore, might expose them to the danger of detection. This request was readily complied with, and we had the satisfaction to find, that they reached the land safe and undiscovered.

“We heard, during the remainder of this night, the same loud lamentations as on the preceding one, and early the following morning, we received a visit from Koah. Mr. King was piqued at finding, that notwithstanding the most glaring marks of treachery in his conduct, and the positive declaration of our friends the priests, he should still be suffered to carry on the same farce, and to make us at least appear the dupes of his hypocrisy. Our situation was, indeed, become extremely awkward and unpromising; none of the purposes for which this pacific plan of proceedings had been adopted, having hitherto been in any respect promoted by it. No satisfactory answer had been given to our demands; we did not seem to have made any progress towards a reconciliation with the natives; they still re-

main
appo
yet it
the o
delay

“

Capt

numb

they

have

very

reina

mena

their

to di

upon

them

defian

peara

the le

“

“

a-hea

us, w

Cook

coura

“

in a b

oblig

quest

Cleri

the d

acqu

for s

prom

at th

ted

“

susp

serv

wal

ran

effe

wa

est

ha

En

“

kill

cer

mean would have
 practice among
 ess, and with
 could come again
 the same inquiry
 his idea is con-
 wards him, which
 g of a superior

ants to continue
 avail upon them.
 could come to the
 ces, it might be
 their whole ob-
 the necessity of
 tion, they said,
 further told us
 or the death of
 against trusting
 le enemy, and
 , to which the
 morning, was in-
 information of
 ere slain in the
 m were chiefs;
 riends, were of
 ves at the ob-
 of the first dis-
 o'clock, and
 guard boals
 discovery, lest
 alarming their
 the danger of
 with, and we
 land safe and

the same loud
 the following
 g was piqued
 g marks of
 ation of our
 carry on the
 es of his hy-
 ely awkward
 this pacific
 erto been in
 r had been
 de any pro-
 they still re-

remained on the shore in hostile postures, as if determined to oppose any endeavours we might make to go ashore; and yet it was become absolutely necessary to attempt landing, as the completing our stock of water would not admit of any longer delay.

"We must remark, however, in justice to the conduct of Captain Clerke, that it was highly probable, from the great numbers of the islanders, and from the resolution with which they seemed to expect our approach, that an attack could not have been made without danger; and that the loss of even a very few men might have been severely felt by us during the remainder of our voyage; whereas the delaying to put our menaces into execution, though, on the one hand, it diminished their opinion of our valour, had the effect of occasioning them to disperse, on the other. This day, about twelve o'clock, upon finding that we persisted in our inactivity, great bodies of them, after blowing their conchs, and using every method of defiance, marched off, over the hills, and never made their appearance afterwards. Those, however, who remained, were not the less daring and presumptuous.

"One of them had the insolence to come within musket-shot a-head of the *Resolution*, and, after throwing several stones at us, waved over his head the hat which had belonged to Captain Cook, while his countrymen ashore were exulting and encouraging his audacity.

"Our people were highly enraged at this insult, and coming in a body on the quarter-deck, begged they might no longer be obliged to put up with such reiterated provocations, and requested Mr. King to obtain permission for them, from Captain Clerke, to take advantage of the first fair occasion of avenging the death of their much-lamented commander. On Mr. King's acquainting the Captain with what was passing, he gave orders for some great guns to be fired at the islanders on-shore; and promised the crew, that if they should meet with any molestation at the watering-place the next day, they should then be permitted to chastise them.

"Before we could bring our guns to bear, the natives had suspected our intentions from the bustle and agitation they observed in the ship; and had retired behind their houses and walls. We were consequently obliged to fire in some degree at random; notwithstanding which, our shot produced all the effects that could have been desired; for, in a short time afterwards, we perceived Koah paddling towards us with the greatest haste; and, when he arrived, we learned that some people had been killed, and among the rest Mauhamaiha, a principal *Eree*, nearly related to *Terreeboo*.*

* In the language of these islands, the word *matee* is generally used either to express killing or wounding; and our men were afterwards informed, that this chief had only received a trifling blow on the face, from a stone which had been struck by one of their ball.

“Not long after Koah's arrival, two boys swam off from the *Morai* towards our vessels, each armed with a long spear; and, after they had approached pretty near, they began in a very solemn manner, to chant a song; the subject of which, from their frequently mentioning the word *Orono*, and pointing to the village where Captain Cook had been slain, we concluded to be the late calamitous occurrence. Having sung for near a quarter of an hour in a plaintive strain, during all which time they continued in the water, they repaired on-board the *Discovery*, and delivered up their spears; and, after remaining there a short time, returned on-shore. We could never learn who sent them, or what was the object of this ceremony. During the night we took the usual precautions for the security of the ships; and, as soon as it was dark, the two natives, who had visited us the preceding evening, came off to us again. They assured us, that though the effects of our great guns, this afternoon, had greatly alarmed the chiefs, they had by no means relinquished their hostile intentions, and advised us to be on our guard. The following morning, which was the 17th, the boats of both ships were dispatched ashore to procure water; and the *Discovery* was warped close to the beach, in order to protect the persons employed in that service. We soon found that the intelligence which had been sent us by the priests was not destitute of foundation, and that the islanders were determined to neglect no opportunity of annoying us, when it could be done without much hazard.

“The villages, throughout this whole cluster of islands, are, for the most part situated near the sea; and the adjacent ground is enclosed with stone walls, of the height of about three feet. These, we at first supposed, were designed for the division of property; but we now discovered that they served for a defence against invasion, for which purpose they were, perhaps, chiefly intended. They consist of loose stones, and the natives are very dexterous in shifting them, with great quickness, to such particular situations, as the direction of the attack may occasionally require. In the sides of the mountain that stands near the bay, they have likewise holes, or caves, of considerable depth, whose entrance is secured by a fence of a similar kind. From behind both these stations, the islanders perpetually harassed our watering party with stones; nor could the considerable force we had on-shore, with the advantage of muskets, compel them to retreat. Thus opposed, our people were so occupied in attending to their own safety, that, during the whole forenoon, they filled only one ton of water. It being therefore impossible for them to perform this service, till their assailants were driven to a greater distance, the *Discovery* was ordered to dislodge them with her great guns; which being accomplished by means of a few discharges, the men landed without molestation.

am off from the
ong spear; and
egan in a very
of which, from
pointing to the
concluded to be
r near a quarter
time they con-
Discovery, and
there a short
who sent them,
g the night we
ships; and, as
ted us the pre-
ssured us, that
n, had greatly
quished their
guard. The
of both ships
he Discovery
ct the persons
e intelligence
destitute of
ed to neglect
done without

islands, are,
acent ground
at three feet.
e division of
or a defence
haps, chiefly
natives are
ess, to such
t may occa-
stands near
onsiderable
milar kind.
perpetually
the incon-
ge of mus-
eople were
during the
It being
e, till their
covery was
ich being
en landed

“The natives, however, made their appearance again soon afterwards, in their usual method of attack; and it was now deemed absolutely necessary to burn down some straggling huts near the wall behind which they had sheltered themselves. In executing the orders that were given for that purpose, our people were hurried into acts of unnecessary devastation and cruelty. Some allowance ought certainly to be made for their resentment of the repeated insults and contemptuous behaviour of the islanders, and for their mutual desire of revenging the death of their beloved and respected commander.

“It has before been observed, that the directions had been given to burn only a few straggling houses, which afforded shelter to the islanders. We were therefore greatly surprised on perceiving the whole village in flames; and before a boat, that was sent to stop the progress of the mischief, could reach the land, the habitations of our old and constant friends, the priests, were all on fire. Mr. King had, therefore, great reason to lament the illness that confined him on-board this day. The priests had always been under his protection; and unfortunately, the officers then on duty, having seldom been on-shore at the *Morai*, were but little acquainted with the circumstances of the place. Had he been present himself, he might, in all probability, have been the means of preserving their little society from destruction.

“In escaping from the flames, several of the inhabitants were shot; and our people cut off the heads of two of them, and brought them on-board. The fate of one unhappy native was much lamented by all of us. As he was repairing to the well for water, he was shot at by one of the marines. The ball happened to strike his calibash, which he instantly threw from him and ran off. He was pursued into one of the caves above mentioned, and no lion could have defended his den with greater bravery and fierceness; till at length, after he had found means to keep two of our people at bay for a considerable time, he expired, covered with wounds. This accident first brought us acquainted with the use to which these caverns are applied. About this time an elderly man was taken prisoner, bound and conveyed on-board the *Resolution*, in the same boat with the heads of his two countrymen. We never observed horror so strongly portrayed, as in the face of this person, nor so violent a transition to immoderate joy, as when he was untied, and given to understand, that he might depart in safety. He shewed us that he was not deficient in gratitude, as he not only returned afterwards with presents of provisions, but also did us other services.

“In a short time after the destruction of the village, we saw coming down the hill, a man, accompanied by fifteen or twenty boys, who held in their hands pieces of white-cloth, plaintains, green boughs, &c. It happened that this pacific embassy, as soon as they were within reach, received the fire of a party of

our men. This however did not deter them from continuing their procession, and the officer on duty came up in time to prevent a second discharge. As they made a nearer approach, the principal person proved to be our friend Kaireekkea, who had fled when our people first set fire to the village, and had now returned, and expressed his desire of being sent on-board the Resolution.

“On his arrival, we thought him extremely thoughtful and grave. We endeavoured to convince him of the necessity there was of setting fire to the village by which his house, and those of his brethren were unintentionally destroyed. He expostulated with us on our ingratitude and want of friendship; and, indeed, it was not till the present moment that we knew the whole extent of the injury that had been done them. He informed us, that, confiding in the promises Mr. King had made them, as well as in the assurances they had received from the men who had brought us some of Captain Cook's remains, they had not removed their effects back into the country, as the other inhabitants had done, but had put every valuable article of their own, as well as what they had collected from us, into a house adjoining the *Morai*, where they had the mortification of seeing it all set on fire by our people. He had, on coming on board, perceived the heads of his two countrymen lying on deck, at which he was greatly shocked, and earnestly desired that they might be thrown overboard. This request, by the direction of Captain Clerke, was immediately complied with.

“Our watering-party returned on-board in the evening, having, sustained no further interruption. We passed a disagreeable night; the cries and lamentations we heard from the shore being far more dreadful than ever. Our only consolation, on this occasion, arose from the hopes that the repetition of such severities would not be requisite in future. It is remarkable, that amidst all these disturbances, the female natives, who were on-board, did not offer to leave us, or discover any apprehension either for themselves or their friends on-shore. They appeared, indeed, so perfectly unconcerned, that some of them, who were on the deck when the village was in flames, seemed to admire the spectacle, and frequently exclaimed that it was *maintai*, or very fine.

“The next morning the treacherous Koah came off to the ships as usual. There being no longer any necessity for keeping terms with him, Mr. King was allowed to treat him as he thought proper. When he approached the side of the Resolution, singing a song, and offering a hog, and some plantains, to Mr. King, the latter ordered him to keep off, and cautioned him never to make his appearance again without the bones of Captain Cook, lest his life should pay the forfeit of his repeated breach of faith. He did not appear much mortified with this unwelcome reception, but immediately returned on-shore, and

joined a party of his countrymen, who were throwing stones at our waterers. The body of the young man who had been killed the preceding day was found this morning lying at the entrance of the cave; and a mat was thrown over him by some of our people; soon after which they saw several of the natives carrying him off on their shoulders, and could hear them chanting as they marched a mournful song.

The islanders being at length convinced that it was not the want of ability to chastise them which had induced us at first to tolerate their provocations, desisted from molesting our people; and, towards the evening, a chief, named Eappo, who had seldom visited us, but whom we knew to be a man of the first distinction; came with presents from Terreeoboo to sue for peace. These presents were accepted, and the chief was dismissed with the following answer: 'That no peace would be granted till the remains of Captain Cook should be restored.'

'We were informed by Eappo, that the flesh of all the bones of our people, who had been slain, as well as the bones of the trunks, had been burnt; that the limb-bones of the marines had been distributed among the inferior chiefs; and that the remains of Captain Cook had been disposed of as follows: the head to a great *Eree*, called Kahooopeou; the hair to Maihamaiha; and the arms, legs, and thighs, to Terreeoboo. After it was dark, many of the natives came off with various sorts of vegetables; and we also received from Kaireekea two large presents of the same articles.

The next day was principally employed in sending and receiving the messages that passed between Captain Clerke and the old king. Eappo was very urgent that one of our officers should go on-shore; and offered to remain on-board, in the mean time, as an hostage. This request, however, was not complied with; and he left us with a promise of bringing the bones the following day. Our watering party at the beach did not meet with the least opposition from the islanders, who, notwithstanding our cautious behaviour, again ventured themselves amongst us without any marks of diffidence or apprehension.

On Saturday the 20th, early in the morning, we had the satisfaction of getting the foremast stepped. This operation was attended with considerable difficulty, and some danger, our ropes being so extremely rotten, that the purchase several times gave way. This morning, between the hours of ten and eleven, we saw a numerous body of the natives descending the hill, which is over the beach, in a sort of procession, each man carrying on his shoulders two or three sugar-canes, and some bread-fruit, plaintains, and taro, in his hand. They were preceded by two drummers, who, when they reached the water-side, seated themselves by a white flag, and began beating their drums, while those who followed them advanced one by one, and deposited the presents they had brought with them; after

which they retired in the same order. Soon afterwards Eappo appeared in his long feathered cloak, bearing something with great solemnity in his hands; and having stationed himself on a rock, he made signs that a boat should be sent him.

“Captain Clerke, supposing that the chief had brought the bones of Captain Cook (which, indeed proved to be the case,) went himself in the pinnace to receive them, and ordered Mr. King to attend him in the cutter. When they arrived at the beach, Eappo, entering the pinnace, delivered the bones to Captain Clerke, wrapped up in a great quantity of fine new cloth, and covered with a spotted cloak of black and white feathers. He afterwards attended our gentlemen to the Resolution, but could not be prevailed on to accompany them on board; being, perhaps, from a sense of decency, unwilling to be present at the opening of the parcel.

“We found, in this bundle, both the hands of Captain Cook entire; which were well known to us from a scar on one of them that divided the fore-finger from the thumb, the whole length of the metacarpal bone; the skull, but with the scalp separated from it, and the bones of the face wanting; the scalp, with the ears adhering to it, and the hair upon it cut short; the bones of the arms, with the skin of the fore-arms hanging to them; the bones of the thighs and legs joined together, but without the feet. The ligaments of the joints were observed to be entire; and the whole shewed sufficient marks of having been in the fire, except the hands, which had the flesh remaining upon them, and were cut in several places, and crammed with salt, most probably with a view of preserving them. The skull was free from any fracture, but the scalp had a cut in the back part of it. The lower jaw and feet, which were wanting, had been seized, as Eappo informed us, by different *Erees*; and he also told us, that Terreeohoo was using every means to recover them.

“Eappo, and the king's son, came on-board the next morning, and brought with them not only the remaining bones of Captain Cook, but likewise the barrels of his gun, his shoes, and some other trifles which had belonged to him. Eappo assured us that Terreeohoo, Maiha-maiha, and himself, were extremely desirous of peace; that they had given us the most convincing proofs of it; that they had been prevented from giving it sooner by the other chiefs, many of whom were still disaffected to us. He lamented, with the most lively sorrow the death of six chiefs, who had been killed by our people; some of whom, he said, were among our best friends. He informed us, that the cutter had been taken away by Pareea's people, probably in revenge for the blow that he had received; and that it had been broken up the following day. The arms of the marines, which we had also demanded, had been carried off, he said, by the populace, and were irrecoverable.

“Nothing now remained but to perform the last solemn

office
orde
havi
over
milit
more
“
bay.
prece
off to
fied;
late
ward
that
ships
came
their
who
and
came
“
Clerk
shoul
a bar
About
Eapp
in a
anch
asser
along
and
G
south
the
west
they
rock
leag
the
Rar
from
ing
stor
be
the
fro
by
tw

offices to our excellent commander. Eappo was dismissed with orders to *taboo* all the bay; and, in the afternoon, the bones having been deposited in a coffin, the funeral service was read over them, and they were committed to the deep with the usual military honours. Our feelings on this mournful occasion, are more easy to be conceived than expressed.

“During the morning of the 22d not a canoe was seen in the bay. The *taboo*, which Eappo at our desire had laid on it the preceding day, not being yet taken off. At length that chief came off to us. We assured him, that we were now perfectly satisfied; and that, as the *Orono* was buried, all remembrance of the late unhappy transactions was buried with him. We afterwards requested him to take off the *taboo*, and to make it known that the islanders might bring provisions to us as usual. The ships were soon surrounded with canoes, and many of the *Erees* came on-board, expressing their grief at what had happened, and their satisfaction at our reconciliation. Several of our friends, who did not favour us with a visit, sent presents of large hogs and other provisions. Among the rest, the old treacherous Koah came off to us, but we refused him admittance.

“As we were now preparing for putting to sea, Captain Clerke imagining, that if the intelligence of our proceedings should reach the islands to leeward before us, it might have a bad effect, gave orders that the ships should be unmoored. About eight in the evening we dismissed all the natives; and Eappo, and the friendly Kaireekcea, took their leave of us in a very affectionate manner. We immediately weighed anchor, and stood out of Karakakoa Bay. The islanders were assembled in great numbers on the shore; and, as we passed along, received our last farewells with every mark of good-will and affection.”

Giving up all prospect of making a closer examination of the south-east parts of Mowee, the ships bore away and kept along the south-east side of Tahoorowa. Steering close round its western extremity, in order to fetch the west-side of Mowee, they suddenly shoaled water, and saw the sea breaking on some rocks, almost right-a-head. They then kept away about a league and a half, and again steered to the northward, when they stood for a passage between Mowee, and an island named Ranai. In the afternoon the weather was calm, with light airs from the west. They stood to the north-north-west; but observing a shoal about sunset, and the weather being unsettled, they stood toward the south.

They had now passed the south-west side of this island, without being able to approach the shore. This side of the island forms the same distant view as the north-east, as seen on the return from the north, in November, 1778; the hilly parts, connected by a low flat isthmus, having at the first view the appearance of two separate islands. This deceptive appearance continued til

they were within about ten leagues of the coast, which bending, a great way inward, formed a capacious bay. The westernmost point, off which the shoal runs that they have just now mentioned, is rendered remarkable by a small hillock, south of which is a fine sandy bay; and, on the shore, are several huts, with plenty of cocoa trees about them.

In the course of the day several of the natives visited the ships, and brought provisions with them. It was presently discovered that they had heard of the unfortunate disasters at Owwhyhee. They were extremely anxious to be informed of the particulars, from a woman who had hid herself in the Resolution, in order to obtain a passage to Atooi; making particular inquiries about Pareea, and some other chiefs; and seeming much agitated at the death of Kaneena, and his brother. But, in whatever light this business might have been represented by the woman, it produced no bad effect on their behaviour, which was remarkably civil and obliging.

During the night the weather varied continually, but on the 25th, in the morning, the wind being at east, the ships steered along the south side of Ranai, till almost noon, when we had baffling winds and calms till the evening; after which we had a light easterly breeze, and steered for the west of Morotoi. The current, which had set from the north-east, ever since we left Karakakooa Bay, changed its direction, in the course of this day, to the south-east. The wind was again variable during the night; but, early in the morning of the 26th, it settled at east; blowing so fresh as to oblige them to double reef the topsails. At seven they opened a small bay, distant about two leagues, having a fine, sandy beach; but not perceiving any appearance of fresh water, they endeavoured to get to the windward of Woahoo, an island which they had seen in January, 1778.

The wind continuing to blow fresh, Captain Clerke was unwilling to be entangled with a lee-shore. Instead of attempting, therefore, to examine the bay, he hauled up and steered in the direction of the coast. They steered along the shore, keeping it at the distance of about a mile and were induced, by the sight of a fine river, to anchor in thirteen fathoms' water. In the afternoon Mr. King attended the two Captains on shore, where few of the natives were to be seen, and those principally women. The men, they were informed, were gone to Morotoi, to fight Tahyterree: but their chief, Perreeoranne, remained behind, and would certainly attend them as soon as he was informed of their arrival.

The water, to their great disappointment, had a brackish taste for about two hundred yards up the river: beyond which however, it was perfectly fresh, and was a delightful stream. Further up, they came to the conflux of two small rivulets, branching off to the right and left of a steep, romantic mountain. The banks of the river, and all that they saw of Woahoo,

re in
punta
As i
his pl
rewar
which
procee
they w
ay-lig
y non
at po
It be
south-w
anchor
The
ships w
gent o
laden v
Resolu
and the
of peo
were k
began t
No s
than a
soldier
his han
the na
turned
and it
from e
the na
his ba
The
ageme
that n
of vio
instru
party
positi
ha. ch
the s
A
proa
Mr.
hatc
payi
sam
T

which bending, the westernmost now mentioned, of which is a small islet, with plenty of water. We visited the ships, and discovered the particulars, in order to make inquiries about the woman, it was remarkable

ly, but on the ships steered when we had a Morotoi. The ever since we course of this isle during the tattered at east; the topsails. two leagues, appearance windward of , 1778.

Mr. King was unattempting, steered in the re, keeping by the sight in the after- where few lly women. to, to fight behind, and informed of

brackish pond which stream. rivulets, tic mound. Woahoo,

re in fine cultivation, and full of villages; the face of the country being also uncommonly beautiful and picturesque.

As it would have been a laborious business to have watered at this place, Mr. King was dispatched to search about the coast to seaward; but, being unable to land, on account of a reef of coral, which extended along the shore, Captain Clerke resolved to proceed immediately to Atooi. In the morning, about eight, they weighed, and stood to the northward; and on the 28th at day-light, they bore away for that island, and were in sight of it by noon. They were off its eastern extremity, which is a green at point, about sun-set.

It being dark, they did not venture to run for the road on the south-west side, but spent the night in plying on and off, and anchored, at nine the next morning, in twenty-five fathoms' water.

The principal object in view, at this place, was to water the ships with as much expedition as possible; and Mr. King was sent on-shore in the afternoon, with the launch and pinnace, laden with casks. He was accompanied by the gunner of the Resolution, who was instructed to trade for some provisions; and they were attended by a guard of five marines. Multitudes of people were collected on the beach, by whom, at first, they were kindly received; but after they had landed the casks, they began to be exceedingly troublesome.

No sooner were the marines posted to keep off the populace, than a man took hold of the bayonet belonging to one of the soldier's muskets, and endeavoured to wrench it forcibly from his hand. Mr. King immediately advanced towards them, when the native quitted his hold, and retired; but immediately returned, having a spear in one hand, and a dagger in the other; and it was with difficulty that his countrymen could restrain him from engaging with the soldier. This affray was occasioned by the native's having received from the soldier a slight prick with his bayonet, to induce him to keep without the line.

The situation of the ships, at this time, required great management and circumspection; Mr. King accordingly enjoined, that no one should presume to fire, or proceed to any other act of violence, without positive commands. Having given these instructions, he was summoned to the assistance of the watering party, where he found the natives in the same mischievous disposition. They had demanded, for every cask of water, a large hatchet; which not being complied with, they would not permit the sailors to roll them to the boats.

As soon as Mr. King had joined them, one of the natives approached him, with great insolence, and made the same demand. Mr. King told him, that, as a friend, he was welcome to a hatchet, but he certainly would carry off the water, without paying for it, and ordered the pinnace men to proceed, at the same time calling three marines from the traders to protect them.

This becoming spirit so far succeeded as to prevent any dar-

ing attempt to interrupt our men, but they still persevered in the most teasing and insulting behaviour. Some of them, under pretence of assisting the sailors in rolling the casks towards the shore, gave them a different direction; others stole the hats from off the sailors' heads, pulled them backward by the skirts of their clothes, and tripped up their heels; the populace, during all this time, shouting and laughing, with a mixture of mockery and malice. They afterwards took an opportunity of stealing the cooper's bucket, and forcibly took away his bag. Their principal aim, however, was to possess themselves of the muskets of the marines, who were continually complaining of their attempts to force them from their hands. Though they, in general, preserved a kind of deference and respect for Mr. King, yet they obliged him to contribute his share towards their stock of plunder. One of them approached him in a familiar manner, and diverted his attention, whilst another seized his hanger, which he held carelessly in his hand, and ran away with it.

Such insolence was not to be repelled by force. Prudence dictated that they must patiently submit to it; at the same time guardin against its effects as well as they were able. Mr. King was, however, somewhat alarmed, on being soon after informed by the sergeant of marines, that, turning suddenly round, he saw a man behind him, armed with a dagger, in the position of striking. Though in this he might, perhaps, be mistaken, yet their situation was truly critical, and the smallest error on the part of our men might have been fatal to them.

At length our men so far succeeded, as to get all the casks to the sea-side, without any accident of consequence. While our people were getting the casks into the launch, the inhabitants, thinking they should have no further opportunity of plundering, grew more daring and insolent. The sergeant of marines luckily suggested to Mr. King the advantage of sending off his party first into the boats, by which means the muskets would be taken out of their reach, which, as above related, were the grand objects the islanders had in view: and if they should happen to attack our men, the marines could more effectually defend them, than if they were on-shore.

Every thing was now in the boats, and only Mr. King, Mr. Anderson the gunner, and a seaman of the boat's crew, remained on-shore. As the pinnacle lay beyond the surf, through which our men were obliged to swim, Mr. King told them to make the best of their way to it, and that he should follow them. They both refused to comply with this order, and it became a matter of contest who should be the last on-shore. Some hasty expression, it seems, Mr. King had just before made use of to the sailor, which he considered as a reflection on his courage, had excited his resentment, and the old gunner, as a point of honour was now started, conceived it to be his duty to take a part in it.

In this whimsical situation they, perhaps, might have remained

still persevered in one of them, under the casks towards the stern, stole the hats from the skirts of the populace, during a mixture of mockery and opportunity of stealing his bag. The natives themselves of the musket explaining of their purpose, though they, in general, respect for Mr. King, towards their stock in a familiar manner, perceived his danger, and went away with it.

Prudence was used at the same time, and Mr. King soon after informed the natives roundly, he was in the position of being mistaken, yet the best error on the

at all the casks to be taken care of. While our the inhabitants, instead of plundering, the marines luckily got off his party, and would be taken care of the grand object should happen to defend them,

Mr. King, Mr. Anderson, and the crew, remained on board, though which our purpose was to make the natives understand them. They came in a manner that was a hasty expression of the courage, had a great point of honour to take a part in it, and have remained

some time, had not the dispute been settled by the stones, which began to fly about them, and by the exclamations of the people from the boats, begging our men to be expeditions, as the natives were armed with clubs and spears, and pursuing them into the water. Mr. King arrived first at the pinnace, and, perceiving Mr. Anderson was so far behind, as not to be entirely out of danger, he ordered one musket to be fired, but, in the hurry of executing his orders, the marines fired two. The natives immediately ran away, leaving only one man and a woman on the beach. The man attempted to rise several times, but was not able, having been wounded in the groin. The natives, in a short time, returned, and surrounded the wounded man, brandishing their spears at them with an air of defiance, but, by the time they reached the ships, some persons arrived, which were supposed to be the chiefs, by whom they were all driven from the shore.

Captain Clerke, during the absence, of the men had been under terrible apprehensions for their safety, which had been considerably increased by his misunderstanding some of the natives with whom he had some conversation on-board. The name of Captain Cook being frequently mentioned, accompanied with circumstantial descriptions of death and destruction, he concluded that they had received intelligence of the unfortunate events at Owhyhee, to which they alluded. But they were only endeavouring to make him understand that wars had arisen on account of the goats, which Captain Cook had left at Oneeheow, and that the poor goats had been slaughtered during the contest for the property of them. Captain Clerke, applying these representations to their misfortunes at Owhyhee, and to an indication of revenge, fixed his telescope upon them; and, as soon as he saw the smoke of the muskets, ordered the boats to be put off to their assistance.

On the 2d of March, being the next day, Mr. King was again ordered on-shore with the watering party.

As they had so narrowly escaped the preceding day, Captain Clerke augmented the force from both ships, and they had a guard of forty men under arms. This precaution, however, was found to be unnecessary; for the beach was left entirely to themselves, and the ground extending from the landing-place to the lake *tabooed*. Hence they concluded, that some of the chiefs had visited this quarter, who, being unable to stay, had considerably taken this step, that they might be accommodated with safety. Several men appeared with spears and daggers, on the other side of the river, but never attempted to molest our men. Their women came over, and sat down on the banks close to them; and, at noon, some of the men were prevailed on to bring hogs and roots, and also to dress them. When they had left the beach, they came down to the sea-side, and one of them threw a stone at our men; but as his conduct was highly censured by the rest, they did not shew any resentment.

On the 3rd, they completed the watering, without much difficulty; and, on returning to the ships, were informed that several chiefs had been on-board, and had apologized for the conduct of their countrymen, attributing their riotous behaviour to the quarrels then subsisting among the principal people of the island, and which had destroyed all order and subordination.

The government of Atooi was disputed between Toneoneo, who had the supreme power when they were there the preceding year, and a youth named Teavee. By different fathers, they are both the grandsons of Perreeoranee, king of Woahoo; who gave Atooi to the former, and Oneeheow to the latter. The quarrel originated about the goats which were left at Oneeheow the year before; they being claimed by Toneoneo, as that island was a dependancy of his. The adherents of Teavee insisting on the right of possession, both parties prepared to support their pretensions, and a battle ensued just before the arrival of the ships, wherein Toneoneo had been defeated; Toneoneo was likely to be more affected by the consequence of this victory, than by the loss of the objects in dispute; for the mother of Teavee having married a second husband, who was a chief at Atooi, and at the head of a powerful faction there, he embraced the present opportunity of driving Toeoneo out of the island, that his son-in-law might succeed to the government. The goats, which had increased to six, and would probably have stocked these islands in a few years, were destroyed in the contest.

On the 4th, our men were visited on board the *Resolution*, by the father-in-law, the mother, and the sister, of the young prince, who made several curious presents to Captain Clerke. Among the rest were some fish-hooks, which were made from the bones of Terreoboo's father, who had been killed in an unsuccessful descent upon Woahoo. Also a fly-flap, from the hands of the prince's sister, which had a human bone for its handle, and had been given to her by her father-in-law, as a trophy. Young Teavee was not of the company, he being engaged in the performance of some religious rites, on account of the victory he had obtained.

This day, and the 5th and 6th, were employed in completing the *Discovery's* water. The carpenters were engaged in caulking the ships, and preparing for our next cruize. Our men no longer received any molestation from the natives, who supplied them plentifully with pork and vegetables. The ships were now visited by an Indian, who brought a piece of iron on board, to be formed into the shape of a *pahooah*. It was the bolt of some large ship-timbers, but neither the officers nor men could discover to what nation it belonged; though, from the shape of the bolt, and the paleness of the iron, they were convinced it was not English. They inquired strictly of the native how he came possessed of it, when he informed them that it was taken out of a large piece of timber, which had been driven upon their island since we were there in January, 1778.

without much diffi-
culties, that several
of the conduct of
their behaviour to the queen
people of the island
of the island.

between Toneoneo
and the preceding
island, where the
fathers, they
of Woahoo; who
of the matter. The quarrel
between the year
of the island was a
great one, consisting
on the one hand
insisting on the
other, to support their
predecessors, and
the arrival of the ships,
Toneoneo was likely to
be the cause of the
controversy, than by the
of Teavee having
of Atooi, and at the
of the present oppor-
tunity, that his son-in-
law, who had
of these islands

Resolution, by
the young prince,
of the island. Among
the bones
of the island
in unsuccessful
the hands of the
of the island, and had
of the Young Teavee
of the performance of
of the island had obtained.

in completing
of the island aged in caul-
Our men no
who supplied
of the island ships were now
on board, to
of the bolt of some
of the island en could dis-
of the shape of the
of the island nced it was
of the island now he came
of the island taken out of
of the island their island

The ships received a visit, on the 7th, from Toneoneo, at which they were surprised. Hearing the dowager princess was on board, he could hardly be prevailed on to enter the ship. When they met, they cast an angry lowering look at each other. He did not stay long, and appeared much dejected. It was remarked, however, with some degree of surprise, that the women prostrated themselves before him, both at his coming and going away; and all the natives on board treated him with that respect which is usually paid to persons of his rank. It was somewhat remarkable, that a man, who was then in a state of actual hostility with Teavee's party, should venture alone within the power of his enemies. Indeed, the civil dissensions, which are frequent in all the South Sea Islands, seem to be conducted without much acrimony; the deposed governor still enjoying the rank of an *Eree*, and may put in practice such means as may arise to regain his lost consequence.

At nine in the morning of the 8th, the ships weighed, and proceeded towards Oneehew, and came to anchor in twenty fathoms' water, at about three in the afternoon, nearly on the spot where they anchored in 1778. They had a strong gale from the eastward in the night, and, the next morning, the ship had driven a whole cable's length, both anchors being almost brought a-head; in which situation they continued this and the two following days. The weather being more moderate on the 12th, the master was dispatched to the north-west side of the island, in search of a more commodious place for anchoring. In the evening he returned, having found a fine bay, with good anchorage, in eighteen fathoms' water. The points of the bay were in the direction of north by east, and south by west. A small village was situated on the north side of the bay, to the eastward of which were four wells of good water. Mr. Bligh went far enough to the north to convince himself that Oreehoua, and Oneehew, were two separate islands.

The Sandwich Islands, of which our navigators were now on the point of taking leave, form a group of eleven islands, extending in longitude from 199 deg. 36 min. to 205 deg. 6 min. east, and in latitude from 18 deg. 54 min. to 22 deg. 15 min. north. Their names, according to the natives, are, 1. Owhyhee. 2. Atooi, Atowi, or Towi; which is also called sometimes Kowi. 3. Woahoo, or Oahoo. 4. Mowee. 5. Morotoi, or Morokoi. 6. Oreehoua, or Reehoua. 7. Morotinnee, or Morokinnee. 8. Tahooraa. 9. Ranai, or Oranai. 10. Oneehew, or Neeheehow. 11. Kahowrowee, or Tahoorowa. These are all inhabited, except Tahooraa and Morotinnee.

Captain Cook had distinguished this cluster of islands, by the name of the Sandwich Island, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich, then First Lord of the Admiralty, under whose administration he had enriched geography with so many important discoveries; a tribute justly due to that nobleman, for the encour-

agement and support which these voyages derived from power, and for the zealous eagerness with which he seconded views of our illustrious navigator.

Owhyhee, the most easterly of these islands, and by far the largest of them all, is of a triangular form, and nearly equilateral. The angular points constitute the northern, southern, and eastern extremities. The latitude of the northern extremity is 20 deg. 17 min. north, and its longitude 204 deg. 2 min. east; the southern end stands in the longitude of 204 deg. 15 min. east, and in the latitude of 18 deg. 54 min. north; and the eastern extremity is in the latitude of 19 deg. 34 min. north, and in the longitude of 205 deg. 6 min. east. The circumference of the whole island is about 255 geographical, or 293 English miles. Its breadth is twenty-four leagues; and its greatest length, which lies nearly in a north and south direction, is twenty-eight leagues and a half. It is divided into six extensive districts, namely, Akona and Koarra, which are on the west side; Kaoo and Apoona, on the south-east; and Aheedoo and Amakooa, on the north-east.

A mountain named *Mouna Kaah*, (or the mountain *Kaah*) which rises in three peaks, continually covered with snow, and may be discerned at the distance of forty leagues, separates the district of Amakooa from that of Aheedoo. The coast to the northward of this mountain, is composed of high and abrupt cliffs, down which fall many beautiful cascades of water. The country rises inland with a gradual ascent, and is intersected by narrow deep glens, or rather chasms: it seemed to be well cultivated, and to have many villages scattered about it. The snowy mountain above mentioned, is very steep, and its lowest part abounds with wood. The coast of Aheedoo is of a moderate elevation; and the interior parts have the appearance of being more even than the country towards the north-west.

The coast towards the north-east of Apoona, which constitutes the eastern extreme of the island, is rather low and flat; in the inward parts the acclivity is very gradual; and the country abounds with bread-fruit and cocoa-nut trees. This appeared to be the finest part of the whole island; and where the king occasionally resided. The hills at the south-western extremity, rise with some abruptness from the sea-side, leaving only a narrow border of low land towards the beach. The sides of these hills were covered with verdure; but the adjacent country seemed thinly inhabited.

When the ships doubled the east point of the island, they had sight of another snowy mountain called by the natives *Mouna Roa* (or the Extensive Mountain) which, during the whole time they were sailing along the south-eastern side, continued to be a very conspicuous object. It was flat at the summit, and perpetually covered with snow; its sides also sometimes slightly covered with it for a considerable way down. According to the tropical line

derived from his
he seconded the

s, and by far the
and nearly equiva
thern, southern
northern extreme
leg. 2 min. east
leg. 15 min. east
d the eastern ex
orth, and in the
mference of the
3 English miles
st length, which
ty-eight leagues
istricts, namely,
de; Kaoo and
Amakooa, on

ountain Kaah)
with snow, and
separates the
e coast to the
h and abrupt
water. The
ntersected by
o be well cul-
put it. The
nd its lowest
f a moderate
nce of being

hich consti-
ow and flat;
d the coun-
is appeared
re the king
a extremity,
only a nar-
es of these
ntry seem-

, they had
ves Mouna
hile time
ed to be a
erpetually
ered with
pical line

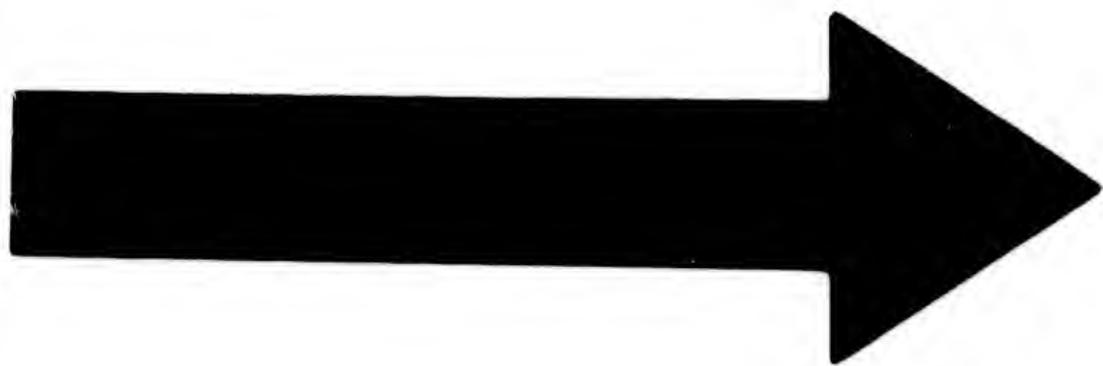
snow, as determined by Monsieur Condamine, from observations made on the Cordilleras in America, the height of this mountain must be at least 16,020 feet. It therefore exceeds the height of the *Pico de Teyde*, or Peak of Teneriffe, by 3,680 feet, according to the computation of the Chevalier de Borda, or 724, according to that of Dr. Heberden. The peaks of Mouna Kaah seemed to be of the height of about half a mile; and, as they are wholly covered with snow, the altitude of their summits must at least be 18,400 feet.

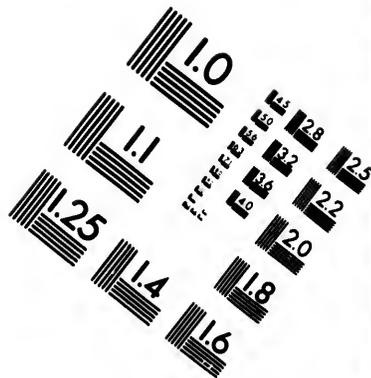
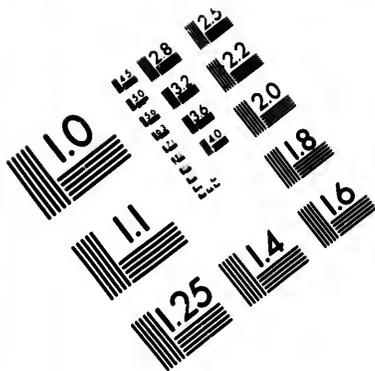
The coast of Kaoo exhibits a most horrid and dismal prospect; the whole country having, to appearance, undergone an entire change from the consequences of some dreadful convulsion. The ground is, in all parts, covered with cinders; and, in many places, intersected with blackish streaks, which seemed to mark the progress of a lava that has flowed, not many centuries ago, from Mouna Roa to the shore. The south promontory appears like the mere dregs of a volcano. The head-land consists of broken and craggy rocks, terminating in acute points, and irregularly piled on each other. Notwithstanding the dreary aspect of this part of the island, it contains many villages, and is far more populous than the verdant mountains of Apooa. Amidst these ruins there are also many spots of rich soil, which are, with great care, laid out in plantations; and the neighbouring sea abounds with excellent fish of various kinds.

Off this part of the coast, at less than a cable's length from the shore, the ships did not strike ground with one hundred and sixty fathoms of line, except in a small bight to the east of the southern point, where we found from fifty to fifty-eight fathoms' water, over a sandy bottom.

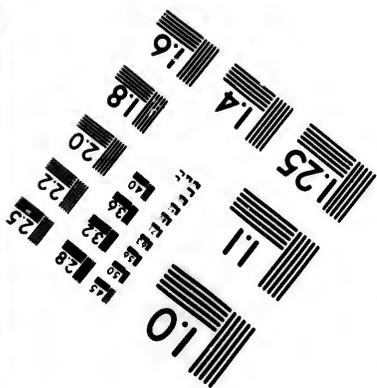
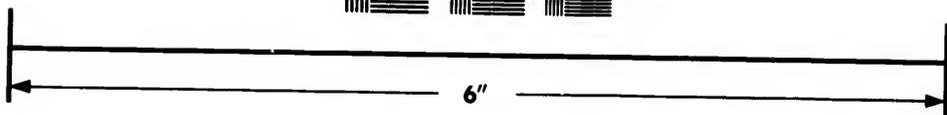
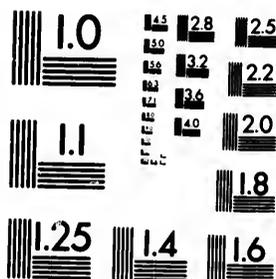
The south-western parts of Akona are in a condition similar to that of the adjoining district of Kaoo; but the country, further towards the north, has been carefully cultivated, and is exceedingly populous. In this division of the island lies Karakooa Bay. Scarcely any thing is seen along the coast, but the fragments of black scorched rocks; behind which the ground, for the space of about two miles and a half, rises gradually, and seems to have been once covered with loose burnt stones. These have been cleared away by the inhabitants, frequently to the depth of three feet and upwards; and the fertility of the soil has amply repaid their labour. Here they cultivate, in a rich ash mould, the cloth-plant and sweet potatoes. Groves of cocoa-trees are scattered among the fields, which are enclosed with stone fences. On the rising ground beyond these, they plant bread-fruit trees, which flourish with surprising luxuriance.

The district of Koaara extends from the most westerly point to the northern extreme of the island. The whole coast between them forms a spacious bay, which is called by the natives Toeyah-yah, and is bounded to the northward by two conspicuous hills.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

28
25
22
20
18

10

With a view to collect some particulars respecting the interior parts of Owhyhee, a party set out on the 26th of January, on an expedition up the country, principally with an intention of reaching the snowy mountains. Having previously procured two of the islanders to serve them as guides, they quitted the village about four o'clock in the afternoon. Their course was easterly, inclining a little to the south. Within three or four miles from the bay, they found the country as already described; but the hills afterwards rose with a less gradual ascent, which brought them to some extensive plantations, consisting of the *taro* on eddy root, and sweet potatoes, with plants of the cloth-tree. Both the *taro* and the sweet potatoes are here planted at the distance of four feet from each other. The potatoes are earthed up almost to the top of the stalk, with a proper quantity of light mould. The *taro* is left bare to the root, and the mould round it is put in the form of a basin, for the purpose of holding rain water, this root requiring a certain degree of moisture; and yet it was remarked that the *taro* of the Sandwich Islands was the best they had ever tasted.

The walls by which these plantations are separated from each other, are composed of the loose burnt stones, which are met with in clearing the ground; and being totally concealed by sugar-canes that are planted close on each side, form the most beautiful fences that can be imagined.

The party stopping for the night at the second hut, observed among the plantations where they supposed themselves to be six or seven miles distant from our ships. The prospect from this spot was very delightful; and commanded a view of our vessels in the bay before them; to the left they saw a continued range of villages, interspersed with groves of cocoa trees, spreading along the shore; a thick wood extending itself behind them; and, to the right, a very considerable extent of ground laid out with great regularity in well-cultivated plantations, as far as the eye could reach. Near this spot the natives pointed out, at a distance from every other dwelling, the residence of a hermit, who, they said, had, in the former part of his life, been a chief and warrior, but had long ago retired from the sea-coast of the island, and now never quitted the environs of his cottage. As they approached him, they prostrated themselves, and afterwards presented him with some provisions. His behaviour was easy, frank, and cheerful: he testified little astonishment at the sight of our people, and though pressed to accept of some European curiosities, he thought proper to decline the offer, and soon withdrew to his cottage. Our party represented him as by far the most aged person they had ever seen, judging him to be, at a moderate computation, upwards of a hundred years of age.

As our people had supposed that the mountain was not more than ten or a dozen miles distant from the bay, and consequently expected to reach it with ease the following morning, they were

ecting the interior
h of January, on
an intention of
usly procured two
quitted the village
urse was easterly
four miles from
scribed; but the
which brought
g of the taro and
the cloth-tree
e planted at the
atoes are earthen
quantity of light
the mould round
of holding rain
moisture; and yet
Islands was the

ated from each
which are met
concealed by
form the most

l hut, observed
selves to be six
spect from this
of our vessels
ntinued range
ees, spreading
behind them;
round laid out
as far as the
nted out, at a
e of a hermit,
been a chief
a-coast of the
cottage. As
s, and after-
behaviour was
ishment at
cept of some
he offer, and
ed him as by
g him to be,
ears of age.
as not more
onsequently
r, they were

ow greatly surprised to find the distance scarce perceivably diminished.

Great was the surprise of our travellers, on finding the cold here so intense that they could scarcely get any sleep, and the islanders could not sleep at all; both parties being disturbed, during the whole night, by continual coughing, although they, at this time, could not be at any very great height, their distance from the sea being no more than six or seven miles.

They proceeded on their journey early the next morning, and filled their calabashes at a well of excellent water, situated about half a mile from their hut. After they had passed the plantations, they arrived at a thick wood, which they entered by a path that had been made for the convenience of the islanders, who frequently repair thither for the purpose of catching birds, as well as procuring the wild or horse-plantain. Having advanced nine or ten miles in the wood, they had the mortification of finding themselves, suddenly within sight of the sea, and not very far from it; the path having turned off imperceptibly to the south, and carried them to the right of the mountain, which it was their intention to reach. Their disappointment was considerably heightened by the uncertainty under which they now were with respect to its true bearings, as they could not, at present, get a view of it from the top of the highest trees. They, therefore, thought proper to walk back six or seven miles to an unoccupied hut, where they had left two of their own people, and three of the natives, with the small remnant of their provisions. Here they passed the second night, during which the air was so extremely sharp, that by the morning their guides were all gone, except one. Being now in want of provisions, which laid them under a necessity of returning to some of the cultivated parts of the island, they left the wood by the same path by which they had entered it. When they arrived at the plantations, they were surrounded by the islanders, from whom they purchased a fresh supply of necessaries; and prevailed upon two of them to accompany them as guides, in the room of those who had gone away. Having procured the best information they could possibly obtain, with regard to the direction of their road, the party, who were now nine in number, marched for about half a dozen miles along the skirts of the wood, and then entered it again by a path leading towards the east.

As they passed through the woods they found many unfinished canoes, and huts in several places, but they saw none of the inhabitants. After they had penetrated almost three miles into the second wood, they arrived at two huts, where they stopped, being greatly fatigued with the day's journey, in the course of which they had walked, according to their own computation, at least twenty miles. Having found no springs from the time they quitted the plantations, they had greatly suffered from the violence of their thirst; in consequence of which they were obliged,

before the evening came on, to separate into small parties, and go in search of water. They, at last, met with some that had been left by rain, in the bottom of a half-finished canoe; which, though of a reddish colour, was to them no unwelcome discovery.

During the night, the cold was more intense than before; and though they had taken care to wrap themselves up in mats and clothes of the country, and to keep a large fire between the two huts, they could get but very little sleep, and were under the necessity of walking about for the greatest part of the night. Their elevation was now, in all probability, pretty considerable, as the ground, over which their journey lay, had been generally on the ascent.

The next morning, which was the 29th, they set out early, with an intention of making their last and greatest effort to reach the snowy mountain; but their spirits were considerably depressed, on finding that the miserable pittance of water, which they had discovered the preceding night, was expended.—The path, which reached no further than where canoes had been built, being now terminated, they were obliged to make their way as well as they could; frequently climbing up into the highest trees, to explore the surrounding country. They arrived, about eleven o'clock, at a ridge of burnt stones, from the top of which they had a prospect of the Mouna Roa, which then appeared to be at the distance of about twelve or fourteen miles from them. They now entered into a consultation, whether they should proceed any further, or rest contented with the view they now had of the snowy mountain. Since the path had ceased, their road had become highly fatiguing, and was growing still more so every step they advanced. The ground was almost every where broken into deep fissures, which being slightly covered with moss, made them stumble almost continually; and the intervening space consisted of a surface of loose, burnt stones, which broke under their feet. Into some of these fissures they threw stones, which seemed, from the noise they made, to fall to a considerable depth; and the ground sounded hollow as they walked upon it. Besides these circumstances, which discouraged them from proceeding, they found their conductors so averse to going on, that they had reason to think they would not be prevailed on to remain out another night. They, therefore, at length came to the determination of returning to the ships, after taking a survey of the country from the highest trees they could find. From this elevation they perceived themselves surrounded with wood; toward the sea, they were unable to distinguish, in the horizon, the sky from the water; and betwixt them and the snowy mountain was a valley of about eight miles in breadth.

The travellers passed this night at a hut in the second forest; and the following day, before noon, they had passed the first wood, and found themselves nine or ten miles to the north-east

the ships, towards which they marched through the plantations. As they walked along, they did not observe a spot of ground that was susceptible of improvement left unplanted; and, indeed, the country, from their account, could scarcely be cultivated to greater advantage for the purposes of the natives.

They were surprised at seeing several fields of hay; and upon inquiry, to what particular use it was applied, they were informed, that it was intended to cover the ground where the young taro grew, in order to preserve them from being scorched by the rays of the sun. They observed, among the plantations, few huts scattered about, which afforded occasional shelter to the labourers; but they did not see any villages at a greater distance from the sea than four or five miles. Near one of them, which was situated about four miles from the bay, was discovered a cave, forty fathoms in length, three in breadth, and of the same height. It was open at each end; its sides were fluted, as if wrought with a chisel; and the surface was glazed over, perhaps by the action of fire.

Such were the principal circumstances that occurred in the expedition to the snowy mountain at Owhyhee.

The next island in size and nearest in situation to Owhyhee, is Mowee. It stands at the distance of eight leagues north-north-west from Owhyhee, and is one hundred and forty geographical miles in circuit. It is divided by a low isthmus into two circular peninsulas, of which that to the eastward is named Whamadooa, and is twice as large as that to the west, called Owhyrookoo. The mountains in both rise to a very great height, and are seen at the distance of above thirty leagues. The northern shores, like those of the isle of Owhyhee, afford no soundings; and the country bears the same aspect of fertility and verdure. The eastern point of Mowee is in the latitude of 20 deg. 50 min. north, and in the longitude of 204 deg. 4 min. east.

To the southward, between Mowee and the adjacent islands, are regular depths with one hundred and fifty fathoms, over a bottom of sand. From the western point, which is rather low, runs a shoal, extending towards the island of Rainai, to a considerable distance; and to the south of this is an extensive bay, with a sandy beach, shaded with cocoa-trees. The country further back is very romantic in its appearance. The hills rise almost perpendicularly, exhibiting a variety of peaked forms; and their steep sides, as well as the deep chasms between them, are covered with trees, among which those of the bread-fruit principally abound. The summits of these hills are perfectly bare, and of a reddish brown hue.

Rainai is about nine miles distant from Mowee and Morotoi, and is situated to the south-west of the passage between these two isles. The country, towards the south, is elevated and craggy; but the other parts of the island have a better appearance, and seem to be well inhabited. It abounds in roots,

such as sweet potatoes, taro, and yams; but produces very few plantains and bread-fruit trees. The south point of Rainai is in the latitude of 20 deg. 56 min. north, and in the longitude of 200 deg. 8 min. east.

Morotoi lies at the distance of two leagues and a half to the west-north-west of Mowee. Its south-western coast, which was the only part of it the ships approached, is very low; but the land behind rises to a considerable elevation; and at the distance from which they had a view of it, appeared to be destitute of wood. Yams are its principal produce. The coast, on the southern and western sides of the island, form several bays, that promise a tolerable shelter from the trade-winds. The west point of Morotoi is in the longitude of 202 deg. 46 min east, and in the latitude of 21 deg. 10 min. north.

Tahoorowa is a small island situated off the south-western part of Mowee, from which it is nine miles distant. It is destitute of wood, and its soil seems to be sandy and unfruitful. Its latitude is 20 deg. 38 min. north, and its longitude 203 deg. 27 min. east. Between it and Mowee stands the little island of Morrotinnee, which has no inhabitants.

Woahoo lies about seven leagues to the north-west of Morotoi. As far as our men were enabled to judge, from the appearance of the north-western and north-eastern parts (for they had not an opportunity of seeing the southern side) it seemed by far the finest of all the Sandwich Islands.* The verdure of the hills the variety of wood and lawn, and fertile well cultivated valleys, which the whole face of the country presented to view, could not be exceeded. In the bight of the bay, to the southward of the anchoring-place, the ships met with foul rocky ground, about two miles from the shore. If the ground-tackling of a ship should happen to be weak, and the wind blow with violence from the north, to which quarter the road is entirely open, this circumstance might be attended with some degree of danger: but, provided the cables were good, there would be no great hazard, as the ground from the anchoring-place, which is opposite the valley through which the river runs, to the northern point, consists of fine sand. The latitude of the anchoring-place is 21 deg. 43 min. north, and the longitude 202 deg 9 min. east.

Atooi lies about 25 leagues N. W. of Woahoo. The face of the country to the southward is pretty even, but to the north-west it is very rugged and open: the hills in the inland part of the country are covered with wood, and decrease in size with a gentle slope towards the sea-side, where they are bare. Though the inhabitants far surpass the neighbouring islanders in the management of their plantations, yet its productions are in general the same with that of the other islands in this cluster. Their plantations were divided by regular and deep ditches, especially

* The conjectures of our navigators are correct and Woahoo is now the seat of government of the Sandwich Islands.—EDITOR.

the low grounds contiguous to the bay wherein they anchored; the fences were elegantly formed, and the roads through them, were finished in such a manner, as would have done credit to an European engineer. The longitude of Wymoa Bay, in this island, is 200 deg. 20 min. east, and its latitude 21 deg. 57 min. north. The latter stands to the south-west, and is uninhabited. Longitude 199 deg. 36 min. east, latitude 21 deg. 45 min. north.

Oneeheow lies five or six leagues to the westward of Atooi. The eastern coast is high, and rises abruptly from the sea, but the other parts of the island consist of low ground, excepting a round bluff head on the south-east point. Yams are here produced in great abundance, also the sweet root called *Tee*; but we got from it no other sort of provisions.

Oreehou and Tahoorā are two little islands in the neighbourhood of Oneeheow. The former is an elevated hummock, joined to the northern extremity of Oneeheow by a reef of coral rocks. Longitude 199 deg. 52 min. east, and latitude 22 deg. 2 min. north.

The climate of the Sandwich Islands differs very little from that of the West-India Islands, which are in the same latitude. In general, it may perhaps be somewhat more moderate. In Karakakooa Bay the thermometer never rose higher on shore than 88 deg. and that but one day, the mean height at noon being 83 deg. In Wymoa Bay, its mean height at twelve o'clock was 76 deg. and at sea 75 deg. In the island of Jamaica, the mean height of the thermometer is 86 deg. at sea 80 deg.

In the interior parts, there was a greater quantity of rain fell, during the four winter months that our ships continued among these islanders, than usually falls during the dry season in the West Indies.

The winds in general were from east-south-east to north-east; though they sometimes varied a few points each way to the north and south; but these were light and of short duration. There was a constant land and sea breeze every day and night in the harbour of Karakakooa.

The tides are exceedingly regular, flowing and ebbing six hours each. The flood tides come from the eastward; and at the full change of the moon, it is high water forty-five minutes past three, apparent time. Two feet seven inches is their greatest rise; and we observed, that the water was always four inches higher when the moon was above the horizon than when below.

Hogs, dogs, and rats, are the only quadrupeds observed in these, or any other of the South Sea Islands yet discovered. The dogs are of the same species with those at Otahēite, having pricked ears, long backs, and short crooked legs. Some of them had long rough hair, and others were perfectly smooth, which was all the variation noticed among them. They are about the size of a common turnspit; and extremely sluggish in

their nature: though this may not perhaps be so much owing to their natural disposition as the manner in which they are treated.

Dogs did not appear to be so numerous here, in proportion as at Otaheite; but hogs are much more plentiful, and the breed being larger and weightier, it is astonishing how large a supply of provisions is got from them. The ships were upwards of three months, either cruising off the coast, or in the harbour at Owhyhee, during all which time, a large allowance of fresh pork was constantly allowed to both crews; so that the consumption was computed at sixty puncheons of five hundred weight each. Besides this quantity, and the extraordinary waste, which, amidst such abundance, could not be entirely prevented, sixty more puncheons were salted for sea-store. The greater part of this supply was drawn from the isle of Owhyhee alone; and yet it was not perceived that it was at all exhausted, or even that the plenty had decreased.

The birds of these islands are numerous, though the variety is not great. Some of them may vie with those of any country in point of beauty.

The vegetable produce of the Sandwich Isles is not very different from that of the other islands of the Pacific Ocean. The bread-fruit trees thrive here, not indeed in such abundance as at Otaheite, but they produce twice as much fruit as they do on the rich plains of that island. The trees are nearly of the same height; but the branches shoot out from the trunk considerably lower, and with greater luxuriance of vegetation. The sugar-canes of these islands grow to an extraordinary size. One of them was brought to the ships at Atooi, whose circumference was eleven inches and a quarter; and it had fourteen feet eatable. At Oneehow they saw some large brown roots, from six to ten pounds in weight, resembling a yam in shape; the juice, of which they yield a great quantity, is very sweet, and is an excellent substitute for sugar.

The inhabitants of the Sandwich Islands are undoubtedly of the same race with those of the Friendly and Society Islands, of New Zealand, the Marquesas, and Easter Island; a race which possesses all the known lands between the longitudes of 184 deg. and 260 deg. east, and between the latitudes of 47 deg. south, and 20 deg. north. This fact, extraordinary as it is, is not only evinced by the general resemblance of their persons, and the great similarity of their manners and customs, but seems to be established, beyond all controversy, by the identity of their language. They bear strong marks of affinity to some of the Indian tribes, which inhabit the Ladrões and Caroline Isles; and the same affinity and resemblance may also be traced amongst the Malays and the Battas. At what particular time these emigrations happened is less easy to ascertain; the period, in all probability, was not very late, as they are very populous, and have no tradition respecting their own origin, but what is

o much owing to
they are treated
e, in proportion
ul, and the bree
w large a supply
upwards of three
the harbour at
owance of fresh
at the consump-
hundred weight
ordinary waste,
irely prevented,
e. The greater
Owhyhee alone;
nausted, or even

gh the variety is
any country in

is not very dif-
c Ocean. The
abundance as at
they do on the
y of the same
k considerably
n. The sugar-
size. One of
circumference
urteen feet eat-
roots, from six
pe; the juice,
weet, and is an

ndoubtedly of
ety Islands, of
; a race which
itudes of 184
les of 47 deg.
ary as it is, is
their persons,
customs, but
y the identity
nity to some
and Caroline
lso be traced
rticular time
; the period,
ry populous,
, but what is

wholly fabulous; though, on the other hand, the simplicity which is still prevalent in their manners and habits of life, and the unadulterated state of their general language, seemed to demonstrate, that it could not have been at any very remote period.

The Sandwich Islanders, in general, exceed the middle size, and are well made. They walk in a very graceful manner, run with considerable agility, and are capable of bearing great fatigue; though, upon the whole, the men are somewhat inferior, in point of activity and strength, to the inhabitants of the Friendly Islands, and the women are less delicate in the formation of their limbs than those of Otaheite. Their complexion is somewhat darker than that of the Otaheiteans; and they are not altogether so handsome in their persons as the natives of the Society Isles.—Many of both sexes, however, had fine open countenances; and the women, in particular, had white well-set teeth; good eyes, and an engaging sweetness and sensibility of look.

The hair of these people is of a brownish black, neither uniformly curling, like that of the African negroes, nor uniformly straight, as among the Indians of America; but varying, in this respect, like the hair of Europeans. There is one striking peculiarity in the features of every part of this great nation; which is, that, even in the most handsome faces, there is always observable a fulness of the nostril, without any flatness or spreading of the nose, that distinguishes them from the inhabitants of Europe. It is not wholly improbable that this may be the effect of their customary method of salutation, which is performed by pressing together the extremities of their noses.

There are more frequent instances of deformity here, than in any of the other islands we visited. While the ships were cruising off Owhyhee, two dwarfs came on board; one of whom was an old man, of the height of four feet two inches, but very well proportioned; and the other was a woman, nearly of the same height. They afterwards saw, among the natives, three who were hump-backed, and a young man who had been destitute of hands and feet from the very moment of his birth. Squinting is also common amongst them; besides these particular defects, they are in general, extremely subject to biles and ulcers, which may be ascribed to the great quantity of salt they usually eat with their fish and flesh. The *Erees* are free from these complaints, but many of them experience still more dreadful effects from the too frequent use of the *kava*. Though it does not appear that this drug universally shortens life, (for Terreeoboo, Kaoo, and several other chiefs, were far advanced in years) yet it invariably brings on a premature and decrepit old age. It is a fortunate circumstance for the people, that the use of it is made a peculiar privilege of the chiefs. The young son of Terreeoboo, who did not exceed twelve or thirteen years of age, frequently boasted of his being admitted to drink *kava*, and

shewed with marks of exultation, a small spot on his side that was growing scaly.

When Captain Cook first visited the Society Isles, this pernicious drug was very little known among them. In his second voyage he found it greatly in vogue at Ulitea; but it had still gained little ground at Otaheite. During the last time he was there, the havoc it had made was almost incredible, insomuch that Captain Cook scarcely recognised many of his former acquaintances. It is also constantly drunk by the chiefs of the Friendly Isles, but so much diluted with water, that it scarcely produces any bad consequences. At Atooi, likewise, it is used with great moderation; and the chiefs of that island are, on this account, a much finer set of men than those of the neighbouring islands. It was remarked, that, upon discontinuing the use of this root, its noxious effects quickly wore off.

To form any probable conjectures with regard to the population of the islands, may be thought highly difficult, though a rough calculation of the number of persons in this cluster of islands may be ventured.

Owhyhee may be supposed to contain a hundred and fifty thousand persons. Mowee, sixty-five thousand four hundred. Atooi, fifty-four thousand. Morotoi, thirty-six thousand. Woa-hoo, sixty thousand two hundred. Rainai, twenty thousand four hundred. Oneeheow, ten thousand: and Oreehoua, four thousand. These numbers will amount to four hundred thousand.

It must be confessed, notwithstanding the great loss sustained from the sudden resentment and violence of these islanders, that they are of a mild and affectionate disposition, equally remote from the distant gravity and reserve of the natives of the Friendly Isles, and the extreme volatility of the Otaheiteans. They seem to live in the greatest friendship and harmony with each other. Those women who had children shewed a remarkable affection for them, and paid them a particular and constant attention; and the men, with a willingness that did honour to their feelings, frequently afforded their assistance in those domestic employments. They are, however, greatly inferior to the inhabitants of the other islands, in that best criterion of civilized manners, the respect paid to the female sex. Here the women are not only deprived of the privilege of eating with the men, but are forbidden to feed on the best sorts of provisions. Turtle, pork, several kinds of fish, and some species of plantains are denied them.

Hospitality is a virtue known here, and whenever our men went ashore, there was a continual struggle who should be most forward in offering little presents for their acceptance, bringing provisions and refreshments, or testifying some other mark of respect. The aged persons constantly received them with tears of joy, and the young women, were always exceedingly kind and engaging.

The
below
of the
doubt
eager
mour
vente
worki
best
docili
able
curios
mann
form
the pr
buildi
what
on; w
import
Our m
senses
Owhy
them.
which
counte
It is
of ene
Ocean
to exis
human
tom, s
difficu
retain
these
who v
island
resem
of thi
to su
howe
Th
of th
his ju
parce
pres
mad
was
who
firm

on his side that

Isles, this per

In his second

but it had still

ast time he was

lible, insomuch

his former ac-

e chiefs of the

that it scarcely

wise, it is used

and are, on this

e neighbouring

ing the use of

to the popula-

cult, though a

this cluster of

dred and fifty

four hundred.

usand. Woa-

thousand four

ua, four thou-

d thousand.

loss sustained

ese islanders,

on, equally re-

natives of the

e Otaheiteans.

harmony with

ved a remark-

and constant

id honour to

in those do-

y inferior to

e criterion of

x. Here the

eating with

orts of provi-

ne species of

ver our men

ould be most

ce, bringing

her mark of

n with tears

ngly kind

These people, in point of natural capacity, are by no means, below the common standard of the human race. The excellence of their manufactures, and improvements in agriculture, are doubtless adequate to their situation and natural advantages. The eagerness of curiosity with which they used to attend the armourer's forge, and the various expedients which they had invented, even before the ships' departure from these islands, for working the iron obtained from them into such forms as were best calculated for their purposes, were strong indications of docility and ingenuity. Kaneena was endowed with a remarkable quickness of conception, and a great degree of judicious curiosity. He was extremely inquisitive with respect to our manners and customs. He inquired after our sovereign; the form of our government; the mode of constructing our ships; the productions of our country; our numbers; our method of building houses; whether we waged any wars, with whom, on what occasions, and in what particular manner they were carried on; who was our deity; besides many other questions of a like import, which seemed to indicate a comprehensive understanding. Our men observed two instances of persons disordered in their senses; the one a woman at Oncheow, the other a man at Owhyhee. From the extraordinary respect and attention paid to them, it appeared that the opinion of their being divinely inspired, which prevails among most of the oriental nations, is also countenanced here.

It is highly probable that the practice of feeding on the bodies of enemies was originally prevalent in all the islands of the Pacific Ocean, though it is not known, by positive and decisive evidence, to exist in any of them except New Zealand. The offering up human victims, which is manifestly a relic of this barbarous custom, still universally obtains among these islanders; and it is not difficult to conceive why the inhabitants of New Zealand should retain the repast, which was, perhaps, the concluding part of these horrid rites, for a longer period than the rest of their tribes who were situated in more fertile regions. As the Sandwich islanders, both in their persons and disposition, bear a nearer resemblance to the New Zealanders, than to any other people of this very extensive race, Mr. Anderson was strongly inclined to suspect that like them, they are still cannibals; Mr. King, however, had great doubts of the justness of his conclusions.

Though Mr. Anderson's superior knowledge of the language of those people ought certainly to give considerable weight to his judgment, yet when he examined the man who had the little parcel containing a piece of salted flesh, Mr. King, who was present on that occasion, was strongly of opinion, that the signs made use of by the islander intimated nothing more, than that it was designed to be eaten, and that it was very agreeable or wholesome to the stomach. In this sentiment Mr. King was confirmed, by a circumstance of which he was informed, after the

decease of his ingenious friend Mr. Anderson; namely, that most of the inhabitants of these islands carried about with them a small piece of raw pork, well salted, either put in a calabash, or wrapped up in some cloth, and fastened round the waist; this they esteemed a great delicacy, and would frequently taste it.

Mr. King found it less easy to controvert the argument deduced from the use of the instrument made with shark's teeth, which is of a similar form with that used by the New Zealanders for cutting up the bodies of their enemies. Though he believed it to be an undoubted fact, that they never make use of this instrument in cutting the flesh of other animals, yet, as the practice of sacrificing human victims, and of burning the bodies of the slain, still prevails here, he considered it as not altogether improbable, that the use of this knife, (if it may be so denominated) is retained in those ceremonies. He was, upon the whole, inclined to imagine, and particularly from the last-mentioned circumstance, that the horrible custom of devouring human flesh has but lately ceased in these and other islands of the Pacific Ocean. Omai acknowledged, that his countrymen, instigated by the fury of revenge, would sometimes tear with their teeth the flesh of their slain enemies; but he peremptorily denied that they ever ate it. The denial is a strong indication that the practice has ceased; for in New Zealand, where it is still prevalent, the natives never scrupled to confess it.

The Sandwich Islanders, almost universally, permit their beards to grow. There were, however, a few who cut off their beard entirely, among whom was the aged king; and others wore it only on their upper lip. The same variety that is found among the other islanders of this ocean, with respect to the mode of wearing the hair, is likewise observable here. Some of them wear great quantities of false hair, flowing in long ringlets down their backs; while others tie it into one large round bunch on the upper part of their heads, nearly as large as the head itself; and some into six or seven separate bunches. They use for the purpose of daubing or smearing their hair, a greyish clay mixed with shells, reduced to powder, which they keep in balls, and chew into a sort of paste, whenever they intend to make use of it. This composition preserves the smoothness of the hair, and changes it, in process of time, to a pale yellow.

Necklaces, consisting of strings of small variegated shells, are worn by both men and women. They also wear an ornament, about two inches in length, and half an inch in breadth, shaped like the handle of a cup, and made of stone, wood, or ivory, extremely well polished: this is hung round the neck by fine threads of twisted hair, which are sometimes doubled an hundred fold. Some of them, instead of this ornament, wear a small human figure on their breast, formed of bone, and suspended in a similar manner.

Both sexes make use of the fan, or fly-flap, by way of use and

orna
fibre
The
used
such
enem
care,
the h
Th
these
New
Ther
Zeala
the S
at rig
So
tattoo
gener
them
tattoo
hands
ner;
the to
is ofte
chief,
lowes
tingu
respe
ranks
maro
and i
sizes
in br
befor
of wa
than
and
weap
trav
feet
coco
B
pria
lt o
bea
lini
like
feat
onl

; namely, that
out with them
in a calabash, or
the waist; this
taste it.

the argument de-
shark's teeth,
few Zealanders
ugh he believed
use of this in-
t, as the prac-
the bodies of
not altogether
be so denomi-
pon the whole,
last-mentioned
g human flesh
of the Pacific
instigated by
their teeth the
denied that they
t the practice
prevalent, the

permit their
o cut off their
; and others
that is found
t to the mode
Some of them
ringlets down
nd bunch on
e head itself;
y use for the
e clay mixed
e balls, ex-
ke use of it.
e hair, and

d shells, are
ornament,
dth, shaped
r ivory, ex-
ck. by fine
an hundred
a small hu-
ended in a

of use and

ornament. The most common sort is composed of cocoa-nut fibres, tied loosely in bunches, to the top of a polished handle. The tail feathers of the cock, and those of the tropic-bird, are used for the same purpose. Those that are most in esteem, are such as have the handle formed of the leg or arm-bones of an enemy killed in battle; these are preserved with extraordinary care, and are handed down, from father to son, as trophies of the highest value.

The practice of *tattooing*, or puncturing the body, prevails among these people; and, of all the islands in this ocean, it is only at New Zealand, and the Sandwich Isles, that the face is *tattooed*. There is this difference between these two nations, that the New Zealanders perform this operation in elegant spiral volutes, and the Sandwich Islanders in straight lines, that intersect each other at right angles.

Some of the natives have half their bodies, from head to foot, *tattooed*, which gives them a most striking appearance. It is generally done with great neatness and regularity. Several of them have only an arm thus marked; others, a leg; some, again, *tattoo* both an arm and a leg; and others only the hand. The hands and arms of the women are punctured in a very neat manner; and they have a remarkable custom of *tattooing* the tip of the tongues of some of the females. The practice of puncturing is often intended as a sign of mourning, on the decease of a chief, or any other calamitous occurrence. The people of the lowest order are *tattooed* with a particular mark, which distinguishes them as the property of the chiefs to whom they are respectively subject. The common dress of the men of all ranks consists, in general, of a piece of thick cloth called the *maro*, about a foot in breadth, which passes between the legs, and is fastened round the waist. Their mats, which are of various sizes, but, for the most part, about five feet in length, and four in breadth, are thrown over their shoulders, and brought forward before. These, however, are rarely made use of, except in time of war, for which purpose they appear to be better calculated than for common use, since they are of a thick heavy texture, and capable of breaking the blow of a stone, or of any blunt weapon. They generally go bare-footed, except when they travel over burnt stones, on which occasion they secure their feet with a kind of sandal, which is made of cords, twisted from cocoa-nut fibres.

Besides their ordinary dress, there is another, which is appropriated to their chiefs, and only worn on extraordinary occasions. It consists of a feathered cloak and cap, or helmet, of uncommon beauty and magnificence. The cap or helmet has a strong lining of wicker-work, sufficient to break the blow of any war-like weapon; for which purpose it appears to be intended. These feathered dresses appeared to be very scarce, and to be worn only by the male sex.

The striking resemblance of this habit to the cloak and helmet which the Spaniards formerly wore, excited curiosity to inquire whether there might not be some reasonable grounds for imagining that it had been borrowed from them, but it appeared that the natives had no immediate acquaintance with any other people whatever, and that no tradition existed among them of these islands having ever before received a visit from such vessels as ours. However, notwithstanding the result of the inquiries on this subject, the form of this habit seems to be a sufficient indication of its European origin.

There is little difference between the common dress of men and that of women. The latter wear a piece of cloth wrapped round the waist, which descends half way down their thighs; and sometimes, during the cool of the evening, they throw loose pieces of fine cloth over their shoulders, like the Otaheitean females. The *pau* is another dress which the younger part of the sex often wear; it consists of the thinnest and finest cloth, wrapped several times about the middle, and reaching down to the leg; so that it has the appearance of a full short petticoat. They cut their hair short behind, and turn it up before, as is the custom among the New Zealanders and Otaheiteans. One woman, indeed, in Karakakooa Bay, had her hair turned up behind, and brought over the forehead, and then doubled back, so that it formed a sort of shade to her face, and somewhat resembled a small bonnet.

Besides their necklaces, which are composed of shells, or of a shining, hard red berry, they wear dried flowers of the Indian mallow, formed into wreaths; and likewise another elegant ornament, termed *eraie*, which is sometimes fastened round the hair in the manner of a garland, but is usually put round the neck; though it is occasionally worn in both these ways at once. It is a kind of ruff, about as thick as a finger, formed with great ingenuity, of very small feathers, woven together so closely, that the surface may be said to equal the richest velvet in smoothness. The ground is in general, red, with alternate circles of black, yellow, and green.

Some of the women of Atooi wear small figures of the turtle, made very neatly of ivory or wood, fastened on their fingers in the same manner that rings are worn by us. There is likewise an ornament made of shells fastened in rows on a ground of strong net-work, so as to strike against each other, while in motion; which both sexes, when they dance, tie either round the ankle, or just below the knee or round the arm. They sometimes, instead of shells, use for this purpose the teeth of dogs, and a hard red berry.

Another ornament, if indeed it deserves that appellation, remains to be described. It is a sort of mask, composed of a large gourd, having holes cut in it for the nose and eyes. The top of it is stuck full of little green twigs, which appear at

some d
narrow
beard.
The S
lages, v
houses,
larity, a
are freq
walls, w
fence.

five feet
larger si
entirely
dation of
short, to
pose, wi
ling thos
yard bef
for serva
and sit in

The pe
vegetable
canes, ya
the flesh
practised
mestic kin
degree of

They s
indeed, v
but from
chiefs ha
they cons
same as a
our peopl
ness, oth
they had
making o
the Socie
had it in
in return
from the

The S
their met
was univ
constant
root or k
They
the cool
sun-set.

some distance like a waving plume; and the lower part has narrow stripes of cloth hanging from it, somewhat resembling a beard.

The Sandwich Islanders dwell together in small towns or villages, which contain from about one hundred to two hundred houses, built pretty close to each other, without order or regularity, and having a winding path leading through them. They are frequently flanked, towards the sea-side, with loose detached walls, which are, in all probability, intended for shelter and defence. The habitations are of various dimensions, from forty-five feet by twenty-four, to eighteen by twelve. Some are of a larger size, being fifty feet in length, and thirty in breadth, and entirely open at one end. These were designed for the accommodation of strangers, or travellers, whose stay was likely to be short. At one end of their houses, are mats on which they repose, with wooden pillows, or sleeping stools, perfectly resembling those of the Chinese. Some of the best houses have a courtyard before them, railed in very neatly, with smaller habitations for servants erected round it; in this area the family usually eat and sit in the day-time.

The people of an inferior class feed principally on fish and vegetables, such as plantains, bread-fruit, sweet potatoes, sugar-canes, yams, and taro. To these persons of superior rank add the flesh of dogs and hogs, dressed after the same method that is practised at the Society Isles. They likewise eat fowls of a domestic kind, which however, are neither plentiful nor in any great degree of estimation.

They salt their fish, and preserve them in gourd shells; not, indeed, with a view of providing against any occasional scarcity, but from the inclination they have for salted provisions; for the chiefs had pieces of pork pickled in the same manner, which they considered as a great delicacy. Their cookery is much the same as at the Friendly or Society Islands; and though some of our people disliked their *taro* puddings, on account of their sourness, others were of a different opinion. It is remarkable, that they had not acquired the art of preserving the bread-fruit, and making of it the sour paste named *Maihee*, as is the practice at the Society Isles; and it afforded great satisfaction that our men had it in their power to communicate to them this useful secret, in return for the generous and hospitable treatment they received from them.

The Sandwich Islanders are very cleanly at their meals; and their method of dressing both their vegetable and animal food, was universally acknowledged to be superior to ours. The *Erees* constantly begin their meals with a dose of the extract of pepper-root or *kava*, prepared in the usual mode.

They generally rise with the sun; and, after having enjoyed the cool of the evening, retire to their repose a few hours after sun-set. The *Erees* are occupied in making canoes and mats:

the *Towtows* are chiefly employed in the plantations, and also in fishing; and the women are engaged in the manufacture of cloth. They amuse themselves, in their leisure hours, with various diversions. Their young persons, of both sexes are fond of dancing; and, on more solemn occasions, they entertain themselves with wrestling and boxing matches, performed after the manner of the natives of the Friendly Islands; to whom, however, they are greatly inferior in all these respects.

Their dances, which bear a greater resemblance to those of the New-Zealanders, than of the Friendly or Society Islanders, are prefaced with a solemn kind of song, in which the whole number join, at the same time slowly moving their legs, and gently striking their breasts; their attitudes and manner being very easy and graceful. So far they resemble the dances of the Society Isles. After this has continued for the space of ten minutes, they gradually quicken the tune and the motions do not desist till they are oppressed with fatigue. This part of the performance is the counterpart of that of the inhabitants of New Zealand; and, as among those people, the person whose action is the most violent, and who continues this exercise the longest, is applauded by the spectators as the best dancer. It must be remarked, that, in this dance, the females only engage; and the dances of the men resemble what was seen of the small parties at the Friendly Isles: and which may, perhaps, more properly be termed the accompaniment of songs, with correspondent motions of the whole body.

The music of these people is of a rude kind; for the only musical instruments that were observed among them were drums of various sizes. Their songs, however, which they are said to sing in parts, and which they accompany with a gentle motion of their arms, like the inhabitants of the Friendly Islands, have a very pleasing effect.

They are greatly addicted to gambling. One of their games resembles our game of draughts; but, from the number of squares, it seems to be much more intricate. The board is of the length of about two feet, and is divided into two hundred and thirty-eight squares, fourteen in a row. In this game they use black and white pebbles, which they move from one square to another. Another of their games consists in concealing a stone under some cloth, which is spread out by one of the parties, and rumbled in such a manner, that it is difficult to distinguish where the stone lies. The antagonist then strikes with a stick, that part of the cloth where he supposes the stone to be: and the chances being, upon the whole, against his hitting it, odds of all degrees, varying with the opinion of the dexterity of the parties, are laid on the occasion. Their manner of playing at bowls nearly resembles ours.

They often entertain themselves with races between boys and girls, on which occasions they lay wagers with great spirit. A

The dancing girls of Otaheite.



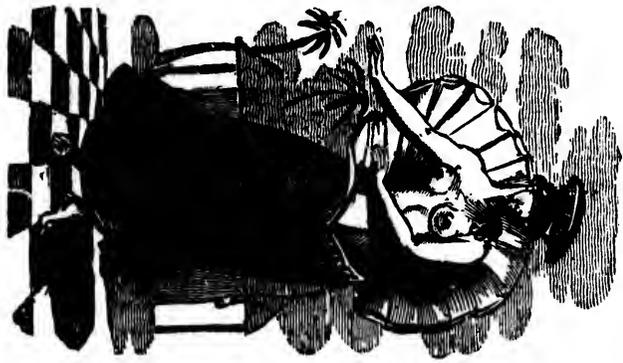
nd also in
facture of
urs, with
a are fond
entertain
ned after
o whom,

those of
slanders,
he whole
egs, and
ner being
ces of the
ce of ten
ns do not
f the per-
s of New
se action
e longest.
t must be
; and the
parties at
pperly be
dent mo-

the only
re drums
e said to
otion of
s, have a

r games
nber of
rd is of
undred
me they
e square
ealing a
he par-
to dis-
s with a
e to be:
ting it,
erity of
playing

ys and
rit. A



The dancing girls of Otahoeite.



man was
presence of
races, w
property
Both se
these peo
favourite
Karakako
from the s
dashed ag
impetuous
make cho
form in th
islanders
and set ou
plunge un
fered it to
out in the
manner w
ing a favor
misses the
back with
quired to
in consequ
smooth wa
upon their
surf is cor
is observe
higher up
ate space,
the larges
pidity tow
mistake,
gain the s
board in a
remain ex
under the
whence th
ject of re
As the co
ing betwe
their plan
success in
and, divi
as they a
is attend
ed to pi
amazing
dangerou

man was seen beating his breast, and tearing his hair, in the violence of rage, for having lost three hatchets at one of these races, which he had purchased from us with near half his property a very little time before.

Both sexes are surprisingly expert in swimming, which, among these people, is not only deemed a necessary art, but is also a favourite diversion. The surf that breaks on the coast round Karakakooa bay extends about one hundred and fifty yards from the shore; and within that space, the surges of the sea are dashed against the beach with extreme violence. Whenever the impetuosity of the surf is augmented to its greatest height, they make choice of that time for this amusement, which they perform in the following manner. About twenty or thirty of the islanders take each a long narrow board, rounded at the ends, and set out from the shore in company with each other. They plunge under the first wave they meet, and after they have suffered it to roll over them, rise again beyond it, and swim further out in the sea. They encounter the second wave in the same manner with the first. The principal difficulty consists in seizing a favourable opportunity of diving under it; for, if a person misses the proper moment, he is caught by the surf and forced back with great violence; and his utmost dexterity is then required to prevent his being dashed against the rocks. When, in consequence of these repeated efforts, they have gained the smooth water beyond the surf, they recline themselves at length upon their board, and prepare for their return to shore. As the surf is composed of a number of waves, of which every third is observed to be considerably larger than the rest, and to flow higher upon the shore, while the others break in the intermediate space, their first object is to place themselves on the top of the largest surge, which drives them along with astonishing rapidity towards the land. If they should place themselves by mistake, on one of the smaller waves, which breaks before they gain the shore, or should find themselves unable to keep their board in a proper direction on the upper part of the swell, they remain exposed to the fury of the next; to avoid which, they are under the necessity of diving again, and regaining the place whence they set out. Those persons who succeed in their object of reaching the shore, are still in a very hazardous situation. As the coast is defended by a chain of rocks, with a small opening between them in several places, they are obliged to steer their plank through one of these openings; or in case of ill success in that respect, to quit it before they reach the rocks, and, diving under the wave, make their way back again as well as they are able. This is considered as highly disgraceful, and is attended with the loss of the plank, which we have seen dashed to pieces, at the very instant the native quitted it. The amazing courage and address with which they perform these dangerous manœuvres, are almost incredible.

At a very early period they are so far accustomed to the water, as to lose all apprehensions of it, and set its perils at defiance. A canoe, in which was a woman with her children happening to be overset, one of them, an infant of not more than four years of age, appeared to be greatly delighted with what had happened, swimming about at its ease, and playing a number of tricks till the canoe was put to rights again.

Among the amusements of the children, is one that was frequently played at, and which shewed a considerable share of dexterity. They take a short stick, through one extremity of which runs a peg sharpened at both ends, extending about an inch on each side; and throwing up a ball, formed of green leaves moulded together, and fastened with twine, they catch it on one of the points of the peg; immediately after which they throw it up again from the peg, then turn the stick round, and catch the ball on the other point. Thus they continue catching it on each point of the peg alternately, without missing it. They are equally expert at another diversion of a similar nature, throwing up in the air, and catching, in their turns, many of these balls; and our men often saw little children thus keep five balls in motion at once. This latter game is also practised by the young people at the Friendly Isles.

Their method of agriculture, as well as navigation, resembles that of the other islands of the Pacific. They have made considerable proficiency in sculpture; and their skill in painting and staining cloth, and in the manufacture of mats is very great. The most curious specimens of their sculpture, were the wooden bowls, out of which the *Erees* drink *kava*. These are, in general, eight or ten inches in diameter, perfectly round, and extremely well polished. They are supported by three or four small human figures, represented in different attitudes. Some of them rest on the shoulders of their supporters; others on the hands extended over the head; and some on the head and hands. The figures are very neatly finished, and accurately proportioned; and even the anatomy of the muscles well expressed.

They manufacture their cloth in the same manner, and of the same materials, as at the Society and Friendly Isles. That which they intend to paint is of a strong and thick texture, several folds being beaten and incorporated together; after which they cut it in breadths, two or three feet wide, and then paint it in a great variety of patterns, with such regularity and comprehensiveness of design, as shew an extraordinary portion of taste and fancy. The exactness with which even the most intricate patterns are continued, is really astonishing, as they have no stamps, and as the whole is performed by the eye, with a piece of bamboo cane dipped in paint; the hand being supported by another piece of the same sort of cane. They extract their colours from the same berries, and other vegetable articles, which are made use of at Otaheite for that purpose.

The opportunity to study the history of the profession of medicine in this country is a valuable one. It is a study which should be made by every physician. The history of the profession is not only a study of the past, but a study of the present and the future. It is a study which should be made by every physician.



The history of the profession is not only a study of the past, but a study of the present and the future. It is a study which should be made by every physician. The history of the profession is not only a study of the past, but a study of the present and the future. It is a study which should be made by every physician.

The
to the
that
wome
cers
use o
were
paper
try; a
made
them
The
these,
patter
a grou
are of
and so
or way
ture,
island
The
which
in leng
as a ba
They
pointe
Of t
form t
for som
and m
The
nut fil
was p
kinds
of cor
pally
This
is for
plait
seam
Th
grow
conta
bette
feren
grow
Th
with
abou

The operation of staining or painting their cloth, is confined to the females, and is denominated *kipparee*. It is remarkable that they always called our writing by this name. The young women would frequently take the pen from the hands of the officers and shew them that they were as well acquainted with the use of it as themselves; saying, at the same time, that our pens were inferior to theirs. They considered a manuscript sheet of paper, as a piece of cloth stripped after the mode of our country; and it was with the greatest difficulty that they could be made to understand, that our figures contained a meaning in them which theirs were destitute of.

They make their mats of the leaves of the *pandanus*; and these, as well as their cloths, are beautifully worked in various patterns, and stained with divers colours. Some of them have a ground of a straw colour, embellished with green spots; others are of a pale green, spotted with squares, or rhomboids of red; and some are ornamented with elegant stripes, either in straight or waving lines of brown and red. In this branch of manufacture, whether we regard the fineness, beauty, or strength, these islanders may be said to excel the whole world.

Their fishing-hooks are of various sizes and figures; but those which are principally made use of, are about two or three inches in length, and are formed in the shape of a small fish, serving as a bait, with a bunch of feathers fastened to the head or tail. They make their hooks of bone, mother-of-pearl, or wood, pointed and barbed with little bones or tortoise-shell.

Of the bark of the *touta*, or cloth-tree, neatly twisted, they form the line which they use for fishing, for making nets, and for some other purposes. It is of different degrees of fineness, and may be continued to any length.

They likewise make cordage of a stronger kind, from cocoa nut fibres, for the rigging of their canoes. Some of this, which was purchased was found to be well calculated for the smaller kinds of running-rigging. They also manufacture another sort of cordage, which is flat, and extremely strong, and is principally used for the purpose of lashing the roofs of their houses. This last is not twisted after the manner of the former sorts, but is formed of the fibrous strings of the coat of the cocoa-nut, plaited with the fingers, in the same mode which is practised by seamen in making their points for the reefing of sails.

They apply their gourds to various domestic purposes. These grow to such an enormous magnitude, that some of them will contain from ten to a dozen gallons. In order to adapt them the better to their respective uses, they take care to give them different shapes, by fastening bandages round them during their growth.

Their pans, in which they make salt, are made of earth, lined with clay; and are, in general, six or eight feet square, and about two-thirds of a foot in depth. They are elevated on a

bank of stones near the high-water mark, whence the salt-water is conducted to the bottom of them, in trenches, out of which they are filled; and, in a short time the sun performs the process of evaporation.

The warlike weapons of these people are daggers, which they call by the name *pahooah*, spears, slings, and clubs. The *pahooah* is made of a heavy black wood, that resembles ebony. It is commonly from one to two feet in length, with a string passing through the handle, for the purpose of suspending it to the arm. The blade is somewhat rounded in the middle; the sides are sharp, and terminate in a point. This instrument is intended for close engagements; and, in the hands of the natives, is a very destructive one.

Their spears are of two sorts, and are formed of a hard wood, which, in its appearance, is not unlike mahogany. One sort is from six to eight feet in length, well polished, and increasing gradually in thickness from the extremity till within about half a foot of the point, which tapers suddenly, and is furnished with five or six rows of barbs. The other sort, are twelve or fifteen feet in length, and, instead of being barbed, terminate toward the point like their daggers.

Their slings are the same with our common slings, except in this respect, that the stone is lodged on matting instead of leather. Their clubs are formed indifferently of several kinds of wood; they are of various sizes and shapes, and of rude workmanship.

In the Sandwich Islands, the inhabitants are divided into three classes. The first are the *Erees*, or chiefs of each district, one of whom is superior to the rest, and is called, at Owhyhee, *Eree-taboo*, and *Eree-mooe*; the first name expressing his authority, and the latter signifying, that, in his presence all must prostrate themselves. Those of the second class appear to enjoy a right of property, but have no authority. Those who compose the third class, are called *towtows*, or servants, and have neither rank nor property.

The superior power and distinction of Terreeoboo, the Eree-taboo of Owhyhee, was sufficiently evident from his reception at Karakakooa, on his first arrival. The inhabitants all prostrated themselves at the entrance of their houses, and the canoes were *tabooed*, till he discharged the interdict.

Without entering into the genealogy of the kings of Owhyhee and Mowee, it may be necessary to mention, that when our ships were first off Mowee, Terreeoboo and his warriors were there to support the claims made by his wife, his son, and his daughter-in-law; and a battle had been fought with the opposite party, in which Terreeoboo had been victorious. Matters, however, were afterwards compromised; Taheeteree was to have possession of three neighbouring islands, during his life; Tee-warro to be acknowledged the chief of Mowee, and to succeed

to Owh
three is

The
classes
able, ho
acts of
they exe
manner

One o
lity to th
Bay; M
Resoluti
him to c
entered,
at seeing
by the ha
cabin, if
cation, t
ling with
main in
floor, wh

Wheth
rapacity
theft and
hogs, and
hension.

by walls
use white
they do b

The in
justice, i
lower clas
some chie
rank, his
rior at th
transport
mediation
part of h

Their
Islands.

their *Wh*
are conv
from the
and mor
though,
religious
Captain
at Kaco
the prin

to Owhyhee, on the death of Terreeohoo; together with the three islands contiguous to Mowee, on the death of Taheterree.

The *Erees* appear to have unlimited power over the inferior classes of people, who are implicitly obedient. It is remarkable, however, that our men never saw the chiefs exercise any acts of cruelty, injustice, or insolence towards them; though they exercised their power over each other, in a most tyrannical manner which is fully proved by the two following instances:

One of the lower order of the chiefs having shewn great civility to the master of the ship, on his examination of Karakakooa Bay; Mr. King, some time afterwards, took him on board the *Resolution*, and introduced him to Captain Cook, who invited him to dine with him. While they remained at table, Pareea entered, whose countenance manifested the highest indignation at seeing this guest so honourably entertained. He seized him by the hair of the head, and would have dragged him out of the cabin, if the Captain had not interfered; and after much altercation, they could obtain no other indulgence (without quarrelling with Pareea) than that the guest should be permitted to remain in the cabin, on condition that he seated himself on the floor, while Pareea occupied his place at table.

Whether the lower class have their property secured from the rapacity of the great chiefs, or not, it is well protected against theft and depredation. All their plantations, their houses, their hogs, and their cloth, are left unguarded, without fear or apprehension. In the plain country, they separate their possessions by walls; and in the woods, where horse-plantains grow, they use white flags to discriminate property, in the same manner as they do bunches of leaves at Otaheite.

The information obtained respecting their administration of justice, is exceedingly imperfect. If a quarrel arose among the lower class of people, the matter was referred to the decision of some chief. If an inferior chief had offended one of superior rank, his punishment was dictated by the feelings of the superior at that moment. If he should fortunately escape the first transports of his rage, he, perhaps found means, through the mediation of others, to compound for his offence, by all, or a part of his effects.

Their religion resembles that of the Society and Friendly Islands. In common with each other, they have all their *Morais*, their *Whattas*, their sacred songs, and their sacrifices. These are convincing proofs that their religious opinions are derived from the same source. The ceremonies here are, indeed, longer and more numerous than in the islands above-mentioned. And though, in all these places, the care and performance of their religious rites is committed to a particular class of people, yet Captain Cook found no regular society of priests, till he arrived at Kakooa, in Karakakooa Bay. *Orono* was the title given to the principal of this order; a title which seemed to imply some.

thing highly sacred, and which almost received adoration in the person of Omeeah. The privilege of holding the principal offices in this order, is doubtless limited to certain families. Omeeah, the *Orono*, was Kao's son, and Kaireekeea's uncle. Kaireekeea presided in all religious ceremonies at the *Morai*, in the absence of his grandfather. It was observed, likewise, that the son of Omeeah, an infant of about the age of five years, had always a number of attendants, and such other marks of attention and esteem were shewn him, as were never observed in any similar instance.

The title of *Orono* was bestowed upon Captain Cook; and it is very certain that they considered our men as a race of beings superior to themselves, frequently repeating, that great *Eatoo* lived in our country. The favourite little idol on the *Morai*, in Karakakooa Bay, is called *Koonoraekaiee*, and is said to be Terreeoboo's god. Infinite variety of these images were to be seen, both on the *Morais* and about their houses, on which they bestow different names; but they certainly were held in very little estimation, from their contemptuous expressions of them, and from their exposing them to sale for trifles; though they generally had one particular figure in high favour, to which, whilst it continued a favourite, all their adoration was addressed. They arrayed it in red cloth, beat their drums, and sang hymns before it; placed bunches of red feathers, and different vegetables at its feet; and frequently exposed a pig, or a dog, to rot on the *Whatta*, near which it was placed.

Former voyagers have remarked, that the Society and Friendly Islanders pay adoration to particular birds; and it seems to be a custom that is prevalent in these islands. Ravens are perhaps the objects of it here; for Mr. King saw two of these birds perfectly tame, at the village of Kakooa, and was told they were *Eatooas*; he offered several articles for them, which were all refused; and he was particularly cautioned not to hurt or offend them.

The prayers and offerings made by the priests before their meals, may be classed amongst their religious ceremonies. Whilst the *kava* is chewing, of which they always drink before they begin their repast, the superior in rank begins a sort of hymn, in which he is soon after joined by one or more of the company; the rest moving their bodies, and striking their hands gently together in concert with the singers. When the *kava* is ready, cups of it are presented to those who do not join in the hymn, which they hold in their hands till it is concluded; when, with united voice, they make a loud response, and drink their *kava*. The performers are then served with some of it, which they drink, after the same ceremony has been repeated; and if any person of a superior rank should be present, a cup is presented to him last of all. After chanting for a short time, and hearing a responsive chant from the others, he pours a

small
the fl
with s
of the
begin
this, i
their r
Acc
fices a
They
of a w
terpriz
townto
inform
death
ribble,
fate.
clubs,
dead,
to be
shewn
they w
The p
corners
or the
The
classed
people.
this is
avert h
the Fr
the dec
Of
very d
dead w
to cons
seem
suppor
taind
On
betwe
oboo's
The s
when
implic
native
to civ
The
place

small quantity on the ground, and drinks the rest. A piece of the flesh, which has been dressed, is then cut off, and, together with some of the vegetables, is placed at the foot of the figure of the Eatooa; and, after another hymn has been chanted, they begin their meal. A ceremony, in many respects resembling this, is also performed by chiefs when they drink *kava* between their regular meals.

According to the accounts given by the natives, human sacrifices are more common here than in any of the islands visited. They have recourse to these horrid rites on the commencement of a war, and previous to every great battle, or other signal enterprize. The death of a chief demands a sacrifice of one or more *towtows*, according to the rank he bears: and our men were informed that not less than ten were doomed to suffer on the death of Terreeoboo. This practice, however, is the less horrible, as the unhappy victims are totally unacquainted with their fate. Those who are destined to fall, are attacked with large clubs, wherever they may happen to be; and, after they are dead, are conveyed to the place where the subsequent rites are to be performed. At the village of Kowrowa, our men were shewn a small piece of ground, within a stone fence, which they were told was an *Heree-reee*, or burying place of a chief. The person who gave the information, pointing to one of the corners, added,—and there lie the *tangata* and *waheene-taboo*, or the man and woman who became sacrifices at his funeral.

The knocking out of their fore-teeth may be, with propriety, classed among their religious customs. Most of the common people, and many of the chiefs, had lost one or more of them: this is considered as a propitiatory sacrifice to the Eatooa, to avert his anger; and not like cutting off a part of the finger at the Friendly Islands, to express the violence of their grief at the decease of a friend.

Of their opinions, with respect to a future state, there is very defective information. On inquiring of them, whither the dead were gone? they said, that the breath, which they seemed to consider as the immortal part, was fled to the *Eatooa*. They seemed also to give a description of some place, which they suppose to be the place of the dead; but it could not be ascertained that they had any idea of rewards or punishments.

On asking the reasons of the intercourse being interdicted, between our men and the islanders, the day preceding Terreeoboo's arrival, they were informed, that the bay was *tabooed*. The same interdiction took place, by the desire of our men, when they interred the remains of Captain Cook. The most implicit obedience, in these two instances, was rendered by the natives; but whether on religious principles, or in deference to civil authority, cannot be determined.

The ground on which our observatories were fixed, and the place where the masts were deposited, were *tabooed* and the

operation was equally efficacious. This consecration was performed only by the priests. This word *taboo* is indifferently applied either to persons or things; as, the natives are *tabooed*, the bay is *tabooed*, &c. The word is also expressive of any thing sacred, devoted, or eminent. The king of Owhyhee was called *Eree-taboo*, and a human victim *tangatu-taboo*: and, among the Friendly Islanders, Tonga, where the king resides, is called *Tonga-taboo*. No inducements could bring the women near our men on account of the *Morai* adjoining, which they were at all times prohibited from approaching, not only here, but in all the islands of these seas.

Very little can be said respecting their marriages, except that such a compact seems to exist among them; but, whether polygamy is allowed, or whether it is mixed with concubinage, either among the principal or inferior orders, too few facts came to knowledge to justify any conclusions. From what was seen of the domestic concerns of the lower class of people, one man and one woman seemed to have the direction of the house, and the children were subordinate to them, as in civilized countries.

The following is the only instance of any thing like jealousy which was seen among them. At one of their boxing matches, Omeeah rose two or three times from his place, and approached his wife with strong marks of displeasure, commanding her, as was supposed, to withdraw. Whether he thought her beauty engaged too much attention, or whatever might be his motives, there certainly existed no real cause of jealousy. However, she continued in her place, and, at the conclusion of the entertainment, joined our party, and even solicited some trifling presents. She was informed that our men had not any about them; but that, if she would accompany them to the tent, she should be welcome to make a choice of what she liked. She was, accordingly, proceeding with us, which, being observed by Omeeah, he followed in a great rage, and, seizing her by the hair, began to inflict, with his fists, a severe corporal punishment. Having been the innocent cause of this extraordinary treatment, our men were exceedingly concerned at it; and yet were told that it would be highly improper to interfere between man and wife of such high rank. The natives, however, at length interposed; and, the next day, our voyagers had the satisfaction of meeting them together, perfectly satisfied with each other; and, what was extremely singular, the lady would not suffer them to remonstrate with her husband on his treatment of her, which they had an inclination to do; plainly telling them, that he had acted very properly.

At Karakakooa Bay our navigators had twice an opportunity of seeing a part of their funeral rites. Hearing of the death of an old chief, not far from our observatories, some of them repaired to the place, where they beheld a number of people

eration was per
is indifferently
ves are *tabooed*,
xpressive of any
of Owhyhee was
boo: and, among
ing resides, is
ing the women
ng, which they
not only here,

res, except that
, whether poly-
h concubinage,
few facts came
what was seen
of people, one
n of the house,
as in civilized

g like jealousy
oxing matches,
nd approached
anding her, as
ht her beauty
e his motives,
However, she
of the enter-
some trifling
not any about
the tent, she
e liked. She
g observed by
ng her by the
poral punish-
extraordinary
at it; and yet
ere between
however, at
gers had the
satisfied with
e lady would
on his treat-
lainly telling

opportunity
the death of
me of them
er of people

assembled. They were seated round an area fronting the house where the deceased lay; and a man, having on a red feathered cap, came to the door, constantly putting out his head, and making a most lamentable howl, accompanied with horrid grimaces, and violent distortions of the face. A large mat was afterwards spread upon the area, and thirteen women and two men, who came out of the house, sat down upon it in three equal rows; three of the women, and the two men, being in front. The women had feathered ruffs on their necks and hands; and their shoulders were decorated with broad green leaves, curiously scoloped. Near a small hut, at one corner of the area, half a dozen boys were placed, waving small white banners and *taboo* sticks, who would not suffer us to approach them. Hence we imagined that the dead body was deposited in the hut, but we were afterwards informed that it remained in the house where the tricks were playing at the door by the man in the red cap. The company, seated on the mat, sung a melancholy tune, accompanied with a gentle motion of the arms and body. When this had continued some time, they raised themselves on their knees, and in a posture between kneeling and sitting, began by degrees to move their arms and body with great rapidity, keeping pace at the same time with the music. These last exertions being too violent to continue long, they resumed at intervals their slower movements. An hour having passed in these ceremonies, more mats were spread upon the area, when the dead chief's widow, and three or four other elderly women, came out of the house with slow and solemn pace; and seating themselves before the company, began to wail most bitterly, in which they were joined by the three rows of women behind them; the two men appearing melancholy and pensive. They continued thus, with little variation, till late in the evening, when we left them; and, at day-light in the morning, the people were dispersed, and every thing appeared perfectly quiet. Our people were then given to understand, that the body was removed; but they could not learn how it was disposed of. While directing their inquiries to this object, they were approached by three women of rank, who signified that their presence interrupted the performance of some necessary rites. Soon after they had left them, they heard their cries and lamentations; and when they met them a few hours afterwards, the lower part of their faces were painted perfectly black.

Our voyagers had also an opportunity of observing the ceremonies of the funeral of one of the ordinary class. Hearing some mournful cries issuing from a miserable hut they entered it, and discovered two women, which they supposed to be the mother and daughter, weeping over the body of a man who had that moment expired. They first covered the body with a cloth; then, lying down by it, they drew the cloth over them-

selves, beginning a melancholy kind of song, often repeating *Aweh medoah! Aweh tanee!* Oh, my father! Oh, my husband! In a corner of the house a younger daughter lay prostrate on the ground, having some black cloth spread over her, and repeating the same expressions. On quitting this melancholy scene, many of their neighbours were found collected together at the door, who were all perfectly silent, and attentive to their lamentations. Mr. King was willing to have embraced this opportunity of knowing in what manner the body would be disposed of; and, therefore, after being convinced that it was not removed when he went to bed, he ordered the sentries to walk before the house, and if there were any appearance of removing the body to acquaint him with it. The sentries, however, were remiss in the performance of their duty, for before the morning the body was taken away. On asking how it had been disposed of, they pointed towards the sea, perhaps, thereby indicating, that it had been deposited in the deep, or that it had been conveyed to some burying-ground beyond the bay. The place of interment for the chiefs, is the *Morais*, or *Heree-erees*, and those who are sacrificed on the occasion are buried by the side of them. The *Morai* in which the chief was interred who was killed in the cave after so stout a resistance, was hung round with red cloth.

The ships weighed anchor on the 15th of March, at seven o'clock in the morning, and stood to the south-west, in expectation of falling in with the island of Modoopapappa; the natives having assured our voyagers that it lay in that direction, within five hours sail of Tahoorā.

Not having seen the island at eight in the evening, they hauled to the northward till midnight, then tacked and stood to the south-east till day-break the next morning; when Tahoorā bore east north-east, distant about five or six leagues.

On the 17th they steered west; Captain Clerke meaning to keep nearly in the same parallel of latitude till he made the longitude of Awatska Bay; and then to steer north for the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, which was also fixed on as our rendezvous, if we should happen to separate. From the time of losing sight of Tahoorā, till the afternoon of the 18th, they had hardly seen a bird; they then saw several boobies, and man-of-war birds, which induced them to look out sharply for land. The wind lessened towards the evening; and the heavy swell, which made the ships labour exceedingly on the 16th and 17th, was considerably abated. No land appeared the next day; and at noon they steered west by south, in expectation of finding the trade winds (which generally blew from the east by north) fresher as they advanced.

The continuation of the light winds, with the very unsettled state of the weather, and the little expectation of any change for the better induced Captain Clerke to give up his plan of keeping

within the tropical latitudes. In consequence of which he began, at six o'clock in the evening of the 29th, to steer north-west by north. The light winds almost constantly prevailed, after the departure from the Sandwich Islands; during which time the air was hot and sultry, the thermometer being generally from 80° to 83 deg.

On the 1st of April, in the morning, the wind changed to the north-east by east, and continued to blow a fresh breeze till the 4th, in the morning, when it altered two points. About noon on the 6th, they lost the trade wind. The ships were then in the latitude of 29 deg. 50 min. and the longitude of 170 deg. 1 min. The old running ropes having been continually breaking in the late gales, they reefed all the new ones left, and made other necessary preparations for the different climate they were shortly to encounter. The fine weather experienced between the tropics had not been misemployed. The carpenters were sufficiently engaged in repairing the boats. The best bower cable having received so much injury in Karakakooa Bay, and off Oneeheow, as to occasion forty fathoms to be cut from it, was converted, together with some other old cordage, into spun yarn, and applied to various purposes, by which means many of our people were kept wholly employed by the boatswain. Besides, it was now become a troublesome and laborious part of duty to air the sails, &c. which were continually growing wet, from the leakiness of the sides and decks of the vessels.

There were other cares which had the preservation of the health of the crews for their object: and these continually occupied a great number of hands. Captain Cook's established orders of airing the beds, having fires between decks, smoking them with gun-powder, and washing them with vinegar, were invariably observed. Even the mending of the sailors' old jackets, was now become a duty of importance. Those who are unacquainted with the habits and disposition of seamen, require to be informed, that they are so accustomed to be directed by their officers, respecting the care of themselves, that they contract the thoughtlessness of infants, and it is very certain, that had our people been suffered to act according to their own discretion, the whole crew would have been naked before half the completion of the voyage. It might naturally be supposed, from their having experienced a voyage to the north the last year, that they would be thoroughly sensible of the necessity of paying attention to these matters; but these reflections never operated upon them; for, as soon as they returned to the tropical climates, their fur jackets, and other articles calculated for cold climates, were kicked about the decks as useless and insignificant; though every one knew he was to make another voyage towards the Pole. They were, however, taken up and put into casks by the officers, and, about this time restored to their proper owners.

In the afternoon some of the sheathing was seen floating by

the ship: as it was discovered, upon examination, that about fourteen feet had been washed off under the larboard bow, where the leak was supposed to have been, which had kept the people employed at the pumps ever since their departure from the Sandwich Islands; making twelve inches water an hour.

On the 12th the wind veered to the east, and blew so strong a gale as to oblige them to strike the top-gallant-yards. The Resolution happened, unfortunately, to be upon the most disadvantageous tack for the leak, but, having always kept it under with the hand-pumps, it gave but little concern till Tuesday the 13th at six in the afternoon, when a sudden inundation deluged the whole space between decks, and alarmed them much. The water, which had made its way into the coal-hole, not finding a passage into the well, had forced up the platforms over it, and instantaneously set every thing afloat. Their situation was the more distressing, as they could not immediately discover any means of relieving themselves. It could be of no service to place a pump through the upper-decks in the coal-hole; and it was become impracticable to bale the water out with buckets. They had, therefore, no other expedient left than to cut a hole through the bulk-head, which separated the coal-hole from the fore-hold, and thus form a passage for the water into the well. Before this could be effected, however, the casks of dry provisions were to be got out of the fore-hold, which took them the remainder of the night; the carpenters, therefore, could not get at the partition till the next morning. The passage being made, the principal part of the water ran into the well, when they were enabled to get out the rest with buckets. The leak was now greatly increased, insomuch that half our people were constantly employed in pumping and baling till the 15th, at noon. The men submitted cheerfully to this excessive fatigue; although, to add to their sufferings, they had not a dry place to sleep in; but, in order to make them some amends, they were permitted to have their full allowance of grog.

As the weather grew more moderate, and the swell abated, they cleared away the rest of the casks from the fore-hold, and made a proper passage for the water to the pumps.

The ships now proceeded on their voyage; a gale on the 18th, had split most of the sails bent; and, as these were the second suit, they were obliged to have recourse to the last and best set. Captain Clerke's difficulties were augmented by the sea being generally so rough, and the ships so extremely leaky, that there was no place to repair the sails in, except his apartments, which was a serious inconvenience to him in his declining state of health.

At six in the morning of the 23rd, the fog clearing away, they saw mountains covered with snow, and a high conical rock, at the distance of about three or four leagues. Soon after they had taken this imperfect view, a thick fog again came on. Ac-

According to the maps, they were now but eight leagues from the entrance of Awatska Bay; therefore, when the weather cleared up, stood in to take a nearer survey of the country; when a most dismal and dreary prospect presented itself. The coast is straight and uniform, without bays, or inlets: from the shore, the ground rises in moderate hills; and behind them are ranges of mountains, whose summits penetrate the clouds. The whole was covered with snow, except the sides of some cliffs, which rose too perpendicularly from the sea to permit the snow to lie upon them.

The wind blew strong from the north-east with hazy weather and sleet, from the 24th to the 28th; the thermometer, during that time, being never higher than $30\frac{1}{2}$ deg. The ship resembled a complete mass of ice; the shrouds being so incrustrated with it as to double their dimensions; and, indeed, the oldest seaman had never experienced such continued showers of sleet, and the extremity of cold which they had now to encounter. The inclemency of the weather, the difficulty of working the ships, and the incessant duty required at the pumps, rendered the service intolerable to many of the crew; some of whom were much frost-bitten, and others were confined with colds. They continued standing four hours on each tack, having soundings of sixty fathoms when within three leagues of the land; but no sounding at double that distance.

In the morning of the 28th the weather cleared up, with a light breeze continuing from the same quarter; and at noon, when the latitude was 52 deg. and longitude 159 deg., the entrance of Awatska Bay bore north-west, at the distance of about three or four leagues; at three in the afternoon, stood in with a fair wind from the southward, having soundings from twenty-two to seven fathoms.

The mouth of Awatska Bay opens in the direction of north-north-west. On the south side, the land is moderately high; to the northward, it runs into a bluff-head. Three remarkable rocks lie in the channel between them, not far from the north-east side; and, on the opposite side, a single rock of considerable size. There is a look-out house on the north head, which is used as a light-house when any of the Russian ships are expected upon the coast. It had a flag staff on it; but there did not appear to be any person there.

Passing the mouth of the bay, which extends about four miles in length, a circular basin presents itself, of about twenty-five miles in circumference; in which, at about four o'clock, they anchored in six fathoms' water, fearing to run foul of a shoal mentioned by Muller to lie in the channel. Great quantities of loose ice drifted with the tide in the middle of the bay; but the shores were wholly blocked up with it. Plenty of wild fowl, of various kinds, were seen; also great flights of Greenland pigeons; together with ravens and eagles. In this wretched

extremity of the earth, beyond conception barbarous and inhospitable, out of the reach of civilization, bound and barricaded with ice, and covered with summer snow, our men experienced the tenderest feelings of humanity, joined to a nobleness of mind, and elevation of sentiment, which would have done honour to any clime or nation.

In the morning of the 29th, at day-light, Mr. King was sent with two boats to examine the bay, and to present the letters to the Russian commander, which he had brought from Oonalashka. He proceeded towards the village just mentioned, and, having advanced as far as he could with the boats, we got upon the ice, which reached about half a mile from the shore. Mr. King was attended by Mr. Webber, and two of the seamen, whilst the master went to finish the survey; the jolly boat being left to carry us back.

Probably the inhabitants had not, by this time seen either the ships, or the boats; for, even after Mr. King had got on the ice, no appearance of a living creature could be seen in the town. When further advanced on the ice, a few men were seen hurrying backwards and forwards; and afterwards a sledge, with one person in it, and drawn by dogs, approached them.

Struck with this unusual sight, and admiring the civility of the stranger, who was supposed coming to their assistance, Mr. King was astonished to see him turn short round, and direct his course to the *ostrog*: he was equally chagrined and disappointed at his abrupt departure; especially as the journey over the ice began to be both difficult and dangerous. At every step they sunk almost knee-deep in the snow; and, although they found tolerable footing at the bottom, the weak parts of the ice were not discoverable, and they were continually exposed to the risk of breaking through it. Indeed this accident actually happened to Mr. King; but, by the assistance of a boat-hook, he was enabled to get upon firm ice again.

The nearer they approached the shore, they found the ice still more broken. To avoid giving them any alarm, and to preserve a peaceable appearance, Mr. King and Mr. Webber marched in front, and the men, who had boat-hooks in their hands, were ordered in the rear. A body of armed men, consisting of about thirty soldiers, were seen preceded by a person with a cane in his hand. Within a few paces of our men he halted, and drew up his men in martial order. Mr. King presented Ismyloff's letters to him, and vainly endeavoured to make him understand that he was English, and had brought these dispatches from Oonalashka.

Having attentively examined Mr. King and his party, he conducted them towards the village in solemn silence, frequently halting his men, and making them perform different parts of their manual exercise: in order to shew them, perhaps, that if

barbarous and in
and and; barrica
our men exp
d to a noblene
ould have done

King was sent
ent the letters to
ht from Oon
mentioned, and
ts, we got upon
he shore. Mr.
of the seamen,
olly boat being
seen either the
had got on the
oe seen in the
ew men were
afterwards a
gs, approached

the civility of
ssistance, Mr.
and direct his
d and disap
e journey over
us. At every
and, although
weak parts of
ntinually ex
this accident
ssistance of a
in.

ound the ice
arm, and to
Mr. Webber
oks in their
d men, con-
by a person
our men he
Mr. King
eavoured to
ad brought

party, he
frequently
nt parts of
aps, that if

they should presume to offer any violence, they would have to deal with those who knew what they were about.

During the whole of this time, Mr. King was in his wet clothes, shivering with cold; yet he could not avoid being diverted with this military parade, though it was attended by an unseasonable delay. Arriving at length at the habitation of the commanding officer of the party, they were ushered in; and, after giving orders to the military without doors, our host appeared, accompanied by the secretary of the port. One of the letters from Ismyloff was now opened, and the other sent express to Bolcheretsk, a town on the west side of Kamtschatka, and the place of residence of the Russian commander of this province.

It appears extraordinary, that the natives had not seen the Resolution the preceding day, when she anchored in the bay, nor this morning till the boats approached the ice. The first sight of the ship, had struck them with a considerable panic. The garrison was instantly put under arms; two field-pieces were placed before the commander's house; and powder, shot, and lighted matches were all in readiness.

The officer who had conducted our party to his house, was a sergeant; and also the commander of the *ostrog*. After he had recovered from the alarm which their arrival had produced, the kindness and hospitality of his behaviour was astonishing. His house, indeed, was intolerably hot, but remarkably neat and clean; after Mr. King had changed his clothes, by putting on a complete suit of the sergeant's, at his earnest request, they were invited to partake of a dinner, which was doubtless the best he could procure; and, considering the visit was unexpected, was ingeniously conducted. To have prepared soup and *bouilli* would have required some time; instead of which, they had some cold beef sliced, with boiling water poured over it. After that they were regaled with a large roasted bird, the taste of which was most delicious. Having eaten a part of this, it was removed, and fish were served up, dressed in two different methods. Soon after which the bird appeared again in savoury and sweet pates. The liquor was such as the Russians distinguish by the name of *quas*, and was the most indifferent part of the entertainment. The sergeant's wife served up several of the dishes, and was not permitted to sit down at table.

Our repast being finished, during which the conversation was limited to a few bows, and other personal tokens of mutual respect; Mr. King strove to explain to his host the occasion of our visit to this port. The sum of the intelligence he received appeared to be, that though he could not be supplied with provisions or stores at this place, yet, those articles were to be procured in great plenty, at Bolcheretsk. That he doubted not but the commander would readily supply them with what they wanted; but that, till he had received his orders, neither he, nor any of the natives, could venture on-board the vessel.

It now being time to depart, and as Mr. King's clothes were not yet dry, he again had recourse to the sergeant's benevolence for his leave to carry those on-board which he had borrowed of him. This request was cheerfully complied with; and a sledge with five dogs and a driver, was instantly provided for each of our party. This mode of conveyance afforded high entertainment for the sailors; and, they were delighted still more, when they found that the two boat-hooks had a sledge appropriated solely to themselves. These sledges are so light, and so admirably constructed for the purposes they are intended, that they went safely and expeditiously over the ice, which we should have found it extremely difficult to have passed on foot.

On the morning of the 30th, the casks and cables were taken to the quarter-deck to lighten the vessel forward; and the carpenters proceeded to stop the leak, which had occasioned so much trouble. It appeared to have been occasioned by some sheathing falling off from the larboard-bow, and the oakum having been washed out from between the planks.

On the 1st of May, in the morning, they saw the *Discovery* stand into the bay; a boat was dispatched to her assistance, and she was moored, in the afternoon, close to the *Resolution*.

On Sunday the 2nd, had heavy showers of snow, and the weather was so exceedingly unsettled, that the carpenters could not proceed in their business.

Two sledges being observed to drive into the village on the morning of the 3rd, Mr. King was ordered on-shore, to learn whether any answer was arrived from the commander of Kamtschatka, which the sergeant said might be reasonably expected about this time. The distance from Bolcheretsk to St. Peter and St. Paul's is one hundred and thirty-five English miles.

The dogs were sent off with the dispatches, on the 29th at noon, and returned with an answer, early this morning; so that they performed a journey of two hundred and seventy miles, in little more than three days and a half.

For the present, however, the return of the commander's answer was concealed; and, on Mr. King's arrival at the sergeant's, he was informed that he should hear from him the next day.

At ten in the afternoon of the 4th, several sledges arriving at the edge of the ice, a boat was sent from the ship to conduct those who were in them on-board. One of them proved to be a Russian merchant from Bolcheretsk, whose name was Fedositch, and the other a German named Port, with dispatches from Major Behm, commander of Kamtschatka, to Captain Clerke.

Arriving at the edge of the ice, and seeing distinctly the magnitude of the ships, which were then within two hundred yards of them, they were exceedingly alarmed; and, before they ventured to embark, stipulated that two of our boat's crew should remain on shore, as hostages for their safety. It afterwards

appe
mand
and
had
Af
timor
very
howe
whom
that
out d
Mr. F
wered
langu
an im
Clerke
size of
lsmyle
and w
that h
given
appreh
had se
imagin
and th
that th
preven
they al
The
stances
cherets
killed.
Ima
probab
that li
with C
from t
than a
forts t
such a
upon
the ad
By
enable
facilit
of pro
latter,
tress.
the b

King's clothes
sergeant's bene-
which he had
plied with:
ntly provided
afforded high
delighted still
had a sledge
are so light,
they are in-
over the ice,
o have passed

es were taken
; and the car-
occasioned so
oned by some
d the oakum

the Discovery
er assistance,
Resolution.
y, and the wea-
ters could not

village on the
shore, to learn
der of Kam-
ably expected
to St. Peter
sh miles.

the 29th at
ning; so that
enty miles, in

der's answer
e sergeant's,
next day.

s arriving at
p to conduct
oved to be a
s Fedositch,
atches from
in Clerke.

tly the mag-
dred yards
re they ven-
rew should
afterwards

appeared, that Ismyloff, in the epistle he had written to the commander, had mentioned our vessels as two small trading boats; and that the sergeant, who had only seen the ships at a distance, had not rectified that mistake.

After they were come on-board, it was perceived, by their timorous and cautious behaviour, that they entertained some very extraordinary apprehensions. They were greatly elated, however, when the German found a person among them, with whom he could enter into conversation. Mr. Webber spoke that language fluently, and convinced them, though not without difficulty, that our voyagers were Englishmen and friends. Mr. Port was introduced to Captain Clerke, to whom he delivered the commander's letter. It was written in the German language, and merely complimentary, giving him and his officers an invitation to Bolcheretsk. Mr. Port also told Captain Clerke, that the Major had been misinformed respecting the size of the ships, and the service in which they were engaged; Ismyloff having called the two vessels English packet-boats, and warned him to be cautious; intimating, as he supposed, that he suspected they were pirates. This letter, he said, had given birth to various conjectures at Bolcheretsk; the Major apprehended they might be on a trading scheme, and therefore, had sent a merchant, but that the officer, next in command, imagined they were French, arrived with some hostile intentions, and that measures ought to be pursued accordingly. He added, that the Major had been obliged to exert all his authority to prevent the inhabitants from quitting the town, so much were they alarmed, from their apprehension of their being French.

These alarms were principally occasioned by some circumstances, attending an insurrection which had happened at Bolcheretsk, a few years before, in which the commander was killed.

Imagining, from the appearance of Mr. Port, that he might probably be the commander's secretary, he was considered in that light, and was invited, with the Russian merchant, to dine with Captain Clerke; who soon, however, began to suspect, from the behaviour of the merchant, that Mr. Port was no more than a common servant; but, not choosing to sacrifice little comforts to pride, he avoided an explanation, by not permitting such a question to be proposed to him; he, therefore continued upon a footing of equality with us; and we, in return, reaped the advantage of his abilities as a linguist.

By the assistance of the interpreter, our voyagers were now enabled to converse with the Russians, with some degree of facility: and the first objects of their inquiries, were the means of procuring fresh provisions and naval stores, particularly the latter, from the want of which they had been long in great distress. It appeared, upon inquiry, that the whole country about the bay could furnish no other live cattle than two heifers; and

these, the sergeant engaged to procure for us. The next applications were made to the merchant, whose terms for serving them were so exorbitant, that Captain Clerke thought it expedient to send an officer to the commander at Bolcheretsk, to learn the price of stores at that place. This determination being communicated to Mr. Port, he sent an express to the commander to acquaint him with their intentions, and to remove the suspicions that were entertained respecting the purposes of the voyage.

Captain Clerke fixed upon Mr. King for this service, and ordered him to prepare for setting out the next day, together with Mr. Webber, who was to accompany him as interpreter. That day, and the next, however, proved too stormy for beginning a journey through so desolate and wild a country; but, on the 7th of May, the weather became more favourable, they set out in the ship's boats, early in the morning, in order to arrive at the entrance of the Awatska at high-water, on account of the shoals at the mouth of that river. The country boats were to meet our men to conduct them up the stream. Captain Gore was also added to their party; and were accompanied by Mr. Port and the Russian merchant, with two Cossacks, having been previously furnished with warm furred clothing; a very necessary precaution, as it began to snow briskly immediately after their setting out.

Being told, at first setting out, that they could easily reach Karatchin that night, they were greatly disappointed to find themselves fifteen miles from that place at sun-set. This was attributed to the delay in passing the shoals, both at the entrance of the river, and in many other places.

The men being exceedingly fatigued, and as the difficulty of navigating the river would have increased by the darkness of the night, Mr. King and his party declined all thoughts of proceeding on their journey that evening. Having therefore fixed upon a place that was tolerably well sheltered, and, cleared it of the snow, they erected a small marquee, which they had brought, and with the assistance of a good fire and some excellent punch, passed the night agreeably. The principal inconvenience was, the being obliged to keep at a considerable distance from the fire: for, as soon as it was lighted, it thawed every part round it into an absolute puddle. The Kamtschadales were extremely alert and expeditious in erecting the marquee, and cooking provisions; they had brought with them their teakettles, considering it as a most intolerable hardship if they cannot, two or three times a day, regale themselves with drinking tea.

As soon as it was light, in the morning, they proceeded on their journey, and before they had made much progress, were met by the *Toion*, or chief of Karatchin, who being apprized of their coming, had provided canoes that were lighter and better

com
mod
nish
proc
their
arri
coin
and
char
men
sisti
the
with
colo
Chir
slee
with
hair
the
beli
Ka
and
sum
grou
cond
and
coun
the
and
scant
of th
tion.
Th
them
of h
Wh
abs
a so
form
back
tend
Tho
will
inci
H
was
gre
sno
Thi

The next appli-
cations for serving
thought it expe-
Bolcheretak, to
his determination
express to the
and to remove
the purposes of

his service, and
next day, together
as interpreter,
stormy for begin-
country; but, on
unfavourable, they set
off, in order to
water on account
of the country boats
in the stream. Captain
was accompanied by
the Cossacks, having
clothing; a very
quickly immediately

could easily reach
pointed to find
a set. This was
both at the en-

the difficulty of
the darkness of
thoughts of pro-
therefore fixed
and, cleared it
which they had
and some ex-
a principal in-
a considerable
ted, it thawed
Kamtschadales
of the marquee,
them their tea-
ship if they can-
with drinking

proceeded on
progress, were
being apprized of
water and better

contrived for navigating the higher parts of the river. A commodious vessel, (made by lashing two canoes together) furnished with fur cloaks, and lined with bear-skins, was also procured. They now proceeded rapidly; the Toion's people being remarkably expert in this kind of business. At ten they arrived at the *ostrog*, named Karatchin, and the seat of his command, where our party were received by Kar. tschadale men and women, and some Russian servants belonging to the merchant Fedositch. They were all attired in their best habiliments; those of the women being gay and pleasing, and consisting of a loose robe of white nankeen, gathered close round the neck, and fastened with a silk collar. A short jacket, without sleeves, was worn over this, consisting of different coloured nankeens; and they had petticoats made of a slight Chinese silk. Their shirts, which were also made of silk, had sleeves extending to the wrists; and their heads were bound with coloured silk handkerchiefs, which entirely concealed the hair of the married women, but the unmarried ones brought the handkerchief under the hair, and suffered it to flow loose behind.

Karatchin was pleasantly situated on the side of the river and was composed of three log-houses, nineteen *balagans*, or summer habitations, and three *fourts*, or houses made under ground. The *Toion*, to whose dwelling Mr. King was then conducted, was a plain decent man, born of a Russian mother, and a Kamtschadale father. His house, like all the rest in this country, consisted only of two apartments. All the furniture in the outer room was a long narrow table, with a bench round it; and the inner apartment, which was the kitchen, was also very scantily furnished. But the hearty welcome and kind attention of the host amply compensated for the poverty of his habitation.

The wife of the *Toion* was an excellent cook, and served them with various sorts of fish and game, and different kinds of heath-berries, which had been preserved since the last year. Whilst they were dining in this miserable hut, the guests of absolute strangers, and at the extremity of the habitable globe, a solitary half-worn pewter spoon attracted their attention. Its form was familiar, and the word *London* was stamped upon the back of it. It is impossible to express the anxious hopes, and tender remembrances this circumstance excited in our party. Those who have been long absent from their native country, will readily conceive what inexpressible pleasure such trifling incidents can give.

Having now quitted the river, the next part of the journey was to be performed on sledges; but the thaw had been so great in the day-time as not to permit them to set out till the snow was become hard and firm by the coldness of the evening. This furnished an opportunity of walking about the village,

which was the only place in this country that had been seen free from snow.

On returning to their hosts, supper was prepared for them, and when finished Mr. King entertained the *Toon* and his wife with punch made from some spirits; and Captain Gore, with his wonted generosity, made them some valuable presents; after which they retired to the kitchen, leaving them in the outer room, on the benches of which were spread bear-skins.

The melancholy howlings of the dogs awakened them about nine the same evening, which continued all the time the baggage was lashing upon the sledges: but when they were yoked, and prepared for travelling, a cheerful yelping succeeded, which ceased the instant they marched off.

The body of the sledge is about four feet and a half long, and a foot broad. It is made in the form of a crescent, of light tough wood, fastened together with wicker work; and, among the principal people, is elegantly stained with red and blue; the seat being covered with furs of bear-skins. It has four legs, about two feet in height, resting on two long flat pieces of wood, of the breadth of five or six inches, extending a foot beyond the body of the sledge, at each end. These turn up before, somewhat like a skate, and are shod with the bone of some sea-animal. The carriage is ornamented at the fore-part with tassels of coloured cloth, and leather thongs. It has a cross bar, to which the harness is joined; and links of iron, or small bells, are hung to it, the jingling of which is supposed to encourage the dogs. They seldom carry more than one person at a time, who sits aside, with his feet on the lower part of the sledge, having his baggage and provisions behind him. The usual number of dogs employed in drawing this carriage is five, four of them yoked two and two, and the other acting as leader. The reins being fastened to the collar, instead of the head, have no great command; and are, therefore, usually hung upon the sledge; the driver depending principally on their obedience to his voice. Great care and attention are consequently used in training up the leader, which frequently becomes very valuable on account of his steadiness and docility; the sum of forty roubles, (or ten pounds) being no unusual price for one of them. The rider has also a crooked stick, answering the purpose of both whip and reins, as, by striking it into the snow, he can moderate the speed of the dogs, or even stop them entirely. When they are lazy, or inattentive to their duty, he often chastises them by throwing it at them. The dexterity of the riders by picking this stick up again, is very remarkable, and is the most difficult manœuvre in the exercise of their profession: nor is it, indeed, surprising that they should be skilful in a practice in which they are so materially interested: for, they assured them, that if a driver should happen to loose his stick, the dogs immediately discover it; and, unless their leader is

both steady and resolute, they will instantly set off at full speed, and never stop till their strength is exhausted; or, till the carriage is overturned and dashed to pieces, or hurried down a precipice, when all are buried in the snow. The accounts of the speed of these animals, and of the hardships and fatigues they suffer, would have appeared incredible, had they not been supported by the greatest authority.

During the winter the dogs are fed on the offals of dried and stinking fish; and even this miserable food is withheld from them a day before they set out on a journey, and they are not permitted to eat a morsel of any thing till they arrive at the end of it. They are frequently kept fasting two entire days, in which time they will perform a journey of great extent. The shape of these dogs resembles that of the Pomeranian breed, but they are considerably larger.

Not choosing to rely upon their own skill, they had each a man to conduct the sledge, which, in the condition the roads then were, proved a very laborious business.

Though they had many difficulties to encounter, owing principally to the bad condition of the road, they got safe to an *ostrog* about two in the afternoon. It is called Natcheechin, and is situated on a small stream, which falls into the Bolchoireka; at some distance below the town. It is twenty-five miles from Karatchin.

This inconsiderable *ostrog* consists of one log-house, the residence of the *Toion*, one *jourt*, and five *balagans*. They were received here with the same civility and hospitality as at Karachin; and, in the afternoon, were conducted to a remarkable hot-spring, at a small distance from this village. Before they came very near it, they saw a steam rising from it, as from a boiling cauldron; when they approached it, they perceived a strong sulphurous effluvia. A basin of about three feet in diameter is formed by the main spring; besides which there are several lesser springs, of equal heat, in the adjacent ground; by which means the whole spot, consisting of about an acre, was so very hot that we could not remain two minutes in the same place. The water issuing from these springs supplies a small bathing pond, and afterwards a little rivulet, which conducts it into the river, at the distance of about a hundred and fifty yards. Great cures are said to have been effected by this bath, in rheumatisms, scorbutic ulcers, swelled and contracted joints, and many other disorders. Where these springs flow the ground is on a gentle ascent, having a green hill of a moderate size behind it. Some plants seemed to thrive here with great luxuriance, among which was the wild garlic.

On the morning of the 10th the party embarked on the Bolchoireka; and, going with the stream, expected to arrive at the journey's end the following day; on each side of the river the country was romantic, but not diversified; the course of it being

between craggy mountains, of a most dreary and barren aspect, with nothing to vary the scene, except now and then the sight of a bear, or a flock of wild fowl. This, and the following night, they slept under our marquee, on the banks of the river, and suffered greatly from the severity of the weather.

On approaching Kamtschatka, Mr. King and his party judged, from an appearance of great stir and bustle, that their reception was to be in form. They were sorry for this, as decent clothing had long been scarce amongst them; and their travelling dresses were made up of a burlesque mixture of Indian, European, and Kamtschadale fashions. The commander received them in a most engaging manner; but our party had the mortification to discover, that they had almost wholly forgotten the French language; so that only Mr. Webber had the satisfaction of conversing with him, as he spoke the German, which was his native tongue.

Major Behm was accompanied by Captain Shmaleff, the second in command, and another officer, with the whole body of the merchants of the place. Our party were conducted to the commander's house, where they were politely and respectfully received by his lady, who had prepared tea and other refreshments. The first compliments being over, Captain Gore desired Mr. Webber to acquaint the Major, that he was distressed for want of naval stores, fresh provisions, flour, and other necessaries. The Major interrupted Mr. Webber, by observing, that he should not bestow a thought upon the difficulties of supplying their wants; he only wished to know what articles we stood in need of, and the time he could be allowed for providing them. After expressing acknowledgements for his obliging condescension, Captain Gore presented him an account of the naval stores; cattle, and flour to purchase; and informed him, that he intended to prosecute the voyage about the 5th of June.

After this, the conversation became more general; and the commander, supposing they might be fatigued, and desirous of repose, begged leave to conduct them to their lodgings, at about seven o'clock. It was in vain that they protested against a compliment to which they said they had no other title than that of being strangers. That alone, with this generous Livonian, was sufficient to counterbalance every other consideration. In going along they passed two guard-houses, where the men were under arms, in compliment to Captain Gore, and were conducted to a neat decent house, which the Major had appointed for their residence while they continued at Kamtschatka. They had two sentinels posted at the door, and a sergeant's guard in an adjoining house. Having disposed of them in the apartments, the Major took his leave, promising to visit them the next day. In the course of the evening they were favoured with a number of civil messages from the principal inhabitants of the town, politely observing, that their attending to pay their respects at that

time would add to their fatigues, but they would do themselves that honour the next morning.

In the morning of the 13th compliments were sent to them by the Major, Captain Shmaleff, and the most respectable people of the town, from all of whom they were honoured with visits soon after.

The Major and Captain Shmaleff offered a share of the provisions of the garrison, which Captain Gore said he would thankfully accept on condition, however, that he should be made acquainted with the price of the articles he received from them, that Captain Clerke might draw upon the Victualling Office in London for the amount. This was refused in the most positive terms; and, though repeatedly urged, the Major always stopped them short, by saying, that his mistress would be highly gratified at his rendering every assistance in his power to the English, who are her good friends and allies; and that it would give her a peculiar satisfaction to find, that, in such remote regions, her dominions had afforded any relief to vessels engaged in such important services. He added, that he could not, therefore, act so contrary to the principles of his Empress, as to think of receiving any bills; but, if Captain Gore insisted on it, he might give him a bare certificate of the articles he might supply him with, which he would transmit to the Court of Russia, as evidence of having performed his duty. "All further acknowledgements," continued he, "must be submitted to the two courts, but you must excuse me from acceding to your proposal."

This matter being adjusted, he requested to be informed respecting their private wants, saying he should consider it as an affront if they applied to any of the merchants or had dealings with any other person except himself.

Not being able to make an adequate return for such singular generosity, he had only their thanks and admiration. At this moment Mr. King recollected that Captain Clerke had sent by him a set of the engravings to Captain Cook's second voyage, desiring him to present it, in his name, to the commander. Nothing could have been more acceptable to him than this present, the Major being an enthusiast in all matters relative to discoveries. Captain Clerke had also given Mr. King a discretionary power of permitting the Commander to see a chart of the discoveries made in the present voyage; and, judging from his situation and disposition of mind, that he would be highly gratified by such a communication, though, from motives of delicacy, he had only asked a few general questions on the subject, Mr. King reposed in him that confidence which his whole conduct so justly merited.

He felt this compliment as it was intended he should, and was struck at beholding in one view, the whole of that coast on the side of Asia and America, which his countrymen had been so long employed in acquiring an imperfect knowledge of.

This day the party dined at the Commander's, who, very

studious to gratify their curiosity, had prepared a variety of dishes dressed after the Russian and Kamtschadale manner, besides a number of others in the English style. In the afternoon they took a survey of the town and the adjacent country. Bolcheretsk is situated in a low swampy plain, that extends to the south of Okotsk, being about forty miles in length, and of a considerable breadth.

The buildings in Bolcheretsk are all in the same style; being built of logs of wood, and thatched.—The Major's house is considerably larger than the rest, and has three capacious rooms, neatly papered; but the *talc*, which covered the windows, gave them a disagreeable and mean appearance. The town consists of low buildings, in rows of five or six habitations each, connected together by a passage extending the whole length of them; having the kitchen and store houses on one side, and the dwelling apartments on the other. There are also barracks for the Russian soldiers and the Cossacks: a tolerable church, a courtroom, and, at the end of the town, a number of *balagans*. The number of the inhabitants is between five and six hundred. A handsome entertainment was given by the Major, in the evening, to which all the respectable inhabitants of both sexes were invited.

Captain Gore made a private application the next day, to Fedositch, the merchant, in order to purchase some tobacco, the sailors having been without that favourite commodity for upwards of a year. This, however, like other similar transactions, came immediately to the knowledge of the Commander; and, in a very short time after Captain Gore was surprised to find four bags of tobacco in the house, each containing upwards of a hundred pounds, which the Major requested might be presented to the sailors, in his name, and that of the garrison under his command. By the same conveyance our party received twenty boxes of sugar, and as many pounds of tea, which they requested the officers to accept of, as they understood they were almost destitute of those articles. A present was also sent by Madam Behm, for Captain Clerke, which consisted of honey, butter, figs, rice, and other articles; accompanied with her best wishes, that, in his infirm state, they might prove serviceable to him.

Captain Gore and his party, were engaged to dine with Captain Shmaleff, who, in order to vary the amusements, entertained them with an exhibition of dancing, in the Russian and Kamtschadale style. It is impossible to convey an adequate idea of this uncouth exhibition. The figure of the Russian dance resembled those of English hornpipes, and consisted of one, two, or four performers at a time. Their steps were exceedingly short and quick, their feet being raised a very little way from the ground; their arms were hung down close to the sides, the body being kept, the whole time, erect and immovable, except when the performers passed each other, when the hand was

added
dance
infinite
to rep
ants o
various
on the
gener
whilst
awkwa
Cap
partin
him, i
made
chatka
paratio
place;
and a
satisfie
be om
For
childre
Kaints
most s
Fedos
rouble
hands
On
prepar
leave
quittin
of the
all the
whole
they
friend
mand
to the
acco
with
ance.
prov
by th
and
that
lible
into
were
A

suddenly raised with an awkward motion. But, if the Russian dance was unmeaning and ridiculous, the Kamtschadale was infinitely more so. The principal aim in their performances, is to represent the clumsy gestures of the bear, which the inhabitants of this country have frequent opportunities of observing in various situations. To describe the awkward postures exhibited on these occasions, would appear tedious and uninteresting. In general, however, the body was bowed, and the knees bent, whilst the arms were employed in imitating the motions of that awkward animal.

Captain Gore acquainted the Major of his intention of departing the next day, when the Major promised to accompany him, if he would stay but one day longer. He said, that he had made up his despatches, and resigned the command of Kamtschatka to Captain Shmaleff; having made the necessary preparations for his departure to Okotsk, which was shortly to take place; but, that he should be happy in postponing his journey, and attending him to St. Peter and St. Paul's, in order to be satisfied that nothing which could be done to serve him should be omitted.

For some articles which Mr. King had given to the Major's children, he received, the next morning, a most magnificent Kamtschadale dress, such as the principal *Toions* wear on the most solemn occasions. This habit, as they were informed by Fedositch, must have cost, at least, one hundred and twenty roubles. He also, at the same time, was presented with a handsome sable muff, as a present from his daughter.

On Sunday, the 16th, early in the morning, our party were preparing for their departure, when they were invited to take leave of Madame Behm, in their passage to the boats. On quitting their apartments, they saw all the soldiers and cossacks of the garrison drawn up on one side, and, on the other, were all the male inhabitants of the town, in their best clothing; the whole body of the people joining in a melancholy song, which they were informed, it was usual to sing on the departure of friends. Thus they marched till they arrived at the commander's house, preceded by the drums and music belonging to the garrison. Here they were received, by Madame Behm, accompanied by several ladies, habited in long silk cloaks, lined with furs of various colours; forming a most splendid appearance. Having partaken of some refreshment, which had been provided for them, they proceeded to the water-side, attended by the ladies, who joined with the rest of the people in the song; and having taken leave of Madame Behm, after assuring her that the sense of the hospitality of Bolcheretsk would be indelible in their hearts, they were too much affected not to hasten into the boats. At putting off they received three cheers, which were immediately returned.

A messenger had been despatched from Bolcheretsk to Cap-

tain Clerke, acquainting him with the nature of the reception; and stating that the Major intended to accompany them on their return; apprising him, at the same time, of the day he might expect them. On approaching the harbour, it was observed, the boats were coming towards them. The men were all clean, and the officers as well arrayed as their wardrobes would then permit them to be. The Major was struck at the healthy appearance of the sailors, and was surprised to see that many of them had no other covering than a shirt and trousers, though it actually snowed at that very instant.

Major Behm had expressed an inclination to visit the ships before he landed; but, being informed that Captain Clerke was extremely ill, he thought it would be improper to disturb him at so late an hour, it being then after nine o'clock. Mr. King therefore attended him to the serjeant's house, and afterwards went on-board to communicate to Captain Clerke what had happened at Bolcheretsk. He was much concerned to find, that, during his absence, that officer's health was considerably impaired, instead of growing better, as it was hoped it would, from undisturbed repose in the harbour, and a milk and vegetable diet!

The next morning Mr. King conducted the Major to the ships; where he was received with every possible mark of distinction, and saluted with thirteen guns. He was attended by the commander of a Russian galliot, two merchants from Bolcheretsk, a master of a sloop, and the priest of the village of Paratouna.

Having visited the captains and taken a view of the two ships, he returned on-board the Resolution. In the course of the afternoon the curiosities which had been collected were shewn him, and an assortment of each article presented to him by Captain Clerke. Here we cannot pass over an instance of great generosity and gratitude in the sailors who, being informed of the handsome present which had been made them by the Major, voluntarily requested that their grog might be withheld, and their allowance of spirits presented to the garrison of Bolcheretsk; saying that they knew that brandy was extremely scarce in that country, the soldiers on-shore having offered four roubles a bottle for it. It was impossible, not to admire this extraordinary sacrifice, knowing how much the sailors felt when abridged and deprived of their grog. Indeed, they never had that article withheld from them but in warm weather, that they might enjoy a greater proportion when it was most necessary; but this generous proposal would deprive them of it, even in the inclement season naturally to be expected in the northern expedition. The officers, however, would not permit them to suffer by their generosity, and substituted in the room of the small quantity of brandy, which the Major consented to accept, an equal quantity of rum. A dozen or two of Cape wine for Madame Behm, and some other trifling presents which the ships were enabled to make, were accepted with great politeness.

The
of b
chew
not.
It
mand
burg
dispe
oppo
matu
their
man
Cons
still
Capta
of the
a cha
termi
of Lo
The
three
with
their
On
nine
board
quant
now p
of lea
in. T
sixty-
De
unmo
runni
three
strain
raise
dama
Th
the ti
dispa
ten,
turne
fatho
mile
Nee
Ca
on t
diffe

The tobacco was distributed the next morning among the crews of both vessels; three pounds being allotted to every man that chewed or smoked tobacco, and one pound to those who did not.

It has been observed that the Major had resigned the command of Kamtschatka, and was speedily to repair to Petersburg; and he now expressed his willingness to convey any dispatches they might choose to commit to his care. Such an opportunity was not to be neglected; and Captain Clerke, after mature consideration, was of opinion, that the whole account of their discoveries might safely be committed to the care of a man who had given the strongest proofs of probity and virtue. Considering also that a very hazardous part of the voyage was still to be performed, he resolved to send, by him, the whole of Captain Cook's journal, together with his own, from the death of that commander, till our arrival at Kamtschatka; and also, a chart of their discoveries. Mr. Bayly and Mr. King also determined to send an account of their proceedings to the Board of Longitude.

The Major was entertained alternately in the two ships, the three following days. He departed on the 25th, and was saluted with thirteen guns; the sailors, at their own request, expressing their regard for him by three cheers.

On Tuesday the 1st of June, two hundred and fifty poods, or nine thousand pounds weight of rye flour, were brought on-board the Resolution, and the Discovery received a proportional quantity from the stores of Petropaulowska. The men were now put on their full allowance of bread, which, from the time of leaving the Cape of Good Hope, they had not been indulged in. The same day, the ships completed their stock of water, sixty-five tons having been conveyed on-board.

Determining now to set sail, on the 12th the ships began to unmoor, but after having broken the messenger, and reefed a running purchase with a six-inch hawser, which likewise broke three times, they were at last under the necessity of heaving a strain at low water, and waiting for the flowing of the tide to raise the anchor. This measure succeeded, though not without damaging the cable.

The next morning, at four o'clock, they got under way with the tide of ebb, and as there was a perfect calm, the boats were dispatched a-head for the purpose of towing the ships. About ten, a south-easterly wind springing up, and the tide having turned, they were obliged to let go the anchors again, in seven fathoms, the *ostrog* bearing north-half-east, at the distance of a mile from the land that was nearest to them, and the three Needle Rocks being in the direction of south-half-east.

Captain Gore and Lieutenant King landed, in the afternoon, on the east side of the passage, where they observed, in two different places, the remains of spacious villages; and, on the

side of a hill, they saw an old ruined parapet, with four or five embrasures. It had guns mounted on it in Behring's time, as that navigator himself informs us, and commanded the passage up the mouth of the bay. Not far from this spot were the ruins of some subterraneous caverns, which were conjectured to have been magazines.

Our voyagers were surprized, before day-light, on the 15th, with a rumbling noise, that resembled distant thunder; and, when the day appeared, they found that the sides and decks of their ships were covered with a fine dust like emery near an inch thick. The air was at the same time loaded and obscured with this substance; and towards the volcano mountain, which stands to the northward of the harbour, it was exceedingly thick and black, insomuch that they were unable to distinguish the body of the hill. About twelve o'clock, and during the afternoon, the loudness of the explosions increased; and they were succeeded by showers of cinders, which, in general, were of the size of peas, though many of those that were picked up from the deck were larger than a hazel nut. Several small stones, which had undergone no alteration from the action of fire, fell with the cinders. In the evening there was dreadful thunder and lightning, which, with the darkness of the sky, and the sulphurous smell of the air, produced altogether a most awful and terrifying effect. The ships were, at this time, about eight leagues from the foot of the mountain.

At day-break, on the 16th, they got up the anchors, and stood out of the bay; but the wind falling, and the ebb-tide setting across the passage on the eastern shore, they were driven very near the three Needle Rocks, situated on that side of the entrance, and were under the necessity of hoisting out the boats for the purpose of towing the ships clear of them. At twelve o'clock they were at the distance of six miles from the land, and the depth of water was forty-three fathoms, over a bottom of small stones, of the same kind with those which fell on the decks after the eruption of the volcano; but, whether they had been left there by the last, or some former eruptions, could not be determined.

It being the intention of Captain Clerke to keep in sight of the coast of Kamtschatka, as much as the weather would allow, in order to ascertain its position, he continued to steer towards the north-north-east, with variable light winds, till the 18th. The volcano was still observed to throw up immense columns of smoke; and we did not strike ground with one hundred and fifty fathoms of line at the distance of twelve miles from the shore.

The wind blew fresh from the south on the 18th, and the weather became so thick and hazy, that it was imprudent to make any further attempts at present to keep in sight of the land. However, that Captain Clerke might be ready, when

ever
Reso
Russ
ceed
At
came
of an
to no
north
sition
in re
thoug
them
our c
162 d
is ve
cover
in the
At
min.
bore
three
about
At
miles
sna,
of nor
the sc
north
twelv
sidera
land i
yond
snow
Th
with
cordi
midd
late
The
deg.
this p
Th
vey o
Clerk
pally
coast
twee
mak

ever the fogs should disperse, to resume the survey, he ran the Resolution on in the direction of the coast, as laid down in the Russian charts, and fired signal guns for the Discovery to proceed on the same course.

At three o'clock in the morning of the 20th, the weather became clearer, they stood in towards the land; and, in the space of an hour afterwards, saw it a-head, extending from north-west to north-north-east, at the distance of about five leagues. The northern part was conjectured to be Kronotskoi Noss; its position in the Russian charts nearly agreeing with the reckoning in respect to its latitude, which was 54 deg. 42 min. north, though, in point of longitude, they differed considerably from them; for they place it 1 deg. 48 min. east of Awatska, whereas our computation makes it 3 deg. 34 min. east of that place, or 162 deg. 17 min. east of Greenwich. The land about this cape is very elevated, and the inland mountains were at this time covered with snow. There is no appearance of inlets or bays in the coast, and the shore breaks off in steep cliffs.

At twelve o'clock of the 21st, the longitude was 163 deg. 50 min. and the latitude 55 deg. 52 min.; the extremes of the land bore north-west-by-west three-quarters west, and north-by-west three-quarters west; and the nearest part was at the distance of about twenty-four miles.

At nine in the evening, when they had approached about six miles nearer the coast, they found it formed a projecting peninsula, extending eleven or twelve leagues in the direction nearly of north and south. It is level, and of a moderate elevation; the southern extreme terminates in a sloping point; that to the northward forms a steep bluff head; and between them, ten or twelve miles to the south of the northern cape, there is a considerable break in the land. On both sides of this break the land is low. A remarkable hill, resembling a saddle, rises beyond the opening; and a chain of lofty mountains, capped with snow, extends along the back of the whole peninsula.

The coast running in an even direction, they were uncertain with respect to the position of Kamtschatkoi Noss, which according to Mr. Muller, forms a projecting point towards the middle of the peninsula; but it was afterwards found, that, in a late Russian map, that appellation is given to the southern cape. The latitude of this, from several accurate observations, was 56 deg. 3 min. and its longitude 163 deg. 20 min. To the south of this peninsula the great river Kamtschatka runs into the sea.

The season being too far advanced to make an accurate survey of the coast of Kamtschatka, it was the design of Captain Clerke, in his course to Behring's Strait, to determine principally the respective situations of the projecting points of the coast, he therefore steered across a spacious bay, laid down between Kamtschatkoi Noss and Olutorskoi Noss, with a view of making the latter; which is represented by the Russian geo-

graphers as terminating the peninsula of Kamtschatka, and as being the southern limit of the country of the Koriaks.

On Tuesday the 22nd, they passed a dead whale, which emitted a most horrible smell, perceivable at the distance of three or four miles. It was covered with a very considerable number of gulls, petrels, and other oceanic birds, which were regaling themselves upon it. On the 24th, the wind, which had shifted about during the three preceding days, settled at south-west, bringing on clear weather, with which they proceeded towards the north-east-by-north, across the bay, having no land in sight. In the course of this day they observed a great number of gulls, and were witnesses to the disgusting mode of feeding of the arctic gull, which has procured it the appellation of the parasite. This bird, which is rather larger than the common gull, pursues the latter species whenever it meets them; the gull, after flying about for some time, with loud screams, and manifest indications of extreme terror, drops its excrement, which its pursuer instantly darts at, and catches in its beak before it falls into the sea.

At one o'clock in the afternoon of the 25th, when in the latitude of 59 deg. 12 min., and in the longitude of 169 deg. 35 min., a very thick fog came on, about the time they expected to obtain a view of Olutorskoi Noss, which, if Muller's position of it, in the latitude of 59 deg. 30 min., and in the longitude of 167 deg. 36 min., is right, could then have been only a dozen leagues from them, at which distance they might easily have discerned land of a moderate height. The depth of water, at present, was so great, that they had no ground with a hundred and sixty fathoms of line. The next day they had a fresh gale from the south-west, which lasted till noon on the 27th, when the weather clearing up, they steered to the north, with an intention of making the land. Their latitude at this time was 59 deg. 49 min., and longitude 175 deg. 43 min. The next morning at nine o'clock, they were ten or eleven miles from the shore, the southern extreme bearing west-by-south, about six leagues distant, beyond which the coast seemed to incline to the west. This point being in the longitude of 174 deg. 48 min., and in the latitude of 61 deg. 48 min., is situated, according to the Russian charts, near the mouth of the river Opuka. The northern extremity, at the same time, bore north-by-west; between which, and a hill bearing north-west-by-west-quarter-west, the coast appeared to bend towards the west, and form a deep bay.

At noon, on Thursday the 1st of July, Mr. Bligh, master of the Resolution, having moored a small keg with the deep sea-lead, in seventy-five fathoms' water, found that the ship made a course to the north-by-east, about a half a mile in an hour; this was attributed by him to the effect of a southerly swell, rather than to that of any current. The wind, towards the evening, freshening from the south-east, they steered to the

north-east
Noss, wh
preceding
south-east
Deus's No
of the ex
river of th
country of
On the
and longit
descried th
distance of
noon saw
quarters n
was betw
eighteen r
The Jati
most occur
itude is 188
present wi
The northe
for a dozen
east, the ex
crew supp
to the east
haziness of
These islan
Noss were
aspect.
As the w
till Monda
north-east
169. deg. 1
On the 6
our longit
large mass
places, to
greatly sur
extensive
appearanc
much furth
ceeding. T
were hoist
which wer
without su
fore our p
retreated i
Having
wind fresh

north-east-by-east, for the point that Behring calls Tschukotskoi Noss, which they had observed on the 4th of September the preceding year, at the same time that they perceived, towards the south-east the island of St. Laurence. This cape, and St. Thaddeus's Noss form the north-eastern and south-western extremes of the extensive Gulf of Anadir, into the bottom of which the river of that name empties itself, separating, as it passes, the country of the Tschutski from that of the Koriaks.

On the 3rd of July, at twelve, the latitude was 63 deg. 33 min. and longitude 186 deg. 45 min. Between twelve and one, they descried the Tschukotskoi Noss, bearing north-half-west, at the distance of thirteen or fourteen leagues. At five in the afternoon saw the island of St. Laurence, in direction of east three quarters north; and also another island, which it was imagined was between St. Laurence and Anderson's Island, about eighteen miles east-south-east of the former.

The latitude of the island of St. Laurence, according to the most accurate observations, is 63 deg. 47 min.; and its longitude is 188 deg. 15 min. This island, if its boundaries were at present within view, is about three leagues in circumference. The northern part of it may be discerned at the distance of ten or a dozen leagues; but as it has some low land to the south-east, the extent of which could not be perceived some of the crew supposed that it might perhaps be joined to the land to the eastward of it; they were, however, prevented by the haziness of the weather from ascertaining this circumstance. These islands, as well as the land adjoining to the Tschukotskoi Noss were covered with snow, and presented a most dismal aspect.

As the weather continued to thicken, they lost sight of land till Monday the 5th, when they had a view of it both to the north-east and north-west. Their longitude at this time was 189. deg. 14 min., and latitude 65 deg. 24 min.

On the 6th, at twelve o'clock, their latitude was 67 deg. and our longitude 191 deg. 6 min. Having already passed many large masses of ice, and observed that it adhered, in several places, to the shore of the Asiatic continent, they were not greatly surprised when they fell in, about three o'clock, with an extensive body of it, stretching away to the westward. This appearance considerably discouraged their hopes of proceeding much further to the north this year than they had done the preceding. There being but little wind in the afternoon, the boats were hoisted out in pursuit of the sea-horses, great numbers of which were seen on the detached pieces of ice; but they returned without success: these animals being extremely shy, and, before our people could come within gun-shot of them, always retreated into the water.

Having hoisted in the boats at seven in the evening, and the wind freshening from the southward, they stood on to the north-

east, with a view to explore the American continent, between the latitudes of 68 deg and 69 deg., which, owing to the foggy weather last year, they had not been able to examine. In the attempt they were again in part dissappointed; for, on the 7th about six o'clock in the morning, the ships were stopped by a large body of ice, stretching from north-west to south-east; but not long afterwards, the horizon becoming clear, they had a view of the American coast, at the distance of about ten leagues extending from north-east-by-east to east, and lying between 67 deg. and 68 deg. 20 min. of northern latitude. The ice not being high, they were enabled, by the clearness of the weather, to see over a great extent of it. The whole exhibited a compact solid surface, not in the least thawed, and seemed also to adhere to the land.

The weather becoming hazy soon after, they lost sight of the land; and it being impossible to approach nearer to it, they steered to the north-north-west, keeping the ice close on-board and having, by noon, got round its western extremity, they found it tended nearly north. Their longitude, at this time, was 192 deg. 34 min., and latitude 68 deg. 22 min. They proceeded along the edge of the ice to the north-north-east during the remainder of the day, passing through many loose pieces which had been separated from the main body, and against which the vessels were driven with great violence, notwithstanding the utmost caution. About eight in the evening they passed some drift-wood; at midnight the wind veered to the north-west, and there were continued showers of snow and sleet. The thermometer had now fallen from 38 deg. to 31 deg.

The next morning, at five o'clock, the wind shifting more to the northward, they could continue no longer on the same tack, by reason of the ice, but were under the necessity of standing towards the west. On Friday the 9th, a fresh gale blew from the north-north-west, accompanied with violent showers of snow and sleet. The thermometer, at noon, was at 30 deg. They steered west-south-west, and kept as near the main-body of ice as they could; but had the misfortune to damage the cutwater against the drift pieces, and rub off some of the sheathing from the bows. The shocks, indeed, which the ships received, were frequently very severe, and were attended with considerable hazard. The latitude, at noon, was 69 deg. 12 min., and longitude 188 deg. 5 min.

Having now sailed almost forty leagues to the west, along the edge of the ice, without perceiving any opening, or a clear sea beyond it towards the north, they had no prospect of making further progress to the northward at present. Captain Clerke, therefore, determined to bear away to the south by east, the only quarter which was quite clear, and to wait till the season was somewhat more advanced before he made any further attempts to penetrate through the ice. He proposed to employ the inter-



FIGURE 413.

me
co
tic
the

wh
fec
an
sev
of
hoi
On
the
one
wer
in t
war
tem
wer
the
cou
the
war
as if
A fe
take
two
O
On
west
cour
o'cl
clos
no l
men
rais
spac
pen
near
the
exte
A
no p
dete
Baff
thes
dur
a fr

mediate time in surveying the bay of St. Laurence, and the coast situated to the south of it; as it would be a great satisfaction to have a harbour so near, in case of future damage from the quantity of ice in those parts.

The ships made sail to the southward till the 10th at noon, when they passed considerable quantities of drift ice, and a perfect calm ensued. The latitude at this time was 68 deg. 1 min., and the longitude 188 deg. 30 min. This morning they saw several whales; and in the afternoon, there being great numbers of sea-horses on the pieces of ice that surrounded them, they hoisted out the boats, and sent them in pursuit of those animals. Our people had more success on this occasion than they had on the 6th; for they returned with three large ones, and a young one, besides having killed and wounded some others. They were witnesses of several striking instances of parental affection in these animals. All of them, on the approach of the boats towards the ice, took their young ones under their fins, and attempted to escape with them into the sea. Some whose cubs were killed or wounded, and left floating upon the surface of the water, rose again, and carried them down, sometimes just as the men were on the point of taking them into the boats; and could be traced bearing them to a considerable distance through the water, which was stained with their blood. They were afterwards observed bringing them, at intervals above the surface, as if for air, and again plunging under it with a horrid bellowing. A female, in particular, whose young one had been killed, and taken into the boat, became so furious, that she even struck her two tusks through the bottom of the cutter.

On Monday the 12th they had light winds and hazy weather. On examining the current, they found it set towards the north-west, at the rate of half a mile an hour; they continued a northerly course with a breeze from the south, and fair weather, till ten o'clock in the morning of the 13th, when they again found the ships close in with a solid mass of ice, to which they could perceive no limits from the mast head. This was an effectual discouragement to all hopes of penetrating further; which had been greatly raised, by having now almost advanced ten leagues, through a space, which, on the 9th, had been found to be occupied by impenetrable ice. The situation of the ships at this time, was nearly in the middle of the channel, betwixt the two continents; the latitude was 69 deg. 37 min.; and the main body of the ice extended from west-south-west to east-north-east.

As in that part of the sea, where they now were, there was no probability of getting further to the north, Captain Clerke determined to make a final attempt on the coast of America, for Baffin's Bay, since he found it practicable to advance the farthest on this side, in the preceding year. They accordingly, during the remainder of the day, worked to the windward, with a fresh breeze from the east; and observed several fulmers and

arctic gulls; they passed two trees, both of which seemed to have lain a long time in the water. The larger one was, in length, ten or eleven feet, and in circumference, about three without either the bark or the branches.

They proceeded to the eastward on the 14th, with thick foggy weather. The next day, the wind blowing fresh from the west, and having in some measure dispersed the fog, they immediately steered to the north, in order to have a nearer view of the ice; and were soon close in with it. It extended from north-north-west, to north-east, and was solid and compact: the exterior parts were ragged, and of various heights; the inner surface was even; and, as was supposed, from eight to ten feet above the level of the sea. The weather becoming moderate during the rest of the day, they shaped their course according to the tending of the ice, which in several places formed deep bays.

The latitude, at noon of the 17th, was 69 deg. 55 min., and their longitude, 194 deg. 30 min. The wind slackened in the evening, and about midnight they had a calm.

A light breeze arising from the east-north-east, at five in the morning of the 18th, they continued their progress towards the north, with a view of regaining the ice as soon as possible; they saw a number of sea-parrots, and small ice birds, and also many whales; and passed several logs of drift-wood. The latitude, at twelve o'clock, was 70 deg. 26 min., and the longitude 194 deg. 54 min. The soundings, at the same time, were three-and-twenty fathoms, and the ice extended from north to east-north-east, being about one league distant.

The weather clearing up at one in the morning of the 19th, they bore away to the north-east till two o'clock, when they were again so completely embayed by the ice, that no opening remained, except to the southward; to which quarter they therefore directed their course, and returned through a very smooth water, with favourable weather, by the same way they had come in. The ships were never able to penetrate farther towards the north than at this time, when the latitude was 70 deg. 33 min., which was about five leagues short of the point to which they had advanced the preceding summer. They stood to the south-south-west, with light winds from the north-west, near the edge of the main body of ice, which was situated on the left hand, extending between the ships and the American coast. At noon the latitude was 70 deg. 11 min., and our longitude 196 deg. 15 min.; and the soundings were sixteen fathoms. It was supposed from this circumstance, that the Loy Cape was at the distance of only seven or eight leagues from them.

Two white bears appearing in the water during the afternoon, some of our people immediately pursued them in the jolly boat, and were so fortunate as to kill them both. The larger one, which was in all probability, the dam of the younger, being shot

which seemed to
larger one was, in
ence, about three

, with thick fog
ash from the west
, they immediatel
er view of the ice
from north-north
east: the exterior
the inner surface
to ten feet above
moderately during
course according to
aces formed deep

deg. 55 min., and
slackened in the

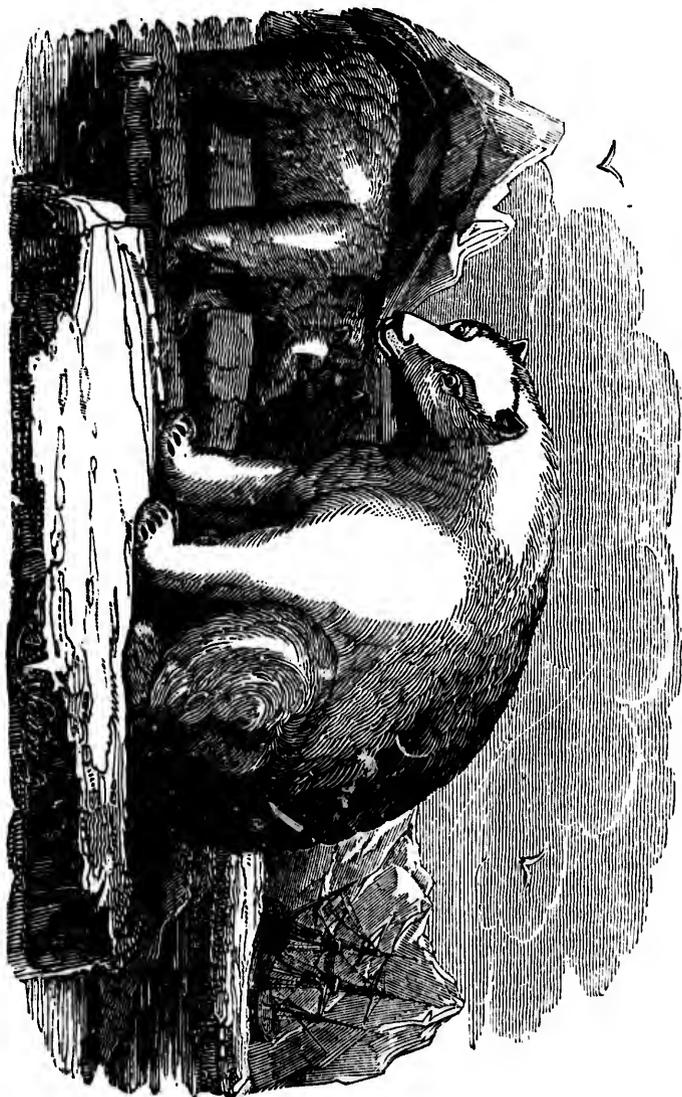
east, at five in the
progress towards the
as possible; they
ds, and also many

The latitude, at
longitude 194 deg.
, were three-and
orth to east-north

ning of the 19th,
k, when they were
no opening re-
quarter they there-
with a very smooth
y they had come
ther towards the
70 deg. 33 min.,
to which they had
d to the south-
st, near the edge
the left hand, ex-
st. At noon the
tude 196 deg. 15
s. It was sup-
e was at the dis-

g the afternoon,
n the jolly boat,
The larger one,
nger, being shot

copy of find



Faint, illegible text, possibly bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.

first, the
with eas
kets, bu
several t
larger or
two inch
ten inch
and the
of its fou
four-qua
pounds.
These
Their fle
superior
were aga
salted pr
On Tu
they lost
the weat
body to
which wa
coast to t
o'clock.
tude 194
nineteen
leagues,
west.
They c
ice, and
from eas
were two
The n
the fog c
to the s
hauled i
their fur
away to
twelve,
sounding
A com
a nearer
imagine
east pas
Capt
to the r
improb
by the
consider
sea ove

first, the other would not leave it, though it might have escaped with ease on the ice, while the men were re-loading their muskets, but continued swimming about, till, after having been several times fired upon, it was shot dead. The length of the larger one, from the snout to the end of the tail, was seven feet two inches; its circumference, near the fore legs, was four feet ten inches; the height of the shoulder was four feet three inches; and the breadth of the fore paw was ten inches. The weight of its four quarters was four hundred and thirty-six pounds. The four-quarters of the smallest weighed two hundred and fifty-six pounds.

These animals furnished some good meals of fresh meat. Their flesh, indeed had a strong fishy taste, but was infinitely superior to that of the sea-horse; which, however, our people were again persuaded, with no great difficulty, to prefer to their salted provisions.

On Tuesday the 20th; at six in the morning, a thick fog arising, they lost sight of the ice for the space of two hours; but when the weather became clearer, they again had a view of the main body to the south-south-east, and immediately hauled their wind, which was easterly, toward it, expecting to make the American coast to the south-east, which was effected between ten and eleven o'clock. The latitude at noon, was 69 deg. 33 min. and the longitude 194 deg. 53 min. The depth of water, at the same time, was nineteen fathoms. The land was at the distance of eight or ten leagues, extending from south by east to south-south-west half west.

They continued to sail in the afternoon through a sea of loose ice, and to steer towards the land, as near as the wind, which blew from east-south-east, would permit. The soundings, at midnight, were twenty fathoms.

The next morning, at eight o'clock, the wind freshening, and the fog dispersing, they again had sight of the coast of America to the south-eastward, at the distance of nine or ten leagues, and hauled in for it; but the ice in a short time effectually stopped their further progress on that side; and they were obliged to bear away towards the west, along the edge of it. Their latitude at twelve, was 69 deg. 34 min.; longitude 193 deg., and their soundings were twenty-four fathoms.

A connected solid field of ice, thus baffling all efforts to make a nearer approach to the land, and (as they had some reason to imagine) adhering to it, they relinquished all hopes of a north-east passage to Great Britain.

Captain Clerke now finding it impossible to advance farther to the northward on the American coast, and deeming it equally improbable that such a vast quantity of ice should be dissolved by the few remaining weeks that would terminate the summer, considered it as the best step that could be taken, to trace the sea over to the coast of Asia, and endeavour to find some open-

ing that would admit him further north, to see what more could be done upon that coast, where he hoped to meet with better success.

In the afternoon of Wednesday the 21st of July, they continued to steer through much ice to the west-north-west; but, about ten at night, they discovered through the fog the principal body of it, almost close a-head, and being unwilling to take a southerly course, if it could be avoided, they stood to the northward: in less than an hour, however, they were obliged to tack to the south-south-west, as they found themselves surrounded by a compact field of ice.

Captain Clerke had twice traversed this sea, since the 8th of this month, and that in lines almost parallel with the course he now steered; the first time he was unable to penetrate so far north as the second by eight leagues, and that this last time a compact body of ice had been observed commonly five leagues further south than before. This clearly proves that the vast and solid fields of ice which had been seen, were decreasing, or moveable, at the same time, it does not leave any well-founded expectation of advancing much farther in the most favourable seasons.

They steered westward, about seven in the evening, as no ice was then to be seen: but they soon afterwards found themselves close to the main body of it; they were subsequently necessitated to steer again to the eastward, and to keep plying to windward during the night, in order to avoid the loose pieces of ice, which often surrounded them in such quantities as to endanger their being blocked up by them.

Next morning Captain Clerke found the clear water, in which they were attempting to stand to and fro, did not exceed a mile and a half, and was speedily lessening; at half-past seven the Resolution forced a passage to the southward, which she accomplished with great difficulty. The Discovery was not, however, so fortunate, for about eleven o'clock, when she had almost got through, several large pieces of ice was driven so forcibly upon her, that she fell, with her broad-side foremost, upon the edge of a large body of ice, upon which she was driven very violently, having an open sea to windward. The mass having in a little time been somewhat moved or broken, she had just got free so far as to make an attempt to escape, when she again fell to leeward on another fragment. The swell on the sea at this time made it dangerous to lie to windward, they therefore pushed into a small opening, furled their sails, and made fast with ice-hooks, having no prospect of getting clear. Captain Clerke observed them thus critically situated about noon, standing to the north-west, about three miles from the Resolution, while the body of ice betwixt them was fast increasing by a south-easterly gale. At this time the Resolution had twenty-eight fathoms' water, longitude 187 deg. latitude 69 deg. 8 min. To add to the dismal apprehensions, the weather in a little time became so hazy

The ships having now passed Behring's Strait, and taken a final leave of the north-east coast of Asia, we will mention the grounds on which the voyagers oppose the opinions of Mr. Muller. First; that the easternmost point of that quarter of the globe is the promontory named East Cape; or, that no part of the continent extends in longitude beyond 190 deg. 22 min. east; and again, that the latitude of the north-eastern extremity falls to the southward of 70 deg. north. "As to the first, if such land exists, it must necessarily lie to the north of latitude 69 deg., where our present discoveries terminated; we will therefore, in the first place, endeavour to investigate the probable direction of the coast.

"The only navigators of these seas hitherto have been the Russians, consequently the charts and journals of those who have been from time to time employed in determining the limits of that empire, are our only directions as to the situations of the coast beyond Cape North; and, a proper notion of their pretended, much less their real discoveries, is very difficult to be formed from their confused accounts. Hence arises the disagreement of Russian geographers concerning the size and shape of the peninsula inhabited by the Tschutski. In Mr. Muller's map published in 1754, it is supposed to reach the 75th degree of latitude, and 190 deg. east longitude of Greenwich, and that it terminates in a round cape, named by him Tschukotskoi Noss. To the southward of this he conceives a bay is formed to the westward, the northernmost point of which is Serdze Kanen, in latitude 67 deg. 18 min. The whole peninsula is entirely differently formed again, in the map published in 1776, by the Petersburg Academy, who place it thus; the north-easternmost extremity, latitude 73 deg. longitude 178 deg. 30 min. The easternmost point, latitude 65 deg. 30 min., longitude 189 deg. 30 min. Any other maps we have seen vary from both these, probably more from conjecture than any solid reasons. In general, however, they agree in this, that the East Cape is situated in latitude 66 deg. No regard can be paid to the Academy map, as to the shape of the coast, either to the south or north of this cape. Mr. Muller's map in general coincides with our survey, so far as ours goes, only to the westward it does not tend enough; in the latitude of 66 deg. and 69 deg., it only recedes 5 deg. instead of 10 deg. at least. Between the latitude of 69 deg. and 74, he marks the coast as forming a considerable promontory, by bending round to the north and north-east. We shall now examine upon what authority.

"This subject has been much elucidated by Mr. Coxe, who is of opinion that none ever passed the point of the *Noss* in question but Deshneff and his party in 1648, who are said to have passed round it into the Anadir. In Mr. Coxe's Account of Russian Discoveries, the particulars of this navigation may be seen at large; but as it contains no geographical description of the coast accidental circumstances are the only direction for its situation,

from the
Captain
Deshneff
isthmus
wind.
leagues
deg. of
must ei
he says
sea, up
through
This ex
of the c
from be
site con
Tschuts
this des
"W
confirm
which a
from th
doubled
promon
passage
giving t
map; to
along s
stood th
to the o
cient fo
either s
took hi
the cap
opinion
"Be
for Mr
sack P
several
bute fi

* From
is certai
islands,
mention
Tschuts
He says
whose i
another
Likewis
half a de
serene
in a day
they sp

from these it is however very clear, that the promontory which Captain Cook named the East Cape, is Tschukotskoi Noss of Deshneff. Of this Noss, he says, 'One might sail from the isthmus to the river Anadir in three days and nights, with a fair wind.' Now as the East-Cape is about one hundred and twenty leagues from the mouth of the Anadir, and betwixt that and 6° deg. of latitude, there is no isthmus to the north, it is clear he must either mean the East Cape or one more southerly. Again he says, 'Over against the isthmus there are two islands in the sea, upon which were seen people of the Tschutski nation, through whose lips were run pieces of the teeth of the sea-horse.' This exactly corresponds with the two islands on the south-east of the cape. It is true, we saw no inhabitants; but it is far from being improbable that some of the Americans of the opposite continent, whom he might readily mistake for a tribe of the Tschutski, might accidentally be there; and it is noticeable, that this description exactly suits him.*

"We shall now mention some other proofs, which tend to confirm the point, though not so clearly as the preceding two, which appear to us conclusive. Deshneff elsewhere says, 'To go from the Kovyma to the Anadir, a great promontory must be doubled, which stretches very far into the sea.' Again, 'This promontory stretches between north and north-east.' In these passages we probably have Mr. Muller's principal authority for giving the country of the Tschutski the form he has done in his map; to invalidate which we may notice, that Deshneff is all along speaking of the same place, and had Mr. Muller understood the situation of East Cape, and its great similarity in shape to the other, he would not have considered these words a sufficient foundation for stretching the north-east extremity of Asia either so far north or east, as he has done. Indeed, if Deshneff took his bearings from the small bight, lying to the westward of the cape, his account is by no means contradictory to our opinion.

"Besides that just mentioned, we can think of no authority for Mr. Muller's opinion, if it be not the deposition of Cossack Popoff, taken in 1711, at the Anadirskoi *ostrog*. He with several other Cossacks, had been sent by land to demand a tribute from the independent Tschutskoi tribes living about the

* From the circumstance which gave name to Sledge Island, formerly mentioned, it is certain that the inhabitants of the continent occasionally visit the adjacent small islands, probably for fishing, or in search of furs. Popoff's deposition, which will be mentioned hereafter, gives a good reason for Deshneff supposing them to be of the Tschutski, from the great resemblance between them and the inhabitants of the Islands. He says, that, "Opposite to the Noss, is an island of moderate size, without trees, whose inhabitants resemble, in their exterior, the Tschutski, although they are quite another nation; not numerous indeed, yet speaking their own particular language." Likewise, in another place, "One may go in a baidare from the Noss to the island in half a day; beyond is a great continent, which can be discovered from the island in serene weather. When the weather is good, one may go from the island to the continent in a day. The inhabitants of the continent are similar to the Tschutski, excepting that they speak another language."

Noss. The first circumstance tending to throw light on the subject from this journey is its distance from Anadirsk; which, Popoff says, was ten weeks travelling, with loaded rein-deer, consequently their day's journey was but short; a very vague method of calculation, but our opinion will at least receive a negative support from it, when we mention that the distance is upwards of 200 leagues in a straight line, so that it is but a moderate allowance to give 15 miles a-day. The deposition then mentions their travelling by the foot of a rock called Matkol, situated at the bottom of a great gulf. This Muller supposes to be the bay he laid down between latitude 66 deg. and 72 deg., and accordingly places Matkol in the centre of it. But as they behoved to touch somewhere in the gulf of Anadir, this seems more probable, were there no other reasons to doubt the existence of Muller's gulf.

“But the part of Popoff's deposition quoted in the preceding note gives good ground to believe, that the cape visited by him cannot be to the northward of 69 deg. latitude; for, as at that latitude, the two continents are more than three hundred miles distant from each other, that the Asiatic coast should again tend so much to the eastward, as to be within sight, is a ridiculous supposition.

“It is needless to enter further into the arguments on this subject, further than barely mentioning, that Mr. King is decidedly of opinion that the Tschukotskoi Noss, not only of Deshneff, but all the more early Russian navigators, is the East Cape: and that the Asiatic coast no where exceeds 70 deg. northern latitude, before it tends to the westward; and consequently that we were within 1 deg. of its north-eastern extremity.

“It is highly probable, that a north-west passage from the Atlantic into the Pacific Ocean does not exist to the southward of the sixty-fifth degree of latitude. If, therefore, a passage really exists, it must certainly be either through Baffin's bay, or by the north of Greenland, in the western hemisphere; or in the eastern, through the Frozen Sea, to the north of Siberia; and on whichever side it is situated, the navigator must pass through the straits distinguished by the name of Behring's Straits. The impracticability of penetrating into the Atlantic Ocean on either side, through these straits, is therefore all that now remains to be offered to the reader's consideration.

“The sea to the northward of Behring's Straits, was found by us to be more free from ice in August than in July, and perhaps in some part of September it may be still more clear of it. But, after the autumnal equinox, the length of the day diminishes so fast, that no further thaw can be expected; and we cannot reasonably attribute so great an effect to the warm weather in the first fortnight in the month of September, as to imagine it capable of dispersing the ice from the most northern

parts
possib
absur
know
and si
be sup

“T
succes
the st
wise f
lieuten
Shalau

“T
of Asi
its trut
of tha
which,
been
expect
But ev
able se
of Sibe
there
eighth
the god

“So
believi
sea is r
lower
of Sibe
intern
be tru
those
solved
through
prope
which
May,
may h
Petro
be ex
had
tinen
and t
that
from
brea
other
“

parts of the coast of America. Admitting this, however, to be possible, it must at least be allowed, that it would be highly absurd to attempt to avoid the Icy Cape, by running to the known parts of Baffin's Bay, (a distance of about twelve hundred and sixty miles) in so short a space of time as that passage can be supposed to remain open.

“There appears, on the side of Asia, still less probability of success, not only from what came to our knowledge, relative to the state of the sea to the southward of Cape North, but likewise from what we have gathered from the experience of the lieutenants under the direction of Behring, and the journal of Shalauroff, respecting that on the north of Siberia.

“The possibility of sailing round the north-eastern extremity of Asia, is undoubtedly proved by the voyage of Deshneff, if its truth be admitted; but when we reflect, that, since the time of that navigator, near a century and a half has elapsed, during which, in an age of curiosity and enterprise, no person has yet been able to follow him, we can entertain no very sanguine expectations of public benefits which can be derived from it. But even on the supposition, that in some remarkably favourable season, a vessel might find a clear passage round the coast of Siberia, and arrive in safety at the mouth of the Lena, still there remains the Cape of Taimura, extending to the seventy-eighth degree of latitude, which no navigator has hitherto had the good fortune to double.

“Some, however, contend, that there are strong reasons for believing, that the nearer approach we make to the pole, the sea is more clear of ice; and that all the ice we observed in the lower latitudes, had originally been formed in the great rivers of Siberia and America, from the breaking up of which the intermediate sea had been filled. But even if that supposition be true, it is no less certain that there can be no access to those open seas, unless this prodigious mass of ice is so far dissolved in the summer, as to admit of a ship's making its way through it. If this be the real fact, we made choice of an improper time of the year for attempting to discover this passage, which should have been explored in the months of April and May, before the rivers were broken up. But several reasons may be alleged against such supposition. Our experience at Petropaulowska gave us an opportunity of judging what might be expected further northward; and, upon that ground, we had some reason to entertain a doubt, whether the two continents might not, during the winter, be even joined by the ice; and this coincided with the accounts we heard in Kamtschatka, that on the coast of Siberia, the inhabitants, in winter, go out from the shore upon the ice, to distances that exceed the breadth of the sea in some parts, from one continent to the other.

“The following remarkable particular is mentioned in the

deposition above referred to. Speaking of the land seen from the Tschakotskoi Noss, it is said, that during the summer they sail in one day to the land in *baidares*, a kind of a vessel formed of whalebone, and covered with the skins of seals; and, in the winter, as they go swift with rein-deer, the journey may also be performed in a day. A satisfactory proof, that the two countries were generally connected by the ice.

“Muller's account of one of the expeditions undertaken for the purpose of discovering a supposed island in the Frozen Ocean, is still more remarkable. His narrative is to the following purport:—In 1714, a new expedition was prepared from Jakutsk, under the conduct of Alexei Markoff, who was to set sail from the mouth of the Jana; and if the Schitiki were not well adapted for sea voyages, he was to build, at a convenient place, proper vessels for prosecuting the discoveries without any great risk. Upon his arrival at Ust-janskoe Simovie, the port where he was to embark, he dispatched an account, dated the 2nd of February, 1715, to the Chancery of Jakutsk, intimating that it was impracticable to navigate the sea, as it was continually frozen both in winter and summer; and that, consequently, the expedition could only be prosecuted with sledges drawn by dogs. He accordingly set out in this manner, accompanied by nine persons, the 10th of March, in the same year, and returned to Ust-janskoe Simovie on the 3rd of the succeeding month. The account of his journey is as follows:—That, for the space of seven days, he travelled with as much expedition as his dogs could draw; (which, in good tracks, and favourable weather, is from eighty to a hundred wersts a day), directly to the northward, upon the ice, without observing any island; that he was prevented from proceeding any further, by the ice, which rose like mountains in that part of the sea; that he had ascended some of the hills of ice, whence he could see to a great distance around him, but could discern no land: and that, at length, provisions for his dogs being deficient, many of them died, which reduced him to the necessity of returning.

Besides the arguments already mentioned, which proceed upon an admission of the hypothesis, that the ice in this ocean comes from the rivers, others may be adduced, which afford good reason for suspecting the truth of the hypothesis itself. Captain Cook, whose opinion with regard to the formation of the ice, had originally coincided with that of the theorists, we are now endeavouring to confute, found sufficient grounds, in the present voyage, for changing his sentiments. We observed that the coasts of both continents were low, that the depth of water gradually decreased towards them, and that a striking resemblance prevailed between the two; from which circumstances, as well as from the description given by Mr. Hearne of the copper mine river, we have room for conjecturing, that

what
Ocea
with
at th
magn
of the
that i

“A
to ou
the op
forma
about
Behri
explai
neigh
trate
the o
efforts
moreo
and v
vicini
on th
made
questi
satisfa
prove

To
on the
noon,
light
when
min.;
west-
land t

On
the sa
to so
the a
was
soun

O
deg.
after
fath
the
occu
then
inter
O

whatever rivers may discharge themselves into the Frozen Ocean, from the continent of America, are of a similar nature with those on the Asiatic side; which are said to be so shallow at their entrance, as to admit only vessels of inconsiderable magnitude; whereas, the ice seen by us, rises above the level of the sea, to a height that equals the depth of those rivers; so that its entire altitude must be, at least, ten times greater.

“Another circumstance will naturally offer itself, in this place, to our consideration, which seems to be very incompatible with the opinion of those who suppose that land is necessary for the formation of the ice; we mean the different state of the sea about Spitsbergen, and of that which is to the northward of Behring's Straits. It is incumbent on those philosophers to explain how it happens, that in the former quarter, and in the neighbourhood of much known land, navigators annually penetrate to near eighty degrees of northern latitude; whereas, on the other side, no voyager has been able, with his utmost efforts, to proceed beyond the seventy-first degree; where, moreover, the continent diverge nearly in the direction of east and west, where there is no land yet known to exist in the vicinity of the pole. For the further satisfaction of our readers on this subject, we refer them to Dr. Forster's ‘Observations made in a Voyage round the World,’ where they will find the question of the formations of the ice discussed in a full and satisfactory manner, and the probability of open polar seas, disproved by many forcible arguments.”

To resume the narrative of the voyage, which was broken off on the 31st of July; on which day the ships had proceeded, at noon, eighteen leagues to the southward of the East Cape: had light airs from the south-west till the first of August, at noon, when the latitude was 64 deg. 23 min., and longitude 189 deg. 15 min.; the Asiatic coast extending from north-west-by-west, to west-half-south, at the distance of about twelve leagues, and the land to the eastward of St. Laurence bearing south-half-west.

On Monday the 2nd, the weather becoming clear, perceived the same land, at noon, extending from west-south-west-half-west to south-east, and forming many elevated hummocks, which bore the appearance of separate islands. The latitude at this time, was 64 deg. 3 min., the longitude 189 deg. 28 min., and the soundings were seventeen fathoms.

On Saturday the 7th, at twelve o'clock, the latitude was 59 deg. 38 min., and the longitude 183 deg.: they had a calm in the afternoon, and caught a great number of cod, in seventy-eight fathoms' water. From this period to the 17th, they were making the best of their way to the south, without any remarkable occurrence, except that the wind blowing from the west forced them farther to the eastward than was wished, as it was their intention to make Behring's Island.

On Thursday the 17th, between four and five in the morning,

descried land to the north-west, which they could not approach, as the wind blew from that quarter. At mid-day, the latitude was 53 deg. 40 min., and the longitude 168 deg. 5 min. The land in view bore north-by-west, at the distance of twelve or fourteen leagues. This land was imagined to be the island of Mednoi, which is placed in the Russian charts to the south-east of Behring's Island. It is elevated land, and was at that time apparently free from snow. They reckoned it to be in the latitude of 54 deg. 28 min., and the longitude of 167 deg. 52 min. They did not strike ground with one hundred and fifty fathoms of line.

Captain Clerke being now no longer able to get out of his bed, signified his desire, that the officers would receive their orders from Mr. King; and directed that they should repair, with all convenient speed, to the bay of Awatska. The wind continuing westerly, they steered a southerly course till early in the morning of the 19th; when, after a rain of a few hours continuance, it blew from the east, and increased to a strong gale. They made the most of it while it lasted, by standing towards the west, under all the sail they could carry. The next day the wind varying to the south-west, they steered a west-north-west course. The latitude, at noon, was 53 deg. 7 min., and the longitude 162 deg. 49 min. On the 21st, between five and six in the morning, they perceived a very lofty peaked mountain on the coast of Kamtschatka, known by the name of Cheepoonskoi Mountain, bearing north-west-by-north, at the distance of between twenty-five and thirty leagues. At noon, the coast was observed to extend from north-by-east to west, with a very great haziness upon it; and it was about twelve leagues distant. They had light airs during the remainder of this, as well as the following day, and found no ground with one hundred and forty fathoms of line.

At nine o'clock in the morning, on Sunday the 22nd of August, Captain Charles Clerke expired in the thirty-eighth year of his age. His death was occasioned by a consumption, which had evidently commenced before his departure from England, and of which he had lingered during the whole continuance of the voyage. His very gradual decay had for a long time rendered him a melancholy object to his friends; but the firmness and equanimity with which he bore it, the constant flow of good spirits which he retained even to the last hour, and a cheerful resignation to his fate, afforded them some consolation. It was impossible not to feel a more than common degree of compassion for a person who had experienced a series of those difficulties and hardships, to which a seaman's occupation is subject, and under which he at last sunk. He was brought up to the navy from his youth, and had been in many engagements during the war which begun in the year 1756. In the action between the *Bellona* and the *Courageux*, he was stationed in the mizen-

top,
ward
was
mod
after
his s
mate
to a
round
after
and c
capta
the c
alread
It v
tude
exped
when
began
count
his m
of his
delay
the o
duty,
bias h
perse
exped
and t
hazar
Cap
him v
from
exert
cover
possi
52 d
Chee
light
bree
of A
bear
the
thre
perf
sent
On
ebb
V

top, and was carried overboard with the mast, but was afterwards taken up, without having received the least injury. He was midshipman on board the *Dolphin*, commanded by Commodore Byron, when he first sailed round the world; and was afterwards on the American station. In the year 1768, he made his second voyage round the world, in the situation of master's mate in the *Endeavour*; and, during the expedition succeeded to a lieutenancy. In the *Resolution* he made a third voyage round the world, in the capacity of second lieutenant: and soon after his return in 1755, he was promoted to the rank of master and commander. In the present expedition he was appointed captain of the *Discovery*, and to accompany Captain Cook. By the calamitous death of the latter, he succeeded, as has been already mentioned, to the chief command.

It would be doing his memory extreme injustice and ingratitude not to say, that during the short time he commanded the expedition, he was most zealous for its success. About the time when the principal command devolved upon him, his health began rapidly to decline; and was every way unequal to encounter the rigour of a high northern climate. The vigour of his mind, however, was not in the least impaired by the decay of his body: and though he was perfectly sensible that his delaying to return to a warmer climate, was depriving him of the only chance of recovery; yet, so attentive was he to his duty, that he was determined not to suffer his own situation to bias his judgment to the prejudice of the service; he, therefore, persevered in the search of a passage, till every officer in the expedition declared they were of opinion it was impracticable, and that any further attempts would not only be fruitless but hazardous.

Captain King sent a messenger to Captain Gore, to acquaint him with the death of Captain Clerke, and received a letter from Captain Gore, containing an order for Captain King to exert his utmost endeavours to keep in company with the *Discovery*, and, if a separation should happen, to repair, as soon as possible, to St. Peter and St. Paul. Their latitude at noon was 53 deg. 8 min. north, and longitude 160 deg. 40 min. east; Cheepoonskoi Noss then bearing west. In the afternoon had light airs, which continued till noon on the 23rd; when a fresh breeze springing up from the east, they steered for the entrance of Awatska Bay, which they saw about six in the evening, bearing west-north-west, distant about five leagues. At eight, the light-house, which now furnished a good light, was about three miles distant, and bore north-west-by-west. It was now a perfect calm; but as the tide was favourable, the boats were sent a-head, and towed beyond the narrow parts of the entrance. On the 24th, at one in the morning, they dropped anchor, the ebb-tide then setting against them.

Weighed about nine o'clock, and went up the bay with light

airs, which being afterwards succeeded by a fresh breeze, the Resolution anchored before three in the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul; with the ensign half staff, on account of carrying the body of their late captain, and were soon after followed by the Discovery.

They had no sooner anchored, than they were visited by their old friend the sergeant, (still the commanding officer of the place) who brought with him a present of berries, intended for Captain Clerke. He was much affected when told of his death, and when shewed the coffin wherein his body was deposited. As the deceased captain particularly requested to be buried on-shore, and gave the preference to the church at Paratounca, they embraced this opportunity of consulting with the sergeant about the necessary steps to be pursued upon the occasion.

After much conversation on this subject, which was very imperfectly carried on, for want of an interpreter, they gathered intelligence that De L'Isle, and some other Russian gentlemen, who had died there, were buried near the barracks, at the *ostrog* of St. Peter and St. Paul, and that this place would certainly be more eligible than Paratounca, as the church was shortly to be removed thither. They therefore determined to wait the arrival of the priest of Paratounca, who was immediately to be sent for, as being the person best qualified to give any information required on the subject.

It was a general remark, that, though the face of the country had improved in its appearance since the ships had left it, the Russians looked even worse now than they did then.

On the 25th of August, in the morning, Captain Gore, in consequence of the death of Captain Clerke, made out the new commissions. He appointed himself to the command of the Resolution, and Mr. King to that of the Discovery. Mr. Lanyon, who was master's mate of the Resolution, and who had been in that capacity in the former voyage, on-board the Adventure, was appointed to the vacant lieutenantancy. The following arrangements were the consequence of these promotions. Lieutenants Burney and Rickman (from the Discovery) were appointed first and second lieutenants of the Resolution; and Lieutenant Williamson first lieutenant of the Discovery. Captain King, by the permission of Captain Gore, took in four midshipmen, who had rendered themselves useful to him in the astronomical calculations; and whose assistance was become the more necessary, as they had no ephemeris for the present year. And that astronomical observations might not be neglected to be made in either ship, Mr. Bayly took Captain King's place in the Resolution.

On the same day their ships were visited by the worthy priest of Paratounca. His expressions of sorrow at the death of Captain Clerke did honour to his feelings. He confirmed what the sergeant had related, with respect to the intended removal of the

church, and assured them that the timber was actually preparing, but submitted the choice of either place entirely to Captain Gore.

As the Discovery had suffered great injury from the ice, especially on the 23rd of July, and had continued exceedingly leaky ever since, it was apprehended that some of her timbers might have started; the carpenters of the Resolution was therefore sent to assist those of the Discovery in repairing her, and they accordingly began to rip the damaged sheathing from the larboard bow. It was discovered by this operation, that three feet of the third strake were staved, and the timbers started. To accommodate those who were to be employed on-shore, a tent was erected, and a party was sent into the country, north of the harbour, to fell timber. The observatories were placed at the west end of the village, near which was erected a tent, as an abode for the Captains Gore and King.

As they proceeded to remove the sheathing, the decayed state of the ship's hull became more and more apparent. Eight feet of the plank in the wale were so exceedingly rotten, that they were obliged to shift it the next morning; and nothing could be found to replace it in either ship, without cutting up a top-mast, which ought to be the last expedient to have recourse to. In the afternoon the carpenters were dispatched in search of a tree of a proper size for the purpose. Fortunately they discovered a birch, which was probably the only one of sufficient magnitude in the whole neighbourhood of the bay, and which they had sawed down when last here; consequently it had the advantage of being a little seasoned. This was prepared on the spot, and taken on-board the Discovery the next morning.

The season being now far advanced, Captain King was unwilling that any hinderance or delay should happen through him to Captain Gore's further views of discovery, and therefore ordered the carpenters to rip off no more of the sheathing than should be found absolutely necessary for repairing the damages occasioned by the ice. He was apprehensive of their meeting with more decayed planks, which he thought had better remain in that state, than have their places supplied with green birch, even supposing it could be procured.

All hands were now fully employed in their several departments, that they might be perfectly ready for sea by the time the carpenters had completed their business. Four men were set apart to haul the seine for salmon, which were caught in immense quantities, and were of a most excellent quality. After the wants of both ships were sufficiently supplied, they daily salted down almost a hogshead. Four invalids were employed gathering greens, and cooking for those who were on-shore. The powder was also landed, in order to be dried; and the sea-horse blubber, with which both ships, in their passage to the north had stored themselves, was now boiled down for oil,

which was now become a necessary article, the candles having long since been expended. The cooper was fully engaged in his department; and in this manner were both ships' companies employed in their several occupations, till Saturday afternoon, which was given up to all the men, except the carpenters, for the purpose of washing their linen, and getting their clothes in some little order, that they might make a decent appearance on Sunday.

On Sunday the 29th, in the afternoon, were performed the last sad offices to Captain Clerke. The officers and crews of the two vessels attended him in procession to the grave; the ships at the same time, firing minute guns; and at the conclusion of the service, three vollies were fired by the marines. The body was interred under a tree which stands on a little eminence in the valley north of the harbour, where the store-houses and hospital are situated; this being, Captain Gore supposed, such a situation as was most consonant to the wishes of the deceased. The priest of Paratounga recommended this spot, imagining it would be very near the centre of the new church. This worthy pastor joined the procession, walking with the gentleman who read the service. All the Russians in the garrison assembled on the occasion, and respectfully assisted in the solemnity.

On Monday the 30th, the several parties reassumed their respective employments, and on the 2nd of September the carpenters proceeded to rip off such of the sheathing as had been injured by the ice, from the starboard side; having first shifted the damaged planks, and repaired and caulked the sheathing of the larboard bow, four feet of a plank were discovered in the third strake under the wale, so much shaken as to require to be replaced; which was accordingly done, and on the 3rd the sheathing was repaired.

On the 5th of September, all the parties that were on-shore returned to the ship, and were employed in scrubbing her bottom, and getting in some shingle ballast. Two of the guns, which had been stowed in the fore-hold, we now got up, and mounted on the deck. On the 8th, the Resolution hauled on shore, in order to repair some damages she had received from the ice, in her cut water.

About this time our men began to make a strong decoction from a species of dwarf pine, which is very plentiful in the country, judging it would hereafter be useful in making beer, and that they might perhaps be able to procure sugar, or a substitute for it, to ferment with it, at Canton. They knew it would be an admirable medicine for the scurvy, and therefore were particularly desirous of procuring a considerable supply; as most of the preventives with which they had furnished themselves, were either consumed, or had lost their efficacy through long keeping. When they had prepared about a hogshead of it, the ship's copper was found to be remarkably thin, and that, in many places, it was

even cracked. This obliged them to desist, and orders were given that, for the future, it should be used as sparingly as possible.

On Friday the 10th, the boats from both the ships were ordered to tow a Russian galliot into the harbour, which had just arrived from Okotsk. She had been no less than thirty-five days on her passage, and, from the light house, had been observed a fortnight before, beating up towards the mouth of the bay. The crew had, at that time, dispatched their only boat on shore, in order to procure water, which they were much in need of; but, the wind increasing, the boat was lost; the galliot was again driven to sea, and those on-board suffered inconceivable hardships.

On-board the galliot there were fifty soldiers, their wives, and children; they had also several passengers, and their crew consisted of twenty-five; making in the whole upwards of a hundred persons: which, for a vessel of eighty tons, was a great number, especially as she was heavily laden with stores and provisions. This galliot, and the sloop which they saw here in May, are built in the manner of the Dutch doggers.

Soon after the vessel had come to anchor, the ships were visited by a *Pat-parouchick*, or sub-lieutenant, who arrived in her, and who was sent to take the command of this place. Some of the soldiers, were intended to reinforce the garrison; and two pieces of cannon were brought on shore to serve as an additional defence to the town. From these circumstances, it is pretty apparent that the Russian commanders in Siberia had, from our visiting this place, been induced to attend to the helpless situation of it; and the honest sergeant shrewdly observed, that as our men had found the way thither, others might do the same, who might not be made so welcome as they were.

Having repaired the damages which the *Resolution* had suffered by the ice, she hauled off from the shore the next morning; and, in the course of that day, they got some pitch, tar, cordage, and twine, from the galliot. Their scanty store rendered them unable to supply them with canvass, and they could not comply with an application for that article. She furnished, however, a hundred and forty skins of flour, amounting to 13,782 English pounds.

Sunday, the 12th, was a day of rest; but, as the weather continued foul, the men could not employ themselves in gathering berries which grew in such vast quantities about the coast, or amuse themselves by any other pastime on shore. Ensign Synd left this day to return to Bolcheretsk, with the remainder of the soldiers who had arrived in the galliot. While he remained here, he had been a constant guest; and, on his father's account, our voyagers thought him in some degree belonging to them; and, as one of the family of discoverers, entitled to a share in their esteem.

The sergeant, as being commander of the place, had hitherto been admitted to their tables; and his company was additionally

welcome, because he was sensible and quick in his conceptions, and comprehended, better than any other person, the few Russian words that our officers had acquired. Whilst Ensign Synd remained he very politely suffered our men to enjoy the same privileges; but when the new commander arrived from Okotsk, the sergeant fell into disgrace, and was not permitted to sit in the company of his own officers.

On the 15th, they had completed the stowage of the holds, got wood and water on-board, and were ready for sea at a day's notice. But they could not think of taking their departure, because cattle were not yet arrived from Verchnei; and fresh provisions were now become the most important article of their wants, and essentially necessary for preserving the health of our people. As there was a prospect of fine weather, this was considered as a favourable opportunity of engaging in some amusement on shore, and acquiring some little knowledge of the country. A party of bear-hunting was therefore proposed by Captain Gore, and the proposal was readily acceded to.

On Friday, the 17th, they set out on this expedition, which was deferred till that day, in order to give a little rest to the Hospodin Ivaskin, a new acquaintance who had arrived here on Wednesday, and who was to be of the party. Major Eehm had desired this gentleman, who usually resided at Verchnei, to attend the ships on their return to the harbour, and assist as an interpreter; and, from what was heard of him before his arrival, curiosity to see him was much excited.

He is allied to a considerable family in Russia, and his father was a general in the service of the empress. He received his education partly in Germany, and partly in France; he had been page to the empress Elizabeth, and bore an ensign's commission in her guards. At sixteen years of age he was *knouted*, had his nose slit, and was banished to Siberia. He was afterwards transported to Kamtschatka, and had then resided there thirty-one years. His person was tall and thin, and his visage furrowed with deep wrinkles. Old age was strongly depicted in his whole figure, though he had hardly entered his fifty-fourth year.

Great was their disappointment when they discovered that he had so totally forgot the French and German languages as not to be able to speak a single sentence, nor readily to comprehend any thing that was said to him in either of those languages.

The cause of his banishment remained a secret to every one in this country, but it was generally supposed he had been guilty of some atrocious offence; especially as several of the commanders of Kamtschatka have exerted their interests to get him recalled in the reign of the present empress; but they were not able to obtain a change of his place of banishment. He assured them, that, for twenty years, he had not tasted a morsel of bread, nor had been allowed any kind of subsistence; but had lived all that time, with the Kamtschadales, on what he had

procured from the chase by his own activity and toil. Afterwards a small pension was allowed him, and his situation has been rendered much less intolerable since Major Behm was appointed to the command. Being taken notice of by so respectable a character, who often invited him to become his guest, others were induced to follow his example. The Major had also occasioned his pension to be increased to a hundred roubles a-year, which is an ensign's pay in every other part of the empress's dominions; but in this province all the officers have double pay. Major Behm said, he had obtained permission for him to go to Okotsk, where he was to reside in future; but that, at present, he should leave him behind, as he might probably be useful as an interpreter on their return to the bay.

Orders having been given to the first lieutenants of both ships, that the rigging should be repaired as far as the late supply of stores would permit, the officers proceeded on their hunting party, conducted by the corporal of the Kamtschadales; but, previous to looking out for game, they proceeded to the head of Behm's harbour, which is an inlet on the west side of the bay. This having been a favourite place of Major Behm's, our officers named it after that officer, though, by the natives, it is called Tareinska.

As they advanced towards this harbour, they saw the *Toion* of St. Peter and St. Paul in a canoe, having with him his wife and two children, and another inhabitant of Kamtschatka. He had just killed two seals on an island in the entrance of the harbour, and was returning home with them, as well as with a large quantity of berries which he had gathered. The wind having veered to the south-west, in pursuance of his advice, they now changed their route, and instead of proceeding up the harbour, took a northerly course, towards a pool of water, at a small distance from the mouth of the river Paratounca, which was much frequented by the bears.

The next day, being governed by the opinion of the guides, they proceeded to the head of Rakoweena harbour, where they secured the boats, and afterwards went on foot with all their baggage.

Having walked about five or six miles, they arrived at the sea side, three miles north of the light-house head. From hence a continued narrow border of level ground, adjoining to the sea, extended itself towards Cheepoonskoi Noss as far as could be seen. It is entirely covered with heath, and produces berries in great abundance, especially those which are called crow and partridge berries.

They were told that there was almost a certainty of finding a number of bears feeding upon these berries, but as the weather was showery, it was unfavourable. Accordingly, they pursued their course along the plain, and though several bears were seen at a distance, they could not by any means get within shot

of them. This diversion was therefore changed to that of spearing salmon; which they saw in throngs driving through the surf, into a small river. Here they could not help remarking the inferiority of the Kamtschadales, at this kind of fishing, to the natives of Oonalashka; neither were their instruments, though pointed with iron, near so well adapted to the purpose, nor fabricated with that neatness which those of the Americans were, though pointed only with bone. On asking the cause of this inferiority, they were informed by the corporal, who had long resided amongst the Americans, that formerly the natives of Kamtschatka used such darts and spears as those of the Americans, and, like theirs, headed and barbed with bone, and were, as dexterous as the latter in the management of them.

The Kamtschadales, who attended our party, at length discovered that their not meeting with game was occasioned by going in too large a party, and by the unavoidable noise that was the natural consequence of it. This judicious remark induced them to separate; Captain King, Ivaskin, and the corporal, forming one party, and the other consisting of Captain Gore and the rest of the company. They passed the night under the tent, and on the morning of the 19th, set out by different routes, in order to take a kind of circuit round the country, and meet at St. Peter and St. Paul.

At night both parties reached the ships, after having been full twelve hours upon their legs.

The next day (Monday the 20th) they received the disagreeable intelligence, that their friend the sergeant, had suffered corporal punishment, which had been inflicted on him by command of the old *Put-parouchick*. No one could learn the cause of his displeasure; but it was supposed to have arisen from some little jealousy, which had been excited by the civility of our people to the former. Imagining, however, that the offence, whatever it might be, could not merit a chastisement so disgraceful, our officers consulted the worthy Major Böhm, who was likewise the sergeant's friend, how they could render him some service for the excellent order he had preserved in the *ostrog* during their stay, and for his extreme readiness to oblige them upon every occasion that presented itself. The Major said a letter of recommendation to the governor-general would probably have a good effect; Captain Clerke, accordingly had given him one, which, together with his own representations, he fully expected would get the sergeant advanced in his profession.

On Wednesday, the 22nd of September, being the anniversary of the coronation of George III. they fired twenty-one guns; and, in honour of the day, prepared as elegant a feast as their situation would allow of. The arrival of Captain Shmaleff was announced the very moment they were sitting down to dinner, and they were equally pleased and surprised at this

int
sha
late
der
hea
the
of
out
but
sail
jou
pov
H
rece
dow
vent
dem
and
on-b
were
gold
the
Bolc
N
some
the s
tour
utsk
state
havi
mve
not
tiser
E
offic
hab
dier
bot
com
por
for
cla
ab
sib
the
ho
off
the

intelligence. First, because he came so opportunely to take a share in the festivity of the day; and, in the next place, having lately been informed that the effects of a severe illness had rendered him unequal to the journey, they had the satisfaction to hear that this had been merely an excuse; that, knowing they then were distressed for tea, sugar, &c. he was hurt at the idea of coming empty-handed, and therefore had deferred his setting out, impatiently waiting for the arrival of a sloop from Okotsk; but hearing no intelligence of her, and fearing our ships should sail before he had visited them, he was resolved to prosecute the journey, though he had nothing to present but apologies for the poverty of Bolcheretsk.

He said, at the same time, that the reason of their not having received the black cattle which they had requested to be sent down, was, that the heavy rains at Verchnei had actually prevented their setting out. So much politeness and generosity demanded the best answer our officers were capable of making, and, he was, the next day, saluted with eleven guns on coming on-board the *Resolution*; samples and specimens of curiosities were then presented to him, to which Captain Gore added a gold watch and a fowling-piece. He was entertained on board the *Discovery* the next day, and on the 25th he returned to Bolcheretsk.

No entreaties could prevail on him to extend his visit, having some expectations that the sub-governor-general would arrive in the sloop which he expected from Okotsk, as he was then on a tour through all the provinces of the governor-general of Jakutsk. Without any application from Captain Gore, he reinstated the sergeant in his command, before his departure, having resolved to take the *Put-parouchick* with him. He was much offended with him for punishing the sergeant, as there did not appear to be the slightest grounds for inflicting such chastisement.

Encouraged by the captain's great readiness to oblige, the officers ventured to request a small favour for another inhabitant of Kamtschatka. It was to requite an honest old soldier, who kept a kind of an open house for the inferior officers, both for them and the whole crew. The captain obligingly complied with their wishes, and dubbed him instantly a corporal; telling him at the same time, to thank the English officers for his very great promotion.

It may not here be unnecessary to remark, that the lower class of officers in the Russian army have a greater pre-eminence above the private men than those in the British service can possibly conceive. It was, indeed, a matter of astonishment to them, to see a sergeant assume all the state, and exact as much homage from those beneath him, as though he had been a field-officer. Besides, there are several gradations of rank amongst them, of which other countries are wholly ignorant, there being

no less than four intermediate steps between a sergeant and private soldier; and many considerable advantages may probably arise from this system. Subordinate ranks in the sea-service are known to produce the most salutary effects; by creating emulation, and officers of superior rank are thereby enabled to bestow an adequate reward on almost every possible degree of merit.

The discipline of the Russian army, though so extremely remote from the seat of government, is remarkable for its strictness and severity, not exempting even the commissioned officers. Imprisonment and bread and water diet, is the punishment of the latter for inconsiderable offences. A good friend who was an ensign in this place, informed our officers, that the punishment he received for having been concerned in a drunken frolic, was three months' imprisonment in the black-hole, with bread and water only for his subsistence; which so affected his whole nervous system, that he has never since enjoyed a sufficient flow of spirits to qualify him for a convivial meeting.

Captain King attended Captain Shmaleff as far as the entrance of Awatska river, and having taken leave of him, embraced that opportunity of visiting the priest of Paratounca. He attended him to church on the 26th, when his whole congregation consisted of his own family, three men, and the same number of boys, who assisted in the singing, and the whole of the service was performed with great solemnity and devotion.

Though the church is built of wood, it is much superior to any building either in this town, or in that of St. Peter and St. Paul. Among the several paintings with which it is ornamented, are two pictures of St. Peter and St. Paul, which were presented by Behring, and which might vie with the first European performances in the intrinsic riches of its drapery, the principal parts of it being composed of thick plates of solid silver, so fastened as to imitate the foldings of the robes which decorate the figures, and fixed upon the canvass.

Another hunting party was set on foot the next day, when Captain King submitted himself to the direction of the parish-clerk, who had acquired great reputation as a bear hunter. About sun-set they arrived at one of the larger lakes, where it was deemed necessary to conceal themselves as much as possible: this was easily effected among some long grass and brush wood, of which there was great plenty near the water's edge. They had not been long in this situation, before their ears were agreeably saluted with the growling of bears, in almost every quarter round about them; and they soon had the pleasure of beholding one of them in the water, swimming in a direct course to where they lay concealed. At this time the moon shone, so as to afford a considerable light; and, as the animal advanced towards them, three fired at it, almost at the same instant. Immediately the beast turned short upon one side; and

set up a most horrible noise, which was neither yelling, growling, nor roaring, but a very extraordinary mixture of the whole three.

It could easily be perceived that the animal was severely wounded, and that it reached the bank with difficulty; whence it retreated to some thick bushes not far distant, still continuing to make a dreadful noise. The Kamtschadales supposed it to be mortally wounded, and that it could proceed no further, judged it an act of imprudence to attempt to rouse it again immediately. It was then after nine o'clock, and as the night became overcast, and a change of weather was to be apprehended, they thought it advisable to return home, and wait till morning for the gratification of their curiosity; when they accordingly repaired to the spot, and found the bear dead from the wounds it had received. It was a female, and larger than the ordinary size.

In hunting the natives generally contrive to reach the ground frequented by the bears, about sun-set. Their first business, when they arrive there, is to look out for their tracks, and to attend particularly to the freshest of them; always paying a regard to the situation with respect to concealment, and taking aim at the animal as it passes by, or as it advances or goes from them. These tracks are numerous between the woods and the lakes, and are often found among the long sedgy grass and brakes on the margin of the water. Having determined upon a convenient spot for concealment, the hunters fix their crutches on the ground, in which they rest their firelocks, pointing them in a proper direction. They afterwards kneel or lie down, as the circumstances of their situation may require; and having their bear-spears in readiness by their side, wait the arrival of their game.

These precautions are extremely necessary, on many accounts, that the hunters may make sure of their mark; for the price of ammunition is so high at Kamtschatka, that the value of a bear will not purchase more of it than will load a musket four or five times. It is much more material, on another consideration, for, if the first shot should not render the animal incapable of pursuit, fatal consequences too frequently ensue. The enraged beast makes immediately towards the place from whence the sound and smoke issue, and furiously attacks his adversaries. They have not sufficient time to reload their pieces, as the bear is seldom fired at till he comes within the distance of fifteen yards; therefore, if he should not happen to fall, they immediately prepare to receive him on their spears, their safety depending, in a great measure, on their giving him a mortal stab as he advances towards them. Should he parry the thrust, (which these animals are sometimes enabled to do by the strength and agility of their paws) and break in upon his opponents, the conflict becomes dreadful, and it is seldom that the loss of a single life will satisfy the beast's revenge.

The business or diversion of bear-hunting is particularly dangerous at two seasons of the year; in the spring, when they first issue from their caves, after having subsisted the whole winter (as it is here positively asserted) solely on sucking their paws; and especially if the frost should continue to be severe, and the ice in the lakes is not broken up; as they cannot then have recourse to their customary and expected food. Thus becoming exceedingly famished, they grow fierce and savage in proportion, pursuing the inhabitants by the scent, and prowling about at a distance from their usual tracks, dart upon them unawares. Under these circumstances, as the natives have no idea of shooting, flying, or even running, or in any manner without resting their piece, they often fall a sacrifice to their rapacity. The time of their copulation is the other dangerous season to meet with them; and that is usually about this time of the year.

The Kamtschadales never presume to fire at a young bear if the dam is upon the spot; for, if the cub should happen to be killed, she becomes enraged to an immoderate degree, and if she can only obtain sight of the offender, she is sure to be revenged of him, or die in the attempt. On the other hand, if the mother should be shot, the cub continues by her side after she has been a long time dead, exhibiting by the most affecting gestures and motions, the most poignant affliction. The hunters, instead of commiserating their distresses, embrace these opportunities of destroying them. If the veracity of the Kamtschadales is to be depended on, the sagacity of the bears is as extraordinary as their natural affection.

Innumerable are the stories which they relate in proof of this. One remarkable instance, however, we cannot avoid mentioning, as it is admitted among the natives as a well-attested fact. It is the stratagem they put in practice to catch the bareins, which run too swift for them to expect success in pursuing them. These animals herd together in great numbers, and their usual haunts are low grounds, at the feet of rocks and precipices, where they delight in browsing. The bear pursues them by the scent till he obtains a view of them, and then advances warily keeping in a situation above them; at the same time concealing himself among the rocks as he approaches, till he is almost immediately over them, and near enough to carry his purpose into execution. Then, with his paws, he pushes down large pieces of rock amongst the herd below. If he perceives he has succeeded in maiming any of the flock, he immediately pursues them, and according to the injury the poor bareins have received, he either proves successful in overtaking them, or they escape by the rapidity of their flight.

The Kamtschadales acknowledge infinite obligations to the bears, for all the little progress they have hitherto made, as well in the sciences as the polite arts. They confess themselves indebted wholly to these animals for all their knowledge in physic

and
to t
have
have
have
But,
the
our
for i
attit
their
those
whic
On
ships
oppo
the
rostr
the c
No
Gore
in th
had a
rank,
at th
interr
Cap
get th
to sa
wind
but, c
and a
from
cattle
enjoy
fresh
or six
Th
and n
King
to th
Gore
the c
stron
as th
quan
A
of R
poss

and surgery; as by observing what herbs they have applied to the wounds they have received, and what methods they have pursued when they were languid and out of order, they have acquired a knowledge of most of the simples which they have now recourse to, either as external or internal applications. But, the most singular circumstance of all is, that they admit the bears to be their dancing-masters; though the evidence of our officers' own senses places this matter beyond all dispute, for in the bear dance of the Kamstchadales, every gesture and attitude peculiar to that animal was faithfully exhibited. All their other dances are similar to this in many particulars, and those attitudes are thought to come the nearest to perfection which most resemble the motions of the bear.

On the 28th of September, Captain King returned to the ships, not a little pleased with his excursion, as it gave him an opportunity of seeing a part of the country, and of observing the actions of the Kamtschadales when they were under no restraint, which evidently was not the case when they were in the company of the Russians.

Nothing worth mentioning occurred till the 30th, when Captain Gore went to Paratounca, in order to have an escutcheon put up in the church, which had been prepared by Mr. Webber. It had an inscription on it, mentioning Captain Clerke's age and rank, and the nature of the expedition which he commanded at the time of his decease. To the tree, under which he was interred, a board was affixed with a similar inscription on it.

Captain Gore, before his departure, ordered Captain King to get the ships out of the harbour, that they might be in readiness to sail. This, however, was prevented by a violent gale of wind on the 1st of October, which continued the whole day; but, on the 2nd, both the vessels warped out of the harbour, and anchored in seven fathoms' water, about a quarter of a mile from the *ostrog*. The day before they quitted the harbour, the cattle from Verchnei arrived; and that the men might have the enjoyment of this seasonable supply, by eating it while it was fresh, Captain Gore determined to stay in the same station five or six days longer.

This time was far from being misapplied, for the pumps, sails, and rigging of each ship received an additional repair. Captain King, having obtained permission to use the copper belonging to the Resolution, and being supplied with molasses by Captain Gore, was enabled to brew a sufficient quantity of beer to last the crew a fortnight, and to make ten additional puncheons of strong spruce essence. This supply was the more acceptable, as the last cask of spirits was now serving out, except a small quantity reserved for cases of emergency.

As the 3rd day of October was the name-day of the Empress of Russia, our officers were perfectly inclined to shew it every possible respect, and the priest of Paratounca, Ivaskin, and

the sergeant, were invited to dine with them, and an entertainment was prepared for the two Toions of Paratounca, and St. Peter and St. Paul, as well as for the inferior officers of the garrison, and the most respectable of the Kamtschadale inhabitants. All the other natives were invited to partake in common with the ships' companies; a pound of excellent beef being served out to every man, and the remainder of their spirits were made into grog, and distributed amongst them. Twenty-one guns were fired upon the occasion.

On the 5th of October, the ships received a fresh supply of tea, sugar, and tobacco, from Bolcheretsk. Captain Shmaleff having met this present on his return, he sent a letter with it, stating, that the sloop from Okotsk had arrived in his absence, and that Madame Shmaleff had instantly dispatched a courier with these few presents, requesting their acceptance of them.

On the 8th of October, they sailed towards the mouth of the bay, and all the boats were hoisted in; but their progress was stopped by the wind veering to the south, which obliged them to drop anchor, the *ostrog* bearing north, at the distance of half a league. The wind blowing from the same quarter, and the weather being foggy all the forenoon on the 9th, they continued in their station.

At four in the afternoon of the same day, they again unmoored; but whilst raising the last anchor, they were informed that the drummer of marines had fled from the boat, which had just left the village, and that he had lately been seen with a Kamtschadale woman, to whom he was known to have been much attached, and who had frequently importuned him to stay behind. This man was entirely useless having been rendered lame by a swelling in his knee; and on that very account, Captain King was the more unwilling to leave him behind, lest he should become a miserable burthen to himself, as well as to the Russians. He therefore applied to the sergeant to send parties of his men in pursuit of him; and in the mean time, the sailors visited a well known haunt of his in the neighbourhood, where the drummer and his woman were found together. On the recovery of the deserter, the Discovery weighed anchor, and immediately followed the Resolution.

Awatska Bay is perhaps the safest, and most extensive harbour that has ever been discovered, and the only one, in this part of the world, that can admit vessels of considerable burthen. The term bay, properly speaking, is rather inapplicable to a place so completely sheltered as Awatska; but when it is considered how loose and vague some navigators have been, in their denominations of certain situations of sea and land, as harbours, bays, roads, sounds, &c. we are not sufficiently warranted to exchange a popular name for one that may perhaps seem more consistent with propriety.

The entrance into Awatska Bay is in the latitude of 52 deg.

51 min. north, and the longitude of 158 deg. 48 min. east. It lies in the bight of another exterior bay, formed by Cape Gavareea to the south, and Cheepoonskoi Noss to the north. The latter of these head-lands bears from the former north-east-by-north, and is thirty-two leagues distant. From Cape Gavareea to the entrance of Awatska Bay, the coast takes a northerly direction, and extends about eleven leagues. It consists of a chain of ragged cliffs and rocks; and in many parts, presents an appearance of bays or inlets; but, on a nearer view, low ground was seen that connected the head-lands.

From the entrance of Awatska Bay, Cheepoonskoi Noss bears east-north-east, distant seventeen leagues. The shore, on this side, is flat and low, with hills behind, gradually rising to a considerable height. The latitude of Cape Gavareea is 52 deg. 21 min.

This remarkable difference of the land on the sides of Awatska Bay, together with their different bearings, are very proper guides to steer for it, in coming from the southward; and when it is approached from the northward, Cheepoonskoi Noss becomes very conspicuous, it being a high projecting head-land, and is united to the continent by a large extent of level ground, lower than the Noss. Whether viewed from the north or south, it presents the same appearance.

"We have been rather particular in describing this coast, having experienced the want of such a description; for if we had possessed a tolerable good account of the form of the coast on both sides of Awatska Bay, we should, when we first visited it, have arrived there two days sooner than we did, and consequently have avoided part of the tempestuous weather, which we experienced in plying off the mouth of the harbour. Besides, from the prevalence of the fogs in those seas, it must often happen that an observation for ascertaining the latitude cannot be taken. It should also be considered, that land makes a very deceptive appearance when covered with snow, or when viewed through a hazy atmosphere, both which circumstances prevail here for a considerable part of the year, and renders it necessary for every mariner to be acquainted with as many discriminate objects as possible.

"If the weather should happen to be sufficiently clear to admit a view of the mountains, both on the coast and its neighbourhood, the situation of Awatska Bay may be precisely known. For to the south of it are two high mountains; that nearest the bay is in the form of a sugar-loaf; the other, which is more inland, is flat at the top, and not quite so high. There are three very conspicuous mountains to the north of the bay; that furthest to the west appears to be the highest; the next, which is a volcano mountain, may readily be known by the smoke issuing from its top. The third is the more northerly, and might, with some propriety, be called a cluster of mountains, as it presents several flat tops to our view.

“When we get within the capes, and into the outward bay, a light-house on a perpendicular head-land will point out the entrance into the bay of Awatska to the north. Many sunken rocks lie to the eastward of this head-land stretching two or three miles into the sea, and which, with a moderate sea or swell, will always shew themselves. A small round island lies four miles to the south of the entrance, principally composed of high pointed rocks, one of which is strikingly remarkable as being larger and more perpendicular than the rest.

“The entrance into the bay is, at first, about three miles wide, and one mile and a half in the narrowest part; the length is four miles, in a north-north-west direction. A noble basin of about twenty-five miles in circumference lies within the mouth; in which are the harbours of Rakoweena, to the east, Tarcinska, to the west, and St. Peter and St. Paul to the north.

“The breadth of Tarcinska harbour is three miles, and the length about twelve. A narrow neck of land separates it from the sea at the bottom, and it stretches to the east-south-east. As far as we surveyed, we never found less than seven fathoms' water, but the ice hindered us from getting to the bottom of the harbour.

“The entrance of the harbour of Rakoweena is impeded by a shoal in the middle of the channel, which, in general, makes it necessary to warp in, unless there should happen to be a leading wind. Were it not for this circumstance, this harbour would be preferable to the other two. Its breadth is from one mile to half a mile, and its length three miles, running in a south-east and easterly direction. It is from thirteen to three fathoms in depth.

“One of the most convenient little harbours ever seen, is St. Peter and St. Paul. Half-a-dozen ships may be commodiously moored in it, head and astern: and it is, in every respect, convenient for giving them any kind of repairs. The south side of this harbour is formed by a low, narrow, sandy neck, on which the *ostrog* is built. The mid-channel is only two hundred and seventy feet across, in which there is six fathoms and a half water; the deepest water within is seven fathoms, and all over a muddy bottom. Some inconvenience was, however, occasioned by the roughness of the ground, which often broke the messenger, and made it troublesome to get the anchors up. At the head of this harbour there is a watering place.

“There is a shoal lying off the eastern harbour, and a spit within the entrance, stretching from the south-west shore, having only three fathoms' water over it. To steer clear of the latter, a small island, or rather a large detached rock, on the west shore of the entrance, must be shut in with the land to the south of it. In order to steer clear of the former, the three needle rocks, near the light-house head, on the east shore of the entrance, must be kept open with the head-lands to the northward

of the... enteri... the vi... to avo... west o...

The... copied... of Ap... Durin... not h... hands... accide... stoppi... operat... below...

Wh... Captai... pursue... on-boa... don, a... that pr...

On... time-p... Captai... but, as... the co... extrem...

He th... twenc... attribu... the w... seeme...

Cap... the tim... by cor... on hi... never... stopp...

ping... togeth... it ga... balan... He th... after...

hene... ill su... his v... and... a sea...

of the enteri the vi to avo west o The copied of Ap Durin not h hands accide stoppi operat below Wh Captai pursue on-boa don, a that pr On time-p Captai but, as the co extrem He th twenc attribu the w seeme Cap the tim by cor on hi never stopp ping togeth it ga balan He th after hene ill su his v and a sea

of the first small bending on the east side of the entrance. In entering the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, and approaching the village, it is very necessary to keep near the eastern shore, to avoid a spit which stretches from the head-land to the south-west of the *ostrog*."

The time-keeper on-board the *Resolution*, which was exactly copied from Mr. Harrison's by Mr. Kendal, stopped on the 27th of April, a few days before their first arrival in Awatska Bay. During the voyage, it had always been carefully attended to, not having been trusted, even for a moment, into any other hands than those of Captain Cook and Captain King. No accident, therefore, could have happened to it, to which its stopping could be attributed; nor could it proceed from the operations of intense cold, the thermometer being but very little below the freezing point.

When the failure of the time-piece was first discovered, the Captains Clerke and King consulted what measures they should pursue: and resolved to submit it to the inspection of a seaman on-board, who had been regularly bred a watchmaker in London, and who had given many satisfactory proofs of his skill in that profession, in repairing several watches upon the voyage.

On the first clear day after arriving in Awatska Bay, the time-piece was opened in the presence of Captain Clerke and Captain King. No part of the watch appeared to be broken; but, as the watchmaker was not able to make it go, he took off the cock and balance, and cleaned the pivot-holes, which were extremely foul. The other parts of the work were also dirty. He then took off the dial-plate, and found a piece of dirt between two teeth of the wheel which carries the second-hand, and attributed its stopping principally to this cause. After putting the work together, and oiling it very sparingly, the watch seemed to go with freedom and regularity.

Captain King having orders to go the next day to Bolcheretsk, the time-keeper was left with Mr. Bayly, in order to get its rate by comparing it with his watch and clock, who informed him, on his return, that it had gone very regularly for some days, never losing more than seventeen seconds a day, and afterwards stopped again. Upon its being a second time opened, its stopping seemed to be occasioned by its having been badly put together on the first opening of it. When it was again adjusted it gained above a minute a day, and the watchmaker broke the balance-spring in attempting to alter that and the regulator. He then made a new spring, but the watch went so irregularly afterwards, that they could make no further use of it. The honest fellow was as much chagrined as the officers were at this ill success, which all were convinced was not so much owing to his want of skill as to the miserable tools he had to work with, and the stiffness his hands had contracted from his occupation as a seaman.

At the full and change of the moon, it was high-water at thirty-six minutes after four; and five feet eight inches was the greatest rise. The tides were regular every twelve hours.

The peninsula of Kamtschatka is situated on the eastern coast of Asia, and extends from 52 deg. to 61 deg. north latitude; the longitude of its extremity to the south being 146 deg. 45 min. east. The isthmus, joining it to the continent on the north, lies between the gulfs of Olutorsk and Penshinsk. Its extremity to the south, is Cape Lopatka; so called from its resembling the blade-bone of a man, which is the signification of that word. The whole peninsula is somewhat in the form of a shoe; and its greatest breadth is two hundred and thirty-six computed miles, being from the mouth of the river Tigil to that of the river Kamtschatka; towards each extremity it gradually becomes narrower.

On the north it is bounded by the country of the Koriaks; by the north Pacific Ocean to the south and east; and by the sea of Okotsk to the west. A chain of high mountains, from north to south, extend the whole length of the peninsula, and almost equally divide it; whence several rivers take their rise, and make their course into the Pacific Ocean, and the sea of Okotsk.

The three principal rivers are the Bolchoireka, or great river; the river Kamtschatka; and the river Awatska. The first discharges itself into the sea of Okotsk, and is navigable for the Russian galliots five leagues from its mouth, or within three leagues of Bolcheretsk, which is situated at the conflux of the two rivers Goltsoffka and the Bistraia, which are here lost in the Bolchoireka. The source of the Bistraia, which is no inconsiderable river, is derived from the same fountain as the river Kamtschatka, but takes a quite contrary course; by which means the Kamtschadales are enabled to transport their goods by water, almost across the peninsula. The river Kamtschatka continues about three hundred miles in the direction of south to north; and after winding round to the eastward, is received by the ocean a little to the southward of Kamtschatkoi Noss. To the north-west of the mouth of Kamtschatka, lies the great lake *Nerpitsch* from *nerpi*, a seal, that lake abounding with those animals. A fort, called *Nishnei Kamtschatka ostrog*, is situated about twenty miles up the river, where an hospital and barracks have been built by the Russians; and this place, we understood, is now become the principal mart of the country.

The source of the Awatska river is from the mountains between the Bolchoireka and the Bistraia. After running two hundred miles from north-west to south-east, it falls into Awatska Bay. The Tigil is likewise a considerable river; it rises amidst some high mountains, parallel with Kamtschatskoi Noss, and empties itself into the sea of Okotsk. The other rivers of this peninsula,

high-water
eight inches
every twelve

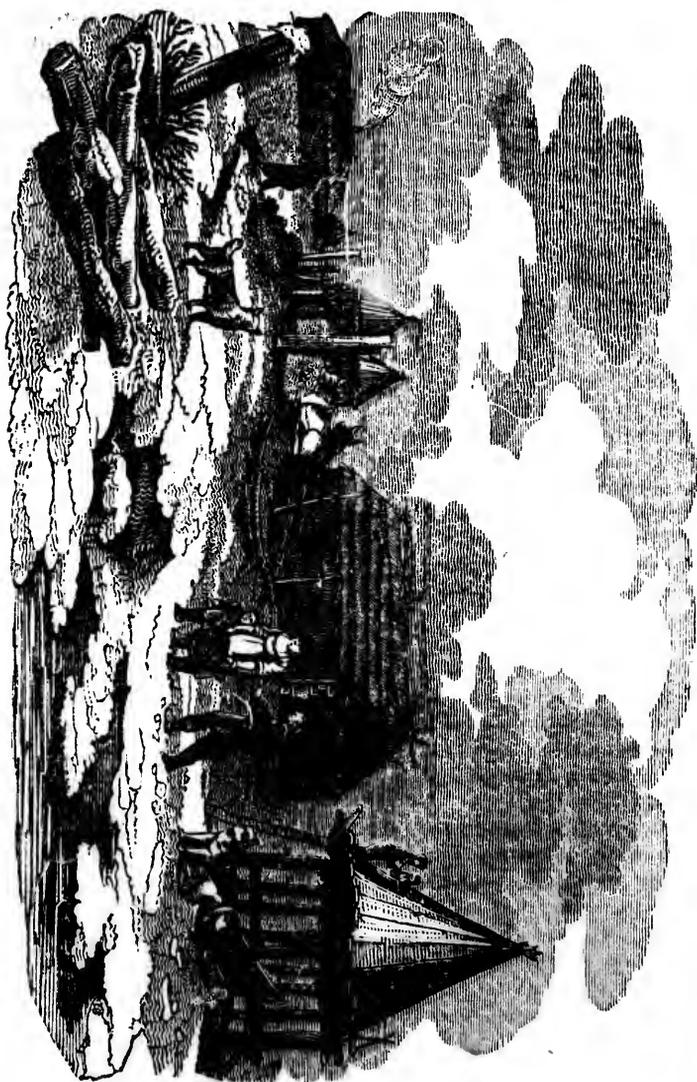
eastern coast
latitude; the
deg. 45 min.
north, lies
its extremity
resembling
of that word,
shoe; and its
puted miles,
of the river
ly becomes

the Koriaks;
and by the
mountains, from
peninsula, and
the rise,
and the sea of

great river;
The first dis-
gible for the
within three
of the two
lost in the
inconsider-
river Kamts-
means the
s by water,
a continues
north; and
the ocean a
north-west
itsch from
ls. A fort,
out twenty
have been
is now be-

ns between
o hundred
atska Bay.
midst some
d empties
peninsula,

page 545.



which are very numerous, are too inconsiderable to be particularly mentioned.

If we may judge of its soil from its vegetable productions, it appears to be barren in the extreme. It must be admitted, however, that our officers saw at Paratounca three or four stacks of most excellent hay; and Major Behm assured them, that the banks of the Kamtschatka and the Bistraia, as well as many other parts of the peninsula, produce a quantity of grass of great strength and height, which is mowed twice in every summer; and that the hay is particularly adapted to the fattening of cattle, being of a very succulent quality. It appeared, indeed, from the size and fatness of the thirty-six which they received from the Vechnei *ostrog*, that they must have had the advantage of good grass and hay; for when they were first supplied with the first twenty, it was just the close of the winter, the snow still remaining on the ground; and probably they had fed only on hay for the seven preceding months. This agrees with Kraschenicoff's account, who relates, that the country which borders on the river Kamtschatka is much superior, in point of fertility, to that of either the north or south. Repeated experiments, he says, have been made in different quarters near this river in the culture of barley, rye, and oats, which seldom failed of success; and he supposes, that wheat would grow in many parts, especially near the source of the Bistraia and Kamtschatka, as well as in most countries situated in the same latitude. The fertility of this part of the country may, perhaps, be occasioned by its lying in the widest part of the peninsula, and consequently at the farthest distance from the sea on each side; as chilling fogs and drizzling weather generally prevail along the coast, and cannot fail to render the parts adjacent incapable of improvement by agriculture.

In computing the seasons here, spring should certainly be omitted. Summer may be said to extend from the middle of June till the middle of September; October may be considered as autumn; from which period till the middle of June, it is all dreary winter.

The climate in the country adjacent to the river Kamtschatka, is said to be as serene and temperate as in many parts of Siberia under the same latitude. This, probably, originates from the same causes, to which the fertility of the soil in that part of the country has been already attributed.

There was neither thunder nor lightning during the stay at Kamtschatka, excepting the night of the eruption of the volcano; and our men were told by the inhabitants, that they were not often troubled with either, and never but in a slight degree. The severity of winter, and the dreadful hurricanes of wind and snow which attend it, oblige the natives to retire to their subterraneous habitations, both for their security and warmth. They were informed by Major Behm, that the inclemency of the winter of 1779 was so great, that all intercourse was stopped between

the inhabitants for several weeks; no one daring to stir from one habitation to another, so fearful were they of being frost-bitten. The extreme rigour of the climate, in so low a latitude, may be attributed to its being situate to the east of an immense uncultivated country, and to the prevalence of the westerly winds over so extensive and cold a continent. The impetuosity of the winds may be attributed to the subterraneous fires and sulphureous exhalations.

Volcanoes are numerous in this peninsula; only three of which have lately been subject to eruptions. That in the neighbourhood of Awatska they mentioned; and there are others equally remarkable according to Kraschenicoff.

The volcano of Tolbatchick is situate between the river Kamtschatka and Tolbatchick, on a neck of land. The eruptions proceed from the summit of a high mountain, which terminates in pointed rocks. A whirlwind of flames issued from it in the beginning of 1739, which reduced the forests of the neighbouring mountains to ashes. A cloud of smoke succeeded this, which spread darkness over the whole country, but was dissipated by a shower of cinders, which covered the earth to the extent of thirty miles. Kraschenicoff, who was then travelling from Bolchoireka to the Kamtschatka *ostrog*, and not far from the mountain, says, the eruption was preceded by an alarming sound in the woods, which, he thought, portended some dreadful storm or hurricane; till three successive shocks of an earthquake, with only a minute's interval between each, fully convinced him of its real cause; but that he was hindered, by the falling of the cinders, from approaching nearer the mountain, or from proceeding on his journey.

On the top of the mountain of Kamtschatka, supposed to be by far the highest in the peninsula, is the third volcano. A thick smoke incessantly ascends from its summit, and it often has eruptions of the most dreadful kind; some of which were fresh in the memories of the natives, and were frequently spoken of.

Springs of hot water are said to abound in this country. They only saw that at Natchekin *ostrog*, which has already been described. Several others are mentioned by Kraschenicoff, who also takes notice of two pits or wells, at the bottom of which the water boils with great impetuosity; a dreadful noise issuing from them at the same time, and so thick a vapour, that objects cannot be discerned through it.

Among the principal trees which fell under notice, are the birch, the poplar, the alder, several species of the willow, and two sorts of dwarfish cedars. One of these sorts grows upon the coast, seldom exceeding two feet in height, and creeping upon the ground. Of this the essence for beer was made, and proved to be proper for the purpose: the other, which grows much higher, is found on the mountains, and bears a kind of nut or apple. The old *Toion* at St. Peter and St. Paul informed them, that when Behring lay in that harbour, he taught them the use of

the decoction of these cedars; which proved an admirable remedy for the scurvy; but either from the scarcity of sugar, or some other cause, it is no longer used amongst them.

Of the birch which appears to be the most common tree, they remarked three sorts. Two of them were large, and fit for timber, and differed from each other only in the colour and texture of the bark. The third is of a dwarfish kind. The natives apply this tree to a variety of uses. When tapped, it yields a liquor in great abundance, which they drink without mixture, or any kind of preparation, as they frequently observed in their journey to Bolcheretsk. They drank some of it themselves, and found it pleasant and refreshing, though somewhat purging. They convert the bark into vessels for their domestic purposes; and from the wood of this tree, are made their sledges and canoes. Not only the birch, but every other kind of tree in the neighbourhood of the bay were stunted, and very small; the natives are therefore obliged to go a considerable distance up the country to get wood of a proper size for their canoes, their *balagans*, and many other purposes.

Kraschenicoff also mentions the larch, a tree which grows only on the banks of the river Kamtschatka, and those which it receives. He also says, there are firs near the river Berszowa. Likewise the service tree, and two species of the white thorn.

This peninsula produces great abundance of the shrub kind, as mountain-ash, junipers, raspberry bushes, and wild rose trees. Also a variety of berries, as partridge-berries, blue-berries, black-berries, cran-berries, and crow-berries. These are gathered at proper seasons, and preserved by mashing them into a thick jam. They constitute a considerable part of their winter provisions serving as a general sauce to their dried fish. They also eat them in puddings, and in various other modes, and make decoctions of them for their common beverage.

They found great quantities of wholesome vegetables, in a wild state, such as chervil, garlic, onions, angelic, and wild celery. They also met with some excellent turnips, and turnip-radishes, upon a few spots of ground in the vallies.

This account of vegetables, only relates to such parts of the country as fell within observation; near the river Kamtschatka, where both the soil and climate is the best in the peninsula, garden culture is attended to, and perhaps with success; for with the second drove of cattle which they received from Verchinei, they also received a present of cucumbers, celery, some very large turnips, and other garden vegetables.

Two plants are produced in this peninsula which deserve particular attention. The first is called *sarana* by the natives, and *Lilium Kamtskatiense flore atro rubente*, by botanists. The stem grows to the height of about five inches, and is not larger than that of a tulip; towards the bottom it is of a purple colour, and green higher up. Two tier of leaves issue from it, of an oval

figure, the lower consisting of three leaves and the uppermost of four. A single flower, of a dark red colour, which resembles that of the narcissus in shape, grows from the top of the stalk. It has a bulbous root, like that of garlic, and, like that, has several cloves hanging together. The plant grows wild, and in great quantities: about the beginning of August many women are employed in collecting the roots, which, after being dried in the sun, are preserved for use. It is a maxim with the Kamtschadales, that Providence never deserts them, for the seasons that are prejudicial to the *sarana* are always favourable for fishing; and, on the contrary, an unsuccessful fishing month is always amply compensated by an exuberant *sarana* harvest.

This article is variously employed in cookery. When roasted in embers, it is a better substitute for bread than any thing the country produces. When baked in an oven, and pounded, it supplies the place of flour and meal, and is mixed in all their soups, and many of their other dishes. It is extremely nourishing, has a pleasant bitter flavour, and may be eaten daily without cloying. They partook of these roots boiled in the manner of potatoes, and found them very wholesome and agreeable. This plant is also produced at Oonalashka, where the roots of it, in like manner constitute a considerable part of their food.

Sweet Grass is the name of the other plant alluded to; the botanical description of which is *Heracleum Sibericum foliis pinnatis, foliolis quinis, intermediis sessilibus, corrollulis uniformibus*. HORT. UPSAL. 65. It was in the month of May that they took particular notice of it, when it was about eighteen inches in height, strongly resembled sedge, and was covered with a kind of white down, not unlike the hoar-frost hanging upon it, and which might easily be rubbed off. The taste of it is as sweet as that of sugar, though very hot and pungent. It has a hollow stalk, which consists of three or four joints, with large leaves issuing from each. When this plant attains its full growth it is about six feet in height. This plant was formerly a principal ingredient in cookery, amongst the Kamtschadales; but since the country has been in the possession of the Russians, it has been chiefly appropriated to the purpose of distillation. It is gathered, prepared, and distilled, in the following manner; having cut the stalks which have leaves growing on them, and scraped the downy substance from their surface, they are placed in small heaps till they begin to heat and smell. When dry, they are put into sacks of matting, where they remain a few days, and are then gradually covered over with a sweet saccharine powder, which exudes from the hollow of the stalk. Only a quarter of a pound as powder is obtained from thirty-six pounds of the plant in this state. The women who conduct this business find it necessary to defend their hands with gloves whilst they are scraping the stalks, the rind being of so acrid a quality as even to ulcerate the part it touches.

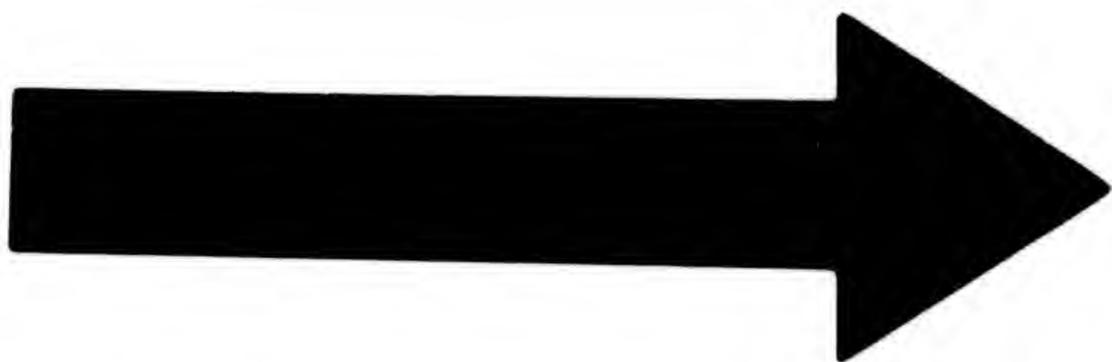
In this state the spirit is drawn from the plant by the following process:—Bundles of it are steeped in hot water, and its fermentation promoted in a small vessel, with berries of the *gimolost*, or of the *golubitsa*; care being taken to close the mouth of the vessel, and to keep it in a warm place whilst it continues to ferment, which is often to so violent a degree as to agitate the vessel which contains it, and occasion a considerable noise. When this first liquor is drawn off, more hot water is poured on, and a second made in the same manner. Both liquor and herbs are then put into a copper still, and the spirit is drawn off in the usual method. The liquor, thus prepared, is called by the natives *raka*, and has the strength of brandy. Seventy-two pounds of the plant generally produces twenty-five pints of *raka*. According to Steller, the spirit distilled from this plant *unscraped*, is very pernicious to health, and produces sudden nervous disorders.

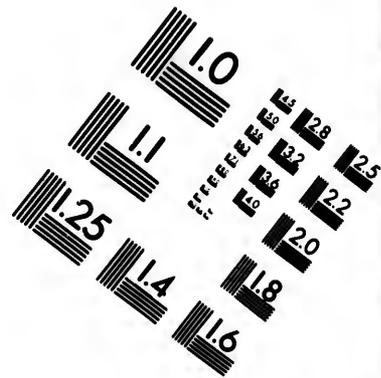
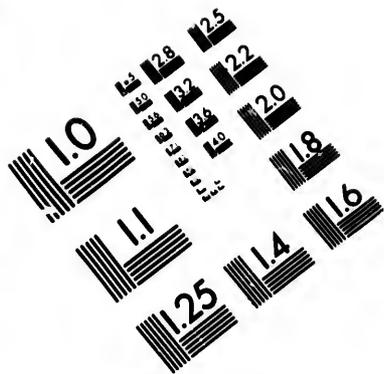
Kraschenicoff mentions several other plants from which decoctions are prepared, and which, when properly intermingled with their fish make palatable dishes. Such is the *kipri*, with which a pleasant beverage is brewed; and when this plant and the *sweet-herb* are boiled together, in the proportion of one to five of the latter, and properly fermented, a strong and excellent vinegar is obtained. The leaves are substituted for tea, and the pith, when dried, is introduced in many of their dishes. He also mentioned the *morkovai*, which is not unlike angelic; the *kotkorica*, the root of which is eaten green or dried; the *ikoum*, the *utchichlei*, and several others.

Before the Kamtschadales were acquainted with fire arms, it is said, they poisoned their spears and arrows with a juice extracted from the root of the *zgate*, and that death was inevitable to every animal who had received a wound from them. The Tschutski are now reported to use the same drug, and for the very same purpose.

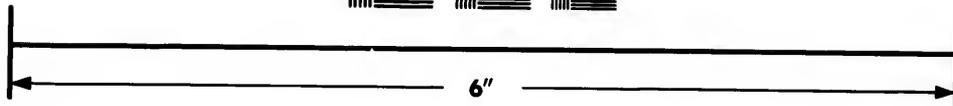
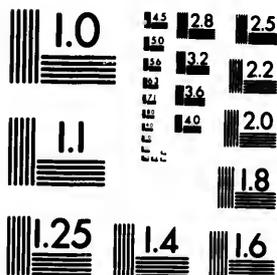
The materials of all the manufacturers of Kamtschatka, according to Kraschenicoff, are furnished by three plants. One of them is the *triticum radice perenni spiculus binis lanuginosis*, which is exceedingly plentiful along the coast. A strong kind of matting is fabricated from the straw of this grass, which is used to cover their floors, as well as for bed-clothes, curtains, sacks, and many other domestic purposes. Little bags and baskets are also made of the same materials, and are applied to various uses.

The *bolotnaia* grows in the marshes, and resembles *cyperoides*. It is gathered in the autumn, and is carded in the same manner as wool, with an instrument made of the bones of the sea-swallow. With this manufacture their new-born infants are swathed, and it is used for a covering next the skin after they cease to be infants. A kind of wadding is also formed of it, which is used to give additional warmth to different parts of their clothing.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

28
32
36
20
18

11
10
E

A vulgar, well known plant remains to be taken notice of, as being more essential to subsistence than all which have been mentioned. It is the nettle, which as neither hemp nor flax are produced in Kamtschatka, supplies materials for their fishing nets, and on which their existence principally depends. For this purpose nettles are usually cut down in August, and after being hung in bundles under their *balagans*, the remainder of the summer, they are manufactured like hemp. It is then spun into thread with their fingers, and twisted round a spindle; after which several threads may be twined together, if the purpose for which it is designed requires it.

Many parts of the peninsula would probably admit of such cultivation as might contribute to the comfort and convenience of the inhabitants; yet the number of wild animals it produces must always be considered as its real riches, and no labour can be so productive of advantages as what is employed upon their furrieries. And, next to these, the animals that supply them are to be considered; these are the fox, the *zibeline*, or sable; the stoat, or *ermine*; the *isatis*, or arctic fox; the earless marmot, the varying hare, the weasel, the glutton, or *wolverene*, the wild-sheep, rein-deer, wolves, dogs.

The most general object of the chase are foxes, with which this country abounds, and among which are a variety of colours. The most common species is the same as the European, but their colours are more vivid and shining. Some are of a dark chestnut, others have dark coloured stripes; the bellies of some are black, when the other part of the body is of a light chestnut. Some are black, others of a dark brown, others of a stone colour, and some few are entirely white; the last, however, are very scarce. The quality of their fur is much superior to that of the same animals in Siberia or America. Many artifices are put in practice by the hunters to destroy them. Traps of various kinds are prepared; some to fall upon them, others to secure them by the feet, and others to catch them by the head. These are the most common methods of taking them; but they have many ingenious contrivances of catching them in nets. Poisoned baits are also used, the *nuu-yauica* being generally employed for that purpose. Still, however, the animal preserves his character for craftiness and cunning, in all climates, and upon all occasions.

Before the Kamtschadales had any knowledge of the Russians, who instructed them in the use of fire-arms, they carried bows and arrows to the chase; but, since that period, almost every man amongst them is provided with a rifle-barrel gun; and though he cannot use it with any extraordinary dexterity, he readily acknowledges its superiority to the former instruments.

The Kamtschatka sables are much larger than those of Siberia, and their fur is thicker and brighter; but those in the neighbourhood of the rivers Olekma and Vitime are of a finer black. The sables of the Tigil and Ouka are said to be the best in Kamts-

chatka, a pair of these being frequently sold for five pounds sterling. The worst are found in the southern extremity.

A rifle-barrel gun, of a very small bore, a net, and a few bricks, are the whole apparatus of the sable hunters. With the first they sometimes shoot them; when they are seen on the trees; the net is used in surrounding the hollow trees, in which they usually take refuge when pursued; and the bricks are put hot into the cavities, in order to drive them out with the smoke.

For an account of the *isatis*, or arctic fox, we must refer the reader to Mr. Pennant's Arctic Zoology; the skin of this animal is of little value. The varying hare is neglected on that account. They are very numerous, and always become perfectly white during the winter.

The earless marmot, or mountain rat; is a very beautiful creature, much smaller than a squirrel; and like that animal feeds upon roots and berries; sitting upon its hind legs whilst he eats, and holding the food to its mouth with the paws. Its skin is in high estimation among the Kamtschadales; being warm, light, and of a bright shining hue. Like the plumage of some birds, when it is viewed in different lights, it appears to be of various colours.

The *ermine*, or stoat, is little regarded here, and consequently not much attended to by the hunters, its fur being of a very ordinary kind. They observed several of these little creatures running about, and they purchased some of their skins, which were of a dirty yellow towards the belly, and the other parts were of a cloudy white. The weasel is also neglected; and on the same account.

The skin of the *wolverene*, or glutton, on the contrary, is in the highest repute; a Kamtschadale looking upon himself as most splendidly attired, when a small quantity of this fur appears upon his garment. The women embellish their hair with its white parts, which is considered as the most superlative piece of finery. In short, a superstitious opinion obtains amongst them, that the angels are clad with the skins of those animals. This creature, it is said, may be easily tamed, and instructed in a variety of entertaining tricks.

All the bears which our men had an opportunity of seeing, were of a dun brown colour; they generally appear in a company of four or five together; and are frequently seen in the season when the fish quit the sea, and push in great quantities up the rivers. Fish is indeed their principal food. In the winter months they are seldom visible. Of the skins of bears, warm mattresses and coverings for beds are made; together with comfortable bonnets, and gloves, and harness for the sledges. The flesh, especially the fat, is held in great estimation.

The wolves appear only in the water, when they are said to prowl about in large companies in pursuit of prey.

Rein-deer, both wild and tame, are found in many parts of the

peninsula, but none in the neighbourhood of Awatska. It is remarkable, that the rein-deer have not been used, in this nation, for the purposes of carriage, as they are by their neighbours to the north and east. The demands of the natives, in their present state, are indeed sufficiently supplied by their dogs; and the breed of Russian horses will probably supply any future necessities of the country.

The wild mountain sheep, or *argali*, is in great plenty here; an animal unknown in Europe, except in Corsica and Sardinia. Its skin resembles that of the deer, but it more nearly approaches the goat in its gait and general appearance. Its head is adorned with two large twisted horns, which, when the animal is at full growth, sometimes weigh from twenty-five to thirty pounds; and are rested on the creature's back when it is running. These animals are remarkably swift and active; frequent only the most craggy and mountainous parts, and traverse the steepest rocks with an astonishing agility. Of their horns, spoons, cups, and platters, are fabricated by the natives, who have often one of the latter hanging to a belt, serving them to drink out of when on their hunting expeditions. This is a gregarious animal. It is extremely beautiful, and its flesh is sweet and delicately flavoured.

The dogs of this country resemble the Pomeranian in mien and figure; but they are larger, and the hair is considerably coarser. Their colours are various, but that which most prevails is a light dun, or a pale dirty yellow. The poor animals are all turned loose about the latter end of May, and are obliged to shift for themselves till the ensuing winter; but never fail to return to their respective homes, when the snow begins to make its appearance. In the winter their food consists wholly of the head, back-bones, and entrails of salmon, which are preserved and dried for that purpose; and even with this food, they are very scantily supplied. The dogs must certainly be very numerous, no less than five being yoked to a single sledge; and only one person carried in each sledge. In their journey to Bolcheretsk, our voyagers had occasion for one hundred and thirty-nine, at the two stages of Caratchin and Natcheechin. It is observable too, that hitches are never employed in this business.

The whelps are trained to the draft, by being fastened to stakes with leathern thongs, which are elastic, and having their food placed beyond their reach; and thus by continually pulling and labouring to obtain a repast, they acquire strength and a habit of drawing; both of which are essentially necessary for their destined occupation.

Almost every kind of northern sea-fowl frequent the coast and bays of Kamtschatka; and among others, the sea-eagles, but not in so great plenty as at Oonalashka. The inland rivers are plentifully stored with various species of wild ducks; one of which, called by the natives *aan-gitche*, has a most beautiful plumage. Its cry is equally singular and agreeable.

Another species is called the mountain duck, which, according to Steller, is peculiar to Kamtschatka. The plumage of the drake is singularly beautiful. A variety of other water-fowl were seen, which from their magnitude, appeared to be of the wild goose kind.

In passing through the woods, some eagles were observed of a prodigious size, but of what species could not possibly be determined. There are said to be three different kinds, black, light grey, and stone-coloured. There are great numbers of the hawk, falcon, and bustard kind in this peninsula.

Woodcocks, snipes, and grouse, are also found here. Swans are very numerous, and generally make a part of the repast at all public entertainments.

No amphibious animals were seen on the coast, except seals, which were extremely plenty about the bay of Awatska. The others were at that time pursuing the salmon that were ascending the rivers in large shoals. Some of them, it is said, follow the fish into fresh water, and frequent all the lakes which have a communication with the sea.

The sea-otters found here, and those which were met with at Nootka Sound, were exactly the same. They were formerly in great abundance here; but since the Russians have opened a trade with the Chinese for their skins, where they bear a price superior to any other kind of fur, the hunters have been induced to be so indefatigable in the pursuit of them, that very few remains in the country. It is said, that hardly a sea-otter is now to be found either on Mednoi or Behring's Island; though Muller states, that they were exceedingly plentiful in his time.

Fish is certainly the staple article of food among the inhabitants of this peninsula; who cannot possibly derive any considerable part of their sustenance either from agriculture or cattle. In short, fish may be here called the staff of life, with more propriety than bread in any other country; for neither the inhabitants nor the domestic animals of the canine species, could possibly exist without it.

Whales are frequently seen in this country, and when taken, serve for a variety of uses. Of the skins, the inhabitants make the soles of their shoes, and belts and straps for many other purposes. The fish is eaten, and the fat is preserved for culinary uses, and feeding their lamps. The whiskers are highly serviceable for sewing the seams of the canoes; nets are also made of them of the larger kind of fish, and they shoe their sledges with the under jaw-bones. Knives are formed from many of their bones; and the chains, which fasten the dogs together, were formerly made of the same materials, though iron ones are now generally used. After cleaning their intestines, drying them, and blowing them like bladders, they deposit their oil and grease in them; and they make excellent snares of

their nerves and veins; in short, there is no part of the whale that is not useful in this peninsula.

Fish is very abundant, and at one haul, on the 15th of May, they dragged out upwards of three hundred flat-fish, besides a considerable quantity of sea-trout.

But notwithstanding this abundance of fish, it is on the salmon fishery alone that the inhabitants depend for their winter sustenance. On this coast, all the species of these that are known to exist, are said to be found; and which were formerly characterized by the different times of their ascending the rivers. About the middle of May, the first shoals of salmon enter the mouth of the Awatska. This kind is called *tchavitsi*, by the Kamtschadales, and is the largest and most esteemed. Three feet and a half is their usual length; and they are more than proportionally deep; their average weight being from thirty to forty pounds. The back is of a dark blue colour, with black spots, and the tail is perfectly straight. In all other respects, they resemble our common salmon. They swim with such velocity along the river, that the water is greatly agitated by their motions. Krascheninoff said, that it was formerly the custom among the Kamtschadales, to eat the first fish they caught, in the midst of great rejoicings, accompanied with many superstitious ceremonies; and that, after they became subjects of Russia, it was long a matter of contention between them who should be entitled to the first. Their fishing season, for this species, begins about the middle of May, and continues till the end of June.

There is a smaller sort of salmon, weighing from about eight to fifteen pounds, known by the name of the red-fish, which assemble in the bays, and at the mouths of the rivers, early in the month of June.

Their method of catching them in the bay of Awatska, is as follows: one end of the net is fastened to a large stone at the side of the water, after which they push off about twenty yards in a canoe, dropping their net as they proceed; then they turn, and extend the other part of the net in a line parallel to the shore. Thus prepared, they carefully conceal themselves in the boat, looking earnestly for the fish, which usually hover about the shore, and whose approach is known by a rippling in the water, till they have proceeded beyond the boat. At that instant, they shoot the canoe to shore, and are almost certain of enclosing their prey. One of these nets is generally hauled by two men, with as much facility as our seines are managed by a dozen, though ours is much smaller. We had very indifferent success with our method of hauling; but after receiving some friendly instructions from the Kamtschadales, we were as successful as they were. Their mode of fishing in the rivers, is to shoot one net across, and haul another to it down the current.

All the lakes which communicate with the sea abound with

fish, which have much the appearance of salmon, and usually weigh about five or six pounds.

The natives dry the principal part of their salmon, and salt but very little of it. They cut a fish into three pieces; they take off the belly-piece first, and then a slice along each side of the back-bone. The belly-piece, which is esteemed the best, is dried and smoked; the other slices are dried in the air, and either eaten whole as a substitute for bread, or pulverized for paste and cakes. The head, tail, and bones, are dried and preserved for their dogs.

The inhabitants of Kamtschatka may be said to consist of three sorts. The Kamtschadales, the Russians, and Cossacks; and a mixture produced by their intermarriages. Mr. Steller, who was long resident in this country, and who was indefatigable in endeavouring to acquire knowledge on this subject, stated, that the Kamtschadales are people of remote antiquity, and have inhabited this peninsula for many ages; and that they doubtless descended from the Mungalians; though some have imagined they sprang from the Tongusian Tartars, and others from the Japanese.

He supposes them to be descended from the Mungalians, from the words in their language having similar terminations to those of the Mungalian Chinese; and that, in both languages, the same principal of derivation is preserved; that they are generally short, their complexions swarthy, the face broad, the nose short and flat, the eyes small and sunk; the legs small, and they have many other peculiarities which are to be observed among the Mungalians. He therefore concludes, that they fled to this peninsula for safety from the rapacity of the eastern conquerors; as the Laplanders and others retreated to the extremities of the north, from the advances of the Europeans.

The Russians, having made themselves masters of that vast extent of the coast of the frozen sea, established posts and colonies, and appointed commissaries to explore and subject the countries still further to the east. They soon discovered that the wandering Koriacs inhabited part of the coast of the sea of Okotsk; and they found no difficulty in making them tributary. These being at no great distance from the Kamtschadales, with whom they had frequent intercourse, a knowledge of Kamtschatka must naturally follow.

To Feodor Alexeiff, a merchant, the honour of the first discovery is attributed, about the year 1648; being separated from seven other vessels by a storm, he was driven on the coast of Kamtschatka, where he and his companions remained a whole winter, but they were afterwards cut off by the Koriacs. This was corroborated, in some degree, by Simeon Deshneff, who was commander of one of the seven vessels, and was driven on shore near the mouth of the Anadir. But as these discoverers (if they really were so) did not live to relate what they had discovered, a

Cossack, named Volodimir Atlassoff, is the first acknowledged discoverer of Kamtschatka.

He was sent in 1697, in the capacity of commissary, from fort Jakutsk to the Anadirsk, with directions to call in the Koriacs to his assistance, in order to discover, and make tributary, the countries beyond theirs. With sixty Russian soldiers, and as many Cossacks, he penetrated, in the year 1699, into the heart of the peninsula, and gained the Tigil. In his progress he levied a tribute upon furs, and proceeded to the river Kamtschatka, on which he built an *ostrog*, now called Verchnei; and leaving a garrison of sixteen Cossacks, returned in the year 1700, to Jakutsk, with vast quantities of valuable tributary furs. These he very judiciously accompanied to Moscow, and was rewarded for his services by the appointment of commander of the fort of Jakutsk; and, at the same time, received orders to return to Kamtschatka, with a reinforcement of a hundred Cossacks, ammunition, and whatever might conduce to the completion and settlement of his new discoveries. Proceeding with his force towards the Anadirsk, he perceived a bark on the river Tungaska, which proved to be laden with Chinese merchandise. He immediately pillaged this vessel, in consequence of which the owner remonstrated with the Russian court; he was seized on at Jakutsk, and conducted to a prison.

All this time Potoff Serioukoff, whom Atlassoff had left, enjoyed the quiet possession of the garrison of Verchnei; and though his corps was too inconsiderable to enforce the payment of a tribute from the inhabitants, yet he had the address and management to traffic with them as a merchant, on very advantageous terms. His conciliating disposition so far gained him the esteem of the natives of Kamtschatka, that they lamented his departure, when he set off to return to Anadirsk. He and his party were, however, attacked by the Koriacs, and unfortunately cut off in the year 1703. Several other commissaries were successively sent into Kamtschatka during the disgrace and trial of Atlassoff.

Atlassoff was restored to his command in 1706, and intrusted with the management of a second expedition into Kamtschatka; he rendered the natives extremely hostile to their new governors, by repeated acts of cruelty and injustice; and even alienated the affections of his own people, insomuch that it created a mutiny of the Cossacks, who demanded a new commander, and displacing Atlassoff, took possession of his effects. Having tasted the sweets of plunder, and living without discipline or control, his successors were unable to reduce them to order and subjection. No less than three successive commanders were assassinated. From that period, to the great revolt of the Kamtschadales in 1731. the history of this country presents an unvaried detail of revolts, massacres, and murders, in every part of the peninsula.

Behring had at this time, a small squadron on the coast, and

ha
jo
tin
cu
and
In
dre
cou
tion
the
whic
that
the
tion,
boar
to de
Fo
had s
sians
ing th
habita
They
furiou
powde
with it
assassi
leader
childre
again c
happex
but no
on ve
which
Tho
the re
itself,
small-p
soldier
as dre
threate
posed
Island
village
remain
which
they an
only se
the ost
bitants

had dispatched what troops could be spared from the country to join Powloutski, in an expedition against the Tschutski. The time determined on, therefore, for carrying their plan into execution, was when Behring should have set sail, and be out to sea; and such resolution was communicated to the different chiefs. In consequence of which, the moment she disappeared, a most dreadful massacre began. Every Russian and Cossack that could be found, was immediately put to death, and their habitations were reduced to ashes. A large party of them ascended the river Kamtschatka, took possession of the fort and *ostrog*, which had just been quitted by the commissary, and slew all that were in it; and all the buildings were consumed by fire, the fort and church only excepted. Here they received information, that the Russian vessels which had got the commissary on-board, was still remaining on the coast, and therefore resolved to defend themselves in the fort.

Fortunately the vessel was driven back to the harbour; for, had she prosecuted her voyage, the utter extirpation of the Russians must have ensued. The Cossacks, on their landing, finding that their wives and children had been murdered, and their habitations consumed by fire, were enraged almost to madness. They proceeded immediately to the fort, and attacked it most furiously; the natives defending it with equal resolution. The powder magazine at length took fire, the fort was blown up, and with it almost every man that was in it. Various rencounters and assassinations succeeded this event: till, at length, two of the leaders being slain, and another (first dispatching his wife and children) having put a period to his own existence, peace was again established. From that period no particular disturbances happened till 1740, when a few Russians were slain in a tumult, but no farther consequences ensued; every thing has since gone on very peaceably, excepting the insurrection at Bolcheretsk, which has been already mentioned.

Though a great many of the inhabitants were lost in quelling the rebellion of 1731, the country had afterwards recovered itself, and was become as populous as ever in 1767; when the small-pox was, for the first time, introduced among them, by a soldier from Okotsk. It broke out with much fury, and was as dreadful in its progress as the plague; seeming almost to threaten their entire extirpation. Twenty-thousand were supposed to have died by this disorder in Kamtschatka, the Kurile Islands, and the Koreki country. The inhabitants of whole villages were sometimes swept away; of which sufficient proofs remain. There are eight *ostrogs* about the bay of Awatska, which we were told had been completely inhabited, but now they are all become desolate, except St. Peter and St. Paul; and only seven Kamtschadales, who are tributary, reside in that. At the *ostrog* of Paratounca, no more than thirty-six native inhabitants remain, including men, women, and children; though it

contained three hundred and sixty before it was visited by the small-pox. Four extensive *ostrogs* were passed in the journey to Bolcheretsk, which had not a single inhabitant in any of them. The number of the natives is now so much diminished, and so many Russians and Cossacks are continually pouring in upon them, and intermixing with them by marriage, that, it is probable, very few of them will be left in less than half a century.

The government established over this country by the Russians, considered as a military one, is remarkably mild and equitable. The natives are suffered to elect their own magistrates in their own mode, who exercise the same powers they have ever been accustomed to. One of these, called a *Toion*, presides over each *ostrog*, to whom all differences are referred; and who awards fines and punishments for all offences and misdemeanors; referring to the governor of Kamtschatka those which are the most intricate and enormous, not choosing to decide upon them himself. The *Toion* also appoints a civil officer under him, called a corporal, who assists him in his duty, and officiates for him in his absence.

An edict has been issued by the Empress of Russia, that no offence shall be punishable with death. But we are told, that in cases of murder (which rarely happens here) the *knout* is inflicted with such severity, that the offender seldom survives the punishment.

In some districts, the only tribute that is exacted is a fox's skin; in others a sable's; and, in the Kurile isles, a sea-otter's; but as the latter is considerably more valuable, the tribute of several persons is paid with a single skin. The tribute is collected by the *Toions*, in the different districts, and is so inconsiderable as hardly to be considered in any other light than as an acknowledgment of the Russian dominion over them.

The articles exported from this country consist entirely of furs, and this business is principally conducted by a company of merchants appointed by the empress. Twelve was the number of them originally, but three have since been added to them. Besides certain privileges allowed them, they are distinguished by bearing a gold medal, expressive of the empress's protection of the fur trade. There are other inferior traders, chiefly Cossacks, in different parts of the country.

European articles are the principal that are imported, but they are not solely confined to Russian manufactures; they come from England, Holland, Siberia, Bucharina, the Calmucks, and China. They chiefly consist of course woollen and linen cloths, stockings, bonnets, and gloves; thin Persian silks, pieces of nankeen, cottons, handkerchiefs, both silk and cotton; iron stoves, brass and copper pans, files, guns, powder and shot; hatchets, knives, looking-glasses, sugar, flour, boots, &c.

The principal and most valuable part of the fur trade lies among the islands between Kamtschatka and America. Behring

by the
journey
of them.
and so
upon
is pro-
tury.
ssians,
uitable.
in their
r been
s. over
id who
mide-
e which
decide
r under
ficiates

hat no
d, that
t is in-
ives the

a fox's
otter's;
bute of
is col-
incon-
than as

rely of
any of
umber
them.
quished
ection
y Cos-

t they
come
, and
loths,
ces of
iron
shot;

e lies
hring

[The text in this block is extremely faint and illegible, appearing as a series of light grey smudges and ghosting of characters. It is likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.]



first discovered those in 1741, and as they were found to abound with sea-otters, the Russian merchants sought anxiously for the other islands seen by that navigator, south-east of Kamtschatka, named in Muller's map the islands of Abraham, Seduction, &c. They fell in with no less than three groups of Islands in these expeditions. The first, about fifteen degrees east of Kamtschatka; another, twelve degrees east of the former; and the third, Oonalashka, and the neighbouring islands.

The sea-otter skins, which are certainly the most valuable article in the fur trade, are principally drawn from these islands; which being now under the Russian dominion, the merchants have factors residing in the settlements there, for the sole purpose of bartering with the natives.

The persons of the natives having already been described, we shall now add, that in their stature they are below the common height, which is attributed to their marrying so very early; both sexes usually engaging in the conjugal state at thirteen or fourteen years of age. They are exceedingly industrious, and may be properly contrasted with the Russians and Cossacks, who frequently intermarry with them, apparently for no other reason, but that they may be supported in laziness and sloth.

Their habitations consist of three distinct sorts, their *jourts*, *balagans*, and *log-houses*, which are here called *isbas*; they inhabit the first in the winter, and the second in the summer; the third are introduced by the Russians, wherein only the wealthier people reside. The *jourts* are thus constructed:—A kind of oblong square is dug about six feet deep in the earth; the dimensions must be proportioned to the numbers who are to inhabit it, for it is usual for several to live together in the same *jourt*. Strong wooden posts, or pillars are fastened in the ground, at equal distances from each other, on which the beams intended to support the roof are extended; which is formed by joists, one end of which rests upon the ground, and the other on the beams. Between the joints the interstices are filled up with wicker work, and turf is spread over the whole. The external appearance of a *jourt* resembles a round squat hillock. A hole, serving for a chimney, window, and door, is left in the centre, and the inhabitants go in and out by the assistance of a long pole, having notches deep enough to afford a little security for the toe. On the side, and even with the ground, there is another entrance, appropriated to the use of the women; but if a man passes in or out of this door, he becomes as much an object of ridicule as a sailor who descends through lubber's-hole.

A *jourt* consists of one apartment, forming an oblong square. Broad platforms, made of boards, are extended along the sides, at the height of about six inches from the ground, which serve them for sitting on, and on which they repose, first taking care to cover them with mats and skins. The fire-place is on one

side, and on the other their provisions and culinary utensils are stowed. When they make entertainments, the compliment is considered in proportion to the heat of the *fourts*; the hotter they are made, the more gracious is the reception of the guests considered. They were always so extremely hot as to be intolerable.

To erect a *balagan*, nine posts are fixed into the earth, in three regular rows, at equal distances from each other, to the height of about twelve or thirteen feet from the surface. About ten feet from the ground rafters are laid from post to post, and securely fastened by strong ropes. The joists are laid upon these rafters, and a turf-covering complete the platform or floor of the *balagan*. A roof of a conical figure is raised upon this, by means of long poles, which are fastened to the rafters at one end, and meet together in a point at the top. The whole is covered, or rather thatched, with a coarse kind of grass.

The *isbas*, or log-houses, are thus erected:—Long timbers are piled horizontally, with the ends let into each other, and the seams are filled up or caulked with moss. Like those of our common cottages, the roof is sloping, and thatched either with grass or rushes. Each log-house has three apartments in the inside. One end may be said to be a kind of entry, which extends the whole width and height of the house, and seems to be a kind of receptacle for the bulky articles, as sledges, harness, &c. This has a communication with their best apartment, which is in the middle, and is furnished with broad benches, calculated both for eating and sleeping upon. A door leads from this into the kitchen, almost half of which is taken up with an oven or fire-place, which is let into the wall that separates the middle apartment and the kitchen, and is so constructed as to communicate the heat to both rooms at the same time.

A town is called an *ostrog* in Kamtschatka, and consists of several houses or habitations of the various kinds above-mentioned.

The dress of the Kamtschadale women having already been described, we shall proceed to that of the men. The upper garment resembles that of a wagoner's frock. If for summer wear, it is made of nankeen, if intended for winter, is made of a skin, (generally that of a deer or dog) having one side tanned, and the hair preserved on the other, which is worn innermost. A close jacket of nankeen, or some other cotton stuff, is the next under this; and beneath that, a shirt made of thin Persian silk, of a red, blue, or yellow colour. They wear also a pair of long breeches, or tight trousers, of leather, reaching below the calf of the leg. They have a fur cap, having two flaps that are usually tied up close to the head, but are permitted to fall round the shoulders in bad weather.

Their fur dress, which was presented by Major Behm's son to Captain King, was one of those worn on ceremonious occasions

...y utensils are
...compliment is
...ts; the hotter
...of the guests
...as to be into-

...the earth, in
...other, to the
...rface. About
...st to post, and
...aid upon these
...or floor of the
...this, by means
...one end, and
...is covered, or

...ng timbers are
...other, and the
...e those of our
...ed either with
...rtments in the
...f entry, which
...and seems to
...s, as sledges,
...eir best apart-
...ed with broad
...upon. A door
...ich is taken up
...that separates
...so constructed
...same time.
...nd consists of
...ls above-men-

...already been
...The upper
...if for summer
...ter, is made of
...e side tanned,
...rn innermost.
...n stuff, is the
...f thin Persian
...also a pair of
...ing below the
...flaps that are
...d to fall round

Behm's son to
ious occasions



by th
just c
chequ
appea
inche
leathe
broad
sleeve
it also
breast
sent w
of bod
the sam
wear t
is of a

The
deg. to
chatka
the ne
Kuriles
came a
in num

Man
domini
perhaps
merce v
sive cha
nication

As th
had giv
structed
tionary
passage
in his r
best ad
desired
in writin
most eff
opinions
and per
the vess
and uns
proachin
would ot
discover
eastward
the Kur
islands th
which an

by the *Toins*. It is shaped like the exterior garment we have just described, and consists of small triangular pieces of fur, chequered brown and white, and so ingeniously joined as to appear to be of the same skin. A border of the breadth of six inches, curiously wrought with different coloured threads of leather, surrounds the bottom, and produces a rich effect. A broad edging of the sea otter's skin is suspended to this. The sleeves are ornamented with the same materials. An edging of it also encircles the neck, and surrounds the opening at the breast. It is lined with a beautiful white skin. And the present was accompanied with a pair of gloves, a cap, and a pair of boots, executed with the utmost neatness, and composed of the same materials. The Russians who reside in Kamtschatka, wear the European dress; and the uniform worn by the troops, is of a dark green turned up with red.

The Kuriles are a chain of islands extending from latitude 51 deg. to 45 min., running from the southern promontory of Kamtschatka to Japan, in a south-west direction. The inhabitants of the neighbourhood of Lopatka, who were themselves called Kuriles, gave those islands the same name as soon as they became acquainted with them. Spanberg says they are twenty-two in number, exclusive of the very small ones.

Many of the inhabitants of those islands that are under the dominion of Russia are now converted to Christianity. And perhaps the time is not far distant, when an advantageous commerce will be carried on between Kamtschatka and this extensive chain of islands, which may afterwards produce a communication with Japan itself.

As the Lords of the Admiralty, in the instructions which they had given for the regulation of the present voyage, had instructed the commanding officer of the expedition with a discretionary power, in case of not succeeding in the discovery of a passage from the Pacific Ocean into the Atlantic, to make choice, in his return to England, of whatever route he should judge best adapted for the improvement of geography, Captain Gore desired that the principal officers would deliver their sentiments in writing, relative to the mode in which these instructions might most effectually be carried into execution. The result of their opinions, which, to his great satisfaction he found unanimous, and perfectly agreeing with his own, was, that the condition of the vessels, of the sails, cordage, &c. rendered it hazardous and unsafe to make any attempt, as the winter was now approaching, to navigate the sea between Asia and Japan, which would otherwise have opened to us the most copious field for discovery; that it was therefore most prudent to steer to the eastward of that island, and in the way thither, to sail along the Kuriles, and examine, in a most particular manner, those islands that are situated nearest to the northern coast of Japan, which are said to be of considerable extent, and not sub-

ject to the Russians or Japanese. Should they have the good fortune to meet with some secure and commodious harbours in any of those islands, they supposed they might prove of considerable importance, as convenient places of shelter for subsequent navigators, who might be employed in exploring the seas, or as the means of producing a commercial intercourse among the adjacent dominions of the two above-mentioned empires. The next object was to take a survey of the coasts of the Japanese isles; after which they designed to make the coast of China, as far to the north as was in their power, and proceed along it to Macao.

This plan of operations being adopted, Captain King was ordered by Captain Gore, in case the two ships should separate, to repair without delay to Macao; and on the 9th of October, about six o'clock in the afternoon, having cleared the entrance of the bay of Awatska, they made sail to the south-eastward, the wind blowing from the north-west-and-by-west. A perfect calm ensued at midnight, and continued till noon of the following day; at which time the light-house was at the distance of fourteen or fifteen miles, bearing north-half-west; and Cape Gavareea bore south-by-west-half-west. The depth of water being sixty and seventy fathoms, our people were very profitably engaged in catching cod, which were extremely fine, and in great abundance. A breeze springing up from the west about three in the afternoon, they steered to the south along the coast.

On Monday the 11th, the ships were in the latitude of 52 deg. 4 min., and in the longitude of 158 deg. 31 min., and did not approach very near the Kurile Islands. On the 19th the latitude, at this time, was 44 deg. 12 min., and longitude 150 deg. 40 min.; so that, after all their exertions, they had the mortification of finding themselves, according to the Russian charts, upon the same meridian with Nadeegsda, which is represented as the most southerly of all the Kurile Islands, and about sixty miles to the southward.

All hopes of further discovery to the northward of Japan was reluctantly abandoned; but on the 20th, at break of day, they had the satisfaction of perceiving high land towards the west, which proved to be Japan. At eight o'clock, it was the distance of ten or twelve miles, and extended from south-by-west to north-west. A low flat cape, which apparently constituted the southern part of the entrance of a bay, bore north-west three-quarters west. Near the south extremity, a hill of a conic figure appeared, bearing south-by-west three-quarters west. To the north of this hill there seemed to be an inlet of very considerable depth, the northern side of whose entrance is formed by a low point of land; and, as well as they were enabled to judge by the assistance of glasses, has a small island near it towards the south.

Having stood on till nine o'clock, they had by that time ap-

proached within five or six miles of the land, which bore west-three-quarters-south. The depth of water was fifty-eight fathoms, with a bottom composed of very fine sand. They now tacked, and stood off; but, as the wind failed them, they had proceeded at noon, to no greater distance from shore than about three leagues. This part of the coast extended from north-west-by-north to south-half-east, and was principally bold and cliffy. The low cape above-mentioned was about six leagues distant, bearing north-west-by-west; and the northern point of the inlet was in the direction of south-three-quarters-west. The latitude, by observation, was 40 deg. 5 min., and the longitude 142 deg. 28 min. The most northerly land in view, was supposed to be the northern extremity of Japan.* It is somewhat lower than the other parts; and, from the range of the elevated lands that were discerned over it from the mast-head, the coast manifestly appeared to tend to the westward. The northern point of the inlet was imagined by them to be Cape Nambu; and they conjectured that the town† stood in a break of the high land, towards which the inlet apparently directed itself. The neighbouring country is of a moderate elevation, and has a double range of mountains. It is well furnished with wood, and exhibits a pleasing variety of hills and dales. They perceived the smoke arising from several villages or towns, and saw many houses in delightful and cultivated situations, at a small distance from the shore.

While the calm continued, that they might loose no time, they put the fishing-lines overboard in ten fathoms' water, but met with no success. This being the only diversion which present circumstances permitted them to enjoy, they very sensibly felt the disappointment; and looked back with regret to the cod-banks of the dismal regions they had lately quitted, which had furnished so many salutary meals, and by the amusement they afforded, had given a variety to the tedious recurrence of the same nautical and astronomical observations, and the wearisome succession of calms and gales.

At two o'clock in the afternoon, the wind blew fresh from the south, and by four, had reduced them to close reefed top-sails, and obliged them to stand off to the south-eastward, in consequence of which course, and the gloominess of the weather, they soon lost sight of land. They kept on during the whole night, and till eight o'clock the following morning, when the wind shifting to the north, and becoming moderate, they made sail, and steered a west-south-west course towards the land,

* The most accurate survey of the eastern coast of Japan appears to be that which was published by Jansen in his Atlas, and compiled with a great degree of exactness from the Journals and Charts of the Costricom and Breskes. We have, therefore, thought proper to adopt, wherever we could nearly ascertain the identity of the situations, the names affixed in Jansen's map to the corresponding headlands and points observed along the coast.

† Jansen calls this town Nabo.

which, however, they did not make before three in the afternoon ; at which time it was seen to extend from north-west-half-west to west. The most northerly extremity was a continuation of the elevated land, which was the southernmost they had observed the preceding day. The land to the westward they conjectured to be the *Hofe Tafel Berg* (or High Table Hill) of Jansen. The coast, between the two extremes, was low, and could scarcely be perceived, except from the mast-head.

They proceeded towards the coast till eight in the evening, when the distance from it was about five leagues ; and having shortened sail for the night, they steered in a southerly direction, sounding every four hours ; but the depth of water was so great, that they did not find ground, with a hundred and sixty fathoms of line.

They again saw land on the 28th about six o'clock in the morning. It lay twelve leagues to the southward of that which had been seen the day before, and extended from west-by-north to west-south-west. Steering south-west obliquely with the shore, they saw, at ten o'clock, more land in that direction. To the west of this land, which is low and level, were two islands, as was supposed, though some doubts were entertained whether they were not united with the neighbouring low ground. The haziness of the weather, as well as the distance, rendered it likewise impossible to ascertain, whether there were not some inlets or harbours between the projecting points, which here seemed to promise tolerable shelter.

At noon the northern extremity of the land in view bore north-west-by-north, and a lofty peaked hill, over a steep head-land, was fifteen or sixteen miles distant, bearing west-by-north.

The present latitude, by observation, was 38 deg. 16 min., and longitude 142 deg. 9 min. The mean of the variation was found to be 1 deg. 20 min. east.

The land disappeared from view between three and four o'clock in the afternoon ; and from its breaking off so suddenly, it was imagined that what they had seen this day was an island, or, perhaps, a group of islands, situated off the main land of Japan ; but, as the islands called by D'Anville Matsima, and by Jansen the Schilpads, though represented as being nearly in the same situation, are unequal in extent to the land seen by them, this point must be left undetermined.

The ships continued their course to the south-west during the remainder of the day, and at midnight, found the depth of water to be seventy fathoms, over a bottom of fine brown sand. They therefore hauled up towards the east, till the next morning, when they again had sight of land, about eleven leagues to the south of that which they had seen the preceding day.

On Saturday the 30th, at nine o'clock in the morning, the land was seen extending from west-by-north to north-west a quarter west, at the distance of fifteen or sixteen leagues. It

showed itself in detached parts, but they were not near enough to ascertain whether they were small islands or parts of Japan.

At noon the land extended from west to north-west, and the nearest part of it was twelve or thirteen leagues distant, beyond which the coast appeared to run in a western direction. The latitude, by observation, was 36 deg. 41 min., and the longitude 142 deg. 6 min. The point to the north, which was imagined to be near the southernmost land, seen the preceding day, was supposed to be Cape de Kennis; and the break to the south of this point, was thought to be the mouth of the river, on which the town named Gissima is said to stand. The next cape is, in all probability, that which is called Boomtie's Point, in the Dutch charts; and the most southerly one, of which the ships were abreast at noon, was conjectured to be near Low Point (termed by Jansen *Lage Hoeck*, and placed by him in the latitude of 30 deg. 40 min.), and that the distance was too great to admit of seeing the low land, in which it probably terminates, towards the east.

On the 1st of November the fair weather enabled the voyagers to obtain, with four different quadrants, forty-two sets of distances of the moon from the sun and stars, each set comprehending six observations. These nearly coinciding with each other, fix, with great accuracy, their situation, at twelve o'clock this day, in the longitude of 141 deg. 32 min.; the latitude, by observation, being 35 deg. 17 min. In the reckonings of the 31st of October, was found an error, with respect to latitude, of eight miles, and of seventeen in this day's computations; from which circumstance, as well as from the ship being much more to the east than was expected, it was inferred, that there had been a violent current from the south-westward.

The ships again made the land towards the west, at two o'clock in the afternoon, at the distance of twelve or thirteen leagues. The most southerly land in view, imagined to be White Point (or *White Hoeck*, placed by Jansen in the latitude of 35 deg. 24 min.), bore west-south-west-half-west. A hummock to the northward, which had an insular appearance, bore north-north-west-half-west; and within this was discerned from the mast-head some low land, which was supposed to be Sand-down Point, called *Sandvynege Hoeck* by Jansen, who has placed it in the latitude of 35 deg. 55. min.

Steering for the land till between five and six, many Japanese vessels were seen close in with the land, some standing along the shore, and others apparently occupied in fishing. They now descried to the westward a mountain of extraordinary height with a round summit rising far inland. There is no high ground in the neighbourhood of it, the coast being of a moderate elevation, and, as far as the haziness of the horizon permitted them to judge, much broken and indented by small inlets. But, to the south of the hummock island above-mentioned, there appeared,

at a considerable distance up the country, a ridge of hills, which extended towards the mountain, and might perhaps join with it. Its latitude was judged to be 35 deg. 20 min., and its longitude 140 deg. 26 min., the latter being estimated by its distance from the ships, at the time, fifteen leagues.

As the coast of Japan is represented, in the Dutch charts, as extending nine or ten leagues to the south-west of White Point, the ships tacked at eight o'clock in the evening, and stood off to the eastward, with a view of weathering that point. They again tacked, at midnight, to the south-westward, under the expectation of falling in with the coast to the south, but were surprised, at eight the next morning, to see the hummock at no greater distance than three leagues, in the direction of west-north-west. At noon, they found, by observation, that they were actually in the latitude of 35 deg. 43 min., at a time when, according to their reckonings, it was 34 deg. 48 min. It therefore appeared, that, during the eight hours in which they imagined they had proceeded nine leagues to the south-westward, they had really been carried eight leagues from the situation they left, in a totally opposite direction; which occasioned, upon the whole, a difference of seventeen leagues in the computation in that inconsiderable space of time. From this error it was estimated that the current had set at the rate of at least five knots an hour to the north-east by north. The present longitude was 141 deg. 16 min.

On Wednesday the 3rd, in the morning, they found themselves, by reckoning, at the distance of upwards of fifty leagues from the coast; which circumstance, united to the consideration of the very uncommon effect of currents already experienced, the advanced period of the year, the variable and uncertain state of the weather, and the small prospect of any alteration for the better, induced Captain Gore to form the resolution of leaving Japan and prosecuting the voyage to China; particularly as he entertained hopes, that, since the tract he intended to pursue had not yet been explored, he might perhaps find an opportunity of making amends, by some new and important discovery, for the disappointments sustained upon this coast.

If any readers should be inclined to suppose that Captain Gore relinquished this object too hastily, it may be observed, in addition to the facts before stated, that the coast of Japan, according to Kœmfer's description of it, is the most dangerous in all the known world;* that it would have been exceedingly hazardous, in case of distress, to have run into any of the harbours of that country, where, if we may credit the most authentic writers, the aversion of the natives to a communication with strangers, has prompted them to the commission of the most flagrant acts of barbarity; that the vessels were in a leaky condition, that the

* Kœmfer's History of Japan, vol. i. pp. 92, 93, 94, and 102.

rigging was so rotten as to require continual repairs, and that the sails were almost entirely worn out, and incapable of withstanding the vehemence of a gale of wind.

In proceeding towards the Bashee Isles the ships passed much pumice-stone; amazing quantities of which substance floating in the sea betwixt the Japan and the Bashee Isles, give reason to suppose that, in this quarter of the Pacific Ocean, some great volcanic convulsion must have happened; and consequently afford some degree of probability to the opinion of Mr. Muller, relative to the separation of the continent of Jeso, and the disappearance of Staten Island and the Company's Land.

About six o'clock in the afternoon of the 13th, they steered to the south-south-west, Captain Gore deeming it useless to stand any longer towards the south-south-west, as they were nearly in the same meridian with the Ladrões or Marianne Islands, and at no very considerable distance from the track of the Manilla galleons.

In the morning of Sunday the 14th had fine weather, and the wind, which blew moderately, shifted by degrees to the north-east point, and proved to be the trade-wind. At ten o'clock, Mr. Trevenen, one of the young gentlemen who accompanied Captain King in the *Discovery*, after the death of Captain Clerke, saw land in the direction of south-west, which had the appearance of a peaked mountain. At noon the longitude was 142 deg. 2 min., and the latitude 24 deg. 37 min.

The land in view, which was now discovered to be an island, was nine or ten leagues distant, bearing south-west-half-west; and, at two o'clock in the afternoon, descried another to the west-north-westward. This second island, when viewed at a distance, appears like two; the southern point consisting of a lofty hill of a conic figure, united by a narrow neck to the northern land, which is of a moderate elevation. This island being manifestly of greater extent than that to the southward, they directed their course towards it, and the next morning, at six, making sail for it, they discovered another high island, in the direction of north-three-quarters-west; the island to the southward being on the same rhomb line, and the south extreme of the island a-head bearing west-by-north. At nine o'clock they were abreast of the middle island, and within the distance of a mile from it: but Captain Gore, finding that a boat could not land without running some risk from the heavy surf that broke against the shore, continued his course to the westward. The latitude at noon, by observation, was 24 deg. 50 min., and the longitude 140 deg. 56 min.

The length of this island, in the direction of south-south-west, and north-north-east, is about five miles. Its south point is an elevated barren hill, rather flat at the summit, and when seen from the west-south-west, exhibits an evident volcanic crater. The sand, earth, or rock (for it was difficult to distinguish of

which of these substances its surface was composed), displayed various colours; and they imagined that a considerable part was sulphur, not only from its appearance to the eye, but from the strong sulphureous smell perceived by them in their approach to the point. The Resolution having passed nearer the land, several of the officers of the ship thought they discerned streams proceeding from the top of the hill. These circumstances induced Captain Gore to bestow on this discovery the appellation of Sulphur Island.

The north and south islands had the appearance of single mountains, of a considerable elevation; the former was peaked, and of a conic form; the latter more square and flat at the summit.

Sulphur Island is judged to be in the latitude of 24 deg. 48 min., and the longitude of 141 deg. 12 min. The north island in the latitude of 25 deg. 14 min., and in the longitude of 141 deg. 10 min.; and the south island in the latitude of 24 deg. 22 min., and the longitude of 141 deg. 20 min.

Captain Gore now thought proper to direct his course to the west-south-west, for the Bashee Isles, with the hopes of procuring at them such a supply of refreshments as might render it less necessary to continue long at Macao. These islands received a visit from Captain Dampier, who has given a very favourable account, as well of the civility of the natives, as of the abundance of hogs and vegetables with which the country is furnished. They were afterwards seen by Commodore Byron and Captain Wallis, who passed them without landing.

For the purpose of extending the view in the day time, the ships sailed at the distance of between two and three leagues from each other: and during the night proceeded under an easy sail; so that it was scarcely possible to avoid observing any land that lay in the vicinity of their course. In this manner they continued their progress without any interesting occurrence, having a fresh breeze from the north-east, till Monday the 22nd, when it augmented to a strong gale, with vehement squalls of wind and rain, which reduced them to close-reefed top-sails.

The following day, at twelve o'clock, the latitude, by account, was 21 deg. 5 min., and the longitude 123 deg. 20 min. About six in the afternoon, being at the distance of only one-and-twenty leagues from the Bashee islands, according to their position in Mr. Dalrymple's map, and the weather being squally, with a thick haze, they handed the fore-topsail, and hauled the wind towards the north-north-west.

The ships continued to stand to the north-north-west till nine, when they tacked, and steered to the south south-eastward, till four o'clock in the morning of Thursday the 25th, at which time they wore. In the night there was an eclipse of the moon, but they were prevented by the rain from making any observation. It unfortunately happened that one of the Discovery's people,

being occupied at the time of the greatest darkness in stowing the main-top-mast-stay-sail, fell overboard, but immediately catching hold of a rope, which was providentially hanging out of the fore-chains into the sea, and the ship being brought into the wind without delay, he was got on-board with no other hurt than a trifling bruise on one of his shoulders.

On the 26th, at twelve o'clock, the latitude, by observation, was 21 deg. 12 min., and the longitude 120 deg. 25 min. In the course of this day many tropic birds and a flock of ducks, also porpoises and dolphins were seen; and the following morning at six o'clock, they again made sail to the west, in search of the Bashee Isles.

Captain King began now to entertain apprehensions, lest, in the prosecution of a search for those islands, they should get so far to the south as to be under the necessity of passing to leeward of the Pratas: in which case it might have proved extremely difficult for such bad sailing vessels to fetch Macao, especially if the wind should continue to blow (as it now did) from the north-north-east and north. The Captain having some doubts whether Mr. Dalrymple's maps were on board the Resolution, made sail, and hailed her; and having informed Captain Gore of the situation of these shoals, and his apprehensions of being driven too much to the southward, the latter gave him to understand that he should continue his course during that day, being still not without hopes of finding Mr. Byron's longitude right; and therefore ordered Captain King to spread a few miles to the south.

The weather at twelve o'clock became hazy; the latitude at that time was 21 deg. 2 min. and the longitude 118 deg. 30 min. At six in the afternoon, having got to the west of the Bashee Islands, according to Admiral Byron's account, Captain Gore hauled the wind to the north-westward, under an easy sail, the wind blowing with great vehemence, and there being every prospect of a tempestuous night.

On the 28th, at four o'clock in the morning, the Resolution, which was then half a mile a-head of the Discovery, wore, and the crew of the latter ship, at the same time, perceived breakers close under their lee. On the approach of day-light they had sight of the island of Prata; and between the hours of six and seven, stood towards the shoal, but finding themselves unable to weather it, bore away, and ran to leeward. As they passed along the south side, within the distance of a mile from the reef, they saw two remarkable patches on the edge of the breakers, that had the appearance of wrecks.

At noon, the latitude discovered by double altitudes, was 20 deg. 39 min. and the longitude was 116 deg. 45 min. The island of Prata was now three or four leagues distant, bearing north three quarters east. Near the southern extremity of the island, and on the south-western side of the reef, they imagined that

they saw from the mast-head several openings in the reef, which seemed to promise secure anchorage.

The extent of the Prata shoal is considerable ; for it is about six leagues from north to south, and extends three or four leagues to the east of the island ; its limits to the westward they had not an opportunity of ascertaining. Its north-eastern extremity is judged to be in the latitude of 20 deg. 58 min. and the longitude of 117 deg. ; and its south-west end they place in the latitude of 20 deg. 45 min. and the longitude of 116 deg. 44 min.

The ships carried a press of sail during the remainder of the day, and kept the wind, which now blew from the north-east by north, in order to secure a passage to Macao. It was a fortunate circumstance that the wind favoured them towards the evening, by veering two points more to the eastward ; for, if the wind and weather had continued the same as they had been in the preceding week, they would scarcely have been able to have fetched that port, in which case they must have repaired to Batavia ; a place they had good reason to dread, from the terrible havock which the unhealthiness of the climate had occasioned among the crews of the former vessels that had been employed in voyages of discovery, and had touched there.

In the morning of Monday the 29th, they passed some Chinese fishing-boats, the crews of which eyed the ships with marks of great indifference. In fishing they make use of a large dredge-net, resembling a hollow cone in shape, with a flat iron rim fixed to the lower part of its mouth. The net is fastened with cords to the head and stern of the boat, which being left to follow the impulse of the wind, draws the net after it, with the iron rim dragging along the bottom. The sea was covered with the wrecks of boats which had been lost, as was supposed, in the late stormy weather.

The latitude at twelve o'clock, by observation, was 22 deg. 1 min. ; and since the preceding noon the ships had run a hundred and ten miles upon a north-west course. The next morning they ran along the Lema Isles, which, like the other islands situated on this coast, are destitute of wood ; and as far as they had an opportunity of observing, devoid of cultivation. About nine o'clock a Chinese boat, which had before been with the Resolution, came alongside the Discovery with offers of a pilot, which, however, Captain King declined, as it was incumbent upon him to follow his consort. Not long afterwards they passed the westernmost of the Lema rocks ; but instead of hauling up to the north of the Grand Ladrone Island, as was done by Lord Anson in the Centurion, they sailed to leeward.

From apprehensions of missing Macao, and being obliged to repair to Batavia, added to the strong and ardent desires of hearing intelligence from Europe, the crew of the Discovery rejoiced on observing the Resolution soon after fire a gun, and display her colours as a signal for a pilot. On the repetition of

the signal there was an excellent race between four Chinese boats; and Captain Gore engaged with the person who arrived first, to conduct the ship to the Typa, for the sum of thirty dollars, sending word, at the same time, to Captain King, that, as he could easily follow him with the Discovery, that expense might be saved to him.

In a short time afterwards a second pilot getting on board the Resolution, insisted on guiding the ship; and immediately laying hold of the wheel, began to order the sails to be trimmed. This gave rise to a violent altercation, which was at length compromised by their agreeing to divide the money between them.

In pursuance of the instructions which had been given to Captain Cook by the Lords of the Admiralty, it now became necessary to desire the officers and men to deliver up their journals, and all other papers they might have in their possession, relative to the history of the voyage. Some degree of delicacy, as well as firmness, seemed to be requisite in the execution of these orders. Captain King, therefore, assembled the Discovery's people on deck, and informed them of the orders that had been received, and the reasons which, in his opinion, ought to induce them to yield a perfect obedience. He, at the same time, gave them to understand, that whatever papers they wished not to have sent to the Lords of the Admiralty, should be sealed up in their own presence, and preserved in his custody till the intentions of their lordships, respecting the publication of the history of the voyage, were accomplished; after which he said they should be faithfully restored to them.

Captain King had the satisfaction to find that his proposals met with the approbation and the ready compliance not only of the officers, but also of the rest of the ship's company; and every scrap of paper that contained an account of any transactions relating to the present voyage was immediately given up. The Captain observes, upon this occasion, that it is but doing justice to the seamen of this ship to declare, that they were the best disposed, and the most obedient men he ever knew, though the greatest part of them were very young, and had never served before in a ship of war.

Captain Gore made the same proposals to the people of the Resolution, who instantly complied with them, and delivered up all their papers which had any reference to the voyage.

The next day, December the 1st, the ships stood on their tacks, during the afternoon, between the Grand Ladrone and the island of Potoe, having passed to the east of the latter. The tide beginning to ebb at nine o'clock, they again cast anchor in six fathoms' water; the town of Macao being at the distance of nine or ten miles, in a north-west direction, and the isle of Potoe bearing south-half-west, six or seven miles distant.

On the 2nd of December, in the morning, one of the Chinese contractors, who are known by the appellation of *Compradors*,

came on-board the *Resolution*, and sold to Captain Gore as much beef as weighed two hundred pounds, together with a considerable quantity of eggs, oranges, and greens. The *Discovery* received a proportional share of these articles; and an agreement was made with the *Comprador* to provide a daily supply, for which, however, he insisted on being paid before hand.

As the pilot now pretended that he could conduct the ships no further, Captain Gore was under the necessity of discharging him; and at two o'clock in the afternoon, the tide flowing, they took up their anchors, and at seven, anchored again in three fathoms and a half of water; at which time Macao bore west, at the distance of one league.

Captain Gore, in the evening, dispatched Captain King to Macao, to pay a visit to the Portuguese governor, and to request the favour of his assistance in supplying the ships with provisions, which he imagined might be done on more moderate terms than the *Comprador* would undertake to furnish them. Captain King, at the same time, took an account of the naval stores, of which both the ships were in great want, with an intention of repairing immediately to Canton, and making application to the servants of our East-India Company, who resided there at that time. The governor was indisposed, and was therefore unwilling to receive visitors, but Captain King was assured that he might depend on meeting with every assistance in their power. This, however, he understood would be very inconsiderable, and indeed, the answer that was returned to Captain King's first request, furnished a sufficient proof of the reduced state of the Portuguese power; for on his signifying to the major his desire of proceeding to canton as soon as possible, the latter acquainted him that they could not presume to provide a boat for him till permission had been obtained from the *Hoppo*, or officer of the customs; and that it was necessary to apply for this purpose, to the Chinese government at Canton.

Captain King was returning to the ship in a state of great dejection, when the Portuguese officer, who accompanied him, asked him whether he did not intend to visit the English gentlemen at Macao. It is unnecessary to add with what transport he received this intelligence, and he and his companions walked towards the house of one of their countrymen. The reception they met with was by no means deficient in civility or kindness, though, from the state of agitation they were in, it appeared to them rather cold and formal.

The intelligence gained, concerning the state of affairs in Europe, rendered the voyagers more anxious to accelerate their departure as much as they possibly could. Captain King, therefore, renewed his endeavours to procure a passage to Canton, but did not meet with success. He was now informed, that the difficulty arising from the settled policy of the country, would, in all probability, be greatly augmented by an incident which

had occurred a few weeks before his arrival. Captain Panton had been sent from Madras in a ship of war of twenty-five guns, called the Seahorse, for the purpose of urging the payment of a debt which the Chinese merchants of Canton owed to private British subjects in Europe and India, and which amounted to almost a million sterling, including the principal and compound interest. With this view, he was directed to make a peremptory demand of an audience of the Viceroy of Canton, which, after some delay, and not before recourse had been had to menaces, was at length granted. The answer he received, with regard to the subject of his mission, was fair and satisfactory; but he had no sooner departed, than an edict was stuck up in the public places of the city, and on the houses of the Europeans, prohibiting all foreigners from lending money, on any pretence whatever, to the subjects of the Emperor of China.

The arrival of the two ships, at such a time, could not fail of giving rise to fresh alarms. Captain King, therefore, finding there was no prospect of his proceeding to Canton, dispatched a letter to the Committee of the English Supercargoes, to inform them of the reason of putting into the Tygris, and to request their assistance in procuring him a passport, as well as in forwarding the stores the ships had occasion for of which Captain King sent them a list with all possible expedition.

Early on the morning of the 4th, the vessels weighed again, and stood into the Tupa, where they moored with the stream anchor and cable to the west.

On Thursday the 9th, Captain Gore received an answer from the English Supercargoes at Canton, in which they promised to exert their most strenuous endeavours in procuring the supplies of which they were in want, with all possible dispatch, and assured him that a passport should be sent for one of the officers.

The next day, an English merchant, from one of the East Indian settlements, made application to Captain Gore for the assistance of a few of his people to navigate as far as Canton a vessel which he had purchased at Macao. Captain Gore, considering this as a good opportunity for Captain King to repair to that city, gave orders that he should take with him his second lieutenant, the lieutenant of marines, and ten sailors.

Though this was not the exact mode in which Captain King could have wished to visit Canton, yet as it was highly uncertain when the passport would arrive, and his presence might be of great service in expediting the requisite supplies, he did not scruple to go on board the vessel, having left orders with Mr. Williamson to prepare the Discovery for sea with all convenient speed, and make such additions and improvements in her upper works, as might contribute to render her more defensible. That the series of astronomical observations might not be interrupted by his absence, he intrusted Mr. Trevenin with the care of continuing them.

Captain King and his attendants quitted the harbour of Macao on Saturday the 11th; and sailing round the south-eastern extreme of the island, steered a northerly course, leaving on their right hand, as they passed along, Lantao Lintin, and several isles of smaller extent. All these islands, as well as that of Macao, which is situated to the left, are totally destitute of wood: the land is high and unfertile, and is not inhabited, except occasionally by fishermen.

The progress being retarded by contrary winds, and the lightness of the vessel, they did not arrive at Wampu till the 18th. Wampu is a small town, of which the ships of the various nations who trade with the Chinese are stationed, in order to receive their respective ladings.

Here Captain King embarked in a *sampane*, or Chinese boat, and immediately proceeded to Canton, which is eight or nine miles higher up the river. The *sampanes* are the neatest and most commodious boats for passengers that Mr. King ever saw. They are of different sizes, of great breadth upon the beam, nearly flat at the bottom, and narrow at the head and stern, which are elevated, and embellished with ornaments. The middle part, where Captain King sat, was arched over with a roof made of bamboo, which may, at pleasure, be raised or lowered; in the sides were small windows, which had shutters to them; and the apartment was furnished with tables, chairs, and handsome mats. A small waxen idol was placed in the stern, in a case of gilt leather. Before the image stood a pot that contained lighted tapers made of matches, or dry chips and gum. The fare of this boat amounted to a Spanish dollar.

Captain King reached Canton in the evening, and disembarked at the English factory, where, though his arrival was wholly unexpected, he was received with every mark of civility and respect. The stores were ready to be shipped, and the provisions could be had at a day's notice.

Captain King, being desirous of making his stay here as short as possible, requested that he might have junks or boats the next day, as it was his wish to quit Canton the following one: but a business of this nature was not to be transacted with such quickness in the Chinese dominions: leave must be obtained provisionally from the Viceroy, and application must be first made to the *Hoppo*, or principal officer of the customs for *chops* or permits.

After Captain King had waited several days, with great impatience, for the issue of his negotiation, without finding that the affair was in the least advanced, he made application to the commander of an English country ship, who intended to sail on the 25th, and who offered to take on-board the men and stores, and to lie to, unless the weather should prevent him, off Macao, till boats could be sent to receive them out of his vessel. He at the same time apprized Captain King of the danger he might perhaps incur of being driven out to sea with them.

While Mr. King was considering what steps he should take, the commander of another country ship presented him with a letter from Captain Gore, importing that he had engaged this commander to bring their party from Canton, and to deliver the supplies, at his own hazard, in the *Tupa*. All difficulties being then removed, Mr. King had leisure to bestow some attention on the purchase of stores and provisions, which he completed on the 26th; and on the succeeding day, the whole stock was conveyed on-board.

Captain Gore being of opinion that Canton would be the most advantageous market for furs, had desired Mr. King to take with him about twenty skins of sea-otters; most of which had been the property of the deceased commanders, and to dispose of them at the best price he could obtain. Mr. King having informed some of the English supercargoes of the circumstance, requested that they would recommend him to some reputable Chinese merchant, who would at once offer him a reasonable price for the skins. They accordingly directed him to a member of the *Hong*, (an appellation given to a society of the principal merchants of the city), who assured him that he might rely on his integrity, and that, in an affair of this kind, he should consider himself a mere agent, without seeking to acquire any profit for himself.

The skins being laid before this merchant, he examined them over and over again with particular attention, and at last informed Captain King that he could not think of offering more than three hundred dollars for them. As the captain was convinced, from the price at which the skins had been sold at Kamtschatka, that he had not offered one half of their value, he was obliged to drive a bargain. He, therefore, in his turn, demanded a thousand dollars; the Chinese merchant then advanced to five hundred; after which he offered Captain King a private present of porcelain and tea, which amounted to a hundred more; then he proposed to give the sum in money; and at length rose to seven hundred dollars; upon which the captain lowered his demands to nine hundred. Here, each of them declaring that he would not recede, they parted; but the Chinese speedily returned with a list of East India commodities, which he now desired that Captain King would take in exchange, and which (as the captain was afterwards informed) would have amounted in value, if faithfully delivered, to double the sum the merchant had before offered. Finding the captain unwilling to deal in this mode, he finally proposed that they should divide the difference, which Captain King, weary of the contest, agreed to, and received the eight hundred dollars.

Captain King, during his continuance at Canton, accompanied one of the English gentlemen on a visit to a person of the first distinction in the place. They were received in a long room or gallery, at the further end of which a table was placed, with a large chair

behind it, and a row of chairs extending from it, on both sides, down the room. The Captain having been previously instructed, that the point of politeness consisted in remaining unseated as long as possible, readily submitted to this piece of *etiquette*; after which he and his friend were treated with tea, and some fresh and preserved fruits. Their entertainer was very corpulent, had a dull heavy countenance, and displayed great gravity in his deportment. He had learned to speak a little broken English and Portuguese. After his two guests had taken their refreshment, he conducted them about his house and garden; and when he had shown them all the improvements he was making, they took their leave.

Captain King being desirous of avoiding the trouble and delay that might attend an application for passports, as well as of saving the unnecessary expense of hiring a *sampane*, which he was informed, amounted at least to twelve pounds sterling, had hitherto designed to go along with the supplies to Macao, in the country merchant's ship; but receiving an invitation from two gentlemen, who had found means to procure passports for four, he accepted, together with Mr. Philips, their offer of places in a Chinese boat, and intrusted Mr. Lannyon with the superintendance of the men and stores, which were to sail the following day.

On Sunday the 26th, in the evening, Captain King took his leave of the supercargoes, after having returned thanks for their many favours; among which must be mentioned a present of a considerable quantity of tea, for the use of the companies of both ships, and a copious collection of English periodical publications. The latter proved a valuable acquisition, as they not only served to beguile impatience in the prosecution of a tedious voyage homewards, but also enabled the voyagers to return not wholly unacquainted with what had been transacting in their native country during their absence.

At one o'clock in the morning of the 17th, Messrs. King and Philips, and the two English gentlemen, quitted Canton, and about the same hour of the succeeding day, arrived at Macao, having passed down a channel situated to the west of that by which Captain King had come up.

During the absence of the party from Macao, a brisk traffic had been carried on with the Chinese for sea-otter skins, the value of which had augmented every day. One sailor disposed of his stock alone, for eight hundred dollars; and a few of the best skins, which were clean, and had been carefully preserved, produced a hundred and twenty dollars each. The total amount of the value, in goods and cash, that was obtained for the furs of both the vessels, was not less than two thousand pounds sterling; and it was the general opinion, that at least two-thirds of the quantity originally procured from the Americans, were by this time spoiled and worn out, or had been bestowed as presents, and otherwise disposed of in Kamtschatka. If, in addition to these

facts, it is considered that they at first collected the furs without having just ideas of their real value ; that most of them had been worn by the savages from whom they purchased them ; that little regard was afterwards shown to their preservation ; that they were frequently made use of as bed-clothes, and likewise for other purposes, during the cruise to the northward ; and that, in all probability, they never received the full value for them in China ; the benefits that might accrue from a voyage to that part of the American coast where they were obtained, undertaken with commercial views, appears of sufficient importance to claim the public attention.

So great was the rage with which the seamen were possessed to return to Cook's River, and there procure another cargo of skins, by which they might be enabled to make their fortunes, that, at one time, they were almost on the point of proceeding to a mutiny. And Captain King acknowledges, that he could not refrain from indulging himself in a project, which was first suggested to him by the disappointment met with in being compelled to leave the Japanese archipelago, as well as the northern coast of China unexplored, and he is of opinion, that this object may still be happily attained, by means of the East India Company, not only with trifling expense, but even with the prospect of very beneficial consequences.

Captain King proposes, that the East India Company's China ships should, each, carry an additional number of men, making one hundred in the whole. Two vessels, one of two hundred tons and the other of a hundred and fifty, might, with proper notice (as Captain King was informed), be purchased at Canton ; and, as victualling is as cheap there as in Europe, he has calculated that they might be completely equipped for sea, with one year's provision and pay, for the sum of six thousand pounds, including the purchase. The expense of the requisite articles for barter is very inconsiderable.

Captain King particularly recommends that each of the ships should have a forge, five tons of unwrought iron, and a skilful smith, with an apprentice and journeyman, who might occasionally make such tools as the Indians should appear to have the greatest inclination for possessing. For though half a dozen of the finest skins obtained, were purchased with twelve large green glass beads, yet it is very certain, that the fancy of these people, for ornamental articles, is extremely capricious and variable ; and that the only sure commodity for their market is iron. To this might be added several bales of coarse woollen cloth, two or three barrels of glass and copper trinkets, and a few gross of large pointed case-knives.

The captain proposes two vessels, not only for the greater security of the voyagers, but because single ships ought never, in his opinion, to be sent out for the purpose of discovery. For where risks are frequently to be run, and uncertain and dangerous

experiments to be tried, it can by no means be expected that single ships should venture so far, as where some security is provided against an unfortunate accident.

A very ludicrous alteration took place in the dress of all the crew, in consequence of the barter which the Chinese had carried on for our sea-otter skins. On their arrival in the *Typa*, not only the sailors, but likewise the younger officers were extremely ragged in their apparel; for, as the voyage had now exceeded, almost by a year, the time it was at first supposed they should continue at sea, the far greater part of the original stock of European clothes had been long ago worn out, or repaired and patched up with skins, and the different manufactures they had met with in the course of the expedition. These were now mixed and eked out with the gayest silks and cottons that China could produce.

Captain Lannyon arrived on the 30th, with the stores and provisions, which, without delay, were stowed in due proportion on board of the two vessels. The following day, in compliance with an agreement made by Captain Gore, Captain King sent the *Discovery's* sheet anchor to the country ship, and in return, received the guns by which she before rode.

While they remained in the *Typa*, Captain King was shown, in the garden of an English gentleman at Macao, the rock under which, according to the traditional accounts, Camoens, the celebrated Portuguese poet, was accustomed to sit and compose his *Lusiad*. It is an arch of considerable height, consisting of one solid stone, and forming the entrance of a grotto dug out of the elevated ground behind it. Large spreading trees overshadow the rock, which commands a beautiful and extensive prospect of the sea, and the islands dispersed about it.

On Tuesday the 11th of January, 1780, two sailors belonging to the *Resolution* went off with a six-oared cutter; and though the most diligent search was made, both that and the succeeding day, no intelligence of her could be gained. It was imagined that these seamen had been seduced by the hopes of acquiring a fortune, if they should return to the fur islands.

According to the observations that were made while the vessels lay here, the harbour of Macao is situated in the latitude of 22 deg. 12 min. north, and the longitude of 113 deg. 47 min. east; the anchoring-place in the *Typa*, in the latitude of 22 deg. 9 min. 20 sec. north, and the longitude of 113 deg. 48 min. 34 sec. east; and the variation of the compass was 19 min. west. It was high water in the *Typa*, on the full and change days, at a quarter after five o'clock, and in the harbour of Macao, at fifty minutes past five: the greatest rise was six feet one inch. The flood seemed to come from the south-east; but on account of the numerous islands lying off the mouth of the river of Canton, we could not properly ascertain that point.

The ships unmoored on the 12th of January, at twelve o'clock,

and scaled the guns, which, on board the *Discovery* amounted at this time to ten; so that her people, by means of four additional ports, could fight seven on a side. In the *Resolution*, likewise, the number of guns had been augmented from twelve to sixteen; and, in each of the vessels, a strong barricade had been carried round the upper works, and all other precautions taken to give this inconsiderable force a respectable appearance.

It was considered a duty to furnish these means of defence, though there was some reason to believe, that they had, in a great measure, been rendered superfluous by the generosity of our enemies. Captain King had been informed at Canton, that in the public prints, which had last arrived from Great Britain, mention was made of the instructions having been found on board all the French ships of war that had been taken in Europe, importing, that their commanders, if they should happen to fall in with the ships which had sailed from England under the command of Captain Cook, should suffer them to proceed unmolested on their voyage. It was also reported that the American Congress had given similar orders to the vessels employed in their service. This intelligence being further confirmed by the private letters of some of the supercargoes, Captain Gore deemed it incumbent on him, in return for the liberal exceptions made in their favour, to refrain from embracing any opportunities of capture which these might afford, and to maintain the strictest neutrality during the whole of his voyage.

Having got under sail, about two o'clock in the afternoon, the *Resolution* saluted the fort of Macao with eleven guns; and the salutation was returned with an equal number. The wind failing at five, the ship missed stays, and drove into shallow water: but an anchor being quickly carried out, she was hauled off without sustaining any damage.

Strong gales arose and continued for some days. On the 19th, about four in the afternoon, the island of Sapata was twelve or fourteen miles distant, bearing north-west by west. This island which is denominated Sapata from its resembling a shoe. in figure, is small, elevated, and unfruitful. According to observations, it is situated in the latitude of 10 deg. 4 min. north, and the longitude of 109 deg. 10 min. east.

The fury of the gale was now so much augmented, and the sea ran so high, that they were obliged to close-reef the top-sails. The ships, during the three last days, had out-run their reckoning at the rate of twenty miles in a day; and as this could not be wholly attributed to the effects of a following sea, they partly ascribed it to a current, which, according to Captain King's calculations, had set between the noon of the 19th, and the 20th, forty-two miles to the south-south-westward; and is taken into the account in fixing the position of Sapata.

At four o'clock in the afternoon of the 20th, the extremes of Pulo Condore, and the islands that are situated off it, bore south-

east and south-west by west; and the distance from the nearest islands was about two miles. They sailed to the northward of the islands, and stood towards a harbour at the south-west end of Condore, which, having its entrance from the north-west, affords the best shelter during the north-east monsoon. At six o'clock anchored in six fathoms' water, with the best bower; and the Discovery was kept steady with a stream anchor and cable towards the south-east.

They had no sooner let go their anchors, than Captain Gore fired a gun, with a view of giving the inhabitants notice of their arrival, and drawing them towards the shore; but it had no effect. Early the next morning parties were dispatched to cut wood, as Captain Gore's principal motive for touching at this island was to supply the ships with that article. During the afternoon, a sudden gust of wind broke the stream cable, by which the Discovery rode, and obliged her people to moor with the bower anchors.

As none of the islanders had yet made their appearance, notwithstanding the firing of a second gun, Captain Gore desired Captain King to accompany him ashore in the morning of the 22nd; they proceeded along the shore for the space of about two miles, when perceiving a road that led into a wood, they landed. Here Captain King left Captain Gore, and attended by a midshipman and four armed sailors, pursued the path which appeared to point directly across the island. Arriving through a wood in an open, level, sandy country, interspersed with groves of cabbage-palm and cocoa-nut trees, and cultivated spots of tobacco and rice; they descried two huts, situated on the extremity of the wood, to which they directed their march.

Captain King and an old man in one of the huts quickly came to a perfect understanding. A few signs, particularly that significant one of shewing a handful of dollars, and then pointing to a herd of buffaloes, as well as to the fowls that were running in considerable numbers about the huts, left him under no doubts with respect to the real objects of the Captain's visit. He immediately pointed to the spot where the town was situated and made Captain King comprehend that, by repairing thither, all his necessities would be supplied.

By this time two fugitives who ran away on first seeing Captain King, had returned, and one of them was ordered by the old man to conduct the party to the town, as soon as an obstacle, of which they were not aware, should be removed. On their first leaving the wood, a herd of buffaloes, consisting of at least twenty, ran towards them, tossing up their heads, snuffing the air, and making a hideous roaring. They had followed the people to the huts, and now remained at a small distance drawn up in a body; and the old man signified to Captain King, that it would be extremely dangerous for the party to move till the buffaloes had been driven into the woods; but these animals had

recom
omp
anabl
his co
who s
peare
s don
it was
men v
handle
Aste
ducted
it lying
at the
the pre
This
which
are six
the two
ed of
the sea
kind of
of the
other la
sion ma
perly sp
Capt
house i
him, th
a room
middle
partitio
projecti
whole l
were h
men in
desired
them.
search,
been bu
On r
find th
almost

* The E
of China,
to assist i
they watch
without th
escaping w
hore domi
wards wer

become so enraged at the sight of them, that this was not accomplished without some difficulty. The men, indeed, were unable to effect it; but, to the surprise of Captain King and his companions, they called some little boys to their assistance, who speedily drove the animals out of sight. It afterwards appeared that, in driving the buffaloes, and securing them, which is done by putting a rope through a hole made in their nostrils, it was customary to employ little boys, who, at times when the men would not venture to approach them, could stroke and handle them with impunity.

After the buffaloes had been driven off, the party were conducted to the town, which was about a mile distant; the road to it lying through a deep whitish sand. It stands near the sea-side, at the bottom of a retired bay, which affords good shelter during the prevalence of the south-west monsoon.

This town is composed of between twenty and thirty houses, which are built contiguous to each other. Besides these, there are six or seven others dispersed about the beach. The roof, at the two ends, and the side that fronts the country, are constructed of reeds in a neat manner. The opposite side, which faces the sea, is perfectly open; but the inhabitants, by means of a kind of screen made of bamboo, can exclude or admit as much of the air and sun as they think proper. There are likewise other large screens or partitions, which serve to divide, as occasion may require, the single room, of which the habitation, properly speaking, consists, into separate apartments.

Captain King and his party were conducted to the largest house in the town, belonging to their chief, or, as they called him, their captain, who was said to be absent. This house had a room at each end, separated by a partition of reeds from the middle space, which was open on both sides, and provided with partition screens like the others. It had besides, a penthouse, projecting four or five feet beyond the roof, and running the whole length on each side. At each end of the middle room were hung some Chinese paintings, representing men and women in ludicrous attitudes. In this apartment they were civilly desired to seat themselves on mats, and *betel* was presented to them. They walked about the town; and did not forget to search, though in vain, for the remains of a fort, which had been built by our countrymen near the spot in 1702.*

On returning to the Captain's house, they were sorry to find that he was not yet arrived; particularly as the time was almost elapsed which Captain Gore had fixed for their return to

* The English settled here in the year 1702, when the factory of Chussen, on the coast of China, was broke up, and brought with them some Macassar soldiers, who were hired to assist in building a fort; but the president not fulfilling his engagement with them, they watched an opportunity, and one night murdered all the English in the fort. Those without the fort, hearing a noise, took the alarm, and ran to their boats, very narrowly escaping with their lives, but not without much fatigue, hunger, and thirst, to the Johore dominions, where they were treated with great humanity. Some of these afterwards went to form a settlement at Benjar-Massean, on the island of Borneo.

the boat. Captain King observed, when they were in the house before, and now remarked it the more, that a man who seemed to be the principal person of the company, frequently retired into one of the end rooms, and staid there some little time, before he answered the questions that were put to him; which led him to suspect that the captain was all the time there, though, for reasons best known to himself, he did not choose to appear; he was confirmed in this opinion, by being stopped as he was attempting to go into the room. At length it clearly appeared that his suspicions were well-founded; for on preparing to depart, the person who had so often passed in and out, came from the room with a paper in his hand, and gave it to Captain King to read; and he was not a little surprised to find it a sort of certificate in French, as follows:—

PIERRE JOSEPH GEORGE, Evêque d'Adran, Vicaire Apost. de Cochin China, &c. &c.

Le petit *Mandarin*, porteur de cet écrit, est véritablement Envoyé de la cour à Pulo Condore, pour y attendre et recevoir tout vaisseau European qui auroit sa destination d'approcher ici, Le Capitaine, en consequence, pourroit se fi our pour conduire le vaisseau au port, ou pour faire passer les nouvelles qu'il pourroit croire nécessaire.

A SAI-GON. 10 d'Août, 1779.

PIERRE JOSEPH GEORGE,
Evêque d'Adran.

Captain King returned the paper, with many protestations of being the *Mandarin's* good friend, begging he might be informed that he hoped he would do them the favour to visit the ships, that he might convince him of it. On returning, Captain Gore felt peculiar satisfaction at seeing them; for as they had exceeded their time near an hour, he began to be alarmed for their safety, and was preparing to march after them. He and his party had, during their absence, been profitably employed in loading the boat with the cabbage-palm, which abounds in this bay.

At two in the afternoon they joined the ships, and several of the shooting parties returned about the same time from the woods, having had little success, though they saw a great variety of birds and animals.

At five, a *proa*, with six men, rowed up to the ship, from the upper end of the harbour, and a decent-looking personage introduced himself to Captain Gore, with an ease and good breeding, which convinced him his time had been spent in other company than what this island afforded. He brought with him the French paper above transcribed, and said he was the *Mandarin* mentioned in it. He spoke a few Portuguese words, but as none of their men were acquainted with this language, they were obliged to have recourse to a black man on board, who could speak the Malay, which is the general language of these island-

ders, and was understood by the Mandarin. After a little previous conversation, he declared that he was a christian, and had been baptized by the name of Luco; that he had been sent hither in August last, from Sai-gon, the capital of Cochin China, and had since waited in expectation of some French ships, which he was to pilot to a safe port, not more than a day's sail hence, upon the coast of Cochin China. Captain Gore acquainted him, that we were not French, but English, and asked him, whether he did not know that those two nations were not at war with one another. He made answer in the affirmative; but at the same time signified that it was indifferent to him to what nation the ships he was instructed to wait for belonged, provided their object was to trade with the people of Cochin China.

He now produced another paper which he requested them to peruse. This was a letter sealed up and addressed "To the Captains of any European ships that may touch at Condore." Though this letter was particularly intended for French vessels, yet as the direction comprehended all European captains, and as Luco was desirous of their reading it, Captain Gore broke the seal, and perceived that it was written by the same bishop who wrote the certificate.

Its contents were to the following purport:—"That he had reason to expect, by some intelligence lately received from Europe, that a ship would in a short time come to Cochin China; in consequence of which news, he had prevailed on the Court to dispatch a Mandarin (the bearer) to Pulo Condore, to wait his arrival: that if the vessel should touch there, the Captain might either send to him, by the bearer of this letter, an account of his having arrived, or trust himself to the direction of the Mandarin, who would pilot the ship into a commodious port in Cochin China, not exceeding a day's sail from Pulo Condore: that if he should be inclined to continue at this island till the return of the messenger, proper interpreters should be sent back, and any other assistance, which might be pointed out in a letter, should be furnished: that there was no occasion for being more particular, of which the commander himself must be sensible." This epistle had the same date with the certificate, and was returned to Luco, without taking any copy of it.

Captain Gore inquired, what supplies could be procured from this island. Luco replied, that there were two buffaloes belonging to him, which were at his service; and that there were considerable numbers of those animals on the island, which might be purchased for four or five dollars each; but Captain Gore thinking that sum very moderate, and appearing inclined to give a much greater for them, the price was speedily augmented to seven or eight dollars.

On the 23rd, early in the morning, the launches of both the ships were dispatched to the town, to bring away the buffaloes

which they had given orders for the purchase of; and eight of these animals were procured, and with difficulty got on board. A circumstance relative to these animals, which was considered as no less singular than their gentleness towards children, and seeming affection for them, was, that they had not been a whole day on board before they were as tame as possible. Captain King kept two of them, one of each sex, for a considerable time, which became great favourites with the seamen. Thinking that a breed of animals of such magnitude and strength, some of which weighed, when dressed, seven hundred pounds, would be an acquisition of some value, he intended to have brought them with him to England; but that design was frustrated, by an incurable hurt which one of them received at sea.

Pulo Condore is elevated and mountainous, and is encompassed by several islands of inferior extent, some of which are about two miles distant, and others less than one mile. Its name signifies the island of calabashes, being derived from two Malay words, *Pulo* implying an island, and *Condore* a calabash; great quantities of which fruit are here produced. It is of a semi-circular form, and extends seven or eight miles from the most southerly point, in the direction of north-east. Its breadth, in any part, does not exceed two miles.

The anchorage in the harbour between Pulo Condore and Little Condore is very good; the depth of water being from five to eleven fathoms; but the bottom is soft and clayey. There is shallow water towards the bottom of the harbour, for the extent of about half a mile, beyond which the two islands make so near an approach to each other, that they leave only a passage at high-water for boats.

The inhabitants of Pulo Condore, who are fugitives from Cochin-China and Cambodia, are not numerous. They are very swarthy in their complexion, of a short stature, and of a weak unhealthy aspect; and as far as we had an opportunity of judging, of a gentle disposition.

The ships continued at this island till Friday the 28th of January; and when the Mandarin took his leave, Captain Gore gave him, at his request, a letter of recommendation to the commanders of any other vessels that might put in here. He also bestowed on him a handsome present, and gave him a letter for the Bishop of Adran, together with a telescope, which he desired might be presented to him as a compliment for the favours received, through his means, at Pulo Condore.

The latitude of the harbour at Condore is 8 deg. 40 min. north; its longitude, deduced from many lunar observations, 106 deg. 18 min. 46 sec. east; and the variation of the compass was 14 deg. west.

The ships weighed anchor on the 28th, and had no sooner cleared the harbour, than they stood to the south-south-west, for Pulo Timoan. At noon, on the 1st day of February, the lati-

tude was 1 deg. 20 min. north, and the longitude, deduced from a considerable number of lunar observations, was 105 deg. east. They stood to the south by east; and towards sun-set, the weather being clear and fine, had a view of Pulo Panjang; the body of the island bearing west-north-west, and the little islands, situated to the south-east of it, west-half-south, at the distance of seven leagues. The latitude at the same time was 53 min. north.

Nothing remarkable occurred during the voyage homeward until the 7th, when about four in the afternoon, they perceived two vessels in the Straits of Sunda; one of which lay at anchor near the Mid-channel Island, the other nearer the shore of Java; and as they did not know to what nation they might belong, they thought proper to prepare their ships for action. At six o'clock they dropped their anchors in twenty-five fathoms' water, about four miles east by south from North Island. Here they remained the whole night, during which they had very heavy thunder and lightning to the north-west: the wind blowing in light breezes from the same quarter, attended with violent rain.

On the 8th, about eight o'clock in the morning, they weighed and proceeded through the Straits of Sunda, the tide setting towards the south, as it had done all the preceding night. At ten, the wind failing, they anchored again in thirty-five fathoms; an elevated island, or rather rock, named the Grand Toque, bearing south by east. Being, at that time, not above two miles from the ships before-mentioned, which now hoisted Dutch colours, Captain Gore sent a boat on board to procure intelligence. The rain still continued, accompanied with thunder and lightning.

The boat returned easily in the afternoon, with information, that the larger of the two vessels was a Dutch East-Indiaman, bound for Europe; and the other a packet from Batavia, with instructions for the several ships lying in the Straits. It is customary for the Dutch ships, when their cargoes are almost completed, to quit Batavia, on account of its very unwholesome climate, and repair to some of the more healthy islands in the Straits, where they wait for their dispatches, and the remainder of their lading. The Indiaman, notwithstanding this precaution, had lost four men since she had left Batavia, and had as many more whose lives were despaired of. She had remained here a fortnight, and was now on the point of proceeding to Cracatoa to take in water, having just received final orders by the packet.

At seven o'clock the next morning, the ships weighed anchor, and steered to the south-westward through the straits, taking care to keep close in with the islands on the Sumatra shore, for the purpose of avoiding a rock near Mid-channel Island which was situated on our left.

Between ten and eleven, Captain King was ordered by Captain Gore to make sail towards a Dutch vessel that now came in sight to the southward, and which he imagined was from Europe;

and according to the nature of the information that might be obtained from her, either join him at Cracatoa, where he designed to stop, in order to furnish the ships; or to proceed to the south-eastern extremity of Prince's Island, and there provide a supply of water, and wait for him.

The poverty of the ships with respect to cordage, was, on this occasion, very conspicuous; for there was not, in the Discovery's store-room, a single coil of rope to fix to the buoy.

The following morning, Mr. Williamson went on board the Dutch ship, and was informed, that she had been seven months from Europe, and three from the Cape of Good Hope; that before her departure, the kings of France and Spain had declared war against his Britannic Majesty; and that she had left Sir Edward Hughes at the Cape with a squadron of men of war, and also a fleet of East-India ships. Mr. Williamson being, at the same time, assured, that the water of Cracatoa was extremely good, and that the Dutch always preferred it to that of Prince's Island, Captain King determined to rejoin the Resolution at the former place. He therefore, taking the advantage of a fair breeze, weighed, and made sail towards the island of Cracatoa, where he soon after perceived her at anchor; but the tide setting forcibly against him, and the wind failing, he again thought proper to cast anchor at the distance of near two leagues from the Resolution, and immediately dispatched a boat on board, to communicate to Captain Gore the intelligence procured by Mr. Williamson.

When the Resolution saw her consort preparing to come, she fired her guns, and displayed the signal for leading a-head, by hoisting an English jack at the ensign staff. This was intended to prevent the Discovery's anchoring, on account of the foul ground, which the maps on board the Resolution placed in this situation. However, as Captain King met with none, but on the contrary, found a muddy bottom, and good anchoring ground at the depth of sixty fathoms, he remained fast till the return of the boat, which brought him orders to proceed to Prince's Island the ensuing morning. He was at this time about two miles distant from the shore; the Peak of Cracatoa bearing north-west by north, Prince's Island south-west by west, and Bantam Point east-north-east half east.

The next morning, the 11th, at three o'clock, Captain King weighed anchor, and steered for Prince's Island; but the westerly wind dying away, a breeze from the south-east succeeded, and the tide, at the same time, setting with great force to the south-westward, he was prevented from fetching the island, and obliged, at two in the afternoon, to anchor at the distance of nine or ten miles from it, in sixty-five fathoms' water, over a muddy bottom; the elevated hill bearing south-west by south, and the peak of Cracatoa north by east.

Light airs and calms prevailed till six o'clock the following

morning, at which time the *Discovery* weighed and made sail, though, in heaving the anchor out of the ground, the old messenger was twice broken, and also a new one. This, however, was entirely owing to the miserable state of the cordage, since the strain was not very considerable.

The wind being fair, she came to an anchor, at twelve o'clock, off the south-eastern extremity of Prince's Island, in twenty-six fathoms' water, over a bottom of sand, at the distance of half a mile from the nearest part of the shore; the east end of the island bearing north-north-east, the high peak north-west, half-west, and the most southerly point in view south-west by south.

The *Discovery* had no sooner anchored, than Lieutenant Lannyon, who had been at this island in the year 1770, with Captain Cook, was dispatched in company with the master, to search for the watering place. The brook from which the *Endeavour*, according to the best of Mr. Lannyon's recollection, had been furnished, was now found extremely salt. They observed further inland a dry bed where the water had probably lodged in rainy seasons; and another run about a cable's length below, supplied from a spacious pool, whose bottom, as well as surface, was covered with dead leaves. This, though somewhat brackish, being far superior to the other, the *Discovery's* people began watering here early in the morning of the 13th, and finished that service the same day.

The inhabitants, who came to them soon after they had anchored, brought a considerable quantity of fowls and some turtles; the last, however, were in general very small. During the night it rained with great violence; and on Monday the 14th, at day-break, the *Resolution* was seen to the north steering towards the island, and about two o'clock in the afternoon she cast anchor close to the *Discovery*.

As Captain Gore had not completed his stock of water at Cracatoa, he sent his men ashore on the 15th, who repaired to the brook that was first mentioned, which was now become perfectly sweet in consequence of the rain, and flowed in great abundance. This being a treasure too valuable to be disregarded, Captain King gave orders, that all the casks which the seamen of his ship had before filled should be started, and replenished with the fresh water. This was accordingly performed by twelve o'clock the next day; and in the evening the decks were cleared, and both vessels prepared for sea.

On the 19th, the ships being favoured by a north-westerly breeze, broke ground, to the extreme satisfaction of the crews, for the last time in the Straits of Sunda; and on the 20th, had totally lost sight of Prince's Island.

The latitude of the anchoring place at Prince's Island is 60 deg. 36 min. 15 sec. south, and its longitude 105 deg. 17 min. 30 sec. east. The variation of the compass was 54 min. west; and the mean of the thermometer 83 deg.

The crews of the ships had began to experience, from the time of entering the Straits of Banca, the pernicious effects of this noxious climate. Two of the Discovery's people became dangerously ill of malignant putrid fevers; which, however, were prevented from being communicated to others, by putting the patients apart from the rest of the crew, in the most airy births. Many were attacked with disagreeable coughs; several complained of violent pains in the head; and even the most healthy persons felt a sensation of suffocating heat, accompanied with an extreme languor, and a total loss of appetite. They had, however, the inexpressible satisfaction of escaping from these destructive seas without the loss of a single life, partly owing to the vigorous health of the ships' companies, on their first arrival in these parts, as well as to the unremitting attention, that was now become habitual in the men, and to the prudent and salutary regulations introduced among them by Captain Cook.

At the time of departure from Prince's Island, and during the whole passage thence to the Cape of Good Hope, the people of the Resolution were in a far more sickly condition than those of the Discovery. This difference was partly ascribed by Captain Gore, and probably not without good reason, to the Discovery's fire-place being between decks; the heat and smoke of which, he was of opinion, contributed to mitigate the noxious effects of the damp nocturnal air. But Captain King was rather inclined to imagine, that his people escaped the flux by the precautions which were taken to prevent their receiving it from others.

Captain Gore had hitherto designed to proceed directly to the island of St. Helena, without stopping at the Cape of Good Hope; but as the Resolution's rudder had been for some time decaying, and on examination, was found to be in a dangerous state, he formed the resolution of repairing immediately to the Cape, as being the most eligible place, both for providing a new main piece to the rudder, and for the recovery of his sick.

From the 21st day of March, when the latitude was 27 deg. 22 min. south, and the longitude 52 deg. 25 min. east, to the 5th of April, when they were in the latitude of 36 deg. 12 min. south, and the longitude of 22 deg. 7 min. east, they strongly felt the influence of the currents, which set towards the south-south-west, and south-west by west, sometimes at the rate of eighty miles in a day.

On Monday the 10th, at break of day, the land again made its appearance to the north-north-westward; and in the course of the morning, a snow was seen bearing down to us. She proved to be an English East-India packet, which had quitted Table Bay three days before, and was now cruising with instructions for the China fleet, and other India ships. She informed them that Monsieur Trongoller's squadron, consisting of half a dozen

sail, had left the Cape about three weeks before, and was gone to cruise off St. Helena, in search of our East-India fleet. From this intelligence they conjectured, that the five vessels seen steering to the eastward, probably belonged to the French squadron, which, in that case, had relinquished their cruise, and were perhaps proceeding to the island of Mauritius. Having communicated their conjectures to the packet, and likewise mentioned the time they understood the China fleet was to sail from Canton, they left her, and continued their progress towards the Cape. In the evening, False Cape bore east-north-east, and the Gunner's Quoin north by east; but they were prevented by the wind from getting into False Bay till the evening of the 12th, when they let go their anchors abreast of Simon's Bay: a strong current was setting to the west, round the Cape, which, for some time they were barely able to stem, with a breeze that would have carried them four miles an hour.

They weighed the next morning, and stood into Simon's Bay. At eight o'clock, came to anchor, at the distance of one-third of a mile from the nearest shore; the south-east point of the bay bearing south by east, and Table Mountain north-east half-north. The Resolution saluted the fort with eleven guns, and was complimented with an equal number in return.

As soon as they had cast anchor, Mr. Brandt, the governor of this place, favoured them with a visit. This gentleman had the highest regard and esteem for Captain Cook, who had been his constant guest whenever he had touched at the Cape; and though he had, some time before, received intelligence of his unfortunate catastrophe, he was extremely affected at the sight of the vessels returning without their old commander. He was greatly surprised at seeing most of our people in so robust and healthy a state, as the Dutch ship which had quitted Macao at the time of the ships arrival there, and had afterwards stopped at the Cape, reported, that they were in a most wretched condition, there being only fourteen persons left on board the Resolution, and seven in the Discovery. It is difficult to conceive what motive could have induced these people to propagate so wanton and infamous a falsehood.

Captain King, on Saturday the 15th, accompanied Captain Gore to Cape Town; and the following morning, they waited on Baron Plettenberg, the governor, who received them with every possible demonstration of civility and politeness. He entertained a great personal affection for Captain Cook, and on hearing the recital of his misfortune, broke forth into many expressions of unaffected sorrow. In one of the principal apartments of the Baron's house, he showed our gentlemen two pictures, one of De Ruyter, the other of Van Trump, with a vacant space left between them, which, he said, he intended to fill up with a portrait of Captain Cook; and for this purpose, he requested

that they would endeavour to procure one for him, at any price, on their arrival in Great Britain.

The Governor afterwards informed them, that all the nations then at war with England had issued orders to their respective cruisers, to suffer us to pass without molestation. With regard to the French, there was sufficient reason to consider this as true; for Mr. Brandt had already delivered to Captain Gore a letter from Mr. Stephens, secretary of the Admiralty, enclosing a transcript of Monsieur de Sartine's orders, taken on board the *Licorne*. The affair, however, with respect to the Americans, still rested on report: but, as to the Spaniards, Baron Plettenberg assured the gentlemen, that he had been expressly told by the Captain of a Spanish vessel which had stopped at the Cape, that he, and all the officers of his nation, had received injunctions of the same nature.

By these assurances, Captain Gore was confirmed in his resolution of maintaining, on his part, a neutral conduct; in consequence of which, when, upon the arrival of the *Sibyl*, to convoy the East-Indiaman home, it was proposed to him to attend them on their voyage, he thought proper to decline an offer, the acceptance of which might perhaps have brought him into a very embarrassing dilemma, in case of our falling in with any of the ships belonging to our enemies.

During the continuance at the Cape, our men met with the most friendly treatment, not only from the Governor, but also from the other principal persons of the place, as well Africans as Europeans. On their first arrival, Colonel Gordon, the commander of the Dutch troops, was absent on a journey into the inland parts of Africa, but returned before they left the Cape. Upon this occasion he had penetrated further into the interior parts of the country than any preceding traveller, and made considerable additions to the excellent collection of natural curiosities with which he has contributed to enrich the Museum of the Prince of Orange. "Indeed his long residence at the Cape, and the great assistance he has derived from his rank and station there, joined to an ardent desire of knowledge, and an active, indefatigable spirit, have enabled him to gain a more perfect knowledge of this part of Africa than any other person has had an opportunity of acquiring; and it is with pleasure we congratulate the public on his intentions of publishing a narrative of his travels."

False Bay lies to the eastward of the Cape of Good Hope, and is frequented by vessels during the prevalence of the north-westerly winds, which begin to excite their influence in May, and render it dangerous to remain in Table Bay. It is terminated to the eastward by False Cape, and to the westward by the Cape of Good Hope. It is eighteen miles wide at its entrance, and the two Capes bear due east and west from each other.

At the distance of eleven or twelve miles from the Cape of

Good Hope, on the western side, is situated Simon's Bay, the only commodious station for shipping to be in; for though the road without it affords tolerable anchorage, it is rather too open, and not well adapted for procuring necessaries, the town being small, and supplied with provisions from Cape Town, which stands at the distance of about twenty-four miles. To the north-north-eastward of Simon's Bay, there are some others, from which, however, it may with ease be distinguished, by a remarkable sandy way to the north of the town, which forms a conspicuous object.

In steering for the harbour, along the western shore, there is a small flat rock, known by the name of Noah's ark; and about a mile to the north-eastward of it there are several others, which are denominated the Roman Rocks. These are a mile and a half distant from the anchoring-place; and either to the northward of them, or between them, there is a safe passage into the Bay.

When the north-westerly gales are set in, the navigator, by the following bearings, will be directed to a secure and convenient station; Noah's Ark, south 51 deg. east, and at the centre of the hospital south 53 deg. west, in seven fathoms' water. But if the south-easterly winds should not have ceased blowing, it is more advisable to remain further out in eight or nine fathoms. The bottom consists of sand, and the anchors, before they get hold, settle considerably. The land, on the northern side of the bay, is low and sandy; but the eastern side is very elevated. About two leagues to the eastward of Noah's Ark stands Seal Island, whose southern part is said to be dangerous, and not to be approached, with safety, nearer than in twenty-two fathoms' water. There are many sunken rocks off the Cape of Good Hope, some of which made their appearance at low-water; and others constantly have breakers on them.

The anchoring place in Simon's Bay is situate in the latitude of 34 deg. 20 min. south, by observation; and its longitude is 18 deg. 29 min. east. It was high-water, on the full and change days, at 5 hours 55 min. apparent time. The tide rose and fell five feet five inches; and, at the neap tides, the water rose only four feet one inch.

According to the observations made by Captain King and Mr. Bailey, on the 11th of April, when the Cape of Good Hope bore due west, its latitude is 34 deg. 28 min. south, which is 4 min. to the northward of the Abbe de la Caille's position of it.

Having provided the necessary quantity of naval stores and completed their victualling, they quitted Simon's Bay on Tuesday the 9th of May. On the 14th of the same month got into the south-east trade wind, and stood to the west of the islands of Ascension and St. Helena. On Wednesday the 31st, were in the latitude of 12 deg. 41 min. south, and the longitude of 15 deg. 40 min. west. On the 12th of June they passed the equinoctial

line for the fourth time during the voyage, in the longitude of 26 deg. 16 min. west.

They now perceived the effects of a current setting north by east, at the rate of half a mile in an hour. After continuing in the same direction till the middle of July, it began to set a little to the southward of the west. On Saturday, the 12th of August, they descried the western coast of Ireland, and endeavoured to get into Port Galway, whence Captain Gore intended to have dispatched the journals and charts of their voyage to London. This attempt, however, proved ineffectual; and they were compelled by violent southerly winds, to stand to the north.

Captain Gore's next design was to put into Lough Swilly, but the wind continuing in the same quarter, they steered to the northward of the island of Lewis; and on Tuesday, the 22nd of August, about eleven o'clock in the forenoon, both their vessels anchored at Stromness. From this place Captain King was sent by Captain Gore, to inform the Lords of the Admiralty of their arrival; and, on Wednesday, the 4th of October, the ships reached the Nore in safety, after an absence of four years, two months, and twenty two days.

When Captain King quitted the *Discovery* at Stromness, he had the satisfaction of leaving the whole ship's company in perfect health; and, at the same time, the number of sick persons on board the *Resolution* did not exceed two or three, only one of them was incapable of service. In the whole course of the voyage the *Resolution* lost no more than five men by sickness, three of whom, at the time of their departure from Great Britain, were in a precarious state of health: the *Discovery* did not lose one individual. A strict attention to the excellent regulations established by Captain Cook, may justly be deemed the chief cause, under the blessing of Divine Providence, of this extraordinary success. But, notwithstanding these salutary precautions, they might, perhaps, in the end, have felt the pernicious effects of salt provisions, had they not availed themselves of every substitute which their situation, at different times, afforded them. As these were sometimes extremely nauseous, frequently consisting of articles which our people had not been accustomed to consider as food for men, it became necessary, for the purpose of removing their prejudices, and conquering their disgusts, to employ the united aid of persuasion, example, and authority.

Portable soup and sour kroust were the preventives principally depended on. They had no opportunity of trying the effects of the antiscorbutic remedies, with which they were plentifully furnished, as there did not appear, during the whole voyage, the slightest symptoms of the scurvy among the crew of either ship.

The malt and hops had likewise been kept as a resource in case of sickness; but, on being examined at the Cape of Good Hope, they were found totally spoiled. About the same time they opened some casks of oatmeal, pease, groats, flour, biscuit.

and malt, which, for the sake of experiment, they had put up in small casks, lined with tin-frail; and all the articles, except the pease, were found in a much better condition than could have been expected in the ordinary mode of package.

On this occasion we cannot omit recommending to the consideration of government, the necessity of furnishing such of his Majesty's ships as may be exposed to the influence of unhealthy climates, with a sufficient quantity of Peruvian bark. It fortunately happened in the *Discovery*, that only one of the men who were attacked with fevers in the Straits of Sunda stood in need of this valuable medicine; for the whole quantity that surgeons are accustomed to carry out in such vessels as those was consumed by him alone. If more persons had been affected in the same manner, it is probable that they would all have perished for want of the only remedy that could effectually have relieved them.

We shall conclude our narrative of this voyage with the mention of a circumstance, which, if we consider its long duration, and the nature of the service in which the ships were employed, seems scarcely less remarkable than the uncommon healthiness of the ship's companies. This was, that the two vessels never lost sight of each other for a whole day, except on two occasions: the first of which was in consequence of an accident that befel the *Discovery* off the coast of Owhyhee; and the second was owing to the fogs they met with at the entrance of the bay of Awatska. As this share of merit belongs almost entirely to the inferior officers, it furnishes a striking proof of their skill and vigilance.

THE END.

